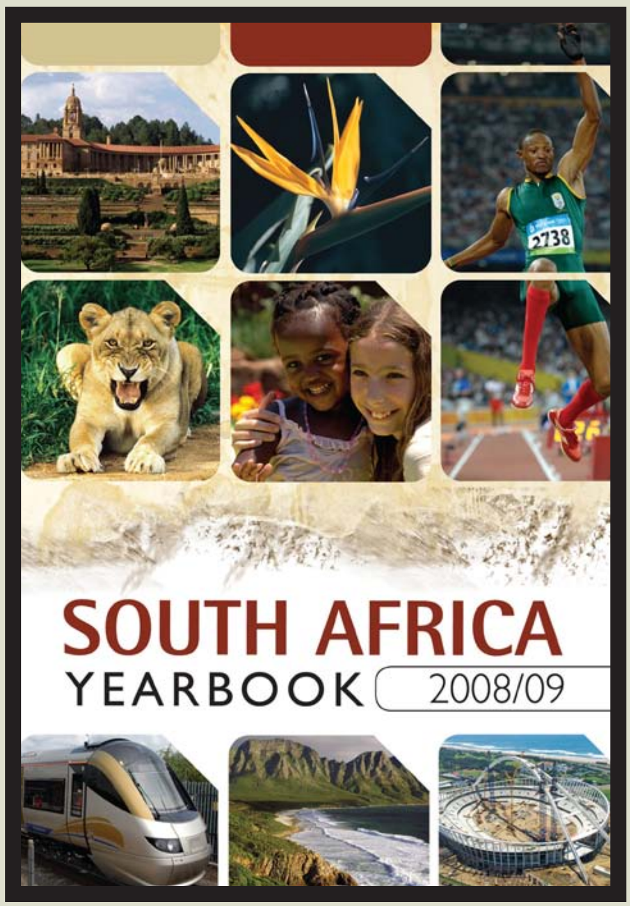
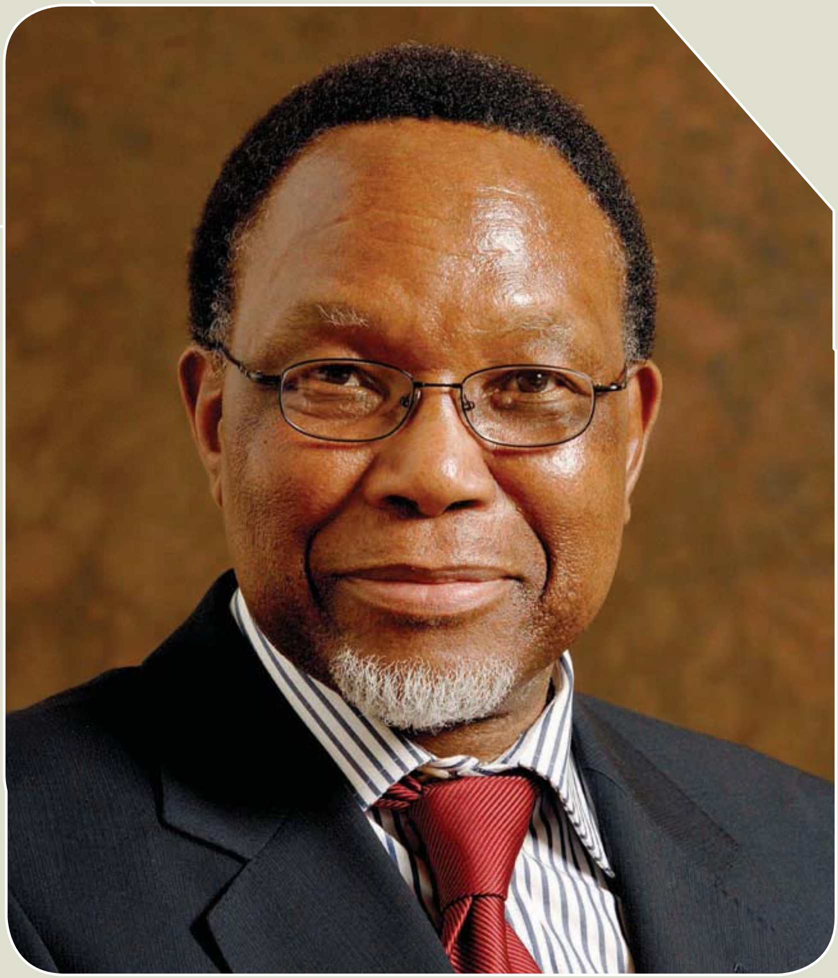
SA YEARBOOK 2008/09



FOREWORD



FOREWORD

I am proud to present to you the *South Africa Yearbook 2008/09*. As the official resource on the work of government, this publication provides a comprehensive account of the programmes and policies of our government and highlights the areas of progress we have made, particularly during 2008.

I believe that this publication plays an important role in capturing the evolution of our government and our country. It is updated every year to record as accurately as possible the countless efforts of all government departments that give life to our Programme of Action, shape the lives of millions of South Africans and influence our standing in the international community.

In 2008, government undertook a *15 Year Review* to take stock of the progress it had made in improving the quality of life of all South Africans. The review, based on both external and government-based research, indicated that overall, government has made definite strides towards meeting its broad development objectives. Major progress was noted in key areas such as access to basic services like water, electricity, housing, social support and healthcare. At the same time, the review also indicated areas that require further intervention. Government acknowledges that much more can and must be done, and that new challenges have arisen that our country needs to respond to from 2009 onward.

The experiences of 2008, specifically the demands placed on us by challenges in both the local and international environment and our resilience in responding to them, attest to the fact that we have laid solid foundations for our democracy since 1994. We have also continued to show our consistency and commitment to making real the aspirations of our country and our continent to host a successful Soccer World Cup in 2010, ensuring that the various projects of government in this regard are on track.

In this edition of the *South Africa Yearbook*, not only do we offer the scope of government's implementation but also a reflection on the progress we have made in creating a better life for our people. On the eve of our country's fourth general election — and halfway through the Second Decade of Freedom — the content of this edition of the *South Africa Yearbook* therefore takes on even greater significance. It is an account of the journey we have travelled over the past 14 years of democracy. In this sense, it is both a beacon of hope, a testimony of the change we have created together, as much as it is a barometer that reminds us that much more remains to be done.

President Kgalema Motlanthe
January 2009

South Africa Yearbook 2008/09
Sixteenth edition
Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*
ISSN 0302-0681

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar
Editor: Delien Burger

Assistant editors: Refilwe Thobega and Antonia Vermeulen
Editorial support: Ongezwa Manyathi and Elias Tibane

Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila and Ongezwa Manyathi
Photographs supplied by the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) (Elmond Jiyane, Kendridge Mathabathe and Ntswe Makoena), Department of Science and Technology, Department of Housing, Department of Foreign Affairs, Rand Water, Council of Scientific and Industrial Research, Philip van Niekerk, Piet Smith, City of Cape Town, Denel, MediaClubSouthAfrica.com (Hannelie Coetzee, Roger Bosch, Graeme Williams, Chris Kirchoff, ORC, Jeffrey Barbee and Emily Visser).

Cover design: Neville Rabie
Design and layout: Neville Rabie and Yolandé Dednam

Suggested reading lists: Prof Reuben Musiker

Compiled, edited and published by GCIS
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Telephone: 012 314 2911, Fax: 012 323 0557
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by Formeset Printers

ISBN 978-0-621-38412-3
ISSN 1022-9515
Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number: 57-40609

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the Yearbook, or more detailed specific information, should consult the contributors. The information is also available on Government Online (*www.gov.za*).

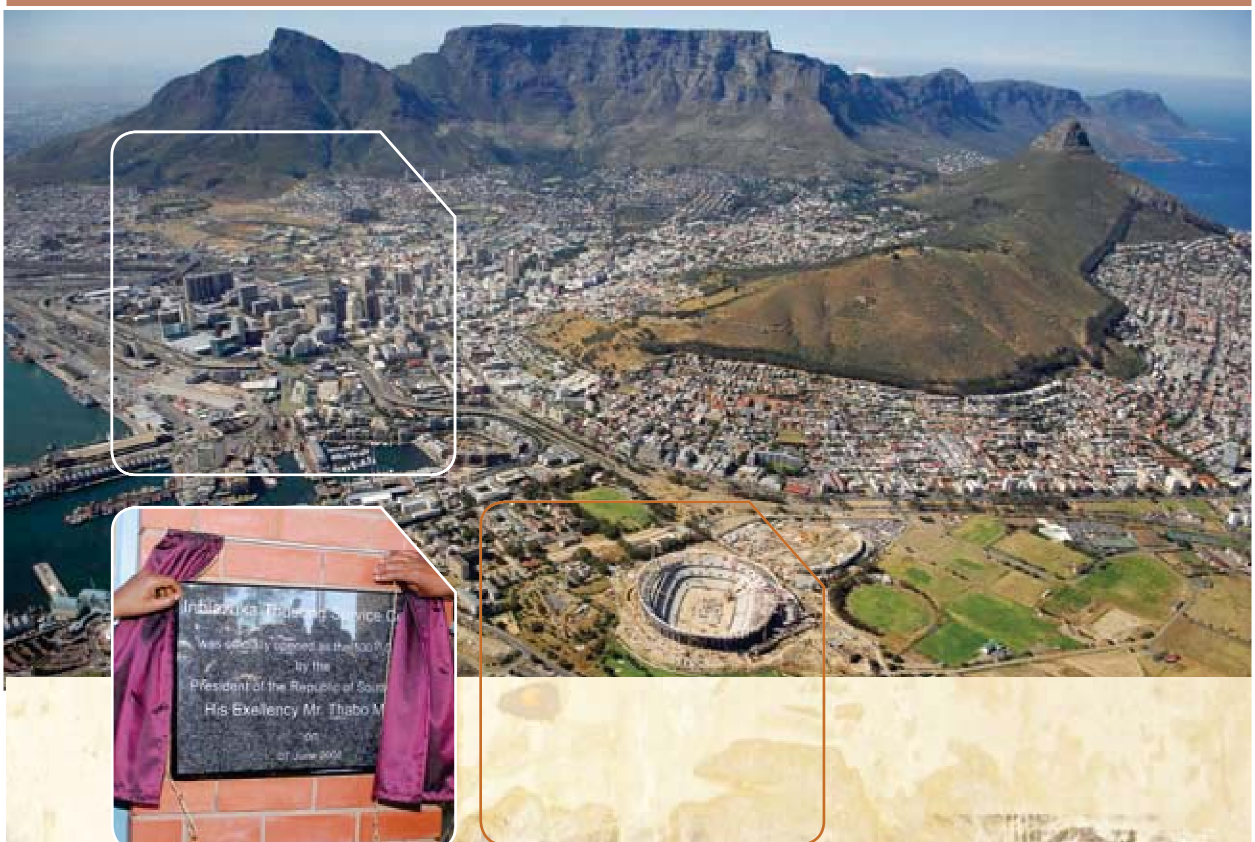
Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2008.

CONTENTS

CONTENTS

SA YEARBOOK 2008/09

OVERVIEW



South Africa has experienced enormous change over the past 15 years. The achievement of democracy in 1994 led to transformed institutions, new policies and the start of a new society. At the same time, government also had to deal with the legacy left by apartheid and the challenge of integrating South Africa into the world.

The extension of universal franchise and the creation of a democratic state created the possibility for South Africa to address poverty and inequality and to restore the dignity of citizens. In line with the democratic Constitution, new policies were put in place to improve people's quality of life. This has constituted a systematic effort to dismantle apartheid social and economic relations and create a society based on equity, non-racialism and non-sexism.

The new government's Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) outlined its key objectives as:

- meeting basic needs
- building the economy
- democratising the State and society
- developing human resources
- nation-building.

Since 1994, these objectives have been elaborated with more specific priorities, consolidated since 1999 into the priorities of the five Cabinet clusters. Government's annual Programme of Action, informed by the cluster priorities, has since 2004 been published each year on the Government's website, and so have the two-monthly updates on the implementation of the programme.

Even as the legacy of apartheid was being dismantled, changes in South African society brought new challenges. *The First Decade of Freedom review*, conducted by government in 2003, assessed how far these objectives had been met through the work of its five clusters, and identified challenges of the Second Decade of Freedom. This review was supplemented in 2006 by a report on macrosocial trends. The report, entitled *A Nation in the Making*, concluded that South African society was making advances in terms of both hard (socio-economic) and soft (identity and social cohesion) issues, but that there were still many challenges to be overcome to fully realise the vision of a better life for all.

The election of 2004 mandated government to implement programmes to sustain – and speed up – the positive developments and address the challenges. Calling for a partnership of all of society, it set the goal of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. To achieve this, it set itself these broad priorities:

- growing the economy, as the main area of intervention
- new measures to help the poor enter the economy so they could move out of poverty
- improving state performance, the campaign against crime and South Africa's relations with other countries.

The millennium development goals provided further detailed targets and commitments consistent with the broad thrust of government's priorities for the second decade.

In 2007, Cabinet approved a set of key development indicators to provide evidence-based pointers to the evolution of South African society and in 2008, these indicators were again released. Government also undertook a *15-Year Review* during 2008 to assess the progress made in creating a better life for all South africans since 1994, with particular emphasis on the past five years. Collectively, these statistics and assessments trace the evolution of the democratic governance and society and indicate both the areas of progress achieved as well as the challenges that need to be addressed.

Governance and Administration Cluster

The principal focus since 1994 has been on deepening the democratisation of governance and improving the capacity of the State to advance the objectives of reconstruction and development.

South Africa has become a well-functioning democracy in a comparatively short time. Two successful national and provincial elections have been held since 1994 and two democratic local elections. Strong institutions of representative democracy have been built, including Parliament, provincial legislatures and municipal councils. Independent institutions support them, including the Human Rights Commission; Public Protector; Auditor General; and Commission on Gender Equality. An independent judiciary has also been established.

Successive elections have increased the proportion of women in legislatures and the executive. The proportion of female Members of Parliament – 33% after the 2004 elections – is one of the world's highest, as is participation of women in the executive across the three spheres. Of the 30-member Cabinet appointed in 2004, 13 were women. The proportion in local government representative bodies has also increased.

Successive policies and laws have helped deepen participatory democracy. The mechanisms include mandatory community consultation in formulating municipal integrated development plans; izimbizo (executive interaction with communities around services and development); ward committees; Thusong Service Centres (previously multi-purpose community centres [MPCCs]); and community development workers (CDWs).

Since 2001, izimbizo have been held regularly. Presidential izimbizo involve the President or Deputy President; and national imbizo weeks twice a year involve the executive of all spheres of government taking part in hundreds of community interactions.

Thusong Service Centres, which are aimed at providing access to a range of services and information in areas with little or no acces, have steadily increased towards the target of one per municipality – the 37 MPCCs established by 2003 had become 125 operational Thusong Service Centres by March 2008. By then, 3 305 CDWs had been trained and deployed in 2 000 wards to help communities access services and development opportunities. Ward committees had been established in 96% of wards.

Traditional leadership has also been afforded a role in democratic South Africa with several pieces of legislation passed since 1994 to recognise traditional leadership. There is a programme of support to traditional institutions and a national department is being established to deal with traditional affairs. Government has created an environment for transparency and openness through, among other things, the Promotion of Access to Information Act (PAIA), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), which allows citizens to access information primarily in possession of the State. It has also adopted the Batho Pele or "People First" approach, which has become the guiding principle for public services.

It has also steadily strengthened its ability to deal with corruption through the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act,1996 (Act 74 of 1996), Public Service Anti-Corruption Strategy (2002) and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004). Between 2001 and 2008, three anti-corruption summits extended the fight against corruption to all of society.

The 2006 Open Budget Index – which ranks countries according to how transparent their budgetary processes are – put South Africa in the top six.

The permutation of national ministries and departments, with minor adjustments, was inherited from the pre-1994 administration. A number of structures have emerged to promote integration and co-operation in governance. These include:

- clusters of ministers along the lines of Cabinet committees
- corresponding clusters of directors-general (DGs) and the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad), including provincial DGs and heads of departments
- MinMECs of ministers and provincial MECs, dealing with concurrent functions
- the Presidential Co-ordinating Council, bringing together the President, premiers and relevant ministers/MECs.

Challenges of national co-ordination were addressed in a report on the capacity and organisation of the State, prepared by The Presidency and Fosad, which was served before Cabinet in 2005. Among other things, it recommended the development of planning capacity and the harmonisation of monitoring and evaluation (M&E) among co-ordinating departments. A government-wide M&E system has since been developed and a programme of capacity development for M&E units in departments has been initiated.

The first 10 years of democracy saw remarkable progress in unifying and integrating the Public Service. By 2004, the Public Service had also evolved in terms of representivity, with Africans at 72% of service at all levels. Since then, it has become still more representative. Women now occupy 34% of all senior positions.

Financial management has improved at government level through the implementation of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), and the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003).

Capacity-building in the Public Service has been a special focus since 2004. A massive boost in public-service training began when the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (successor to the South African Management Development Institute) was inaugurated in August 2008. At local government level, Project Consolidate was launched in 2004 as a two-year hands-on intervention to boost skills development in 136 municipalities. By August 2008, 1 134 experts had been deployed to 268 municipalities (including 139 Project Consolidate municipalities). Key partners, such as the "Siyenza Manje" initiative of the Development Bank of Southern Africa, played a valuable role.

Social Cluster

The Social Cluster's primary objectives are to alleviate poverty and reduce inequality.

The single most important driver of the decline in poverty has been government's social security assistance programme. From 2,5 million beneficiaries in 1999 to just over 12 million in 2007, the social-grant system is the largest form of government support for the poor.

Since 1994, government has achieved significant progress in creating access for all South Africans to basic services such as electricity, water and sanitation. As part of this, government provides free basic services to poor households: 6 000 litres of water a month; and electricity worth 30 units per month.

Access to basic services has improved substantially: Although the December 2007 target for completely eradicating the bucket sanitation system in established settlements was missed, notable progress was made: between 1994 and 2006, households using the bucket system decreased from 609 675 to 113 085 in all areas.

Progress has been made in deracialising the funding for education and its prioritisation in the national budget. Expenditure for education in 2005 constituted 5,59% of the country's gross national product (GNP). It grew from R30 billion in 1994/95 to R101 billion in 2007/08. Expenditure on all education programmes has expanded rapidly. As a result of measures to promote access to schooling, the participation rate is high and has increased for each age cohort between seven and 15 years of age.

Enrolments at Higher Education (HE) level grew rapidly over the past two decades from roughly 300 000 in 1986 to 750 000 in 2005. The proportion of African students in HE has doubled, but from a low base.

White participation has held steady at 60% (of white 20 – 24-year-olds in the population) since 1986 and Indian participation has grown from 32% to 50%. African and coloured students remain underrepresented at 12% and 13% of their respective 20 – 24-year-old populations in 2005.

Further Education and Training college enrolments increased by 34% from 302 550 in 1998 to 406 143 in 2002, with a particularly fast growth in part-time enrolment.

The increase in per capita health spend was 22% in real terms from 1996 to 2006. The increases in real expenditure are reflected in expanded infrastructure, upgrading of facilities and broadening the available package of health services.

Around 1 600 clinics and healthcare centres have been built since 1994. As a result, 95% of South Africans live within a 5-km radius of a health facility.

From 1997 to 2006/07, access to primary healthcare, measured by visits, increased from 67 021 961 to 101 644 080. South Africa now has the largest number of people enrolled on antiretroviral therapy in the world.

The percentage of children under one year who complete their primary course of immunisation has been increasing at an annualised rate of 5% per year. Coverage is now 88%, within reach of the 90% target.

Households	1996	2001	2007
Using electricity			
for lighting	58%	70%	80%
for cooking	47%	51%	67%
for heating	45%	49%	59%
Water			
At least RDP standard (200m to communal tap)*	62%	78%	85%
Tap in dwelling or on site		61%	70%
Sanitation			
At least RDP standard*	51,6%		71,7%
Flush toilet		52%	60%

Source: *Census* and *2007 Community Survey*: department reports for items marked

Severe malnutrition among children under five-years-old has declined, from 88 971 cases in 2001 to 28 165 in 2007.

In dealing with the range of diseases affecting the South African population, there been some successes. Malaria cases have declined from over 50 000 in the late 1990s to about 5 000 in 2007.

Government has declared tuberculosis (TB) a top national health priority. Treatment success rates for TB dropped between 1999 and 2000 and picked up thereafter, remaining relatively stable at around 70%. Co-infection with HIV compounds the severity of TB and makes its prophylactic and curative treatment more costly and problematic.

This has been compounded by the emergence of multi-drug-resistant and extreme drug-resistant strains, which are more costly to treat and have a longer duration.

Annual *HIV Antenatal Survey* trends suggest a stabilisation of HIV prevalence among pregnant women who access public-sector antenatal care services. There is a particularly encouraging trend: a decline from 16% in 2004 to 13,5% in 2006 among women younger than 20 years.

Two programmes lead government's efforts to alleviate asset poverty: land and housing. From 1994 to 2008, 3 132 769 housing subsidies were approved, and 2 358 667 units were completed. This brought housing to 9,9 million citizens who could access state-subsidised housing opportunities, of which 53% were women.

The combined effect of government and private-sector housing has seen the proportion of households in traditional dwellings decline from 18,2% to 11,7% between 1996 and 2007 and those in formal dwellings increase from 64,4% to 70,5%. Through the land restitution programme, assets worth R12,5 billion were transferred to 1,4 million beneficiaries between 1994 and 2007. The Government set a target of redistributing 30% of all agricultural land to previously disadvantaged farmers by 2014.

The total agricultural land distributed thus far constitutes 2,3 million hectares, indicating that the land reform programme has to be stepped up considerably to meet the 2014 target.

Social cohesion has assumed greater focus in the social sector since 2004, particularly since changes in family size and structure, migration and other recent social trends have helped enhance the challenges of reducing the growing number of people in depressed situations.

A key factor in what seems an erosion of social cohesion is the persistence of income inequality as the benefits of democracy have accrued unevenly to different sectors of society.

Economic Cluster

In the first few years of democracy, government focused extensively on creating stability in the economy and reintegrating with the international community. However, the *Ten-Year Review* in 2003 concluded that although great progress had been made, the "dynamic of economic inclusion and exclusion" posed a grave challenge and if allowed to persist"could precipitate a vicious cycle of decline in all spheres".

Government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for 2004 – 2009 therefore makes growing the economy and promoting social inclusion the central priority.

The MTSF point of departure is that halving poverty and unemployment by 2014 requires growth averaging 5% a year till then. This means ratcheting growth to an average of 4,5% a year from 2004 to 2009 and 6% from 2010 to 2014.

To overcome the constraints to faster growth, government launched AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa. It focuses on six key "binding constraints":

- volatility and level of the currency (with the focus on volatility)
- cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- shortage of skilled labour, and the labour cost effects of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits on competition and limited new investment opportunities
- regulatory environment and the burden on small and medium businesses
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

Advancing towards government's objectives has required critical interventions and special programmes and projects to improve infrastructure; skills; the environment for small business and the Second Economy; competition and industrial policy; and state capacity. These have been the focus of the economic sector since 2004.

In the early 1990s, the economy was in recession, but since 1994 there have been 14 successive years of real gross domestic product (GDP) growth.

The pace accelerated from about 2003, and with it GDP per capita growth. Increased employment and government's redistributive social programme translated the growth into reduced poverty but without reducing overall inequality.

After several years of increasing unemployment, peaking at 31,5% in 2001, faster GDP turned the trend as net new jobs started to outstrip growth in the labour force from 2002. However, the labour force participation rate (proportion of people either employed or seeking employment) is 56,5%, lower than the 65% average in comparable countries.

One of the major achievements has been to stabilise the economy. In 1994, it was recovering from its longest downward phase since 1945, lasting from March 1989 to May 1993. Confronted by an unsustainable budget deficit and high debt service costs, high inflation, low investor confidence and a run on the currency, government made macroeconomic balance the main focus of economic policy for much of the first decade.

Total public-sector debt was managed down from 44% of GDP in 1994 to below 30% of GDP in 2008. By 2006, there was a fiscal surplus. In 1991, core inflation reached 18,9% – since 1994, it had been consistently below 10% until 2008. The Reserve Bank has also reduced the net open forward position to zero (from a deficit of US$25 billion in 1994) and has accumulated over US$34 billion gross foreign reserves.

As a result, global investor confidence in South Africa has improved. The bond points spread (the amount South Africa has to pay its creditors above the rate paid by the United States [US] Government) declined rapidly from 291 points in 2001 to 94 in 2006.

The country now spends less in debt service costs, which has enabled government to increase spending on priorities such as health, education and the improvement of public services. Deficit reduction has been assisted by increased revenue receipts. Between 1996 and 2006, revenue collection quadrupled and the number of taxpayers more than doubled. The rise in government revenues resulted from economic growth, improved collection and increased compliance. It took place in a context of tax reforms for small businesses, company tax cuts, and reduction of the income-tax burden for low earners.

Monetary policy has been principally directed at influencing the quantity of money or the interest rate to achieve stable prices. From 1994, inflation averaged 6,3%. In 2000, government adopted inflation targeting as part of its policy to keep inflation within a band of 3% and 6%. From 2004 to 2007, inflation averaged 4,1% but has trended higher since 2006 when it breached the 6% level. To curb inflationary pressures, monetary policy entered a tightening phase. For the most part, inflation since 2007 has been imported, driven above the target range by global fuel and food increases and amplified by a weakening exchange rate.

The rate of investment or gross fixed capital formation (GFCF) hovered around 15% – 16% of GDP for a long time due to low levels of government investment. A reversal of that trend came with the adoption of AsgiSA and an expansionary R482-billion infrastructure expenditure plan for the 2008 to 2011 period. In 2007, GFCF soared to 21% of GDP.

Levels of private-sector investment are much higher than in 1994 and 2004, and there is a positive pipeline of about R200 billion foreign and domestic investment.

Net foreign investment has been positive. There have been some significant foreign investments in the motor industry, chemicals, mining and banking, but relatively little is green-field investment as most foreign direct investments have been the acquisition of major stakes in existing operations.

South Africa embarked on a set of tariff and trade policy reforms in the mid-1990s. Multilateral liberalisation through the World Trade Organisation (WTO) was combined with efforts to modernise industry. Growth sectors like autos and tourism and cross-cutting sectors such as information and communications technology received special attention in the form of industrial development resources, including science and technology (S&T) and human-resource development funds.

Since 1994, the economy has become more open, more productive and more outward-orientated with both exports and imports growing rapidly.

The Microeconomic Reform Strategy (MERS) of 2001 identified the major microeconomic constraints to the performance of the growth sectors. Since 2004, industrial policy has broadened to encompass further sectors. AsgiSA has identified a range of priority sectors that have been incorporated in the National Industrial Policy Framework and Industrial Policy Acton Plan (IPAP).

Since 2003, the Competition Commission has paid greater attention to fostering compliance with the law and a culture of competition. Investigations of restrictive activities have led to some prominent firms being penalised with fines, administrative penalties and compliance orders.

Beyond the work of the competition authorities, government recognised the need for better regulatory oversight over the state-owned enterprises, particularly those that were commercialised or privatised in monopoly or semi-monopoly markets. A framework to ensure a co-ordinated and structured approach to regulation is near finalisation.

The Constitution provides for measures to overcome the consequences of apartheid discrimination against the majority. Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) is one of the measures promoted by government to surmount the disparities in wealth and income. The Broad-Based BEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), was adopted in 2003 and the Codes of Good Practice gazetted in 2007.

Empowerment in the workplace and employment equity is growing steadily. Black representation in top management reached 22,2% in 2006 and 25,7% in all senior management positions.

Government has directed significant resources towards skills development. Since 1994, it has completely recast the skills development environment, focusing on transforming public education and training-provider institutions and establishing new training institutions.

The Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), brought about 25 sector education and training authorities (Setas) that cover clusters of industries. Through the Setas and other agencies like the National Skills Fund, skills-development interventions have been initiated in co-operation with a range of training and education institutions and government programmes such as the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The interventions have significantly contributed to addressing the plight of youth and the unemployed.

To fast-track and amplify the development of skills, government launched the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa) in 2006, to catalyse a more adequate supply of skills to the economy.

Among Jipsa's achievements are more resources to increase the number of engineering graduates, increased registration of artisans, targeted training for Business Process Outsourcing as a strategic growth sector and the placement of over 15 000 unemployed graduates in companies in South Africa and abroad. As part of Jipsa, the Dinaledi schools initiative aims to improve Mathematics, Science and language competence in public schools.

The notion of the "Second Economy" focuses policy attention on the largely inherited structural inequality, disadvantage and marginalisation that still marks much of South African society. Second-economy programmes, as part of wider anti-poverty measures, promote access to economic opportunities and help improve the returns from economic participation for the poor, whether as producers, workers or consumers.

The EPWP is the flagship public employment programme. It creates temporary work opportunities with on-the-job training to improve participants' chances of sustainable employment. In 2008, it created one million work opportunities – a target originally set for 2009.

Central to government's approach to inclusive economic development is support for the development of small business and enterprises in the informal economy. Despite extensive small business support measures and their consolidation, the small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) sector remains small compared to other developing countries. Improving market access for marginalised producers and addressing structural constraints that limit the growth and competitiveness of the sector are key focus areas for the future.

Some 1,3 million households have access to land for farming, often small plots. Outputs are generally low, but the Integrated Food Security Strategy and some provincial programmes to boost returns from commercialising subsistence agriculture have shown steady improvements. The Eastern Cape Siyakhula/Massive Programme brought 360% improvement in yields over three years, matching commercial norms. A range of initiatives to link smallholders to agroprocessing value chains have been initiated in forestry, sugar, and biofuels.

The large increases in food prices in 2008 impacted particularly on the poor. Global factors suggest that this trend is likely to continue. In this context, South Africa took the stance of ensuring that biofuel production does not undermine food production. Ultimately, broadening access to land as well ensuring responsive and effective agricultural extension services are crucial to realising the potential of agriculture to address rural poverty and enhance the country's food security.

Government has since 1994 given attention to sustainable development and its mainstreaming. South Africa's hosting of the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 gave impetus to the process. Government's 2006 *State of the Environment Report* provided a comprehensive analysis of the state of South Africa's natural resources and eco-systems.

Investment in research and development (R&D) slowed during the 1990s, from 1,1% of GDP in 1990 to 0,7% in 2003. Since 2004, it has increased. By May 2008, the country's R&D expenditure totalled 0,9% and it was on course to meet the target of 1% of GDP.

In 2007, government launched the Ten Year Innovation Plan to "help drive South Africa's transformation towards a knowledge-based economy, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge leads to economic benefits and enriches all fields of human endeavour". Sectors targeted to benefit from the plan include biotechnology and pharmaceuticals, space S&T, energy security, climate change and highlighting the role of S&T in driving growth and development.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster

In 1994, the country inherited multiple criminal justice and security systems that needed to be amalgamated and transformed in line with the democratic Constitution. Steeped in a culture where human rights and civil liberties received little protection, the new Government was challenged with transforming and strengthening the JCPS departments to bring about legitimacy, accountability and effectiveness to improve service delivery and reduce crime.

By 2003, significant progress had been made in transforming the institutions, which had previously prioritised the defence of apartheid, but which were required in a democratic society to ensure the safety and security of all. Integration brought standardisation of 11 different sets of rules and procedures across the country for the police, the courts, intelligence and defence, as well as the rationalisation of structures. Integration and new recruitment procedures have made the departments representative of the South African population. Transformation also involved the adoption of a new ethos, that saw crime as not just a security issue but also a social issue requiring community respect for and participation with the South African Police Service (SAPS); that required courts to be friendly and service-oriented; and that focused correctional centres on rehabilitating offenders to break the cycle of crime.

Enhancing the capacity of the departments was an element of transformation, involving both equipment and personnel.

The SAPS' Automated Fingerprint Identification System, introduced in 2002; the decentralisation and continuing expansion of the Forensic Science Laboratory service; the Home Affairs National Information System, which has been implemented in phases since 2003; the Criminal Justice System (CJS) E-docket and E-Scheduler System; and the upgrading of technology at border posts and ports of entry are some of the instruments that have been created for quicker and more effective processing.

Judicial transformation in democratic South Africa has had a number of aspects. South Africa's constitutional system changed from Parliamentary sovereignty to supremacy of the Constitution, which redefined the independence of the judiciary.

The role of the Judicial Services Commission in appointing judges constitutes a radical break with the past. By mid-2007, 52% of judges and magistrates were black (African, coloured or Indian) and 30% women.

Judgments of the Constitutional Court have tended to reflect deep understanding of the constitutional imperatives and progressive interpretation of the Constitution and social rights in particular. Government's response to court judgments, favourable to government or not, has been respectful, which has helped to reinforce the legitimacy of the courts.

From 1995, anti-crime efforts have been guided by the National Crime Prevention Strategy. Its elements include the National Crime Combating Strategy; the Integrated Justice System programme; the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit focusing on crimes against women and children; until recently, the Directorate of Special Operations (DSO), and Asset Forfeiture Unit in the National Prosecuting Authority; the Financial Intelligence Centre focusing on organised crime; and the Victim-Empowerment Programme.

At the level of the courts, there has been some improvement in performance attributable to the Integrated Justice System. There are increased conviction rates in finalised cases, but the outstanding roll has grown (by 7% from 2002/03 to 2006/07).

Despite initiatives to deal with overcrowding in the correctional services system – new centres; alternative sentencing; correctional supervision; an awaiting-trial project and parole – the problem has grown. From 1995 to 2007, the capacity of the prisons increased from 95 000 to 115 000, while the number of prisoners went from 111 000 (107% occupancy) to 161 000 (141% occupancy).

The cluster has implemented special initiatives intended to improve its effectiveness. Among those that have made some impact are the specialised courts for commercial crimes and sexual offences, and the Community Policing Policy.

Community police forums were introduced on the premise that success in fighting crime depends on co-operation of the community with the police. Relations with organised business have progressed from the partnership with Business Against Crime – which, among other things, brought about major declines in street crime in targeted city centres – to the joint initiative with the Big Business Working Group to review and revamp the CJS.

Combating violent crimes against women and children is a key priority. Specialised courts dedicated to sexual offences (63 of them) have been established across the country. Thuthuzela Care Centres help prevent secondary trauma for victims of these crimes and also assist in improved conviction rates and speedy justice. Prosecutors, police, magistrates and doctors have been empowered with specialised skills. Dangerous sexual offenders are kept under long-term supervision on release from prison. Amendments to the Sexual Offences Act in 2007 and the Children's Act in 2008 have strengthened the legal weapons for fighting abuse. Minimum sentences have been implemented and a victim-empowerment charter (still to be implemented) has been developed.

Specialised centralised units in the SAPS to deal with family violence, child abuse and sexual assault were established, and in 2007 their functions were decentralised to empower the service at station level to better deal with these matters.

These measures have enhanced the State's capacity to deal with sexual assault and other violence against women and children. Detection rates are relatively high due to the frequent interpersonal relationship between victim and offender. Conviction rates in dedicated courts increased from 63% in 2004/05 to 70% the following year.

The annual Sixteen Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign continues to focus on the mobilisation of communities in the fight against abuse. This partnership between government and civil society has given rise to the 365 Days Action Plan, which seeks to further mobilise society and promote practical action.

Some of the crimes most prominently associated with organised crime decreased markedly from 2001 – such as bank robberies and truck hijacking. Cash-in-transit heists showed a marked decrease in 2007 from a peak in 2006.

In 2008, legislation was introduced to merge the functions and powers of the DSO and the Organised Crime Unit into a single agency within the SAPS, to strengthen the capacity to fight organised crime.

The measures taken to facilitate detection of crime through the protection of whistle blowers (Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 [Act 6 of 2000]); to enable the confiscation of the proceeds of crime and link public and private sectors in monitoring financial activities that could involve money laundering are helping to curb organised crime.

The Organised Crime Unit dismantled 273 clandestine drug laboratories between 1994 and 2007 and neutralised 738 syndicates. Between 2002 and 2007, the DSO finalised about 1 300 investigations, initiated just over 1 000 prosecutions with an average conviction rate of 85% The Asset Forfeiture Unit won forfeiture orders involving more than R115 million and frozen asset worth over R550 million.

Action to regulate ownership of legal firearms and reduce the number of illegal ones include a campaign to persuade people to voluntarily hand over firearms; destructing redundant firearms in the SAPS' possession; an audit of firearms held by government departments; and operations to recover illegal firearms in high-crime areas. There were also joint operations with the Mozambican authorities to destroy weapons caches; and participation in the development of a United Nations (UN) Protocol against Illicit Manufacturing and Trafficking in Firearms. Stricter criteria are applied in the granting of civilian firearm licences.

More comprehensive and stringent firearm-control legislation was promulgated in 2000 and introduced between 2000 and 2004.

By the end of 2007, the SAPS estimated that there were 2,5 million civilian licensed firearms in South Africa, a 44% reduction since 1999. The number of firearms reported lost or stolen declined by 24% from 2004, indicating more responsible and safe firearm ownership. The SAPS has destroyed over half a million firearms since 2000 and firearm-related deaths (relative to other violent deaths) in major urban areas decreased by about 50% from 2001 to 2004 .

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission, which was initiated by the democratic Government, helped to deal with the consequences of political violence and human rights abuses under apartheid. Implementation of its decisions continues, among others in the form of payment of restitution; projects of reconstruction of most affected communities; and restoration of the dignity of communities and individuals with regard to place names, historical monuments and identification and reburial of those killed in instances of human rights abuse.

In the years since the attainment of democracy, government has successfully dealt with manifestations of in South Africa, mainly in the form of urban and right-wing terrorism. It has played its part in combating international terrorism in a manner consistent with the tenets of the Constitution.

Urban terrorism in the Western Cape starting in 1996 was by 2000 virtually brought to a complete end, due to co-ordinated operations of intelligence and law-enforcement agencies.

When right-wing terrorist groups sought to mount challenges to the legitimacy of the State during 2002, intelligence and law-enforcement agencies uncovered the plans, confiscated large amounts of explosives and firearms and brought the suspects to court in a trial, which is still proceeding. Since then, small political groups with radically right wing views have been active, but with little impact.

Control of the country's borders has become more co-ordinated with the establishment of the Border Control Operational Co-ordinating Committee, which includes the departments of home affairs, intelligence, transport, public works, agriculture, health and the SAPS and South African National Defence Force (SANDF). Responsibilities of departments have been rationalised. Infrastructure at entry control points has been upgraded and technology modernised. Government has also entered into agreements with neighbouring and other countries.

Seizure of counterfeit goods fluctuated between R230 million and R450 million over the four years up to 2006/07. During the same period, narcotics seizures grew from 56 to 381. A very large growth in cigarette smuggling in the same period saw the value of such seizures grow from R35 million to R63 million. Cash, endangered species, explosives, motor vehicles and precious stones and metals are among the other illicit goods that border control has regularly seized.

Various courts and agencies already existed to deal with family and commercial matters – such as the divorce courts, maintenance courts and children's courts. New courts have been introduced through legislation to promote development and equity, such as the equality courts, small claims courts and environmental courts. The Competitions Tribunal gives substance to the anti-competition policy.

In 2005, government initiated a comprehensive review of the CJS in conjunction with the Big Business Working Group. The proposals emerging from the two-year review were adopted by Cabinet in late 2007. These proposals include the need to prioritise building greater capacity of the JCPS departments; modernising technology (including the fast-tracking of existing initiatives); resources and the ability to strategise, plan and work together in an integrated way rather than as separate components.

International Relations, Peace and Security (IRPS) Cluster

South Africa emerged from isolation and marginalisation through normalisation of diplomatic relations and participation in regional, continental and international multilateral organisations. This has enabled it to play a critical role in the First Decade of Democracy – well beyond its capacity and resources – in advancing its own interests and those of developing countries, especially in Africa.

One of the MTSF priorities for 2004 to 2009 is the pursuit of the country's international agenda as a contribution to growth and development. The IRPS Cluster articulated these priorities under five themes:

- Consolidating the African agenda
- Strengthening and Deepening Relations with Countries of the South
- Transforming Relations with the Developed Countries of the North
- Pursuing Economic Diplomacy
- Participating in the Global System of Governance.

To help consolidate integration into the global arena, formal diplomatic representation has continued to grow. In 1994, there were only 65 South African foreign missions. By 2004, there were 105 South African missions in 91 countries; and by 2008, 121 missions in 105 countries. Conversely, the 45 foreign missions accredited in South Africa in 1994 became 105 by 2004. By 2007, government had accredited more than 160 countries and organisations resident in South Africa.

The many multilateral conferences and major international events hosted by South Africa also measure the country's integration into the community of nations. These include the Rugby

World Cup (1995), the All Africa Games (1999), the World Summit on Sustainable Development (2002), the Cricket World Cup (2003), the inauguration of the Pan-African Parliament (PAP) (2006) and its successful bid to host the 2010 World Cup (awarded in 2004).

The regeneration of Africa is the main pillar of South Africa's foreign policy objectives, and is central to ensuring a better life for all in South Africa and on the continent. South Africa contributed to two tangible elements of African renaissance during the first decade. One was the transformation of the continental political architecture with the transition from the Organisation of African Unity to the African Union (AU). Another was the adoption of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) as the socio-development blueprint for Africa and the framework for its engagement with the North and other international actors.

In the first 10 years, foundations were also laid for peaceful diplomacy and, through bilateral and multilateral engagements, for raising the profile of Africa's development needs on the world agenda.

The PAP, hosted by South Africa, has since its launch in 2005 been establishing itself as a voice of African citizens. The Economic, Social and Cultural Council was established in 2005 by an assembly of civil-society organisations convened by the AU Commission and has become a vehicle for unified positions from civil society on major issues. The African Commission for Human and People's Rights is in operation. The finance and justice organs have not yet been established, though South Africa is preparing to contribute meaningfully to their formation. South Africa has helped operationalise AU peace and security structures, pre-eminently the AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC). Apart from having been a member and chair of the council, South Africa was one of the main troop-contributors to the deployment of the first peacekeeping missions under AUPSC auspices. The country actively participated in the establishment of the Continental Early Warning System and the African Standby Force. Nepad has become the main frame of reference and engagement by African governments, regional economic communities (RECs), civil-society bodies on the continent and international bodies and partnerships. South Africa and its African partners have used engagement with the G8 to ensure the adoption of an Africa Action Plan as the framework for the G8's assistance to the continent.

The South African Government, conscious that the primary agents of Nepad implementation must be national governments and RECs, initiated a Nepad Implementation Strategy for South Africa. The country played a part in establishing the Nepad Pan-African Infrastructure Development Fund in 2007, as well as other facilities to promote implementation of Nepad projects.

There has been a positive response to the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM). Twenty-nine of a possible 53 countries have voluntarily signed up for comprehensive APRM scrutiny. Seven, including South Africa, have gone through their review processes and eight have received a country support mission. South Africa's review was largely smooth and thorough. South Africa was commended for 18 best practices, which other nations could emulate, including: co-operative governance, participatory governance practices, a consultative budget process and provision of basic needs. The report also raised critical issues for South Africa to consider, among them: inequality, poverty eradication, unemployment, crime, models of democracy, accountability of elected officials, race relations and corruption.

These issues are addressed in South Africa's comprehensive APRM Programme of Action.

South Africa has contributed to peaceful resolution of conflicts, drawing from the experience of its own negotiated settlement. Early into its Second Decade of Freedom, South Africa was one of five countries elected to serve in the AUPSC for three years. During this period, the first African-led peace mission was deployed in Sudan and transformed into the combined UN-AU Peacekeeping Mission.

South Africa has been one of the largest troop-contributors to African peace missions, in places such as the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi, Sudan and Ethiopia-Eritrea.

In Zimbabwe, in the context of social and political instability experienced since the turn of the century, South Africa has sought over many years to assist the country to find a lasting solution. In the build-up to the 2008 elections in Zimbabwe, South Africa was mandated by the Southern African Development Community (SADC) to facilitate dialogue, which resulted in unprecedented initial agreements that created an environment for an election in March 2008. South Africa has remained active in facilitating the peace process. It has played a facilitation role in armed conflict situations, including in Burundi and Côte d'Ivoire. It supported peace processes in Sudan, Liberia and the Comoros.

In recent years, South Africa's peace-making efforts have been supplemented by efforts to lay the basis for permanent stability and peace through economic reconstruction, nation-building and reconstitution of the State. Many government departments have contributed to this process in countries like the DRC, Sudan, Burundi and the Comoros.

Until 2004, the focus with regard to the SADC was on restructuring and replacing sectoral co-ordinating units with national committees to strengthen linkages between the SADC and the countries of the region and between the secretariat and the political structures that guide it.

Since then, focus has shifted to developing policies to guide the SADC integration agenda and to operationalising the many protocols adopted in the past decade. The Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan harmonises many SADC policies, sector strategies and protocols into priorities to be implemented within clear timeframes.

It provides a sound basis for regional implementation of Nepad and other developmental goals. It gives impetus to trade integration towards a free trade area (formally initiated at the SADC Summit in August 2008), a customs union and a common market. On the other hand, the Strategic Indicative Plan of the Organ for Politics, Defence, and Security Co-operation is a blueprint for effective security co-operation. At a continental level, South African investment and trade with African countries has increased dramatically since 1994.

Africa is now South Africa's fourth-largest export destination. South African investments in southern Africa alone totalled R14,8 billion in 2001. Trade with the rest of Africa totalled about R50 billion that year and increased to R108 billion in 2007.

In building relations between Africa and other continents, South Africa has emphasised strategic partnerships that are of benefit not only to South Africa but also to the continent and its partners.

Established in 2000, the Forum on China-Africa Co-operation held its first heads of states-level summit in Beijing in 2006. The aim of the forum is to strengthen economic co-operation. The India-Africa Forum had its first high-level meeting in April 2008. It will address areas of co-operation on regional and international issues, including climate change and a developmental approach to WTO negotiations. Economic relations between Africa and India have grown significantly with investments from India totalling some R10 billion in 2006. South African investment in India's transport, mining and technology sectors has been growing.

Japan has hosted four meetings of TICAD (Tokyo International Conference on Africa's Development) between 1993 and 2008. In 2004, South Africa and Japan agreed to extend their relations to allow Japan to support African regional integration and Nepad and help Africa to access Asian markets. South Korea has created a Korea-Africa Forum, with a more economic bias. At the same time, negotiations are underway to strengthen economic relations between the SADC and Mercosur in Latin America.

South Africa's agenda for South-South co-operation is informed by the broader objective to promote multilateralism in the interests of the developing world. The India-Brazil-South Africa Partnership emerged at the end of the First Decade of Freedom as a potential source of new energy and substantial progress in South-South collaboration, balancing the politics of solidarity with the bricks and mortar of economic activities, including support for Nepad projects. It has developed common positions on global issues and built issue-based trilateral co-operation. It has become a major influence in global politics and economic diplomacy.

The focus in the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), which South Africa chaired for four years from 1998, has been on making it an effective machinery for the new South-South agenda. It has become effective in driving common positions at the UN where its several members of the Security Council have worked together on major global issues.The G77 and China Forum, established in 1994, has developed crucial common policy positions on a range of issues, mainly economic. When South Africa took the chair in 2006, it aimed with some success to harmonise positions that South countries take in other forums.

South Africa co-championed the New Africa-Asia Strategic Partnership from its establishment in 2005 as part of its commitment to consolidate South-South co-operation. It built on the strategic partnership between Africa and Asia at the dawn of independence initiated at the 1955 Bandung Conference.

Bilateral engagements have been equally crucial in building South-South co-operation. Some have been elevated into binational commissions. These relations have also generated some support for

Nepad and peace diplomacy, and have yielded significant economic benefits for South Africa in the form of increased trade.

The Government has consistently sought to transform North-South relations, particularly on security, the environment, debt relief, market access and terms of trade. South Africa has participated actively in the G8, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, the African Partnership Forum and United Kingdom Commission for Africa with a view to build partnerships based on new values.

Since 2005, the relations with the European Union (EU) have intensified on three fronts: work on a joint EU-Africa Strategy, consultations to develop a Strategic Partnership with South Africa and negotiations on the economic partnership agreements between the EU and individual African countries.

Coupled with the emphasis on economic diplomacy, South Africa has also resolved to improve international marketing of South Africa and Africa. An active campaign to image, brand and market South Africa began in the late 1990s. It included government initiatives, support for non-governmental initiatives (such as Proudly South African); efforts to secure the hosting of hallmark international events; and the creation of a number of bodies, which directly or indirectly contributed to better understanding of the predominantly positive character of South Africa's development and potential.

These include the International Investment Council, the International Advisory Council on Information and Communications Technology as well as the International Marketing Council.

Over the years, in part as a result of these marketing campaigns, there has been a sustained increase in tourist arrivals in South Africa. Foreign arrivals into South Africa were recorded at 5,73 million in 1998 and grew to 9,10 million in 2007. Cumulatively this growth is estimated to have created over 400 000 jobs.

Alongside these developments, the Government mandated the formulation of a strategy to enhance the country's economic diplomacy and branding. As a catalytic pilot project, China is the focus of a variety of activities, including celebrating 10 years of diplomatic relations between the two countries in 2008 and participation in the 2010 Shanghai World Expo. The two governments are also engaging with a view to forging a Partnership for Growth and Development.

To promote co-ordinated conduct of international relations across all the spheres of government, the Consultative Forum on International Relations has been created, comprising national, provincial and local government representatives. Guidelines have been formulated as a frame of reference for all the spheres.

The hosting of the 2010 World Cup brings a communication opportunity of a lifetime for South Africa to market the country and, working with the rest of Africa, to improve the continent's image.

The promotion of international peace, security and stability has been a major theme of South Africa's international participation. It has actively supported the UN and successfully worked through such forums as the G77+China and the NAM to ensure the sanctity of the UN Charter and its rules are observed, especially in dealing with conflict and other threats to peace. It has implemented UN Security Council sanctions, regimes and resolutions on combating terrorism and peace-support operations.

The country embarked on a two-year tenure as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council in 2007. South Africa consistently took a principled stance with regard to matters tabled in the Security Council, informed by its commitment to multilateralism and the maintenance of international peace and security.

South Africa's hosting of the World Summit on Sustainable Development and its ratification of multilateral environmental agreements enhanced its role as a player in global environmental governance. This has been sustained through its role as one of four developing country donors to the Global Environment Fund and as a donor to the UN Environmental Programme.

The way forward

Midway through the Second Decade of Freedom, the foundation laid in the first decade and new initiatives since 2004 have enabled South Africa to notch up to a faster trajectory of growth and development. However, the challenges have proved more deep-seated than recognised, and success has brought new challenges.

The findings of the *15-Year Review* in 2008 spell out the areas that require attention for South Africa going forward. These include speeding up growth and transforming the economy, fighting poverty, building social cohesion, international co-operation and building an effective developmental state.

Faster and shared growth is essential for reducing unemployment and poverty. In turn, the country's productive capacity needs to be improved so it can grow faster; absorb more labour, including people with less skills; ensure competition; increase exports; and ensure thriving conditions for SMMEs. There is also a need to develop second-economy programmes that have a mass impact.

There will be a need to take account of a shift in the cost of energy and to protect the environment.

Measures to overcome poverty are central to the comprehensive anti-poverty strategy that government is developing. Reducing unemployment is the key anti-poverty measure. Fighting poverty requires a special effort towards increasing people's chances of entering the labour market and setting up their own businesses. Education has enormous potential to break the cycle of poverty.

Ensuring a harmonious society requires a reduction in inequality, through access to economic opportunities for all as well as sustaining pro-poor government spending. Key to social cohesion are strong and legitimate public institutions. This requires improved service by the State, improved platforms for public participation and reducing crime and corruption.

Similarly, society has the responsibility to respect and protect the legitimacy and authority of state institutions. Building a cohesive society also requires the promotion of solidarity and caring among all South Africans rather than the values of individualism.

Much work has been done to strengthen partnerships across the world, especially in Africa and the South.

This needs to continue, still prioritising Africa and the countries of the South, while maintaining relationships with industrialised countries. Strengthening strategic partnerships will help advance our national interests, and the deployment of our resources to advance African development.

THE LAND AND ITS PEOPLE

South Africa is often called "A World in One Country" because of the contrast in its technologically advanced cities, its unspoilt natural beauty and the many cultures that make up the South African nation.

The sunny weather, scenic beauty and a wide array of fauna and flora make South Africa a destination of choice for regional and international tourists.

South Africa is often called the "Cradle of Humankind", for it is where archaeologists discovered 2,5-million-year-old fossils of our earliest ancestors, and 100 000-year-old remains of modern man.

The people

According to the *Community Survey 2007*, there are 48 502 063 people in South Africa. Of these, 79% classify themselves as African; 9,6% as white; 8,9% as coloured; and 2,5% as Indian/Asian. Africans are in the majority (about 38 million) and constitute 79% of the total South African population. The white population is estimated at 9,6 million, the coloured population at 4,2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 2,6 million.

The South African population consists of the following groups: the Nguni (comprising the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi people); Sotho-Tswana, who include the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho (Tswana people); Tsonga; Venda; Afrikaners; English; coloureds; Indians; and those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and who maintain a strong cultural identity. A few members of the Khoi and the San also live in South Africa.

Languages

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and to participate in the cultural life of their choice, but no one may do so in a manner that is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each person also has the right to instruction in his or her language of choice where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

The Constitution recognises 11 official languages, namely Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Recognising the historically diminished use and status of the indigenous languages, the Constitution expects government to implement positive measures to elevate the status and advance the use of these languages.

According to Census 2001, isiZulu is the mother tongue of 23,8% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17,6%), Afrikaans (13,3%), Sesotho sa Leboa (9,4%), and English and Setswana (8,2% each).

The least-spoken indigenous language in South Africa is isiNdebele, which is spoken by 1,6% of the population.

Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages.

National Language Service (NLS)

The NLS is a chief directorate in the Department of Arts and Culture with the task of meeting the constitutional obligations on multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies (HLTs) and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official languages and foreign languages.

As part of its strategy to strengthen and promote social cohesion through multilingualism and also to transform the South African society into an information society, the NLS has embarked on the development of HLT applications that will connect South Africans equipped with nothing but a normal telephone to government information and services regardless of the level of literacy and location.

The development of spellcheckers and machine-aided translation tools will contribute to consistency and quality of documents rendered in or translated into all official languages, as required by the National Language Policy Framework (NLPF). Once the National HLT Strategy aimed at co-ordinating HLT activities in government structures has been approved by Cabinet, the strategy will be fully implemented and the key element, the National Centre for HLT, will be established.

To address the status of indigenous languages, the NLS introduced a bursary scheme to encourage students to study in specialised language fields as well as the most disadvantaged languages, siSwati, isiNdebele, Xitsonga and Tshivenda. At the end of 2007, 49 postgraduate students and 30 undergraduate students received their degrees.

The NLS is facilitating the establishment of the African Language Practitioners' Council, which will regulate the language profession. It will also go a long way to elevating the status of language practitioners in general and also ensure that the services provided by language practitioners are of an acceptable standard.

Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa (Tissa)

Tissa provides telephone-interpreting services to people who need to access government, and aims to improve verbal communication between citizens and government agencies, thus allowing citizens to exercise their right to use the language of their choice when dealing with government.

Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

PanSALB was created in terms of Section Six of the Constitution and defined by the PanSALB Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995). Section Four sets out the organisation's independence and impartiality, and also provides that no organ of state or any person is allowed to interfere with the board or its staff's activities.

The board champions the recognition, implementation and promotion of multilingualism in South Africa, and the development of previously marginalised languages.

PanSALB's vision is to achieve equal status and use of all official languages, and the Khoi, Nama, San and South African Sign Language.

The board promotes multilingualism in South Africa by:

- creating conditions for the development and equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic discrimination, domination and division.

The board may also make recommendations on language legislation, practice and policy, and renders advice on the co-ordination of language planning in South Africa.

PanSALB may investigate the alleged violation of any language right, policy or practice. It may also summon any person, body or state organ to give evidence.

It is furthermore empowered to negotiate or mediate in cases of language conflict and attempts to achieve conciliation.

PanSALB works through provincial language committees (PLCs), national language bodies (NLBs) and national lexicography units (NLUs).

NLBs were created for each of the 11 official languages and for the Khoi, Nama, San and South African Sign Language.

The aim is to develop each of the designated languages through the technical subcommittees, such as the Standardisation Subcommittee that standardises terminologies, spelling and orthography rules; and the Literature Subcommittee that develops forums for the production and recognition of literature for each of the designated languages.

The Language in Education Subcommittee looks into matters that deal with language in education while the Communication Subcommittee attends to communication issues such the production of journals on issues related to language development. The NLBs also do research and initiate projects for the various designated languages.

The 11 NLUs, which compile and create dictionaries, were created by PanSALB and incorporated in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973). These NLUs have produced monolingual, bilingual and multilingual dictionaries.

The PLCs comprise the status language planning, translation and interpreting, linguistic human rights and mediation and language in education subcommittees.

PanSALB has nine provincial offices that carry out the administrative function of PanSALB, and form the base on which PanSALB's three structures operate in the provinces.

South Africa has 12 public holidays:

New Year's Day – 1 January
Human Rights Day – 21 March
Good Friday – Friday before Easter Sunday
Family Day – Monday after Easter Sunday
Freedom Day – 27 April
Workers' Day – 1 May
Youth Day – 16 June
National Women's Day – 9 August
Heritage Day – 24 September
Day of Reconciliation – 16 December
Christmas Day – 25 December
Day of Goodwill – 26 December
If any of these days fall on a Sunday, then the following Monday becomes a public holiday.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities aims to contribute to social transformation and nation-building. Its mission is to promote and develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among linguistic communities. To achieve this, the commission:

- is a channel of communication between the State and communities
- monitors compliance by the State and civil society
- mediates in intercommunity conflict situations and facilitates harmonious co-existence
- facilitates the development of programmes that foster sensitivity, respect for and understanding of cultural, religious and linguistic diversity
- lobbies government departments and legislative authorities to identify laws undermining or supporting those rights, and recommends the repeal of laws that undermine those rights and the enactment of laws that support them.

Religion

Religious groups

Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus, Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.

The Constitution guarantees freedom of worship and the official policy is one of non-interference in religious practices.

Christian churches

There are many official and unofficial ecumenical relations between the various churches. One of the most important of these links is the South African Council of Churches (SACC), although it is not representative of the full spectrum of churches.

The Church of England in Southern Africa has congregations among all sections of the community. The major African indigenous churches, most of the Afrikaans churches, and the Pentecostal and charismatic churches are, as a rule, not members of the SACC, and usually have their own co-ordinating liaison bodies.

Church attendance in South Africa is favourable in both rural and urban areas, and churches are well served by a large number of clerics and officials.

On the whole, training for the church ministry is thorough and intensive, and based on a variety of models due to the variety of church denominations.

Apart from the work of the churches, a number of Christian organisations (para-church organisations) operate in South Africa, doing missionary and evangelical work, and providing aid and training.

Regular religious programmes on radio and television, and the abundance of places of worship, reflect the importance of religion in South Africa. Many newspapers carry a daily scriptural message, and various religious magazines, newspapers and books are produced and sold in religious bookshops.

African independent churches (AICs)

The largest grouping of Christian churches is the AICs, and one of the most dramatic aspects of religious affiliation has been the rise of this movement.

Although these churches originally resulted from a number of breakaways from various mission churches (the "Ethiopian" churches), the AICs have developed their own dynamics and momentum, and continue to flourish.

The majority are no longer regarded as Ethiopian churches, but rather Zionist or Apostolic churches. The Pentecostal movement also has its independent offshoots in this group.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) is the largest of these churches in South Africa and the largest church overall. The teaching is a syncretism between Christianity and African Traditional Religion. More than a million members gather twice a year at Zion City, Moria, east of Polokwane in Limpopo, at Easter and for the September festival.

Traditionally, Easter is the religious highlight of the year. ZCC members, estimated to exceed four million, are not obliged to make the pilgrimage, but have loyally observed the tradition for more than 80 years.

The 4 000 or more independent churches have a membership of more than 10 million people, making this movement the most important religious group in South Africa.

The independent churches attract people from both rural and urban areas. There are, for example, hundreds of separate churches in rural KwaZulu-Natal, and at least 900 from all ethnic groups in the urban complex of Soweto alone. In the northern KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga areas, these churches serve more than half the population.

Afrikaans churches

The Afrikaans churches are predominantly Protestant. Of these churches, the Dutch Reformed Church family of churches in South Africa is the largest and represents about 3,5 million people. The Dutch Reformed Church, also known as the Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk, has about 1 200 congregations countrywide.

Other churches are the Uniting Reformed Church in Southern Africa, the Dutch Reformed Church in Africa and the smaller Reformed Church in Africa, with predominantly Indian members. The Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk and the Gereformeerde Kerk are regarded as sister churches of the Dutch Reformed Church.

There are several other churches with Afrikaans-speaking adherents, some with very large memberships, such as the Apostolic Faith Mission and the Afrikaanse Protestantse Kerk.

The Dutch Reformed Church also has six fully fledged English-language congregations, one congregation for Dutch-speaking people, and four for Portuguese-speaking people. There are about 2 000 members in each of these congregations.

Roman Catholic Church

The Roman Catholic Church has grown significantly in number and influence in recent years. It works closely with other churches on the socio-political front. The Southern African Catholic Bishops' Conference, founded more than 50 years ago, is the representative body of this church in southern Africa.

Other Christian churches

Other established churches in South Africa include the Anglican Church of Southern Africa, the Methodist Church, various Lutheran and Presbyterian churches, and the Congregational Church.

Although the different Baptist groups are not large, they represent a strong church tradition. Together, they form the nucleus of the SACC. The largest traditional Pentecostal churches are the Apostolic Faith Mission, the Assemblies of God and the Full Gospel Church, but there are numerous others. Many of them enjoy fellowship in groups such as the Church Alliance of South Africa, and operate in all communities.

Hundreds of independent charismatic churches have mushroomed across the country. The largest of these groups is the International Fellowship of Christian Churches (IFCC). Rhema Church, with its 32 000-member congregation, spearheads the movement. The IFCC, representing more than 400 churches, is also a member of the SACC. Also active in South Africa, among the smaller groups, are the Greek Orthodox Church, the Seventh Day Adventist churches, the Church of the Nazarenes and the Salvation Army.

African traditionalists

Because the traditional religion of the African people has a strong cultural base, the various groups have different rituals, but there are certain common features.

A supreme being is generally recognised, but ancestors are of far greater importance, being the deceased elders of the group. They are regarded as part of the community; indispensable links with the spirit world and the powers that control everyday affairs. These ancestors are not gods, but because they play a key part in bringing about either good or ill fortune, maintaining good relations with them is vital and they have to be appeased regularly through a variety of ritual offerings.

While an intimate knowledge of herbs and other therapeutic techniques, and the use of supernatural powers, can be applied for the benefit of the individual and the community, some practitioners are masters of black magic, creating fear among people. As a result of close contact with Christianity, many people find themselves in a transitional phase between African Traditional Religion and Christianity.

Other religions

The majority of Indians who originally came to South Africa were Hindu. They retained their Hindu religion and today some two thirds of South Africa's Indians are Hindus. The rest are Muslims

Number of individuals by religion (Census 2001)	
Religion	%
Christian	79,8%
African Traditional Religion	0,3%
Judaism	0,2%
Hinduism	1,2%
Islam	1,5%
Other	0,6%
No religion	15,1%
Undetermined	1,4%
Total	**100%**

and a minority are Christians. The Muslim community in South Africa is small, but growing rapidly. The Cape Malays, who are mostly descended from Indonesian slaves, make up most of this group, with the remaining 20% being of Indian descent.

The Jewish population numbers less than 100 000. Of these, the majority are Orthodox Jews. Buddhism is barely organised in South Africa. However, the Nan Hua Buddhist temple has been built at Bronkhorstspruit near Pretoria. The number of Parsees has decreased, while there is a small group of Jains in Durban. Followers of the Baha'i faith are establishing groups and temples in various parts of the country.

The land

South Africa occupies the southernmost part of the African continent, stretching latitudinally from 22° to 35° S and longitudinally from 17° to 33° E.

Its surface area is 1 219 090 km^2. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

To the west, south and east, South Africa borders on the Atlantic and Indian oceans. Isolated, some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town in the Atlantic, lie the Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947.

The oceans

South Africa is surrounded by the ocean on three sides – to the west, south and east – and has a coastline of about 3 000 km. The coastline is swept by two major ocean currents – the warm south-flowing Mozambique-Agulhas and the cold Benguela.

The former skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the Benguela current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for important differences in climate and vegetation between the east and west coasts of South Africa.

It also accounts for the differences in marine life. The cold waters of the west coast are much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast. Consequently, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

The coasts

The coastline itself is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours. The only ideal natural harbour along the coastline is Saldanha Bay on the west coast. However, the area lacks fresh water and offers no natural lines of penetration to the interior.

Most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbars block entry for most of the year. These bars are formed by the action of waves and currents, and by the intermittent flow, heavy sediment load and steep gradients of most South African rivers. Only the largest rivers, such as the Orange and Limpopo, maintain narrow permanent channels through the bars. For these reasons, the country has no navigable rivers.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau, and the land between the plateau and the coast. Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to a height of 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert.

The plateau itself is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level.

The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent. In general, the escarpment forms the highest parts of the plateau.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and a mere 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised: the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions and the western plateau slopes.

Climatic features

The subtropical location, on either side of 30° S, accounts for the warm temperate conditions so typical of South Africa, making it a popular destination for foreign tourists.

The country also falls squarely within the subtropical belt of high pressure, making it dry, with an abundance of sunshine.

The wide expanses of ocean on three sides of South Africa have a moderating influence on its climate. More apparent, however, are the effects of the warm Agulhas and the cold Benguela currents along the east and west coasts respectively. While Durban (east coast) and Port Nolloth (west coast) lie more or less on the same latitude, there is a difference of at least 6° C in their mean annual temperatures.

Gale-force winds are frequent on the coasts, especially in the south-western and southern coastal areas.

Rainfall

South Africa has an average annual rainfall of 450 mm, compared with a world average of 860 mm. About 65% of the country receives less than 500 mm per year, which is generally accepted as the minimum amount required for successful dry-land farming.

About 21% of the country, mainly the arid west, receives less than 200 mm per year.

In Cape Town, the capital city of the Western Cape, the average rainfall is highest in the winter months, while in the capital cities of the other eight provinces, the average rainfall is highest during summer.

South Africa's rainfall is unreliable and unpredictable. Large fluctuations in the average annual rainfall are the rule rather than the exception in most areas of the country.

Below-average annual rainfall is more commonly recorded than above-average total annual rainfall. South Africa is periodically afflicted by drastic and prolonged droughts, which often end in severe floods.

Temperatures

Temperature conditions in South Africa are characterised by three main features. Firstly, temperatures tend to be lower than in other regions at similar latitudes, for example, Australia.

This is due primarily to the greater elevation of the subcontinent above sea level.

Secondly, despite a latitudinal span of 13 degrees, average annual temperatures are remarkably uniform throughout the country. Owing to the increase in the height of the plateau towards the north-east, there is hardly any increase in temperature from south to north as might be expected.

The third feature is the striking contrast between temperatures on the east and west coasts. Temperatures above 32° C are fairly common in summer, and frequently exceed 38° C in the lower Orange River Valley and the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Frost, humidity and fog

Frost often occurs on the interior plateau during cold, clear, winter nights, with ice forming on still pools and in water pipes. The frost season (April to October) is longest over the eastern and southern plateau areas bordering on the escarpment. Frost decreases to the north, while the coast is virtually frost-free.

Average annual relative humidity readings show that, in general, the air is driest over the western interior and the plateau. Along the coast, the humidity is much higher, and at times may rise to 85%. Low stratus clouds and fog frequently occur over the cool west coast, particularly during summer. The only other area that commonly experiences fog is the "mist belt" along the eastern foothills of the escarpment.

Sunshine

South Africa is famous for its sunshine. Generally speaking, April and May are the most pleasant months when the rainy season over the summer-rainfall region has ended, and before the rainy season in the winter-rainfall area has begun. At this time of year, the hot summer weather has abated and the winds are lighter than during the rest of the year.

In certain areas, however, notably the hot, humid KwaZulu-Natal coast, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, June and July are the ideal holiday months.

The provinces

South Africa is divided into nine provinces, each with its own legislature, premier and executive councils. The provinces, with their own distinctive landscapes, vegetation and climate, are the Western Cape, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. (See Chapter 20: *Tourism*.)

Western Cape

The Western Cape is situated on the southernmost tip of the African continent. It is a region of majestic mountains; beautiful valleys; wide, sandy beaches; and breathtaking scenery, making it one of South Africa's prime tourist destinations.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the west coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Visitors to the Western Cape can disembark at Cape Town International Airport, George Airport or at the ports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay or Saldanha. A network of roads also leads to Cape Town, fondly known as the "Mother City".

Cape Town houses Parliament and is the country's legislative capital.

Other important towns in the province include Saldanha, a notable harbour for iron exports and the fishing industry; Worcester and Stellenbosch in the heart of the winelands; George, renowned for its indigenous timber and vegetable produce; Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the world-famous Cango caves; and Beaufort West on the dry, sheep-farming plains of the Great Karoo.

The Western Cape boasts one of the world's six accepted floral kingdoms. Although it is the smallest of them all, the Cape Floral Kingdom, which is characterised by fynbos, contains more plant species than the whole of Europe. These include the famous proteas and heathers.

Covering an area of more than 553 000 hectares (ha), the Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprises eight separate protected areas stretching from the Cape Peninsula into the Eastern Cape.

The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden is included in this area, which makes it a world-first for South Africa, since no other world heritage site includes a botanical garden.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests; a fairyland of ancient forest giants, ferns and colourful birdlife. Products of the forests include sought-after furniture made from the indigenous yellowwood, stinkwood and white pear trees.

Tourism

The Western Cape's natural beauty, complemented by its famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The people

More than 5,2 million people live in the Western Cape on 129 370 km^2 of land *(Community Survey, 2007).* Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, with isiXhosa and English being the other main languages.

The province has a strong network of Higher Education (HE) institutions, including the University of Cape Town, Stellenbosch University, the University of the Western Cape and the Cape Peninsula University of Technology. A potpourri of diverse cultural backgrounds gives the province a cosmopolitan ambiance, resulting in a demographic profile quite different from the national pattern.

The profile draws on elements from different parts of Europe, south-east Asia, India and Africa, which are richly reflected in the diversity of the area.

The official unemployment figure for the province is 17% *(Labour Force Survey, March 2008).*

Agriculture and marine fishery

The Western Cape is rich in agriculture and fisheries. The sheltered valleys between the mountains provide ideal conditions for the cultivation of top-grade fruits, such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges. In the eastern part of the Western Cape, a great variety of vegetables is cultivated. The province can be divided into three climatic regions. The area around the Cape Peninsula and the Boland, further inland, is a winter-rainfall region with sunny, dry summers.

Towards George, along the south coast, the climate gradually changes to year-round rainfall, while inland, towards the more arid Great Karoo, the climate changes to summer rainfall.

The Western Cape is known as one of the world's finest grape-growing regions. Many of its wines have received the highest accolades at international shows.

The wheat-growing Swartland district around Malmesbury, and the Overberg around Caledon, form the bread basket of the country.

The inland Karoo region (around Beaufort West), and the Overberg district (around Bredasdorp), produce wool and mutton, and pedigree Merino breeding stock.

Other animal products include broiler chickens, eggs, dairy products, beef and pork. The Western Cape is the only province with an outlet for the export of horses. This earns the country millions of rands in foreign revenue.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:	Afrikaans	55,3%
	isiXhosa	23,7%
	English	19,3%

Population: 5 278 585 (*Community Survey, 2007*)
Area (km^2): 129 370
% of total area: 10,6%

The province has also established itself as the leading facilitator in the export of ostrich meat to Europe. In addition to meat, fine leatherware and ostrich feathers are also exported to destinations all over the world.

The plankton-rich cold Benguela current flows along the west coast of the province, which is considered to be one of the world's richest fishing grounds.

This resource is protected from over-fishing by foreign vessels by means of a 200-km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the most sought-after piscatorial delights from this region.

Industry

The average growth in the Western Cape's gross domestic product (GDP) stands at 5,8%, having averaged over 5 % since 2004.

Between 2004 and 2008, the Western Cape welcomed 270 investment projects to the province, valued at R6,4 billion and creating 61 746 jobs.

The backbone of the Western Cape's economy is small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs). Between 2004 and 2008, the province spent R56 million in financial and mentoring support to assist 38 121 SMMEs (of which 80% are historically disadvantaged).

These, and 4 355 tourism SMMEs and 6 267 entrepreneurs were beneficiaries of support infrastructure programmes.

In 2004, infrastructure-led growth was an idea. By 2008:

- R252,1 million was realised through the careful release of property assets and investing it in health and education infrastructure
- R2,8 billion was invested in improving and extending the province's road infrastructure, realising 104 623 kilometres of road, including the widening of the N2, the Koeberg Interchange
- R184 million was spent on upgrading taxi ranks, public transport routes, paths for bicycles and pedestrians and disability access.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks are based in the Western Cape.

The majority of the country's petroleum companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry are located in Cape Town.

Information and communications technology (ICT) is one of the fastest-growing sectors in the province, and operations are being expanded to other countries. After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector.

The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

Cape Town remains the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montagu Gardens, Parow and Retreat. Along the west coast, the Saldanha Steel Project has led to increased economic activity.

The Western Cape is poised for significant economic investment, including:

- upgrading the airport, in response to the numbers of airlines that come directly to Cape Town from diverse destinations, now bringing 1,7 million foreign visitors a year
- constructing the multibillion Rand Cape Town film studio, Dreamworld
- a R4-million call centre training facility.

Total population by province – *Census 1996, 2001* and *Community Survey, 2007*

Provinces	Census 1996	Census 2001	% change	CS 2007	% change
Eastern Cape	6 147 244	6 278 651	2,1	6 527 747	4,0
Free State	2 633 504	2 706 775	2,8	2 773 059	2,4
Gauteng	7 624 893	9 178 873	20,4	10 451 713	13,9
KwaZulu-Natal	8 572 302	9 584 129	11,8	10 259 230	7,0
Limpopo	4 576 133	4 995 534	9,2	5 238 286	4,9
Mpumalanga	3 124 203	3 365 885	7,7	3 643 435	8,2
Northern Cape	1 011 864	991 919	-2,0	1 058 060	6,7
North West	2 936 554	3 193 676	8,8	3 271 948	2,5
Western Cape	3 956 875	4 524 335	14,3	5 278 585	16,7
South Africa	**40 583 573**	**44 819 778**	**10,4**	**48 502 063**	**8,2**

2010 FIFA World Cup™

South Africa is preparing to host the 2010 World Cup. Government is using the hosting of the 2010 World Cup to fast-track the growth and development of the country. The investment in 2010 will benefit South Africans long after the tournament.

Cape Town's preparations are well on track. These include:

- dedicated bus and taxi lanes from the R300 into Cape Town along the N2
- expanding the Cape Town International Airport through a R2-billion expansion investment
- the rail connection between the upgraded airport and the Cape Town Central Station, whose construction is scheduled to commence early in 2009 and which represents a R1-billion investment in the Western Cape
- upgrading the Cape Town Central Station
- doubling the capacity of the Cape Town Convention Centre
- building at least six new hotels in the Western Cape by 2010
- building the Green Point Stadium, which will be completed by December 2009
- completing phase one of the Koeberg Interchange
- the N2 Corridor, scheduled to continue to expand its provision of public-transport priority lanes.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, a land of undulating hills, expansive sandy beaches, majestic mountain ranges and emerald green forests, is the second-largest of the nine provinces in terms of surface area.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

The Eastern Cape's main feature is its spectacular coastline lapped by the Indian Ocean. With its long stretches of pristine sandy beaches, rocky coves, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the coastline provides the province with an unsurpassed natural tourist attraction.

The graceful curve of Algoa Bay provides an ideal setting for the port of Port Elizabeth. East London offers equally favourable harbour facilities. The province is serviced by three airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London and Mthatha.

The architecture of many of its cities and towns reflects the rich heritage of its people.

Important towns in the province include Bhisho, the capital; Uitenhage, which has important motor vehicle-manufacturing and related industries; King William's Town, rich in early settler and military history; Grahamstown, also known as the "City of Saints" because of its more than 40 churches; Graaff-Reinet, with its interesting collection of historic buildings; Cradock, the hub of the Central Karoo; Stutterheim, the forestry centre of the province; Aliwal North, famous for its hot sulphur springs; and Port St Johns, the largest town on the Wild Coast.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.

This makes for an interesting forest habitat of various species endemic to this region.

Age-old forests occur at Keiskammahoek, Dwesa, Port St Johns and Bathurst; dune forests are found at Alexandria; and mangroves along the Wild Coast.

Rolling grasslands dominate the eastern interior of the province, while the western central plateau is savanna bushveld. The northern inland is home to the aromatic, succulent-rich Karoo.

The people

The Eastern Cape has almost seven million people living on 169 580 km^2 of land. The majority of the people speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

The province has a number of HE institutions, including the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology. Primary education is nearly universal, with only 2,6% of children not attending primary school. Some 84% of adults are functionally literate and 96% of youths are literate.

The infant mortality rate has decreased consistently from 4,2% in 2003/04 to 3,32% in 2006/07.

According to the *Labour Force Survey*, released in March 2008, the official unemployment figure is 23,1%.

Agriculture, fishing and forestry

The Eastern Cape has excellent agricultural and forestry potential. The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while the Karoo interior is an important sheep-farming area. Angora wool is also produced here.

Working closely with local municipalities, communities and key stakeholders, the special-purpose vehicle, AsgiSA (Eastern Cape) Pty Limited will play a facilitative role in unlocking investment opportunities estimated at more than R4,2 billion through rural development zones. These programmes include forestry development and timber processing, intensive agriculture and agroprocessing.

The development of alternative and local vegetable marketing and processing facilities through an agri-park concept ensures that excess household production is appropriately channelled to benefit producers.

The agri-park initiative has been developed in co-operation with the University of Fort Hare. The first satellite agri-park is being initiated at Dutywa.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa. People in the former Transkei region are dependent on the farming of cattle, maize and sorghum.

An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

Extensive exotic forestry plantations in the high rainfall areas of Keiskammahoek provide employment for large numbers of the population. The province is a summer-rainfall region with high rainfall along the coast, becoming gradually drier behind the mountain ranges into the Great Karoo.

The Eastern Cape Provincial Government plans to develop the province's forestry and timber industry by creating up to 100 000 ha of plantations over the next 10 years.

The Eastern Cape has been selected as the national pilot for the implementation of biofuels, through the mass planting of canola. This project has the potential to create 21 600 direct and indirect job opportunities.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources and access to line-catches of hake.

Ostrich exports are flourishing and the provincial Department of Agriculture has been hailed for the support it is giving this industry. Each ostrich-export establishment has a resident official veterinarian, which is a requirement for exporting ostrich products to the European Union.

The game industry is enjoying unprecedented demand in the international market due to health-conscious consumers increasingly demanding lean organic game meat.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:	isiXhosa	83,4%
	Afrikaans	9,3%
	English	3,6%

Population: 6 527 747 (*Community Survey, 2007*)

Area (km²): 169 580

Industry

The Mzimvubu Project is key to turning around the economy of the region to establish a modern agro-industrial economy centred around Mthatha, in the same way that the industrial development zones (IDZs) of Coega and East London are clustering industrial development in those areas.

The Provincial Industrial Strategy, launched in May 2008, outlines broad government efforts that are necessary to transform the structure and distribution of industrial activity in the Eastern Cape to meet particular economic, social and political objectives. These objectives include job creation (and job retention), increased and sustained growth, income distribution, spatial distribution of economic activity, deracialising ownership of the economy and promoting social forms of ownership.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important industry being motor manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's automotive industry.

Several of the world's biggest motor manufacturers, such as Volkswagen, Ford (Samcor), General Motors (Delta) and DaimlerChrysler, have plants in the Eastern Cape.

With two harbours and three airports offering direct flights to the main centres, and an excellent road and rail infrastructure, the province has been earmarked as a key area for growth and economic development. Environmentally friendly projects include the Fish River Spatial Development Initiative (SDI), the Wild Coast SDI, and the West Bank (East London) and Coega IDZs. The latter, 20 km east of the Port Elizabeth-Uitenhage metropoles, was the first IDZ to be earmarked, and is one of the biggest initiatives ever undertaken in South Africa. Plans for the development of the area as an export-orientated zone include the building of the port of Ngqura. The railway from Mthatha to East London was refurbished and the process of finding an operator for the line initiated.

The Eastern Cape is becoming more accessible as the Provincial 2010 Public Transport Plan, which links air, road, rail, maritime, taxi and bus operations, is being implemented.

In 2008/09, substantial resources were being invested in the road network. This included R1,5 billion for building new roads, rebuilding existing roads and maintenance.

The extension of the N2 from Kei Mouth to Port St Johns – the Wild Coast meander – will unlock the tourism potential of the scenic coastline. In addition, the 248-km road will also facilitate agricultural and economic productivity, and access to government services at schools, clinics and police stations.

Some R363 million has been allocated for Expanded Public Works Programme projects in road construction, providing job opportunities for 6 000 people.

The R78-million upgrade of the Bhisho Airport was completed in 2008 and Mthatha Airport is being upgraded at a cost of R60 million.

2010 World Cup

In King Sabata Dalindyebo Municipality, the final design for a new 15 000-seater stadium had been approved and R100 million has been allocated for the construction of this facility.

In Buffalo City, two stadiums – Absa Stadium, which seats 10 000 and Bhisho Stadium with 20 000 seats – are being refurbished. The city has been identified as a basecamp city for training prior to and during the 2010 World Cup.

The provincial Department of Sports, Recreation, Arts and Culture has partnered with the Educational Institute for Service Studies in Port Alfred, to upscale the capacity of bed-and-breakfast owners.

Parallel to the football spectacular, there will be an arts and culture programme. A crafters' database was being compiled, together with three additional crafter-hubs in Dimbaza, Dispatch and Flagstaff. Fan parks – public viewing areas with large-screen TVs, entertainment and food and beverage stands – will be established for the tournament.

KwaZulu-Natal

Aptly called South Africa's "Garden Province", KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province also boasts sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors to KwaZulu-Natal can either disembark at Durban International Airport, which handles more than 2,5 million passengers a year, or at Durban harbour. Alternatively, they can make use of the extensive national road network.

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the major tourist destinations in South Africa.

Durban is one of the fastest-growing urban areas in the world. Its port is the busiest in South Africa and one of the 10 largest in the world. The port of Richards Bay handles over 1 000 containers per month. Combined, these two ports handle about 78% of South Africa's cargo tonnage.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Richards Bay is an important coal-export harbour. The province has several popular coastal holiday resorts, such as Port Shepstone, Umhlanga Rocks and Margate. In the interior, Newcastle is well known for steel production and coal mining, Estcourt for meat processing, and Ladysmith and Richmond for mixed agriculture.

The KwaZulu-Natal coastal belt yields sugar cane, wood, oranges, bananas, mangoes and other tropical fruit.

The province is also well known for its active conservation activities. There are several reserves in the province such as the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Some of South Africa's best-protected indigenous coastal forests are found along the subtropical coastline of KwaZulu-Natal; for example, at Dukuduku and Kosi Bay. It is also along this coast that the magnificent St Lucia Estuary and Kosi Bay lakes are located. In 1999, the Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park was declared a world heritage site. It has since been renamed iSimangaliso Wetland Park. Separating KwaZulu-Natal from Lesotho, the Drakensberg runs 200 km along the western boundary of the province.

The northern part of the province, south of the Swaziland border, is typical African savanna, providing a natural backdrop for its rich wildlife, which is protected in several game parks.

The people

KwaZulu-Natal has more than 10 million people living on 92 100 km^2 of land *(Community Survey, 2007)*. The principal language spoken is isiZulu, followed by English and Afrikaans. Remnants of British colonialism, together with Zulu, Indian and Afrikaans traditions, make for an interesting cultural mix in the province.

The province boasts several universities, universities of technology and other educational institutions, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

Agriculture and industry

KwaZulu-Natal ranks second as a major contributor to the economy, accounting for 16,7% of South Africa's GDP.

The KwaZulu-Natal Government has embarked on a strategy to attract investors to the province. A project involving a developer from the United Arab Emirates comprises a multibillion-rand investment on the northern side of uThukela River in the Macambini area. The project will be implemented in phases and will create thousands of permanent jobs. This will be the fifth project of its kind in the world based on the concept of a "city within a city".

The project will be a fully integrated tourist destination located on about 7 500 ha. It will comprise a variety of market-segmented residential communities, entertainment attractions, hospitality, education, healthcare, leisure, retail and commercial offerings.

Richards Bay is the centre of operations for South Africa's aluminium industry. The Richards Bay Coal Terminal is instrumental in securing the country's position as the second-largest exporter of steam coal in the world. Richards Bay Minerals is the largest sand-mining and mineral-processing operation in the world.

The motor vehicle-manufacturing industry has created a considerable multiplier effect in component- and service-providers. In recent times, the province has undergone rapid industrialisation owing to its abundant water supply and labour resources. Industries are found at Newcastle, Ladysmith, Dundee, Richards Bay, Durban, Hammarsdale, Richmond, Pietermaritzburg and Mandeni.

The sugar-cane plantations along the Indian Ocean coastal belt form the mainstay of the economy and agriculture of the region. The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetable, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions of this province are hot and humid with a subtropical climate. The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands between the coastal strip and the southern Drakensberg Escarpment are drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

The KwaZulu-Natal Growth Fund provides medium- to long-term funding for sustainable infrastructure and related projects in the province. The fund's Investment Committee has approved projects with an estimated value of R414 million spread across key economic sectors such as manufacturing, transportation and logistics and agriprocessing.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:	isiZulu	80,9%
	English	13,6%
	Afrikaans	1,5%

Population: 10 259 230 (*Community Survey, 2007*)
Area (km^2): 92 100

2010 World Cup

On 25 November 2007, the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Preliminary Draw took place in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

The province hosted representatives from 204 of the 208 soccer-playing nations of the world as well as a contingent of international media – the largest FIFA representation ever.

One of the distinctive features of the Moses Mabhida Stadium under construction in Durban, is the multimedia centre, which will tell the story of the people of KwaZulu-Natal. This multimedia centre will offer information about KwaZulu-Natal's economic and cultural activities.

The 2007/08 financial year saw major development initiatives, beginning with the Dube Trade Port and King Shaka International Airport, an investment of R6,8 billion and the soccer stadium of R2,6 billion. The plans for the multimedia interpretation centre at uMgungundlovu, Palace of King Dingane, have been completed.

The KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government is upgrading stadiums and building multipurpose sports facilities to allow some of its communities to host teams during the 2010 tournament.

The selected municipalities for the projects include uMgungundlovu, Amajuba, Ugu and Uthungulu.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. The landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of haphazard rock piles. The cold Atlantic Ocean forms the western boundary.

This region covers the largest area of all the provinces and has the smallest population. Its major airports are situated at Kimberley, the capital, and at Upington. The Northern Cape has an excellent road network, which makes its interior easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Important towns are Upington, centre of the karakul sheep and dried-fruit industries, and the most northerly wine-making region of South Africa; Springbok, in the heart of the Namaqualand spring-flower country; Kuruman, founded by the Scottish missionary Robert Moffat; and De Aar, second most important junction of South Africa's railway network. Sutherland is host to the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

South Africa has been shortlisted as one of two countries to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), a giant next-generation radio telescope being developed by scientists from 17 countries. The proposed SKA will be located in the Northern Cape. Other important Northern Cape towns include the sheep-farming towns of Carnarvon, Colesberg, Kenhardt and Prieska, which are renowned for their semi-precious stones and variety of succulents.

Apart from a narrow strip of winter-rainfall area along the coast, the Northern Cape is a semi-arid region with little rainfall in summer. The weather conditions are extreme – cold and frosty in winter, with extremely high temperatures in summer.

The largest part of the province falls within the Nama-Karoo Biome, with a vegetation of low shrubland and grass, and trees limited to water courses. The area is known for its spectacular display of spring flowers that attracts thousands of tourists every year.

This biome is home to many wonderful plant species, such as the elephant's trunk (halfmens), tree aloe (kokerboom) and a variety of succulents.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas. The Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, together with the Gemsbok National Park in Botswana, is Africa's first transfrontier game park, known as the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is one of the largest nature-conservation areas in southern Africa and one of the largest remaining protected natural ecosystems in the world. The park provides unfenced access to a variety of game between South Africa and Botswana.

The Ai-Ais-Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park spans some of the most spectacular scenery of the arid and desert environments in southern Africa. Bisected by the Orange River, which forms the border between South Africa and Namibia, it comprises the Ai-Ais Hot Springs Game Park in Namibia and the Richtersveld National Park in South Africa. Some of the distinctive features in the area include the Fish River Canyon (often likened to the Grand Canyon in the United States of America) and the Ai-Ais hot springs. This arid zone is further characterised by a unique and impressive variety of succulent plant species.

Nowhere is the Orange River more impressive than at the Augrabies Falls, which ranks among the world's greatest cataracts on a major river. The Augrabies Falls National Park was established to preserve this natural wonder.

The people

The Northern Cape is sparsely populated and houses more than one million people on 361 830 km^2 of land (*Community Survey, 2007*). About 68% of the population speak Afrikaans. Other languages spoken are Setswana, isiXhosa and English. The official unemployment rate of the Northern Cape is 25,7% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2008*). The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area of the Northern Cape. The area, especially along the Orange and Vaal rivers, is rich in San rock engravings. A good collection can be seen at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The province is also rich in fossils. According to the results of the *2007 Community Survey* conducted by Statistics South Africa:

- the number of households having access to piped water in the Northern Cape has increased to 94,8%
- 87,3% of households have access to electricity
- 73,2% of households have access to waterborne sanitation.

Agriculture and industry

The Northern Cape is enjoying tremendous growth in value-added activities, including game farming. Food production and processing for the local and export market is also growing significantly.

Underpinning the growth and development plan of the province are the investment projects that link up with the existing plans of the Namaqua Development Corridor, where the focus is on the beneficiation and export of sea products. The economy of a large part of the Northern Cape, the interior Karoo, depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district of Upington. The province has fertile agricultural land. In the Orange River Valley, especially at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes, grapes and fruit are cultivated intensively. Wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton are produced at the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton.

The Integrated Provincial SMME Strategy will allow the province to implement effective second-economy interventions to address poverty, underdevelopment and marginalisation. Small Enterprise Development Agency offices have been established in all five districts to offer non-financial support, business advice and business counselling to SMMEs. Between 2006 and 2008, 3 572 SMMEs were assisted.

The Northern Cape has identified business process outsourcing and offshoring as one of the projects capable of providing a considerable number of job opportunities through the establishment of call centres. The first-ever call centre in Ga-Segonyana in the Northern Cape was launched in February 2008. The Finnish Government has committed itself to assist the province with the development of the Northern Cape Information Society Strategy and Development Plan through the Provincial Information Society Programme.

It seeks to create, use and share information and knowledge to empower communities and individuals to achieve their full potential, promote sustainable development and improving the quality of life.

Since 2004, the Provincial Government has spent in excess of R1,6 billion on infrastructure projects.

Agriculture is still one of the mainstay sectors of the Northern Cape's economy and is therefore critical in the overall economic planning. In this regard, agricultural development programmes like the Farmer Support and Development Programme and the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme were expected to be strengthened by improved funding of R53 million in 2008.

Tourism

The province has tabled a Tourism Bill to further strengthen the tourism industry and prepare the province for the 2010 World Cup and beyond. The tourism industry has the potential to contribute significantly to the region's GDP, hence the Provincial Government's investment of R18 million in 15 tourism information offices, upgrades and promotion projects.

Mining

Kimberley, the capital of the Northern Cape, is often referred to as the "Diamond Capital of the World".

The Northern Cape is rich in minerals. The country's chief diamond pipes are found in the Kimberley district. In 1888, the diamond industry was formally established with the creation of De Beers Consolidated Mines. Alluvial diamonds are also extracted from the beaches and the sea between Alexander Bay and Port Nolloth. The Sishen Mine near Kathu is the biggest source of iron ore in South Africa, while the copper mine at Okiep is one of the oldest mines in the country. Copper is also mined at Springbok and Aggeneys. The province is rich in asbestos, manganese, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

Until recently, the majority of small- to medium-scale alluvial operations were concentrated along or near the Vaal River system. With the deposits available for mining declining rapidly, there has been a gradual shift towards the Orange River system.

Two recent larger-scale investments also show continued prospects in this sector.

As part of the implementation of the economic development initiatives, the province established the Diamond, Gemstone and Jewellery Hub that will host the State Diamond Trader.

The Gold Chain Technology Project, focusing on the production of gold and silver chains for the export market, was launched in 2008. The total investment amounts to R82 million.

The Provincial Government and private investors are to open a gold jewellery-manufacturing facility worth R100 million in Kimberley, in an effort to ensure that more value is added to precious metals locally, with finished products destined for export markets.

2010 World Cup

As the 2010 World Cup aproaches, co-operation between the public and private sectors as seen and

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:	Afrikaans	68%
	Setswana	20,8%

Population: 1 058 060 (*Community Survey, 2007*)

Area (km²): 361 830

demonstrated in some key infrastructure projects, will ensure that the Northern Cape and its cities and towns are placed in a position to optimise the benefits of this event.

The province is developing the Northern Cape Sports Academy, with the multipurpose sports complex to be constructed being a central element of its strategy.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, has a well-established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure, and houses the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The city, also referred to as the "City of Roses", is home to some of the province's many tertiary educational institutions, including the University of the Free State and the Central University of Technology.

Important towns include Welkom, the heart of the goldfields and one of the few completely preplanned cities in the world; Odendaalsrus, another gold-mining town; Sasolburg, which owes its existence to the petrol-from-coal installation established there; Kroonstad, an important agricultural, administrative and educational centre; Parys, on the banks of the Vaal River; Phuthaditjhaba, well known for the beautiful handcrafted items produced by the local people; and Bethlehem, gateway to the Eastern Highlands of the Free State.

Nestled in the rolling foothills of the Maluti mountains in the north-eastern Free State, the Golden Gate Highlands National Park is the province's prime tourist attraction. The park derives its name from the brilliant shades of gold cast by the sun on the spectacular sandstone cliffs, especially the imposing Brandwag rock, which keeps vigil over the park. The N1, which is the artery between Gauteng and the Western and Eastern Cape, passes through the middle of the Free State. The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly called Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The people

The Free State houses more than 2,7 million people on about 129 480 km^2 of land (*Community Survey, 2007*). The main languages spoken are Sesotho and Afrikaans. According to the *Labour Force Survey* released in March 2008, the official unemployment rate is 24,3%.

Many of the towns display a cultural mix that is clearly evident in street names, public buildings, monuments and museums. Dressed-sandstone buildings abound on the Eastern Highlands, while beautifully decorated Sotho houses dot the grasslands. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art is found in the Free State. The districts of Bethlehem, Ficksburg, Ladybrand and Wepener have remarkable collections of this art form.

Agriculture

This summer-rainfall region can be extremely cold during the winter months, especially towards the eastern mountainous regions. The western and southern areas are semi-desert.

Known as the "Granary of the Country", the Free State has cultivated land covering 3,2 million ha, while natural veld and grazing cover 8,7 million ha. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Ninety percent of the country's cherry crop is produced in the Ficksburg district, while the two largest asparagus-canning factories are also situated in this district.

Soya, sorghum, sunflowers and wheat are cultivated, especially in the eastern Free State, where farmers specialise in seed production. About 40% of the country's potato yield comes from the high-lying areas of the Free State.

The province produces about 100 000 t of vegetables and 40 000 t of fruit each year.

The main vegetable crop is asparagus, both white and green varieties. The industry is expanding and becoming increasingly export-orientated.

In terms of floriculture, the Free State has an advantage due to the opposing seasons of the southern and northern hemispheres. The province exports some 1,2 million t of cut flowers per year.

The development of agriculture as a sustainable economic contributor, especially regarding emerging and small farmers, is one of the high-impact projects which are currently underway.

Mining

The mining industry is the major employer in the Free State. Investment opportunities are substantial in productivity-improvement areas for mining and related products and services. South Africa is the world's largest producer of gold. A gold reef of over 400 km long, known as Lejweleputswa (formerly known as the "Goldfields"), stretches across Gauteng and the Free State; the largest gold-mining complex being Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with a mining area of 32 918 ha.

Some 82% of the region's mineral production value is derived from this activity, primarily in the goldfields region, which comprises the districts of Odendaalsrus, Virginia and Welkom.

Twelve gold mines operate in the province. Roughly 30% of South Africa's gold is obtained from this region, and the province lies in fifth position as a global producer.

Harmony Gold Refinery and Rand Refinery are the only two gold refineries in South Africa.

Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country, while considerable concentrations of uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields are extracted as a by-product.

Bituminous coal is mined in the province and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg. Diamonds from this region, extracted from kimberlite pipes and fissures, are of a high quality.

The largest deposit of bentonite in the country occurs in the Koppies district.

The Free State Provincial Government has approved the establishment of two biofuel plants in Bothaville and Hoopstad.

Manufacturing and industry

Since 1989, the Free State economy has changed from being dependent on the primary sector to being a manufacturing, export-orientated economy. The Free State GDPR amounted to about R75 827 million in 2004, representing a 5,5% contribution to the South African economy.

By 2008, the province had completed the first phase of the Harrismith Logistics Hub, which when completed, will become the multinodal freight logistical base in the Free State. The second phase of the project will commence in 2009 and will entail the mobilisation of stakeholders and participants such as freight companies. The Provincial Government has set aside R2 million for the initial stages of the second phase.

Some 14% of the province's manufacturing is classified as being in high-technology industries, which is the highest percentage of all the provincial economies.

An important manufacturing industry in the province can be found in the northern Free State, which is one of the most important chemical hubs in the southern hemisphere. The province has competitive advantages in the production of certain fuels, waxes, chemicals and low-cost feedstock from coal. The growth in high-tech industries is significant in the context of the changing contribution of the gold-mining industry to gross geographic product. The province's development strategy centres on competitiveness, empowerment, capacity-building and beneficiation.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein		
Principal languages:	Sesotho	64,4%
	Afrikaans	11,9%
	isiXhosa	9,1%
Population: 2 773 059 (*Community Survey, 2007*)		
Area (km²): 129 480		

2010 World Cup

Free State Stadium in Bloemfontein will host five first-round marches and one second-round match during the World Cup. It has 48 000 seats.

The province was expected to embark on the following projects from 2007:

- developing the N8 Road-Development Corridor
- rehabilitating and reviving the rail network from Thaba Nchu to Bloemfontein
- constructing an international convention centre, which will be linked to other 2010 initiatives such as the revamping of the Bloemfontein Airport, Macufe and the intermodal transport facility.

By February 2008, all the major master plans regarding transport, ICT, and safety and security had been finalised. Co-operation with Lesotho and the Northern Cape will extend the economic benefits of the event far beyond the borders of the Free State.

North West

North West, also known as the "Platinum Province", is centrally located on the subcontinent with direct road and rail links to all southern African countries, and with its own airport near the capital city, Mafikeng. The province borders Botswana and is fringed by the Kalahari Desert in the west and the Witwatersrand area in the east. North West is divided into the Central, Bophirima (towards the west), Southern, Rustenburg and Eastern regions.

Most economic activity is concentrated in the Southern Region (between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp), Rustenburg, and the Eastern Region, where more than 83,3% of gross domestic product per region (GDPR) of the province is generated.

The province offers several tourist attractions, including the internationally renowned Sun City, the popular Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve and the Rustenburg Nature Reserve.

The GDP in constant 2000 prices grew from R58 billion in 1996 to more than R72 billion in 2006. Since the launching of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy in 2004, the economic growth per year consistently outperformed the annual population growth of the province, registering growth rates of 3,6%, 4,9% and 4,3%, in 2004, 2005 and 2006, respectively.

According to the *Labour Force Survey* released in March 2008, the official unemployment rate in the province was 24%.

The people

Of the 3,6 million people living in the North West, 65% live in the rural areas *(Community Survey, 2007). The Community Survey* indicates in terms of access to basic services that:

- 90% of households have access to piped water
- 82,3 % use electricity as a source of domestic power
- 57,1% of people have access to refuse removal
- 90,1% have access to sanitation above Reconstruction and Development Programme standards.

Mining

Diamonds are mined at Lichtenburg, Koster, Christiana and Bloemhof, while Orkney and Klerksdorp have gold mines. The area surrounding Rustenburg and Brits boasts the largest single platinum-production area in the world. Marble is also mined here. Fluorspar is exploited at Zeerust.

Projects in the province include the following:

- One of the programmes of the Mafikeng Industrial Development Initiative is the establishment of the Mining Supply and Industrial Park that will result in the creation of a mining goods- and -service warehouse and delivery park for the convenience and benefit of most mining companies around Rustenburg.
- By early 2008, the Platinum Beneficiation Project was in its implementation stage. A trust was established and a company registered to beneficiate platinum into jewellery products. A further agreement between the province and Canada will also be finalised to complete a platinum theme park. The Business Incubation Centre, which is located at Orbit College, is up and running.
- The Granite Project is located in Bethanie and was allocated R40 million in this Medium Term Expenditure Framework period.

Manufacturing

Manufacturing contributes 7% to the province's GDP and 9% of its employment opportunities. It provides 2,6% of the South African manufacturing sector's contribution to GDP.

Manufacturing is almost exclusively dependent on the performance of a few sectors in which the province enjoys a competitive advantage. These are fabricated metals (51%), the food sector (18%) and non-metallic metals (21%) (*Provincial Economies, 2003*). Industrial activity is centred in the towns of Brits, Klerksdorp, Vryburg and Rustenburg.

The Brits industries concentrate mostly on manufacturing and construction, while those at Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry, and those at Vryburg and Rustenburg towards agriculture.

The Platinum SDI, situated on the Coast-to-Coast highway that links the port of Maputo in Mozambique to Walvis Bay in Namibia is expected to unlock further development. About 200 potential project opportunities in tourism, manufacturing, agriculture and mining have been identified.

Agriculture

Agriculture is of extreme importance to the North West. It contributes about 2,6% to the total GDPR and 19% to formal employment.

Some 5,9% of the South African GDP in agriculture and 16,96% of total labour in agriculture are based in the North West *(Provincial Economies, 2004).* The province is an important food basket in South Africa. Maize and sunflowers are the most important crops, and the North West is the major producer of white maize in the country.

North West

Capital: Mafikeng

Principal languages:	Setswana	65,4%
	Afrikaans	7,5%
	isiXhosa	5,8%

Population: 3 271 948 (*Community Survey, 2007*)

Area (km²): 116 320

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the "Texas of South Africa". Marico is also cattle country. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crop farming land.

2010 World Cup

Rustenburg is the official hosting city in the North West, with the Royal Bafokeng Stadium in Rustenburg being the official match venue.

The stadium will also be used for the Confederations Cup in June 2009. By January 2009, all major refurbishments to the stadium had been completed.

Preparations in the province include:

- road infrastructure that will link Rustenburg and its environs to the Royal Bafokeng Stadium
- capacity-building in respect of volunteers and other service-providers
- greening and beautification of the host city
- upgrading and enhancing the host city's health facilities
- an improved network of transport facilities
- upliftment of the economy through skills development, the craft industry and the performing arts
- enhancing the local municipalities' emergency and disaster management services.

Gauteng

Although it is the smallest of the nine provinces, Gauteng is the powerhouse of South Africa and the heart of its commercial business and industrial sectors.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. Mine-dumps and headgear stand proud as symbols of its rich past, while modern architecture rubs shoulders with examples of 19th-century engineering prowess.

Gleaming skyscrapers contrast with Indian bazaars and African muti (medicine) shops, where traditional healers dispense advice and traditional medicine.

Gauteng continues to strengthen its position as the economic engine of the country and the continent.

The *2007 Community Survey,* conducted by Statistics South Africa, shows that the percentage of informal settlements in the province has dropped to 22,6%. The percentage of households using electricity remains the highest in the country at 83,5%. The percentage of households with piped water stands at 97,9%. Gauteng has the highest population in the country, at 10 451 713 people. One in four households in the country stays in the province.

The three most important sectors contributing to GDPR are finance, real estate and business services; manufacturing; and general government services.

Sustained growth has led to a steady reduction in unemployment. According to the *Labour Force Survey*, March 2008, unemployment in Gauteng declined from 30,4% in September 2001 to 19,5% in September 2007.

Gauteng is also the financial-services capital of Africa. More than 70 foreign banks have their head offices here, as do at least the same number of South African banks, stockbrokers and insurance giants. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix that is flavoured by many foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

South of Johannesburg is Soweto, developed as a township for black people under the apartheid system. Most of the struggle against apartheid was fought in and from Soweto, which is estimated to be inhabited by over two million people. Soweto is a city of enterprise and cultural interaction.

It is also a popular tourist destination, with sites such as Kliptown, where the Freedom Charter was drawn up; the home of former President Nelson Mandela; the Hector Petersen Memorial site; and restaurants and shopping malls. It boasts one of the largest public hospitals on the continent, the Chris Hani-Baragwanath Hospital.

The 65 000 m^2 Maponya Mail attracts on average 1,5 million people a month. Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, dominated by government services and the diplomatic corps of foreign representatives in the country.

Pretoria is the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings. Pretoria, also known as the "Jacaranda City", is renowned for its colourful gardens, shrubs and trees, particularly beautiful in spring when some 50 000 flowering jacaranda trees envelop the avenues in mauve.

The city developed at a more sedate pace than Johannesburg, and town planners had the foresight to include an abundance of open space. Pretoria has more than 100 parks, including bird sanctuaries and nature reserves.

An air of history pervades much of central Pretoria, especially Church Square, around which the city has grown. Many buildings of historical and architectural importance have been retained or restored to their former splendour.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and GaRankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, known for its diamonds, lies to the east. Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand, and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand.

Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit to the east are of agricultural importance.

Although the province is highly urbanised and industrialised, it contains wetlands of international importance, such as Blesbokspruit near Springs.

The people

Gauteng is the most densely populated province in South Africa. It houses more than 10 million of the country's people (*Community Survey, 2007*). The level of urbanisation is 97%.

The province houses some of the most important educational and health centres in the country. Pretoria boasts the largest residential university in South Africa, the University of Pretoria, and what is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world, Unisa.

In addition, Gauteng is home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the Agricultural Research Council, Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council. More than 60% of South Africa's research and development (R&D) takes place in Gauteng.

Johannesburg has two residential universities, namely the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg. There are also several teacher-training colleges, technical colleges and universities of technology in the province.

Manufacturing

The manufacturing sector in Gauteng includes more than 9 300 firms, employing more than 600 000 people. Industries that have contributed significantly to this output are basic iron and steel; fabricated and metal products; food; machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies; vehicle parts and accessories; and chemical products.

In 2008, the Ford Motor Company announced a R1,5-billion investment in South Africa. Part of the investment will go towards the expansion of the production capacity of its motor assembly plant in Tshwane.

The Automotive Supplier Park in Tshwane will be expanded to accommodate the growing demand from a range of new motor manufacturers. The logistics centre will be extended and the Gauteng Provincial Government will explore the creation of supplier parks related to the heavy vehicle industry for export purposes.

A total of 4 404 direct jobs were created in the Automotive Supplier Park between 2002 and 2007, with 70% of them being for people from historically disadvantaged backgrounds. A further 2 000 employment opportunities were created in the support functions to the component suppliers.

Other initiatives undertaken to boost growth and job creation include the acceleration of work to establish a jewellery-manufacturing precinct at the OR Tambo International Airport and a plan to revive and increase the capacity of the Ekandustria Industrial Park in Metsweding.

Technology

A large number of institutions engaged in R&D and innovation choose Gauteng as their preferred site of operation. In 2008, the Innovation Hub in Pretoria was expected to be expanded to accommodate 40 high-tech SMME companies. In 2008, there were 68 companies in the hub's Incubation Programme, employing a total of 850 people.

The collaboration between Gauteng and the Department of Science and Technology has resulted in the province being included as part of the key programmes under the Co-operation Framework on Innovation Systems between Finland and South Africa (Cofisa). The 30-month Cofisa programme will focus on the capacity development of key stakeholders and knowledge transfer between the first and second economies.

Tourism

Tourist arrivals to the province continue to grow, creating jobs and other economic opportunities for the people. One in every two foreign visitors in

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:		
	isiZulu	21,5%
	Afrikaans	14,4%
	Sesotho	13,1%
	English	12,5%

Population: 10 451 713 (*Community Survey, 2007*)

Area (km²): 17 010

South Africa visits Gauteng, making the province the country's highest earner of tourism income.

Agriculture and industry

Gauteng's agricultural sector is geared to provide the cities and towns of the province with daily fresh produce, including dairy products, vegetables, fruit, meat, eggs and flowers.

A large area of the province falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The districts of Bronkhorstspruit, Cullinan and Heidelberg hold important agricultural land, where groundnuts, sunflowers, cotton and sorghum are produced.

This summer-rainfall area has hot summers and cold winters with frost. Hail is common during the summer thunderstorms.

Gauteng is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub-regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria.

The Vaal Triangle has a strong manufacturing sector; the West Rand concentrates on primary mining; and the Central Witwatersrand is dominated by the manufacturing and finance sectors, with mining capital playing a major role.

All sectors rely heavily on the Vaal Dam (on the Vaal River), from where water is piped across the province.

Most steel in South Africa is produced and consumed in Gauteng. South Africa is also one of the top-10 primary producers of aluminium in the world. The value of this industry in Gauteng is worth about US$20 million. Johannesburg houses the JSE Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

2010 World Cup

Soccer City, near Soweto, Johannesburg, will host the final match of the 2010 World Cup. It will accommodate 94 700 soccer fans. Ellis Park in Johannesburg, the venue of the 1995 Rugby World Cup final, will undergo a major renovation before the 2010 World Cup. It will have 61 000 seats.

Loftus Versfeld Stadium (50 000 seats) in Pretoria will also host 2010 World Cup games. Some R40 million was set aside in 2007/08 for the rehabilitation of the R21 highway to improve connectivity between Pretoria and the OR Tambo International Airport.

The province has won the right to host SoccerEx, the largest football business exhibition in the world, over the next three years. It provides an international platform to showcase the province's readiness to host the 2010 World Cup.

The opening and closing ceremonies as well as a number of group matches will be hosted in the province.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means "Place where the Sun Rises". Because of the province's spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, it is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

With a surface area of only 79 490 km^2, the second-smallest province after Gauteng, it has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld, which roll eastwards for hundreds of kilometres. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks and terminates in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Nelspruit is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Witbank is the centre of the local coal-mining industry; Standerton, in the south, is renowned for its large dairy industry; and Piet Retief in the south-east is a production area for tropical fruit and sugar.

A large sugar industry is also found at Malelane in the east; Ermelo is the district in South Africa that produces the most wool; Barberton is one of the oldest gold-mining towns in South Africa; and Sabie is situated in the forestry heartland of the country.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng and Maputo in Mozambique, heralds a new era in terms of economic development and growth for the region.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:	siSwati	30,8%
	isiZulu	26,4%
	isiNdebele	12,1%

Population: 3 508 000 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km^2): 79 490

As the first international toll road in Africa, the Maputo Corridor is attracting investment and releasing the local economic potential of the landlocked parts of the country. The best-performing sectors in the province include mining, manufacturing and services. Tourism and agriprocessing are potential growth sectors in the province.

Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

Long stretches of undulating grasslands change abruptly into thickly forested ravines and thundering waterfalls of the escarpment, only to change again into the subtropical wildlife splendour of the Lowveld. Sabie and Graskop provide a large part of the country's total forestry products. These forestry plantations are an ideal backdrop for ecotourism opportunities, with a variety of popular hiking trails, a myriad waterfalls, patches of indigenous forest and many nature reserves.

Lake Chrissie is the largest natural freshwater lake in South Africa and is famous for its variety of aquatic birds, especially flamingos.

The people

Even though it is one of the smaller provinces, Mpumalanga has a population of more than 3,6 million people (*Community Survey, 2007*).

Mpumalanga's official unemployment rate is 22,9% *(Labour Force Survey, March 2008)*.

In Mpumalanga, 82% of households have access to electricity for lighting, 77% of households live in formal dwellings, 66% of households have access to a refrigerator, 78% of households have access to a cellphone and 41% of households have access to sanitary facilities.

Agriculture and forestry

The province is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters, and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate.

The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruits – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, pawpaws, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here. Nelspruit is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's export in oranges. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated here.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus fruit, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also produced in this region.

To facilitate the growth of the agricultural sector, the province will increase the cultivation and processing of soya beans into biofuels. During 2007, soil analysis was done to identify suitable soil for soya-bean production. In addition, a farmer outreach programme was started and private-sector support for the programme was secured. In 2008/09, R20 million was allocated to initiate a pilot project on 8 000 hectares (ha) of land, with a view to expanding the scale in the 2009/10 financial year.

During 2007/08, the allocation of R30 million for the Masibuyel' Emasimini Project was used to provide 52 tractors, seeds and fertilisers to the rural poor to maximise food production in poor rural areas. A total 11 935 ha of land were ploughed and planted to benefit 5 913 people. In the 2008/09 financial year, R35 million was allocated to scale up support to deliver 83 tractors, plough and plant 15 000 ha of land, thereby reaching 5 916 new beneficiaries.

Industry

Mpumalanga is very rich in coal reserves. The country's major power stations, three of which are the biggest in the southern hemisphere, are situated here. Unfortunately, these cause the highest levels of air pollution in the country.

Secunda, where South Africa's second petroleum-from-coal installation is situated, is also located in this province.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg produces steel and vanadium, while Witbank is the biggest coal producer in Africa.

The province's flagship programmes include the Maputo Development Corridor; the Moloto Rail Development Corridor; the Water for All, the Heritage, Greening Mpumalanga; and tourism programmes.

In September 2007, the unemployment rate in Mpumalanga stood at 22,9%.

2010 World Cup

A provincial "one-stop" 2010 office has been established, which will act as a central point of co-ordination of the 2010 World Cup programmes and activities, incorporating the Department of Culture, Sport and Recreation, the host city Mbombela and the 2010 Directorate in the Premier's Office. The Mbombela Stadium, with a capacity of 46 000 seats, will host the first four matches in Nelspruit.

Tourism

Mpumalanga is an ancient land, with evidence of human habitation stretching back 100 000 years, and the first major kingdoms and mining empires beginning 46 000 years ago. The region's pre-colonial history is, however, still largely unexplored.

Bordering on Swaziland, and encompassing huge areas of the world-renowned Kruger National Park as well as private game reserves, Mpumalanga offers untold opportunities to view a unique concentration of wildlife – either on camping safari or in the air-conditioned luxury of a five-star game lodge.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, lies within the great elbow of the Limpopo River. It is a province of dramatic contrasts – from true bushveld country to majestic mountains, primeval indigenous forests, latter-day plantations, unspoilt wilderness areas and a patchwork of farming land.

Limpopo has a strong rural basis. Its growth strategy centres on addressing infrastructure backlogs, the alleviation of poverty, and social development. Limpopo is the gateway to the rest of Africa. It is favourably situated for economic co-operation with other parts of southern Africa, as it shares borders with Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa SDI, which is a network of rail and road corridors connecting to the major seaports, which will open up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane. The airport carries about 38 000 passengers a year.

Statistics South Africa's figures show that Limpopo's economy grew from 4,1% in 2005 to 4,6% in 2006. Limpopo has been experiencing an average economic growth of 4,2% in the last four years. Limpopo is also beginning to observe a gradual decline in the unemployment rate. The unemployment rate decreased from 35,6% in March 2006 to 27,6% in September 2007.

Polokwane is the capital city and lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road running through the centre of the province strings together a series of interesting towns. Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa, is near the southern border of the province.

Further north lie Modimolle with its table-grape industry and beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, with its thick-set baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge, where the South African section of this important route north into Africa ends.

Other important Limpopo towns include the major mining centres of Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi; and Tzaneen, producer of tea, forestry products and tropical fruits. This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. A trip through this summer-rainfall area shows that this is tree country.

Rich in natural beauty, culture and wildlife, Limpopo is an ideal breakaway destination for tourists. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

The people

In Limpopo, more than 5,2 million people live on about 123 910 km^2 of land (*Community Survey, 2007*). Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to ancient peoples and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown. Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane, where Bapedi tribespeople practise age-old skills for the benefit of visitors; and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of The Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, used to be a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about AD 950 to 1200. It was declared a world heritage site in 2003. Valuable archaeological artefacts, including many golden objects, have been discovered in this area, as well as in the northern part of the Kruger National Park.

Agriculture

The bushveld is cattle country, where controlled hunting is often combined with ranching. About 80% of South Africa's hunting takes place in this province. As the largest producers of various crops in the agricultural market, Limpopo is exploiting this capacity as a resource for agritourism. For instance, the Modimolle Grape Festival is celebrated in January.

The province developed the Limpopo Agricultural Development Strategy, whose priority lies in the development of agricultural hubs – a concept adapted to suit areas with the greatest potential to increase land availability for agricultural production while enhancing the broader economy of such areas. Two of the five hubs identified are Nandoni in the Vhembe District and Nebo Plateau in the Sekhukhune District.

Sunflowers, cotton, maize and peanuts are cultivated in the Bela-Bela-Modimolle area. Tropical fruit, such as bananas, litchis, pineapples, mangoes and pawpaws, as well as a variety of nuts, are grown in the Tzaneen and Makhado areas. Extensive tea and coffee plantations also create many employment opportunities in the Tzaneen area.

The climatic conditions in this province allow for double harvesting seasons, which ultimately translates into Limpopo becoming the national food basket. It produces about 60% of the country's tomatoes; 75% mangoes; 65% papaya; 33% oranges; 36% tea; 25% citrus, bananas and litchis; and 60% of its avocados. It has initiated a process to open market access for exporting some of its fresh produce to the People's Republic of China.

More than 45% of the R2-billion annual turnover of the Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market comes from Limpopo. The largest tomato farm in South Africa lies between Tzaneen and Makhado. Extensive forestry plantations are also found here.

Plantations of hard wood for furniture manufacturing have also been established and many of the rural people practise subsistence farming.

The northern and eastern parts of this summer-rainfall region are subtropical with hot, humid summers and mist in the mountainous parts. Winter throughout the province is mild and mostly frost-free. The Agribusiness Academy at Tompi Seleka and Madzivhandila was officially launched in 2007 in collaboration with the Flemish government. This academy mentors and trains small-scale farmers, including providing refresher courses for extension officers. The Agribusiness Academy is also supporting an agritourism initiative at Ha-Makuya in the Vhembe District in partnership with the University of the Witwatersrand.

The revitilisation of the Tshivhase Tea Estate in the Vhembe District has reached a stage where rural people of Limpopo can proudly produce their own tea.

Industry

Mining is a significant economic activity in the province. Limpopo is rich in mineral deposits, including platinum-group metals, iron ore, chromium, high- and middle-grading coking coal, diamonds, antimony, phosphate and copper, as well as mineral reserves like gold, emeralds, scheelite, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon and mica. Base commodities such as black granite, corundum and feldspar are also found in the province.

The province is a typical developing area, exporting primary products and importing manufactured goods and services. It has high potential and capacity with appropriate economic development, and is an attractive location for investors. Resources such as tourism, rain-fed agriculture, minerals and an abundant labour force offer excellent investment opportunities.

Tourism

The dropping of fences between state-owned nature reserves and private game farms is opening up a new chapter in public-private partnerships within the conservation field.

Limpopo has defended its market share of international arrivals by maintaining its presence in the market and by designing new tourism products. It has developed through partnership with Open Africa and the European Union three new routes, namely "Seraki", "Land of Legends" and "Bush to Beach".

The opening of the "Bush to Beach" route, which links Limpopo through the Giriyondo border post to Mozambique has opened up opportunities for 4x4 tourism packages. The Limpopo Tourism and Parks has developed a stronger marketing drive to popularise these routes for domestic and international travellers.

2010 World Cup

The Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane will host some of the 2010 World Cup matches. It will have a capacity of 46 000 seats. By mid-2008, the development, upgrading and construction of the terminal of Polokwane International Airport was nearing completion. The objective is to develop it into a regional commercial and cargo hub.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:	Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
	Xitsonga	22,4%
	Tshivenda	15,9%

Population: 2 238 286 (*Community Survey, 2007*)

Area (km²): 123 910

Acknowledgements

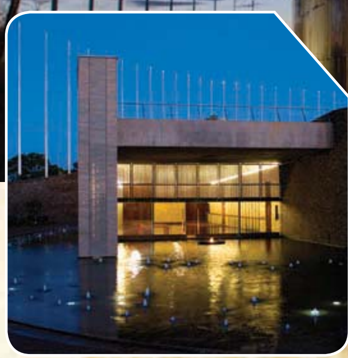
Original text by Theuns and Heila van Rensburg
Pan South African Language Board
Bulletin of Statistics (March 2004), published by Statistics South Africa
Labour Force Survey (March 2008), published by Statistics South Africa
Provincial Economies (May 2003), published by the Department of Trade and Industry
Community Survey 2007, published by Statistics South Africa
Statistics South Africa

www.cesa.org.za
www.cr/commission.org.za
www.fs.gov.za
www.geda.co.za
www.gov.za
www.limpopo.gov.za
www.pansalb.org.za
www.places.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.mpumalangainfotourism.info

Suggested reading

Bowie, B. East London: *Heart of Buffalo City. East London*: Lucky Bean Publishers, 2005.
Brown, GW. *et al. Cape Town Uncovered*: *A People's City*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.
Balson, S. *Children of the Mist: The Lost Tribe of South Africa*. Queensland, Australia: Interactive Press, 2007.
Brown, D. *To Speak of this Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Chipkin, I. *Do South Africans Exist: Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of the People.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Contemporary South Africa. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2004.
City of Johannesburg: A World-Class African City! Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2004.
Distiller, N and Steyn, M. *Under Construction: Race and Identity in South Africa Today*. Sandton, Heinemann, 2004.
Delius, P ed. *Mpumalanga: History and Heritage*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Desai, A and Goolam V. *Inside Indenture: A South African Story 1860 – 1914*. Durban: Madiba Publishers, 2007.
Earle, J. *Sasol First Guide to Weather in Southern Africa. Cape Town:* Struik, 2004.
Field, S. *et al.* eds. *Imagining the City*: Memories and Cultures of Cape Town. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.
Goldblatt, D, Krog, A and Powell, I. *Some Afrikaners Revisited*. Cape Town: 2007.
Hendriks, HJ. *Studying Congregations in Africa*. Wellington (Cape): Lux Verbi, 2004.
Hollman, J. ed. *Customs and Beliefs of the !Xam Bushmen*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, Philadelphia: Ringing Rocks Press, 2004.
Huffman, TN. *Mapungubwe: Ancient African Civilisation on the Limpopo*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2004.
Hollman, JC, ed. *Customs and Beliefs of the /Xam Bushmen*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Jenkins, E. *Falling into Place: The Story of Modern South African Place Names.* Cape Town: David Philips, 2007.
Jeppie, S. *Language, Identity, Modernity: The Arabic Study Circle of Durban*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Joburg! The Passion Behind a City. Johannesburg: Affinity Publishing, 2006.
Joubert, L. *Scorched*: *South Africa's Changing Climate*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.
Kok, P. *et al.* eds. *Migration in South Africa and Southern Africa*: *Dynamics and Determinants*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
L'Ange, G. *White Africans: From Colonisation to Liberation*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
Lee, P. *Compromise and Courage: Anglicans in Johannesburg 1864 – 1999*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2005.

Meckel, D and Ole, K. *Straight Talk: Voices from the New South Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2004.
Mitchley, C. ed*. South African Heritage: A Guide to Our Land, Our People, History and Culture*. Caledon: Mill Street Publications, 2005.
Mohammed, A. *Not White Enough, Not Black Enough*: *Racial Identity in the South African Coloured Community*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.
Oduyoye, M and Kanyoro, M. *The Will to Arise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa.* Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2006.
Odendaal, F, Suich, H and Rojas V. *Richtersveld: The Land and its People*. Cape Town: Struik, 2007. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster, 2006.
Oduyoye, M A and Musimbi, K R K, eds. *The Will to Rise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa.*
Reimold, W and Roger G. *Meteorite Impact! The Danger from Space and South Africa's Mega-Impact: The Vredefort Structure.* Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2005.
Robbins, D. *On the Bridge of Goodbye: The Story of South Africa's Discarded San People*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Schoeman, K. *The Early Mission in South Africa/Die Vroeë Sending in Suid-Afrika 1799 – 1819.* Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2005.
Schadeberg, J. *Tales from Jozi*: Photographs by J Schadeberg, edited by S Fraser. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2007.
Tyson, PD and Preston-Whyte, RA. *Weather and Climate of Southern Africa*; 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Westby-Nunn, T. *Hout Bay: An Illustrated Historical Profile*. Cape Town: Westby-Nunn Publishers, 2005.
Weinberg, P. *Moving Spirit: Spirituality in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
Wittenberg, G. *Resistance Theology in the Old Testament: Collected Essays*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2007.



There seems to be general agreement among scholars that humankind had its earliest origins in Africa. South Africa is rich in fossil evidence of the evolutionary history of the human family, going back several million years.

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone-Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoin and San (the "Hottentots" and "Bushmen" of early European terminology), although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples.

The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and, later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which, generally, are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an iron-age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "highveld", where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope.

Currently, aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's past, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoekhoe(n) for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions from the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities.

As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the Xhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east.

It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the whites in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims. The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns.

One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures, imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation.

The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony, in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot.

Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms.

The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land.

Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They too called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State. There, the principles of racially exclusive citizenship were absolute, despite the trekkers' reliance on black labour.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to whites. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indian-indentured labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed. These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader, Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that Africans and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of Africans within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided locally with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated Africans for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance.

At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become prime minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before.

Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The South African Republic (Transvaal) was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) state, which fell within the republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895. The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, Africans exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to Africans were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of Africans into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying Africans rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Africans could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa", but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs". Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations". This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 – May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war.

In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mafikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They too suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves for employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used Africans as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war. Most Africans supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed, as in the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for Africans to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for Africans.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The most important priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the Africans back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, African resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of Africans came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants. This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The Africans' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide. The National Convention drew up a constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to Africans' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights. Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, business people, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on African political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion. The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular, interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part. A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube, served the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed. Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloureds began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest.

Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing blacks in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisation, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by Gandhi in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizen and black non-citizen, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also regularised the job colour bar, reserving skilled work for whites and denying African workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled African mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force Africans into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking whites. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to blacks.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines. As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force. In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against blacks. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the Africans of the Cape Province who qualified, from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves.

The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of a politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent. For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking whites in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The state became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond co-ordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas".

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gather pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development", divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence", supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed. Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education to healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour. However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The state's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested.

In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned.

The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among blacks in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia.

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union (Zapu) entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces.

Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics from the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

As capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973, black trade unions revived.

A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and was drawing new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy. The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation). By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance.

An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of Africans outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a co-ordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them, Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting.

Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être.* Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with blacks forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the state, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The ANC emerged from the election with a 62% majority. The main opposition came from the NP, which gained 20% of the vote nationally, and a majority in the Western Cape. The Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) received 10% of the vote, mainly in its KwaZulu-Natal base. The NP and the IFP formed part of the Government of National Unity until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the First Decade of Freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness, and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So too have been the elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results. Local government elections during 1995 and 1996, and then again in 2000 after the transformation of the municipal system, gave the country its first democratically elected non-racial municipal authorities.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of imbizo, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly engage directly with the public around implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two thirds and the election of Mr Thabo Mbeki as president and successor to Mr Mandela. It saw a sharp decline of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party, led by Mr Tony Leon, as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance, which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted the Government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before, and were designated by, the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) in June 2003 brought these sectors together to collectively take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the GDS, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the First Decade of Freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

Another priority was the safety and security of citizens, which required both transforming the police into a service working with the community, and overcoming grave problems of criminality and a culture of violence posed by the social dislocations inherited from the past.

Key economic objectives included job creation, poverty eradication, reduction of inequality and overall growth. There was much progress in rebuilding the economy, in particular with the achievement of macroeconomic stability and the initiation of programmes of microeconomic reform. By the end of 2004, growth was accelerating and there were signs of the beginnings of a reduction in unemployment.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a co-operative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces.

South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003.

In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September of that year.

By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in among other countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

Democratic South Africa has played an active role in international and multilateral organisations. During the First Decade of Freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community (SADC), NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It has played host to several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, World Conference Against Racism in 2001, World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002, and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented on international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

Through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), the development programme of the AU, South Africa continues to work with the rest of the continent and its partners in the industrialised world for the development and regeneration of the African continent.

Into the Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development.

As government took stock of the First Decade of Freedom in *Towards a Ten Year Review,* it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights inscribed in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office as President of South Africa – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

One of the key developments in the Second Decade of Freedom has been the development of AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, by government together with its social partners, to raise the trajectory of growth to an average of at least 6% between 2010 and 2014. Despite the international economic turmoil which prevailed in 2008, the country's economic policies have placed it in good stead to weather the global economic slow-down and growth forecasts for the country's economy still remain positive.

In 2007, government released for the first time, a set of *Development Indicators* that reflected progress in establishing a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system. The data was compiled by the Policy Co-ordination and Advisory Services in The Presidency, working with clusters and departments, using official statistics and research by other local and international institutions. These indicators, again released in 2008, show some of the strides government has made in improving the lives of South Africans. Overall, these indicators show that South Africa has made progress, particularly in improving access to basic services, the provision of healthcare and housing, growing the economy and expanding social benefits to reach the poor. Many challenges remain and newer ones have also arisen.

As the country moves towards a fourth general election in 2009, it was imperative to review the progress achieved by government since 1994. *The 15 Year Review* was released in September 2008 and highlighted both the areas of progress and the challenges facing South Africa. It will serve as an important point of departure for the Government and leadership that will take South Africa through the tail-end of the Second Decade of Freedom.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the Second Decade of Freedom is the hosting of the

2010 FIFA World Cup™. This extensive project, into which government is investing billions of rands, not only to host a world-class tournament but also to kick-start a massive boost for development in the country that will benefit all its people, continues to progress. By the end of 2008, government was on track to ensure that its guarantees to FIFA will be fulfilled by 2010.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. In 2006, South Africa assumed the chair of the G77 and was elected to serve a two-year period from January 2007 as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council. In 2008, South Africa assumed the chair of the SADC out of which has come significant progress in the establishment of a SADC Free Trade Area Agreement.

By 2008, South Africa had established 121 missions throughout the world and it continues to play a big role in conflict resolution on the continent, particularly in Zimbabwe and the DRC.

Acknowledgement

This chapter has evolved year by year, based on initial text from the Institute for Historical Research, University of the Western Cape.

Suggested reading

Allen, J. *Rabble-Rouser for Peace*: London: Rider Books, 2006.
Asmal, K, Chidester, D and James, W. eds. *South Africa's Nobel Laureates.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
Barber, J. *Mandela's World: The International Dimension of South Africa's Political Revolution.* Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.
Boraine, A. *A Life in Transition.* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2008.
Beckford-Smith, V and Mendelsohn, R. *Black and White in Colour*. *African History on Screen*. Cape History on Screen. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.
Bergh, JS and Morton, F. *To Make Them Serve: The 1871 Transvaal Commission on African Labour.* Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2003.
Bozzoli, B. *Theatre of Struggle and the End of Apartheid*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Brink, E and Muhlangane, G. *Soweto 16 June 1976: Personal Accounts of the Uprising*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2006.
Butler, A. *Cyril Ramaphosa.* Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.
Chubb, K and Van Dijk, L. eds. *Between Anger and Hope: South Africa's Youth and the Truth and Reconciliation Commission*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Couzens, T. *Battles of South Africa*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.
D'Ernico, F and Backwell, L. *From Tools to Symbols: From Early Hominids to Modern Humans*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2005.
De Wet, C. *Three Year's War*. Johannesburg: Galago, 2005.
Dubow, S. *A Commonwealth of Knowledge: Science, Sensibility and White South Africa, 1820 – 2000*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.
Edgar, R. *The Making of an African Communist: Edwin Thabo Mofutsanyana and the Communist Party of South Africa 1927 – 1939*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa), 2005.
Eglin, C. *Crossing the Borders of Power: The Memoirs of Colin Eglin*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Foster, D, Haupt, P and De Beer, M. *The Theatre of Violence: Narratives of Protagonists in the South African Conflict*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2005.
Gasa, N, ed. *They Remove Boulders: Women in South African History.* Cape Town: HSRC, 2007.
Gevisser, M. Thabo Mbeki: *the Dream Deferred*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Grobler, JEH. *The War Reporter: The Anglo-Boer War through the Eyes of the Burghers*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers), 2004.
Gumede, W. *Thabo Mbeki and the Battle for the Soul of the ANC*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.
Hadland, A. *Mandela: A Life*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Hallett, G. *Moving in Time: Images of Life in a Democratic South Africa*. Johannesburg: KMM Review Publishing, 2004.
Heunis, J. *The Inner Circle: Reflections on the Last Days of White Rule*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Hlongwane, KA. *et al*. eds. *Soweto 76: Reflections on the Liberation Struggle*. Johannesburg: Mutloatse Arts Heritage Trust, 2006.
Holmes, R. *The Hottentot Venus: The Life and Death of Saartjie Baartman*. London: Bloomsbury, 2006.
Johnson, RW. *South Africa*: *The First Man, The Last Nation*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
Joyce, P. *The Making of a Nation: South Africa's Road to Freedom.* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2007.
Kaarsholm, P. ed. *Violence, Political Culture and Development in Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal and Ohio University and James Currey, c. 2007.
Khangela, A. *et al*, eds. *Soweto '76: Reflections on the Liberation Struggles*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, 2006.
Kriker, J. *The Rand Revolt: The 1922 Insurrection and Racial Killing in South Africa*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Laband, M, ed. *Daily Lives of Civilians in Wartime Africa: From Slavery Days to Rwandan Genocide*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Linnegar, J. ed. *Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Loos, J. *Echoes of Slavery: Voices from South Africa's Past*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.

Louw, PE. *The Rise, Fall and Legacy of Apartheid*. Westport, CT: Praeger, 2004.

Mandela, N. *A Prisoner in the Garden: Opening Nelson Mandela's Prison Archive*. Johannesburg: Penguin SA, 2005.

Mandela: *The Authorised Portrait*. Editorial consultants M Maharaj and A Kathrada. Johannesburg: Wild Dog Press, 2006.

Mashabela, H. *A People on the Boil: Reflections on June 16, 1976 and Beyond*; 30th Anniversary edition. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.

Mendelsohn, R and Milton S. *Jews in South Africa: an Illustrated History*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.

Meredith, M. *Diamonds, Gold and War: The Making of South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Meredith, M. *Diamonds, Gold and War: The Making of South Africa*. New York: Simon & Shuster, 2007.

Meredith, M. *The State of Africa: A History of Fifty Years of Independence*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Morris, M. *Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2004.

O'Malley, P. *Shades of Difference: Mac Maharaj and the Struggle for South Africa*. New York: Penguin Group, 2007.

O'Malley, P. *Shades of Difference: Mac Maharaj and the Struggle for South Africa.* Cape Town: Penguin, 2008.

Paging Through History. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Peires, J. *The Dead will Arise: Nongqawuse and the Great Xhosa Cattle-killing of 1856 – 57*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.

Peires, J. *The House of Phalo*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.

Penn, N. *The Forgotten Frontier: Colonist and Khoisan on the Cape's Northern Frontier in the 18th Century*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Pieterse, E and Meintjies, F. eds. *Voices of the Transition: The Politics, Poetics and Practices of Social Change in South Africa*. Sandown: Heinemann, 2004.

Posel, D and Simpson, G. eds. *Commissioning the Past: Understanding South Africa's Truth and Reconciliation Commission*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Road to Democracy in South Africa. South African Democracy Education Trust. Vol. 1: 1960 – 1970. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.

Scanlon, H. *Repression and Reality: Portraits of Women's Lives in the Western Cape 1948 – 1976*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Segal, L. ed. *Number Four: The Making of Constitution Hill*. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2006.

Shaw, G. *Believe in Miracles*: *South Africa from Malan to Mandela- and the Mbeki Era*. Newlands: Ampersand Press, 2007.

Sideropoulos, E. *Apartheid Past, Renaissance Future*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2004.

Stolten, HE. *History Making and Present Day Politics: The Meaning of Collective Memory in South Africa.* Uppsala: Nordiske Afrikainstituut, 2007.

Tobias, PV. *Into the Past: A Memoir*. Johannesburg: Picador Africa, 2005.

Turok, K. *Life and Soul: Portraits of Women who Move South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

Van der Ross, RE. *Up from Slavery: Slaves at the Cape: Their Origins, Treatment and Contribution*. Cape Town: Ampersand Press and University of the Western Cape, 2005.

Van Dijk, L. *History of Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006.

Van Onselen, C. *The Fox and the Flies: The World of Joseph Silver, Racketeer and Psychopath*. Johannesburg: Random House, 2007.

Van Zyl Slabbert, F. *The Other Side of History: An Anecdotal Collection on Political Transition in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2006.

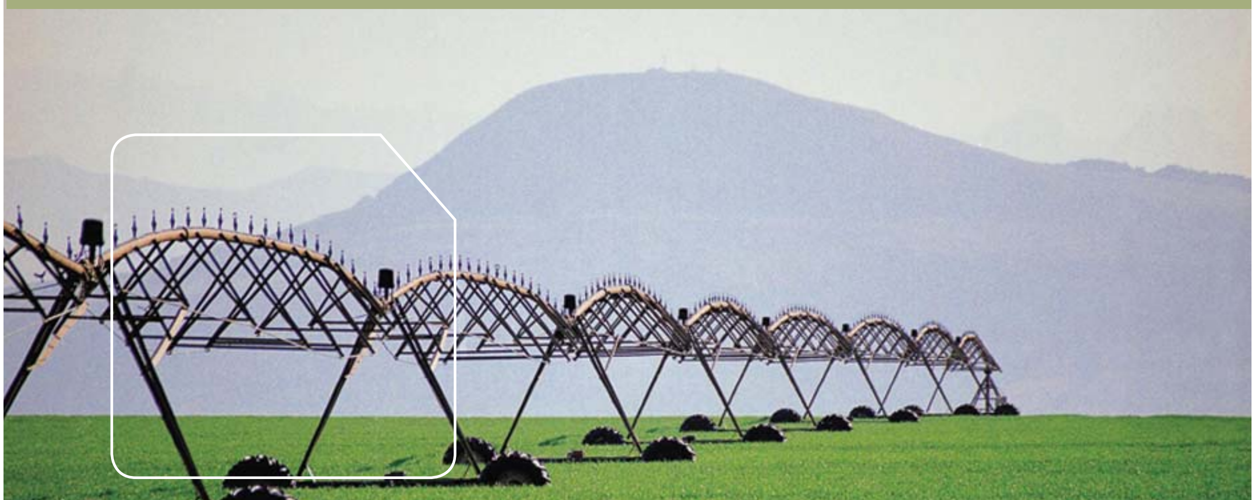
Waetjen, *T. Workers and Warriors: Masculinity and the Struggle for Nation in South Africa*.

Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006. Wilson, M and Thompson LM. eds. *Oxford History of South Africa.* Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1969 – 1971. 2 vols.

Women in South African History: Basus'iimbokodo, Bawel'imilambo. They Remove Boulders and Cross Rivers, edited by N Gasa. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Worden, N and Groenewald, G. Eds. *Trials of Slavery: Selected Documents Concerning Slaves from the Criminal Records of the Council of Justice at the Cape of Good Hope, 1905 – 1794*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 2005. (Van Riebeeck Society Series 2, no 36).

AGRICULTURE AND LAND AFFAIRS



The Department of Agriculture strives towards a united and prosperous agricultural sector, with the aim of supporting sustainable agricultural development.

Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture

The Department of Agriculture, through its socio-economic development initiatives, is committed to reducing poverty in South Africa and on the continent, broadening access to agriculture, and increasing productivity and profitability within the agricultural sector.

The Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture, adopted in 2001, consists of three core objectives:

- equitable access and participation
- global competitiveness and profitability
- sustainable resource management.

The plan is the result of collaboration between government, Agri South Africa (Agri SA) and the National African Farmers' Union (Nafu).

Agricultural economy

The total contribution of agriculture to the economy increased from R27 billion in 2001 to R36 billion in 2007. South Africa's dual agricultural economy comprises a well-developed commercial sector and a predominantly subsistence-oriented sector in the rural areas.

About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation. This amounts to about 1,5% of South Africa's agricultural land.

The most important factor limiting agricultural production is the availability of water. Rainfall is distributed unevenly across the country. Almost 50% of South Africa's water is used for agricultural purposes.

The country can be subdivided into a number of farming regions according to climate, natural vegetation, types of soil and the type of farming practised.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming in winter-rainfall and high summer-rainfall areas, to cattle ranching in the bushveld and sheep farming in the more arid regions. Owing to its geographical location, some parts of South Africa are prone to drought.

Primary commercial agriculture contributes about 2,5% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 8% to formal employment. However, there are strong backward and forward linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector is estimated to comprise about 12% of the GDP.

Although South Africa has the ability to be self-sufficient in virtually all major agricultural products, the rate of growth in exports has been slower than that of imports.

The only increase in agricultural export volumes occurred during the period of exchange-rate depreciation in 2002 and came to about nine million tons (mt). Major import products include wheat, rice, vegetable oils and poultry meat.

Despite the farming industry's declining share of GDP, it remains vital to the economy and the development and stability of the southern African region.

For the past five years, agricultural exports have contributed on average about 7% of total South African exports. Exports increased from 5% (1988) to 38% (2007) of agricultural production, but South Africa is losing on its net trade balance on processed goods, owing to the growth in imports of processed goods. The estimated value of imports in 2007 came to R29,2 billion, while exports totalled R29,7 billion in 2007.

The largest export groups are wine, citrus, sugar, grapes, fruit juice, wool and deciduous fruit such as apples, pears and quinces. Other important export products are non-alcoholic beverages, avocados, pineapples, groundnuts, preserved fruit and nuts, hides and skins.

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

South Africa does not have ideal conditions for crop production. Less than 12% of its land is arable and serious climatic constraints, such as periodic droughts, limit agricultural production.

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way of meeting the growing demand for food without placing even greater pressure on scarce resources.

The GMO Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997), which was implemented on 1 December 1999, provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, particularly that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity. In terms of the Act, permits are issued for a specific GMO activity, such as trials for commercial release in the country. The permits may also specify conditions under which a particular activity with GMOs should take place.

The objectives of the Act are to promote the responsible application of GMOs in South Africa without impacting negatively on human or animal health, the environment or biodiversity. In terms of the GMO Act, 1997, the Advisory Committee (AC), comprising scientific experts, evaluates risk assessments to determine if a particular GMO is safe for humans, animals and the environment. The Executive Council (EC) consists of members from six government departments, namely agriculture, health, environmental affairs and tourism, science and technology, trade and industry and labour, and the chairperson of the AC.

The EC considers the recommendations of the AC, comments from members of the public or interested parties, and compliance with various policies before taking a decision to permit an activity or not.

South Africa has already commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The latest approval of a GM crop for commercial use was in 2007, for GM maize that is both resistant to certain insect species and herbicide tolerant; and also for GM cotton that has an improved mechanism to enable herbicide tolerance. Field trials and contained experiments are still being undertaken for soya beans, potatoes, maize, sugar cane and cotton.

In June 2008, Cabinet instructed the Social and Economic Cluster government departments to expand programmes that support vulnerable groups as higher food prices impact negatively on their purchasing power.

These include:

- rolling out various government programmes that broaden and strengthen the coverage of social safety-net measures such as school-feeding programmes
- continuing with standardised comprehensive starter seed-pack distribution, encouraging the establishment of community and household gardens
- investing in agroprocessing infrastructure in rural areas
- introducing rebates on certain agricultural input
- reducing the cost of agricultural commodities such as grain
- promoting small holders such as diary farming
- focusing on improved productivity, through massification programmes
- motivating the commercial sector to optimally respond to the favourable economic conditions by increasing agriculture activities.

Since the adoption of "biotech" crops in 1996, the areas planted to GM maize, soya beans and cotton in South Africa have increased to 1,8 million ha. In 2008, white GM maize totalled 1,04 million ha, an increase of 48% over 2006/07, representing a market share of 62%. Yellow maize increased from 528 000 ha to 567 000 ha, which was 7% higher.

The cumulative value of GM maize at farmer's price totalled R21,63 billion and cumulative GM maize produced was 14,67 mt.

Sustainable resource management and use

Most of the time, South Africa is able to meet its own food requirements. The Agricultural Research Council's (ARC) Institute for Soil, Climate and Water (ISCW) has compiled an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The *National Land Type Survey*, completed in 2001, assists and informs land-use planning and decision-making at national level. All natural-resource information is integrated into the comprehensive Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (AGIS) that is accessable via the Internet. The AGIS also has information on agricultural potential and land capability.

Although it is generally recognised that soil degradation is a problem, little reliable data has been collected systematically over time. Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in soil organic matter.

Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-to-no fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

The Agricultural Fires Information System (AFIS) that tracks all outbreaks of fire in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region, has been implemented and can be viewed at *www.agis.agric.za.*

Soil degradation

From the latest soil-erosion prediction data, it was calculated that the area of land with a high to extremely high erosion risk totals 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface). More than

11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk and 17% are classified as very low to low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, both dryland and irrigated. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered by soils that are extremely prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent of crusting, as well as awareness of it, have increased sharply during the last two decades. Switching to overhead and microregulation systems and the widespread problems associated with these on crusting-prone soils greatly contributed to this.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem in South Africa. Its impact is serious, because its affects the scarce, arable land, especially high-potential land. More than five million ha of cultivated land have already been seriously acidified, mainly owing to injudicious fertiliser practices and inadequate lime applications. In the high-potential areas of Mpumalanga, opencast and strip-coal mining also cause soil acidification.

Soil fertility degradation is a matter of concern. In commercial agriculture, there has been a tendency of "nutrient capital-building" for some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has been built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce yields.

Statistics for the last 20 years indicate that trends in p-levels for these key nutrients follow two opposite directions: in a significant proportion of commercial croplands, p-levels are declining from adequate to deficient, whereas in other cases, the levels are increasing from adequate to excessive levels owing to overfertilisation.

Irrigation

Irrigation is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. Irrigation is an important factor in the South African economy. Irrigated agriculture contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine is produced under irrigation. The Department of Agriculture has identified irrigation development as one of the five priority areas of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and aims to expand irrigation by 50%.

This goal will be achieved by:

- increasing the water-use efficiency of irrigation systems and future irrigated land
- revitalising underused irrigation schemes/areas based on a sustainable and area-wide planning approach
- promoting mini-scale irrigated agriculture for household- and community-level food security through efficient irrigation technologies
  - identifying and developing new commercial irrigation areas in co-operation with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

Production

The total gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2007/08 is estimated at R111 760 million, compared to R93 390 million the previous year – an increase of 19,7%. This increase can be attributed mainly to a significant increase in the value of field corps.

Prices

Producer prices of agricultural products increased, on average, by 24,9% from 2006 to 2007, compared with an increase of 17,9% during the previous year. In 2007, the producer prices of field crops rose by 41,9%, against an increase of 32,4% the previous year. This increase was mainly the result of a 44,7% increase in the price of summer grains, and increases of 90,4% and 51,9% in the prices of winter cereals and dry beans, respectively.

Producer prices of horticultural products increased by 20,6% in 2007 compared with 2006. Prices of vegetables increased, on average, by 20,6% during 2007, while the prices of fresh fruit increased by 27,7%.

The producer prices of animal products were 14,5% higher in 2007 than in 2006.

Prices received for pastoral products increased by 29,9%. The price farmers received for milk was 33,8% higher. Prices received for poultry products rose by 13%.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses plus the value of

Gross value of agricultural production, 2007 (R'000)	
Field crops	
Maize	11 451 679
Wheat	3 878 983
Hay	2 314 555
Grain sorghum	294 562
Sugar cane	4 198 557
Groundnuts	285 121
Tobacco	228 445
Sunflower seed	921 985
Cotton	87 809
Other	1 525 972
Total	**25 287 668**
Horticulture	
Viticulture	2 907 086
Citrus fruit	5 013 038
Subtropical fruit	1 689 069
Deciduous and other fruit	5 755 887
Vegetables	5 476 294
Potatoes	3 405 277
Other	1 437 148
Total	**25 683 799**
Animal products	
Wool	1 312 768
Poultry and poultry products	20 409 362
Cattle and cattle products	12 689 536
Sheep and goats slaughtered	2 296 452
Pigs slaughtered	2 247 136
Milk	7 565 475
Other	2 446 444
Total	**48 967 173**
Grand total	**99 938 640**

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture

changes in inventories) for 2007 amounted to R96 653 million, compared with R79 599 million in 2006 – an increase of 21,4%.

In 2007, the gross income from field crops increased by 31,8% to R22 988 million, compared with R17 445 million in 2006. This was mainly because of the higher prices that farmers received for summer crops during 2007.

Gross income from horticultural products increased by 16,6%, from R21 162 million in 2006 to R24 676 million in 2007.

Income from deciduous and other summer fruit increased by 21,1% to R6 042 million, while that of citrus fruit increased by 28,7% to R4 153 million. The income from vegetables amounted to R8 688 million – an increase of 15,4%. Income from potatoes, which made a contribution of about 37,9% to the gross income from vegetables, increased by 11,7%, from R2 950 million in 2006 to R3 294 million in 2007. Gross income from animal products was 19,5% higher and amounted to R48 989 million. Producers earned R13 046 million from slaughtered cattle and calves – representing an increase of 15,3%. Income from slaughtered sheep increased by 15,4% and amounted to R2 447 million. Income from poultry amounted to R15 131 million – resulting in an increase of 16,3%. Income from milk increased by 31,8% to R7 420 million.

Field crops and horticulture

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflowers.

The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

According to the *Economic Review of the South Africa Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops increased by 26,7% to R29 872 million for the year ended 30 June 2008.

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the SADC for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with an average production of about 8,9 mt a year over the past 10 years. It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers.

Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 6,9 mt of maize was produced in 2006/07 on two million ha of land (developing agriculture included).

Wheat

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. Average wheat production has totalled about 2 mt a year over the past 10 years.

There was a distinct downward trend in the area planted to wheat over the past few years. Extra wheat is imported to meet local requirements.

Barley

Barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 73 200 ha in the 2007 production season. Production totalled 195 900 t.

Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape. Groundnut plantings decreased by 21% from 48 550 ha in 2005/06 to 40 770 ha in 2006/07. Some

54 240 t of groundnuts were available for use during the 2007/08 marketing year.

Sunflower seed

South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed, which is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo.

An area of 316 350 ha was planted in 2006/07, producing 300 000 t.

Sorghum

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer-rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West.

In 2006/07, an estimated 69 000 ha were planted with production totalling 165 875 t.

Soya beans

Soya beans are mainly produced in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. Soya beans contribute about 1,8% to the gross value of field crops. The estimated average gross value of soya beans for the past five seasons amounts to R434 million.

Soya-bean production has decreased steadily during the past decade, partly as a result of an decrease in yield per hectare.

In 2006/07, soya-bean production totalled 205 000 t on 183 000 ha.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop that is mainly grown in the Western Cape. However, since the 2001 production season, smaller quantities have also been planted in the northern production areas, North West and Limpopo.

Canola competes with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans on the local market. For the 2006/07 marketing season, the total supply of canola was estimated at 46 400 t (the estimated canola crop of 36 800 t, together with carry-over stocks of about 9 600 t).

Dry beans

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. Small quantities are reported to be produced in KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape.

Local demand is substantially higher than local production and therefore large quantities of dry beans are imported each year. In 2006, 80 000 t of dry beans were produced.

Sugar

The South African sugar industry is one of the world's leading cost-competitive producers of high-quality sugar. It is a diverse industry combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, and a range of by-products.

The South African sugar industry makes an important contribution to the national economy, given its agricultural and industrial investments, foreign-exchange earnings, its high employment rates and its linkages with major suppliers, support industries and customers.

Direct employment within the sugar industry totals about 85 000 jobs. Direct and indirect employment is estimated at 350 000 jobs, including employment in rural areas. The South African Cane Growers' Association and the milling companies undertake development projects and are involved in Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) through a range of initiatives.

The about 47 000 registered sugar-cane growers annually produce on average 20 mt of sugar cane from 14 mill-supply areas, extending from northern Pondoland in the Eastern Cape to the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Deciduous fruit

In 2007/08, the gross income from horticultural products increased by 16,8% to R17 408 million.

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Long Kloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2007/08, income from deciduous and subtropical fruit rose by 10,6% and 11,3% to R6 425 and R1 818 million respectively.

The industry is relatively organised, through the umbrella body, Fruit South Africa, and its four shareholders: the Fresh Produce Exporters' Forum (FPEF), the Deciduous Fruit Producers' Trust, the Citrus Growers' Association and the South African Subtropical Growers' Association. The FPEF is a Section 21 company that represents 72 out of about 300 fresh-fruit export companies in South Africa. The FPEF played a significant role in stabilising and unifying the export sector, particularly in the latter half of deregulation. Fruit South Africa has drawn up an extensive business plan to create a unified, non-racial and progressive fruit industry.

Wine

Internationally, South Africa's wines are highly competitive, with the industry showing a sustainable and increasingly positive trend in recent years.

In 2007/08, income from viticulture increased by 5,4% to R2 974 million. The wine industry employs 257 000 people directly and indirectly, while an additional R4,2 billion is generated annually through wine tourism.

The area planted under wine grapes has increased constantly since 1990, and totalled 101 958 ha in 2007. The 2007 harvest amounted to 1 351 447 t.

In April 2008, the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems estimated the 2008 wine and grape crop at 776 litres per gross ton.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha).

In 2007/08, income from citrus showed the biggest increase of 35% and amounted to R5 318 million.

Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. In 2006, South Africa produced 686 582 t of subtropical fruit, which was 81 585 t or 10,6% less than in 2005.

Potatoes

North West recently started with the production of seed potatoes. The Northern Cape is one of the six largest seed-potato production areas in South Africa. The new South African varieties Darius and Eryn constitute a large percentage of the seed grown in this region.

The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands form the centre of the seed-production area in this province. Some seed is also produced in the north near Louwsburg, a traditionally virus-free area. This region is one of the largest seed-producing areas in South Africa.

About 40% of the country's potato crop is grown in the high-lying areas of the Free State and Mpumalanga, Limpopo, and the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape.

The high-lying areas of KwaZulu-Natal are also important production areas. Nearly two thirds of the country's total potato crop are produced under irrigation.

Of the total crop, 50% is delivered to fresh-produce markets and a further 19% is processed. The South African potato-processing industry has shown tremendous growth over the past few years. This growth took place primarily in the crisps, chips and French fries sectors. Frozen French fries comprise 39% of total processed potato products in South Africa.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing 39% to the total income derived from vegetables. This is almost equal to the 40% derived collectively from the next four major crops, i.e. tomatoes, onions, green mealies and sweetcorn. Between July 2006 and June 2007, 1 917 000 t of potatoes were produced.

Tomatoes

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but mainly in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape, and the Western Cape. In 2006/07, 456 000 t of tomatoes were produced.

Onions

Onions are grown in Mpumalanga; in the districts of Caledon, Ceres and Worcester in the Western Cape; and at Venterstad and adjoining areas in the southern Free State.

Onions have an estimated planting of 6 500 ha to 7 000 ha and retail value of R200 million a year. In 2006/07, 408 000 t of onions were produced. Exports from South Africa (8 000 t a year) to Europe are relatively small compared to exports such as those of New Zealand (106 000 t a year), Australia and Tasmania (80 000 t a year) and Argentina (20 000 t a year).

Cabbages

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but are concentrated in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. In 2006/07, 134 000 t of cabbages were produced.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, the Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa.

Cotton is grown under irrigation as well as in dryland conditions.

Since 2004, about 60% of cotton has been produced under irrigation. During 2005/06, 18 114 ha were dedicated to cotton in South Africa, with 9 720 ha under irrigation and 8 394 ha under dryland conditions.

The greatest quantities of cotton lint for the 2006/07 marketing year were produced in Mpumalanga totalling 36 608 bales, followed by Limpopo with 12 332 bales and Northern Cape with 11 103 bales.

Production was the lowest in the Eastern Cape with 132 bales of cotton lint (each bale weighs 200 kg). About 75% of local production is harvested by hand.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 80% of total production, with hectares cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. In 2006/07, 8,1 000 t of flue-cured tobacco were produced on 5 000 ha.

A total of 9,7 000 t of tobacco were produced.

Tea

The tea industry has seen an improvement in the quality of tea and the establishment of export standards, the construction of a large processing and packaging facility in Mossel Bay in the Western Cape, increased consumer awareness, the appearance of several brand names on supermarket shelves and a growing foreign market.

Honeybush tea grows mainly in the coastal and mountainous areas of the Western Cape, but also in certain areas of the Eastern Cape. Honeybush tea has grown into a commercial crop, with 2006 production exceeding 300 t of processed tea.

The area planted with honeybush exceeds 230 ha, with about 10 commercial farmers contributing some 30% to the total annual production. It is estimated that honeybush grows on about 30 000 ha in South Africa.

Rooibos tea is indigenous to the Cederberg area of the Western Cape, which is about 200 km north of Cape Town. Although the main centre for tea production remains in this area, recent developments have seen production expand to other regions. Rooibos tea is only produced locally and efforts to keep it this way are ongoing.

i

The South African wine industry has launched a training programme in the run-up to the 2010 Soccer World Cup that will see more than 2 000 people receive specialised wine-steward training in preparation for the event. Known as Project Laduma, the skills-development initiative is aimed at contributing to job creation and the transfer of marketable skills in South Africa. Wines of South Africa, the representative body of the local industry's export market, believes the initiative will help market South African wines to the mass of international consumers who are expected to arrive in South Africa for the World Cup. In keeping with the 2010 theme, 2 010 candidates will undergo the Sector Education and Training Authority-accredited training course. Half of the candidates will be selected from the hospitality sector, while the other half will be recruited from unemployed South Africans.

Floriculture

The South African floriculture industry has the opportunity to develop into a significant player on the international stage. The total floriculture industry employs about 17 500 people. In terms of products and markets, there is a strong demand for South African floriculture worldwide. In particular, Germany, the United Kingdom, Japan and the Netherlands represent the greatest opportunities in the short term.

South Africa's indigenous flowers such as gladioli, nerine, freesias and gerberas, have undergone many years of extensive research in Europe, and have become major crops worldwide.

South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut flowers, which account for more than half of the proteas sold on the world market. South African proteas and so-called Cape greens (fynbos) are marketed in Europe and are mainly concentrated in the Western Cape.

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is suitable for extensive livestock-farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions.

Stockbreeders concentrate on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions.

The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output. By mid-2007, there were 13,5 million cattle, 24,9 million sheep and 6,4 milion goats being bred. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining

15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe.

The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector. The local demand for products, which generally outstrips production, creates a dependence on imports, even though there are untapped production reserves in the communal farming sector.

In September 2008, the World Meat Congress was held in South Africa for the first time. The South African Meat Industry Company hosted the congress in Cape Town.

National Livestock Development Strategy (NLDS)

The NLDS aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain. By mid-2007, it was being implemented by the relevant national, provincial and local governments and organised agriculture structures.

Implementation includes establishing sector working groups, mobilising rural stock owners and keepers towards economic production and supporting systems for the conservation of veld and livestock resources through sustainable use.

Dairy farming

Dairy farming is practised throughout South Africa, with the highest concentration of dairy farms in the eastern and northern Free State, North West, the KwaZulu-Natal Midlands, the Eastern and Western Cape, the Gauteng metropolitan area and the southern parts of Mpumalanga.

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2007 ('000 t)

Maize	7 339
Wheat	1 913
Sugar cane	19 724
Grain sorghum	202
Groundnuts	58
Sunflower seed	311
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 701
Citrus fruit	2 281
Subtropical fruit	692
Vegetables	2 079
Potatoes	1 917

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture

The ARC participates fully in the Multiple Across-Country Evaluation for all four major dairy breeds in South Africa, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire.

The primary sector consists of about 3 600 and 200 000 commercial and emerging farmers respectively with an annual turnover of about R7 800 million.

Milk South Africa co-ordinates industry matters, including the information and research functions, and is financed by statutory contributions. Market forces determine prices. The dairy industry is an important employer, as some 3 850 milk producers employ about 50 000 farmworkers and indirectly provide jobs to some 38 000 people.

Utilisation of milk production for 2004/05 for commercial markets was estimated at 2 657 million litres (ML).

Beef cattle

Cattle ranches are found mainly in the Eastern Cape, parts of the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West, Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape. The indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni and the locally developed Bonsmara and Drakensberger are popular beef breeds. The Angus, Hereford and Sussex; Charolais, Simmentaler and Brahman; and Santa Gertrudis breeds are respectively from Britain, Europe and America, and are maintained as pure breeds or used in cross-breeding.

Small stock (sheep and goats)

Sheep farming is concentrated mainly in the arid and extensive grazing areas of the country. As a result, most of the 25 million sheep in South Africa are found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga. Most sheep (18 million) are woolled or dual-purpose sheep.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head in South Africa is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, of which the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, the Afrino and Letelle are the most popular. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton income. These breeds have better body conformation than the Merino, but produce slightly less wool per kilogram of body weight.

Average Merino fleece weights vary from 4 kg to 5 kg per year in the semi-arid regions, and up to 8 kg per year from sheep grazing on cultivated pastures.

The AgriBEE (Black Economic Empowerment) Sector Transformation Charter was launched in April 2008. The objectives of the AgriBEE Charter are to implement initiatives to include more black South Africans at all levels of agricultural activity and enterprises by:

- increasing the extent to which black women, people living with disabilities and youth own and manage existing and new agricultural enterprises
- increasing their access to economic activities, infrastructure and skills training
- empowering rural and local communities to have access to agricultural economic activities, land, agricultural infrastructure, ownership and skills
- increasing the representation of black women and black designated groups.

Mutton sheep are mostly found in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape.

The most popular mutton breed is the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed sheep and Karakul sheep are still found.

The Merino and Dorper account for most of the 5,5 million sheep slaughtered annually in South Africa. Karakul sheep are farmed in the more arid areas. The gross value of Karakul pelts for 2006 was estimated at R6,2 million.

A large proportion of the 6,4 million goats in South Africa occur in communal grazing areas. The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (39%), followed by Limpopo (17%).

The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about a million Angora goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilogram accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Poultry- and pig-farming

The poultry and pig industries are more intensive than the sheep and cattle industries, and are dominant in almost all the provinces.The predominant pig breeds are the South African Landrace, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain.

South Africa's annual poultry meat production is estimated at 930 000 t. Broiler production contributes nearly 80% to total poultry-meat production, with the rest made up of mature chicken slaughter (culls), small-scale and backyard poultry production, ducks, geese, turkeys and other specialised white-meat products.

Commercial producers slaughtered an estimated 645 million broilers in 2006.

South Africa accounts for 68% of world sales of ostrich products, namely leather, meat and feathers. The income from ostrich products is derived as follows: leather (50 – 70%), meat (20 – 30%) and feathers (20 – 30%).

The gross value of ostrich products during 2006 was estimated at R336 million.

Aquaculture industry (freshwater and marine)

South Africa is still in the developing phase of aquaculture, which is an underdeveloped market with great potential for job creation and food security. The total aquacultural production from South Africa is insignificant compared to African and global production.

The growth in aquaculture and aquaculture interest in South Africa is likely to lead to the rapid expansion of the sector during the next decade. This expansion depends on the integrated use of natural resources, funding, government support, technology and human resource development to ensure sustainable and equitable development.

Game ranching

Game ranching in South Africa is one of the fastest-growing branches of the agricultural industry.

Since the 1970s, there has been a huge shift from cattle farming to game ranching. Provided they observe approved game-fencing rules, registered game ranches have permission to hunt throughout the year.

Some 49,04% of registered game ranches with an area of 3 325 652 ha are found in Limpopo. The Northern Cape has the second-highest number of game ranches (19,48%), covering 4 852 053 ha.

The Eastern Cape has 12,33% of the total game ranches, covering 881 633 ha. The Western Cape has the fewest game ranches (1,62%, and extending over 265 205 ha).

Owing to the expansion of game ranches, the total area covered by these privately owned ranches exceeds that of all national parks and provincial nature reserves put together. Game ranches also have growing numbers of game.

In terms of game ranching, game is considered to be an agricultural product as defined in the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996).

The South African game-farming industry incorporates various subsectors, ranging from extensive wildlife ranching (with minimal human

During 2008/09, the Agricultural Research Council implemented a new approach towards the transfer of technology, which includes strengthening networks with key stakeholders by increasing the participation of black farmers in the Livestock Recording and Improvement Scheme. It trained 1 000 farmers in various technologies to increase productivity and extended training and advice on the development of feedlots to improve access markets for new and emerging beef farmers.

intervention) to intensive wildlife ranching (with supplementary feeding), wildlife breeding and ecotourism.

The Range (Veld) and Forage Section of the Directorate: Animal and Aquaculture Production (AAP) of the Department of Agriculture has, as its primary objective, the sustainable management, use and ecological protection of range and forage resources, as used by both livestock and wildlife (game) production systems, across provincial boundaries.

The Directorate: AAP has developed the National Game-Farming Policy, which aims to:

- support the effective management of viable game-farming systems
- ensure the sustainable management of natural resources
- facilitate the development of norms and standards for sustainable game farming
- promote and support equitable access to health management
- establish a national game-farm and animal database
- facilitate promotion and marketing
- deal with relevant food-safety issues
- promote research, training and support services.

The National Game-Farming Working Group consists of all relevant stakeholders in the game-farming industry to ensure that all the parties concerned are represented and participate fully.

Beekeeping

The beekeeping industry contributes directly and indirectly to South Africa's GDP. At least 80% of the country's fruit and other vegetation is pollinated by honey bees. Many fruit growers obtain a nearly 100% higher crop yield by using the services of beekeepers in the pollination process.

By mid-2007, there was a domestic deficit of honey production, necessitating an increase in beekeepers. The income from honey- and hive-related products is estimated to be around R25 million. However, the impact that beekeeping has on commercial crop production is estimated to be worth more than R3 billion and involves some 250 000 jobs.

Indigenous food crops

The Directorate: Plant Production in the Department of Agriculture has developed the Draft Policy on Indigenous Food Crops. The policy was approved by the Departmental Executive Committee (Dexco) and recommended for consultation with various stakeholders.

Veterinary services

The State Veterinary Services constantly guards against the introduction of animal diseases from outside South Africa. Existing animal diseases, which may be detrimental to South Africa's economy and to human and animal health, are also monitored, controlled and combated.

Stock in the high-risk areas are inspected at short intervals.

The Directorate: Veterinary Services of the Department of Agriculture sets norms and standards for the delivery of veterinary services in South Africa.

Legislation provides the necessary powers to control diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease (FMD), swine fever, rabies and anthrax. South Africa, excluding the Kruger National Park and surrounding game reserves, is recognised as an FMD-free zone by the *Office International des Épizooties* (OIE), the world animal-health organisation.

The Department of Agriculture has created a biosafety and biosecurity unit and a branch to deal with all emerging diseases and improve on biosecurity and food-safety measures.

Animal-disease control is an important factor in ensuring the productivity of the livestock sector and in promoting international trade in agricultural products.

Surveillance systems are in place to ensure that all animal products entering and leaving the country are disease-free, or offer a negligible risk, and therefore pose little risk to the animal disease status of the country and are also safe for human consumption.

All commercial ports are thoroughly monitored to ensure that imported and exported goods are disease-free.

Particular emphasis is placed on the control of borders with neighbouring countries to prevent the introduction of FMD.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

The OBP is a state-owned public company. It has the capacity and technology to produce veterinary vaccines and related biological products for local and international markets.

The OBP is the sole or main producer of a number of vaccines for African and tropical animal diseases. The OBP provides vaccines to combat major outbreaks of diseases such as CBPP (lung-sickness in cattle), lumpy-skin disease, Rift Valley fever, bluetongue, African horse sickness and anthrax.

The OBP has joined the Pan-African Vaccine Network and contributes to the control of diseases, such as rinderpest and CBPP, through the supply of appropriate vaccines.

It is involved in projects with the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) to supply vaccines to African countries, and is working with the European Union (EU).

In the cutting-edge area of biotechnology, the research and development work of the OBP has led to the successful creation of new and innovative vaccines, such as the double sure vaccine, which is a combination treatment for the prevention of anthrax and black quarter disease.

The ARC and the OBP have signed a co-operation agreement for the diagnosis of diseases and the development and manufacturing of vaccines.

Animal identification

The Animal Identification Act (Aida), 2002 (Act 6 of 2002), administered by the Directorate: Veterinary Services in the Department of Agriculture, regulates the registration of unique markings for all declared animal species. Under the Act, the Minister of Agriculture declares animals for compulsory identification. The national Register is available to the South African Police Service through State Information Technology Agency links to trace ownership of individual animals to their owners.

However, that can only be successfully implemented if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

The directorate is also transferring knowledge to rural communities in consultation with provincial departments of agriculture on various themes, for example, the Aida, animal management, preserving fodder, feeding of animals, preventative activities, first aid to injured animals, marketing/harvesting of animals and their products, hygienic activities for meat and milk handling.

The Epidemiology Section is responsible for the monitoring of animal diseases in the country for both disease-control purposes and as an early warning system.

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the Department of Agriculture.

South Africa liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

Migratory pest control

In terms of the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture is obliged to control the registered national pests, namely, red-billed quelea, locust and blackfly. These are migratory pests and individual farmers cannot be expected to control these to prevent damage in areas away from their own farms.

The ARC provides research support to the department to optimise control procedures in terms of efficacy, cost and environmental considerations.

An international communication network has been established with neighbouring countries concerning migratory pest control. By providing early warning information on cross-border invasions of migratory pests, such as army worm, locust and red-billed quelea, the Information Core for Southern African Migrant Pests enhances the forecasting efficiency of control organisations, thereby assisting national crop protection agencies to ensure food security.

Marketing

The introduction of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996), has changed agricultural marketing policy and practice dramatically to ensure that it occurs in a free environment.

The deregulation process was aimed at ensuring that farmers and agribusinesses position themselves as players in the globally competitive environment.

The deregulation process entailed closing agricultural marketing boards, phasing out import- and export-control measures, eliminating subsidies and introducing tariffs to protect the domestic agricultural industry value chains against unfair international competition.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) and the Department of Agriculture are implementing a contingency plan to ensure the availability of vaccines against animal diseases that have a potential major economic impact on South Africa. The department is strengthening relations through joint ventures with the Southern African Development Community, Africa and the European Union. The department has noted challenges with regard to access to vaccines to prevent animal diseases. The OBP and the department will fast-track the primary animal-care programme, which will ensure access to vaccines to the rural communities. This is a targeted support programme for subsistence and emerging farmers.

The Directorate: Marketing in the Department of Agriculture works closely with the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC) on agricultural marketing matters.

The directorate develops, promotes and facilitates the implementation of programmes and measures aimed at supporting equitable access to competitive and profitable agricultural markets on a sustainable basis. This broad mandate is achieved through:

- administering market-access measures in the form of trade (imports and exports)
- facilitating fair, open, efficient and competitive domestic markets
- developing policies and strategies, and facilitating the implementation of programmes and measures to facilitate equitable access to mainstream the domestic market
- liaising with other government departments and relevant parties to enhance the efficiency of the agricultural marketing value chains.

The directorate comprises three subdirectorates, namely Marketing Administration, Commodity Marketing, and Marketing Development and Support.

The Subdirectorate: Marketing Administration administers the issuing of import and export permits to enhance trade and market access. It also facilitates the participation of new entrants in the trading environment.

The Subdirectorate: Commodity Marketing profiles key agricultural commodity marketing value chains and undertakes further analyses of market structures to determine market-access qualifiers.

It further investigates the behaviour of commodity and non-commodity markets to recommend policy options, thereby ensuring equitable access to mainstream markets by all.

The Subdirectorate: Marketing Development and Support implements programmes and measures to enhance the development of a vibrant domestic market. It implements projects such as marketing, infrastructure support and marketing training and provides agricultural marketing information.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

The NAMC was established by the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996. The council provides the Minister of Agriculture and Land Affairs with strategic advice on all agricultural marketing issues to improve market effiency and access for all participants, optimise export earnings and improve the viability of the agricultural sector. Between 2004/05 and 2007/08, the NAMC transformed itself from an organisation whose functions were limited to investigating and advising on statutory measures to being the main agency for agricultural marketing.

The council has developed an economic and market research programme that tracks economic trends and provides market information that is aimed at improving South Africa's position in future global agricultural markets.

The NAMC's Food Price Monitoring initiative is a continuation of the Food Price Monitoring Project, which assists government in understanding the impact of high food price inflation on the poor. The NAMC, in collaboration with the Maize Trust, the Oilseed Trust and the Winter Cereals Trust, developed the summer grains marketing scheme to support 5 000 growers from black farming communities over five years.

Land administration

The primary goal of the Directorate: Land Settlement is the internal administration of state agricultural land to achieve farmer settlement and ownership reform.

It also aims to facilitate the implementation of land and agrarian reform projects and promote sustainable growth in the agricultural sector for improved livelihoods by supporting projects, developing policy guidelines and ensuring the disposal of state agricultural land.

The directorate ensures farmer support by developing policies such as the Farmer-to-Farmer Mentorship Policy, implementing programmes such as the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (CASP) and other land-reform revitalising programmes.

The directorate manages and controls

125 227 ha of state land, which consists of:
- land already leased: 57 154 ha
- vacant land: 13 811 ha
- land for restitution: 54 262 ha.

The CASP has been reprioritised to respond timeously to the demands of the Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP). The LARP is aimed at accelerating and aligning land and agrarian reform in South Africa.

The LARP focuses on the following objectives:
- redistributing five million hectares of white-owned agricultural land to 10 000 new agricultural producers
- increasing black entrepreneurs in the agribusiness industry by 10%
- providing universal access to agricultural support services to the target groups
- increasing agricultural production by 10% to 15% for the target groups, under the Ilima Letsema Campaign
- increasing agricultural trade by 10% to 15% for the target groups.

The LARP is a joint project of the Department of Land Affairs, the Department of Agriculture, provincial departments of agriculture, agricultural state-owned enterprises and sector partners.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP) aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The IFSNP recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted and that prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the United Nations (UN) World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region. By May 2008, through the Household Food Production Programme, 15 765 food-production packages had been distributed and 6 390 vegetable gardens established.

Through the Farmer Support Programme, 903 clients received Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa) loans and R8,5 million was disbursed between January and March 2008.

Regional issues

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee (RAC) of the Regional Food Security Training Programme (RFSTP).

The RFSTP was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the RAC. The activities of the RFSTP focus on three main areas: strengthening the supply of food-security training services, strengthening the effective demand for training and development and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954. Regional plant-protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable co-ordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC) at regional level. The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation (RPPO) for Africa. The council came into being as the African Union's (AU) phytosanitary co-ordinating body in 1969.

International issues

As a signatory to the Rome Declaration, South Africa has committed itself to the implementation of the World Food Summit Plan of Action. For this purpose, South Africa reports annually to the World Committee for Food Security. South Africa is also collaborating with the FAO on the implementation of the Special Programme for Food Security, within the context of the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme.

South Africa is an active participant in other international standard-setting bodies that are vital to its global market share, such as the IPPC, OIE and Codex Alimentarius.

Risk management

Disaster risk management

Natural hazards that affect agriculture in South Africa include floods, hail damage, drought, runaway fires, cold spells, pests and diseases. While disaster risk is inevitable, the Department of Agriculture believes that it can be managed and reduced through appropriate policy and actions.

The department, in accordance with the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002), emphasises prevention, mitigation and adaptation strategies such as the strengthening of an early warning system for the sector and research on climate change, including large-scale epidemics and hazards; as well as the provision of information to farmers on agricultural markets and climate.

The development and strengthening of

institutions, mechanisms and capacities at all levels, particularly at community level, can systematically contribute to developing resilience to hazards.

The Department of Agriculture has established the National Agrometeorological Committee, comprising provincial departments of agriculture, the ARC, the South African Weather Service, relevant directorates within the department and certain academic and scientific institutions with a mandate to provide an early warning advisory role to the sector.

The committee meets quarterly to review conditions in the country, look at the expected weather conditions and issue advisories to the agricultural sector. This committee is chaired by the Directorate: Agricultural Disaster Risk Management.

The Agricultural Disaster Management Plan has been presented at the Agricultural and Sustainable Rural Development Commitee (ASRDC) meeting and Developmental Executive Committee (Dexco) for input and comments. The document was approved by the two committees for futher stakeholder consultation. The terms of reference document has been drafted and presented to the ASRDC. The commiteee's terms of reference will be presented to Dexco after which prospective members will meet with disaster-risk units operating in all provinces.

Agricultural drought management

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower average agricultural production yields. The Agricultural Drought Management Plan has been approved by the Dexco and was expected to be presented to the Intergovernmental Technical Commitee for Agriculture and Land and the National Intergovernmental Forum on Agriculture and Land in 2008.

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural co-operatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land Bank (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the State (1%).

Business and Entrepreneurial Development (BED)

The Directorate: BED in the Department of Agriculture is mandated to ensure that emerging entrepreneurs and established enterprises have some synergy in the development of their agribusiness endeavours. The entire process addresses the strategic objectives of eliminating skewed participation and inequity; optimising growth, remunerative job opportunities and income; and ensuring efficient and effective governance. It further promotes and provides strategic support in the development of viable and empowered businesses, stimulating growth and promoting unity through partnerships and niches.

The ultimate aims are to:

- unlock the economic potential of idle-to-underused resources of emergent groups through empowerment efforts
- facilitate restructuring and the expansion of existing farming/agribusinesses to enhance their competitiveness and contribution to the sector and the economy at large.

The Business Development Unit within the directorate works closely with industries/commodity groups to develop inclusive, enhanced and harmonised commodity strategies and joint action plans.

It assists marginalised groups in creating, expanding and rehabilitating business to become profitable and sustainable in the long term, focusing on growth and wealth creation based on mutual gains in the sector. It also encourages and facilitates win-win partnerships for niche enterprises at all levels in the agricultural value chains.

Through the directorate, the Department of Agriculture has contributed towards the development of the National Emergent Red Meat Producers' Organisation's database, the Grain Industry Strategy, the Fruit Industry Plan and the implementation of the Cotton Industries Strategy.

The directorate renders support and guidance to the cotton, grain and fruit industries in the implementation of their developed strategies. It is facilitating and supporting the potato industry in developing an industry strategy.

The unit has facilitated, jointly with industry role-players, the initial roll-out and implementation of the AgriBEE Entrepreneurial Programme in floriculture. The aim is to develop market/business opportunities for BEE enterprises across the value chain to grow and become globally competitive and sustainable, contributing to shared growth and employment creation.

Through joint internal actions in the department, activities are being mainstreamed to further reach black farmer organisations and entrepreneurs, accelerating their participation into commodity groups through farmer-mobilisation interventions.

The unit is in alignment with the objective of AsgiSA and supports Operation Gijima, Women in Agriculture and Rural Development and National

Movement for Rural Women Projects, as well as programmes involving people living with disabilities, youth and farm labourers.

It is facilitating and supporting the industry in developing a floriculture industry strategy aligned to the sector plan.

It collaborates with other tiers of government and sectors in rendering advice, support and guidance to agricultural value-chain projects owned by land-acquisition beneficiaries, the designated groups and other departmental grant-funded projects.

The Entrepreneurial Development Unit is responsible for initiating and rolling out the Small, Medium and Micro-Enterprise (SMME) Excellence Model in collaboration with partners within the provinces. These interventions focus on entrepreneurial development, increased agricultural enterprises' performance and job-creation activities, especially in rural-development nodes.

By mid-2008, the Entry Level Model was reviewed in line with lessons learned concerning the training of facilitators and farmers. The SMME version will follow. This process is intended to improve the effectiveness of skills development among emerging farmers.

The initial partnership with the University of Fort Hare is commencing its third year of operation and three additional partnerships are being established to support the roll-out process of the model.

The objective is to encourage as many emerging farm enterprises and sustainable enterprises to operate profitably to encourage sustainable jobs and income capacity in the sector through the development of high-level skills by means of SMMEs.

The BEE Unit leads in the formulation of BEE policy, norms and standards in the sector in terms of the AgriBEE Charter Gazette and the Broad-Based BEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

Through AgriBEE implementation, the goals of access to existing resources and opportunities, enhanced participation and ownership by designated groups (women, youth, people living with disabilities and labour) will be targeted.

LandCare Programme

The LandCare Programme is a community-based and government-supported approach to the sustainable management and use of agricultural natural resources.

The vision of the LandCare Programme is for communities and individuals to adopt an ecologically sustainable approach to the management of South Africa's environmental and natural resources, while improving their quality of life. It implies that cultivation, livestock grazing and the harvesting of natural resources should be managed in such a manner that no further degradation (such as soil erosion, nutrient loss, loss of components of the vegetation and increased run-off) occurs.

The overall goal of the LandCare Programme is to optimise productivity and sustainability of natural resources, resulting in greater productivity, food security, job creation and better quality of life for all. The LandCare Programme has been expanded into additional subprogrammes. The department has initiated the integrated Soil Protection Strategy (SPS) in support of growth and sustainable development in the agricultural sector.

The project aims to improve agricultural productivity and contribute to economic growth by focusing on erosion, declining soil acidity, soil fertility and organic matter, and veld rehabilitation.

The SPS focuses on high- to moderate-potential agricultural land with high erosion status (about three million hectares) and will initially identify three priority tertiary catchment areas.

LandCare themes are grouped into two areas, namely focused investment (WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare, Eco-Technology, Programme [ETP], Infield Rainwater Harvesting [IRWH] and Junior LandCare) and small community grants.

The Department of Agriculture transferred R55,7 million in 2006/07 to the nine provincial departments for LandCare projects. The projects involved 15 258 beneficiaries and resulted in 2 428 ha of soil protected from soil erosion, 4 358 ha of range land brought under improved management and 794 ha of weeds and alien plant controlled.

LandCare awareness was promoted through 12 891 activities and events, including capacity-building and partnerships with stakeholders and involving learners and other young people.

Focused investment

WaterCare

The WaterCare theme targets Limpopo in particular, because of water shortages and the importance of water for irrigation. This theme establishes a framework for managing land and preventing the silting up of dams for irrigation. WaterCare works in partnership with the community to develop action plans for managing and restoring irrigation schemes.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

VeldCare

This theme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production. It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development. Economic- and social-development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The SoilCare theme encourages rural farmers in KwaZulu-Natal, the Eastern Cape and Mpumalanga to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

Eco-Technology Programme

The objective of the ETP is to identify, adapt, demonstrate and spread promising and appropriate eco-technologies locally (such as conservation, farming and water harvesting), which will provide resource-poor farmers with social, economic and environmental benefits. The expected outcomes of this theme are an increased number of promising and appropriate eco-technologies identified and evaluated on-farm; an increasing number of farmers adopting eco-technologies; and improved social, economic and environmental (e.g. employment) benefits.

ETPs will initially be implemented in presidential nodal areas where water is very scarce, such as KwaZulu-Natal (Umkhanyakude and Zululand) and Limpopo (Sekhukhune and Bohlabela).

Infield Rainwater Harvesting

IRWH technology, which improves the efficiency of water use and increases yields with a suitable choice of crop combinations under low and erratic rainfall conditions on low-potential clay soils, has been transferred with great success to numerous communities in the Free State and Eastern Cape.

Using IRWH in croplands, community members have increased maize and sunflower yields by between 26% and 40% compared with conventional practices. Socio-economic studies on vegetable gardens have shown that IRWH can secure household food security for nine out of 10 years, compared with three out of 10 years using conventional cropping methods.

Transfer of technology, training and extension are used to implement IRWH, with consequent improvement of household livelihoods in rural communities where the majority of members live below the poverty line.

Junior LandCare

Junior LandCare encourages young people to develop a sense of responsibility towards the land and other natural resources, in order to conserve these for future generations.

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes the promotion of food security at home and in schools, promoting awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that aim to promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The aim of the Land Bank is to promote, facilitate and support agricultural development. It does this through initiatives aimed at supporting equitable ownership of agricultural land by historically disadvantaged people, agrarian reform in all its dimensions, and development and access to land by historically disadvantaged people for agricultural purposes. The Land Bank is further mandated to initiate programmes aimed at removing the legacy of racial and gender discrimination in the agricultural sector. This is done by improving productivity, profitability, investment and innovation in the agricultural and rural financial systems to stimulate the growth of the sector, and seeing that land is used in an environmentally sustainable manner, thus ensuring food security.

To deliver on its mandate, in the past five years, the Land Bank has given direct assistance to emerging farmers. An estimated R793 million in retail loans has benefited 9 600 individual farmers. The improved capital position of the Land

Bank, following capital injection and a guarantee by government, will enable the bank to make disbursements to and support black farmers, thus accelerating agricultural development. In this respect the development of the new business model will enable the bank to focus on delivery, thus contributing to agricultural development.

The bank has disbursed a total of R2.4 billion in support of AgriBEE. The bank planned to disburse R300 million to developing farmers in 2007/08, R1 billion in 2008/09 and R2 billion in 2009/10.

The bank also intends to strengthen the systems, policies and processes for operational and strategic implementation. This includes adjusting credit policies to align with the new business model and developing partnerships with other sector players.

In July 2008, the administration of the Land Bank was transferred from the Department of Agriculture to the National Treasury.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa

Mafisa is a state-supported programme providing micro and retail agricultural financial services on a large, accessible, cost-effective and sustainable basis in rural areas. Mafisa was launched as a pilot in three selected nodal districts of three provinces in 2005. The pilot areas were Sekhukhune District in Limpopo, OR Tambo District in the Eastern Cape and Mkhanyakude District in KwaZulu-Natal. It will be rolled out to other provinces.

Poor emerging farmers and agribusinesses who were previously turned down by financial institutions can now obtain short- and medium-term production loans of up to R100 000 per person at an affordable rate from this programme as long as they meet the set criteria. The estimated 10 million potential beneficiaries include farmworkers, farm tenants, household producers, small landholders, food-garden producers and micro-agricultural entrepreneurs. Mafisa is strictly for the agricultural sector but caters for the entire agricultural value chain. The products and services offered by Mafisa include agricultural production credit, savings mobilisation, micro insurance and payment and transfer facilities. With regard to the farmer support programme, 903 clients received assistance loans and a total of R8,5 million was disbursed in the first quarter of 2008.

Agri South Africa

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves some 70 000 large and small commercial farmers.

Agri SA promotes, on behalf of its members, the sustainable profitability and stability of commercial agricultural producers and agribusinesses through its involvement in and input at national and international levels. Agri SA is structured into three chambers, namely the General Affairs Chamber, which deals with general agricultural policy matters on behalf of nine provincial affiliates; the Commodity Chamber, which deals with subsector policy issues on behalf of 25 commodity organisations; and the Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC) with 65 agribusinesses as members.

Agri SA's annual congress, representative of its affiliates, is its highest decision-making body and also elects the organisation's president, deputy president and chamber vice presidents.

Agri SA is a member of Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the International Federation of Agricultural Producers, the Southern African Federation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA participates in the Presidential Commercial Agriculture Working Group that deals with policy matters, specifically in terms of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, labour laws, training, taxation, financing, land reform, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government matters.

It publishes a bimonthly magazine and a weekly electronic newsletter, and also runs a regular radio programme in collaboration with the SABC.

Agricultural Business Chamber

The ABC is a sectoral body representing an important component of South Africa's business sector. ABC's members represent total assets of almost R20 billion and an annual agricultural business turnover of about R20 billion.

ABC members operate more than 2 000 service centres countrywide with more than 100 000 employees. In many rural areas, members of the ABC form the business hub of the community and make a key contribution towards maintaining rural infrastructure.There are about 250 agricultural co-operatives and companies affiliated with the ABC. The ABC is an integral part of the Agri SA Group, and is associated with Business South Africa, various international bodies and the International Agribusiness Management Association.

Agricultural businesses play a significant role in the economy of South Africa as handlers, processors and marketers of agricultural products, and as suppliers of production input and services.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts a variety of projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

Agribusiness as an economic sector

Agribusiness can be divided into two categories: non-co-operative business ventures and co-operatives or transformed co-operatives.

Non-co-operative business ventures, also known as profit companies, are involved in the production and distribution of agricultural equipment and production requisites, and the marketing of agricultural products.

Co-operatives dominate the distribution of intermediate requisites and the handling, processing and marketing of agricultural products.

Agricultural co-operatives or agribusinesses are regarded as the farmers' own independent business organisations. There are close to 1 000 primary agricultural co-operatives and agribusinesses throughout the country. They supply their members with production input such as seed, fertiliser, fuel and repair services. They also provide credit and extension services, and handle a large percentage of their members' produce.

There are more than 15 central co-operatives in the country, which aim to supply the primary co-operatives with specific services such as the processing and marketing of agricultural products, insurance services for crops, short-term cover and farming requisites.

The structure of agribusiness has changed substantially since the deregulation of the agricultural sector into a free-market economy in 1994. Many co-operatives have transformed into private companies, consolidations and mergers have occurred, international groups have entered South Africa, and agribusinesses have listed on the JSE Limited.

National African Farmers' Union

Nafu strives to promote the interests of the disadvantaged farming sector by lobbying for access to support services and empowering its members through effective communication and capacity-building programmes.

Institutional capacity-building

The Department of Agriculture has developed a databank for South Africa's agricultural human-resource capacity.

In collaboration with the Economic Development Institute of the World Bank, the department has designed and developed training courses for rural restructuring and development.

Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme

The CASP assisted 817 projects benefiting 53 248 people in the 2007/08 financial year. A larger number of projects than targeted were reached (817 instead of 786) but the number of beneficiaries was less than what was targeted.

An estimated 1 085 projects were targeted to benefit from the programme in the 2008/09 financial year, reaching an estimated 37 900 beneficiaries.

Training and research

South African agriculture has a strong research component. Many of the people involved are world leaders in their respective fields. The ARC, an autonomous statutory body set up in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), is the largest agricultural research organisation in Africa. The ARC provides research support to the Department of Agriculture and the nine provincial departments of agriculture. ARC scientific expertise supports most of the Department of Agriculture's regulatory directorates, such as the directorates: animal health, public veterinary health, agricultural production, agricultural resource cultivation and plant health.

The ARC also supports other agricultural institutions such as the Registrar of Livestock Improvement and Identification, the Registrar of Brands, the South African Veterinary Council and the Perishable Products Export Control Board. (See Chapter 17: *Science and technology*.)

South Africa has a number of specialised agricultural high schools and regular schools offering a comprehensive range of agricultural subjects. Prospective farmers can be trained at 11 colleges. Degree courses and B. Tech degrees are offered by the faculties of agriculture at various universities.

Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

International relations

The Department of Agriculture's Directorate: International Relations facilitates and co-ordinates international activities on both multilateral and bilateral bases.

The department is a member of the FAO; the Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research; the Food, Agriculture and Natural Resources Sector of the SADC; the International Seed-Testing Association; the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development's Seed Schemes; the Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants; World Organisation for Animal Health; the International Organisation for Vine and Wine (OIV); and the International Cotton Advisory Committee. Contributing to the political, social and economic development of Africa is an international priority for the department.

Agriculture continues to be the mainstay of African economies and is an important driver for socio-economic growth.

South Africa's agricultural engagement in Africa is guided by a clear sense of the enormous potential for agricultural trade, training, research and technical co-operation opportunities that exist on the continent.

The directorate developed the International Agricultural Strategy, which sets priorities for international engagement in the medium term. The strategy is guided by South Africa's foreign-policy and economic-development objectives. The priorities are:

- consolidation of the African Agenda
- active participation in the AU
- active participation in and efficient implementation of the programme of the SADC food, agriculture and natural resources; and trade, finance and investment directorates
- sustainable development and poverty alleviation through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)
- implementation of the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement.

International trade relations

The Department of Agriculture's Directorate: International Trade analyses international trade and related policies, advises on multilateral and bilateral agricultural trade policy and promotes trade initiatives.

The directorate is responsible for dealing with matters concerning agricultural trade relations with other countries and organisations, such as the Sacu, the SADC, the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and the International Grains Convention. The directorate participates in exploring possible new trade relations in collaboration with the Department of Trade and Industry.

South Africa maintains bilateral trade agreements with countries in Africa, and will be involved in trade negotiations with India as part of Sacu. Sacu has concluded trade agreements with the EU through the South Africa-EU Trade Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA), South American Common Market (Mercosur) and the European Free Trade Association.

In July 2008, the SADC Free Trade Area was launched. This will be a stepping stone towards the SADC's common market.

Negotiations have continued with Mercosur in an attempt to balance the agreement in favour of the smaller members of both Sacu and Mercosur.

The negotiations with the United States of America (USA) met with some difficulty and both Sacu and the USA have decided to pursue a trade, investment and development co-operation agreement.

This framework will enable a series of trade-enhancing agreements. It is individually also involved in the WTO agricultural negotiations, as a member of the G20, the Cairns Group and the Africa Group.

The Directorate: International Trade is responsible for implementing South Africa's commitments in terms of the Agreement on Agriculture as defined under the Doha Development Agenda. South Africa commits itself to comprehensive negotiations aimed at substantial reductions in tariffs, with a view to phasing out all forms of export subsidies and achieving substantial reductions in all trade-distorting support.

In addition, the department is creating market-access opportunities by implementing the minimum market-access commitments contained in the agreement.

South Africa's objectives regarding the agricultural negotiations are to establish a fair and market-oriented trading system through a programme of fundamental reform. Other objectives are to achieve a substantial improvement of market access for South African agricultural exports; to ensure that South Africa's commitment, in terms of domestic support, fully covers the development needs of the country; and that special and differential treatment is available for developing countries.

South Africa is developing trade relations with other countries. This includes implementing the agricultural aspects of the Sacu Agreement that came into effect in July 2004, the SADC Protocol on Trade and the South Africa-EU TDCA. The South Africa-EU TDCA was implemented on 1 January 2000. The department has introduced a system for making full use of opportunities created by the agreement.

This includes providing information to potential exporters, as well as the administration of export quotas granted to South Africa under the agreement. Since 1 January 2000, the department has been issuing export permits for various products such as wine, canned fruit, fruit juice, cut flowers, proteas, cheese and frozen strawberries to be exported to the EU at reduced levels of duty.

With the enlargement of the EU, the agreement was extended to include new members. It provides for reciprocal preferential access for the agreed list of products, including agriculture. The review of the TDCA will be merged with the SADC Economic Partnership Agreement negotiations with the EU.

The South African Government signed the Fixed Preferences Agreement with Mercosur (a treaty establishing a common market between Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay) in December 2004.

The department has reviewed the Trade and Marketing Policy to ensure stronger emphasis on long-term sustainability, and to make certain that policies and implementation are aligned. In addition, the Directorate: International Trade undertakes annual strategic market research to inform the positioning of the agricultural export sector in the global trading environment.

The department is investigating and evaluating export opportunities for agricultural products on world markets. The Directorate: International Trade facilitates national capacity and the training of role-players in the use of trade tools.

International agreements and conventions

South Africa is a signatory to a number of international agreements and conventions, requiring that the matter of sustainable resource use and management be addressed in a responsible way.

Agenda 21 is an action plan and blueprint for sustainable development, and was one of five documents adopted by more than 178 governments at the United Nations (UN) Conference on Environment and Development in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. Specific to sustainable resource use is Chapter 14, which addresses the promotion of agriculture and rural development.

International conventions that apply to aspects of sustainable resource use include the Convention on Biological Diversity, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change, and the Convention to Combat Desertification (CCD). The CCD requires that South Africa draw up a national action programme, which will be integrated into a regional programme for the SADC region.

All these activities are receiving attention under the leadership of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, involving all stakeholders, including the national and provincial departments of agriculture.

Import and export control

The Import Export Policy Unit of the Department of Agriculture's Directorate: Animal Health aims to formulate and support policies to reduce sanitary (health) risks in the import and export of animals and animal products.

Import requirements vary according to the product and the animal-health situation in individual countries.

South Africa is an active member of the OIE. Disease reports are received from the OIE and through direct contact with the veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products is based on a series of requirements considered appropriate by the importing country to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department is one of the key regulatory state departments with the authority to enforce laws enacted by Parliament to protect the South African consumer, producer and farmer; the environment; and other national interests.

The department's regulatory activities regarding plants and plant products are primarily enforced by the directorates: agricultural products inspection services (APIS) and plant health.

In addition, the South African Revenue Service participates in this effort by detaining imported goods when requirements are not met.

The Directorate: APIS is involved in inspections and other related activities aimed at ensuring that imported luggage, cargo, mail, animals and plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases, and comply with genetic resources and quality-assurance prescripts and standards. These border inspections are conducted by the Division: Ports of Entry Point Control at designated ports of entry. The directorate has introduced the use of detector dogs at the OR Tambo International Airport in Kempton Park. These dogs are trained to detect regulated agricultural products at international arrival halls. This has been one of the mechanisms that APIS is using to intensify regulated agricultural product inspections at points of entry.

Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements of trading partners, and post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at inspected borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

These inspections, together with national control inspections, are conducted by the Division: National Plants and Plant Products Inspection Services for compliance with plant-health, plant-improvement, genetic-resources and food- and quality-assurance legislation. The division also carries out various surveys around the country.

The Directorate: Plant Health's core mandates are to manage the risks associated with plant pests and diseases by developing and amending phytosanitary legislation and facilitating safe trade in plants and plant products.

Control measures are published to prevent or combat the spread of pests to other areas in the country. Import control is vital to prevent the introduction of potentially harmful foreign pests. Prospective importers of plants and plant products have to apply for an import permit for those controlled goods mentioned in the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983.

The Pest Risk-Analysis (PRA) Division conducts scientific analyses of risks posed, based on scientific data, and specific phytosanitary requirements set out according to the phytosanitary risk(s) involved. These are stipulated in the permit issued to the importer. Importers are obliged to present the material to the official inspection representative at the port of entry.

The Directorate: Plant Health's Division Plant Quarantine Services manages the risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material. This is achieved by prescribing a compulsory quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories as determined by the PRA Division. The core function of Diagnostic Services is to prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests by testing and auditing all imported plant material.

The Early Warning Division ensures sound plant health-risk management implementation services through surveillance, detection and rapid response.

Early detection of economically important exotic pests prevents the spread of such pests, thereby maintaining pest-free areas in respect of specific pests. Closely linked to early detection is proper pest-awareness programmes to ensure the agricultural sector and the general public are kept informed. The International Standards Division aims to facilitate effective and efficient official phytosanitary communication between the Directorate: Plant Health and its international, regional and other national plant-health clients.

This is done through the management of national plant-protection contact points and participation in initiatives of external clients such as the WTO Committee on Sanitary and Photosanitary Measures, the IPPC and its working groups and committees, the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, other national plant-protection organisations or governments, research institutes, as well as any member of the international agricultural trade sector. The Import/Export Protocols Division's core function is to ensure and maintain market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant-health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes in compliance with trading-partner requirements according to established protocols.

Food safety and quality assurance

Policy on Animal Feeds

The Department of Agriculture published the South African Policy on Animal Feeds on 30 April 2008. This document is intended to serve as a framework for the regulation and legislation of animal feeds in South Africa.

South African Pesticide Initiative Programme (Sapip)

The final evaluation of the Sapip was done from 10 February to 20 March 2008 by a consortium called Agri-Systems. In terms of the evaluation report, the programme is considered as an activity rather than results-directed and is regarded as extremely efficient in the implementation of activities.

The programme was generally regarded as having achieved its objectives.

However, there were areas which needed to be sustained, such as the Emerging Farmer Working Group, to ensure that issues affecting emerging farmers receive continuous attention; and the chemical maximum residue limit information hub, which was critical in setting up maximum residue limits for minor crops.

Food-control system

A task team, made up of representatives from the departments of agriculture, of health, and of trade and industry, succeeded in appointing a service-provider to compile a country profile, which will inform the strategy to be followed in implementing a comprehensive food-control system.

World Wine Trade Group (WWTG)

The WWTG is an informal grouping of industry and government representatives from wine-producing countries, founded in 1998. The group aims to share information, collaborate on a variety of international issues and create an environment for free trade in wine. The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Canada, Chile, Mexico, New Zealand, South Africa and the USA.

The Agreement on Mutual Acceptance of Oenological Practices and the Agreement on Requirements for Wine Labelling form the basis of the WWTG. These are enabling agreements to facilitate the trade of wine among signatory parties by recognising each other's wine-making and labelling practices as being in compliance with their own. This significantly improves trade flows among the signatory parties, thereby reducing transaction costs relating to exports.

In a short period of time, the WWTG has proven to be an important force in influencing the regulation of the international wine trade. Beginning with a shared vision and a commitment to open international trade, participating countries have begun to reshape the regulatory environment in which the international wine business operates.

Progress at the International Wine Office

Member states of the OIV met on 20 June 2008 in Verona, Italy, for the sixth General Assembly of the OIV.

Among other things, the General Assembly adopted by consensus the OIV *Guide on Environmentally Sustainable Viticulture*. This document is a guide to setting up environmentally sustainable production in the international sector, principally concerning production, the processing of grapes in addition to packaging of products, while taking into account the larger considerations of sustainable production.

Progress with the Liquor Products Amendment Bill

The Liquor Products Amendment Bill was approved by the Cabinet Committee on 9 April 2008. The Bill included a provision on the constitution of the Wine and Spirit Board to make it more representative.

It also includes provisions to ensure compliance with South Africa's international commitments.

The provision for the implementation of the Wine and Spirit Agreement has been included in the Liquor Products Amendment Bill.

This will therefore provide the authority to implement the agreement.

Provisional implementation has, however, commenced on 1 January 2002 by virtue of an exchange of letters between South Africa and the EU.

National analytical services

The Department of Agriculture's laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products.

The laboratory in Stellenbosch uses state-of-the-art equipment (liquid chromatography mass spectrophotometer) to detect low concentrations of compounds used in wine adulteration. Two projects have been completed:

- adulteration of Sauvignon Blanc wine with foreign methoxypyrazines
- investigation into the bromine content of South African wines.

Following the success of these projects, improved market access can be achieved by South African wine producers and confidence in South African wines among the international community will be gained. The Pretoria laboratory also uses a liquid chromatography mass spectrophotometer to expand the scope of chemical residue tested for by the laboratory as per recommendation by the EU's Food and Veterinary Office.

Meat safety

Food safety, quality-risk awareness and education programmes

The overall functions of the Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance are carried out to create an enabling envionment for food-business operators along the value chain to ensure food safety and quality of agricultural products from farm to fork.

The directorate carries out its mandate in terms of the legislation, regulations, requirements, norms and standards for both local and export markets. To ensure industry compliance to food safety and quality standards, and to foster understanding of management decisions by the clients, the directorate conducts food safety and quality education and awareness programmes. Through these programmes, the directorate reaches out to clients consisting of industry associations, farmers, exporters, retailers, manufacturers, and beneficiaries of the LARP. The awareness programmes are also aimed at consumers and the general public to promote the consumption of safe, nutritious and quality food.

In terms of the Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000), no person may sell or provide meat for human or animal consumption unless the animal from which the meat is sourced has been slaughtered at a registered abattoir. The Directorate: Veterinary Services provides for regulations under the Meat Safety Act, 2000 and, in co-operation with the provinces, ensures that the essential national standards for abattoirs and meat safety required by the Act are implemented countrywide.

The directorate is responsible for monitoring standards at export abattoirs and for the safety of imported meat. It provides inspection services at a number of export abattoirs to ensure compliance with EU requirements.

Land Affairs

The Department of Land Affairs aims to be a global leader in the creation and maintenance of an equitable and sustainable land dispensation that results in social and economic development for all South Africans.

The department's key focus is on providing enhanced land rights to all South Africans, with particular emphasis on previously disadvantaged individuals, which will result in increased income levels and job opportunities, productive land use and well-planned human settlements.

South Africa's land reform is premised on three programmes: Land-Tenure Reform, Redistribution and Restitution. While the Department of Land Affairs implements land-tenure reform and redistribution, the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR) implements the Land Restitution Programme.

The department has four branches, namely Land and Tenure Reform (LTR), Restitution, Land Planning and Information (LPI) and Corporate Services.

Branch: Land and Tenure Reform

The Branch: LTR is responsible for implementing redistribution, tenure reform and state-land administration and disposal. Its components are the Chief Directorate: Strategic Management and Technical Support Services and the Chief Directorate: Land Reform Implementation Management and Co-ordination (LRIM).

The Chief Directorate: Strategic Management and Technical Support Services consists of the Public Land Support Services, Tenure Reform Implementation Systems and the Redistribution Implementation Systems. This chief directorate is responsible for developing and refining legislation, systems and procedures to enable provincial land-reform offices (PLROs) to deliver land at scale. It also supports PLROs in the areas of capacity-building, information management and communication. The Chief Directorate: LRIM is responsible for co-ordinating the actual implementation of the land- and tenure-reform programme and manages state land at provincial level, through the PLROs and at district level through the district land-reform offices.

Land-reform implementation

The department delivered 2,191 million ha of land by August 2007. The target is to redistribute 30% of white-owned commercial agricultural land by 2014. To achieve this, 3% has to be redistributed every year.

The envisaged massification programme and the Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy (PLAS) will go a long way towards addressing the concerns raised during the National Land Summit in July 2005 about the slow pace of land delivery. In line with the objective of increasing the pace of land delivery, an implementation framework for the PLAS was developed. Specific systems were developed for a pilot project in the Free State. The department has since adopted this framework, which was expected to be replicated across the country. This new approach is one of the interventions the department has developed to respond to the concerns raised at the summit. The Commonage Subprogramme delivered 55 661 ha in 2006. The department delivered 2 793 ha of land for settlement and slum clearance and plans to revive the bilateral approach to align policies, programmes and resources with those of the Department of Housing.

The details of the National Implementation Framework (NIF) for the Communal Land Rights Act (CLaRA), 2004 (Act 11 of 2004), were finalised during 2005/06. The purpose of the NIF is to clarify the important implementation arrangements for the CLaRA, including the provision of necessary resources for implementing the Act.

Launched in 2001, the LRAD Programme, which is a subprogramme of the Land Redistribution Programme, provides financial support to emerging farmers through a match-funding arrangement in which the beneficiary has to contribute money, labour (sweat equity) or capital equipment.

Depending on the size of the contribution, the beneficiary qualifies for a grant of between R20 000 and R100 000.

Vesting and disposal of state land

The department has finalised the audit of state land, which consisted of 280 000 land parcels totaling 23 million ha.

This exercise was key in ensuring that there is efficient public land administration.

Deeds registration

The nine deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg and Mthatha. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than seven million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas. To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. The first phase of this project entails establishing a deeds registry in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga.

The deeds registry is open to any member of the public to access information with regard to the following:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Branch: Land Planning and Information

The Branch: LPI is responsible for the surveying, mapping and registration of land, as well as for spatial planning and information.

Surveys and Mapping

This chief directorate provides infrastructure (a survey control network) to define any position on the Earth in terms of mathematical co-ordinates.

Professional land surveyors in private practice base their surveys of land and real rights on this control network and in relation to other existing land rights.

The National Mapping Agency provides maps in useful formats to show what exists on the ground.

The Chief Directorate: Spatial Planning:

- provides policy so that government can control planning
- defines how the country should be planned
- provides spatial information to organisations.

The Chief Directorate: Cadastral Surveys defines land rights in terms of:

- what the right is
- where the right is
- who owns the right
- how that right is owned.

It consists of four pillars:

- private-sector professional land surveyors
- surveyors-general
- private-sector conveyancers
- the Registrars of Deeds.

The surveyors-general support cadastral surveys through the adjudication of every cadastral survey performed by the professional land surveyors in private practice to ensure that they comply with all legislation and can be registered by the Registrar of Deeds. Surveyors-general also provide a repository for all documents that identify the position of immovable property rights lawfully created.

Conveyancers take documents of surveys approved by the Surveyor-General and lodge them with the Registrars of Deeds to register ownership. The Registrars of Deeds also provide a repository of all title deeds registered and transferred.

All the information emanating from these functions is available as hard-copy maps as well as in digital format.

Branch: Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 19 June 1913.

The commission is led by the Chief Land Claims Commissioner and has nine regional offices headed by regional land claims commissioners.

Since its establishment in 1994, the CRLR has settled 74 808 out of 79 696 land claims lodged, at a cost of R16 billion. It is expected that all outstanding claims could be settled by 2011.

In June 2008, 2 621 households had received 81 050 ha of land worth R186 million as part of the commission's efforts to fast-track the delivery of land in commemoration of the 95th anniversary of the promulgation of the Native Land Act of 1913.

One of the largest land claims settled by the CRLR during 2007/08 was the Richtersveld properties with a total value of R303 million, involving 80 000 ha of land for the Nama community. The State paid R50 million to the community as compensation for having been deprived of access to the land and mineral rights.

An amount of R190 million was allocated towards the payment of the extraordinary reparation to the community as compensation for the depletion of the diamond resources.

The settlement provides for the formation of a Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture (PSJV) between the diamond mine Alexkor and the Richtersveld community. The PSJV will put in place a mine-development plan and programme to upgrade the land and sea diamond resources and will develop a business plan to contribute to a viable mining venture.

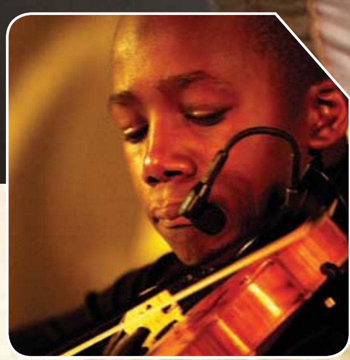
Acknowledgements

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics, 2008
AgriNews
Agricultural Research Council
BuaNews
Business Day
Commission for the Restitution of Land Rights
Department of Agriculture
Department of Land Affairs
Economic Review of the South African Agriculture 2007/08, published by the Depart ment of Agriculture
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
South African Sugar Association
South African Wine Industry Information and Systems
http://land.pwv.gov.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.fin24.com
www.gov.za
www.news24.com
www.sawis.co.za

Suggested reading

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.
AgriBEE: Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Framework for Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, 2004.
Agriculture Investment Sourcebook: Agriculture and Rural Development. Washington: World Bank, 2005.
Atkinson, D. *Going for Broke: The Fate of Farm Workers in Arid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.
Bell, S. *The Happy Warrior: The Story of TC Robertson*. Howick: TC Robertson Trust, 2005.
Derman, B, Odgaard, R and Sjaastad, E. eds *Conflicts over Land and Water in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007. South Africa, Chapters 6 and 7 (pp116-158).
Draper, P and Nkululako K, eds *Trade in Genetically Modified Foods: Decoding Southern Africa's Regulatory Approach*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2007.
Economic Review of South African Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.
Harr, T and Vorster, I. *Indigenous Knowledge on the South African Landscape: Potential for Agricultural Development*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Huggins, C and Clover, J. eds. *From the Ground Up: Land Rights, Conflict and Peace in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Pretoria: Institute of Security Studies, 2005.
Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.
James, D. *Gaining Ground? "Rights" and "Property" in South African Land Reform*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Lee, M and Calvard, K. eds. *Unfinished Business: The Land Crisis in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa, 2004.
Moyo, S and Yeros, P. eds. *Reclaiming the Land: The Resurgence of Rural Movements in Africa, Asia and Latin America*. London: Zed Books; Cape Town: David Philip, 2005.
Ntsebeza, L. *Democracy Compromised: Chiefs and the Politics of Land in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2006.
Ntsebeza, L and Hall, R. eds. *The Land Question in South Africa: The Challenge of Transformation and Redistribution*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Rosenberg, A and Linders, T. *Organic Agriculture: A Handbook*. Johannesburg: Lindros Whole Earth Consultants, 2004.
Schadeberg, J. *Voices From the Land. Pretoria*: Protea Book House, n.d.
Smith, B. *The Farming Handbook*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, c. 2006.
Strategic Plan for the Department of Agriculture 2004. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, 2004.

ARTS AND CULTURE



The Department of Arts and Culture seeks to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

National symbols

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika). The Call of South Africa* was written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918. The music was composed by Rev ML de Villiers in 1921. *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* was composed in 1897 by Enoch Sontonga, a Methodist mission schoolteacher.

The words of the first stanza were originally written in isiXhosa as a hymn. Seven additional stanzas in isiXhosa were later added by the poet Samuel Mqhayi. It has been translated into most of South Africa's official languages.

National flag

South Africa's national flag was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity. The flag was designed by the State Herald.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top. When it is displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

A focal point of the coat of arms is the indigenous secretary bird with its uplifted wings, crowned with an image of the rising sun. The sun symbolises a life-giving force, and represents the flight of darkness and the triumph of discovery, knowledge and understanding of things that have been hidden. It also illuminates the new life that is coming into being. An indigenous South African flower, the protea, is placed below the bird. It represents beauty, the aesthetic harmony of the different cultures, and South Africa flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat symbolise the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant, depicted in pairs to represent men and women, also represent wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

The shield, placed in the centre, signifies the protection of South Africans from one generation to the next. The spear and a knobkierie above it are representative of the defence of peace rather than the pursuit of war. This shield of peace, which also brings to mind an African drum, conveys the message of a people imbued with a love of culture. Its upper part is a shield imaginatively represented by the protea.

Contained within the shield are some of the earliest representations of humanity. Those depicted were the very first inhabitants of the land, namely the Khoisan people. These figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art. The motto on the coat of arms, *!ke e:/xarra// ke*, written in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National orders

National orders are the highest awards that the country can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.

The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, co-operation and friendship towards South Africa.

The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.

The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are the:

- national animal: springbok
- national bird: blue crane
- national fish: galjoen
- national flower: king protea
- national tree: real yellowwood.

Arts and culture organisations and institutions

National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC, a statutory body that aims to bring equity to heritage promotion and conservation, was officially constituted on 26 February 2004 in terms of the NHC Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999). The council creates an enabling environment for preserving, protecting and promoting South African heritage.

Its other objectives are to protect, preserve and promote the content and heritage that reside in orature to make it accessible and dynamic; to integrate living heritage into the council and all other heritage authorities and institutions at national, provincial and local level; to promote and protect indigenous knowledge systems (IKS); and to intensify support for promoting the history and culture of all South Africans.

The fourth World Summit on Arts and Culture will be held in Johannesburg from 28 September to 1 October 2009.

The summit is a global celebration and an investigation of the impact of the arts, artists and arts organisations on culture, society, the economy and nation-building, and the role of public funders (arts councils and ministries of culture). It is convened by the International Federation of Arts Councils and Culture Agencies (IFACCA) and takes place every three years. The IFACCA was established in 2001 and has more than 100 members worldwide. The World Summit on Arts and Culture is open to everyone with an interest in arts and cultural policy, and public support for artistic endeavour.

The proposed theme of the summit is the role of the arts in promoting intercultural dialogue. A key aim of the summit will be to celebrate and investigate South Africa's unique experience in this field and to acknowledge and explore the different operating environments and approaches of arts funding agencies working in the developed and the developing world.

During the 2007 Medium Term Expenditure Framework, the council developed, together with other heritage role-players, a heritage-development strategy to unlock the economic potential of the sector. The Heritage Charter examines the current state of heritage in South Africa as it manifests itself in the policies and activities of the following heritage institutions: libraries, archives, museums and records, monuments and historic sites, geographical names, national symbols, language and IKS. It also provides a framework of principles and mechanisms that should underpin the preservation, protection, promotion and transmission of heritage in the next five years. The NHC has been spearheading campaigns to revive the values of ubuntu.

South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra)

The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999), established the Sahra to provide for the identification, protection, conservation, and promotion of South Africa's heritage for the present and future generations.

The aims of Sahra are to introduce an integrated system for the identification, assessment and management of heritage resources and to enable provincial and local authorities to adopt powers to protect and manage them.

Sahra has established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to an approved body or individual, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- historical shipwrecks.

Theft of cultural heritage

South Africa is a signatory to the 1970 Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property. South Africa is also in the process of becoming a signatory to the Unidroit Convention on Stolen or Illegally Exported Cultural Objects. These conventions ensure that the cultural property of signatory countries is protected internationally from theft and illicit trafficking.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC is an advisory body appointed by the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the SAGNC Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998). The council advises the minister on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty or jurisdiction acquired by treaty.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names should be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries, and names of countries
  - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
  - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
  - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
  - names of living persons.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces. These committees play an important role in standardising geographical names. A list of all approved names is available at *http://sagns.dac.gov.za.*

National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)

The NAC aims to:

- support arts practice by creating and providing opportunities to achieve excellence in the arts, within a climate of freedom
- achieve equity by redressing imbalances in the allocation of resources
- promote and develop appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts through strategies that include education, information and marketing
- enhance support for and recognition of the arts by promoting and facilitating national and international liaison between individuals and institutions
- establish and recommend policy in the development, practice and funding of the arts.

It also offers bursaries to tertiary institutions for undergraduate students. Individual bursaries are offered for studies towards a postgraduate qualification in South Africa and abroad.

Over the last few years, the NAC has allocated more than R500 000 towards bursaries for undergraduate and postgraduate students. In 2008, it allocated R200 000 for the academic year. The NAC also funds the Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng philharmonic orchestras and the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Mmino

Mmino, a South Africa-Norwegian education and music programme, hosted by the NAC in close co-operation with the Norwegian Concert Institute, is the only funding programme in South Africa that funds music projects exclusively.

Mmino aims to support projects with national impact in the areas of music education, documentation, research and exchange, choral music and festivals.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions assist to create a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa was founded in 1997 as a joint initiative of government and the business sector. Registered as a Section 21 company and a public-benefit organisation, Basa aims to promote mutually beneficial and sustainable business and arts partnerships that will benefit civil society in the long term.

Basa receives annual funding from the Department of Arts and Culture to implement its

National symbols and orders

The Order of the Baobab

The Order of Luthuli

The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order of Mapungubwe

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order of Ikhamanga

National bird: blue crane

National flower: king protea

National fish: galjoen

National tree: real yellowwood

National animal: springbok

On 30 May 2008, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, launched a nation-wide campaign in the form of public hearings to test public opinion on the transformation and standardisation of geographical place names.

supporting grant scheme. It is designed to attract funding or in-kind support from the business sector by offering a grant to arts projects specifically for additional marketing or other benefits for the business sector.

In addition, Basa initiates or enters into partnerships with programmes and projects designed to mainstream the arts and lift their public profile, including a range of media partnerships and high-profile arts projects with national reach. Basa boasts some 130 companies as corporate members nationally. This number fluctuates as companies merge and shift their focus areas. The *Business Day*/Basa Awards are presented annually.

Community art centres and other cultural organisations

About 166 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed. The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion, advanced programmes and vocational training. The centres also vary from craft centres, community halls and community theatres. Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development. The Department of Arts and Culture supports programmes in most needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental. The National Task Team of Community Art Centres has been established to develop a framework that will address urgent and pressing needs at community art centres.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

ACT is the oldest funding agency in democratic South Africa. It was established to secure financial and other resources for arts, culture and heritage; and to project the needs and role of the sector into the public domain. Its vision is to establish a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the development of arts, culture and heritage in South Africa.

Its mission is to attract and provide funding for the sustainable development and growth of the arts, culture and heritage in South Africa, realised through mutually beneficial partnerships between the corporate, public and cultural sectors focused on making a positive difference to the lives of all South Africans.

ACT is responsible for:

- developing and promoting arts, culture and heritage in general
- advancing artists and cultural and heritage practitioners
- promoting arts, cultural and heritage education
- constructing facilities and creating and developing an infrastructure for these purposes.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including but not limited to arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

The annual ACT Awards recognise the significant contributions made by communities, artists, administrators, educators and journalists towards the development and advancement of arts and culture in South Africa.

National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC is a statutory organisation responsible for heritage. The NHC's core mandate is the co-ordination of the heritage sector to facilitate transformation of the sector, as well as funding civil-society initiatives. The NHC has since its inception facilitated the engagement of civil society on arts, culture and heritage.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in Culture

The Investing in Culture Programme provides the necessary skills to enable people to assume greater responsibility for their future.

The programme aims to provide access to skills and markets as a tool for urban regeneration, rural development and job creation.

Investing in Culture is not meant to replace or fund provincial and local arts and culture programmes, nor substitute for the role of funding organisations such as the NAC, National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), the provincial arts and culture councils, and the NHC.

The programme develops capital by allocating resources to ensure return on investments that will fulfil the key objectives of the Department of Arts and Culture and the broader imperatives of government.

The national anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

Functions and activities include:

- ensuring the realisation of empowerment opportunities through training and job creation in the arts, culture and heritage sector
- potential sustainable economic growth through, among other things, music, arts and heritage
- building social cohesion
- promoting co-ordinated governance (across the three tiers of government)
- capacity-building through support provided by provincial co-ordinators
- contributing to the Expanded Public Works Programme
- aligning projects with the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy and integrated development plans.

The Department of Arts and Culture has, through the Investing in Culture Programme, funded and supported 394 projects to the tune of R200 million since 2005. The programme created 7 374 jobs and training opportunities, of which 45% of the beneficiaries were women, 39% youth and 4% were people with disabilities. Three of the department's Investing in Culture projects have won the *Sowetan*-Old Mutual Community Builder of the Year Awards. The projects are the Ndhengeza Xizambani Community Project, Kopanang Community Project and Tinghwazi Arts and Crafts, based at rural communities in the Mopani District Municipality, Limpopo.

Working with other members of the Jobs for Growth Task Team, the Department of Arts and Culture intends to establish Mzansi Store. The envisaged Mzansi Store will market quality products in large quantities to meet the growing demand for South African arts and craft products.

In up-scaling the Investing in Culture projects, the department continues to develop relationships with the private sector to market and sell quality products that are made by the department's projects ahead of the 2010 Soccer World Cup and beyond. Shoprite-Checkers has pledged to work with the department in selling the products produced by these projects. The Strokes of Genius portal, sponsored by Shoprite-Checkers and supported by the departments of arts and culture and trade and industry, also markets arts and craft products.

The Investing in Culture Programme received R100,06 million in 2008/09.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and to celebrate its heritage.

The legacy projects include the:

- Women's Monument: On 9 August 2000, former President Thabo Mbeki unveiled a monument at the Union Buildings in Pretoria to commemorate the contribution of the women of South Africa in the struggle for freedom. The ceremony marked the day, in 1956, when 20 000 women marched to the Union Buildings to protest against government's pass laws.
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal: This house has been restored by the Department of Arts and Culture as a museum with a visitors' interpretative centre. The project also involved the unveiling of Chief Luthuli's sculpture at the KwaDukuza municipal grounds.
- Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project: Following the unveiling of the Ncome Monument and Wall of Remembrance on 16 December 1998, the Ncome Museum was opened on 26 November 1999. The structures honour the role played by the Zulu nation in the battle.
- Samora Machel Project: The Samora Machel Monument in Mbuzini, Mpumalanga, was unveiled on 19 October 1998. The second phase was completed in 2005.
- Nelson Mandela Museum: This museum in the Eastern Cape was opened on 11 February 2000. It is being developed as a single component comprising three elements, namely a museum in Mthatha, a youth centre at Qunu, and a visitors' centre in Mvezo, where former President Mandela was born. The second phase was completed in 2005.
- Constitution Hill Project: The Old Fort Prison in Hillbrow, Johannesburg, was developed into a multidimensional and multipurpose precinct that houses the Constitutional Court (CC) and accommodates various constitutional commissions. The Constitution Hill Project involved the development of the Constitutional Hill precinct to accommodate the CC, the Constitution Museum, the Women's Jail, the Old Fort and a commercial precinct.

- The Sarah Baartman National Heritage Site in Hankey in the Eastern Cape and the Sarah Baartman Human Rights Memorial in the Western Cape.
- Freedom Park Project: Construction of the Freedom Park Project, a memorial to the anti-apartheid struggle at Salvokop in Pretoria, began in 2002. It is expected to be completed in 2010. The first phase of the R560-million memorial site was handed over to government in March 2004. This phase, costing R45 million, involved the design and construction of the Garden of Remembrance in honour of the country's departed freedom fighters.
- The Khoisan Heritage and Culture Institution in Hankey, Kouga Municipality, as part of the Khoisan Legacy Project. An estimated R5 million was allocated for the first phase.

Other projects underway are the 1981 Matola Raid Memorial in Maputo, Mozambique; the rehabilitation and development of the Lock Street women's prison in East London into a museum; development of the former apartheid state security Vlakplaas farm into a heritage memorial site; and the OR Tambo Memorial Project in Bizana in the Eastern Cape.

Indigenous Music and Oral History Project

The Department of Arts and Culture has partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand. The mandate for these universities is not only to conduct research on indigenous music and instruments, but to also identify and collect all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national competitions on indigenous dance and music called the Zindala Zombili National Dance and Music competitions. These competitions showcase the diverse indigenous music and dance in South Africa.

Heritage Month celebrations

The Department of Arts and Culture is responsible for the Heritage Month celebrations. Heritage Month promotes and celebrates various aspects of South African heritage, in accordance with the adopted theme.

Provinces host various heritage activities during Heritage Month. These activities culminate in national Heritage Day, which is held on 24 September.

> In April 2008, the African World Heritage Fund, which was established by the Department of Arts and Culture in 2006, held an advocacy meeting in Abuja, Nigeria, to introduce the fund to African stakeholders.

Mosadi wa Konokono (Woman of Substance)

Mosadi wa Konokono is a flagship campaign of the Department of Arts and Culture. It is a socio-cultural-economic campaign that was concep-tualised as a vehicle for elevating the profile of ordinary women in grassroots communities.

The campaign uses arts and culture to foster social cohesion and to nurture a spirit of economic self-determination. The campaign has also been created as a platform to enable the emergence of talented women and youth who are already instrumental in and proactively building their communities.

Education and training

Training is critical for the development of arts and culture, to achieve both the developmental and economic potential of the sector.

The creative industries form part of the Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta).

Recognising the challenges facing this sector, the Mappp-Seta, in partnership with the departments of arts and culture and of labour, the NAC, and the NFVF, initiated the Creative Research Education and Training Enterprise South Africa (Create SA) Strategic Project to develop a comprehensive on-the-job training framework for the creative industries. The project is funded by the National Skills Fund and the Department of Arts and Culture, and focuses on people who otherwise might not have had access to training opportunities.

The Artists in Schools Project places artists with a flair for education and teaching within schools wishing to offer arts curricula.

Access to arts

The Arts, Social Development and Youth Programme is working towards greater arts access for all communities, particularly marginalised groups. These groups include women, youth in distress and people with disabilities.

One project supported under arts access includes art therapy under the auspices of the Art Therapy Centre.

The department launched the National Youth, Arts, Culture and Heritage Expressions Campaign in May 2006 to coincide with the 30th anniversary of the Soweto uprisings. This campaign facilitates learnerships for disadvantaged youth in the technical aspects of arts and culture management. The aim is to broaden exposure to various aspects of arts management, with a view to create sustainable employment opportunities.

The pilot Art in Correctional Facilities Programme (introduced in 2005) is a rehabilitative vehicle for creative expression for offenders. It provides a skills base that is intended to ease re-entry into society.

The department, as part of extending the reach of arts access, is seeking to include children under the age of five who live with their mothers in correctional facilities.

The department has also devised the Social Cohesion Campaign that has cultural fluency as a central component. This is aimed at engendering a constructive socio-cultural dialogue to create a nation that embraces cultural diversity and fosters a unifying South African identity.

Cultural tourism

Cultural tourism is one of the most rapidly growing sectors of the multibillion-rand international tourism industry, and is an area in which South Africa is well placed to compete. Professional and innovative museums, galleries and theatres are key attractions for cultural tourists.

Cultural villages

Most tourists visiting South Africa are eager to explore the country's cultural diversity. At the same time, an increasing number of local tourists want to learn more about the people they were separated from under apartheid. (See Chapter 20: *Tourism*)

Various projects around the country offer insight into South Africa's cultural wealth, ranging from traditional dances and rituals in rural areas, to excursions into the urban and township milieux that give South Africa its defining features. These include Khaya Lendaba near Port Elizabeth; the Basotho Cultural Village situated in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve near Harrismith, Free State; the Makhosini Cultural Village and Tourism Initiative in the Valley of Kings at Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal; the Lesedi Cultural Village near Johannesburg; Tlholego in Magaliesburg; the KoMjekejeke Cultural Village, north of Pretoria; the Mapoch Ndebele Village in Winterveld, north-west of Pretoria; the Gaabo Motho Cultural Village in Mabopane; the Rainbow Cultural Village, west of the Hartbeespoort Dam, North West; Botshabelo in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; and Shangana in Hazyview, Mpumalanga.

> The Department of Arts and Culture is focusing on the development and enrichment of young people in a programme called Youth in the Arts. Through such interventions, young people will have the latitude to showcase their inherent talents and capabilities.
>
> In the area of youth development and enrichment, the Department of Arts and Culture promotes youth-driven festivals to unearth and nurture talent in technical services. The festivals enable young people to acquire technical, production and event-management skills.
>
> With regard to the events and technical-services industry, the department has facilitated the establishment of a task team to develop a comprehensive action plan to accelerate transformation to ensure an effective industry. This initiative will address issues such as enterprise development, training, a code of good practice, funding and licensing of patents.

Cultural industries

The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) has identified the creative industries as one of the key areas in which South Africa can achieve the goals of job creation and greater economic growth in South Africa.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries. The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnership with significant stakeholders to map the cultural industries.

International relations

The Department of Arts and Culture's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting African heritage.

The department's mandate is to ensure that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage and to use artistry as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the United Kingdom (UK), China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and Belarus. South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

Provincial roadshows to promote the implementation of the convention are undertaken by the department with all spheres of government, the Department of Arts and Culture's associated institutions as well as with civil society.

In March 2008, the department participated in the World Intellectual Property Organisation: Standing Committee on Copyright and Related Rights (WIPO SCCR) meeting in Geneva, Switzerland, to discuss and finalise the two treaties on the protection of audiovisual performances and broadcasting organisations.

South Africa hosted the first WIPO international seminar on the role of intellectual property on development.

South Africa's membership of the Commonwealth Foundation was successfully launched and well attended by the diplomatic corps, non-governmental organisations, government and other guests.

Africa and Middle East South African Development Community (SADC) Visual Arts Exhibition

The Department of Arts and Culture in partnership with the Development Bank of Southern Africa hosted the (SADC) Visual Arts Exhibition. In 2007, countries such as Botswana and Lesotho took part.

In 2008, Madagascar and Angola joined South African artists and as an extension of the exhibition, the art works were also exhibited at the Cape Town International Jazz Festival in March 2008.

African Cultural Music and Dance Festival

The Department of Arts and Culture planned to host a cultural festival in August 2008.

Fifteen countries from Africa were invited to participate, including the Democratic Republic of Congo, Mali, Botswana and Kenya.

The festival aimed to research and review the impact of the role of culture on issues such as social cohesion, social justice, conflict resolution, xenophobia, tolerance and respect for cultural diversity.

Bilateral co-operation

Brazil

In building relations with Brazil, the Department of Arts and Culture participated in the 2007 Art Mundi Craft Exhibition that took place in Sao Paulo, Brazil. The exhibition is a traditional international arts and craft event organised in the southern region of Brazil, counting on the presence of about 1 000 artists per edition, including folklore presentations and themed houses.

The exhibition attracts visitors from Latin America and other foreign countries.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

The IBSA countries signed the Memorandum of Understanding on Cultural Co-operation during the IBSA Summit that was held in Pretoria at the Presidential Guest House in September 2007.

South Africa took part in the IBSA cultural festival that was held in Brazil in 2007 and was represented by the Phambili Marimba Cultural Group.

China

The Department of Arts and Culture and Ministry of Culture in China enjoy good cultural relations. The two countries have had numerous cultural exchanges under the auspices of the Programme of Co-operation signed in 2001 and 2006.

1 January 2008 marked the 10th anniversary of the establishment of formal bilateral relations between South Africa and the People's Republic of China.

The two countries celebrated this event through numerous cultural activities such as song and dance, film festivals, art exhibitions and fashion shows.

The Department of Arts and Culture also used this opportunity to market South African arts and culture and to create a market for South African artists.

India

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, visited his Indian counterpart, Ms Ambika Soni, to discuss the renewal of the Programme of Co-operation in the fields of arts and culture between the two countries, which expired in 2006.

United Kingdom

In 2007, 21 curators were sent to the UK for curatorship training under the South Africa-UK curatorship programme. A further 10 underwent training in 2008.

Arts festivals

The range of arts festivals around South Africa offers visitors the opportunity to combine their pursuit of culture with sightseeing, wine tasting, beach visits, wildlife viewing, history, palaeoanthropology and relaxing in some of South Africa's most beautiful spots.

The National Arts Festival, held annually in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings of its kind staged in Africa.

It showcases southern African talent in all arts disciplines and there is also growing interest and participation from artists from the rest of Africa and the world.

In 2008, the festival focused on film and the film programme included a special focus on films, including Michael Raeburn's *Triomf*, Rayda Jacobs' *Confessions of a Gambler*, John Kani's *Nothing But The Truth*, Gavin Hood's *Rendition* and Vincent Cox's *Voice in the Dark*.

The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is a vibrant festival for the performing arts, presented mainly, but not exclusively, in Afrikaans. It is held annually in Oudtshoorn in the first quarter of the year.

Disciplines include drama, cabaret and contemporary and classical music.

The Arts Alive International Festival, held in Johannesburg, is an annual festival of music, dance, theatre and visual arts. Over the years, Arts Alive has become synonymous with high-quality performances by artists from around the globe.

Heritage-reclamation festivals are also held at local level in communities destroyed by apartheid, such as Vrededorp (Fietas) in Johannesburg.

The Mangaung Cultural Festival (Macufe) in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa.

Some of the winners of the 2007 Naledi Theatre Awards held in March 2008, included:

- Best Production of a Musical – *The Lion King*: produced by Lebo M and Pieter Toerien, directed by Julie Taymor
- Best Ensemble Production – *Telling Stories*: produced by the State Theatre, written and directed by Mpumelelo Paul Grootboom.
- Best Performance in a Musical (Female) – Kate Normington: *Hairspray*
- Best Performance in a Musical (Male) – Harry Sideropoulos: *Hairspray*
- Best Director of a Play or Musical – Yael Farber: *Molora*
- Best Musical Director/Score/Arrangement – Janine Neethling and Zwai Bala: *Soweto Story*
- Best Performance by an Actor in a Supporting Role/Cameo: Play or Musical – Mike Huff: *Hairspray*
- Best Performance by an Actress in a Supporting Role/Cameo: Play or Musical – Bronwyn van Graan: *Shirley, Goodness and Mercy*
- Best Comedy Performance (Male) (Play, Musical or Revue) – Alan Committie: *Stressed to Kill*
- Best Performance by Newcomer/Breakthrough (male) (The Brett Goldin Trophy) – Christo Davids: *Shirley*, *Goodness and Mercy* .

Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; and the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg.

The Department of Arts and Culture and the NAC support numerous festivals throughout South Africa, including the Cape Town International Jazz Festival, Port St Johns Festival, Splashy Fen Music Festival in Durban and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The departments of arts and culture and of environmental affairs and tourism have established a forum of festival directors to maximise tourism opportunities.

Theatre

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, The Grahamstown National Arts Festival will be extended in 2009 to cater for the thousands of soccer fans who will visit the Eastern Cape during the Confederations Cup in June 2009. The same will apply in 2010 for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top-class.

Apart from early productions, notably the ground-breaking musical *King Kong* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only began to make an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was there that Johannesburg theatregoers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes*, *Master Harold … and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinatti – Scenes from City Life, Call Me Woman, Black Dog Inj'emnyana, Outers, Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa to overseas audiences most effectively during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

However, with the new century underway, the pendulum is swinging back, and, in nurseries like the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square's Saturday Children's Theatre workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the Johannesburg Youth Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events like the Market's community and young writers' festivals.

Music

South African music is characterised by its fusion of diverse musical forms. South Africa has nurtured the development of an array of distinctive styles of music, and it has contributed significantly to music heard on the continent.

These styles range from South African jazz, which describes a range of music from early marabi-inspired sounds in the late 1930s and 1940s by bands like the Merry Blackbirds Orchestra, to current performers such as trumpeter Hugh Masekela, Jonas Gwangwa, Abdullah Ibrahim, Jimmy Dludlu, Judith Sephuma and others.

Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular. They combine elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Popular kwaito musicians include Chomee, Elvovo, Kabelo, Zola, Skwatta Kamp, Mandoza, DJ Cleo, Bricks and Kelly Khumalo. He does hiphop.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

In music, the department has solid foundations to build on. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Department of Arts and Culture funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC. The department funded the Johannesburg Philharmonic Orchestra to attend the Berlin Orchestral Conference in April 2008. The South African Musical Education Training Programme and the Music is a Great Investment Youth Orchestra was also funded in 2008.

The launch of the Association of Independent Record Companies of South Africa (AIRCO) will chart a new paradigm for the recording industry and give artists easier access. The Department of Arts and Culture strengthened AIRCO by supporting it to attend Midem (Music Market International) to join discussions on global music industry development and other trends with their counterparts from the UK, United States of America (USA), Australia, Canada, Japan, the European Union, New Zealand and Brazil.

South African music has earned a strong position in the world market. In 2008, the Soweto Gospel Choir was nominated for a third Grammy Award – with two wins already under its belt. *Live at the Nelson Mandela Theatre*, the choir's latest album, was nominated in the Best Contemporary

World Music Album (Vocal or Instrumental). The song, *Down to Earth*, was nominated for Best Motion Picture Song. It's the closing number in the Disney movie, *Wall-E*, recorded by British musician Peter Gabriel and the Soweto Gospel Choir.

Ladysmith Black Mambazo was also nominated again for two Grammy Awards. The group was nominated in the Best Contemporary World Music CD category and Best Sound Production category.

In 2008 Fikile Mvinjelwa, an outstanding baritone from Cape Town, performed the lead in *Rigoletto* at the New York Metropolitan Opera.

Figures from the Recording Industry of South Africa show that the industry as a whole grew by 2,4% between 2006 and 2007. The total industry sales rose from R996 million in 2006 to R1 020 million in 2007.

Midem 2008

Midem is an international music market, held annually in France. The event is also designed to provide opportunities for business networking. South Africa had its first pavilion at Midem in January 2005.

In 2008, the department provided support both financially and in-kind to about 70 companies to participate. The Midem project is part of the ministerial projects of "Taking South African Music to the World".

South African Music Week

The South African Music Week is an annual project that celebrates South African music on radio, television and through live events in the community. The project is considered the largest platform for developing South Africa's live and recording music industry through broadcasting, workshops, awareness and the promotion of local music products.

During the music week, many broadcasters increase airplay of South African music, providing artists with a platform to market their products and providing income in the form of royalties to copyright owners.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

Moshito is aimed at promoting collaboration among players from both the private and the public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking, information exchange, music business education, promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services, as well as to strenghten business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

Blank-recording media levy

The Music Industry Task Team has recommended the implementation of a blank-tape levy to curb piracy. Through this system, a levy is charged on blank recording carriers, and in some cases also on recording equipment. The principles on which these levies have been established, and the levels at which they have been set, have often been ambiguous.

In most countries, the legislation on blank levies includes a provision that a proportion of the money collected should be used for collective cultural purposes.

The Department of Arts and Culture is conducting research and feasibility studies on issues pertaining to a blank-tape levy for the South African music industry.

Support for the Electronic Music Southern African Electronic Music Conference

The electronic music sector is one of the strategic platforms for growth of the local music industry. The sector has shown its strength in appealing to the youth market in terms of music sales.

In 2006, the Department of Arts and Culture for the first time entered into a partnership with DJU, a body formed by individual DJs and music industry practitioners to address the plight of aspiring practitioners through skills development.

The partnership has strengthened the efforts of DJU and the conference, and played a critical role in increasing the scale at which the project was pitched, thus allowing many aspiring music producers to be accommodated. The 2008 conference was held in July.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 14th annual Sama ceremony took place in May 2008. Categories and winners included:

- Album of the Year: Freshlyground – *Macheri*

South Africa's Soweto Gospel Choir won a second consecutive Grammy Award in the category Best Traditional World Music for their album *African Spirit* at a ceremony at the Staples Centre in Los Angeles in February 2008.

In November 2008, South Africa's Goodwill Ambassador, Miriam Makeba, passed away after performing in Rome. "Mama Afrika" was one of the country's biggest singing talents and apartheid pioneers.

- Best Male Solo Artist: Hip Hop Pantsula – *Acceptance Speech*
- Best Female Solo: Karen Zoid – *Postmodern World*
- Best Duo/Group: Freshlyground – *Macheri*
- MTN Record of the Year: DJ Sdunkero – *Maputo Song.*

Indigenous music

The department funds the annual National Traditional Dance and Music Festival, called Zindala Zombili, under the auspices of the African Cultural Heritage Trust.

This platform showcases and promotes the rich and diverse indigenous traditional dance and music of South Africa.

The festival entails 22 regional and eight provincial competitions, culminating in a national festival.

Dance

South African dance is unique in its vitality and energy. More and more South African dance companies, individual dancers and choreographers are being invited to perform at festivals throughout Europe, Australia and the USA.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life. An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The Wits Theatre (part of the University of the Witwatersrand) is also a popular dance venue. It is home to the annual First National Bank Dance Umbrella.

In 2008, the Dance Umbrella celebrated 20 years of presenting new contemporary choreography and dance in Johannesburg. The festival featured choreographers and companies from all over South Africa, and presented work ranging from community-based/youth groups, young up-and-coming choreographers and new commissioned work from South African artists to international companies. It has been the main "stepping stone" for many South African choreographers who now work internationally.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country.

The largest ballet company is the South African Ballet Theatre, situated in Johannesburg.

The Department of Arts and Culture is working towards the development of a theatre and dance strategy for the development and sustainability of the sector. The project will culminate in the establishment of a national committee to work hand in hand with government on sustaining the sector. In the past year, the department undertook and concluded research on these sectors. This will be followed by theatre izimbizo in all the nine provinces. The purpose of these izimbizo will be to bring together the sector and gather information in preparation for a national conference where the theatre and dance sectors can nominate the national theatre and dance working committees.

Visual arts

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities (such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape) display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary work.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest.

These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa (Unisa) Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of Durban-Westville.

Corporate collections of national interest include those of Standard Bank, Amalgamated Banks of South Africa (Absa) and the MTN cellular phone network.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects that promote the visual arts. These range from arts publications and women-empowerment programmes to national and international exhibitions and infrastructure funding.

The Department of Arts and Culture's art collection has been restored and the works are displayed in the building occupied by the department.

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, hosted the launch of the Timbuktu Script and Scholarship Exhibition at the Castle of Good Hope in August 2008. The exhibition is an integral part of the South Africa-Mali Project, which was initiated by former President Thabo Mbeki in 2002. The exhibition, co-hosted by the Department of Arts and Culture and the Iziko Museums of Cape Town, highlighted the heritage value of the manuscripts, especially in their conservation.

The department is also supporting women in the visual arts. In August 2008, it recognised female artists for excellence in this field.

There was also an exhibition by women at Museum Africa. The Department of Arts and Culture will be embarking on an audit of the visual arts sector to identify areas for skills training, job creation and policy development.

The Visual Century Project, conceived by the South African-born CEO of the National Arts Gallery in Oslo, Norway, is undertaking research on the visual arts in South Africa over the last century. The project will involve exhibitions at all major galleries, publications and documentary films.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

National and international photographic exhibitions and competitions are held in South Africa annually, and various national awards are bestowed on local photographers. The Agfa Wildlife and Environment Photographic Awards, presented for the first time in 1981, have become one of Africa's most prestigious wildlife photographic competitions, attracting entries from top wildlife photographers, not only from Africa, but across the world.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage to which all the cultural groups in the country have contributed. Through the centuries, a trend in South Africa's architectural style has developed, which has been referred to as an innovative marrying of traditions.

Today, this is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world. Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities. Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value. More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit private organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in the country in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in South Africa, which is also the largest of its type in the world.

The mountains, especially the Drakensberg range and those in the Cape, are home to fascinating rock-art panels.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space. Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoin fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world are found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone 10 200 years old, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back 3 900 years.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Crafts

The Department of Trade and Industry estimates that South Africa's craft subsector alone contributes about R2 billion or 0,14% to South Africa's gross domestic product annually, providing jobs and income for around 38 000 people through at least 7 000 small enterprises. The South African craft sector is developing in leaps and bounds, clearly defining its positioning as an important second economy. Its growth areas largely create jobs and opportunities for rural and inner-city urban women in South Africa.

The Annual Beautiful Things Craft Supermarket continues to provide market access for this young industry. The Department of Arts and Culture Craft Emporium and retail outlets will provide yet another platform for craft development in this country. It is envisaged that the Craft Emporium will provide a platform to bridge the existing the gap between craft producers and the marketplace.

The Department of Arts and Culture is also running a special ministerial project of craft competitions in the genres of textile and embroidery and indigenous clay pottery to discover new talent. In recognition of the wealth of knowledge, spiritual endowment, knowledge of VhaVenda IKS, the department spearheaded the opening of a rural-based arts and craft gallery.

The Vhutsila a vhu Tibiwi Art and Craft Gallery, is a realisation of a dream come true for the ideals of skills development and preservation of heritage and IKS in the Vhembe district.

The department has craft projects in all nine provinces. The products of these and other projects can be viewed at a number of venues, including two state-assisted outlets at the Bus Factory in Newtown, Johannesburg, and the Boardwalk in Port Elizabeth.

Design

The Department of Arts and Culture has launched a number of initiatives aimed at creating centres of expertise. These have promoted collaborative ventures between the private and public sectors in areas of product design and the use of computer-aided design (CAD) engineering. The initiatives involve:

- a partnership with the South African Fashion Week on developmental initiatives to address the Second Economy
- established designers facilitating workshops to unearth new talent and fuse design with craft
- the National Product Development Centre at the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, which operates within a national framework, optimising the contributions of service-providers throughout the country in the area of design technology
- the CAD initiative at the CSIR, which is linked to the technology station at the Free State University of Technology and similar institutions in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape
- the Cape Craft and Design Institute
- the awarding of design learnerships through Create SA to help emerging designers
- the annual Design Indaba Conference and Expo held in Cape Town in February.

The indaba is regarded as one of the premier design events in the world. The expo is a gallery, a marketplace, a school and a theatre featuring the finest original South African design, covering everything from homeware and jewellery to architecture, fashion, film, multimedia and graphic design.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and vibrant literary heritage and its writers are recognised and celebrated across the world. South Africa is the only country in sub-Saharan Africa to boast two laureates for literature, namely JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer.

The net turnover of the book sector was estimated at about R5 billion in 2007. This included about R3,2 billion earned through publishing and R1,8 billion from book sales.

The new pop culture in poetry, often refered to as "spoken word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers is also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish. The youngest winner of the Noma Award, the most coveted literary award on the continent, is Lebogang Mashile, a vibrant South African poetess. A young writer from KwaZulu-Natal, John van der Ruit, debuted with *Spud* in 2005, a novel that sold more than 130 000 copies in less than three years, thus breaking all records for a South African novel.

The Winner of the 2008 Royal Society of Literature Ondaatje Prize was Graham Robb for his book *The Discovery of France.*

The past three years have recorded a rapid growth in the South African book sector. The establishment of the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), which was launched in June 2007, has created a platform for the book industry to develop an integrated growth strategy. Among other accomplishments, the SABDC has been able to consolidate industry indicators that are fundamental in the development of the sector. One of the major projects of the SABDC is the development of the Draft Framework for the National Book Policy to serve as a legislative framework to guide growth and development strategies in the book sector.

The Cape Town International Book Fair has in just two years become the biggest gathering for the book industry in South Africa. The second book fair in June 2007 attracted more than 49 000 people from different countries around the world. Time of the Writer and Poetry Africa literary festivals have been in existence for more than a decade and continue to attract participants from different parts of the world.

WorldFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. The Johannesburg and the Franschoek literary festivals are welcome additions to the growing literary culture in South Africa.

In December 2005, the Write Associates, an independent communication and arts-and-culture event-management company, supported the Department of Arts and Culture in inaugurating the South African Literary Awards. Since their establishment three years ago, the awards have developed to include categories such as Literary Lifetime Achievement Awards, the National Poet Laureate Prize, the K Sello Duiker Award for Young Novelist, Literary Journalism Award and many other categories. Other awards currently in existance include the *Sunday Times* Literary Awards, the MNET Awards and the BTA/Anglo Platinum Short Story Award.

Magazines and literary journals have always played a pivotal role in the development of the South African literary contours. In the recent past, a number of literary magazines and journals have emerged and continue to provide regular publishing space for both seasoned and budding writers.

A number of writers contribute to publications such as *Chimurenga*, *Timbila*, *Botsotso*, *Afropolitan*, *Words*, *Baobab* and *New Contrast*. These journals create a platform for emerging writers to hone their skills while also opening space for literary criticism.

The Department of Arts and Culture allocated a substancial budget to the National Library to reprint some out-of-print literary classics in indigenous languages. This process involves public consultations where members of the public are invited to identify and recommend books they regard as classics in their own languages. The project has already triggered a lot of enthusiastic debate, thus opening a national discourse on "what makes a classic".

This project was launched during the opening of the new National Library building late in 2008. The National Library is another effort to ensure better access to books and enhance the culture of reading and writing in society.

On 18 May 2008, the Department of Arts and Culture, in collaboration with the Commonwealth Foundation, hosted the Commonwealth Writers' Prize in Franschhoek, Western Cape. South Africa was chosen among 53 Commonwealth member states to host the prize ceremony. South Africa was the second African country after Ghana (2001) to host this prestigious occassion. The previous winners of the prize included Nadine Gordimer, JM Coetzee, Zakes Mda, Maxine Case, Shaun Johnson and the late K Sello Duiker.

The Department of Arts and Culture, as the custodian of the nation's heritage, embraces its diverse cultures and encourages the promotion, preservation and use of various languages in both oral and written forms of literature. The publication of books is a critical vehicle for developing and preserving languages and literature to ensure social cohesion.

There is an English literary museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal, is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature. The centre is committed to preserving and adding to the Collection to maintain the largest library of African literature on the continent.

Film

At the dawn of the 20th century, South Africa was the site of the earliest films ever shot. The Anglo-Boer/South African War of 1899 to 1902 was the first-ever war to be filmed.

South Africa continues to participate in, among other festivals, the Cannes Film Festival. This has helped to catapult the film industry into the world cinema fraternity. The department is assisting the Federation of Pan-African Film Producers while it is headquartered in South Africa, following the Pan-African Film Summit that South Africa hosted in 2006. This body provides a creative home for film-makers from the African continent and serves as a marketing platform for African films on the continent.

South Africa has now risen from being a film-maker destination to a film-producing country.

The NFVF was established to develop and promote the film and video industry in South Africa. It provides for and encourages the creation of opportunities for people from disadvantaged communities to participate in the industry. The foundation also promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure skills and resources in the industry.

Developing and producing local content in genres with wide appeal is a high priority for the foundation. Research has begun on a national strategy for film education and training, and to develop sector-information systems to measure sector performance and the related economic and job-multiplier effects.

A revised rebate for foreign and local film and television production was launched in March 2008.

The new film and television production incentive comprises the Location Film and Television Production Scheme, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production Scheme. The incentive is intended to increase local content generation and improve location competitiveness for filming in South Africa.

The scheme replaced the Large Budget Film and Television Production Rebate, which the Department of Trade and Industry implemented in 2004.

This component is only available to foreign-owned productions with Qualifying South African Production Expenditure (QSAPE) of R12 million and above.

It provides a rebate of 15% of the QSAPE to qualifying productions in the following formats: feature films, telemovies, television drama series, documentaries, animation and short-form animations. Its aim is to attract large-budget overseas film and television productions to South Africa.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit called Cinema Nouveau with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Sithengi Film and Video Festival and Market in Cape Town; the Durban Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB was established by the Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), to:

- regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by means of classification, the imposition of age restrictions and giving consumer advice
- make punishable the exploitive use of children in pornographic publications, films or on the Internet.

During 2008/09, R50,9 billion was allocated to the FBP.

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines, which identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The board also alerts the public, through age restrictions and consumer advice, about the frequency and intensity of these classifiable elements in a particular film.

Any person who distributes or exhibits a film or interactive computer game in South Africa must first register with the board as a distributor or exhibitor of films or interactive games. Any film intended for distribution or exhibition must first be

The Time of the Writer International Writers Festival was held from 25 to 30 March 2008 in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

The festival of writers celebrated its 11th edition with a six-day programme of reading, presentations, discussions and book launches.

With a line-up of 18 new and established writers, predominantly from South Africa and elsewhere on the African continent, the festival provided a stimulating platform for dialogue and exchange between writers, and an opportunity for the public to gain insight into the creative processes and perspectives which inform their writing.

submitted to the board for classification in terms of the Film and Publications Act, 1996. To monitor distributors on-site and to ensure that films are distributed in compliance with the provisions of the Act, the board has appointed compliance monitors. They advise distributors and exhibitors of films and interactive games of the Act's requirements and ensure that all products display the classification reference number, age restriction, consumer advice and such other conditions as may have been imposed by the board. The Film and Publications Act, 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

Child pornography is defined as any image, however created, or any description of a person, real or simulated, who is depicted or described as being under the age of 18 years, engaged in sexual conduct; participating in or assisting another person to participate in sexual conduct; or showing or describing the body, or parts of the body, of such a person in a manner that amounts to sexual exploitation.

The board is running a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners of ways to avoid victimisation. The board has a toll-free number (0800 148 148) to report child-pornography websites.

In July 2008, the FPB launched a hotline website that affords members of the public an online opportunity to anonymously report any unsolicited child pornography or sexual abuse images discovered on the Internet. The hotline is available 24/7.

The website, a first of its kind on the African continent, is also intended to alert Internet service providers to criminal activities, relating to child pornography and/or sexual abuse images hosted on their servers or distributed through their infrastructure. In June 2008, the Department of Arts and Culture held the National Indaba on Preventing the Sexual Abuse and Exploition of Children and Combating Child Pornography, which was attended by various stakeholders.

By June 2008, the Film and Publications Amendment Bill was close to finality. The Bill will increase the FPB's capacity and make the department's endeavour to protect children from abuse even more effective.

Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography

The Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography was established in December 2006.

The task team has forged strategic partnerships with mobile phone operators and Internet service-providers, the SABC and other government departments. It has assessed the work done by all these institutions to help in the fight against child pornography. To assist in the task, the FPB commissioned the Human Sciences Research Council to conduct research on the extent of child pornography in South Africa and on the capacity to deal with it in the form of laws, policies and institutions.

In May 2008, the Department of Home Affairs presented the findings and recommendations of the three research reports conducted:

- *Report on Internet Usage and the Exposure of Pornography to Learners in South African Schools*
- *The Use of Children in Pornography in South Africa*
- *Technology Puts Children under Threat.*

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the museum country of Africa, with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

Today, more than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions (national museums that have framework autonomy and are managed by their own councils), and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the Department of Arts and Culture. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but are mostly autonomous.

In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998), the declared museum institutions in Gauteng and Cape Town have been grouped together into two organisations known as flagship institutions.

While the components of these two museum flagships (the museums from which they have been constituted) continue to operate as semi-independent museums regarding their core functions (collection, preservation, research and education), other functions, particularly administration, financing and human-resource management, have been centralised.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the Act:

- Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Northern Flagship consists of the National Cultural History Museum (NCHM) and its former satellite museums (Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum and the Coert Steynberg Museum), the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town, formerly known as the Southern Flagship Institution, consist of the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection. In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998, the declared museums in other provinces continue to operate as before. These include the National Museum and the War Museum of the Boer Republics, the William Humphreys Art Gallery, the Natal Museum and the Voortrekker Museum, the National English Literacy Museum and the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum.

The Act also provides for the National Museums Division, comprising the CEOs and directors of the flagship museums and other declared museums.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned. The Robben Island Museum has its own council and is a separate declared institution, independent of Iziko.

Apart from the declared museums that fall under the department, there are also a number of other national museums that are administered by central government departments or research councils. Notable examples are the Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria); the Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria); the South African Air Force Museum at Air Force Base Zwartkop (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban; the museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria); and the Porcinarium (the world's first pig museum) outside Pretoria on the Irene Campus of the Agricultural Research Council.

A number of museums fall directly or indirectly under the provincial government departments responsible for arts and culture. In some provinces, these museums render museum-support services at provincial level, while other provinces, notably Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and the Free State, have separate museum-service organisations.

However, many museum and heritage services are also rendered by the declared national museums on a consultancy basis. Many municipalities also manage museums.

Other museums fall under universities and university departments, or are owned and managed by private-sector companies, non-govermental organisations or individuals.

The largest museums are situated in Johannesburg, Pretoria, Cape Town, Durban, Pietermaritzburg and Bloemfontein.

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, as well as in the following:

- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural-history collections are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, and in the following:

- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Durban Local History Museum
- Museum Africa, Johannesburg.

Art museums include the:

- South African National Gallery, Cape Town
- Johannesburg Art Gallery
- Pretoria Art Museum
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave

Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent. The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, supports the presidential imperatives by combining a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The NCHM (former African Window) in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living culture of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable goldfield was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly at two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and the characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit in Gauteng. This museum comprises two "house" museums, and runs educational programmes based on their extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg aims to preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. It also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the 1970s and 1980s. Exhibitions in the museum feature, among other things, audio-visual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

One of the most common types of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; an example of the lifestyle of the wealthy wine farmer in Groot Constantia in the Western Cape; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks, outside Pretoria; the Victorian affluence mirrored in Melrose House, Pretoria; and the Kruger House Museum in Pretoria, the former residence of President Paul Kruger.

Simpler architectural variations have not been neglected, for instance the pioneer-dwelling in Silverton, Pretoria; and the humble farmhouse at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg in Gauteng. There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example Tsongakraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums. The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War-Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives and heraldry

Archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives functions in terms of the National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives. Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. Provincial archive repositories in

Pretoria, Cape Town, Pietermaritzburg, Durban, Ulundi, Mthatha, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein house archives dating from before 1910, as well as the relevant provincial archives. Record centres for archives less than 20 years old exist in Pretoria, Bloemfontein and Cape Town.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the automated archival information system *(www.national.archives.gov.za)*, which includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material. The National Archives also renders a comprehensive records-management service for current records, aimed at promoting efficient administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Project seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and to develop a national oral history programme. The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the project.

The Act also provides government with a measure of control over private collections. Archives are taken to the people through co-ordinated national and provincial archive services. At the same time, the National Archives is responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records, as far as possible.

The Bureau of Heraldry is responsible for registering coats of arms; badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order; and registering names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities.

Library and Information Services (LIS) sector

South African libraries have developed over a period of more than 150 years. The world's first free public library service was established here by Lord Charles Somerset in 1820, by levying a tax on the sale of wine. When he returned to England, tax reforms by the new governor spelt the end of the free library, but it formed the basis of what is today the National Library of South Africa (NLSA) in Cape Town.

By 1900, subscription libraries were operating in most towns and cities, financed by annual membership fees and, in most cases, grants from local authorities. An investigation in the 1930s by the Carnegie Corporation of New York found that most of these libraries were inadequate and poorly funded. The necessity for government support to ensure free public libraries was recognised.

By the 1950s, all four provinces of the Union of South Africa had ordinances that set out the functions of local and provincial government, and public-library development gathered momentum.

In 1985, librarians commissioned Unisa to investigate the role that libraries could and should play in developing South Africa.

The result was that greater emphasis was placed on providing material that would support formal and informal education. Outreach programmes to schools and pre-schools received priority. Many libraries also started presenting literacy classes for adults.

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries and higher education (HE) libraries.

By mid-2003, South Africa had more than 11 373 libraries, with 77 HE libraries, 9 416 school libraries, 79 government departmental libraries, one national library with two branches, and 1 800 public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries). Less than 10% of secondary schools had school libraries.

Provincial library services

The Department of Arts and Culture is drafting the South African Community Libraries Bill to set the norms and standards for a transformed community library sector. This Bill will be tabled in Parliament in 2009.

Library services at national level

Meta-information

The Subdirectorate: Meta-Information of the Department of Arts and Culture is the focal point within national government that handles certain policy matters pertaining to LIS at national level. Meta-information means information about information.

The subdirectorate is located within the Chief Directorate: National Archives, Records, Meta-Information and Heraldic Services of the Department of Arts and Culture, and reports to the National Archivist.

The vision of the subdirectorate is to create and maintain an effective meta-information system that promotes access to information, ensuring that all communities participate in the information society, thereby contributing to the development of the country. Its mission is to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture on the development, co-ordination and maintenance of the national meta-information policy and infrastructure.

The national meta-information system in South Africa consists of various types of library and other information organisations, and is enabled by a legislative framework. The subdirectorate's remit within this framework pertains specifically to:

- the National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)
- the NLSA
- the South African Library for the Blind (Blindlib)
- the Legal Deposit Committee and those libraries and archives that function as places of legal deposit and/or official publication depositories
- Blind SA (formerly the South African Blind Workers' Organisation) and the Braille Services Trust, as well as the South African National Council for the Blind regarding Braille projects.

National Council for Library and Information Services

The NCLIS was established in terms of the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001), (Annexure A). The NCLIS advises the ministers of arts and culture and of education on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country. The functions of the council are to develop and co-ordinate LIS in the country.

A new National Council for Libraries and Information Services was appointed in March 2008. The purpose of the council is to finalise the development of a Library Transformation Charter that was initiated in August 2006.The aim of the Library Transformation Charter is to align the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established on 1 November 1999 through the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998), with the amalgamation of the State Library in Pretoria and the South African Library in Cape Town.

The functions of the NLSA are to build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa; to maintain and preserve the collections, and to provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlibrary-lending services; and to promote information awareness and literacy.

The Centre for the Book in Cape Town, a specialised unit, promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all South Africa's official languages.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA, as one of five legal deposit libraries, receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, print or electronic, for its campuses in Pretoria and Cape Town.

The NLSA has been tasked with republishing out-of-print African-language publications.

South African Library for the Blind

Blindlib is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown. Its aim is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa. It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on soliciting funds from the private sector and the general public. Blindlib also produces documents in special media such as Braille and audio formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities need to read.

The vision of Blindlib is based on five broad objectives, namely, to significantly contribute to:

- helping build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate and its obligations to blind people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind persons and the institutions that serve their information needs.

Blindlib has a staff complement of 42 staff members and a membership of 5 594, an audio

i

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, unveiled the new home for the National Library of South Africa on 1 August 2008, in Pretoria. R300 million was spent on the new building which seats 1 300.

and Braille collection of 22 761 books and an annual circulation of more than 170 000 books, in Braille and audio format.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg. One of its prime objectives is to provide services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all official languages.

Legal Deposit Act, 1997

The purpose of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 is, among other things, to:

- provide for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through legal deposit of published documents
- ensure the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- provide for access to government information
- provide for a legal deposit committee.

The places of legal deposit are: NLSA, Pretoria Campus; NLSA, Cape Town component; Mangaung Library Services; Msunduzi Municipal Library; Library of Parliament; the National Film, Video and Sound Archives of South Africa; the University of the Free State; and the Constitutional Court of South Africa. (See Chapter 7: *Education*.)

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Arts and Culture
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Film and Publication Board
FNB Dance Umbrella
Sunday Times
www.act.org.za
www.artsculturetrust.co.za
www.basa.co.za
www.businessday.co.za
www.capetownbookfair.com
www.createsa.org.za
www.gov.za
www.nac.org.za
www.risa.org.za
www.sahra.org.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.tonight.co.za

Suggested reading

180° – *New Fiction by South African Women Writers*, edited by H Moffat and C Morris. Cape Town: Oshun Books, 2005.
African Compass: New Writing from Southern Africa. Compiled by JM Coetzee. Kenilworth: Spearhead, 2005.
African Posters: A Catalogue of the Basler Afrika Bibliographien. Compiled by G Miescher and D Henrichsen. Basel: Basler Afrika Bibliographien, 2004.
African Road: New Writing from Southern Africa, Edited by R Malan. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2006.
Ansell, G. *Soweto Blues: Jazz, Popular Music and Politics in South Africa*. New York: Continuum, 2004.
Attwell, D. *Rewriting Modernity: Studies in Black South African Literary History.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
At the Fireside Vol 3: True Southern African Stories. Edited by R Webster. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2005.
Bank, A. *Bushmen in a Victorian World: The Remarkable Story of the Bleek Lloyd Collection of Bushman Folklore*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
Bedford, E. ed. *Decade of Democracy: South African Art 1994 – 2004.* Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
Botha, M. *Marginal Lives and Painful Pasts: South African Cinema after Apartheid.* Cape Town: Genugtig Publishers, 2007.
Brown, D. *Voicing the Text: South African Oral Poetry and Performance.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Carman, J. *Uplifting the Colonial Philistine: Florence Phillips and the Making of the Johannesburg Art Gallery.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.
Chapman, M. *Art Talk, Politics Talk. Pietermaritzburg: KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.*
Chapman, M, ed. *Omnibus of a Century of South Africa Short Stories*. Johannesburg: Ad Donker, 2007.
Coplan. DB. *On Township Tonight: Three Centuries of South African Black City Music and Theatre; second edition. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007*. First edition 1985.
Daymond, MJ. *et al.* eds. *Women Writing Africa: The Southern Region.* Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Deckler, TA, Graupner, A and Rasmuss, H. *Contemporary South African Architecture in a Landscape of Transition.* Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
Deacon, H. *et al*. *The Subtle Power of Intangible Heritage: Legal and Financial Instruments for Safeguarding Intangible Heritage.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2004.
Duncan, P. *Down South: Home Interiors in South Africa.* Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers) Part 1: 2004. Part 2: 2006.
De Vries, F. *Composing Apartheid: Popular Music Culture in South* Africa. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Du Preez, M. *Of Warriors, Lovers and Poets: Unusual Stories From South Africa's Past.* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.
Fransen, *H. The Old Buildings of the Cape.* Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
Fransen, H. *A Cape Camera: The Architectural Beauty of the Old Cape*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers), 2005.
Gaylaard, G. *After Colonialism: African Postmodernism and Magical Realism*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.
Gray, S. *Indaba: Interviews with African Writers*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2005.
Helgesson, S. *Writing in Crisis: Ethics and History in Gordimer, Ndebele and Coetzee*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Habila, H and Kadija S. *Dreams, Miracles and Jazz: New Adventures in African Writing.* Johannesburg: Picador Africa, 2008.
Inheriting the Flame: New Writing on Community Arts in South Africa, edited by G *Falken.* Cape Town: Arts and Media Access Centre, 2005.
Jamal, A. *Predicaments of Culture in South Africa.* Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press, 2005.
Kearney, JA. *Representing Dissension: Riot, Rebellion and Resistance in the South African English Novel.* Pretoria, Unisa, 2004.
Levine, L. *The Drum Café's Traditional Music of South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
Lucia, C. *World of South African Music: A Reader.* Cambridge (UK): Scholars' Press, 2005.
Mangcu, X, ed. *The Meaning of Mandela: A Literary and Intellectual Celebration.* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Masekela, H and Cheers, M. *Still Grazing: The Musical Journey of Hugh Masekela.* New York: Crown Publishers, 2004.
Mbatha, A. *Within Loving Memory of the Century.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Meiring, H. *My Country in Line and Colour.* Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.
Maingard, J. *South African National Cinema*. London: Routledge, 2007.
Ndebele, NS. *Rediscovery of the Ordinary: Essays on South African Literature and Culture*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.
New Century of South African Short Stories. Compiled by M Chapman. Johannesburg: Donker, 2004.
Nuttall, S. *Beautiful Ugly: African Diaspora Aesthetics.* Cape Town: Kwela, 2006.
Omnibus of a Century of South African Short Stories. Edited by M Chapman. Johannesburg: Ad Donker Publishers, 2007.
Opland, J. *The Dassie and the Hunter: A South African Meeting.* Pietermaritzburg: University of Kwazulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Olvage, G, ed. *Composing Apartheid: Music for and Against Apartheid*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2008.
Phelps, A. ed. *Sunshine and Shadows: A Collection of South African Short Stories*. Empangeni: Echoing Green Press, 2004.
Proud, H, ed. *Revisions: Expanding the Narrative of South African Art*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2006.
Rasebotsa, N. *et al*. eds. *Nobody Ever Said AIDS: Stories and Poems from Southern Africa.* Cape Town: Kwela, 2004.
Rudd, R. *South African Timber Buildings: A Craft Revived.* Cape Town: Clifton Publications, 2006.
San Tales from Africa, edited by R Delle Donne and illustrated by M van Heerden. Cape Town: Struik, 2006.
Seventh Street Alchemy: A Selection of Writings from the Caine Prize for African Writing. Edited by N Elam. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
South Africa's Visual Culture. Edited by J van Eeden and A du Preez. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.
Stephanou, I and Henriques L. *The World in an Orange: Creating Theatre with Barney Simon.* Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
Tales from Southern Africa. Translated and retold by AC Jordan; foreword by ZP Jordan; introduction and commentaries by H Scheub. Johannesburg: Ad Donker, 2004.
Thamm, M. *The Fairlady Collection: 40 Years of Fine Writing.* Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2005.
Wasserman, H and Jacobs, S eds. *Shifting Selves: Post-Apartheid Essays on Mass Media, Culture and Identity.* Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2004.
Wisdom of Africa: A Collection of Proverbs, compiled by D Stewart. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
10 Years 100 Artists: Art in a Democratic South Africa; edited by S Perryer. Cape Town: Bell Roberts, 2004.

The aim of the Department of Communications is to develop information communications technology (ICT) policies and legislation that create conditions for accelerated and shared sustainable growth and that positively impact on the well-being of all South Africans.

South Africa was granted official observer status to the Information Computer and Communications Policy Committee of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) in 2007. This is the first and only African country to be granted such status.

The Minister of Communications, Dr Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri, represented South Africa at the second OECD Ministerial Conference that was held in Seoul, Korea, in June 2008.

The ministerial conference addressed the role of the Internet in the 21st century as a critical infrastructure on which the world depends to support economic growth, innovation and social development.

The OECD has embarked on a strategy called "enhanced engagement" and South Africa is one of five countries identified to participate in the implementation thereof.

Telecommunications

Statistics South Africa, in its *Consumer Survey* of 2007, reported an increase in the ownership of radios, televisions, computers and cellphones between 2001 and 2007.

In so far as cellular phones were concerned, the survey in 2001 reported a 32,3% ownership. This grew to 72,9% in 2007. Radio ownership grew from 73% in 2001 to 76,6% in 2007. Computer ownership increased from 8,6% in 2001 to 15,7% in 2007 while television ownership rose from 53,8% in 2001 to 65,6% in 2007.

The demand for landline telephones decreased owing to an increase in the popularity of cellphones. Landlines decreased from 24,4% to 18,6%.

No comparison could be made in the 2007 survey on Internet facilities, which recorded an ownership of 7,3%. Such increases demonstrate that more South Africans are being exposed to ICT.

The Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) is supporting the establishment of a number of multimedia centres, cyberlabs and telecentres in various parts of the country.

Policy and initiatives

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world. This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans.

The core functions of the department are to:

- develop ICT policies and legislation that stimulate and enhance the sustainable economic development of the First and Second Economy and positively impact on the social well-being of all South Africans
- evaluate the economic, social and political effects of implementing relevant policies
- exercise oversight of state-owned enterprises (SOEs)
- fulfil South Africa's continental and international responsibilities in the ICT field.

The department's strategic direction is based on five key focus areas:

- achieving higher rates of investment in the economy
- increasing the competitiveness of the South African economy
- broadening participation in the economy
- improving the State's capacity to deliver
- contributing to creating a better world.

In 2007, Cabinet approved the National Information Society and Development (ISAD) Plan.

According to the ISAD Plan, different departments will initiate programmes according to their mandate. The Department of Communications will launch a programme that supports a strategy and plan to bring initiatives that contribute to building an information society in South Africa under one banner – ICT for All.

In March 2008, former President Thabo Mbeki met the Presidential Advisory Council (PIAC) on ISAD. The PIAC on ISAD comprises a group of chief executive officers (CEOs), presidents and of international corporations and experts in the ICT field.

Strategic objectives

The Department of Communications has identified the following strategic objectives to achieve its mandate:

- Broadband Strategy: Pivotal to achieving the aims of the department is the availability of a reliable, cost-effective and easily accessible ICT broadband infrastructure. To this end, the department participated in the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, which includes the Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System (EASSy) project. The EASSy cable will link South Africa to Sudan, and provide for landing stations in countries along the coast of eastern Africa. The cable will be connected to adjacent landlocked countries through terrestrial fibre optic links. The EASSy cable will be 9 900 km long with an expected lifespan of 25 years.

- The Broadcasting Digital Migration (BDM) Policy for South Africa was approved in July 2008. The dates for the switch-on of the digital signal and switch-off of the analogue signal had been decided as November 2008 and November 2011, respectively. BDM is likely to change the ICT landscape dramatically. New opportunities will be created at both lower and higher ends of skills and businesses.

  By the end of July 2008, the technical specifications for the digital terrestrial set-top-boxes (STBs) had been developed and submitted to the South African Bureau of Standards for finalisation. In addition to receiving the digital signal, the STBs will be designed to enable the delivery of e-government services directly to the citizens. The Department of Communications will develop a strategy for the disposal of existing television sets in preparation for the analogue switch off.

  In 2008 the Scheme-for-Ownership-Support of the STBs for poor households was approved. In terms of the proposed scheme, government would provide a 70% incentive for STBs to the five million poorest TV-owning households at a cost of R2,45 billion during the three years of dual illumination.
- Universal Service and Access Policy and Strategy: Usaasa was established in terms of Section 58 of the Telecommunications Act, 1996 (Act 103 of 1996). The agency promotes universal service and access to ICTs and services for all South Africans. It also facilitates and offers guidance in evaluating, monitoring and implementing schemes to improve universal access and service. In addition, it is involved in setting up telecentres, which provide ICT services, especially in rural areas, on a cost-recovery basis.

  The agency manages the Universal Service Fund. The fund, with monies appropriated by Parliament, is used to provide infrastructure for the universal service-area licensees (USALs). It also provides telecentres and school cyberlabs (computer laboratories) with ICT equipment, which enables access to the Internet and multimedia services.
- Infrastructure provision for the 2010 Soccer World Cupwill involve the upgrade of Telkom's core network to meet FIFA's requirements. Telkom will implement the access network from its exchanges into the stadiums. After 2010, excess capacity of both the core and the access network will cater for increased demand. The ownership of the access network will be transferred to the host cities and this should enhance their capacity to provide broadband services.
- Through the National Youth Service Programme, the department's e-Cadre programme aims to train 5 000 young people and deploy them in post offices, clinics, police stations, schools and municipalities to assist communities in accessing government services through the use of ICTs.
- ICT Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Charter: In terms of the charter, several BEE and job-creation initiatives are planned by companies in the sector.
- Through the Community Radio Support Programme, the department has invested in the youth, enhancing their level of employability and entrepreneurship. By June 2008, there were 160 community radio stations.
- By July 2008, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa) had published the final regulations relating to 112 emergency centres and the 112 emergency number.

  In terms of the regulations, within 18 months of the establishment of the 112 emergency centres, the 112 emergency number would be an exclusive national public emergency number. The service will, among other things, further enable subscribers whose phone services are temporarily disconnected or suspended from networks to have access to the 112 emergency number at all times. The subscriber or the end-user should not pay any costs when accessing the emergency centre. The regulations further prescribe that an emergency call will have to be answered by the emergency centre in less than 30 seconds.

  The 112 emergency number and other emergency numbers will run parallel for a period of 24 months from the date of the establishment of the first 112 emergency centre.

The publication of the regulations followed the holding of public hearings in February 2008.

- Active participation in international organisations and events: South Africa participates in international organisations such as the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), African Telecommunications Union, African Union, Universal Postal Union (UPU), the Pan-African Postal Union and the World Radio Communication Conference.
- The High Level Expert Group (HLEG) under the ITU umbrella is one of the international initiatives aimed at developing strategies and guidance to countries in dealing with cyber crime. The HLEG has adopted the following focus areas:
  - legal measures
  - technical and procedural measures
  - capacity-building
  - international co-operation
  - organisational structures.

  South Africa is using the preliminary output of the HLEG towards the development of the national Cyber Security Framework.

  Initiatives such as the International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism (Impact), also contribute to a great extent to forging partnerships and collaborations geared towards combating cyber crime.
- Nepad projects: The Department of Communications has positioned itself as a strategic partner on the continent, taking part in various forums in support of the African Agenda. The department has an engagement model for strengthening relations with countries in the region. The department continues to be involved in various Nepad ICT projects, such as the E-Schools Initiative, as well as implementing policies aimed at building an Africa that is part of an inclusive global information society.

The New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) E-Africa Commission and the Global Digital Solidarity Fund (DSF) signed a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) in April 2008 to collaborate in bridging the digital divide between Africa and the rest of the world and within the continent.

The MoU creates a framework for the two parties to collaborate in supporting activities related to information and communications technology (ICT) development and will contribute to the building of an information society by promoting and facilitating equitable and affordable access to and use of ICTs in Africa for everyone.

It is expected that the MoU will result in substantial support from the DSF to the Nepad E-Schools Initiative.

The Nepad E-Schools Initiative was adopted as a high-priority Nepad ICT project by the Nepad Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee in March 2003.The aim of the initiative is to harness ICT for the improvement of the quality of teaching and learning in African primary and secondary schools, whereby young Africans who graduate from these schools will have ICT skills that will enable them to participate as equals in the global information society and knowledge economy. The Nepad e-Africa Commission is spearheading the implementation of the Nepad E-Schools Initiative, which has the following components running in parallel: the Nepad E-Schools Demonstration Project; the Nepad E-Schools Satellite Network; the establishment of the national implementing agencies; the development of teacher training, content and curriculums; and the Nepad E-Schools Business Plan.

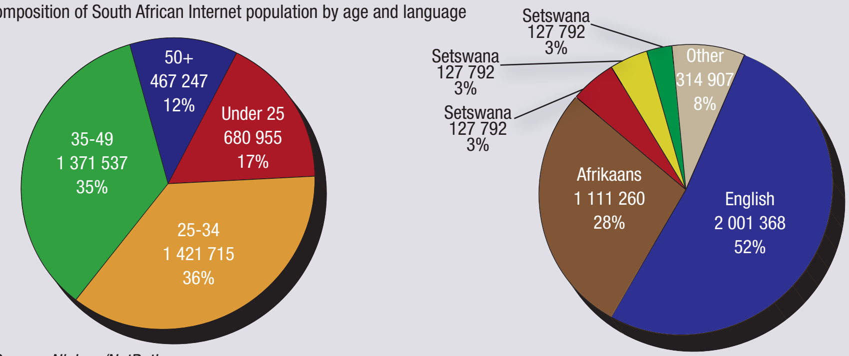
The Nepad E-Schools Stakeholders Conference was held in Johannesburg in April 2008. The conference, which discussed Nepad e-schools' progress and the business plan, was attended by Dr Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri, the Minister of Education, Ms Naledi Pandor, and the Minister of Education of Gabon, Mr Michel Menge, as well as permanent secretaries and directors-general from 17 African countries, other government officials, private-sector companies, teachers and learners.

At a separate meeting, the E-Schools Business Plan was endorsed as a framework for development of the initiative. The participants agreed to take advantage of lessons learnt from the 51 schools in the countries that participated in the Nepad E-Schools Demo Project, and to use the business plan as a broad framework for the further development of the project to transform 50% of all secondary schools in the participating countries into Nepad e-schools by 2015.

Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications

The following public entities and agencies report to the Minister of Communications. These include the following companies in which government has a major shareholding: Icasa, the South African Post Office (Sapo), Sentech, the SABC, the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa), Usaasa, .za Domain Name Authority and Telkom South Africa Limited.

Composition of South African Internet population by age and language



Source: *Nielsen/NetRatings*

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Icasa is responsible for regulating the telecommunications, broadcasting and postal industries to ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans.

Icasa's main functions are to:

- make regulations and policies that govern broadcasting, telecommunications and postal services
- issue licences to providers of telecommunications, broadcasting and postal services
- monitor the environment and enforce compliance with rules, regulations and policies
- hear and decide on disputes and complaints brought by industry or members of the public against licensees
- plan, control and manage the frequency spectrum
- protect consumers from unfair business practices, poor quality services and harmful or inferior products.

The E-Skills Academy of South Africa was opened in March 2008 in Sandton, Gauteng. The E-Skills Academy is an organisation formed by Oracle Corporation, a member of the Presidential International Advisory Council, and was launched in collaboration with other major multinational information technology companies and the Government under the auspices of the Department of Communications.

The academy focuses on the accelerated delivery of internationally accredited information and communications technology courses and professional qualifications that are specifically designed to meet the "job-ready" skills requirements of technology-users throughout the South African economy.

Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa

Usaasa operates under the regulatory and policy framework enshrined in the Telecommunications Act, 1996 (Act 103 of 1996), as amended in 2001, and the ministerial policy directions issued in the same year.

These mandate Usaasa to promote, facilitate and monitor the achievement of universal service and access in underserviced areas. In addition, the agency is required to:

- manage the Universal Service Fund and use it to implement the mandates as stipulated in the Act
- survey and evaluate the impact of the various initiatives undertaken by all stakeholders, and the extent to which universal service and access have been achieved
- create an enabling environment by stimulating public awareness of the benefits of ICT services and building capacity to access these services
- encourage, facilitate and offer guidance in respect of any scheme to provide universal access or universal service
- make the necessary interventions to enable underserviced communities to access ICT services
- conduct research into and keep abreast of developments in telecommunications services and Information technology (IT).

Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD)

In an effort to establish a more systematic and consistent approach across different traditionally disparate areas of policy-making and implementation, the PNC on ISAD was formed in 2001.

The commission comprises government, industry and civil-society leaders. During its deliberations, important recommendations are made regarding the need for planning and foresight, co-ordination and integration, and evaluation and impact assessment in the building of the information society.

The ISAD Plan and the institutional mechanisms followed from these recommendations.

A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

Internet

African Internet usage has trebled to more than 12 million since 2000, but South Africa remains the continent's dominant Internet centre, with a quarter of Africa's users. Johannesburg-based companies are central to the Internet industry. Nine of the 12 major Internet service-providers listed by the Internet Service-Providers Association (*http://www.ispa.org.za*) are based in Johannesburg. The Johannesburg Internet Exchange (JINX) is the larger of two national hubs that connect the Internet service-providers into a single network. Most Johannesburg hotels are online, and all but the smallest businesses have access, usually via a fixed line. Internet cafes are available, particularly in areas where tourists congregate.

Telkom

Telkom has operated as a commercial company since October 1991 and has become the largest provider of communications services in Africa, based on operating revenue and assets. The Telkom Group comprises the fixed-line company Telkom and a 50% shareholding in mobile telecommunications operator Vodacom. It was listed on the JSE Limited and the New York Stock Exchange in March 2003.

Telkom's listing created meaningful value for BEE shareholders. More than 100 000 South African retail investors subscribed during Telkom's initial public offering, specifically targeted at historically disadvantaged individuals. In its first year as a listed company, the estimated value created for retail shareholders amounted to some R560 million.

Highlights of the group's financial key performance areas for the year ended 31 March 2008 included:

- operating revenue up 9,8% to R29,9 billion
- operating profit increased by 0,1% to R14,5 billion
- net debt to equity increased to 49,9% from 31,3% at 31 March 2007
- cash generated from operations increased by 3,6% to R21,3 billion
- headline earnings per share decreased by 4,4%
- ordinary dividends increased by 10,0% to 660 cents per share paid on 7 July 2008
- ADSL subscribers grew 61,2% to 412 190, just short of Telkom's aggressive target.

Telkom Foundation

The Telkom Foundation, founded in 1998, is the social conscience and corporate social-investment arm of Telkom SA. It focuses on:

- education and training
- empowering women, children and people with disabilities
- ICT planning and infrastructure roll-out.

The Telkom Foundation is entering a new phase in its corporate social-investment work. This new phase is characterised by a holistic and integrated approach to development.

The Broadband Infraco-led African West Coast Cable (AWCC) Project is a leading initiative of the South African Government to rapidly deploy broadband capacity and create a sustainable competitive international bandwidth market in South Africa. Broadband Infraco was created by government as a state-owned enterprise to execute interventions that deliver affordable broadband capacity to South Africans on an open access basis. According to the AWCC model, Infraco will own 26% of the AWCC cable while the remaining 74% will be owned by a broad base of private-sector participants, including incumbent communications operators.

The AWCC Project is well advanced, and a Memorandum of Understanding has been agreed upon with prospective private-sector participants. The AWCC is a 3 840-gigabite super cable, which will stretch from the western cape to the United Kingdom, with the capacity terminating in London. It will have branching units to 10 countries along the West Coast of Africa at a design length of 13 000 km. The cable will also support South Africa's science projects such as the Square Kilometre Array telescope for which the country is competing against Australia.

The Government is committed to continue working with other governments on the continent and interested partners in the Africa-wide UHURUnet New Partnership for Africa's Development-led Initiative. This undersea-cable initiative will also play a major role in reducing the cost of communications and increasing connectivity in Africa. It is anticipated that the system will enter service by mid-2010 in time to meet the bandwidth requirements for the 2010 Soccer World Cup which commences in June 2010.

New sustainable development programmes will be achieved by combining the efforts and objectives of all focus areas of the Telkom Foundation toward the establishment of ICT-empowered communities.

The foundation's mission is to empower selected communities through ICT; this involves, among other things, the provision of new and innovative technology such as multimedia and broadband services.

Through this technology it is hoped that communities will effectively address their social, educational, technological and economic needs.

Centres of excellence (CoEs)

This is a collaborative programme between Telkom, the telecommunications industry and the Department of Trade and Industry to promote postgraduate research in ICT and allied social sciences. It also provides facilities that encourage young scientists and engineers to pursue their interests in South Africa.

Launched in 1997, the programme improves local telecommunications and IT skills, yielding substantial benefits for the academic institutions involved. It has helped Telkom and its local technology partners to solve technical problems and cut costs.

Telkom's corporate partners are also reaping rewards, as the work undertaken at the CoEs is relevant to their areas of business.

Mobile communications

Over the years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellular phone industry.

> Telkom hosted the Southern African Telecommunications Association (Sata) Conference in Sandton in April 2008. Sata is a regional body for fixed mobile telecommunications operators and other information communications technology (ICT) service-providers within the Southern African Development Community (SADC). It seeks to co-ordinate the orderly development of ICT networks and services that are responsive to the diverse needs of commerce and industry in support of the SADC regional socio-economic development programmes.
>
> Telkom also participated in the seventh SADC ICT in Government Summit, as the premier knowledge partner, in the region's quest to leverage ICT for service delivery.
>
> The theme, *Towards 2015 – Achieving the United Nations Millenium Development Goals*, which ran from 29 to 31 May 2008, aimed to enhance accelerated service delivery to citizens.

> In June 2008, Telkom received an international award for Business Excellence on HIV and AIDS in Workplace Testing and Counselling from the Global Business Coalition (GBC), based in New York. The GBC is a coalition of more than 220 companies united to keep the fight against HIV, AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria a global priority. Telkom received the Business Excellence Award for its integrated voluntary counselling, testing and treatment workplace programme that provides employees and their families with comprehensive general health screenings aimed at reducing the stigma of getting tested.

South Africa has four operators, Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Virgin Mobile.

Cell C (Pty) Limited is wholly owned by 3C Telecommunications (Pty) Limited, which is 60% owned by Oger; Telecom South Africa, a division of Saudi Oger; and 40% by CellSAF. It also brought in Verizon Communications, the biggest cellular operator in the United States of America (USA), as its operating partner.

In 2008, Cell C had 395 roaming partners in 166 countries around the world and was also offering its subscribers access to four maritime services and one satellite space.

Highlights in the Vodacom Group's financial results for the year ended 31 March 2008 included:

- total customers increased by 12,7% to 34 million
- revenue increased by 17,1% to R48,2 billion
- profit from operations increased by 15% to R12,5 billion
- EBITDA increased by 15,7% to R16,5 billion
- cash generated from operations increased by 17,8% to R16,3 billion.

Vodacom entered into an alliance with Vodafone Group PLC, the world's largest cellular operator. MTN's highlights for 2007 included:

- group subscribers up 53% to 61,4 million
- revenue increased 42% to R73,1 billion
- EBIDTA up 42% to R31,8 billion.

The MTN Group recorded 61,4 million subscribers across its 21 operations as at 31 December 2007. This was an increase of 53% from 40,1 million subscribers as at 31 December 2006. The MTN Group has declared a dividend of 136 cents per share, its highest divident ever.

Virgin Mobile launched in South Africa in June 2006 as a joint venture between Virgin Management and Cell C.

Liberalisation

The creation of an enabling policy and regulatory environment is important for increasing competition in the ICT sector, and reducing the cost of communications.

Following the signing of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 64 of 2001), the Department of Communications has focused on policies that grow the economy, attract foreign direct investment, increase competition, encourage Broad-Based BEE, and develop and sustain small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The department also aims to improve service delivery and expand the provision of telecommunications services. The introduction of the USALs addresses this need.

The cost of communications will be brought down by increased competition in the sector and the removal of constraints to growth.

Section 40 of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 requires that USALs provide telecommunications services, including voice-over Internet protocol, fixed mobile services and public pay telephones. Policies have also been implemented to, among other things, allow mobile operators to use fixed lines to provide both voice- and data-transmission services.

The liberalisation of the sector saw the emergence of Neotel, South Africa's first converged communications network operator.

The postal sector

Policy and legislation

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard of service for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation (USO) has been placed on Sapo. To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

A USO provides specified services to the whole community, even though these services may not be commercially viable in their own right. The universal postal service implies that all citizens have equal access to a basic letter service:

- that is reasonably accessible to all people
- at a single uniform rate of postage
- at the lowest price consistent with meeting all its obligations, financial and otherwise
- to places outside the country
- at a standard of performance that reasonably meets the needs of the population.

In 2008, the South African Post Office printed two million postage stamps with Nelson Mandela's picture to mark the occasion of Madiba's 90th birthday.

Two different stamps were released. The first was a domestic postage stamp costing R2,05, featuring a photo of Mandela taken by Halden Krog. The second was an international postage stamp costing R4,90 which featured a more demure portrait painted by Cyril Coetzee. Both were being issued as miniature sheets–the actual stamps formed part of a larger picture and had perforated edges so they could be torn out. Miniature sheets were primarily created with collectors in mind.

According to the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), Sapo enjoys certain exclusive rights and privileges, including a monopoly on letter mail up to one kilogram. In addition, Sapo is obliged to operate under a 25-year licence, with explicit universal service targets, and other terms and conditions. The monopoly and compliance with the terms and conditions of the licence will be reviewed and monitored.

South African Post Office

The first post office in South Africa was opened in the Castle in Cape Town in 1792. Today, Sapo delivers almost six million letters per day to 10 million addresses in South Africa. It has more than 2 660 outlets covering the length and breadth of the country.

The principal function of Sapo is to provide postal services inside and outside South Africa. As a preferred partner to government, Sapo pays out pension payments on behalf of the Department of Social Development.

Motor-vehicle licences can be paid at selected post offices, and the Post Office collects payments on behalf of more than 100 companies. These accounts can be paid at any post office outlet.

Several initiatives via Sapo have also resulted in bringing ICT services closer to the people, such as:

- the launch of the Postbank visa card for elderly clients, thereby reducing the necessity to carry cash
- the roll-out of a further 1,9 million postal addresses, thereby ringing the countrywide total to 10 million postal addresses
- the opening of 72 new post offices of which 52 are in rural underserviced areas
- the conclusion of agreements with seven municipalities for the collection of municipal rates and taxes
- the partnering with the provincial government in the renewal of motor-vehicle licences

FIFA's 2010 Organising Committee and the South Afican Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) have struck a deal ensuring that local soccer lovers will be able to watch matches during the World Cup for free on the public broadcaster's channels, as well as at venues offering public viewing.

Negotiations for television and radio broadcast rights for the 2010 and 2014 world cups started as far back as June 2006, and it was announced that the SABC, as FIFA's official broadcasting partner, did not need a licence to broadcast the 2009 Confederations Cup and the 2010 World Cup.

Pubs, clubs, restaurants and bars will not need to apply for a broadcasting licence, provided these establishments do not charge admission fees or participate in sponsorship activities. The SABC group will be sponsoring some 200 viewing sites across the country.

- the partnership with the South African Social Security Agency in disbursement of social security grants
- Sentech's partnering with various organisations in the delivery of e-government services.

Business centres

Sapo has established 25 business centres that provide a dedicated, specially designed one-stop shop inside existing post offices in most rural areas.

The business centres provide a bureau service with facilities such as photocopying, faxing and Internet access. South Africans who live in rural areas can now make new technology part of their everyday lives.

Internet facilities

Many isolated villages are already enjoying the benefits of the electronic age. Sapo and the Department of Communications have installed public Internet terminals at almost 700 post offices. Most of them are in settlements without Internet cafés or other access to the Internet.

Specialised products

Securemail

Securemail provides a swift and safe delivery method for high-security items such as shares and credit cards. It handles more than 2,5 million credit cards a year, has significantly reduced credit-card theft and has won an award from the International Association of Financial Crime Investigators for its performance.

Parcelplus

Parcelplus is the most economical way to send a parcel. Available at any post office outlet, parcels can be delivered to all post office counters countrywide. Parcels are delivered within two to five days. Insurance is available and the cash-on-delivery option provides for money to be collected for the contents of the parcel on behalf of mail-order businesses. All parcels can be tracked.

Postbank

Postbank services are available at more than 2 000 post office outlets countrywide and at all Saswitch-enabled automated teller machines of other financial institutions. The focus of Postbank is on the many South Africans who do not have access to other banking services.

Postbank is an option for pensioners whose pension money is paid out at a post office. Their pensions can be paid into a Postbank account where it can earn interest and be withdrawn at a convenient time.

Service options range from Flexicard, with a required minimum balance of only R10, to Smart Save, which offers interest rates that rise as the balance in the account rises, to Maxi Save, which offers very competitive interest rates.

Postbank has consistently been the leading provider of Mzansi accounts since their introduction in 2004. These national low-cost bank accounts extend banking to low income earners.

In January 2008, Postbank launched Internet banking to all its card-based customers.

A bank account for social pensioners

In the North West, social-grant beneficiaries can open a Postbank account within minutes. They

Early in 2008, the inaugural meeting of the South African E-Skills Council was held in Johannesburg. The role of the E-Skills Council is to provide advice on services and programmes that can have a measurable impact on information and communications technology (ICT)-related skills in South Africa.

The council will assist in addressing the challenge of ICT skills by ensuring that the country is producing an industry-ready, better skilled and more adaptable workforce. The focus is not only on skills in the current period but also skills that will be required in the future, including e-skills related to all aspects of life such as the arts and those required by the public sector to improve service delivery.

receive a smartcard with a chip containing, in coded form, their photos, fingerprints and signatures. When a social pension is paid into such an account, the receiver no longer has to queue on pay-out day. All Postbank accounts function as debit cards and all post offices offer Postbank services.

Courier Freight Group (CFG)

CFG is a subsidiary of Sapo, made up of the following companies:

- Speed Services Couriers provides the most extensive domestic overnight express courier network in southern Africa and has SABS ISO 9002 certification. Options range from the most cost-effective counter-to-counter delivery to door-to-door delivery. Same-day delivery is also available. An international service is available to over 200 international destinations. All items are tracked to their destinations. Insurance and liability cover as well as proof of delivery are available.
- XPS Courier Services reaches 3 200 destinations daily with parcel tracking at every stage. Options include:
  - delivery of abnormal or incompatible consignments on the same day
  - a drop-box service for clients in main centres
  - after-hours service with delivery by 8:00
  - optional coverage against loss
  - proof of delivery.
- PX Courier Services focuses on loads of up to three tons between larger centres in southern Africa. It provides courier services for bigger loads in tailor-made containers to destinations in South Africa and cross-border countries. The mini-container can carry loads of 1 400 kg to 3 000 kg. Options include containers for goods of a hazardous nature and insulated containers to distribute frozen goods. PX also offers priority delivery.
- Document Exchange (Docex) moves mail between Docex members and other relevant points. To become a Docex member, an organisation has to pay an entry fee and annual subscription. This enables free mail movement for the entire year. Docex concentrates on the legal and medical professions as well as the travel industry.

South Africa's first stamp, the Cape Triangular, was issued in the Cape of Good Hope in 1853 and is valued at about R1 million.

Postage stamps are traditionally associated with the South African Post Office (Sapo). Annually, the Sapo prints more than 384 million of these tiny works of art.

International and regional co-operation

South Africa is a member of the UPU. The country participates in technical-assistance programmes within the UPU, and uses its international accounting facility.

It also participates in other international bodies such as the Pan-African Postal Union, the Council of Commonwealth Postal Administrations, and the Southern African Transport and Communications Commission.

South Africa, through the Department of Communications, is a signatory to international treaties, conventions and agreements.

It co-operates and works in partnership with other postal administrations, through either bilateral or multilateral agreements relating to letters, parcels and financial postal services.

The media

Media freedom

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa. In 2008, South Africa was ranked as the 36th most free country in terms of press freedom in the world.

Broadcasting

South Africa has an extremely diverse broadcast media sector catering for the unique demands of the local market.

Policy and legislation

The convergence of technologies has led the Department of Communications to pass the Electronic Communications Act, 2005, followed by the Icasa Amendment Act, 2006 to regulate and control all broadcasting and telecommunications activities in the country. The Acts:

- contribute to democracy, nation-building, the provision of education and the strengthening of the moral fibre of society
- encourage ownership and control of broadcasting services by people from historically disadvantaged communities
- ensure fair competition in the sector
- provide for a three-tier system of public, commercial and community broadcasting services
- establish a strong and committed public broadcaster to service the needs of all South Africans.

The Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999), defined the objectives of the South African broadcasting system, the structure of the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) at the time and the role of the various sectors in meeting those objectives.

It also guaranteed the independence of the SABC as a public broadcaster. Within the present Act, the SABC is being corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate.

These include:

- broadcasting accurate and credible news and current affairs programmes
- South African content programming in languages that re ect the country's cultural diversity
- educational programming to advance lifelong learning
- programming targeted at children, women and people with disabilities.

The Act deals with the restructuring of the SABC to fit into the changing broadcasting environment. It requires that the SABC Board establishes two management boards to focus on public and commercial services. Under the new dispensation, the public broadcasting wing will execute and meet its public-service mandate free from commercial interests. The commercial wing will be allowed to generate profit to be self-sustainable.

In terms of the BDM, the SABC has been awarded five channels to allow for specialised services dedicated to the development needs of the country, in the areas of education, youth, health and enterprise development.

By February 2008, a local and digital content strategy was being developed in conjunction with other stakeholders such as the Department of Arts and Culture. The strategy will ensure that digital content is being created, preserved, accessed, and understood, thereby contributing to building national identity and social cohesion. It is expected that the strategy will map out the mechanism to unlock the potential of the South African production industry thus, creating jobs, particularly for small, medium and micro-enterprises.

Broadcasting role-players

Radio

The first radio broadcasts in South Africa took place under the auspices of a broadcasting committee of South African Railways.

The first experimental broadcast was undertaken in Johannesburg on 18 December 1923 by the Western Electric Company. During 1924, the Associated Scientific and Technical Association of South Africa began regular broadcasts in Johannesburg. The Cape Peninsula Publicity Broadcasting Association began a similar service, and the Durban Municipality followed suit with its own regular broadcasts. The first radio station, JB Calling, went on air in July 1924. By 1926, all radio transmission and reception was placed under the control of the Postmaster-General, under the Radio Act, 1926 (Act 20 of 1926).

Following the contribution made by Sir John Reith, then Director-General of the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC), the SABC was established on 1 August 1936.

The SABC is the country's public broadcaster. It introduced its own national news service on 17 July 1950, with daily news bulletins on the English service, the Afrikaans service and Springbok Radio. Radio Zulu, Radio Xhosa and Radio Sesotho were established on 1 June 1960.

In 2008, the SABC's national radio network comprised 15 public broadcast-service radio stations, and three commercial radio stations, broadcasting in 11 languages, as well as an external radio service in four languages that reached an average daily adult audience of 19 million.

SABC News provides news and current affairs services to both SABC radio and television. For its domestic coverage, SABC News has 13 editorial offices, while world news is provided by strategically placed news bureaus, foreign correspondents and international news agencies.

Copy supplied to radio news amounts to almost a million words a day, and is compiled around the clock into a weekly total of 300 bulletins and 27 current affairs programmes.

Programmes are produced weekly in 11 languages on the SABC's radio services. There is a public broadcasting-service radio station for each language group.

Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese. The shortwave broadcast covers south, east, central and west Africa. The satellite broadcast covers the sub-Saharan region, although it can be picked up as far as London. The Internet broadcast is accessible from anywhere in the world.

Commercial radio stations

Icasa has granted licences to the following private radio stations:

- Radio Algoa
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- Highveld Stereo
- Radio 702
- Radio Jacaranda
- Radio Oranje
- East Coast Radio
- P4
- Cape Talk MW
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Radio Jacaranda, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Television

South African Broadcasting Corporation

A one-channel television service was introduced on 5 January 1976. The SABC's national television network comprises three full-spectrum free-to-air channels and one satellite pay-TV channel aimed at audiences in Africa.

Combined, the free-to-air sound-broadcasting stations reach a daily adult audience of almost 20 million people via the terrestrial signal distribution network and a satellite signal. South Africa has more than four million licensed television households.

Between 50% and 60% of all programmes transmitted are produced in South Africa. Locally produced television programmes are augmented by programmes purchased abroad, and by co-productions undertaken with other television programming organisations.

Television news is fed by SABC news teams reporting from all parts of the country, using modern portable electronic cameras and line-feed equipment via more than 220 television transmitters. Ad hoc satellite feeds are arranged from wherever news events occur. News bulletins are broadcast in all 11 official languages.

The SABC's terrestrial television channels devote between 18% and 20% of their airtime during prime time to news and news-related programmes.

M-Net

M-Net, South Africa's first private subscription television service, was launched in 1986. Today, M-Net broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to more than 50 countries across Africa and the adjacent Indian Ocean islands. M-Net's television channels are delivered to subscribers through analogue terrestrial and digital satellite distribution.

The main M-Net channel, which is available as a terrestrial and satellite service, offers movies, sport, children's programmes, international and local series, and local reality shows.

The second terrestrial channel, CSN (Community Services Network), offers sport and programming aimed at a variety of South African communities. M-Net is also well represented on the DStv bouquet of satellite TV channels.

Development of the local film and TV industries is a priority for M-Net and is supported by various projects such as EDiT, which gives final-year film and television students the opportunity to produce programmes for broadcast on M-Net.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice Africa (MCA) was formed in 1995 to manage the subscriber services of its sister company, M-Net.

It became the first African company on the continent to offer digital satellite broadcasting.

Operations include subscriber-management services and digital satellite television platforms broadcasting more than 50 television and 40 audio channels, 24 hours a day.

MCA is owned by the MIH Group, which is listed on the JSE Limited, the Nasdaq in New York, and AEX in Amsterdam.

By mid-2007, there were more than 1,2 million DStv subscribers in South Africa, compared with some 190 000 M-Net decoders.

In July 2008, MCA launched high-definition television (HDTV) in the South African market, the first of its kind in Africa. The 2008 Beijing Olympics was the first to be broadcast in HDTV.

Free-to-air television

Launched in 1998, e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, which broadcasts a full-spectrum programming service to 78% of South Africa's population. The station is owned by BEE group, Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited, and Venfin Limited, and employs some 500 people countrywide. e.tv has offices in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein. As a free-to-air channel, e.tv's only source of income is advertising revenue. The station's most popular programmes are wrestling, news, movies and South African drama.

Independent TV audience surveys confirm that e.tv is the second-largest channel in the country. e.tv's terrestrial signal reaches 80,5% of the South African population. It appeals to all races, all ages and income groups and is the most viewed English language channel in the country. e.tv was the first channel in South Africa to secure the rights to the Union of European Football Association's Champions League Football.

More than R120 million has been set aside to upgrade the Nasrec precinct south of Johannesburg's city centre to support the hosting of the International Broadcast Centre (IBC) during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The money will be used mainly to rent and upgrade the required halls and facilities from the Expo Centre. Nasrec, one of the city's oldest and largest exhibition centres, will see thousands of broadcasters from around the world based there for six weeks during June and July 2010.

During the 2006 FIFA World Cup in Germany, the IBC was set up in Munich where Germany hosted 13 400 accredited TV commentators, camera crew members and technical staff.

The centre broadcast images and reports of the World Cup to more than 120 television and radio stations in 190 countries to more than 26 billion people across the world.

The cumulative television audience for the 2010 event in South Africa is estimated to reach 30 billion. The IBC will have the most up-to-date digital broadcast telecommunications systems available to provide for an estimated 3 000 broadcast journalists during the event.

The satellite teleport and telecommunications infrastructure will be able to support transmission capacity of 40 gigabytes per second. This FIFA World Cup will also be the first one broadcast in high-definition television. A dedicated network will link the 10 venues and the rest of the world to the images from the 2010 World Cup.

The IBC will become a key legacy project for business and sporting-related businesses in a safe hi-tech node, which will eventually include residential, shopping and entertainment developments.

Signal distribution

Sentech Limited was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996), as a common carrier to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees. Over the medium term, Sentech will focus on the digitisation of its signal infrastructure and the roll-out of the ICT infrastructure required for the 2010 World Cup.

The Sentech product line is split into five product portfolios:

- signal distribution (regulated and unregulated)
- Very Small Aperture Terminal (Vsat)
- broadband wireless (MyWireless and Biznet)
- international voice
- value-adding networks.

As part of its Apex projects, government has started with deploying Wireless Broadband to 500 Dinaledi schools and targeting clinics, hospitals, libraries, post offices, Thusong Service Centres and government centres in the same coverage areas. This will help not only in increasing uptake and use of ICTs, but will also enhance inclusivity in the building of the information society.

Sentech is partnering with various organisations to enhance e-services such as the Mindset Learning and Health projects; V-sat links to the Pre-Natal HIV Research Unit at Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital; wireless platforms to 103 Home Affairs mobile units; as well as 78 community radio stations linked to the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS).

Broadband Infraco

In March 2007, government approved the establishment of a new SOE that will provide long-distance connectivity to the country's telecommunications market on a cost basis. Broadband Infraco, which became a stand-alone SOE in January 2008, has succeeded in operationalising and strengthening the national long-distance network, as well as providing additional capacity. Infraco has increased its footprint by 30% and doubled its capacity.

Infraco has provisioned route-connectivity services and regional expansion sites. Additional fibre routes were added to close the long-distance ring and to provide redundant capacities. The Africa West-Coast Cable will be prioritised by government to meet 2010 objectives as well as other short- to medium-term strategic projects. Infraco brings together fibre-optic cable networks, originally built by state companies Eskom and Transnet.

The move forms part of South Africa's attempts to bring down the cost of telecommunications and Internet connectivity in the country.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet through modern ICT.

This must be viewed against the general trend in the rest of the developed world that saw dropping circulations and the cutting back on costs or closing down of newspapers.

The roots of the print media in South Africa can be traced back to the 19th century, when the first issue of a government newspaper, the *Cape Town Gazette, African Advertiser/Kaapsche Stads Courant en Afrikaansche Berigter*, was published in 1800.

The first independent publication, *The South African Commercial Advertiser*, was published in 1824 by Thomas Pringle and John Fairbairn. It was banned 18 months later and reappeared only after various representations had been made to the authorities in London.

The country's vibrant economy, the introduction of regional tabloid newspapers and the glut of new magazine titles have helped to feed the popularity of newspapers and magazines in Africa's largest economy. High consumer spending has coincided with strong circulation in specific newspaper genres, particulary tabloids and free-sheets. The adoption of more efficient delivery and distribution systems have boosted the growth of tabloids, community newspapers and free-sheets, in particular.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Limited group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Limited, and Avusa Limited (previously Johnnic Communications). Other important media players include M & G Media Limited; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Limited; Primedia Publishing Limited; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Limited; and Kagiso Media. The issue of BEE is being addressed by all companies, some of which have progressed further than others.

Larger listed companies have tended to make faster progress with BEE than smaller ones. Globally competitive IT systems, especially among the large media houses, have helped to improve the overall technical quality of print media, and have also positively affected distribution and circulation reach.

There is a range of general and specialised news websites which, in terms of the speed and breadth of their coverage, are on a par with the best in the world.

Newspapers

South Africa's daily newspapers

Daily Sun is the first South African tabloid aimed at the black working class. In the few years since its launch by Media24, the *Daily Sun* has become the largest daily newspaper in South Africa. It is sold in Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The Star is published in Johannesburg and distributed throughout South Africa, with most sales in Gauteng. It is owned by Independent Newspapers. Launched in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape in 1887 as the *Eastern Star*, the paper moved to Johannesburg in 1889.

Sowetan is *Daily Sun's* main competition, also aimed at an English black readership. Initially distributed as a weekly free-sheet in Soweto, the paper was transformed into a daily in 1981 to fill the void left by the *Post*, which was deregistered by the apartheid government. *Sowetan* is owned by Avusa Limited.

Afrikaans-language daily *Die Burger*, first published in 1915, is distributed in the Western Cape. The paper is owned by Media24.

Beeld is also an Afrikaans-language daily, printed six days a week and distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, North West, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal. First published in 1974, the paper is owned by Media24.

The Citizen is published six days a week and distributed mainly in Gauteng. The newspaper is published by Caxton.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Argus* is an afternoon daily aimed at middle- to upper-income readers in Cape Town.

Isolezwe is the premier isiZulu newspaper, published Mondays to Fridays. The paper has also launched the first Zulu-language website in the world. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

Independent Newspapers' *Daily News,* first published in 1878 as the *Natal Mercantile Advertiser,* is targeted at the middle market of Durban and the rest of KwaZulu-Natal.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Times*, a daily published since 1876, aims at the middle classes of Cape Town.

When *Business Day* was launched in 1986, it was the country's first mainstream business daily. The paper covers corporate reporting, BEE, economic policy, corporate governance and financial markets. It is published by BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd.

The Mercury, published since 1852, is Durban's morning newspaper. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

The first issue of the East London *Daily Dispatch* was published in 1898. The newspaper is the Eastern Cape's biggest selling daily, with a isiXhosa and English supplement published on Wednesdays. *The Dispatch* was edited by Donald Woods from 1965 until his arrest and banning in 1977 for exposing government responsibility for the death of Steve Biko. It is owned by Avusa Limited.

Founded in 1845 as the *Eastern Province Herald*, *The Herald* is one of South Africa's oldest newspapers. Its first edition – four pages – came out in May 1845 and cost one penny. *The Herald* is owned by Avusa Limited and distributed in the Eastern Cape, with its main base in Port Elizabeth.

First published in 1904, *Volksblad* is the oldest Afrikaans daily in the country and the largest in the Free State and Northern Cape. It is owned by Media24.

Pretoria News, first published in 1898, is Independent Newspapers' daily in the capital city. Mainly sold in Gauteng, it is also distributed in Mpumalanga and North West.

South Africa's oldest newspaper, *The Witness*, serves English readers throughout KwaZulu-Natal, with most of its readers in greater Pietermaritzburg and inland KwaZulu-Natal. Owned by Media24, it was formerly known as *Natal Witness*.

Established in 1878, Independent Newspapers' *Diamond Fields Advertiser* is based in Kimberley and targets the communities of the sparsely populated Northern Cape.

In April 2008, the *Mail & Guardian* (M&G) scooped three honours at the 12th annual Webby Awards – regarded as the Oscars of the Internet – for the blogging platform *Thought Leader* and the *News in Photos* service.

Thought Leader was named an official honouree in the blogging section and the *M&G* online photo portal was named official honoree in both the Newspaper and the Best Use of Photography categories.

Launched in 1995, *Business Report* is South Africa's second financial daily, edited in Johannesburg but printed in three cities. It is inserted in all Independent Newspapers' morning titles in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

South Africa's weekly newspapers

Avusa Limited's *Sunday Times* is South Africa's biggest national newspaper, read by over three million people. The paper includes the *Sunday Times Magazine, Lifestyle, Business Times* and *Metro* sections. Established in 1906, the *Sunday Times* is distributed all over South Africa and in neighbouring countries such as Lesotho, Botswana and Swaziland.

Rapport is South Africa's national Afrikaans Sunday newspaper. It is distributed countrywide and in Namibia. Owned by Media24, *Rapport* has the biggest Afrikaans-language market penetration in South Africa.

A specialist soccer newspaper published on Wednesdays, *Soccer Laduma,* is aimed primarily at men – 87% of its readership is male. It is published by Media24.

Son is the first Afrikaans-language tabloid in the world. The newspaper is based on British tabloids such as *The Sun*, focusing on scandal, gossip, entertainment and sport. It is owned by Media24 and published on Fridays.

First published in 1982 as *Golden City Press*, *City Press* is aimed at the black market. Media24 acquired the paper in 1984. It is published on Sundays.

Established at the beginning of 2002 and aimed at black readers, *Sunday Sun* is the fastest growing newspaper in the country. Its content is largely of a tabloid nature. Owned by Media24 and published by RCP Media, *Sunday Sun* is sold countrywide as well as in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland.

The *Sunday World*, launched in 1999, is a tabloid aimed mainly at black readers. Owned by Avusa Limited, it is distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The *Sunday Tribune* caters for KwaZulu-Natal readers. Its is published by Independent Newspapers.

The *Independent* on Saturday caters for the KwaZulu-Natal market. It is published by Independent Newspapers.

Post was launched in the mid-1950s. Targeted at the Indian communities of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, it is owned by Independent Newspapers. *Post* is published on Wednesdays, with the leisure and sport edition *Postweekend* appearing on Fridays.

The *Sunday Independent* was established in 1995 and aims at readers in the higher-income bracket. Its main sales are in KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and the Northern Cape.

Mail & Guardian, formerly the *Weekly Mail*, was established in 1985 at the height of resistance to apartheid. When foreign donor funding started drying up for anti-apartheid organisations in the late 1980s, many of the country's alternative newspapers – notably *Grassroots*, *South*, *New African* and *New Nation* – folded. The *Weekly Mail*, however, struck up a partnership with the *Guardian* of London, ensuring the paper's continued existence. Today, Newtrust Company Botswana Limited, has a majority share of 87,5% in *Mail & Guardian*, with the *Guardian* holding a 10% stake.

Community newspapers

According to the Audit Bureau of Circulation (ABC), community newspapers grew by 6,2%.

Paid-for and free community newspapers saw either a significant increase or remained static within this market.

Free community newspapers remain the most popular medium, with 171 million copies distributed annually or, on average, four million copies per week.

Magazine circulation and readership

The magazine industry in South Africa is a fiercely competitive environment in which new titles appear all the time, despite the worldwide competition from electronic and interactive media. Considering the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, it seems that many readers are still attracted to print.

The trend to target certain niche markets with specialised publications is popular in the magazine industry and has led this section to grow by 40% more titles during the last 10 years. However, there is evidence to suggest that the overall reading population in South Africa is shrinking, which is a concern for the industry.

> The 2008 AdMag Awards, held in April 2008, saw Vanessa Raphaely walking away with the prestigious Editor of the Year title for *Cosmopolitan* magazine. The publication also won Best International Title of the Year. *Advantage* magazine's editor-in-chief, John Farquhar, was named Publisher of the Year for the consistent excellence of the magazine, while Newcomer of the Year went to *Psychologies*.

> June 2008 saw the launch of South Africa's first 24-hour news service, the e-News Channel, which is broadcast on DStv's premium and compact bouquets. The e-News Channel is found on Channel 403.

A positive development has been the segmentation of the market into niched publications that provide opportunities for advertisers to reach their target audiences. Another new thriving trend is twinned titles – titles produced in two languages.

According to ABC figures for January to March 2008, business-to-business magazines showed no growth, with six new titles and five eliminations. Significant growth in circulation was seen for custom magazines (23,6% with new six new titles). Consumer magazines declined by 1%, with seven new titles, three resignations, and three titles discontinued. Within specific categories of consumer magazines, "business and news" declined by 20,8% with one resignation; "celebrity" went down by 6,8%; "family interest" went up by 3,2%, with one title discontinued; "home" declined by 7,9%, with one new member; "male" went down by 9,4; "motoring" declined by 14%, with two new members, one resignation and two titles discontinued; "sport and hobby" grew by 11,3%, with two new titles and one resignation; and "women's general" showed little growth, with one new title.

Free magazines showed an increase of 19,4% mainly the result of 17 new titles.

Because of rising printing and paper costs, prices have increased accordingly and magazines have had to offer readers better value for their money to retain their loyalty.

Weeklies *Huisgenoot* and *You* are the two biggest money-making magazines in South Africa. Among the monthlies, women's magazines are still the most widely distributed, despite declining sales. *Sarie*, *Rooi Rose*, *Cosmopolitan*, *True Love* and *Move* are all in the top 10.

Women's magazines

Overall, there was an increase in circulation in the women's magazine category.

Essentials increased from 43 805 to 44 069 in the period between January and March 2008. *Glamour* increased from 95 115 to 98,948. *O*, the *Oprah Magazine* went up from 65,008 to 74 961. *Real Magazine* and *Real Simple* increased from 59 771 to 66 188 and 30 608 to 36 022, respectively. *Rooi Rose* grew from 108 146 to 111 828. *Vroue Keur* also showed an increase in circulation from 84 848 to 89 327. There was one new entrant in this category, namely *Cleo*.

Family interest

This category was joined by one new magazine, *Hong Weekly Chinese Magazine*. *Insig* ceased to exist. The total circulation of this category increased from 997 136 to more than one million between January and March 2008.

Bona decreased from 98 930 to 96 123 between January and March 2008.

Reader's Digest increased from 59 886 to 64 077. *You*, although very high on the top 20 list, decreased its circulation from 216 315 to 210 131. *Drum* made a remarkable recovery compared to its figures for 2007. It increased from 86 692 to 104 755. *Move!* also increased from 119 350 to 145 779.

Huisgenoot, *Lig* and *The Big Issue* all made slight increases.

Health

Health magazines proved in general to be a growth area, with an increase from 25 204 to 79 114.

Longevity went up from 25 204 to 27 332. *SA Health Matters* was a new member to the category. *Shape's* circulation figures stood at 51,782.

Parenting

This category remained fairly stable. *Joburg's Child*, *Cape Town's Child* and *Your Baby* gained readership. *Living and Loving* decreased from 35 527 to 34 196. *Baba & Kleuter* and *Parents* also showed slight decreases.

Youth

There has been a proliferation of magazines in the youth sector in the last few years and it clearly remains a significant market. *National Geographic Kids* increased considerably from 34 596 to 44 367, while *Barbie's* figures remained stable at just over 16 000.

Male interest

Manwees' figures dropped from 10 005 to 6 978 as did *FHM*, from 96 361 to 80 098. *Men's Health*'s circulation stood at 77 353.

Motoring

This category in general dropped from 354 810 to a circulation total of 305 187. *Bike SA* and *Auto Trader* remained stable while *Car*, *Cars in Action*, *Speed and Sound* and *Wiel* all showed a slight drop in figures. One new magazine, *Top Bike*, joined the category and stood at a circulation of 10 673.

Travel

This category showed a decline in circulation figures. *Weg/Go* decreased from 114 073 to 102 851 and *Getaway's* figures showed a steady decline from 69 329 to 40 283. *Caravan* and *Outdoor Life* remained stable while *SA Country Life* rose from 36 914 to 40 283.

Sport and hobbies

This category increased from 209 184 to 346 054. *Amakhosi* increased from 28 020 to 32 195, while the figures of *Golf Digest* increased from 31 840 to 38 620. The category welcomed two members, *Extreme Sports Angling* and *SA Hunter/Jagter*, into the group. *African Pilot*, *SA Flyer* and *Tight Lines* remained stable while *Complete Golfer* grew from 25 503 to 29 753.

Business and News

Finweek showed a drop from 34 374 to 33 566. *Financial Mail* was stable at 32 761. *Entrepreneur* and *Maverick* made a slight increase while *Noseweek*'s circulation increased.

Online media

Creamer Media's industrial and political websites dominate the fastest growing sites. According to Nielsen Online, *Engineering News* was the fastest growing website in South Africa in 2007, growing by 190% from 23 455 unique browsers (UBs) in

Top 10 magazines based on net sales, January 2008 to March 2008	
1	Huisgenoot
2	You
3	Move!
4	TV Plus
5	Sarie
6	Cosmopolitan
7	People
8	Rooi Rose
9	Car
10	True Love

Source: Audit Bureau of Circulation

March 2007 to 67 924 in March 2008. The overall market has grown by 44% in the same period: 3,4 million to 4,9 million UBs.

Creamer Media produces three of the four fastest growing sites – *Engineering* News, *Mining Weekly* and *Polity*.

News24 was the most popular South African website with over 1,1 million UBs in March 2008. Of the 10 most popular websites with comparable data in 2007 only *SuperSport* (103%) and *Yellow Pages* (51%) had a growth rate above overall market growth (44%). The most popular South African websites are:

- *News24*
- *MSN*
- *MWeb*
- *Webmail*
- *Hotmail*
- *iol*
- *24.com*
- *CareerJunction*
- *SuperSport*
- *Yellow Pages.*

Media organisations and role-players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), formed in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation, established in 1882), Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP). The purpose of PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers (WAN) and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP was formed in September 2004 after the major publishing groups withdrew from the Community Press Association (CPA) to give independent publishers an opportunity to transform the CPA into an association that would serve their own specific needs. The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was conceived at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors, and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

Sanef has facilitated the mobilisation of the media in the Partnership Against AIDS Campaign, and in campaigns to end violence against women and children.

Various seminars and debates are held around media freedom and transformation, especially in relation to gender and technology. Sanef is involved in training initiatives and in setting practical standards in journalism education.

Against the backdrop of positive political developments on the African continent, Sanef spearheaded the formation of the All Africa Editor's Conference.

The Southern African Editors' Forum was subsequently formed in 2003. The Forum of Black Journalists tackles issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman.

Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

As self-regulating mechanisms of the media industry, the Press Ombudsman and the appeal panel act in accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and embrace the spirit of transformation in South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI) was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The FXI undertakes a wide range of activities in support of its objectives, including lobbying, educating, monitoring, research, publicity, litigation and the funding of legal cases that advance these rights. In the process, it networks and collaborates with a wide range of local and international organisations. Another body that protects freedom of speech is the Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust. Backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations, the trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.The Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ) is

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC circulation (Jan – Mar 2008)
Beeld www.beeld.com	Media 24	PO Box 333, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 713-9000 / F. 011 713-9956 E-mail: nuus@beeld.com	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	105 149
Die Burger, (Daily)	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000	MD. Mo-Fr	Afr	84 545
Die Burger (Weekly) www.dieburger.com	Media 24	T. 021 406-2121 / F. 021 406-3965 E-mail: dbnred@dieburger.co.za	MD. Mo-Fr	Afr	88 603
Business Day www.businessday.co.za	BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 1746, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-5548 / F. 011 280-5505 E-mail: busday@bdfm.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	41 975
Cape Argus, The www.capeargus.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4156 E-mail: argusnews@ctn.independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	70 401
Cape Times www.iol.co.za	Cape Ltd Independent Newspapers	PO Box 11, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4717 E-mail: chriswh@independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	50 621
Citizen, The (Daily) www.citizen.co.za	Cape Ltd Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042 T. 011 248-6000 / F. 011 248-6213 E-mail: citizen@citizen.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	55 448
Citizen, The (Weekly)	Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042	Weekly, Sat	Eng	71 324
City Press www.citypress.co.za	RCP Media Bpk	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001/ F. 011 713-9966 E-mail: news@citypress.co.za	Sun	Eng	201 790
Daily Dispatch www.dispatch.co.za	Dispatch Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 131, East London, 5200 T. 043 702-2000 / F. 043 743-5155 E-mail: news@dispatch.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	32 194
Daily News www.dailynews.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 46915, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: dennis.pather@inl.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	52 018
Daily Sun	KZN Media 24	PO Box 121, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 877-6000 / F 011 877-6046 E-mail: news@dailysun.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	499 436
Diamond Fields Advertiser	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 610, Kimberley, 8300 T. 053 832-6261 / F. 053 832-8902 E-mail: pbe@independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	10 138
Herald, The www.theherald.co.za	Gauteng Ltd Johncom. Eastern Cape	P/Bag x6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: theherald@johnnicec.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	25 978
Ilanga Langesonto www.ilanganews.co.za	Mandla Matla Publishing Co	PO Box 2159, Durban, 4000 T. 031 337-4000 / F. 031 337-9785 E-mail: newsroom@ilanganews.co.za	Wknd	Zulu	90 096
Ilsolezwe	(Pty) Ltd Independent	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023	MD, Mo-Fr	Zulu	99 098
Independent on Saturday, Newspapers www.iol.co.za	Independent	PO Box 4759, Greyville, 4023 E-mail: trevor.bruce@inl.co.za T. 031 308-2934 / F. 013 308-2111	Weekly	Eng	53 999
Mail and Guardian www.mg.co.za	KZN M&G Media	PO Box 91667, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 250-7300 / F. 011 250-7502 E-mail: newsdesk@mg.co.za	Weekly	Eng	52 067
The Mercury www.themercury.co.za	(Pty) Ltd Independent	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 031 308-2333 E-mail: mercnews@inl.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	38 916
Post	Newspapers KZN Independent	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2529 / F. 031 308-2555 E-mail: khalil.aniff@inl.co.za	Weekly Wed	Eng	46 649

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC Circulation (Jan – Mar 2008)
Pretoria News (Daily) www.ptanews.co.za	Newspapers KZN Independent Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 439, Pretoria, 0001 E-mail: pta.news@inl.co.za	MD,Mo-Fr	Eng	28 202
Rapport www.rapport.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 8422, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9537 / F. 012 713-9977 E-mail: rapport@rapport.co.za	Weekly	Afr	301 827
Saturday Star	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-2792 / F. 011 633-2794 E-mail: star@inl.co.za	Weekly	Eng	138 269
Soccer-Laduma www.soccerladuma.co.za	Gauteng Ltd CT Media Proprietor	PO Box 787, Sea Point, 8060 T. 021 425-1200 / F. 021 425-1247	Weekly	Eng	292 701
Sowetan www.sowetan.co.za	New Africa Publications	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 E-mail: editor@sowetan.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	145 173
Sunday World www.sundayworld.co.za	(NAP) Ltd Avusa	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 471-4200 / F. 011 471-4164 E-mail: newsed@sundayworld.co.za	Sun	Eng	203 460
The Star www.iol.co.za	Independent	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 836-6186 E-mail: starnews@star.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	68 993
Sunday Independent The www.iol.co.za	Newspapers Gauteng Ltd Independent	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 834-7520 E-mail: jovial.rantao@inl.co.za	Weekly	Eng	43 290
Sunday Sun	Newspapers Gauteng, Ltd Media 24	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001 / F. 011 713-9731	Wknd	Eng	202 524
Sunday Times www.sundaytimes.co.za	Avusa	P/Bag x57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: suntimes@tml.co.za	Wknd	Eng	504 193
Sunday Tribune	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2711 / F. 011 308-2357 E-mail: tribunenews@inl.co.za	Sun	Eng	109 452
Volksblad www.volksblad.com	KZN Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-6949 E-mail: nuus@volksblad.com	Mo-Fr	Afr	29 924
Volksblad (weekly)	Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-7034	Wknd	Afr	24 469
Weekend Cape Argus	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4528 / F. 021 488-4597 E-mail: ryan.cresswell@inl.co.za	Wknd	Eng	104 738
Weekend Post	Cape Ltd Avusa Eastern Cape	P/Bag x6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: weekend@johnnicec.co.za	Wknd	Eng	24 821
Witness www.witness.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 362, Pietermaritzburg, 3200 T. 033 355-1111 / F. 033 355-1122 E-mail: newsed@witness.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	12 620
Weekender www.weekender.co.za	(Pty) Ltd BDFM		Sat	Zulu	23 187
Son www.dieson.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 692,Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406 2075 / F. 021 406 3221	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	102 402

The abbreviations used are the following: Wknd (Weekend), MD (Morning daily), Mo-Fr (Monday to Friday) Sun (Sunday), Afr (Afrikaans), Eng (English), Zulu (isiZulu).
Source: Audit Bureau of Circulation

an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the CPA into the AIP.

The FCJ's launch as an independent body allows it to represent all journalists, including independent community-press journalists. It also assists in meeting its objective of becoming a more diverse and representative body for the community-press industry.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes ™ighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Members include, among others, the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993).

It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

If a member of the public is concerned that a broadcaster is not observing its licence conditions, that person may lodge a complaint with Icasa. If a broadcaster is found to be guilty of contravening its licence conditions, the BMCC makes recommendations to Icasa about action that should be taken.

Material that could be considered X-rated must be submitted to the Film and Publication Board prior to being shown. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, the Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union, the Specialist Press Association, the South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, Professional Photographers of South Africa, the Media Institute of Southern Africa, and press clubs in major centres.

The mission of the Online Publishers' Association is to provide a non-profit forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), launched in December 1993, lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and -run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

News agencies

The South African Press Association (Sapa), a national news agency, is a co-operative, non-profit news-gathering and news-distribution organisation operating in the interests of its members and the public. Sapa's foreign news is received from Associated Press (AP) and its representatives in London.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are *Agence France-Presse*, AP, *Deutsche Presse Agentur*, Reuters and United Press International. Other agencies are the Eastern Cape News Agency and African Eye News Service in Mpumalanga.

Training centres

Over 40 institutions offer media training in South Africa. Tertiary institutions include various universities of technology such as Tshwane, Walter Sisulu, Nelson Mandela, the Cape Peninsula and Durban; and Rhodes, North-West, Stellenbosch and Witwatersrand universities.

Other organisations such as the Cape Town Film and Television School; the SABC's Television Training Centre; the Radio Freedom Institute; the Institute for the Advancement of Journalism;

the Cross Media Training Centre; and Nemisa, a government-funded training institute, specialise in broadcasting, news-media and multimedia skills.

Nemisa is a non-profit organisation established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), which provides much-needed advanced skills training for the broadcasting industry. It has Council for Higher Education accreditation and offers diploma courses, short courses and internships in TV and radio production and creative multimedia. It has forged valuable international linkages with training institutions in Canada, France, India and Malaysia. It has also established links with the Commonwealth Broadcasting Association. The Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta) was gazetted on 15 March 2000. It has six advisory committees, comprising representatives from labour, business and government that advise on:

- print media
- advertising
- publishing
- printing
- packaging
- film and electronic media.

The Mappp-Seta co-ordinates a sector-training plan across the media industry, and assesses the quality of training courses that are run by the industry.

Parallel to this, the South African Qualifications Authority has approved the establishment of several standards-generating bodies for the media industry.

Similar bodies have been implemented for journalism training and communication studies. These bodies are substructures of the National Standards Body (language and communication) that co-ordinates standard-setting in the communication and language sectors.

Journalism awards

The most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards.
- Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism. In 2008, it was awarded to Max du Preez.
- Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa PICA Awards.
- Sanlam Community Press Awards.
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums.
- South African Breweries Journalism Awards.
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award.

In April 2008, veteran journalist Jeremy Gordin of *Sunday Independent* was named South African Journalist of the Year. *City Press* editor-in-chief Mathatha Tsedu clinched the 2008 Lifetime Achiever Award at the seventh Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards in April 2008, while the *Mail & Guardian* team – made up of seven journalists – won the South African Story of the Year.

Media diversity

Media diversity in any country is regarded as a measure of the depth of its democracy. Every citizen should have access to a diverse range of media. South Africa is on its way towards achieving this mission.

The Constitution provides for freedom of expression and access to information. To deepen media diversity, government, together with commercial media entities, have partnered to assist the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA), which is tasked with providing financial and other support to community and small commercial media projects.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002), which provides for the establishment of an independent, statutory body, jointly funded by government, the media industry and other donors. The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 provides for a sustainable mechanism for funding the objects of the MDDA Act, 2002 through contributions from broadcasting service licensees.

The MDDA is tasked with creating an enabling environment for media diversity and development by providing support to media projects, and facilitating research into media development

The Highway Africa Conference 2008 took place at Rhodes University in Grahamstown in September 2008. Each year, more than 500 delegates from across the globe attend the conference to discuss issues relating to Internet governance, information and communications technology policy and media for democracy. Highway Africa is a partnership between Rhodes University (School of Journalism and Media Studies) and the South African Broadcasting Corporation, with the support of several partners, development agencies and sponsors. For 12 years, the Highway Africa Conference has been at the centre of Africa's debates on journalism and new media. The conference has over the years become the largest annual gathering of African journalists in the world.

and diversity issues. The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together in addressing the legacy of imbalances in access to the media.

The MDDA provides support to existing grassroots media projects, and assists in establishing new media projects targeting neglected audiences. Over one third of the projects supported are new projects. The MDDA focuses on the goal of ensuring that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice, and contributes to the transformation of media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa.

The purpose is to strengthen the sector though the provision of resources, knowledge and skills in pursuit of promoting media development and diversity.

In addition, the MDDA has conducted workshops on resource mobilisation for media around the country, a community television summit and advertising and marketing round-table, and has provided bursaries for 41 grassroots media managers to attend media-management training.

By January 2008, the MDDA had spent about R55 million in grants for 172 media projects. More than 40 of those did not exist prior to the establishment of the MDDA.

Advertising

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South African awards recognising excellence in advertising. The Association of Marketers established these awards in 1978 to coincide with the advent of commercial television in South Africa. The first ceremony took place in 1979.

The Loerie Awards ceremony sees excess monies being ploughed back into the industry in the form of bursaries for underprivileged advertising and marketing students via the Loerie Education Trust Fund, and as a donation to the Advertising Benevolent Fund. The main objective of the Loerie Awards is to encourage creative advertising. A total of 172 Loeries were handed out at the awards ceremony in July 2008.

In 24 April 2008, Network BBDO was named Ad Agency of the Year at the *AdReview* Awards, but the Ogilvy Group dominated by taking five trophies: the Roger Garlick Award for its Cliff Jennings Gimmick, the Durban Agency of the Year, the Diversified National Group Award, the Baobab Award and The Big Idea for the Coca-Cola "Brrrr!" concept devised by Ogilvy Johannesburg.

Network BBDO was voted the best agency of the year because its achievements, relative to its size, were considered superior to those of its competitors.

The Roger Garlick Awards for innovation in media planning were also presented at the *AdReview* ceremony.

Hosted by Media24, the awards featured Communication Design; Advertising Print, Outdoor and Ambient; Experiential Print Media; Experiential Alternative Media and Field Marketing; Experiential Internal Marketing and Strategic

Winners of major annual press trophies

	Frewin*	McCall**	Cronwright***	Hultzer****	Joel Mervis*****
2004	Beeld	Witness	Paarl Post	Springs and Brakpan Advertiser	Naweek-Beeld
2005	The Witness	The Witness	The Mirror	Eikestadnuus	Weekend Witness
2006	Die Burger	The Witness	District Mail	Eikestadnuus	Mail & Guardian
2007	Beeld	Mercury and Business Day (shared)	Paarl Post	Pochhefstroom Herald	Mail & Guardian
2008	Beeld	The Witness	Springs Advertiser	Paarl Post	Weekend Witness

* Best daily newspaper with a circulation above 50 000
** Best daily with a circulation under 50 000
*** Best community newspaper with a circulation exceeding 15 000
**** Best community newspaper with a circulation below 15 000
***** Best urban weekly

Source: Print Media South Africa

CRM Programmes; Student Awards; the Marketing Leadership and Innovation Award; and the Creative Achievement Award.

The Grand Prix winners were both small specialist agencies. Am I Collective won in Craft Illustration for the "Scrabble Campaign", while Trigger Communication won Communication Design–Architecture, Interior Design and Environmental graphics for its Nike "Be true pop-up store".

Other marketing-communication awards

In academic circles, advertising is regarded as one of the core elements of any marketing communication strategy. Marketers are increasingly integrating other core marketing-communication elements, such as direct marketing and sponsorship – two of the fastest-growing areas in marketing communication – into their overall campaigns.

The Assegai Awards were introduced in 1998 to honour excellence in direct marketing, strategic prowess and innovation, with an emphasis on results. These are the only South African marketing-communication awards that recognise return on investment – measurable and accountable – talking directly to targeted prospects and existing customers by way of various integrated and actionable media.

The awards are recognised as the industry benchmark, with a mandate to promote growth, and to recognise and reward excellence in the direct marketing arena.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

The ASA is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to regulate advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation. The ASA co-operates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

Acknowledgements

Adfocus, Financial Mail
Audit Bureau of Circulation
BuaNews
Department of Communications
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, Published by National Treasury
Government Communications
Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
Media Development and Diversity Agency
M-Net
Print Media SA
South African Broadcasting Corporation
South African National Editors' Forum
www.arivia.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.etv.co.za
www.fxi.org.za
www.gov.za
www.icasa.org.za
www.joburg.co.za
www.mtn.co.za
www.mfsa.co.za
www.opa.co.za
www.orbicom.co.za
www.sabc.co.za
www.sapo.co.za
www.sentech.co.za
www.southafrica.info.co.za
www.telkom.co.za
www.theworx.biz
www.vodacom.co.za
www.epnetwork.co.za

Suggested reading

Comley, R. *et al*. eds. *Women by Women: 50 Years of Women's Photography* in South Africa Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.
Elion, B and Strigman, M. *Clues to Culture*. Camps Bay: One Life Media, 2006.
Hadland, A. ed. *Changing the Fourth Estate*: *Essays on South African Journalism*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2005.
Hadland, A and Thorne, K. *The People's Voice: The Development and Current State of the South African Small Media Sector.* Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.
Hadland, A, Cowling, L and Tabe, BFT. *Advertising in the News: Paid-for Content and the South African Print Media*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Hadland, A, Aldridge, M and Ogada, J. *Revisioning Television: Policy, Strategy and Models for the Sustainable Development of Community Television in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Maseko, L. ed. *Sowetan: Celebrating 25 years of The Soul Truth.* Johannesburg: *The Sowetan*, 2007.
Steyn-Barlow, C. *Publish and be Damned: Two Decades of Scandals*. Alberton: Galago, 2006.
Thlabela, K. *et al*. eds. *Mapping ICT Access in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Trovato, B. *On the Run*. Sea Point: Black Hat, 2007.

South Africa's economy has been growing at almost 5% a year for the past several years – 32 consecutive quarters of positive growth. Following the global economic recession, this figure was expected to drop in 2008/09, but will accelerate moderately in 2010 and beyond.

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA)

AsgiSA was launched in February 2006. Government and stakeholders identified six "binding constraints on growth" that needed to be addressed to achieve its target of halving unemployment and poverty between 2004 and 2014.

These binding constraints were:

- deficiencies in government's capacity
- the volatility of the currency
- low levels of investment infrastructure and infrastructure services
- shortages of suitably skilled graduates, technicians and artisans
- insufficient competitive industrial and service sectors and weak sector strategies
- inequality and marginalisation, resulting in many economically marginalised people being unable to contribute to and/or share in the benefits of growth and development (the Second Economy).

AsgiSA has also identified particular sectors of the economy for accelerated growth, such as:

- chemicals
- metals beneficiation, including the capital-goods sector
- creative industries (crafts, film, content and music)
- clothing and textiles
- durable consumer goods
- wood, pulp and paper.

Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa)

Jipsa, the skills-empowerment arm of AsgiSA, was launched in 2006.

Jipsa is a specific initiative within government's wider AsgiSA strategy, aimed at addressing the skills shortage and achieving a 6% growth rate, which is seen as key to halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. Jipsa is a joint initiative by social partners, including government, business, labour, and key role-players, such as the higher and further education and training sectors. Jipsa is not an implementing agency and as such does not directly train people.

Based on the priorities of AsgiSA, Jipsa's identified work areas are:

- high-level world-class engineering and planning skills for the network industries, and the transport, communications and energy sectors
- city, urban and regional planning and engineering skills desperately needed by South African municipalities
- artisan and technical skills, with those needed for infrastructure development enjoying priority.

In 2008, Department of Labour figures reflected an increase in the number of artisans in training. The 2007/08 service-level agreements (SLAs) signed between the various sector education and training authorities (Setas) and the Department of Labour reflected a total of 18 879 artisans to be registered.

By mid-2008, provisional Seta SLAs indicated that an additional 20 000 learners were registered for 2008/09. The Department of Education forecasted that the number of engineers graduating from universities would increase from about 1 500 per year to 2 000 per year by 2010.

Various initiatives to increase access of young people to high-quality education and skills acquisition are in place, such as teacher training for Mathematics, Science, information and communications technology (ICT) and language competence. One of the key initiatives is the transformation of further education and training (FET) colleges, by making them centres of the skills revolution offering outcome-based training. The participation of youth in urban, rural and farm areas is enhanced by the bursary scheme of R600 million over a three-year period to enable young people to access training opportunities at FET colleges.

Skills relevant to the local economic development needs of municipalities, especially developmental economists are also addressed.

The Government works with several provinces in recruiting for Jipsa placement opportunities. Provinces such as the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal have formed Jipsa offices that place unemployed graduates within government. KPMG employed 80 accounting trainees between 2006 and 2008, and half of them were rural unemployed graduates.

Another important Jipsa project that is creating opportunities for rural communities is

Siyenza Manje, implemented by the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA). By mid-2008, the project saw 118 professionals placed at 101 municipalities. The project includes the Young Professionals Development Programme, which has seen 50 young graduates recruited and deployed in municipalities.

Economic indicators

Domestic output

South Africa's real gross domestic product (GDP) rebounded in the second quarter of 2008 and expanded at an annualised rate of 4,9%, following sluggish growth at a rate of only 2,1% in the first quarter.

This improvement in growth in the second quarter of 2008 reflected strong increases in the real value added by the primary and secondary sectors, which comfortably offset a further moderation in real output growth of the tertiary sector over the period.

The quarter-to-quarter change in the real value added by the primary sector rebounded from an annualised rate of decline of 13,9% in the first quarter of 2008 to a rate of increase of 16,9% in the second quarter. Real output of the mining sector, in particular, recovered in the second quarter of 2008, following a sharp contraction in the preceding quarter.

Real output growth in the agricultural sector edged higher from the first to the second quarter of 2008. Favourable weather conditions for field-crop production, combined with a marked increase in the acreage planted, resulted in higher output volumes over the period.

The size of the commercial maize crop was expected to increase from 7,1 million tons (Mt) in the 2006/07 production season to 11,6 Mt in the 2007/08 season.

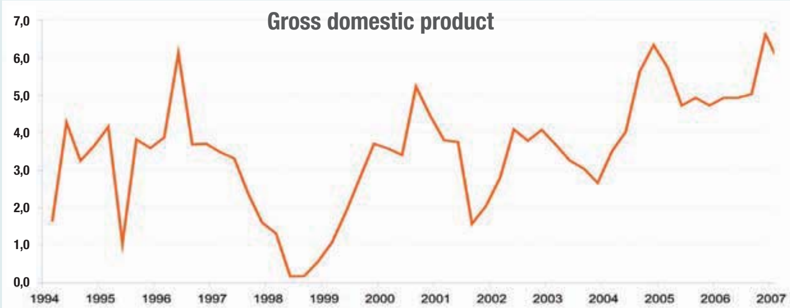
The real value added by the mining sector recovered some of its earlier losses in the second quarter of 2008 and rose at an annualised rate of 15,6%, following a contraction of 25,1% in the first quarter. On a year-on-year basis, however, real output of the mining sector still contracted in the second quarter. Production of gold, diamonds, coal and platinum increased in the second quarter of 2008, notwithstanding the fact that the mines had to operate at power levels fluctuating between 90% and 95% of their earlier electricity requirements.

The more stable supply of electricity and favourable commodity prices more than offset the loss of production due to continuing, but fewer, safety-related shutdowns over the period.

Having increased at an annualised rate of only 1% in the first quarter of 2008, the real value added by the secondary sector expanded at a rate of 12,3% in the second quarter, primarily due to the improved performance of the manufacturing sector.

Subsequent to a decline of 1,0% in the first quarter of 2008, output in the manufacturing sector expanded at an annualised rate of 14,5% in the second quarter. The improved performance of the sector could partly be attributed to base effects, following the subdued level of production in the preceding quarter. The increase in production was especially pronounced in the subsectors for food and beverages, and petroleum and petroleum-related products.

While production in the manufacturing sector recovered in the second quarter of 2008, it coincided with a further drop in business confidence levels. The utilisation of production capacity in the manufacturing sector receded from 85,4% in the first quarter of 2008 to 85,1% in the second quarter – slightly below the recent peak of 86,5% registered in the second quarter of 2007.



Source: *Development Indicators 2008*

The real value added by the sector supplying electricity, gas and water contracted marginally to a negative rate of 1,3% in the second quarter of 2008, compared with a strong decline at an annualised rate of 6,2% in the preceding quarter.

Exports of electricity to neighbouring countries were lower in the second quarter of 2008 than during the first quarter, while the volume of imported electricity increased during this period. Even though the average coal stockpiles at power stations still fell short of the targeted 20 days of supply, the supply of coal to Eskom and the availability of electricity improved considerably. However, a mild winter contributed to lower electricity demand in the second quarter.

Activity in the construction sector remained extremely buoyant considering that the real value added by the sector increased at an annualised rate of 10,6% in the second quarter of 2008, lower than the rate of 14,9% recorded in the first quarter. This moderation in growth reflected deteriorating conditions in the residential and non-residential building sectors, as developers increasingly felt the strain of higher interest rates and mounting inflationary pressures. The activity of the civil construction sector held up well in both quarters.

The pace of growth in the real value added by the tertiary sector slowed from 4,2% in the first quarter of 2008 to 1,4% in the second quarter, mainly reflecting notably slower growth registered in the trade sector.

The real value added by the trade sector, which increased at an annualised rate of 3,6% in the first quarter of 2008, declined at a rate of 2,2% in the second quarter – the first contraction since the third quarter of 2001. Slower output growth in the retail and motor trade subsectors was the main contributor to the weaker growth. Tighter credit conditions and inflationary pressures negatively affected consumer spending and consumer confidence levels in the second quarter of 2008.

Real output growth in the transport, storage and communications sector increased from an annualised rate of 3,5% in the first quarter of 2008 to 4,1% in the second quarter. Increased activity in both the transport and communications subsectors boosted performance in the sector.

Growth in the real value added by the finance, insurance, real-estate and business services sector decelerated from 4,9% in the first quarter of 2008 to 2,3% in the second quarter, following weaker growth in the subsector for finance. Likewise, activity in the real-estate sector tapered off somewhat.

The real value added by the general government sector decelerated noticeably from growth at an annualised rate of 4,6% in the first quarter of 2008 to 1,1% in the second quarter.

Domestic expenditure

In contrast to the rebound in growth in real domestic production in the second quarter of 2008, aggregate real gross domestic expenditure contracted at a rate of 4,2% over the same period.

This reversal in growth was brought about by substantially slower growth in all components of domestic final demand. In addition, real inventories were depleted over the period.

Growth in final consumption expenditure by households continued on a downward trend from its quarter-to-quarter peak registered in the first quarter of 2007. Having increased at an annualised rate of 3,3% in the first quarter of 2008, growth in household spending slowed to 1,2% in the second quarter, led by a sharp decline in the demand for durable goods.

In addition, real outlays on semi-durable and non-durable goods abated over the period.

A contraction in demand for personal transport equipment – mainly new motor vehicles – restricted growth in total spending on durable goods in the second quarter of 2008.

Spending on furniture, household appliances and on medical equipment also lost considerable momentum over the period. This moderation in spending was, however, partly countered by an increase in spending on durable recreational and entertainment goods. As a result, real expenditure on durable goods contracted at a rate of 14,9% in the second quarter of 2008, compared with a decline of 8,1% in the preceding quarter.

The declining demand for new motor vehicles reflected the confluence of overall slower economic activity, reduced income growth, high household debt levels, tighter credit conditions and rising fuel prices.

A contraction in spending on motor-car tyres, parts and accessories, together with subdued demand for clothing and footwear, resulted in slower growth in real expenditure on semi-durable goods in the second quarter of 2008. Real spending on the other subcategories of semi-durable goods also either slowed or contracted, causing growth in overall household expenditure on semi-durable goods to slow to a rate of 2,4% in the second quarter, compared with an increase of 10,5% in the first quarter of 2008.

Growth in real expenditure on non-durable goods slowed from an annualised rate of 3,0% in the first quarter of 2008 to less than half a percent in the second quarter. Private consumer demand for household fuel and power, medical and pharmaceutical products, and petroleum products contracted over the period. In addition, demand for all other categories of non-durable goods decreased. Increased prices of most of these components were particularly responsible for declining trends in real outlays on these items.

Quarter-to-quarter growth in real household expenditure on services increased from an annualised rate of 4,3% in the first quarter of 2008 to 6,5% in the second quarter. Spending on household services and transport and communications services more than offset decreased spending in the other categories over the period.

Growth in real disposable income of households eased from 2,6% in the first quarter of 2008 to an annualised rate of 2,0% in the second quarter. This moderation in growth was reflected in sustained growth in compensation of employees and slower growth in net income from property. Consistent with the slower pace of growth in consumer spending and the prevailing tighter credit conditions, growth in credit extended to households lost momentum in the second quarter of 2008.

As the pace of debt accumulation by households tapered off in the second quarter of 2008, the ratio of household debt to disposable income slowed notably to 76,7% during the second quarter of 2008 from 78,2% in the first quarter. However, the ratio of debt-service cost to disposable income of households rose from 11,3% in the first quarter of 2008 to 11,6% in the second quarter.

After increasing at a buoyant rate of 12,8% in the first quarter of 2008, real final consumption expenditure by general government turned around and declined at a rate of 1,4% in the second quarter. This contraction partly reflected the statistical effect of the high base set in the first quarter, when growth was boosted by the acquisition of a submarine in terms of government's Defence Procurement Programme.

Real gross fixed capital formation remained buoyant, although the pace of growth slowed from an annualised rate of 16,9% in the first quarter of 2008 to 9,1% in the second quarter. Capital investment by all institutional sectors moderated over the period.

Having increased at an annualised rate of 11,2% in the first quarter of 2008, growth in real fixed capital outlays by private business enterprises slowed to 9,9% in the second quarter. With the exception of the construction and commerce sectors, capital investment moderated in all other subsectors of the private sector over the period.

The upgrading of freeway networks provided further impetus to investment by contractors. Consumer demand, although subdued, continued to provide an incentive for the further expansion of retail space and, accordingly, gave rise to further growth in real fixed outlays by the commerce sector. In the agricultural sector, the acquisition of agricultural machinery proceeded briskly against the background of favourable product prices, increased production volumes and late summer rains.

Real fixed capital expenditure by public corporations remained quite strong and increased to an annualised rate of 9,9% in the second quarter of 2008. While investment expenditure in the sector supplying electricity, gas and water maintained its upward momentum to address electricity-supply constraints, the transport sector also advanced real capital investment in the second quarter of 2008. The refurbishment of coaches to improve rail services in particular contributed to increased investment in rail infrastructure.

Growth in gross fixed capital formation by general government decelerated in the second quarter of 2008. This slowdown in investment spending was evident among all three tiers of government. Provincial governments have broadly maintained their capital investment in addressing provincial infrastructural backlogs. Although real capital spending on transport equipment tapered off in the second quarter of 2008, the demand for trucks was supported by various infrastructural projects.

Real inventory investment reversed from an accumulation of R9,8 billion in the first quarter of 2008 to an inventory depletion of R6,8 billion in the second quarter. In part, the slower pace of inventory accumulation could be attributed to a

According to Ernst & Young, merger and acquisition activity rose sharply in South Africa in 2007, with total deal volumes up 81% over the previous year and the top 10 deals coming in at R208,1 billion, a 51,5% increase over the top 10 deals of 2006. Black Economic Empowerment was one of the main drivers.

reduction in inventories in the mining and manufacturing sectors. Since the maize-harvesting season started, the delivery of maize to silos has been giving rise to real inventory accumulation in the trade sector by increasing the agricultural stocks-in-trade. Real inventory investment subtracted 4,7 percentage points from growth in real gross domestic expenditure in the second quarter of 2008, compared with a positive contribution of 5,8 percentage points in the first quarter.

Price inflation

The steps taken by the Reserve Bank to bring down inflation are working. Inflation was projected to fall within the target range by the end of 2008 and to average 4,9% in 2009.

Overall consumer price inflation increased to 4,7% in 2006 and 7,1% in 2007.

Year-on-year CPIX inflation (consumer price index less mortgage interest rate) rose from 6,3% in April 2007 to 8,9% in January 2008 and 10,1% in March 2008.

The annual rate of increase in CPIX food prices stood at 13,6% in January 2008 compared to 8,3% in January 2007. During the course of 2007, food prices increased by more than 10%. The prices of basic foodstuffs such as maize, wheat, soyabeans and rice increased as a result of changing climatic conditions and rising demand.

Year-on-year headline inflation or the CPI stood at 10,6% in March 2008. Statistics South Africa ascribed the higher rate partly to a rise in the year-on-year CPI for food from 7,7% in March 2007 to 15,3% in March 2008.

CPIX inflation breached the upper band of the inflation target range between April 2007 and March 2008, for 12 consecutive months.

However, some factors were still of concern, necessitating continued vigilance in the application of anti-inflationary policy. These included:

- high and volatile international crude oil prices
- high grain prices due to adverse weather conditions, low inventories of agricultural goods and higher food prices
- uncertainty concerning exchange-rate developments
- salary and wage settlements being significantly in excess of the inflation target range
- possible second-round effects of the abovementioned factors
- fairly high rates of money supply and private credit-extension growth alongside continued buoyancy in domestic demand conditions
- increases in certain administered prices in excess of the inflation target range.

> i
>
> In March 2008, South Africa's rating of 63,2% ranked it 52nd globally on the Heritage Foundation 2008 Index of Economic Freedom.
>
> According to Century 21 South Africa – the local chapter of the world's largest real estate brand – the index, which covers 162 countries, took 10 specific freedoms into account.
>
> These were business, trade, fiscal, freedom from government, monetary, investment, property, rights, labour and freedom from corruption.
>
> In a country-by-country analysis, South Africa was rated above average in seven of the 10 areas and its overall score was much higher than the regional average.
>
> South Africa ranked third-highest on the continent, behind Botswana and Mauritius, which placed it in the "mostly free" category.
>
> According to the index report, the country's financial system was the most advanced in Africa and government had been working to increase the transparency of commercial regulations.

Exchange rates

After declining notably during the first quarter of 2008, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand recovered some of its losses during the second quarter. On balance, the weighted average exchange rate of the Rand increased by 3,6% from the end of March 2008 to the end of June 2008.

The strengthening of the domestic currency mainly occurred during April and May and was probably supported by the further tightening of the country's monetary policy. In addition, the continuation of the international credit-market turmoil during the second quarter probably helped to attract investors' excess funds to South Africa's financial markets in search of higher yields.

During June 2008, the exchange value of the Rand declined in response to a lower-than-anticipated interest rate increase by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) and the announcement of a larger-than-expected current-account deficit in the first quarter of 2008.

The depreciation of the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand in June 2008 was further aggravated by a ratings agency's decision to change the outlook for South Africa's long-term issuer default rating from positive to stable. Despite lower international prices of certain commodities, and partly supported by the rebound in domestic output during the second quarter 2008, the exchange rate of the Rand strengthened by 7,8% from June 2008 to August.

Following a decline of 15,4% during the first quarter of 2008, the real effective exchange rate of the Rand increased by 7,5% in the second quarter. On balance, the inflation-adjusted effective exchange rate of the Rand declined by 9% in the first half of 2008.

The net average daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange declined from US$17,3 billion in the first quarter of 2008 to US$17,1 billion in the second quarter. Non-resident investor participation in the spot market decreased gradually over the period.

Foreign trade and payments

The deterioration in the current-account deficit was mainly attributed to continued strong import demand, which coincided with relatively weak growth of merchandise exports. The trade deficit consequently widened from R26,7 billion in the fourth quarter of 2007 to R61,4 billion or 2,8% of GDP in the first quarter of 2008. Net service, income and current transfer payments to the rest of the world continued to grow in the first quarter of 2008.

Having increased by 4,8% in the fourth quarter of 2007, the volume of merchandise exports shrank by 7,2% in the first quarter of 2008. Despite the general slowdown in the global economic activity, the international demand for South African mining products such as coal, platinum, base metals and gold remained strong.

The volume of manufactured exports advanced further in the first quarter of 2008, mainly due to the exportation of motor vehicles made possible by ongoing investment spending in the motor manufacturing industry.

Notable increases in the international prices of certain South African export commodities, alongside the depreciation of the Rand, raised rand prices of merchandise exports by 16% from the fourth quarter of 2007 to the first quarter of 2008. The turmoil in global financial markets and lower production volumes led to an increase of almost 20% in international commodity prices. The value of merchandise exports consequently advanced by 7,7% in the first quarter of 2008, following an increase of 6,8% in the final quarter of 2007.

The export proceeds of South African gold producers edged higher by 2,2% in the first quarter of 2008, primarily due to a 32,6% increase in the average realised Rand price of gold, which more than offset a contraction of almost 23% in the physical quantity of net gold exports over the period.

On the London market, the fixing price of gold rose by 17,5% from US$789 per fine ounce in the fourth quarter of 2007 to US$927 per fine ounce in the first quarter of 2008. In mid-March 2008, the gold price momentarily rose above US$1 000 per fine ounce before receding to marginally below US$900 per fine ounce by the end of May 2008. The gold price was buoyed by United States (US) dollar weakness and rising energy prices. Vibrant domestic demand continued to support growth in import volumes.

The physical quantity of imported goods advanced by 3,4% in the first quarter of 2008, after virtually no growth in the preceding quarter. Despite the higher growth, the country's import penetration ratio, which had fluctuated around 27,5% in the final three quarters of 2007, remained unchanged in the first quarter of 2008.

Alongside the depreciation of the Rand, the average price level of imported goods rose by 9% in the first quarter of 2008. The outcome of the rise in import prices and import volumes culminated in a relatively sharp increase of 12,7% in the value of merchandise imports in the first quarter of 2008.

The negative imbalance on the service, income and current transfer account with the rest of the world widened in the first quarter of 2008, albeit at a slower pace, to record a deficit of R133,2 billion.

Interest and dividend payments in 2007 and the first quarter of 2008 accounted for more than 40% of total service, income and current transfer payments compared with an average ratio of 34% during the period 2004 to 2006.

South Africa's terms of trade improved considerably in the first quarter of 2008 after deteriorating somewhat in the previous quarter. Although the depreciation in the exchange value of the Rand inflated the Rand price of merchandise imports, the renewed increase in international commodity prices caused export prices to accelerate at a considerably faster pace.

i

The Industrial Development Corporation has launched a R1-billion scheme to finance emerging entrepreneurs. The scheme seeks to eliminate problems in the funding process. Some R400 million has been earmarked for female entrepreneurs and R50 million for the disabled.

Department of Trade and Industry

The aim of the Department of Trade and Industry is to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens. In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

To contribute to greater shared growth in the country, the department is pursuing the goals of:

- significantly progressing Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE)
- increasing the contribution of small enterprises to the economy
- contributing towards providing accessible, transparent and efficient access to redress
- contributing towards building skills, technology and infrastructure platforms from which enterprises can benefit
- increasing market-access opportunities for, and export of, South African goods and services
- increasing the overall level of direct investment, as well as investment in priority sectors
- repositioning the economy in higher value-added segments of value matrices in knowledge-driven manufacturing and services
- contributing towards the economic growth and development of the African continent within the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) framework
- building an efficient, effective and accessible organisation to achieve these outcomes.

These strategic objectives are achieved through the collective effort of the department's divisions and agencies that generate public value for economic citizens, and deliver products and services for clients and stakeholders.

These products and services include policy, legislation and regulation, finance and incentives, information and advice, and partnerships.

The department also achieves these objectives by pursuing a more targeted investment strategy, improved competitiveness of the economy, broadening the economic participation of historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs) in the mainstream economy and ensuring policy coherence.

Broadening economic participation

Several of the department's programmes aim to bridge the economic divide and broaden economic participation by HDIs.

The Enterprise Business Unit is responsible for creating an enabling environment for small, micro, medium-sized and co-operative enterprises to contribute to the country's GDP and unemployment.

This responsibility entails the development of a legislative framework, policies, strategies and programmes aimed at lowering the barriers to entry and stimulating the participation of these enterprises in all sectors of the economy.

The unit implements its mandate through a range of institutions directly funded by the Department of Trade and Industry, and is responsible for evaluating and monitoring the performance of such institutions.

These institutions include:

- The South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf) provides micro-finance to small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) through a network of financial intermediaries across South Africa. Samaf provides a framework for development micro-finance industry norms and standards, including sustainable lending methods. By May 2008, Samaf had distributed about R8,2 billion, benefiting about 9 000 savers and 1 700 SMEs.
- Khula Enterprise Finance is a key agency representing the interests of SMEs for access to lending through a network of both the public and private-sector partners.
- The Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda) provides small enterprises around South Africa with a one-stop non-financial support service. It is supporting 26 incubators through the Seda Technology Programme.
- The Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP) disbursed over R86 million in the past four years
- The Isivande Supplier Fund was launched in March 2008. The fund aims to provide affordable enterprise loans, ranging from R30 000 to R5 million.

Other programmes include:

- implementing new policy and legislation to promote the development of co-operative enterprises
- implementing the BBBEE Strategy, focusing on the codes of good practice, the sector

charters and the establishment of the BEE Advisory Council
- introducing a specific strategy to empower women

Targeted investment strategy

The Investment Promotion and Facilitation business unit within Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa) is mandated to develop and implement a targeted investment promotion and facilitation strategy. The strategy covers a range of issues that are important to fulfilling the Department of Trade and Industry's mandate of increasing the value of inward foreign direct investment (FDI), and is designed to target and focus interventions in this arena. The strategy is also explicitly aligned with the National Industrial Policy Framework (NIPF). It focuses on identifying and promoting specific investment opportunities in particular sectors, regions and products, rather than taking the generic approach of marketing South Africa as an attractive investment destination.

This will require a more co-ordinated approach to investment promotion by national, provincial and local government. Achieving this will be a priority in the first year of the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

The unit is dedicated to promoting investment opportunities, marketing investment projects, providing guidance with plant/site locations, especially in the industrial development zones (IDZs), and inputting into policy formulation by providing investment information.

The facilitation of investments involves arranging investment missions, including travel itineraries; improving the platform for the introduction of investors to key stakeholders in private and public sectors; introducing investors to potential joint-venture partners and black economic partnerships; providing advice and guidance on the prevailing regulatory environment; offering assistance with work-permit applications; providing logistical support for relocation; and a dedicated aftercare service.

South Africa's global positioning and integration

International Trade and Economic Development (ITED)

The ITED division of the Department of Trade and Industry aims to provide trade-policy leadership to contribute to South Africa's economic development. The ITED programme aims to strengthen trade and investment links with key economies, promote a strong and equitable multilateral trading system and foster African economic integration and development in line with Nepad.

The policy and programme developments in international trade development include:
- implementing the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu)-European Free Trade Area (EFTA) free trade agreement (FTA)
- concluding trade negotiations with Mercosur, a trading bloc consisting of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay
- initiating preferential trade negotiations with India
- administrating various binational commissions (BNCs) with other governments
- advancing trade and economic development integration in the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- ongoing participation in the Doha Round of trade multilateral negotiations in the World Trade Organisation (WTO)
- ongoing analysis of trade threats and opportunities
- offering policy oversight of the International Trade Administration.

African economic development

ITED has a strong developmental focus in its engagement with Africa. Partnerships with key countries on the continent are of strategic importance. South Africa's economy is inextricably connected to the southern African region, and the region's economic prospects are linked to the economic recovery of the continent. Nepad is the internationally agreed framework for the socio-economic development of the continent.

At a continental level, South African investment and trade with African countries has increased dramatically since 1994. Africa is now South Africa's fourth-largest export destination. South African investments in southern Africa alone totalled R14,8 billion in 2001. Trade with the rest of Africa totalled about R50 billion in 2007 and increased to R108 billion in 2007 with exports amounting to R68 billion and imports to about R40 billion. In the same year, South Africa's trade in the SADC region totalled some R68 billion with exports reaching R44 billion and imports R24 billion.

The following areas have been prioritised:
- infrastructure and logistics (roads, ports, etc.)
- energy

- information and communications technology (ICT)
- water and waste management
- transport
- construction
- oil and gas infrastructure
- agribusiness
- mining
- human-resource development (HRD).

During meetings of the World Economic Forum (WEF) for southern Africa, the formation of a business forum for southern Africa was announced to take advantage of investment opportunities in the region.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

The Department of Trade and Industry is among the key departments identified in South Africa to facilitate and implement the aims and objectives of Nepad. The department therefore acts as a catalyst for trade and economic development on the continent to alleviate poverty. Nepad recognises the need for infrastructure, industrial and skills development, and its impact on the continent's ability to become fully integrated into the global economy.

The department contributes to the Nepad agenda by mobilising the necessary support from relevant stakeholders internally and externally, and providing leadership and strategic guidance on trade and economic issues. The South African Government assists African countries in export diversification by promoting investment in infrastructure and industrial projects.

The Department of Trade and Industry, through its engagement with continental structures such as the African Union Commission (AUC) and the Nepad Secretariat, strongly advocates for finding African solutions to African problems and identifying partners to contribute to the continental development agenda.

One such programme is the African Peer Review Mechanism, which is a voluntary self-assessment tool that aims to encourage countries to adopt policies to promote good governance, democracy and high economic growth. It also encourages countries to share experiences in terms of best practice.

The department also supports the AUC and the Nepad Secretariat in the area of regional economic integration, which is a vehicle to ensure economies of scale, effective allocation of resources and larger markets in the region and on the continent. The framework for regional economic integration is contained in the Abuja Treaty.

The Abuja Treaty calls for the establishment of an African Economic Community to take place over a period of 34 years. Member states of the African Union (AU) should work towards eliminating overlapping memberships of regional economic communities; harmonising business laws, and industrial and tax policies; and establishing common standards and customs procedures.

Other important vehicles through which the continental developmental agenda is advanced are through South-South co-operation initiatives such as the China-Africa Forum and the New Asian African Strategic Partnership.

The acceleration of South-South trade and investment is one of the most significant features of recent developments in the global economy. South-South co-operation is premised on the concept that developing countries can capitalise on each other's strengths because of the alignment of their development goals.

This, however, does not preclude North-South co-operation, where developed and developing countries work in partnership to address Africa's developmental needs.

These include discussions and initiatives from the G8 and the European Union (EU)-Africa partnership.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC comprises Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

South Africa took over the chair of the SADC in August 2008. During the SADC Summit, the FTA was launched.

The theme of the SADC FTA is: "SADC FTA for Growth and Wealth Creation".

The FTA provides preferential space towards regional business and its citizens by opening up opportunities for investment by reducing market risk and transaction costs, and creating a network of regional businesses interconnection.

The FTA is a vital stepping stone towards a SADC Common Market, where the movement of people would be unrestricted and free.

Freeing trade in the region will create a larger market, releasing the potential for trade, economic growth and employment creation.

South Africa supports the establishment of a dedicated focal point within the Trade, Industry, Finance and Investment Directorate at the SADC Secretariat to co-ordinate the customs union programme and to ensure coherence between the activities of the Technical Working Group and other SADC structures.

Southern African Customs Union

Sacu consists of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland. The Sacu Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia.

Sacu was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest customs union. It was administered by South Africa through the 1910 and 1969 agreements. The customs union collected duties on local production and customs duties on members' imports from outside Sacu. The resulting revenue was allocated to member countries in quarterly instalments using a revenue-sharing formula.

Negotiations to reform the 1969 agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002. The new arrangement was ratified by Sacu heads of state.

The economic structure of the union links the member states by a single tariff and no customs duties between them. The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are reduced substantially on all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries. There is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of Sacu.

The landmark FTA between Sacu and the EFTA, comprising Iceland, Liechtestein, Norway and Switzerland, became operational on 1 May 2008.

Sacu signed a Trade, Investment and Development Co-operation Agreement with the USA in April 2008 and a Preferential Trade Agreement with Mercosur was concluded in June 2008.

The agreement manages and facilitates trade in industrial products, fish and other marine products, and processed agricultural products. Trade in basic agricultural products is governed by bilateral agreements with each of the EFTA states, the latter of which are party to the FTA. Most industrial goods, including fish and other marine products, now benefit from duty-free access to the EFTA states. The importation of products into Sacu will benefit greatly from the steady elimination of customs duties over a transitional period of time.

Trade with Europe

Trade relations with Europe, particularly with the European Union (EU), are pivotal to South Africa's economic development. The Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA) with the EU forms a substantial element of South Africa's reconstruction and development.

By August 2008, the United Kingdom (UK), Germany, Netherlands, Spain and Belgium were among South Africa's top 10 export destinations. Germany, the UK, Italy and France are among the top 10 countries from which South Africa's imports originate.

Since 2001, Germany has been South Africa's largest source of imports, showing annual growth of 18,5% between 2007 and 2008. In 2008, South Africa's biggest trade partner was The Netherlands.

European Union

The TDCA, which was provisionally implemented on 1 January 2000 and came into force on 1 May 2004, provides for the establishment of an FTA between South Africa and the EU. The TDCA commits South Africa to grant duty-free access to 86% of EU imports over a period of 12 years, while the EU will liberalise 95% of South Africa's imports over a 10-year period.

This agreement is expected to contribute towards the restructuring of the South African economy and its long-term economic growth. It covers trade and trade-related issues, development and economic co-operation, and political dialogue.

It also provides a legal framework for ongoing EU financial assistance on grants and loans for development co-operation, amounting to R900 million per year. Statistics compiled by the South African Revenue Service (Sars) show that the tariff preferences in the agreement are being used increasingly.

The historic South Africa-EU Summit, which took place within the context of South Africa-EU strategic relations was held in Bordeaux, France, in July 2008.

The EU is the world's largest trading bloc and generates about 30% of global GDP and 20% of global trade flows. It is the world's biggest aid donor to poor countries, contributing about half of global aid.

Implementation of the TDCA's trade provisions has been underway since 2000 with the aim of establishing a FTA between South Africa and the EU by 2012.

Total trade increased over five-fold, from R56,5 billion in 1994 to R313 billion in 2007.

In 2007, South Africa's exports to the EU-15 amounted to R137 billion. The EU ranked as South Africa's number one exporting region in 2007. South Africa's total imports from the EU-15 amounted to R176 billion in 2007, also ranking number one.

Europe remains the principal source of FDI in South Africa, accounting for around 80% of total FDI in 2005. Additionally, the EU accounted for about 66% of net foreign investment in South Africa in 2003 and 2004, and in 2005 the EU's share of the total assets held by foreigners in South Africa amounted to about 60%.

The EU is South Africa's largest development partner, representing about 70% of all overseas development assistance, with South Africa earmarked to receive 980 million euro between 2007 to 2013. The European Investment Bank has also approved a loan mandate of 900 million euro for South Africa.

The South Africa-EU TDCA continues to serve as the foundation of interaction between South Africa and the EU. The EU had proposed that South Africa enters into a strategic partnership, which it also has with countries such as Russia, India, Brazil. This partnership provides for the focus on broadening the political dialogue between South Africa and the EU, apart from the existing sound and good bilateral relations and the focus on trade and economic issues.

The Americas

North America

The USA is one of South Africa's leading trading partners. The country ranks second after Japan as a destination of South African exports and is third – after Germany and China – as a source of imports.

The trade balance with the USA changed from a deficit of R0,7 billion to a surplus of R1,1 billion in June 2008. Exports increased from R5,5 billion to R7,7 billion and imports increased from R6,2 billion to R6,6 billion. South Africa is a beneficiary of the USA's generalised system of preferances (GSP), which grants duty-free treatment to over 4 650 products. At the same time, South Africa is one of 38 beneficiaries of the Africa Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA), which was promulgated in May 2000. In terms of the AGOA, 1 783 more products were added to the existing GSP products for duty-free treatment.

Although the AGOA was initially due to lapse in 2008, the US Government consented to requests by African countries, and extended the measure to 2015 under what is called the AGOA III amendments. Along with other member states of Sacu, South Africa has begun negotiations with the USA to enter into a trade investment development co-operation agreement, intended to provide a framework for deepening Sacu's trade and investment relations with that country.

Canada

Another significant trading partner in the Americas is Canada. Since the lifting of sanctions in 1994, bilateral trade between South Africa and Canada increased from R904 million in 1993 to R6,6 billion in 2006. South Africa is a beneficiary of Canada's General Preferential Tariff (GPT). GPT rates range from duty-free to reductions in the most favoured nation (MFN) rates.

Furthermore, South Africa and Canada have a memorandum of understanding (MoU) relating to the export of clothing and textile products to that country. The MoU allows a certain amount of clothing and textile products from South Africa to enter the Canadian market at a better-than-MFN tariff rate.

Additionally, over the past three years, an annual consultation forum was established to discuss matters of mutual interest in South Africa's relations with Canada. The forum has also become an important basis for strengthening trade relations.

Latin America

South Africa's major trading partners in Latin America are Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Colombia and Peru. Most trade is with Brazil and Argentina, which are members of the Mercusor trade bloc. A framework agreement committing South Africa and Mercusor to an FTA was signed in 2000.

Asia

The trade deficit with Asia increased from R8,3 billion to R9,0 billion in June 2008. Exports to

Asia increased by R1,3 billion to R17,9 and imports increased by R1,9 billion to R26,9 billion.

South-east Asia and Australasia

Bilateral trade with south-east Asia, particularly the Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean) members, increased rapidly from a low base in 1990. Asean presents South Africa with a potential market in excess of 520 million people.

Within the region, key partners for South Africa include Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, Vietnam and the Philippines.

Between 2007 and 2008, exports grew by 39,8%. Imports grew by 9,1%.

In an effort to further expand engagement with the region, the Department of Trade and Industry is undertaking a number of joint trade committees with key Asean partners to expand trade and investment relations with the region.

Australia has always featured as a well-known partner for South Africa in the region.

North-east Asia

In 2008, South Africa and the People's Republic of China (PRC) celebrated 10 years of diplomatic relations.

The PRC is a key partner for South Africa in north-east Asia. The PRC's influence in the global economy has changed significantly in the last few decades as its share of international trade has increased, with China becoming a pillar of global economic growth.

The two countries engage regularly on economic issues through mechanisms such as the Joint Economic and Trade Committee. Research and discussions among key stakeholders domestically and within Sacu are continuing towards assessing the possibility of preferential negotiations with China.

South Africa is China's key trade partner in Africa, accounting for 20,8% of the total volume of China-Africa trade in 2007 figures. Total trade between South Africa and the PRC amounted to approximately R88 billion (about US$13 billion if the Rand/Dollar exchange rate for the end of December 2007 is taken into account) for the year 2007.

According to the abovementioned statistics, total trade between the PRC and South Africa increased from about R60,7 billion in 2006 to R88,3 billion in 2007. This represents an overall increase of about 45% if the total value of trade for the 2006 and 2007 years are compared.

Total trade between South Africa and Hong Kong amounted to about R7,4 billion for 2007, with a trade balance of about R1,8 billion in South Africa's favour.

China is the fifth-largest export destination for South Africa and offered the second-largest import market for the 2007 year.

Beyond bilateral and regional initiatives, South Africa and the PRC also co-operate in multilateral forums, including in the WTO, in the G20 and Non-Agricultural Market Access 11 groupings (Nama-11), based on shared developmental perspectives.

Japan is South Africa's largest trading partner in Asia and is among South Africa's top overall trading partners. The South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum is designed to strengthen bilateral ties between the two countries. The forum meets regularly and explores new initiatives aimed at expanding relations.

South Asia

India is a key partner for South Africa in South Asia, and total trade has been increasing rapidly since 1994. In March 2008, India was South Africa's 10th-biggest trade partner.

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical ties, which have translated into a firm political commitment. In light of these shared historical links, closer economic ties are being fostered using initiatives such as the Joint Ministerial Commission and through business engagements.

Developments in building economic relations with India are also expanding to include partners in Sacu, as reflected in the Sacu ministers' undertaking to pursue preferential trade area negotiations with India.

South Africa and India work closely in the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Forum. IBSA is not solely an economic initiative, but rather an undertaking by countries with shared interests in a multilateral system to address equitably political, social and economic matters.

This trilateral economic co-operation is informed by the reality that trade between the three countries is still relatively low, while further analysis reveals that there is considerable scope to increase trade volumes and expand the range of traded products between the three markets. In essence a more fundamental aim than the development of a giant trading bloc, the trade and investment undertakings under IBSA seek to cultivate and unleash the host of missed opportunities that exist.

South Africa also co-operates with India in the multilateral arena in areas of common interest in the WTO, most notably the G20 and Nama-11, as well as in other forums.

The South Africa-Pakistan Joint Commission serves as the platform from which trade and investment initiatives with Pakistan can be introduced.

Multilateral economic relations

The WTO, in partnership with the Bretton-Woods Institutions, the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund, has been setting the parameters for and directing the economic development policies of governments around the world.

This has had serious implications for the content, evolution and trajectory of economic development strategies being pursued by developing countries, including South Africa.

It is imperative for South Africa to influence and shape the configurations of the emerging system of global governance to address the needs and concerns of the developing world.

This is best done by participating actively and effectively in all multilateral forums, to ensure that South Africa's particular economic interests and developmental goals and objectives, as well as those of the African continent, are taken into account.

> i
>
> The Department of Trade and Industry, the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) Business Foundation and the Department of Foreign Affairs, in partnership with the Nepad and Southern African Development Community (SADC) secretariats, hosted a Nepad-SADC Infrastructure Projects Conference in Sandton, Johannesburg, on 8 August 2008.
>
> The conference aimed to analyse regional integration within each development corridor, namely the North-South Corridor, to which Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), South Africa, Zambia and Zimbabwe are party, and the Central Corridor, comprising Burundi, DRC, Rwanda, Tanzania and Uganda, to monitor and evaluate the status of projects and identify proactive actions for their successful implementation.
>
> Subjects under discussion included the prioritisation of infrastructure projects for immediate action, and defining modalities for the establishment of effective and action-oriented public-private partnerships.
>
> A key outcome of the conference was the development of a concrete plan of action targeting specific projects to be pursued by the private sector, in collaboration with the relevant authorities and interested parties.

United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad)

Unctad is an important resource organisation for South Africa and the African continent. The main goals of the organisation are to:

- Maximise the trade, investment and development opportunities of developing countries.
- Help developing countries face challenges arising from globalisation and integration into the world economy equitably. Such assistance is pursued through research and policy analyses, intergovernmental deliberations, technical co-operation and interaction with civil society and the business sector.

Unctad focuses on assisting developing countries to prepare for mandated and possible future negotiations in the WTO.

Unctad holds a conference every four years to set its priorities and guidelines, and to provide an opportunity to debate key economic and development issues.

Member states gathered in São Paulo, Brazil, in June 2004 for Unctad's 11th Ministerial Conference, which closed with the adoption of the Spirit of São Paulo Declaration and the São Paulo Consensus. These provide more detail on the role of Unctad in a globalising world.

The Spirit of São Paulo Declaration recognises that most developing countries, especially African and other least-developed countries, have remained on the margins of the globalisation process, and that there is a need to focus on the ability of international trade to contribute to poverty alleviation.

The São Paulo Consensus focuses on:

- development strategies in a globalising world
- building productive capacities and international competitiveness
- assuring development gains from the international trading system and trade negotiations
- fostering partnerships for development.

World Trade Organisation

South Africa regards its membership of the WTO as important because of the enhanced security and certainty in the multilateral trading system that WTO rules provide.

The country is an active participant and contributor towards a strengthened multilateral trading system, whose benefits are equitably distributed across the world community. South Africa wants to participate in shaping global governance to ensure beneficial and full integration of its economy, as well as those of other developing nations, into the global trading system.

South Africa's efforts to build an alliance of developing countries within the WTO, based on a common approach and consensus on key issues, bore fruit late in 2001, when an agreement was reached to launch a new round of trade negotiations, this time with a developmental agenda.

The WTO Doha Development Agenda set the work programme of the WTO in 2003/04. However, the work slowed down considerably after the fifth WTO Ministerial Conference held in Cancun, Mexico, in September 2003, when WTO members failed to reach agreement on key developmetal issues due to irreconcilable positions between developed and developing countries.

A positive outcome of the Cancun meeting was the formation of a grouping of developing countries known as the G20, which succeeded in pushing for significant reforms in agricultural trade, which the developed world strongly opposed. The failure to reach agreement in Cancun showed that developing countries are now participating more effectively in the WTO to ensure they also benefit from the rule-based trading system and globalisation. The G20 has become an important player in the Doha Development Agenda to ensure that the needs and concerns of the developing world are addressed.

After the failure of Cancun to agree on a work programme for continued Doha Development Agenda negotiations, the G20 highlighted agricultural reform as an important development tool. The group was also trying to narrow the differences between developed and developing countries to put the Doha negotiations back on track.

In July 2008, trade ministers from 30 countries gathered in Geneva, Switzerland, in another bid to reach agreement under the Doha Development Agenda. A few weeks later, world leaders met again in New York on Africa's special development needs and on the millennium development goals.

South Africa continues to favour the speedy conclusion of a developmental outcome to the Doha Round, to advance the interests of developing countries.

The G20 comprises Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, China, Cuba, Egypt, Guatemala, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Nigeria, Pakistan, Paraguay, Philippines, South Africa, Tanzania, Thailand, Uruguay, Venezuela and Zimbabwe.

World Economic Forum

The WEF is a global investment forum and is held in different parts of the world. The WEF engages global leaders in business, and leaders of various countries in partnerships to shape global, regional and industry agendas. The forum discusses pertinent international issues, which include promoting Africa's growth, the impact of China and India's growth on other emerging economies, and climate change and its impact.

The 18th annual WEF on Africa was held in June 2008 in Cape Town.

Trade and Investment South Africa

A central task of the Department of Trade and Industry is to promote value-added exports and attract investment. The vision is one of a restructured and adaptive South African economy, characterised by growth, employment and equity (regional, spatial, gender and racial).

Tisa is a division of the Department of Trade and Industry and has a national mandate to develop the South African economy, focusing on facilitating and promoting investment and exports.

Tisa's mission is to provide strategic vision and direction so as to increase the level of direct investment flow, and to develop South Africa's capacity to export into various targeted markets.

Export development and promotion

Tisa is responsible for developing and promoting South African goods and services. It contributes directly towards the objectives of the Department of Trade and Industry by:

- identifying, researching and promoting market-access opportunities for South African exporters
- facilitating exports by matching potential exporters with foreign buyers
- developing and helping South African exporters to promote their products by providing non-financial support.

Promoting and facilitating investment

Tisa is responsible for attracting FDI, and developing and promoting investment by domestic and foreign investors. It offers:

- information on investing and the business environment in South Africa
- detailed sector information
- direct government support in the form of investment incentives
- investment facilitation and aftercare.

Export promotion and development

This area of the economy remains a challenge that is being addressed by the implementation of the Export Strategy that was approved in 2006. The aim of the strategy is to ensure that South African exports maintain their market share in traditional markets, and substantially increase their market share in prioritised, new high-growth markets through aggressive marketing and a larger exporter community.

To accomplish this, the focus has been on developing and expanding the local export community and culture, while also promoting South African products abroad through missions, pavilions and the use of the network of foreign offices.

Tisa's purpose is to increase South Africa's capacity to export by developing and implementing strategies for targeted markets, increase the level of direct investment flow and manage the department's network of foreign offices.

Objectives and measures are to:

- promote awareness of investment opportunities in South Africa by conducting three international investment conferences, 95 investment presentations, six South African exhibitions (pavilions) and five ministerial or presidential missions by March 2009
- improve the capacity of new exporters by training 200 new small exporters, reaching 2 000 customers and distributing 3 000 publications by March 2009
- promote South African products in targeted high-growth markets by conducting six international trade initiatives and 25 pavilions, and fund 50 trade missions through export councils and provincial investment-promotion agencies by March 2009
- facilitate markets for southern African products and services by promoting and implementing eight export projects in targeted countries by March 2009.

Enterprise and industry development

The Department of Trade and Industry's Enterprise and Industry Development Division's (EIDD) purpose is to provide leadership in the development of policies and strategies that create an enabling environment for competitiveness, equity and enterprise development.

The EIDD will contribute to realising the department's strategic objectives by:

- creating an enabling environment for all enterprise forums, including co-operatives, to prosper
- providing a framework to enable participation of women and black people in the economic mainstream
- identifying new geographic areas for greater economic stimulation
- providing a framework for industry norms and standards, including sustainable production methods
- influencing policy developments in skills building, technology and infrastructure
- providing policy direction in emerging sectors and repositioning the economy in higher-value segments to achieve competitiveness.

The EIDD has three business units, namely:

- Competitiveness and Industrial Development
- Enterprise Development
- Equity and Empowerment.

Incentives include the:

- Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme (SMEDP)
- Skills Support Programme
- Critical Infrastructure Programme (CIP)
- IDZs
- Foreign Investment Grant (FIG)
- Strategic Investment Programme.

The IDZs have been linked to the major international airports and to ports. By mid-2008, they existed at Coega, in East London, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal and in the IDZ linked to OR Tambo International Airport in Gauteng.

The IDZs operate by providing particular infrastructure. The opportunities of concentration around that infrastructure are orientated particularly towards export activity. They offer duty-free entry of input, which is then used to manufacture products that are exported in a special customs administration arrangement.

A range of other incentives have also been developed in the IDZs. The Department of Trade and Industry, together with its partners in MinMec, have identified a need for a significant review of the operation of IDZs and for a new IDZ Act to be presented.

Among other things, the IDZ policy needs to deal with issues of governance, defining more clearly the roles of national government, of the province, of local government as well as of the authorities established to run particular IDZs.

There is a need for a clear funding stream and an incentive programme for IDZs. The Department of Trade and Industry lifted the moratorium on new IDZs, and the Mafikeng IDZ business plan was prepared.

By July 2008, other potential IDZs at the Kruger National Park Airport, at the Dube Trade Port and at the Harrismith Freight and Logistic Hub were being prepared.

The department has developed and discussed with MinMec another model to encourage broader spatial economic development, called special economic zones (SEZs) or regions. A number of candidates for SEZ status were identified, including the Mzimbuvo Development Zone in the Eastern Cape, the Northern Cape Diamond Hub, the Wadeville Industrial Corridor in Gauteng, the Durban Clothing and Textile SEZ, the agroprocessing SEZ in Mpumalanga, an SEZ for agroprocessing in the Western Cape, and a metal SEZ in KwaZulu-Natal.

The other key measure that has been developed since 1994 to promote more equitable spatial economic development has been the strategic development initiative or corridor programmes. These are programmes related to particular infrastructure developments such as road or transport links, which package together a series of investment opportunities linked to those infrastructural investments.

The Enterprise Organisation (TEO)

The Department of Trade and Industry's TEO provides incentives to stimulate or catalyse investment in infrastructure, HRD, integrated manufacturing and related activities, small-business development, specific regions, and technology and innovation.

A number of incentives are provided to both large and small businesses to improve their competitiveness. These include incentives under the SMEDP, the Competitiveness Fund, the Sector Partnership Fund and the BBSDP.

Several incentive programmes administered by the Department of Trade and Industry have made a vital contribution to growing industrial and services sectors, and SMEs.

The SMEDP has been the leading incentive, with 11 309 projects approved since its inception in 2000, and R12,7 billion in incentive value, of which R2,3 billion has been disbursed. From April 2006 to April 2008, 2 501 projects were approved for a R2,96-billion incentive value, of which over R6 000 million was disbursed.

The Enterprise Investment Programme comprises two distinct subprogrammes: the Tourism Support Programme (TSP) and the Manufacturing Investment Programme.

By July 2008, the Critical Infrastructure Programme had 19 projects approved with a qualifying investment value of R32 billion and an infrastructure investment of R9,2 billion. A related programme to support industrial infrastructure, the IDZ programme has also been attracting growing investment, and is valued at over R28 billion.

Workplace Challenge Programme

This supply-side programme of the Department of Trade and Industry (administered by the National Productivity Institute [NPI]) assists enterprises and industries to improve their productivity and competitiveness.

The programme focuses on improving workplace collaboration, adopting world-class manufacturing practices and disseminating best practices.

National Industrial Participation Programme (NIPP)

The conclusion of the NIPF and its endorsement by Cabinet in 2007 was a landmark achievement in the department's work on industrial development. The NIPF serves as a guide and an integrator of the Department of Trade and Industry's work in support of AsgiSA goals. It also plays a significant role in enabling co-ordination of government's Programme of Action (PoA); and focused partnerships and co-operation with the private sector, industry and labour, in tackling the challenges of industrial development.

Capital/transport equipment and metals, automotives and components, chemicals, plastic fabrication and pharmaceuticals, forestry, pulp and paper and furniture have been identified as four lead sectors in which growth interventions and key actions will be undertaken.

The focus of the work on industrial development will be on sectoral action plans, which will be prioritised and implemented within the framework of government's PoA for the Economic Cluster. Significant progress has been made in finalising key sector strategies, with some being targeted for implementation during the 2007/08 financial year (e.g. chemicals and pharmaceuticals, automotives, metals and capital equipment, forestry, pulp, paper and furniture, and clothing and textiles).

Implementation of business process outgoing (BPO) and tourism strategies is ongoing. The development and implementation of sector strategy interventions will be a continuous process, with priorities determined for each period, to ensure the broadest possible stimulation of growth and employment in the manufacturing and services sector.

The chemicals and allied industries, and the metals and engineering sectors summit agreements were signed in April 2008. These agreements serve as a framework within which government, business and labour engage in the pursuit of sustainable solutions to constraints affecting the sectors.

The NIPP has been a key contributor to industrial development, and by July 2008 some 150 projects had been implemented, involving US$7,5 billion in investments and exports and 12 000 direct jobs created.

There are two elements to the NIPP in South Africa, those emanating from non-defence procurements and those from defence procurement. The Department of Trade and Industry manages the NIPP, which becomes effective once the foreign content of a procurement, purchase or lease contract of government departments and parastatals exceeds US$10 million, in which case an NIPP obligation of 30% on the foreign content will be attracted.

The NIPP focuses on national objectives, mainly in the commercial environment. The objectives of the NIPP include fast-tracking investment, fostering partnerships in research and development and creating market opportunities for locally manufactured goods abroad.

By early 2008, the total value of NIPP obligations being monitored was estimated at more than US$15 billion. The programme has benefited South Africans by US$12,6 billion over the last 10 years as a consequence of the country's Strategic Defence Procurement and other government purchases.

This includes investment credits estimated at US$3,5 billion, with export and local sales, technology transfer, BEE and SMME promotion making up the balance. The benefits cover the areas of BEE, partnerships between participating entities and skills development.

NIPP investments have allowed major new injections of technology and skills transfer into South Africa. The vision of the department regarding stimulating innovation and high-growth sectors, and integrating South Africa as a vital part of high-value global supply chains is being realised.

South Africans have taken raw materials and moved them up the value chain. Mined gold is being turned into jewellery and base metals are used to produce super alloys.The NIPP has opened entirely new markets, sometimes with unique new products.

At the same time, the NIPP has become a major point of leverage for government's wider vision of growth with equity, as expressed in AsgiSA.

Concerted efforts have been made to maximise job creation, involve SMMEs, build BEE-owned enterprises and spread the benefits wherever possible to neglected regions and towns. Partnership projects arising out of the NIPP range from the manufacture of oil rigs for the international market to training opportunities in the nuclear and energy sectors.

Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP)

Cabinet adopted the National Industrial Policy Framework (NIPF) as its first action plan in 2007.

In August 2008, progress on sector strategies included:

- the announcement of the first draft outlining the new motor-industry support programme
- in the metals and chemicals sectors, the start of the implementation of National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) sector agreements reached with industry stakeholders had begun
- the launch of the National Tooling Initiative in support of the capital goods sector
- the development of the Draft Competitive Supplier Development Programmes (CSDPs) for Transnet and Eskom
- the prospected finalisation by the end of 2008 of the tariff review in clothing and textiles, chemicals and aluminium products
- the development of urgent interventions in clothing and textiles in consultation with industry stakeholders

In August 2008, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Mandisi Mpahlwa, unveiled the R600-million Centurion Aerospace Village (CAV), near Pretoria.

The CAV includes Supplier Park Development, which consists of the aeromechanical manufacturing of parts and components that will be supplied to aerospace-related manufacturing.

The Supplier Park is also modelled with similar parks such as the Silicone Valley in California and Toulouse in France. The park is expected to directly create about 1 500 jobs.

The CAV was launched in 2006 to create an aerospace supplier park indicative of South Africa's innovative way of manufacturing. The project seeks to reposition the South African aviation sector to ensure its participation in the global aviation market.

- the achievement of good progress in the implementation of actions in AsgiSA priority sectors, such as the roll-out of the BPO Incentive Scheme and the launch of the TSP
- in forestry, the continuation of work in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal and the investigation of new interventions for Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

In the cross-cutting areas identified by the IPAP, progress included a comprehensive review of industrial financing and developing new support programmes, including:

- launching an enterprise investment programme
- launching a film and TV production rebate
- agreement on the structure of tax incentives for industrial policy interventions
- the consideration of the Competition Amendment Bill by Parliament
- the development of a comprehensive trade policy to assure alignment with industrial policy, expected to be completed by the end of 2008
- the establishment of the Technology Innovation Agency.

Cabinet approved the shift to a three-year IPAP that, while retaining annual targets, will be aligned to government planning and budget cycles and allow for a longer time horizon for implementation of industrial policy actions.

Manufacturing

South Africa has developed an established and diversified manufacturing base that has demonstrated resilience and the potential to compete in a global economy. The manufacturing sector provides a locus for stimulating the growth of other activities, such as services and achieving specific outcomes, such as value addition, employment creation and economic empowerment. This platform of manufacturing presents an opportunity to significantly accelerate growth and development.

The Department of Trade and Industry's main functions regarding the manufacturing sector include:

- supporting increased investment in the sector
- enhancing the establishment of new manufacturing entities
- supporting new sustainable and profitable manufacturing entities.

Primary aspects of the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy (IMS) involve:

- improving market access for South African products in key markets
- promoting beneficiation and value addition
- finding ways to harness skills and expertise in South Africa so that they can be sold to other countries.

The IMS identifies the need to capture local knowledge, encourages large corporations and companies to make greater use of small businesses, and promotes greater integration between the different sectors of the economy so that they add value to each other.

The IMS also promotes BEE, small-business development, increased use of ICT, job creation, and a more equitable geographic spread of investment and economic activities.

The automotive industry is one of the key growth sectors that has contributed to the overall economic growth of South Africa. It contributed 7,53% to the country's GDP in 2006.

Growth in this industry can largely be attributed to the Motor Industry Development Programme (MIDP).

Details of a successor programme to the existing MIDP were announced in September 2008.

The Automotive Industry Programme was developed to stimulate production of automotive vehicles and components in South Africa and to encourage the expansion of motor-industry investment and employment. It will provide for:

- stable, moderate tariff protection
- a local assembly allowance, which will allow manufacturers with a plant volume of at least 50 000 units per year to import a percentage of components duty-free
- a production incentive that will be based on production value added
- an automotive investment allowance and company-specific support allowances to support approved programmes in such areas as training and skills development, localisation and research and development.

These elements form the core of the programme. Further work will be done to investigate the possible inclusion of certain components for medium and heavy commercial vehicles.

All stakeholders are satisfied that the new programme will form the basis for sustaining growth, employment and exports of the automotive industry until 2020 in line with government's objectives, in an increasingly competitive global environment.

Competition policy

The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), promotes competition in South Africa to:

- enhance the efficiency, adaptability and development of the economy
- provide consumers with competitive prices and product choices
- promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of South Africans
- expand opportunities for South African participation in world markets and recognise the role of foreign competition in the country
- ensure that SMEs have an equitable opportunity to participate in the economy
- promote a greater spread of ownership, in particular by increasing the ownership stakes of HDIs.

The functions of the Competition Commission include investigating anti-competitive conduct in contravention of the Act, assessing the impact of mergers and acquisitions on competition and taking appropriate action, monitoring competition levels and market transparency in the economy, identifying impediments to competition, and playing an advocacy role in addressing them.

The Competition Commission is independent but its decisions may be appealed to the Competition Tribunal and the Competition Appeal Court.

In May 2008, the Competition Amendment Bill was approved by Cabinet and introduced to Parliament.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

A key focus of the Economic Cluster has been on strengthening integrated state financial and business development support for small enterprises through strengthened institutional mechanisms and more effective co-ordination.

A delivery network, integrating both financial and non-financial support for small enterprises, is complete and covers the entire country.

This network includes Seda, Samaf and Khula as well as departmental programmes to support co-operatives.

> i
>
> The Department of Trade and Industry hosted the South African Handmade Collection (SAHC) 2008 trade show from 31 July to 3 August 2008 at Gallagher Estate in Midrand.
>
> The intention of the SAHC was to ensure that crafters in the rural areas of South Africa gain access to key markets, to accelerate economic growth and alleviate poverty in the country. The collection is a market-access programme, aligned with the objectives of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa.

Some of the projects to support small enterprises include:

- considering improved financial support to small enterprises, including the Khula direct retail finance option
- leveraging procurement to increase demand for goods and services from small enterprises by aligning the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Codes of Good Practice and the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 2000 (Act 5 of 2000)
- rolling out the 10 products for government procurement from small enterprises, including support for small enterprises
- setting up the small enterprise procurement call centre with appropriate dedicated resources and protocols across all government departments to ensure 30-day payment to small enterprises
- strengthening the Tourism Enterprise Programme (TEP) to promote tourism development
- giving focus on the status of business-development interventions critical to respond to the challenges of rural enterprising.

By August 2008, an integrated framework for SMMEs support had been presented and approved by the Trade and Industry MinMec and the process of aligning provincial growth and development strategies (PGDS) and integrated development plans (IDPs) had been initiated. This process will ensure that support for small enterprises is prioritised in PGDS and IDPs.

The TEP has been institutionalised into the Tourism Enterprise Partnership. The strategy for enterprise development has been approved and will focus on delivering sustainable jobs, and enterprises and transformation.

Nine areas have been identified as having the potential to enhance competitiveness of South Africa as a destination. A decision has been taken to pilot implementation of enterprise development in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. The focus will be on developing new products and training enterprises.

Communication on second-economy initiatives has seen the printing of the economic opportunities publication and a TV series broadcasted by the South African Broadcasting Corporation.

Institutional support framework

National Small Business Advisory Council (NSBAC)

The NSBAC advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses.

The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Seda aims to:
- improve geographic outreach
- achieve the desired impact on small enterprises
- provide a single access point for small enterprises
- establish critical partnerships to leverage resources and to enhance its service-delivery model and optimise resource usage
- align government's strategy of service delivery in a coherent manner.

Through Seda offices, entrepreneurs are able to get services, including the development of business plans, technical advice and marketing, as well as information on export support, tenders and incentives.

Seda offices are operational in all nine provinces and by mid-2008 there were 42 branch offices.

Seda also manages the Seda Technology Programme (STP) with an infrastructure of 26 centres in different industrial sectors countrywide to support SMMEs. Over the last three years, this has led to the creation of 154 SMMEs and extended support to 283 SMMEs.

By way of reaching out to enterprises not located in these incubation centres, the Technology Transfer Programme has over the past two years supported 56 technology-transfer interventions to the value of R29,8 million. All these transfers were to second-economy enterprises of which 39% were women-owned.

i

An incentive targeted at stimulating growth, employment and broadening participation was introduced in July 2008. This was announced by the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Mandisi Mpahlwa, at the launch of the Enterprise Investment Programme (EIP) in Pretoria.

The EIP comprises the Manufacturing Investment Programme and the Tourism Support Programme. The programme is accessible to both local and foreign-owned entities wishing to locate their operations in South Africa.

The EIP provides an investment grant of between 15% and 30% towards qualifying investment in plant, machinery and equipment and customised vehicles required for establishing new or expanding existing production facilities or upgrading production capability in existing clothing and textiles operations.

South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund

The Department of Trade and Industry launched Samaf to provide affordable and sustainable access to financial services for the poor. The goal of the fund is to:
- develop sustainable micro-finance institutions that can reach the very poor
- facilitate training for micro-entrepreneurs and financial co-operative clients
- provide back-office services for financial intermediary organisations approved as Samaf financial-services outlets linked through a centralised information technology (IT) platform
- provide mentoring, monitoring and a framework for industry norms and standards, including sustainable lending methods for the developmental micro-finance industry in South Africa.

Within Samaf's two-year existence from inception to March 2008, it approved a total sum of R96 million (R55 million for on-lending and R41 million for capacity-building). In this period, 40 financial intermediaries across the country provided lending windows for Samaf funds, creating a loan book of R22,5 million.

By May 2008, Samaf had disbursed about R8,2 million, benefitting about 9 000 savers and 1 700 SMEs.

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited (Ltd)

Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd was established in 1996 as a specialised agency in the Department of Trade and Industry to promote the development of South African SMEs.

It is also registered as an insurer under the Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 17 of 2003), and is governed by the regulations of the Financial Services Board. It is an independent, limited liability company with its own board of directors.

Khula's primary role is to facilitate small entrepreneurs' access to finance. It has developed various delivery mechanisms in the public and private sectors. It has strong relationships with commercial banks, the public and corporate sectors through which it delivers a variety of financial products. In addition to facilitating access to finance, Khula provides mentorship services through Khula Institutional Support Services, which provides counselling and practical support to entrepreneurs in establishing and managing businesses.

Khula's budget allocations increased from R34,1 million in 2006/07 to R69 932 million in 2008/09. The Khula Credit Indemnity Scheme has also been successfully revised with commercial banks to emphasise developmental imperatives associated with small business support.

Khula has also launched the first-ever South African Start-Up Fund, with an initial capital amount of R150 million, specifically for the benefit of new black entrepreneurs.

This fund, named the Business Partners-Khula Start-Up Fund, is implemented in partnership with Business Partners Ltd and has been operational since 2006.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialised risk financier, providing customised and integrated funding, technical assistance, mentorship and property services to SMEs in South Africa, Kenya and Madagascar.

It is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd, Remgro Ltd, Sanlam Ltd, Billiton SA Ltd, Absa Group Ltd, Nedcor Ltd, FirstRand Ltd, Old Mutual Life Assurance Company of South Africa, Standard Bank Investment Corporation Ltd, Anglo Corporate Enterprises (Pty) Ltd and De Beers Holdings (Pty) Ltd.

Several specialist funds are owned and managed by Business Partners Ltd: three geographical business units, the Business Partners Empowerment Fund, the Business Partners Tourism Fund, the Business Partners Women's Fund and the Business Partners Youth Franchise Fund.

The Business Partners-Khula Start-Up Fund is managed by Business Partners Ltd in a joint venture with government.

Business Partners Ltd is committed to investing capital, skills and knowledge into viable entrepreneurial enterprises.

Technology for Women in Business (Twib)

Twib was established in 1998 by the Department of Trade and Industry to support the advancement of women in business, through the application of science and technology (S&T).

Twib's mandate is to accelerate women's empowerment and women-owned enterprise development by facilitating S&T-based business applications and systems, and to unlock constraints to enterprise innovation and growth. The programme is championed by the department's Gender and Women's Empowerment Unit.

In relation to the strengthening of the South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (Sawen), the Department of Trade and Industry wants to provide integrated entrepreneurial services for women. This includes Twib, which has also been successfully brought under the full management of the department. To continue to support both ICT and IT solutions to grow female enterprises, Twib focuses on entrepreneurial skills and capacity-building as well as technology transfer.

Twib will also assist mainstream women in the BPO sector and thus grow female entrepreneurship in South Africa. A very important aspect of Twib is the "Techno-Girl" initiative through which, in partnership with Cell C, it intends to encourage and introduce young girls into techno-entrepreneurship.

South African Women Entrepreneurs Network

Sawen assists aspiring and existing business women with their business enterprises.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

Sawen is responsible for:
- organising networking forums at regional, national and international level
- lobbying and advocating for enabling and supportive policies
- gathering and updating a database of women-owned enterprises and the services rendered by these companies
- facilitating access to pertinent business information
- facilitating capacity-building and training
- providing business mentorship and counselling
- facilitating access to decision-makers.

Isivande Women's Fund (IWF)

The IWF was launched in March 2008. The fund aims to produce affordable enterprise loans, ranging from R30 000 to R5 million.

Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)

The IDC is a self-financing, South African state-owned national development-finance institution that provides finance to promote industrial and entrepreneurial development. Its primary objectives are to contribute to balanced sustainable economic growth in Africa and to the economic empowerment of the South African population, thereby promoting the economic prosperity of all citizens on the African continent.

The IDC identifies and funds projects in partnership with others and focuses on promoting and investing in viable new industries. It differentiates itself through risk-taking and flexibility in structuring, particularly in the promotion of BEE, SMEs, regional investment diversification and job creation.

IDC's highlights for 2008 include:

- funding approvals amounting to R8,5 billion
- R2,1 billion allocated for developments in the rest of Africa
- funding activities to assist in the creation and retention of more than 33 200 direct new jobs in South Africa (with more than 40% of these in rural areas and 1 900 in the rest of Africa)
- R5,2 billion approved for BEE enterprises (61% of the total)
- significant investment in SMEs (56% of the total number of projects funded)
- doubling Foskor's operational income to over R1 billion.

Consumer and corporate regulation

The Consumer and Corporate Regulation Division of the Department of Trade and Industry provides coherent, predictable and transparent regulatory solutions. This is achieved by developing and reviewing regulatory systems, including policies and legislation in the areas of competition; consumer, company and intellectual property regulation; as well as public-interest regulation relating to the liquor, credit, national lotteries and gambling sectors.

Corporate and consumer regulation has become a creative endeavour that seeks to serve the interests of both business and consumers, and to create a modern and globally competitive national economy.

In an endeavour to create a regulatory environment conducive to investment and enterprise, the Companies Bill was approved for submission to Parliament in 2008.

The Bill aims at, among other things, promoting the development of entrepreneurship and enterprise efficiency; creating flexibility and simplicity in the formation and maintenance of companies; encouraging transparency and high standards of corporate governance; and recognising the broader social role of enterprise.

The Bill proposes the establishment of the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission to administer and enforce the legislation.

A revised Consumer Protection Bill was expected to be resubmitted for Cabinet's approval to introduce it to Parliament during 2007/08. The Bill aims to build strong consumers, competitiveness and innovation in the economy.

It also aims to ensure that consumers are able to make well-informed buying decisions, are able to access a wide range of products and services based on honest and fair marketing and selling practices, have access to efficient and effective redress, and are educated about their rights and obligations.

The enforcement of the Bill will be ensured through the proposed National Consumer Commission.

The Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office registers businesses and intellectual property rights, maintains related registries, and develops information for disclosure to stakeholders.

Black Economic Empowerment

Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Strategy

BBBEE is a government policy aimed at redressing past economic imbalances. Moreover, BEE is an important policy instrument aimed at broadening the economic base of the country, further stimulating economic growth and creating jobs while eradicating poverty.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE were gazetted on 9 February 2007.

These codes are the culmination of the development of the BBBEE Strategy. The Codes of Good Practice on BBBEE assist and advise both public and private sectors on their implementation of the objectives of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003). The codes provide definitions, interpretation and principles of BBBEE; different categories of BEE entiies; and qualification criteria for preferential procurement purposes and other economic activities.

The Codes of Good Practice also provide the weightings, indicators, targets and guidelines for stakeholders in the relevant sectors of the economy to draw up transformation charters for their sectors.

The BBBEE Strategy and its accompanying Codes of Good Practice are important instruments to facilitate the massively increasing participation of black people, thereby promoting the productive capacity of the economy.

BBBEE activity has shown a sharp rise with respect to the number and nature of transactions, involving new enterprises and new consumers. Large companies are forging deals which reflect the key characteristics of BBBEE. In this regard, the National Empowerment Fund's Asonge share scheme involving MTM shares and the Sasol Inzalo transactions stand out. Transactions concluded in 2007 involved R96 billion across a range of sectors, including mining, financial services, construction, oil and gas, telecommunications and food and beverage.

The Department of Trade and Industry gazetted a manual on 18 July 2008 to provide a framework for the accreditation and verification of BBBEE reporting.

The objectives of the manual are to set acceptable minimum standards of ethical conduct, underpinning the responsibility of verification agencies when performing verification and reporting on the BBBEE Scorecard, and outlining the procedures to be followed in providing assurance on whether the requirements of the BBBEE Codes of Good Practice have been met.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The BBSDP is a 20:80 cost-sharing cash-grant incentive scheme, offering support to black-owned enterprises in South Africa.

The scheme provides such enterprises with access to business-development services, assisting them to improve their core competencies, upgrade managerial capabilities and restructure to become more competitive.

It aims to foster links between growing, black-owned enterprises, and corporate and public-sector enterprises.

Any enterprise that is majority black-owned (50 plus one share), has a significant number of black managers, and a minimum trading history of one year qualifies for the programme.

Between 2004 and 2008, the BBSDP disbursed over R86 million.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring (BPO&O)

BPO&O is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries possessing the required skills, cost advantage and infrastructure.

Over the next few years, the global BPO&O industry is forecast to grow at approximately 50% per year and, as a result, a window of opportunity exists for South Africa to realise significant value by developing this sector.

The sector has been forecast to create 100 000 new indirect jobs in South Africa and contribute up to R7,95 billion to the national economy in 2009.

Since the Department of Trade and Industry started supporting this sector in 2007, a significant number of direct and indirect jobs have been created and about R700 million in investment value realised.

In July 2008, the Department of Trade and Industry hosted the BPO&O National Policy Conference in Durban.

The conference aimed to:

- review the current BPO&O Policy
- create a networking platform for BPO&O investors
- create public awareness about the growing BPO&O industry in South Africa.

By July 2008, nine projects had been approved, 9 132 jobs had been created and R 658 million worth of investments had been made.

Technology support

By providing technology support to industry, the Department of Trade and Industry contributed to industry competitiveness in support of the industrial policy. To co-ordinate and streamline the Department of Trade and Industry's technology support to SMMEs, the following was achieved in 2007/08:

- After the successful merging of the Godisa Incubator Programme and the Technology Transfer Centre of the Department of Trade and Industry in 2006 into the STP, the department further successfully integrated the South African Quality Institute (SAQI) and the technology-transfer activities of the Twib into the STP, thereby adding quality services to SMMEs and support for technology transfer to women-owned businesses.
- Through the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation, the department supported 74 projects at a grant value of R78,3 million and a total project value of R306 million. Thirty-four percent of these projects were with BEE enterprises.
- In 2007, the Technology and Human Resources for Industry Programme supported 680

researchers and 2 054 students of whom 54% were black and 38% were female. More than 390 enterprises participated in the programme, of which 67% were SMMEs and 22% were BEE companies.

- Through the South African Intellectual Property Fund, the Department of Trade and Industry supported five SMMEs by providing venture capital. The department also trained five fund managers as interns for the industry.
- The Department of Trade and Industry contributed to the establishment of the Sisal Resusitation Project in Limpopo, creating industrial development opportunities for a co-operative in a rural area.
- The department hosted the first Department of Trade and Industry Technology Awards Event in Nelson Mandela Bay, Eastern Cape, during which top technology achievers in South Africa were acknowledged. Two bursaries were also awarded to two learners from disadvantaged communities.

State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

The Department of Public Enterprises is the shareholder representative for government, with oversight responsibility for the following SOEs: Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom, the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR), South African Airways (SAA), South African Express Airways (SAX), South African Forestry Company (Safcol) and Transnet.

SOEs have a critical role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for developing key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity. Infrastructure investments are a core part of the country's strategy for shared economic growth and development and SOEs are implementing comprehensive investment programmes to ensure that significant and sustained opportunities for investment are created in supplier industries.

Alexkor

The core business of Alexkor is diamond mining. A community claim to the land has recently been resolved, which paves the way for the restructuring of Alexkor. The settlement provides for the formation of a Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture (PSJV) between Alexkor and the Richtersveld Community.

The PSJV will put in place a mine-development plan and programme to upgrade sea-diamond resources and develop a business plan for a viable mining venture. Transfer of Alexkor's agricultural and mariculture assets to the community will empower them and create a basis for future development and wealth creation, not only for the Richtersveld community, but also for the Northern Cape.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband is viewed as a key driver of economic growth and wealth generation, and it is essential for South Africa to gain access to universally available, reliable and affordable broadband.

Affordable national long-distance and international connectivity will have a favourable impact on pricing and the availability of broadband.

Broadband Infraco, which became a standalone SOE in January 2008, has succeeded in operationalising and strengthening the national long-distance network, as well as providing additional capacity. Infraco has increased its footprint by 30% and doubled its capacity. It has provisioned route connectivity services at the core backbone and regional expansion sites. Additional fibre routes were added to close the long-distance ring and provide redundant capacities. The Africa West-Coast Cable will be prioritised by the Government to meet 2010 objectives as well as other short- to medium-term strategic projects.

Denel

A restructuring process has been undertaken, focusing on the corporatisation of distinct operating divisions. The introduction of strategic equity partnerships at business unit level is aimed at increasing market access and ensuring the transference of global skills, technology and manufacturing knowledge to Denel.

Eskom and the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor

The State's key objective is to secure long-term, environmentally sustainable electricity for the country. Eskom will roll out an investment programme in excess of R300 billion over the next five years.

An important component of Eskom's capacity-generation programme is, among other things, the introduction of independent power producers, who will diversify the revenue sources for the building programme and help ensure security of supply.

Nuclear power, the most viable alternative to coal as a baseload source of electricity, is also expected to make a larger contribution to the energy mix. This will be done through conventional nuclear technology and the new fourth-generation high-temperature reactors offered by the PBMR.

The PBMR, a major development project, requires considerable initial investment by the project partners. By June 2008, the negotiation of the new shareholder's agreement, which will create a platform to attract additional equity partners, was at an advanced stage.

This project is important for the retention of skilled professionals within the South African industry. The success of the project will have a positive impact on the country's manufacturing sector and provide leading technology in the reduction of green house gas emissions.

South African Airways and South African Express

The Department of Public Enterprise's portfolio has recently been expanded through the acquisition of the SAX, a domestic airline focused on secondary routes. The SAX Board of Directors has approved the introduction of an exclusive cadet pilot programme, which is aimed at addressing the current shortage of pilots.

SAA was transferred from Transnet to the department on 31 March 2007. At the time, the airline was financially and operationally challenged and its continued sustainability was dependent on the implementation of a fundamental restructuring programme. The focus of this programme is to return the airline to profitability, which required cost cutting, route and fleet rationalisation and the implementation of more innovative revenue-management practices.

SAA won the 2007 Annual Airline Reliability Performance Awards, which were presented by Bombardier Aerospace on 16 June 2008 in Canada.

South African Forestry Company

The financial performance of Safcol has generally been positive in the recent past and the group has a strong balance sheet, including a positive cash position.

By May 2008, a substancial portion of the land on which Komatiland Forests (KLF), Safcol's main forestry plantation subsidiary, operates was subject to land claims. This could delay the execution of the transaction to dispose of KLF during 2008/09.

Transnet

The strong growth experienced by the economy over the past decade, coupled with the rapid pace of globalisation, has seen the demand for freight traffic surpasses all previous expectations – putting ever-increasing pressure on an already strained freight network.

Transnet has already made some progress towards addressing this challenge.

It has, over the last three years, achieved financial stability and has focused on the reorientation of the group around its core functions of freight transport within the rail, ports and pipelines sectors.

Transnet has also been successful in the continued implementation of a capital-investment programme aimed at improving the quality and capacity of its asset base over the last two years in particular, with a combined spend of some R27 billion.

Almost 60% of the R84-billion capital programme will go towards capacity-expansion projects while just above 40% will be spent on replacing outdated and unsafe infrastructure.

The R11,2-billion new Multi-Product Pipeline (MPP) between Durban and Gauteng is a priority project to ensure security of supply of liquid fuels to the Reef. The MPP Project, the largest single project in Transnet's portfolio, encompasses the replacement and expansion in capacity of the Durban to Johannesburg Pipeline Project. The MPP also addresses the capacity constraints in the Inland Network, which services the Alrode, Tarlton, Rustenburg, Witbank, Pretoria, Kroonstad and Klerksdorp regions, resulting from the increased demand requirements in these regions.

Transnet intends to invest about R26 billion in the next five years between its Port Authority and Port Terminals divisions, primarily to support growth in the dry-bulk, liquid bulk, containers, automotive and break-bulk sectors across the seven existing commercial ports and the new Ngqura Port.

Public works programmes

The Department of Public Works provides and manages the accommodation, housing, land and infrastructure needs of national departments; co-ordinates the national Expanded

Public Works Programme (EPWP); and optimises growth, employment and transformation in the construction and property industries.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP aims to facilitate and create employment opportunities for the poor and vulnerable through integrated and co-ordinated labour-intensive approaches to government infrastructure delivery and service provision.

The EPWP has reached and surpassed its target a full year before the set deadline.

When the programme was launched in May 2004, it aimed to draw significant numbers of the unemployed into productive work with the objective of creating a million job opportunities by 2009.

By the end of April 2008, the programme had already created 1 077 801 job opportunities, ahead of its scheduled 31 March 2009 time limit.

In 2006/07 alone, the programme created 439 099 work opportunities, going beyond its annual target of creating around 280 000 opportunities. Out of these job opportunities, the EPWP exceeded the 30% target of employing young people by 10%, bringing it to 40% and the 40% target of employing women by 7% to 47%.

With regard to training, which forms a critical part of the programme, person days set aside for training during 2007/08 totalled 2 082 155, achieving about 54% of the annual target of at least 3 800 000.

Construction and Property Industry Development Programme

Construction industry growth cannot be seen in isolation from the pressing need to transform the industry into one that performs better in terms of quality, employment, skills safety, health and the environment.

The Department of Public Works seeks to support and empower women-owned construction enterprises through its existing contractor-development programmes. Since the inception of the procurement reform process in 1995, the department has been actively involved in conceptualising and implementing programmes to promote emerging contractors in the built environment. These programmes included Targeted Procurement and the Emerging Contractor Development Programme (ECDP).

As part of the ECDP, the Contractor Incubator Programme (CIP) was initiated in 2004 by the Department of Public Works following the findings of the *Construction Industry Status Report* that was conducted for the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB) in 2002 and the *ECDP Review*, conducted in 2004.

The CIP has since been piloted throughout the country and was formally launched by the Department of Public Works in Hoopstad, Free State, in November 2007. The CIP intends to provide support to existing small- to medium-size construction enterprises to enable them to become sustainable.

The small contractors will also receive much-needed help from the CIDB through its Triple Cs (construction contact centres) that are being set up throughout the country.

Triple Cs provide a hub for stakeholder partnerships to address the challenges of growth. The CIP will create an enabling environment within which existing contracting enterprises can develop into sustainable enterprises. In selecting these enterprises, preference is given to black-, women- and youth-owned contracting enterprises. The enabling environment comprises steady access to work opportunities and supply-side support measures for growing the targeted enterprises. The CIP targets contracting enterprises within categories three to seven on the CIDB grading. This enables these enterprises to be eligible to tender for contracts between R1,5 million and R30 million.

By August 2008, a total of 136 contractors were registered on the CIP, of whom 62 were women-owned contractors.

The department is also using its own expenditure as a way of meeting the challenges and of improving the businesses that are women-owned. The total value of contracts that were awarded to women-owned companies in the 2006/07 financial year amounted to R327 million. Between April 2007 and December 2007, R675 million was spent on women-owned companies, including non-construction enterprises.

The established industry has also responded positively to promote transformation and has signed the Construction Charter, which commits the industry to concrete targets in terms of BEE.

Most of the major companies have made progress towards these targets. The *Register* *of Contractors*, established by the CIDB, equips government and stakeholders with an important development tool and a clear understanding of the nature of contracting capacity and empowerment gaps across the industry.

Construction Industry Development Board

The CIDB was established by the Construction Industry Development Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000), as a statutory body (Schedule 3A public entity) to provide leadership to stakeholders; stimulate sustainable growth, reform and improvements in the construction sector; and improve its role in the economy. The CIDB is responsible to the Minister of Public Works, and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE promotes the uniform application of policy and improves co-ordination between the building profession and government. It drives the transformation and improved performance of the building profession.

Labour programmes

The Department of Labour aims to reduce unemployment, poverty and inequality through policies and programmes, developed in consultation with social partners. These policies and programs are aimed at:

- improved economic efficiency and productivity
- skills development and employment creation
- sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- allevating poverty in employment
- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- nurturing the culture of acceptance that worker rights are human rights.

Employment and skills development

The Employment and Skills Development Services (ESDS) and HRD Branch of the Department of Labour are responsible for achieving the strategic objectives and equity targets of the National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS) and contributing to the achievement of the objectives of the HRD Strategy (HRDS).

Legislation

The Department of Labour's Legislation Branch ensures the implementation of the following laws:

- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), as amended.
- Manpower Training Act, 1981 (Act 56 of 1981), of provisions that are still in force.
- Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act 9 of 1999), as amended, and the Income Tax Act, 1994 (Act 21 of 1994). In some aspects, the ESDS works closely with National Treasury and the South African Revenue Service (Sars).
- South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), working closely with the Department of Education.

Human Resource Development Strategy

One of the Government's priorities for 2008 was to focus on skills development.

The HRD Strategic Framework: Vision 2015 was launched on 30 May 2008 by the then Minister of Public Service and Administration, Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi.

The strategic framework is grounded and aligned to government priorities as encapsulated in Jipsa, AsgiSA, the NSDS II and the evolving HRDS.

The strategic framework stands on four pillars of strategic intervention:

- capacity-development initiatives: developing human capital for high performance and enhanced service delivery
- organisational support initiatives: enhancing organisational capacity and support to maximise the productivity of human capital
- governance and institutional support initiatives: ensuring that the HRD in the Public Service is effective
- economic growth and development initiatives: ensuring that the HRD plans, strategies and activities seek to integrate, promote and respond to the economic growth and development initiatives of government.

The strategy puts the individual public servant at the centre of skills transfer through capacity-development initiatives in the workplace.

The revised HRDS for the period 2009 to 2014 was approved in July 2008. One of the critical

In May 2008, the Department of Trade and Industry, in conjunction with the Buffalo City Municipality and the Organising Committee, hosted a 2010 Business Opportunities Workshop in Gonubi, East London.

The workshop aimed to expose enterprises to all economic-development products and opportunities inherent in the 2010 World Cup.

challenges that government has been addressing is to ensure that there is proper alignment between the skills that the education and training system produces and the needs of a developing society and economy.

The aim of this strategy is articulation between the subsystems (public-private and across government) for optimal achievement of systemic outcomes, to facilitate a continuing analysis of HRD and the functioning of the labour market. The intended outcomes will include improvements in the HRD Index and country ranking and in the measure and ranking of economic competitiveness, a reduction of the Gini coefficient and improvement in social cohesion.

The strategy includes the following commitments:

- accelerating training output in priority areas to achieve accelerated and shared economic growth
- ensuring universal access to high-quality and relevant education
- improving technological and innovation capability in the public and private sectors
- establishing efficient planning capabilities in the relevant departments and entities for the successful implementation of the HRDS for South Africa.

A monitoring and evaluation system was put in place with clear indicators to monitor the implementation of the strategy. A major review based on systematic evaluation studies and impact assessments will be conducted every five years.

Sector education and training authorities

The Seta Co-ordination Programme aims to:

- implement sector skills plans to develop appropriate skills
- develop and register learning programmes
- provide quality assurance of qualifications and standards of programmes in sectors
- disburse skills development levy funds.

The Seta sector skills plans have been formed on the basis of the first-ever formally published occupationally based national scarce skills list that has been integrated into the Department of Home Affairs' processes for scarce skills immigration work permits.

Seta sector skills plans have been automatically uploaded through an integrated data-collection process into the employment-services system to allow for a more efficient and accurate development of the annual national scarce skills list.

All 2010 targets set for the Seta programmes are expected to be met or exceeded:

- 106 869 unemployed people have already been registered on learning programmes, compared to the target of 125 000
- 87 869 workers were registered on qualifying learning programmes, compared to the target of 125 000
- 4 805 young people were registered on new venture-creation programmes, compared to the target of 10 000.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act, 1998, to advise the Minister of Labour on the NSDS, its implementation and other relevant matters. Its membership consists of organised business, labour and community organisations, government departments and representatives from the education- and training-provider community.

Key priorities for 2008/09 include accelerating the rate of disbursement related to the NSDS' annual targets, and support to the AsgiSA and Jipsa skills-development targets.

National Skills Fund (NSF)

The NSF, a statutory advisory body to the Minister of Labour on the NSDS, was established in 1999 as legislated by the Skills Development Act, 1998. The Minister of Labour, on advice from the NSA, allocates subsidies from the NSF. The Director-General of Labour is the accounting officer of the fund.

The NSF is funded by 20% of the skills development levies collected by Sars (of which 2% is paid to Sars as collection fees and 2% is allocated for administrative costs).

i

In 2008, the Department of Labour paid R11,4 million towards the training of at least 1 000 youth in civil engineering-related skills, all of whom had been placed in 2010 projects.

The projects, which were being showcased, culminated from an initiative by the department's provincial office in Johannesburg which, during 2007/08, funded a variety of skills-development projects in terms of the Social Development Funding Window of the National Skills Fund.

About R7,469 million was used in training 264 artisans. Many of these projects focused on scarce and critical skills in line with the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa and the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition.

By the end of September 2007, the NSF had disbursed R114 million from a total of R390 million to six provinces. About 48 268 unemployed people had undergone training valued at R127 million related to social-development-initiative projects, including the EPWP. Of those trained, 26% were in accredited training programmes, and 30 212 were placed in employment.

In the Adult Basic Education and Training programme, 16 463 unemployed learners were trained from a target of 20 000 while 5 590 unemployed learners were provided with bursaries to enter areas of scarce and critical skills learning, such as accounting and engineering.

By mid-2008, the legal status of the NSF was being addressed and proposed amendments had been incorporated into the Skills Development Amendment Bill.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The main tasks of the UIF are to:

- maintain an employer/employee database
- process claims and pay benefits
- invest excess funds
- reduce opportunities for fraud
- collect contributions.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003), deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits. It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries. Sars continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

According to the *UIF 2008 Annual Report*, it paid out more than R2 911 billion in 2007/08. The UIF has more than 1,1 million employees and 7,4 million employees on its database.

Occupational Health and Safety (OHS)

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations and providing advocacy and statutory services. Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments.

The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS in terms of the OHS Act, 1993. The Department of Minerals and Energy is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996). The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mineworkers in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

In 2007/08, the department's inspectors conducted more than 17 000 inspections.

Compensation Fund

The Compensation Fund administers the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 as amended. The main objective of the Act is to provide compensation for disablement, illness and death resulting from occupational injuries and diseases.

Upgrading of the Compensation Fund's financial system began in January 2008. Expenditure on benefit payments increased from R1,7 billion in 2004/05 to R2,3 billion in 2007/08 due to the processing of 73% of backlog claims from 2000 to 2004. Cheque payments were discontinued and an electronic payment method was implemented from September 2007.

Achievements for 2006/07 included finalising 84% of the balance of backlog claims and processing 58% of current claims. In total, 868 076 claims were paid. A successful pilot project was conducted to decentralise claims registration and adjudication to labour centres. As a result, benefit payments were increased. All new claims received are now registered within 24 hours of receipt; and a new document-management system was piloted and implemented, improving the quality of electronic files.

Directorate: Collective Bargaining

The Directorate: Collective Bargaining has to:

- extend the collective bargaining system to cover more vulnerable workers
- ensure that the implementation and impact of the Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), are optimised
- effectively monitor dispute resolution.

> The Department of Labour ran a free employment-services system that registered 169 059 work-seekers and 15 364 job opportunities in 2007/08. Of the job seekers, 19 266 found employment.

The directorate:

- registers trade unions, employers' organisations and bargaining and statutory councils
- publishes bargaining council agreements for the extension thereof to non-parties
- promotes and monitors collective bargaining.

Dispute resolution

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996 in terms of the LRA, 1995. It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

Between November 1996 and 31 January 2007, the CCMA processed 1 069 400 labour disputes. The number of working days lost due to industrial action decreased by 68% since the LRA, 1995 came into operation. Although the CCMA receives about 120 000 referrals a year, it manages to settle an average of 70% of those cases.

Labour-market policy

The Labour-Market Policy Programme consists of three directorates, namely, Research Policy and Planning (RPP), Labour-Market Information and Statistics (LMIS) and International Relations (IR).

The Directorate: RPP is responsible for:

- analysing labour-market information and conditions
- identifying relevant labour-market interventions
- formulating labour-market policies
- researching, monitoring and evaluating policies affecting the labour market.

The Directorate: LMIS is responsible for:

- creating and maintaining capacity to monitor, analyse and disseminate labour-market information and statistics pertaining to trends in the labour market and the impact of labour-market policies
- creating and maintaining linkages with other producers and users of labour-market information and statistics, with the aim of avoiding duplication and promoting clear use of concepts
- developing the departmental library as an expanded resource centre on labour issues
- assisting other departmental directorates with statistical procedures to develop and monitor departmental activities.

The Directorate: IR is responsible for:

- developing strategies that will consolidate South Africa's presence in international forums
- monitoring developments in the African region and southern African subregion
- facilitating the department's participation in bilateral and multilateral organisations in the region
- discharging South Africa's obligations to international organisations of which the country is a member
- developing strategies to encourage conformity with international labour standards in the region.

Employment equity

To support and accelerate the implementation of the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), the Directorate: Employment Equity focused mainly on developing an employment-equity system aimed at strengthening the implementation and enforcement mechanisms of the Act. An online employment-equity reporting service was developed and implemented from 1 September 2005.

In addition, the Director-General Review System was developed to assess employers' substantive compliance with the Employment Equity Act, 1998. The programme continued to support capacity-building in trade-union organisations by means of the Strengthening of Civil Society Fund.

Acknowledgements

Business Day
Business Map
Business Partners Limited
Department of Trade and Industry
Development Indicators, 2008
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Fifteen Year Review, published by The Presidency
Office for Public Enterprises
Quarterly Bulletin, September 2008, published by the South African Reserve Bank
South African Reserve Bank
Statistics South Africa
Sunday Times
Towards a Ten-Year Review
Towards a Fifteen Year Review
www.dpe.gov.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.godisa.net
www.gov.za
www.idc.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.sacu.int
www.twib.co.za

Suggested reading

Adendorff, SA and de Wit, PWC. eds. *Production and Operations Management: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.
African Development Indicators. Washington: World Bank, 2005.
Aliber, M. *et al. Trends and Policy Changes in the Rural Economy: Four Provincial Case Studies*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2005.
Bertelsmann-Scott, T and Draper, P. *Regional Integration and Economic Partnership Agreements: Southern Africa at the Crossroads*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.
Beyond the Apartheid Workplace: Studies in Transition. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Bhorat, H and Kanbur, R. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Blankley, W. *et al*. eds. *Measuring Innovation in Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) and non-OECD countries*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Bruggemans, C. *Change of Pace: South Africa's Economic Revival*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Bhorat, H and Ravi K., eds. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Brown, S, ed. *Money and Morality*. Cape Town: IJR, 2006.
Crotty, A and Bonorchis, R. *Executive Pay in South Africa: Who Gets What and Why*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.
Davids, I. *et al*. eds. *Participatory Development in South Africa: A Development Management Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.
Dorrien, P. *The Making of South Africa Inc. Unlocking South Africa's Global Potential*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.
Dyubhele, N *et al*. *Isigama Seqoqoqosho: Economic Terms and Concepts Made Simple*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2008.
Erasmus, BJ and van Dyk, PS. *Training Management in South Africa*. 3rd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.
Fox, L and Lieberthal, R. eds. A*ttacking Africa's Poverty: Experience from the Ground*. Washington: World Bank, 2007.
Grobbelaar, N and Besada, H. eds. *Unlocking Africa's Potential: The Role of Corporate South Africa in Strengthening Africa's Private Sector*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2008.
Globalisation and New Identities: A View from the Middle, edited by P Alexander, MC Dawson and M Ichharam. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.
Graham, P, ed. *Inheriting Poverty? The Link Between Children's Well-Being and Unemployment in South Africa*. Cape Town: Institute for a Democratic South Africa (Idasa), c.2007.

Hirsch, A. *Season of Hope: Economic Reform under Mandela and Mbeki*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Hugon, P. *The Economy of Africa*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2004.

Hermann, D. *The Naked Emperor: Why Affirmative Action Failed*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2007.

Kahn, M. *et al. Flights of the Flamingoes: A Study on the Mobility of R&D Workers*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Kareithi, P and Nixon, K. *Untold Stories: Economics and Business Journalism in African Media*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.

Khoza, RJ and Mohammed A. *The Power of Governance: Enhancing the Performance of State-Owned Enterprises*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, 2005.

Labour Relations in South Africa, edited by R Venter, rev. ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Linking Migration, HIV/AIDS and Urban Food Security in Southern and Eastern Africa. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007. (*African Migration and Development Series,* 3).

Mangcu, X, Marcus G and Shubane, K. eds. *Visions of Black Economic Empowerment*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.

McGrath, S. *et al*. eds. *Shifting Understanding of Skills in South Africa: Overcoming the Historical Imprint of Low Skills Regime*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.

Migration and Development in Africa: An Overview. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006. (*African Migration and Development Series,* 1)

Migration, Remittances and Development in Southern Africa. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007. (*Migration Policy Series,* 44).

Nel, P.S. *et al. Training Management: A Multidisciplinary Approach to Human Resources Development in Southern Africa*. 3rd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Opperman, I, ed. *Buy Right: Consumer Guide for South Africa. Pretoria*: Protea Book House, 2006.

Padayachee, V, ed. *The Development Decade: Economic and Social Change in South Africa, 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Parker, E and Illetschko, K. *Franchising in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Front Runner Publishing, 2007.

States of Vulnerability: The Future Brain Drain of Talent to South Africa. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006. (*Migration Policy Series*, 42).

Van Seventer, DE. *Employment and Skills in South African Exports*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

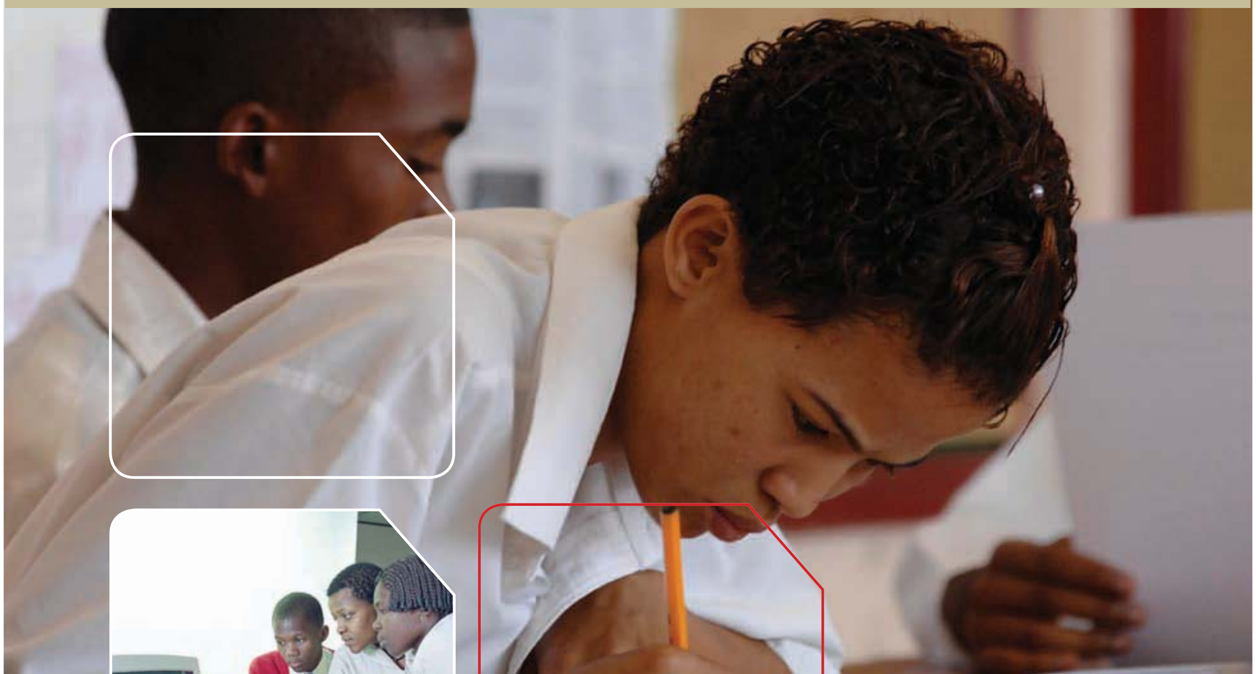
Vass, J and Phakathi, S. *Managing HIV in the Workplace*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Von Holdt, K. *Transition from Below: Forging Trade Unionism and Workplace Change in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

White, L, ed. *Is There An Economic Orthodoxy? Growth and Reform in Africa, Asia and Latin America.* Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.

Woolard, I and Woolard, C. *Earnings Inequality in South Africa 1995 – 2003*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.


TS2



The Bill of Rights, contained in the Constitution, 1996, stipulates that everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education and further education, which the State, through reasonable measures, must progressively make available and accessible.

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training (GET), Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education (HE).

The GET band consists of the Reception Year (Grade R) and learners up to Grade 9, as well as an equivalent Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) qualification. The FET band consists of grades 10 to 12 in schools and all education and training from the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels 2 to 4 (equivalent to grades 10 to 12 in schools), and the N1 to N6 in FET colleges. The HE band consists of a range of degrees, diplomas and certificates up to and including postdoctoral degrees. These levels are integrated within the NQF provided by the South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995).

By mid-2007, the South African public-education system had 12,3 million learners, 387 000 educators, 26 592 schools, 2 278 Abet centres, 50 public FET institutions, 4 800 Early Childhood Development (ECD) centres and 23 HE institutions. Of the 26 592 schools, 1 000 were independent, 400 were special-needs schools and the remainder were ordinary schools. Of all schools, 6 000 were secondary and the rest primary.

Learners attend school for 13 years; the first year of education, Grade R, and the last three are not compulsory. Many primary schools offer Grade R, which can also be completed at an independent Grade R school. There were 15 966 Grade R educators teaching Grade R in 2008 and provinces trained all of them on the curriculum. In 2008, 13 941 schools were offering Grade R.

The matric exam pass rate in 2007 was 65,2%. Some 36 000 more candidates wrote the 2007 examination than in 2006. A total of 368 217 learners passed the Senior Certificate in 2007, amounting to 16 714 more than in 2006.

The Department of Education has provided all Dinaledi schools with teacher-support packs. These packs contain equipment for Physical Science and also serve as mobile laboratories. Relevant practical work that is essential to the understanding of scientific concepts can be done in and outside classrooms.

Dinaledi schools are focus schools dedicated to teaching Mathematics and Science.

In 2008, Grade 12 learners wrote the first National Senior Certificate based on the new curriculum the National Curriculum Statement (NCS). A number of 589 912 learners enrolled for the NCS examinations. The pass rate was 62,5%.

In 2008, there were 21 677 private-school candidates registered to write the Senior Certificate. In 2007, 14 364 private-school candidates passed the Senior Certificate examination and 5 869 passed with endorsement. In 2008, there were 8 174 private-school candidates registered to write the Independent Examinations Board exam. In 2007, 7 034 private-school candidates passed the exam and 5 663 passed with endorsement.

Education structures

Ministry of Education

The National Education Policy Act, 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), empowers the Minister of Education to determine national norms and standards for education planning, provision, governance, monitoring and evaluation.

The principle of democratic decision-making is exercised within the context of overall policy goals. In determining policy, the minister takes into account the competence of provincial legislatures and the relevant provisions of any provincial law relating to education.

South Africa has one of the highest rates of government investment in education in the world. The budget totalled R122,8 billion in 2008/09.

National and provincial departments of education

The Constitution has vested substantial power in the provincial legislatures and governments to run educational affairs (other than universities and universities of technology), subject to a national policy framework. The national Department of Education is responsible for formulating policy, setting norms and standards, and monitoring and evaluating all levels of education. It also funds HE institutions through subsidies and by providing financial support to students through the National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS).

The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments of education for school education, Abet, ECD and FET colleges. The South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), further devolves responsibility to school level by delegating the governance of public schools to democratically elected school-governing bodies (SGBs), consisting of parents, educators, non-educator staff and (secondary school) learners.

Relations with provincial departments of education are guided by national policy, within which the provincial departments have to set their own priorities and implementation programmes.

The National Education Policy Act, 1996 formalised relations between national and provincial authorities, and established the Council of Education Ministers (CEM) and the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom) as intergovernmental forums to collaborate in developing the education system.

The role of the national department is to translate the education and training policies of government and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

The department must ensure that:

- all levels of the system adhere to these policies and laws
- mechanisms are in place to monitor and enhance quality in the system
- the system is on par with international developments.

The core activities of the department are to:

- provide research and policy review
- provide planning and policy development
- provide support to the provinces and HE institutions in their implementation of national policy, norms and standards
- monitor the implementation of policy, norms and standards to assess their impact on the quality of the educational process, and identify policy gaps.

In March 2008, the Minister of Education, Ms Naledi Pandor, officially launched the Foundations for Learning Campaign at the EA Janari School, Bonteheuwel, Western Cape.

The campaign provides teachers and schools with clear direction regarding the learning outcomes and gives support to schools to ensure that learners attain the expected levels of proficiency in reading, writing and numeracy at all levels of the system.

Schools are provided with assessment tests that are used quarterly to track and record a learner's progress and achievements.

The Foundations for Learning Campaign will culminate in a national evaluation in 2011 to assess the literacy and numeracy levels of learners and the overall impact of the campaign.

The Department of Education has eight branches:

- Administration
- Auxilliary and Associated Services
- Systems Planning and Monitoring
- Social and School Enrichment
- Quality Promotion and Development
- GET
- FET
- HE.

Administration

This branch provides administrative support for the overall management of the corporate functions performed by the department.

Auxilliary and Associated Services

This branch co-ordinates and promotes effective international relations, and gives support and advisory services to provincial education departments.

Systems Planning and Monitoring

The Systems Planning and Monitoring Branch provides strategic direction in the development, implementation and monitoring of education policies, programmes and projects.

Social and School Enrichment

The branch provides strategic direction for the development of policies and education programmes that aim to ensure continuous improvement in the quality of learning. It ensures the provision of quality education by promoting social transformation, justice and cohesion, and a South African identity in the education system.

The key priorities of the branch are:

- improving safety in schools that experience high levels of crime and violence
- increasing the participation and success rates of girls in gateway subjects and preventing barriers to equity for girls in the education system
- ensuring access and retention of learners in rural and farm schools
- implementing special social cohesion plans
- reviewing Abet and implementing the mass literacy campaign
- facilitating the implementation of school sports and enrichment programmes
- supporting and strengthening curriculum-driven HIV and AIDS activities through peer education
- ensuring the successful and increased implementation of the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

Quality Promotion and Development

The Quality Promotion and Development Branch provides strategic direction for the development of policies and education programmes to ensure continuous improvement in the quality of learning.

General Education and Training

The GET Branch provides leadership by managing and evaluating programmes for ECD, school education, learners with special needs, school management and governance programmes, enhancing the efficiency and effectiveness of districts through development and support and human resources (HR) in education.

Key priorities of the branch include:

- expanding programmes
- expanding access to ECD, particularly for children in rural, farming and other marginalised communities
- providing Grade R to all children
- working towards ensuring a reception year in all schools with a foundation year
- further developing a truly inclusive system of education, including the consolidation of special schools
- ensuring that there are no underqualified educators
- co-ordinating the implementation and provision of education to children up to the age of four years
- successfully implementing the NCS.

The *White Paper on Building an Inclusive Education and Training System 2001* is being implemented. The department aims to remove all barriers to learning so that children with special needs, including the most vulnerable, are able to participate fully in the process of education.

Learner access to Grade R is increasing, and the department is targeting the implementation of Grade R in all public primary schools by 2010. By March 2008, there were over 600 000 children attending Grade R classes nationally.

> Readathon is an annual, nationwide literacy-promotion initiative executed by the national Department of Education and Read Educational Trust. Sponsored by the Nedbank Foundation, Readathon aims to develop a culture of reading in South Africa and highlight the importance of literacy. Through a national literacy competition and the distribution of Readathon teacher handbooks to South African schools, Readathon promotes reading in its widest sense.

Further Education and Training

The FET Branch is responsible for developing policy for grades 10 to 12 in public and independent schools, as well as in public and private FET colleges.

It oversees the integrity of assessment in schools and colleges, and offers an academic curriculum as well as a range of vocational subjects. FET colleges cater for out-of-school youth and adults.

The branch oversees, co-ordinates and monitors the system's response to improved learner participation and performance in Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST). It devises strategies aimed at the use of information and communications technology (ICT), and supports curriculum implementation through the national educational portal, Thutong (*www.thutong.org.za*).

In 2008/09, the branch's main achievements included:

- implementing vocational education levels 2, 3, 4 and 5
- implementing the new curriculum in Grade 12 and Level 2 and 3 national certificates in FET colleges
- monitoring the third year of FET colleges
- registering private FET colleges
- preparing national examinations for Abet Level 4, FET colleges, Senior Certificate examinations in May/June and National Senior Certificate in November 2008.

Higher Education

HE is central to the social, cultural and economic development of modern societies. The HE Branch provides strategic direction and institutional support for the development of a single co-ordinated system.

The branch provides leadership by:

- developing legislation
- developing policy support to the HE system
- liaising with constituencies in HE
- registering private HE institutions
- overseeing the NSFAS
- implementing the National Plan for HE
- allocating and transferring subsidies to public HE institutions.

In 2008, the HE budget was R18,5 billion. Some R15,1 billion of the budget was transferred to HE institutions as block grants or earmarked funds for the NSFAS, foundation programmes, infrastructure or efficiency allocations.

Statutory bodies

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM, consisting of the Minister of Education, the Deputy Minister of Education and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa and co-ordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom consists of the Director-General of the Department of Education, the deputy directors-general of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education. The committee facilitates the development of a national education system, shares information and views on national education, co-ordinates administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advises the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council (Umalusi)

The Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education and Training (Umalusi) was established in terms of the General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).

Its major functions include:

- ensuring continuous quality improvements in the delivery and outcomes of the general and further education and training sectors by monitoring of the suitability and adequacy of standards and qualifications

> The Department of Education is strengthening curriculum training and support for teachers and education administrators at provincial and district levels. Universities, education non-governmental organisations, professional bodies and experienced teachers are involved in training programmes for thousands of teachers and subject advisers. In April and May 2008, the Department of Education organised university lecturers and professionals working for professional bodies to train 1 259 subject advisers in 20 subjects of the new curriculum.

> The University of South Africa (Unisa) is a pioneer of tertiary distance education and is the largest correspondence university in the world with 250 000 students.

- accrediting private providers and monitoring of and reporting on public providers
- assuring the quality of learner assessments at exit points
- issuing certificates
- quality promotion among providers of education, training and assessment.

All examination processes for qualifications offered by schools, Abet centres and FET colleges have been quality assured. Accreditation, monitoring and visiting the sites of private providers of education and training continue across schools, Abet centres and FET colleges. Existing assessment bodies (public and private) are monitored, while new applications for accreditation are processed.

In 2008/09, Umalusi was responsible for:

- improving and maintaining the existing system for quality, assuring exit-point assessment and developing new quality-assurance processes for the three new qualifications: National Senior Certificate, National Certificate (vocational) and GET Certificate (schools)
- improving and extending a system for evaluating and accrediting adult education centres, independent schools, private FET providers and assessment bodies
- establishing and further piloting quality assurance of qualifications and curricula
- conducting research on a number of topics on the standard of curricula and assessments in the GET and FET bands
- maintaining and improving the information technology (IT) system and existing certification functions, while developing new regulations and systems for the certification of new qualifications.

South African Qualifications Authority

Saqa is a statutory body of 29 members appointed by the ministers of labour and of education. Saqa, through the NQF ensures that South African qualifications are of excellent quality, and internationally comparable. The authority is responsible for:

- developing the NQF by formulating and publishing policies and criteria for the registration of bodies responsible for establishing education and training standards or qualifications

- accrediting bodies responsible for monitoring and auditing achievements in terms of such standards and qualifications
- implementing the NQF by ensuring the registration, accreditation and assignment of functions to the referred bodies
- registering national standards and qualifications on the NQF.

The NQF is a set of principles and guidelines on which records of learner achievement are registered. This enables national recognition of acquired skills and knowledge, thereby ensuring an integrated system that encourages lifelong learning. The NQF also attempts to move the measurement of achievement in education and training away from input, towards outcomes.

Saqa's Centre for the Evaluation of Educational Qualifications determines the equivalence between foreign and South African qualifications in the South African context.

The National Learners' Records Database (NLRD) is the key national source of information for human-resource development (HRD) in South Africa in terms of education, training and labour-market supply. It is also the management-information system of the NQF.

It includes information on learner achievements and accredited providers uploaded from education and training quality-assurance bodies (ETQAs), as well as the full contents of all qualifications and unit standards registered on the NQF. The NLRD is the first system in the world to contain all of these elements in one relational database.

By March 2008, Saqa had finalised the standards-generation process to register 30 additional qualifications.

The Saqa has reviewed the state of quality assurance, ensured that all the quality-assurance bodies disclosed non-compliance related to quality, and is starting a process to move from compliance to performance auditing.

These performance audits ensure, among other things, that all the accredited providers of registered qualifications are monitored and audited by accredited ETQAs. A targeted monitoring process was undertaken in high-risk areas such as firearm training, and the performance audit model was refined with input from stakeholders. The official performance auditing of ETQAs began late in 2007 and was completed in 2008.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE was established in terms of the HE Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), and is responsible for:

- advising the minister on all policy matters related to HE
- executing responsibility for quality assurance in HE and training
- monitoring and evaluating the achievement of policy goals and objectives, including reporting on the state of South African HE
- promoting students' access to HE
- publishing an annual report on the state of HE for submission to Parliament
- convening an annual summit of HE stakeholders
- accrediting private providers and programmes for quality assurance.

Standard-setting has been added as a core function of the CHE and new structures and regulations were expected to be drafted in 2008.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is a professional council that aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession and promote the development of educators and their professional conduct. The SACE was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The council's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Educators are required to register with SACE before they are employed by any authority. The SACE has a register of about 500 000 educators, of whom 22 000 are registered provisionally. The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking the "professional standing" of applicants.

The council has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include, among other things, the Professional Development Portfolio Project

> The National Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking System will track the movement of learners from Grade R to Grade 12 between schools and provinces. When a learner is registered on the system, he/she is assigned a unique national learner tracking number that will remain with the learner throughout his/her schooling career. By May 2008, the system had been implemented incrementally in ordinary and special schools and will be fully operational in all provinces and schools by March 2010.

that aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and to take responsibility for their own professional development; teacher education and development research activities; setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development (CPTD) system; and celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators.

The ethics function ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics.

National Board for Further Education and Training (NBFET)

The NBFET was launched in June 1999 in terms of the National Education Policy Act, 1996. It provides the minister with independent and strategic advice on matters relating to the transformation of FET. The board may, on its own initiative, advise the minister on any aspect of FET, as well as:

- national FET policy, goals and priorities
- norms and standards, including those regarding funding
- norms and the terms, purposes and conditions of earmarked grants
- reports on FET from provincial advisory bodies.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC is a bargaining council for the education sector. The council consists of equal representation of the employer (the national and provincial departments of education) and employees (trade unions representing educators and other employees in the sector).

The ELRC aims to create effective and constructive labour relations in the education sector and ensure the promotion and transformation of education at all levels within society.

Since its inception, the ELRC has concluded many collective agreements that have improved the quality of teaching and learning in South Africa.

A collective agreement on an Occupation Specific Dispensation (OSD) for educators was signed in April 2008 by the Department of Education and trade unions in the ELRC. The OSD is intended to improve remuneration packages for educators.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS is responsible for:

- allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students in public HE
- developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students, in consultation with the minister
- raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database, and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources
- advising the minister on related matters.

In addition to managing funds appropriated by the department, the NSFAS undertook to manage three bursary schemes introduced in 2007/08:

- the Funza Lushaka bursary scheme for teacher training
- bursaries for FET college students
- bursaries for training social workers via the Department of Social Development.

The Department of Education is proceeding with efforts to double the output of universities in priority sectors by aligning the NSFAS and subsidy funding for scarce skills. To realise this objective, government committed R439 million over the 2007 – 2009 period to improve teaching and learning infrastructure.

Equity in education expenditure

Equity between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula (ESF), the national norms and standards for school funding and the national post-provisioning norms.

The Government's ESF promotes financial equity between provinces, through the distribution of national revenue to provinces on the basis of relative need and backlogs. In the area of education, the size of the school-age population and the number of learners enrolled in public ordinary schools are taken into account, as well as capital-investment needs.

The national norms and standards for school funding, which became national policy in 1999, aim to achieve equality and redress poverty at schools in terms of non-personnel expenditure within a province. The norms are clearly progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

To enhance the attainment of equity in funding ordinary public schools, the school-funding norms provide for full, partial and conditional exemption for parents who cannot afford to pay school fees, thus ensuring that learners with financial difficulties cannot be denied access to education.

Considering that about 88% of provincial education expenditure goes towards personnel costs, the distribution of personnel, in particular educators, is a key driver of equity within provinces. Equity in this regard is promoted by the national post-provisioning norms. These norms have contributed to the narrowing of inequalities regarding educator:learner ratios, and the availability of more educator posts in historically disadvantaged areas.

Education policy

Legislative framework

Education policy is informed by the following legislation:

- The National Education Policy Act, 1996 identifies the policy and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education and formalises relations between national and provincial authorities. The Act embodies the principle of co-operative governance.
- The South African Schools Act, 1996 promotes access, quality and democratic governance in the schooling system. It makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15 years, or learners reaching Grade 9, whichever occurs first. It also provides for two types of schools – independent schools and public schools. The Act's provision for democratic school governance through school governing bodies (SGBs) is in place in public schools countrywide.
- The FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public FET colleges, the employment of staff (excluding the principal and deputy principal) at public FET colleges, the registration of private FET colleges, and general provisions for the running of such colleges. The Act is in line with the *Education White Paper 4 on FET* (1998).
- The HE Act, 1997 provides for a unified and national system of HE and for the establishment, governance and funding of public HE institutions, the registration of private HE institutions, and general provisions regarding such institutions. The Act, the *Education White Paper 3 on HE* (1997) and the National Plan for HE form the basis for the transformation of the HE sector.
- The Employment of Educators Act (EEA), 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities and competencies of educators. The EEA, 1998 also stipulates who the employer of educators is, how educators are employed and who determines their conditions of service. It also provides for an incapacity code, procedures for poor work performance and a disciplinary code and procedures (for dealing with misconduct).
- The Abet Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000), provides for the establishment of public and private adult-learning centres, funding for Abet provisioning, the governance of public centres and quality-assurance mechanisms for the sector.
- The goal of the *White Paper on e-Education (2003)* is that all teachers, learners, managers and administrators will be ICT-capable by 2013. Guidelines for teacher development identified three categories of professional development, namely:
  - basic ICT competencies
  - integration of ICT into teaching and learning
  - specialisation and innovation in ICT in education.

By May 2008, about 53 000 teachers had been trained in basic ICT skills and some 24 000 teachers in ICT integration into the curriculum.

Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme (QIDS-UP)

QIDS-UP is a five-year special intervention programme that prioritises 15 000 primary schools serving the poorest communities. The focus of the programme is to improve schools infrastructure, supply curriculum resources and provide teacher and school management support towards improving learning outcomes. The programme also seeks to address the impact of poverty in schools.

Greater emphasis is placed on improving school infrastructure. In 2008/09, 1 000 schools were improved (renovations, water and fencing) at a cost of R76,5 million in seven provinces. During 2008, 11 000 schools received reading books, including reading books in indigenous languages for 2 200 schools.

A manual on school self-evaluation and improvement to support school managers was delivered to schools in October 2008.

Policy developments

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay, or who can only afford a lesser amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The 2005 Education Amendment Bill became law in January 2006, providing the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.

By September 2008, 58% of public ordinary schools were declared no-fee schools, benefitting more than five million learners in 14 264 schools.

General Education and Training

General school education is structured according to three phases, the Foundation Phase, Intermediate Phase and Senior Phase, and constitutes the compulsory component of the education system. The progressive provision of Grade R prior to Grade 1 started in 2002 and is expected to be available to all children by 2010.

Curriculum

The NCS aims to develop the full potential of all learners as citizens of a democratic South Africa. It seeks to create a lifelong learner who is confident and independent; literate, numerate and multi-skilled; compassionate, with respect for the environment; and the ability to participate in society as a critical and active citizen.

The NCS builds on the vision and values of the Constitution and the NCS for grades R to 12. These principles include:

- social justice, a healthy environment; human rights and inclusivity
- outcomes-based education
- a high level of skills and knowledge for all
- clarity and accessibility
- progression and integration.

The NCS (grades R to 9) has been implemented in the Foundation Phase (grades R to 3) since 2004, the Intermediate Phase (grades 4 to 6) since 2005, and in grades 7 and 10 since 2006. Grades 8,9 and 11 were implemented in 2007 and Grade 12 in 2008.

Mathematics became compulsory for the first time in 2006. In 2008, pupils started writing the National Senior Certificate examination, offering seven subjects from a choice of 29. Examination papers are set nationally and benchmarked against international papers.

Focus schools of technology will be set up in each province. In terms of the curriculum, focus schools can be created and learners offered opportunities for gaining new skills.

At provincial level, schools suitable for conversion to focus schools will be identified to meet the demand for new and responsive skills.

The NCS is available in all 11 official languages and in Braille, in keeping with the Constitution, which grants parity of esteem to all languages. Teacher guides for each learning area have been developed and distributed to all schools.

The Policy on Religion and Education gives directives on how schools should address issues relating to religious observance, instruction and education, which are curriculum matters. It recognises diversity among learners and aims to foster tolerance, respect and understanding among learners of different backgrounds.

The National Policy on Assessment for the GET Band, which includes a protocol to regulate the recording and reporting of learner achievement of learning outcomes has been finalised and gazetted.

The national guidelines on school uniforms have also been gazetted.

School-admission policy

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002), set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade 1 has been changed to age five if children turn six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year. This was implemented with effect from the 2004 school year.

When applying for admission, parents must present the school with an official birth certificate and proof that the child has been immunised against communicable diseases.

For non-South African citizens, a study permit, temporary or permanent residence permit, or evidence of application for permission to stay in South Africa, is also required.

National School Nutrition Programme

By August 2008, six million learners in 18 039 schools had access to the NSNP and there were 6 390 food gardens in schools. A total of 18 305 monitoring visits were made to schools by provinces and districts. Some 1 630 community-based service-providers were providing food supplies to schools.

About 26 408 food handlers are working on the programme and receive an honorarium ranging between R300 and R500 per month. In 2007/08, the NSNP was allocated a budget of R1,152 billion, of which 100% was spent by 31 March 2008.

National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology Education

The National Strategy for MST Education was launched in 2001. As part of this strategy, government identified 102 dedicated Mathematics and Physical Science schools (Dinaledi schools).

It is evident that the success of the Dinaledi project is also dependent on the availability of teachers who are able to teach high-level Mathematics and Science. In addition, it has also been recognised that proficiency in English is an important element for enhancing performance in Mathematics and Science.

The Adopt-a-School Project is a framework for private partners to support the development of Dinaledi schools. By May 2008, 276 Dinaledi schools had been adopted by 14 partners.

The department has also enrolled about 50 000 Dinaledi learners in the Mathematics Olympiads.

Provinces use subject advisers, who have been trained by the department and universities, to train teachers in all subjects during school holidays and on weekends. By mid-2008, 4 824 Physical Sciences teachers had been trained in the provinces.

Provinces offer teachers bursaries to study the Advanced Certificate in Education (ACE) specialising in Physical Sciences. By mid-2008, R13,8 million had been awarded in bursaries.

Further education and training colleges

Major transformation of the FET college sector saw the existing 152 technical colleges merging to form 50 multisite-campus FET colleges.

Each college operates under a single governing council appointed to oversee effective and accountable management across and within the various FET college campuses and sites.

Public FET colleges are offering new, exciting, modern and relevant programmes of study in a variety of vocational fields. The new programmes are intended to respond directly to the priority skills demands of the South African economy.

The National Certificate (Vocational) is a new qualification at each of levels 2, 3 and 4 of the NQF. The qualification is designed to provide both the theory and practical experience in a particular vocational field.

The practical component of the study may be offered in a real or in a simulated workplace environment. The qualification will also provide an opportunity to enter HE studies, subject to students taking the appropriate subject combinations. To facilitate access to this qualification, the Department of Education has set aside R600 million over three years for bursaries.

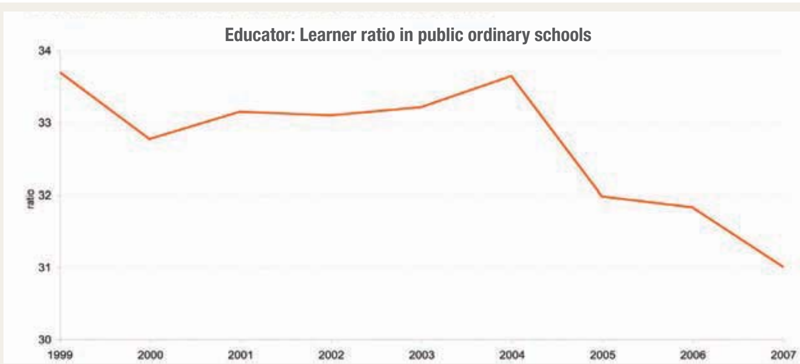
The FET College Financial Aid Scheme has commenced for students at Level 2 of the National Certificate (Vocational) and was extended to students on levels 3 and 4 in 2008 and 2009 respectively. These bursaries are administered by the NSFAS on behalf of the Department of Education.

The third and final year of recapitalisation of the FET colleges began in April 2008. Detailed plans from all 50 FET colleges for the expenditure of R795 million on intrastructure, equipment and human resources were submitted and approved by Cabinet. Some R397,5 million was transferred to colleges in May 2008.

Higher Education

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- Rhodes University
- Stellenbosch University
- University of the Western Cape (incorporating the Dental Faculty of Stellenbosch University)
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda



Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

- University of the Free State (incorporating the QwaQwa Campus of the University of the North and the Bloemfontein Campus of Vista)
- North West University (from the merger of the universities of Potchefstroom, and Vista Sebokeng Campus with North West)
- University of Pretoria (incorporating the Mamelodi Campus of Vista University)
- University of KwaZulu-Natal (from the merger of the University of Natal and the University of Durban-Westville)
- University of South Africa (Unisa) (after the merger of Unisa, which incorporated the Vista University Distance Education Campus with Technikon SA)
- Tshwane University of Technology (from the merger of Pretoria, North West and Northern Gauteng technikons)
- Durban Institute of Technology (from the merger of Natal Technikon and Technikon ML Sultan)
- Central University of Technology, Free State (formerly Technikon Free State)
- Mangosuthu Technikon
- University of Johannesburg (from the merger of Rand Afrikaans University, which incorporated the Soweto and East Rand campuses of Vista University with Technikon Witwatersrand)
- University of Limpopo (from the merger of the Medical University of South Africa and the University of the North)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (from the merger of the University of Port Elizabeth, which incorporated the Port Elizabeth Campus of Vista University with Port Elizabeth Technikon)
- Walter Sisulu University in the Eastern Cape (from the merger of the University of Transkei, Border Technikon and Eastern Cape Technikon)
- University of Fort Hare (which incorporated the East London Campus of Rhodes University)
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology (from the merger of the Cape and Peninsula technikons)
- Northern Cape Institute of HE
- Mpumalanga Institute of HE, which was launched in October 2006
- Vaal University of Technology.

HE and training is also referred to as tertiary education. The HE band provides the highest level of education. Entry into HE is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Private institutions offering HE must register with the department in accordance with the HE Act, 1997.

The role of HE in the South African education system is three-fold:

- HRD: mobilising human talent and potential through lifelong learning to contribute to the social, economic, cultural and intellectual life of a rapidly changing society.
- High-level skills training: training and providing person-power to strengthen the country's enterprises, services and infrastructure. This requires the development of professionals with globally equivalent skills, but who are socially responsible and conscious of their role in contributing to the national development effort and social transformation.
- Producing, acquiring and applying new knowledge: national growth and competitiveness depend on continuous technological improvement and innovation, driven by a research and development system that integrates the research and training capacity of HE with the needs of industry and of social reconstruction.

National Plan for Higher Education

One of the ways to give practical expression to the objective of a better life is to pursue greater access, transformation and quality in the HE system.

In 2008/09, the Department of Education's budget totalled R18,5 billion, of which R15,1 billion was transferred to HE institutions as block grants or earmarked funds (for the NSFAS, foundation programmes, infrastructure or efficiency allocations).

The National Plan for HE seeks to expand enrolment by setting a target of a 20% participation rate by 2015. It proposed a shift in the balance of enrolments to a ratio of 40%: 30%: 30% in the humanities: business and commerce: science, engineering, and technology, respectively over the period 2001 to 2010.

The challenge of equity of outcomes is addressed by matching the increased access of black people and women with increased success in key disciplines as well as in postgraduate programmes.

Institutions were directed to establish equity targets with an emphasis on areas in which black and women students were underrepresented and to develop viable strategies for ensuring equity of outcomes.

The plan proposes the restructuring and configuration of the institutional landscape of HE to create new institutional and organisational forms to address the racial fragmentation of the system as well as the administrative, human and financial capacity constraints.

By consolidating HE provision through reducing the number of institutions but not the number of delivery sites on a regional basis, cost and efficiency gains have to be achieved through institutional collaboration in specific programmes.

Values

The Values Initiative continues to focus on all forms of discrimination in education within a broader framework of human rights. In early 2008, the Department of Education released a draft schools pledge to initiate a broader discussion on what it means to be a South African at the start of the 21st century.

The department also finalised the Bill of Responsibilities for the Youth of South Africa, developed in partnership with the National Religious Leaders Forum. It is a mirror of the Bill of Rights, indicating the responsibilities that young people have as they claim the rights afforded them by the Constitution.

The department, in partnership with the Department of Arts and Culture, allocated 2 000 national flags through the Flag in Every School Project, which aims to ensure that all schools fly the national flag with pride.

Adult Basic Education and Training

According to the *Development Indicators, 2008*, there has been a steady annual increase in the literacy rate from 2002. By 2006, 74% of adults were literate. Female literacy rates followed a similar trend and reached 73% in 2006.

Provinces with the largest number of illiterate people are KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape, followed by Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West. The lowest numbers occur in the Free State, the Northern Cape and the Western Cape.

While KwaZulu-Natal has the largest number of illiterate people with no education and Limpopo has the highest proportion, the highest concentration is in the Eastern Cape. The language groups most affected are isiZulu, isiXhosa and Sesotho sa Leboa.

The Department of Education is reviewing its Abet programmes to expand provision and ensure the responsiveness of the programme for the diverse needs of adult learners.

The Kha Ri Gude ("let us learn") mass literacy campaign was officially launched in February 2008. Government will spend R6,1 billion over five years to enable 4,7 million South Africans to achieve literacy by 2010. The campaign is aimed at reducing adult illiteracy by:

- mobilising potential learners, educators and other support personnel to participate in the mass literacy campaign
- developing learner and educator-support material
- setting up relevant systems at national, provincial and district level to facilitate national implementation of the campaign
- establishing and maintaining a database of 4,7 million learners and 40 000 educators over the campaign period.

By August 2008, progress included the:

- enrolment of 360 000 learners
- recruitment and training of volunteer educators, 2 800 supervisors and 150 co-ordinators.
- in August 2008, blind unemployed matriculants were trained to teach basic Braille literacy to blind adults. In October 2008, the campaign received an additional allocation of R107 million.

Advocacy initiatives such as National Adult Learners' Week and International Literacy Day, in September, continue to be celebrated, recognising and honouring the achievements of learners and their educators.

The Bridges to the Future Initiative (an ICT-based literacy programme) is being developed as a pilot programme in Limpopo. Partners include the national Department of Education, Limpopo Department of Education, the International Literacy Institute, Nedbank, Kellogg Foundation (United States of America) and the Molteno Project.

The number of Abet and literacy service-providers and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) has grown dramatically, with an increasing number of emerging organisations being accredited by both Umalusi and the Education, Training, Development Practices (ETDP) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta).

Education of learners with special education needs

The national and provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual impairment
- tuberculosis
- children in conflict with the law
- physical disability
- neurological and specific learning disabilities

- multidisability
- intellectual disability
- hearing impairment
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

These services are provided in ordinary and special schools through a range of service-providers such as district curriculum, institutional and special-needs specialists, as well as specially trained educators.

The *Education White Paper 6 (2001)* acknowledges that many children experience barriers to learning. Some of these barriers lie within the learners themselves (intrinsic), while some barriers are systemic, socio-economic and cultural.

In its quest to accommodate these learners, the Department of Education is field-testing full-service schools in 30 districts. Between 2005 and 2009, some 30 selected ordinary primary schools are being made fully accessible to learners who experience barriers to learning. They are being supplied with specialised equipment and training to cater for learners in the area who have additional support needs.

These full-service schools are seen as models of inclusive education to be replicated in all districts of the country. Infrastructure and learning conditions in special schools are being improved to ensure that all learners in the country receive quality education.

District-based support teams are being developed to provide support to educators whose learners have been identified as needing additional support. This will enable children, the majority of whom could not access education in the past because of the unavailability of specialised services and support in rural and previously disadvantaged areas, to gain access to education.

The lessons learnt are being applied to the wider education sector incrementally.

The First Pan-African Technical and Vocational Education and Training and Further Education and Training Conference was held in Cape Town in August 2008.

The conference's theme was "The Value of Work in Social Change and Education" and focused on:

- policy and curriculum development, and the challenges of flexible delivery and technology
- the power of partnerships
- the value of lessons learned, case studies and workshops.

Existing special schools are being strengthened so that some of them can serve as resource centres for full-service schools and ordinary schools in their areas.

Early Childhood Development

ECD is a comprehensive approach to programmes and policies for children from birth to nine years of age with the active participation of their parents and caregivers. Its purpose is to protect the rights of children to develop their full cognitive, emotional, social and physical potential. The *Education White Paper 5 on ECD (2001)* proposes and encourages an integrated cross-sectoral approach to child development. This includes health, nutrition, education and psychosocial factors.

One of the priorities of the department is to increase access to ECD provisioning through an accredited reception year programme as proposed in *Education White Paper 5 (2001)*. The non-profit sector plays a major role in ECD. Most of the early learning sites across South Africa have been initiated by the non-profit sector in partnership with communities.

The Department of Education is already responsible for children in grades 1 to 3 as part of compulsory schooling. The department intends to ensure that all children have access to Grade R by 2010.

The ECD policy also focuses on expanding ECD provision, correcting the imbalances of the past, ensuring equitable access to, and improving the quality and delivery of ECD programmes, including the provision of educational programmes to children from birth to four years.

Regarding the birth-to-four years age group, the Department of Education is a member of the ECD Interdepartmental Committee (including the departments of health and of social development), which has developed the Birth-to-Four National Integrated Plan. The plan is closely linked to government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The EPWP creates employment and training opportunities for ECD practitioners. A total of 5 300 ECD teaching practitioners have undergone training across the various provinces with strong monitoring support from the Department of Education.

The registration of ECD sites is the responsibility of the Department of Social Development in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983). Municipalities/local governments also have constitutional power to provide child-care facilities and grants to associations. These regulations are applicable to both public and independent ECD sites.

School safety and enrichment

The Department of Education has initiated several interventions, ranging from the provision of infrastructure, to youth camps, and to learner and teacher programmes to facilitate the creation of safe and caring child-friendly schools across the country.

Furthermore, Section 8 of the South African Schools Act, 1996 compels the governing body of a school to adopt a code of conduct for learners.

In support of teachers, the department released examples of codes of conduct to schools and provided training and further guidance on alternative forms of discipline to corporal punishment during 2008/09.

The Department of Education is committed to ensuring learner participation in sport, arts, culture and music activities. The department is collaborating with Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) in the co-ordination and management of national programmes that promote mass participation and competitive school sport.

The department's School-Enrichment Unit co-ordinates and strengthens the delivery of national extramural/extracurricular school- enrichment programmes, not only to promote mass participation in sport by young people, but also to promote social transformation and cohesion.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department co-ordinates in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival and the National Language Festival and Concert.

School-safety measures

Regulations for safety measures at public schools focus on the safety of learners within schools' premises.

The measures also accommodate school tours and sporting activities. The regulations will, among other things, ensure the following:

- public schools must take reasonable measures to ensure the safety of learners during tours and sporting activities, including insurance against accidents
- learners and educators who undertake a school tour are not allowed to carry drugs, alcohol or weapons
- upon return from a tour or sporting activity, the supervising educator must submit a report to the principal, who in turn will submit it to the departmental official who approved the tour
- a public school must obtain written consent from parents of learners who will be undertaking the tour
- public-school vehicles for transporting learners must have insurance and roadworthy certificates, and drivers of such vehicles must be in possession of valid driver's licences and professional driving permits.

The regulations will be published for public comment before being gazetted into legislation.

The Department of Education, in collaboration with provincial school-safety co-ordinators, identified 585 schools with high levels of crime and violence.

As part of a ministerial intervention project, nine schools (one in each province) have been identified. A minimum package regarding infrastructural changes has been compiled for schools to address incidents of crime and violence. The minimum package consisted of hand-held metal detectors, the appointment of security officers and installation of a security fence and appropriate lighting.

The impact of the department's intervention will be monitored over six months at each of the nine schools. The remainder of the 576 schools with high levels of crime and violence will be targeted in collaboration with provincial departments, with focused developmental programmes to curb incidents of crime and violence.

An early warning system, Be Aware – Take Care, has been developed and piloted in three provinces (Eastern Cape, Limpopo and the Western Cape) in partnership with the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.

Partnerships have been strengthened with the departments of safety and security and of social development, Business Against Crime and the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention to focus on eliminating crime and violence in schools.

The South African Schools Football World Cup Partnership

The South African Schools Football World Cup Partnership was officially launched in Soweto at the Moletsane Sport Complex in May 2008.

This is a collaborative effort by the Department of Education, SRSA, the FIFA Organising Committee and South African Broadcasing Corporation to mobilise and educate South African schoolchildren about the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ tournament. As part of this, a competition has been arranged that will involve all schools. The competition is organised in four categories, namely under-14 and under-18, both for boys and girls in each age division. The competition will roll out in two phases.

The first phase is along the lines of the Confederations Cup and the second phase the actual World Cup. Schools will assume the identities of the participating countries and the national emblems and culture will be adopted by the participating schools for the duration of the competition. This will encourage the building of knowledge about other countries and cultures and prepare young South Africans to host the Soccer World Cup.

Education management and governance development

The Department of Education has developed the Education-Management Policy Framework and the South African Standard for Principalship for school managers, along with a new ladder of education-management qualifications.

These include a practice-based qualification for principals and aspirant principals, which will assist in professionalising the management of schools.

Educator development

The department considers the development of educators, school managers and SGBs a high priority.

It continues to reduce the number of unqualified and underqualified educators by introducing capacity-building programmes. The following programmes contribute towards educators' development:

- an MST ACE was introduced to reskill and train educators so that the NCS could be introduced
- the MST Project aims to improve the qualifications and skills of educators in these subjects
- the National Professional Diploma in Education Programme aims to upgrade the qualifications of those teachers who do not meet the minimum professional qualification requirements
- the Education Information Policy has been instituted for the setting of standard requirements for the administration of national surveys.

The National Policy Framework for Teacher Education and Development, published in April 2007, aims to increase the supply of and to train better educators for the system.

To increase the number of teacher trainees, the Fundza Lushaka bursaries were introduced. In 2008, R180 million was disbursed through about 5 000 bursary awards to new and returning students in critical focus areas. The first 800 beneficiaries of the bursaries were placed in schools early in 2008.

During 2008, a key focus was a recruitment campaign to attract young people into Foundation Phase teaching, particularly students keen and able to teach in the various African languages.

The policy framework introduced the CPTD system to revitalise the teaching profession and to reward those who commit themselves to the goals and principles of quality, professionalism and service.

In 2008, the department funded 1 600 teachers on MST ACE programmes, and a further 3 000 teachers for national professional diplomas in education at various universities. Additional professional development programmes were planned to improve the ICT capabilities of teachers and to support the Foundations for Learning Programme.

Research to collect data on un- and underqualified teachers in the system was commissioned. The outcome of this will be the compilation of a five-year plan for a focused systemic approach to teacher upgrading to be implemented from 2009.

Education infrastructure

In September 2007, Cabinet received the report on the National Education Infrastructure Management System (NEIMS), which is an update on the School Register of Needs. The report highlighted the progress the country was making in addressing the school infrastructure backlogs and the challenges that still lay ahead.

Cabinet resolved that innovative ways of accelerating service delivery, such as the establishment of a dedicated agency or public entity, increased use of public-private partnerships, and community participation in provision, should be explored.

The report concluded that some 74% of schools were in a good or excellent condition. However, it is also evident that substantial backlogs still remain in relation to the provision of facilities and the standard of these.

In 2008, a capital-investment plan was under development, using the NEIMS data.

In 1998, the education infrastructure budget was R481 million. In 2007, the budget totalled R3,9 billion (an increase of 810%). In 2010, it is set to expand to R5,2 billion.

Human-Resource Development Strategy (HRDS)

The revised HRDS for the period 2009 to 2014 was approved and implemented in April 2008.

The aim of this strategy is to achieve articulation between the subsystems (public-private and across government) for optimal achievement of systemic outcomes; and to facilitate a continuing analysis of HRD and the functioning of the labour market.

The intended outcomes will include improvements in the HRD Index and country ranking, and in the measure and ranking of economic competitiveness, a reduction of the Gini co-efficient and an enhancement in social cohesion.

The strategy includes the following commitments:

- accelerating training output in priority areas to achieve accelerated and shared economic growth
- ensuring universal access to high-quality and relevant education
- improving technological and innovation capability in the public and private sectors
- establishing efficient planning capabilities in the relevant departments and entities for the successful implementation of the HRDS in South Africa.

A monitoring and evaluation system will monitor the implementation of the strategy. A major review based on systematic evaluation studies and impact assessments will be conducted every five years.

Health promotion

The Ministry of Education collaborates with the Ministry of Health to ensure that the national education system plays its part in stemming the spread of HIV and AIDS, and ensuring that the rights of all those infected and affected are fully protected.

This priority has been operationalised into three objectives. Each is linked to anticipated outcomes and performance indicators.

The three programmes are:

- awareness, information and advocacy
- HIV and AIDS within the curriculum
- planning for HIV and AIDS in the education system.

The ministry's policy on HIV and AIDS for learners and educators has been converted into an accessible booklet for educators, SGBs and district officials.

The Department of Education's Schools Sectoral Plan on HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) National Strategic Plan (NSP) 2007 – 2011 aims to:

- reduce sexual transmission of HIV by 50% among school-going youth by 2011
- strengthen social-behaviour change programmes, interventions and curriculum strategies and approaches to the prevention of sexual and intravenous transmission of HIV, customised for different target groups with a focus on children vulnerable to and at higher risk of HIV-infection within education institutions
- implement school-based interventions targeted at reducing HIV infection among school-going youth
- use schools as centres of care and support
- monitor and evaluate schools-based interventions on life skills, HIV and AIDS.

The department has implemented the following interventions in response to the NSP:

- It has strengthened and customised the life skills, HIV and AIDS and sexual reproductive health curriculum in educational institutions.
- It has conducted peer education training camps in North West, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, and the Free State. Educators and learners were trained on drug and substance use and abuse, values and gender issues, reproductive health, teenage pregnancies, STIs, and safety and violence issues.

Drug and substance abuse

The following have been implemented:

- regulations on drug testing have been developed and sent for public comment
- guidelines on random drug testing and searches were developed
- 150 sets of 13 posters on the harmful effects of drugs and substance abuse were developed and distributed
- 400 000 Z-cards were developed for learners
- an educator manual on drug and substance abuse was developed.

Health screening of learners

The screenings target Grade R to Grade 4 learners identified with the following conditions:

- outstanding immunisation
- vision loss
- hearing loss
- gross loco motor dysfunction
- identification and response to intentional injuries and child abuse
- oral health
- mental health with special focus on Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder.

In 2007/08, more than 411 schools participated in the health screenings of learners above the national strategic target of 200 schools nationwide, using schools as centres of care and support. Mpumalanga, North West, Limpopo and Free State participated in the campaign.

Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.org.za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning "place of learning" in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the Department of Education and various role-players in the field.

The Department of Education has also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has more than 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Partnerships and funding

Central to the education policy framework is the contention that a high-quality education sector cannot be built by government alone. It depends on creative and dynamic partnerships between the public sector, civil society and international partners.

The Department of Education, educator unions, the SACE, ELRC and the ETDP Seta work together to achieve education transformation goals.

The success of key national initiatives (including South African Literary Initiatice [Sanli]) relies largely on partnerships with the private sector and NGOs.

Several partnerships have been consolidated, providing working models of educational transformation through public-private partnerships. The Business Trust, a partnership between business and government, works in education through three NGOs, namely the Read Educational Trust, the Joint Education Trust and the National Business Initiative Colleges Collaboration.

Educator unions

The majority of educators are organised into four educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework has been agreed to jointly by the Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

In April 2008, an agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an OSD for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths where teachers and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to/or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It provides for longer salary bands so that teachers do not reach a plateau in their salaries too soon in their careers.

It provides for a new category of posts of teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

The Education Management Service (EMS) will assist in ensuring that duties and responsibilities are clearly distinguished. The roles of principals are clearly separated from the roles of classroom educators and specialists. Educators employed in the EMS, whether school- or office-based, will sign performance agreements with their supervisors. Their new salary will consist of a flexible remuneration package.

Non-governmental organisations

NGOs are emerging as important partners in educational transformatipn and are often a source or creativity and innovation. The Department of Education is working with NGOs and the private sector to expand relationships, particularly in the areas of educator training, school improvement, Abet, ECD and FET, as well as evaluation, research and monitoring. The private sector is engaging increasingly in the provision of basic education by funding FET initiatives, building schools in needy communities and supporting the provision of teaching and learning equipment.

Gender equity

One of the key programmes of the Directorate: Gender Equity in the Department of Education is the Girls Education Movement (GEM), which was launched in 2003. This programme aims to ensure that girl learners not only access education but that their retention and achievement rate increases. It is founded on three pillars, namely career mentorship, skills development and advocacy. The GEM Skills Development Programme aims to address gender disparities through education and advocacy.

The movement has recently incorporated boys, where young people in schools form clubs known as the Girls and Boys Education Movement (G/BEM) clubs. These clubs are the department's avenue to inculcate in young people constructive values and empowering them with information pertaining to life-skills competencies to cope with different social problems, including learner pregnancy, gender-based violence, HIV and AIDS and sexual harassment.

The Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Sexual Violence and Harassment in Public Schools were developed in 2008 to support schools and school communities in responding to cases of sexual harassment and sexual violence that are perpetrated against learners and educators within schools and those that come to the attention of school authorities. The document also sets out standard measures to be taken to respond to situations of alleged and actual sexual violence and harassment across school communities, as well as assisting victims with reporting procedures and seeking intervention and support.

The measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy were also developed and distributed to public schools. The measures are intended to provide an environment in which learners are fully informed about reproductive matters and have the information that assists them in making responsible decisions. It also provides affected learners with information pertaining to their rights to education and support.

Rural education

The Directorate: Rural Education was established in May 2007 as a result of the recommendations made by the Ministerial Commission on Rural Education. The focal point of this directorate is to develop the National Framework for Quality Education in Rural Areas. The plan is grounded in the 82 recommendations extracted from the *Report of the Ministerial Committee on Rural Education*. It focuses on the following five areas:

- quality of teaching and learning
- attracting and retaining learners in rural and farm schools
- planning, restructuring and improving infrastructure in rural and farm schools
- effective school governance and management in rural and farm schools
- advocacy and sustainable partnership to implement programmes directed at the broader rural development and community participation in rural and farm schools.

By mid-2008, the report was in the second draft stage and the consultation process was continuing.

Three guidelines, as per the strategic plan and in keeping with recommendations made by the Ministerial Commission on Rural Education, have been drafted:

- Guidelines for Mergers and Closures of Schools
- Guidelines for the Implementation of Regulations relating to the Minimum Requirements for an Agreement between the Member of the Executive Property on which a Public School is Situated
- Guidelines to Formulating a Training Manual for Multigrade Teachers.

The international community

The international community's contribution to the transformation of education is important. The department co-operates with United Nations (UN) agencies and numerous donors to improve access to basic education, FET and HE.

Development co-operation with partners such as Flanders, France, Germany, Italy, the Japan International Co-operation Agency, Norway, the Danish Agency for Development Assistance, United States Agency for International Development, Centre for Disease Control and Prevention, the Sweden International Development Agency, the United Kingdom's (UK) Department for International Development, the Netherlands, the Irish Agency for International Development, the Finnish Government and the European Union have been instrumental in the provision of technical and financial assistance to the national and provincial departments of education.

The Ministry of Education plays a leading role in developing the Southern African Development Community Protocol on Education and Training, which aims to achieve equivalence, harmonisation and standardisation of education in the region.

International partnerships and South-South exchanges are fostered, particularly within the African continent.

The Ministry of Education chairs the Bureau of the Conference of Ministers of Education of the African Union (AU), which is monitoring the implementation of the AU's Second Decade of Education Plan of Action (2006 – 2015). The department has a strong collaborative relationship with the UN

Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. A key initiative of the collaboration is the development of national Education for All (EFA) action plans.

As part of regional consultations on implementation, the department participates in assessing progress in the elaboration of the EFA plans of countries in sub-Saharan Africa, and exchanges information on best practices in the development of these plans.

Libraries

Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, school libraries, special libraries, government libraries and HE libraries.

South Africa has more than 11 373 libraries, with 77 HE libraries, 9 416 school libraries, 79 government departmental libraries, one national library with two branches, and 1 800 public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries). In addition, the department has provided classroom libraries to schools and has facilitated a programme of providing mobile libraries to provincial departments of education.

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries, among other things, increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS was established by the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001). The object of the council is to advise the ministers of arts and culture and of education on LIS matters.

To this end, the council advises the ministers on the development, co-ordination and promotion of LIS, on legislation and policies, on the allocation of public funds, on LIS education and training, on the promotion of literacy and a culture of reading, and on the use of ICT to improve the quality of LIS.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA was constituted in 1999, in terms of the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998). This new institution emerged after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated by the NLSA Act, 1998 to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material, and to make it accessible worldwide. It ensures that knowledge and information are not lost to posterity and are available for further research.

The national library's collection contains a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports and books on special interest, including Africana material and newspapers. These may also be available on CD, microfilm, in digital format or on the web.

The functions of the NLSA are to build a collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa; to maintain and preserve these colletions; and to provide access to them through bibliographic reference, information and inter-library-lending services, as well as to promote information awareness and information literacy.

The Centre for the Book in Cape Town is a specialised unit and promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic. The other legal deposit libraries are the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein and the Msunduzi Municipal Library.

The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, unveiled the new home for the National Library of South Africa on 1 August 2008, in Pretoria. Three hundred million rand was spent on the new building, which seats 1 300 users at any one time.

Significantly, the 33 000-m² building is 10 times bigger than the previous library. Also, its 14 700 m² of storage space will preserve the quality of the reading material, including newspapers dating back to the late 1800s. The climate control of 18 degrees celsius and 50% humidity within the storage space will prevent the deterioration of books.

(OPDs). The first OPD is at the Constitutional Court Library and the second is at the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State.

Libraries in the Higher Education sector

The HE libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all inter-library loan requests. Pressure on HE libraries include redistribution of educational resources, rising prices and declining student numbers.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

Special libraries are libraries that consist of subject-specialised collections, including private organisations' libraries and libraries of government departments. (See also Chapter 4: *Arts and Culture*.)

Government made an additional R200 million available for libraries in 2008. Libraries were expected to:

- offer improved access to libraries through better staffing and more sensible opening hours
- update informational resources, especially educational-support material
- install new library infrastructure
- promote children's literature
- stock more books in indigenous languages.

The Library Charter, unveiled in 2008, sets the new direction for the country's community libraries. Some R39 million has been set aside for the upgrading of public entities and the South African Library for the Blind.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Arts and Culture
Department of Education
Development Indicators, *2008*
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Library and Information Association of South Africa
National Library of South Africa
South African Qualifications Authority
www.gov.za
www.southafrica.info
www.umalusi.org.za

Suggested reading

Chaya, H. *Prophets and Profits: Managerialism and the Restructuring of Jewish Schools in South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2005.

Chisana, O. *et al. Health of our Educators: A Focus on HIV/AIDS in South African Public Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Chisholm, L. ed. *Changing Class: Education and Social Change in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Chisholm, L and September, J. eds. *Gender Equity in South African Education 1994 – 2004. Perspectives from Research, Government and Unions: Conference Proceedings*. Cape Town. HSRC Press, 2005.

Closser, M. *et al. Settling for Less: Student Aspirations and Higher Education Realities*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Emerging Voices: Report on Education in South African Rural Communities. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Engelbrecht, P and Green, L. Leds. *Responding to the Challenges of Inclusive Education in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.

Fiske, E and Ladd, H. *Elusive Equity: Education Reform in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Graaf, J. *et al. Teaching in the Gap: Implementing Education Policy in South Africa in the Nineties*. Hatfield: Via Afrika, n.d.

Heystek, J, Roos, C and Middlewood, D. *Human Resource Management in Education*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2005.

Hemson, C. *Teacher Education and the Challenge of Diversity in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Hutton, B. ed. *Adult Basic Education in South Africa. Cape Town*: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Koen, C. *Higher Education and Work: Setting A New Research Agenda*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Kruss, G. ed. *Creating Knowledge Networks*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Mabizela, M. *The Business of Higher Education: A Study of Public-Private Partnerships in the Provision of Higher Education in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Mabokela, R and Magubane Z. *Hear Our Voices: Race, Gender and the Status of Black South African Women in the Academy*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2004.

Maree, K and Ebersohn, L. *Life Skills and Career Counselling*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2004.

McKinney, C. *Textbooks for Diverse Learners: A Critical Analysis of Learning Materials used in South African Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.

Morrow, W. *Learning to Teach in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Mqota, V. *Education and Democracy: A View from Soweto*. New York: Mqota Publishers, 2004.

Mwamwenda, TS. *Educational Psychology: An African Perspective*. 3rd rev ed. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2004.

Naidu, A *et al. Education Management and Leadership: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press South Africa, 2008.

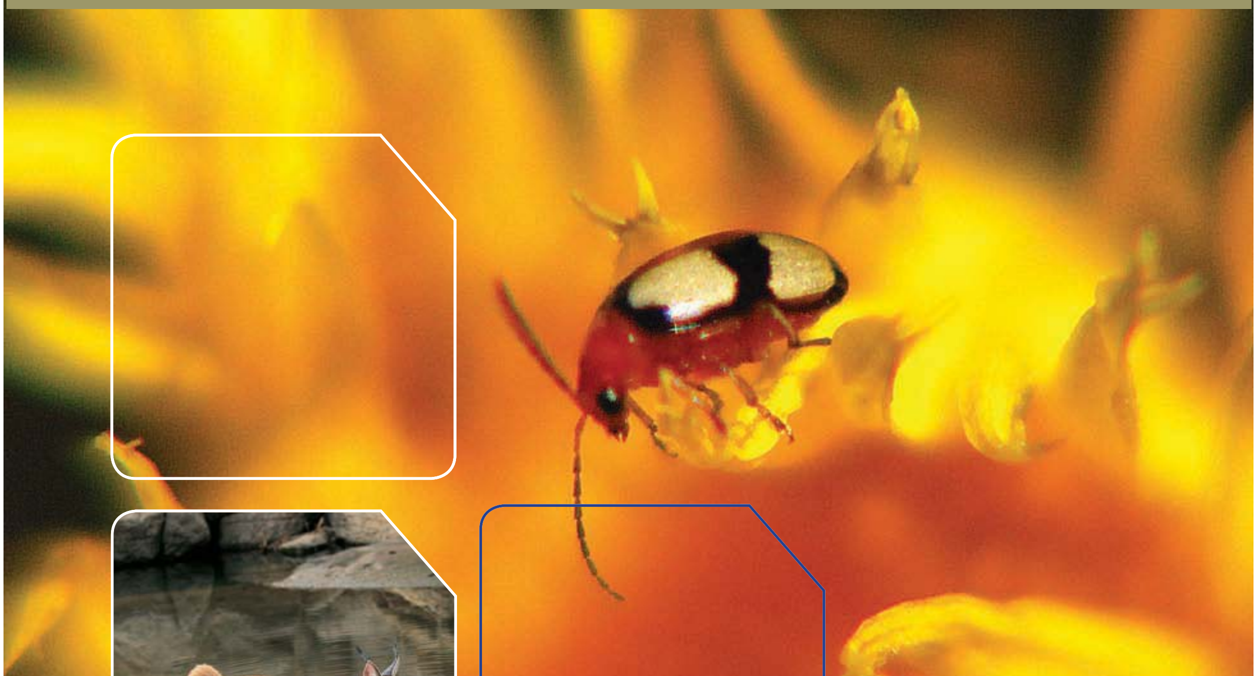
Nelson, D. ed. *A - Z of Careers: The South African Career Encyclopaedia*. Cape Town, 2004.

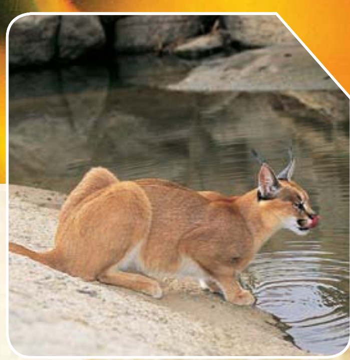
New Chapters: *10 Years of Rally to READ*. Johannesburg: McCarthy, 2007.

Nieman, MM and Monyai, RB. eds. *Educator as a Mediator of Learning*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

Nkomo, M. ed. *Reflections on School Integration: Colloquium Proceedings*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
Nkomo, M. ed. *et al. Within The Realm of Possibility: From Disadvantage To Development at the University of Fort Hare and the University of the North*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Phurkutse, MC. *Factors Affecting Teaching and Learning in South African Public Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
Potterton, M. *et al. Together Now: Implementing Inclusive Education*. Johannesburg: CIE, 2005.
Roussouw, JP. *Labour Relations in Education: A South African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.
Seepe, S. ed. *Towards an African Identity of Higher Education*. Pretoria: Vista University, 2004.
Simbayi, L. ed. *et al. Workplace Policies in Public Education: A Review Focusing on HIV/AIDS*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
Simkins, C and Paterson A. *Learner Performance in South Africa: Social and Economic Determinants of Success in Language and Mathematics*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
Wolhuter, C. *et al*. eds. *Comparative Education: Education Systems and Contemporary Issues*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.
Young, M and Gamble, J, eds. *Knowledge, Curriculum and Qualifications for South African Further Education*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT





South Africa's trove of natural treasures and beauty is unmatched. Although South Africa accounts for only 2% of the world's surface area, it is home to nearly 10% of the world's plants and 7% of the world's reptiles, birds and mammals. In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa is ranked as the fifth richest country in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

The overarching vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with its environment and natural resources. The department manages policies governing four interrelated components: tourism, the fishing industry, conservation management of natural resources and the environment and substantial development.

The department's objective is to maximise economic growth in these sectors while effectively managing the interface between the environment and development. Futhermore, the department also leads the environment and culture sector of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), and promotes the global sustainable development agenda.

The provincial conservation agencies are major role-players, and independent statutory organisations such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

Improved environmental conditions include certain fish stocks, which have recovered due to good management measures, and a slowing of habitat loss in some areas of the country.

Programmes to rehabilitate ecosystems while creating jobs have received increased budgets.

Policy and legislation

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), provides a regulatory framework to protect South Africa's valuable species, ecosystems and its biological wealth. It implements the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity (1997)*, and multilateral agreements such as the United Nations (UN) Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which came into force in December 1993.

South Africa is a signatory to the CBD, which provides the framework, norms and standards for the conservation, sustainable use and equitable benefit-sharing of South Africa's biological resources.

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003), provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas that are representative of South Africa's biological diversity, its natural landscapes and seascapes, and the management of these. The Act envisages a national register of protected areas, with a simplified classification system of special nature reserves, national parks, nature reserves and protected environments.

It also introduces the concept of biological-diversity protection and ecosystem management. Biodiversity, conservation and ecosystem management are noted as important aims in policy and legislation that govern marine and coastal resources, fresh water and natural forests.

The Act also proposes a new system of protected areas, linking various kinds of protected environments to replace the existing fragmented system.

In addition, the Act enables the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to acquire private land by purchasing land rights for the creation of protected areas.

Based on experience with biosphere reserves, and informed by the new bioregional approach to conservation (linking the protected-area network along mountains, rivers, wetlands, the coastline and other areas of natural vegetation), the Act will result in an interlocking system of protected areas that explicitly encourages the inclusion of private land.

It recognises that people are the custodians of the land, that they need to be involved in the management of the protected land and that they should benefit from it.

The Act caters for concurrent competence in the management of protected land. For example, an area with national-park status can now be managed by another agency, such as a provincial parks authority. Steps have been taken to ensure that standards are upheld.

Regulations in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004), provide for the proper administration of specific nature reserves, national parks and world heritage sites.

South Africa is one of only two countries in the world to have promulgated legislation specifically

Regulations pertaining to threatened and protected species came into effect on 1 February 2008. They seek to regulate the hunting of large predators and address illegal and unethical hunting methods and devices.

related to the World Heritage Convention (the other being Australia), which was adopted by the UN in 1972.

The country's World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), stipulates that all world heritage sites must have an integrated management plan in place to ensure cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of the site.

World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Johannesburg hosted the WSSD in September 2002. The agreements reached in Johannesburg are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

Among the achievements of the WSSD was the launch of over 300 partnerships, including 32 energy initiatives, 21 water programmes and 32 programmes for biodiversity and ecosystem management.

The biggest success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes. The WSSD focused on the most marginalised sectors of society, including women, the youth, indigenous people and people with disabilities. The implementation plan includes programmes to deliver water, energy, healthcare, agricultural development and a better environment for the world's poor. It also incorporates targets for the reduction of poverty and the protection of the environment.

The eighth International Conference on Environmental Compliance and Enforcement was held in Cape Town in April 2008.

Two days were dedicated to local capacity-building and regional networking events. The subsequent days featured action-oriented thematic workshops, distinguished keynote speakers and networking opportunities for over 150 invited participants. It also included a day for field visits to sites of innovative environmental enforcement initiatives in South Africa.

Established in May 2005 in the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism South Africa's Environmental Management Inspectorate, popularly referred to as the "Green Scorpions", has made significant strides in the area of environmental enforcement. The capacity of the Green Scorpions has increased from the initial 26 to a total of 866 inspectors countrywide.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact, including the following:
- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water will be halved by 2015
- biodiversity loss is to be reversed by 2010, and collapsed fish stocks restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact will be phased out by 2020
- energy services will be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

In July 2008, Cabinet approved the NFSD and the intention to develop an in-depth implementation plan for sustainable development in the country.

In the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation (JPoI), negotiated at the WSSD, countries committed to preparing and implementing national strategies for sustainable development.

In line with the WSSD targets, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism led a process towards the development of a single, coherent framework that articulates South Africa's development context, and sets out the common vision and strategic areas of intervention for achieving sustainable development. Phase one of a three-phase process, through a series of dialogues, has culminated in the development of the NFSD.

The NFSD seeks to build on existing programmes and strategies that have emerged in the first 15 years of democracy. It sets the framework for a common understanding and vision of sustainable development, describes the South African context and defines areas for strategic intervention. The NFSD complements current efforts aimed at reducing poverty and growing the economy. It enhances the need for coherence and consideration of natural resource constraints and ecosystem services.

Biological diversity

South Africa enjoys the third-highest level of biodiversity in the world. The country's rich natural heritage is vast and staggering in its proportions.

Although the country covers only 2% of the world's land area, nearly 10% of the world's plants and 7% of its reptiles, birds and mammals are found here.

The three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots in South Africa are the Cape Floral Region in the south, the Succulent Karoo that the country shares with Namibia, and that of Maputoland-

Pondoland in the east, which extends into Swaziland and Mozambique.

South Africa's marine life is similarly diverse, partly as a result of the extreme contrast between the water masses on the east and west coasts.

Three water masses – the cold Benguela current, the warm Agulhas current, and oceanic water – make the region one of the most oceanographically heterogeneous in the world. According to the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity (1997)*, over 10 000 plant and animal species – almost 15% of the coastal species known worldwide – are found in South African waters, with about 12% of these occurring nowhere else.

The country's natural heritage is best described according to a systematic classification of regions, or biomes. A biome is a broad ecological unit representing a major life zone, which extends over a large area, and contains relatively uniform plant and animal life closely connected with environmental conditions, especially climate.

The White Paper states that South Africa is one of six countries in the world with an entire plant kingdom within its national confines. The Cape Floral Kingdom has the highest-recorded species diversity for any similar-sized temperate or tropical region in the world.

Other biomes in the country are also of global conservation significance. For example, one third of the world's succulent plant species are found in South Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The degree to which each of these biomes is threatened varies, depending on the fertility of the soil, the economic value derived from use of the area, human population pressures and the extent to which the biome is conserved in protected areas.

Imporant dates:
World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October.

Savanna Biome

This biome is an area of mixed grassland and trees, and is generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*Acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*). In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*Euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*Acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*Combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*Acacia galpinii*), mopani (*Colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*Ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*Portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions. The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhinoceros, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (formerly Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park) and other reserves are located in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptations from plants. The vegetation of this biome is mainly low shrubland and grass, with trees limited to water courses.

The bat-eared fox, black-backed jackal, ostrich, suricate and ground squirrel are typical of the area.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to creep slowly in on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome covers an estimated 339 237 km of South Africa's landscape and stretches across seven of the country's nine provinces. This biome is a summer-rainfall area with heavy thunderstorms and hail in summer, and frost in winter.

In July 2008, the Grasslands Declaration was signed by the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, and six provincial MECs for environmental affairs. The Grassland Biome is South Africa's significant food source, water purifier and the second-largest biome in the country in terms of size, species richness and heritage. It is also one of the most threatened areas in the country. Thirty percent of this area is already damaged beyond repair and cannot be conserved. Less than 2% of the biome is formally protected.

The grasslands programme was initiated to secure and sustain the biodiversity and ecosystems of the grasslands for current and future generations. One of the aims of the programme is to incorporate biodiversity in food production, urban development and the usage of land, especially for mining and plantation forestry.

A number of perennial rivers such as the Orange, Vaal, Pongola, Kei and Umzimvubu originate in, and flow through, the area.

Trees are scarce and are found mainly on hills and along riverbeds.

Karee (*Rhus lancea*), wild currant (*Rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*Celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the most common.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in a wild state in this biome. Two of these, namely the black wildebeest and the blesbok, occur mainly in the Grassland Biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity as far as birds are concerned. Birds commonly found in the area include the black korhaan, blue crane, guinea-fowl and other grassland birds.

Succulent Karoo Biome

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *Asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered from horizon to horizon with a multicoloured carpet (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter-rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*Aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*Pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of neighbouring biomes (fynbos and Nama-Karoo).

The Richtersveld, Tankwa Karoo and Namaqua national parks as well as the new Hantam National Botanical Garden outside Nieuwoudville in the Northern Cape have improved the conservation status of this biome considerably.

The Succulent Karoo Biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the land surface of the globe.

Fynbos is found mainly in the Western Cape. This is a winter-rainfall area and the fynbos vegetation is similar to that of mediterranean regions.

Fynbos is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates a diversity of plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, over 6 000 of which are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, for which South Africa is renowned. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. The mountains are the habitat of the leopard, baboon, honey-badger, caracal, rhebuck and several types of eagle and dassies.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape, respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment, and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*Podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*Olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*Xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens, and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species in the Thicket Biome are endemic to it.

The Thicket Biome is centred predominantly in the Eastern Cape.

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with the annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water. Common examples of such habitats are broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, the role of coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates an abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in the Desert Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

Preserving biodiversity

Biodiversity plays a crucial role in sustainable development and poverty eradication. Fundamental changes to the legislative, policy and institutional framework for natural resource management have resulted in a shift in focus from an elitist conservation approach to a management approach based on South Africa's recognition of the contribution of biological resources to food security, science, economy, cultural integrity and well-being.

The country's conservation areas contribute to job creation and socio-economic upliftment, and continue to serve as a foundation of the tourism industry.

South Africa is a very popular tourist destination. The main attractions are nature-based tourism facilities such as national parks, game and nature reserves and national botanical gardens. There are some 9 000 privately owned game ranches in South Africa, covering about 13% of the country's total land area. The contribution of these areas towards maintaining South Africa's unique biodiversity is incalculable.

The publication in 2006 of the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA) by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Sanbi, revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems were threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers were threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three are in

i

The 12th session of the African Ministerial Conference on the Environment (AMCEN) was held in June 2008 at the Sandton Convention Centre, Johannesburg. During the conference, the "Africa: Atlas of our Changing Environment", was launched. The atlas is the first major publication to depict environmental change in Africa's countries using satellite imagery, and is a resource for remedial action at all levels.

South Africa has assumed the chair of AMCEN for the next two years, which will provide an opportunity to raise the profile of global environmental issues in Africa. It will represent Africa at international environmental meetings.

critical danger and 12% of marine biozones are under serious threat.

Because of the geographic spread and diversity of South Africa's plant and animal species – up to 80% of significant biodiversity lies outside existing protected areas – a traditional approach to conservation is inadequate. Biodiversity priorities have to be integrated with all policies, plans and programmes.

South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) aims to guide conservation and the management of biodiversity to ensure sustainable and equitable benefits for all communities.

The NBSAP highlights five strategic objectives, such as the need for a network of protected areas that conserves a sample of all South Africa's biodiversity; specifies how these are to be realised; and sets five- and 15-year targets for each.

The NBSAP also provides for the entrenchment of biodiversity concerns in production sectors, such as mining and forestry, by focusing on the inclusion of biodiversity priorities in guidelines and codes of best practice, and on measures to encourage sustainable production practices.

The NBSAP informs the creation, in law, of the National Biodiversity Framework to ensure an integrated, co-ordinated and consistent approach to biodiversity management by organs of state in all spheres of government, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the private sector, local communities, other stakeholders and the public.

Mossel Bay's Oystercatcher Trail and the Cape Nature Tierkloof Trail in the Gamkaberg Reserve are among the 30 spectacular walks included in *Unforgettable Walks to Take Before You Die.* The 256-page book is authored by photographers and writers Steve Watkins and Clare Jones and draws on their collective years of international travel experience.

The Oystercatcher Trail is a three- or five-day walk along the largely undisturbed coastline west of Mossel Bay. The trail leads southwards towards the Gouritz River Mouth.

Now a major tourist attraction in Mossel Bay, this popular trail has earned itself a series of local and international accolades. Among these is a place in *Getaway's* Top 10 South African hikes as well as a spot in *National Geographic Traveller's* Top 50 Tours of a Lifetime.

The Gamkaberg Rerserve is situated within the Gamka Mountain in the Little Karoo. The mountain boasts a rugged terrain with deep ravines.

The Tierkloof Trail takes hikers through a deep, forested ravine to a fynbos-rich mountain plateau where hikers can rest in the Oukraal camp and look out on to the Swartberg and Outeniqua mountain ranges.

South African Biodiversity Information Facility (Sabif)

The Global Biodiversity Information Facility (GBIF) is a mega-science facility that aims to make the world's biodiversity data freely and openly available on the Internet.

South Africa became a voting participant of the GBIF in 2003, committing itself to establishing national nodes that are linked to the GBIF.

Sabif represents a partnership of more than four South African data-providers, including other role-players such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, South African Integrated Spatial Information System, South African Society for Systematic Biology, Endangered Wildlife Trust, Biobank South Africa or Wildlife Biodiversity Resources, the Biomap initiative and museums.

Through Sabif, South Africa is able to respond to pertinent biodiversity challenges through innovative applications of information technology.

Sabif intends to create an enabling platform for end users to discover and put to use vast quantities of global biodiversity data to:

- advance scientific research in many disciplines
- promote technological and sustainable development
- facilitate the equitable sharing of the benefits of biodiversity
- enhance the quality of life of members of society.

South African Biosystematics Initiative (Sabi)

Sabi aims to take a leading role in the application of innovative approaches to systematics and taxonomy as fundamental sciences underpinning biological research.

In this way, it plans to unlock the full potential of South Africa's biological and human resources through the enhanced practice of biosystematic science, and to use modern technology to build on an existing rich historical scientific legacy, including indigenous knowledge systems.

Some of Sabi's primary objectives include establishing a framework and strategy to:

- address the diminishing national capacity in biological systematics and taxonomy
- provide leadership and co-ordination to

promote innovative research in the field of biosystematics
- empower South African biosystematists to employ and develop modern scientific technologies and approaches regarding the documentation and use of biological resources
- enhance the ability of South African biosystematists to contribute to the National System of Innovation and the information society, and thus respond to national priorities in agriculture, health, sustainable development and conservation.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a facility of the National Research Foundation (NRF). Its main aim is to establish and maintain environmental observatories, field stations and sites, linked by an information-management network, to serve as research and education platforms for the long-term study of ecosystems. It provides for incremental advances in understanding ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental changes.

The SAEON satisfies the need for public-decision support by generating long-term information relevant to the sustainable management of natural resources and habitats over a spectrum of eco-regions and land uses, ranging from pristine to urbanisation-transformed landscapes.

Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa

With the growing global market in biomaterial and biodiversity informatics, developing countries such as South Africa face the enormous challenge of setting up systems for governing access to biodiversity and the sustainable use of their biodiversity heritage.

The biosciences field is recognised as the driving force behind the next revolutionary wave of scientific and technological advancement.

Biobank facilities (genebanks) are increasingly becoming a key strategic research infrastructure for countries worldwide. Their importance in the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity has, among other things, been emphasised in the Consolidated Plan of Action for Science and Technology.

This has led to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism collaborating with Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa to help facilitate, through its member organisations, an integrated and co-ordinated drive to access, collect, enhance and bank a representative range of biomaterial from key South African and African wildlife and indigenous livestock species for conservation, research and biotechnology development purposes.

This facility also provides general custodianship to South Africa's wildlife biomaterial and/or genetic resources.

Genebanks

The Department of Science and Technology and the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) support the maintenance, management and development of national public assets for the benefit of the broader science community.

They are national repositories of genetic information and terrestrial data related to the environment, and include specimens of and facilities that house all insects and support arachnids, nematodes, fungi and various other genebanks.

South Africa has international obligations that compel it to keep reference collections of all agricultural specimens regarding the import and export of agricultural produce.

The national collections and genebanks house these reference collections and make an important contribution to scientific studies, biodiversity replenishment, sustainable development and production, food security and invader-pest identification.

South African National Biodiversity Institute

Sanbi, with its head office based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, was established in September 2004. It is an autonomous state-aided institute whose vision is to be the leading institution in biodiversity science in Africa, facilitating conservation and the sustainable development of living resources and human well-being.

In April 2008, the Norwegian Government pledged R1,2 million to help Johannesburg host a "green" 2010 World Cup. The funds will be used to plant trees and consequently counteract carbon emissions in the city. Norway's government has also committed R750 000 for a feasibility study of a carbon-offsetting programme in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

Sanbi's strategic focus for the medium term will be on:

- providing leadership in biodiversity knowledge management, information-generation and dissemination and highlighting the status and trends in South Africa
- conducting co-ordinated research on South Africa's biodiversity
- managing a national system of bioregional programmes
- implementing priority components of the national biodiversity strategy and action plan
- providing continued support for the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) and multilateral environmental arrangements
- further developing and managing national botanical gardens
- monitoring biodiversity in South Africa
- providing guidelines and best practices on the identification and conservation of threatened species and ecosystems, and the sustainable use of biodiversity.

In addition, Sanbi implements rehabilitation programmes that systematically target threatened ecosystems and continues to support the goals of the EPWP.

To achieve its goals, Sanbi has established five operational divisions, namely, Biosystematics Research and Collections; Applied Biodiversity Research; Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation; Biodiversity Mainstreaming; and Conservation, Gardens and Tourism.

Conservation, Gardens and Tourism

Sanbi manages nine national botanical gardens (classified as "conservation gardens") in six of South Africa's nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000 and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. It displays 5 300 indigenous plant species. Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden, as part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), was included in the Cape Floral Region World Heritage Site in 2004, becoming the first botanical garden in the world to be included within a natural world heritage site.

Kirstenbosch receives more than 750 000 visitors annually. The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden houses the Kirstenbosch Research Centre (KRC), the Rufford Maurice Laing Centre for Biodiversity Conservation, Gold Fields Environmental Education Centre, the Botanical Society Conservatory, two restaurants, a conference venue, gift shops, a coffee bar, concert venues, sculpture exhibits and the Centre for Home Gardening, which includes an indigenous plant retail nursery.

The other gardens in the national network managed by Sanbi are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty's Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Nelspruit, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, Hantam outside Niewoudtville and the Pretoria National Botanical Garden.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest herbarium in the southern hemisphere.

The Harold Porter National Botanical Garden boasts Disa uniflora in its natural habitat (flowering from mid-December to the end of January), and South Africa's national flower, the king protea (*Protea cynaroides*).

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden accommodates more than 600 naturally occurring plant species, over 230 bird species, and a number of reptiles and small mammals. These include jackal and antelope, which occur in the natural areas of the garden.

This garden receives some 180 000 visitors annually and is the fastest-growing of the Sanbi-managed gardens. It covers over 275 hectares (ha) and consists of landscaped and natural areas. All the garden's plants are indigenous to southern Africa.

The Hantam National Botanical Garden outside Nieuwoudtville in the Northern Cape, covers 6 300 ha of land on the Bokkeveld Plateau, which is famous for its range and density of bulbous plants, to the extent that Nieuwoudtville is often referred to as the "Bulb Capital of the World".

Some 40% of the local flora consist of bulbs that create spectacular displays every autumn and spring. The garden also incorporates large natural patches of renosterveld fynbos and succulent Karoo vegetation. Almost a third of the species endemic to the Bokkeveld Plateau are threatened with extinction.

Sanbi operates environmental-education programmes within its national botanical gardens, and outreach greening programmes focused on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Biosystematics and Collections

Sanbi researches the evolution, diversity, distribution and relationships of southern Africa's 24 000 species of plants, based on the Sanbi collection of over 1,8 million specimens in its three herbaria. There are also regional herbaria in Durban (KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium) and at the KRC (Compton Herbarium).

Recent products of plant taxonomic research within Sanbi have included a national plant checklist and the first-ever flowering plant checklist for sub-Saharan Africa. There are 50 136 plant taxa recorded for sub-Saharan Africa and some 19 581 indigenous plant species for South Africa. South Africa, with its 11 700 endemic plant species, has the richest temperate flora in the world.

Applied Biodiversity Research

In addition to herbarium and taxonomic research, Sanbi has an Applied Biodiversity Research division. The division's staff is concentrated in the KRC in Cape Town, which is a centre of excellence for biodiversity research. The intention is to expand the research programme to Pretoria and other centres.

The research programme focuses on the impact of climate change, invasive alien species and land-use on biodiversity; understanding the dynamics of species and ecosystems to determine thresholds of sustainable use; and research on species and ecosystems of special concern (including threatened species and ecosystems).

Scientists in the Applied Biodiversity Research Programme have developed a new vegetation map for South Africa and maintain the Protea Atlas Database, one of the most comprehensive plant databases in the world. The division leads the South African component of a global project on the conservation and sustainable use of pollinators as part of an assessment of biodiversity-related ecosystem services.

The facilities at the KRC include the Leslie Hill Molecular Systematics Laboratory, which hosts an active research programme in molecular ecology and evolution. A DNA bank for plants has been established at the laboratory, in collaboration with the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, in the United Kingdom (UK). A bank for reptile DNA was established as part of the South African Reptile Conservation Assessment (SARCA). The objectives of the DNA banks are to archive the DNA of at least one species of all 2 200 genera of South Africa's flowering plants, as well as all South Africa's reptile species; to train South African researchers and students in high-profile biotechnologies; and to produce a tree-of-life analysis of South African taxa.

Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation

This division is based at the KRC but is expanding its staffing in Pretoria. It builds on the successes of the Global Change and Biodiversity Research Group and its predecessors that have conducted research on climate change, and facillitated translation of research results into policy relevance since the early 1990s. The group has a strong theoretical basis, having contributed some 100 peer-reviewed scientific publications over the past five years on a broad array of topics, allowing the assessment of key vulnerabilities of southern African ecosystems to ongoing climate change.

The division's scientists conduct physical experimental research under laboratory and natural conditions and also employ computer-simulation approaches to optimise the use of results obtained. Topics of study range from the physiological impacts of rising carbon dioxide and temperature extremes on plant growth and ecosystem change; projections of the responses of bird, reptile, mammal and plant species to shifts in climate; early detection and monitoring of climate-change impacts on wild populations; to understanding the drivers and impact of wild fires on regional, national and global scales. Together, research findings have provided useful insight into the possible range of strategies available to conservationists and land managers under a changing climate. These findings have specifically begun to guide the identification of vulnerable and resilient regions of the country under a range of climate scenarios, which is essential for optimising sustainable conservation planning efforts.

Division researchers have also contributed to key policy-guiding reports on climate-change vulnerabilities and adaptation strategies for the Western Cape Department of Environment and Development Planning and the national Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. Members have served on the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, whose contributing scientists collectively won a Nobel Peace Prize for their work in 2007. Division researchers also support national negotiators at international forums such as the Convention on Biodiversity and UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

Millennium Seed Bank

The Millennium Seed Bank Project in South Africa is part of a 10-year international programme that aims to collect and conserve 10% of the world's seed-bearing plant species (some 24 000 species) in the Millennium Seed Bank facility of the Royal Botanic Gardens in Kew in the UK by 2010.

Sanbi joined the Millennium Seed Bank International Programme in 2000. The South African collaboration aims to contribute by collecting the seed of about 2 500 plant species indigenous to the region for storage in this long-term conservation facility.

Greening of the Nation

The Greening of the Nation Project, managed by Sanbi, is a government-funded programme that has been initiated in various provinces for community and school greening projects. Its activities include the greening of towns (road islands and entrances), schools, crèches, day-care centres, community parks, cemeteries, police stations and cultural villages, and the development of community nurseries.

Many projects include the development of indigenous and vegetable gardens. The programme works closely with Food and Trees for Africa, the first national non-governmental, non-profit, greening organisation in South Africa, established in 1990.

Working for Wetlands

Sanbi also manages the Working for Wetlands Programme, with its offices based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden. In 2007, Working for Wetlands rehabilitated 83 wetlands in all nine provinces and in the process employed 2 265 people and used 250 small businesses, some created specifically for wetland rehabilitation. The programme provided more than 36 000 training days to its beneficiaries.

Funding is provided by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry through the EPWP. It uses a labour-intensive approach, thus creating jobs, both temporary and permanent, and small businesses.

> i
>
> The Cabinet-mandated Long-Term Mitigation Scenario (LTMS) study, which will set the pathway for South Africa's long-term climate policy, will eventually inform a legislative, regulatory and fiscal package that will give effect to the policy at a mandatory level.
>
> The LTMS lays a firm basis for a progressive National Policy on Climate Change. It culminated in the National Climate Summit and Science Conference early in 2009. During this summit, the department launched the policy process that translated the LTMS into fiscal, regulatory and legislative packages as well as sectoral implementation plans. The national summit involved key government departments, industry, labour and non-governmental organisations.

Biodiversity planning and assessment

Sanbi has assessed the contribution of municipal nature reserves to meeting national biodiversity targets, which has highlighted the crucial role that municipal nature reserves play in conserving biodiversity, and the need for supporting the development of municipal capacity to manage them effectively.

Sanbi has supported the initiation of provincial biodiversity plans in the Eastern Cape and North West. These plans will form the basis for publishing bioregional plans in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004). North West and the Eastern Cape join Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga as provinces that have systematic spatial biodiversity plans that identify priority areas for biodiversity, using the best available science.

Bioregional programmes

Sanbi co-ordinates a suite of bioregional programmes that focus on partnership projects to mainstream biodiversity in socio-economic development.

The most recent addition to the suite is the Marine Biodiversity Programme, initiated in partnership with the World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa (WWF-SA) and Marine and Coastal Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. The programme focuses on facilitating the establishment of a network of offshore marine protected areas (MPAs) in South Africa's waters, and engaging with the fisheries and mining sector.

The Grasslands Programme focuses on mainstreaming biodiversity in production sectors. Demonstration projects underway include rehabilitating river ecosystems in the Free State, wetland mitigation banking with the coal-mining industry in Mpumalanga, securing priority biodiversity sites within urban areas in Gauteng, biodiversity stewardship on farms in the Wakkerstroom area in Mpumalanga, working with the forestry industry to secure 35 000 ha of high biodiversity priority forestry-owned land and ensuring that expansion of small-grower plantation forestry is underpinned by biodiversity considerations.

The Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme (Skep) has established innovative partnerships with De Beers on the Namaqualand coast and with Anglo American Base Metals as part of the Bushmanland Conservation Initiative in the Northern Cape, securing mine-owned land in conservation agreements that contribute to national biodiversity targets.

In partnership with the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), Conservation International and the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund, Skep has established Skeppies, the first-ever small grant fund enabling synergy between conservation and local economic development activities.

The Subtropical Thicket Ecosystem Programme (Step) focuses on integrating maps of biodiversity priorities into municipal planning and land-use decision-making in the Eastern Cape, including publishing a fully revised Step handbook and mapbook.

Step has initiated four biodiversity-related integrated development plan (IDP) projects in municipalities in the Fish River valley.

Cape Action for People and the Environment (Cape) closed off its US$6-million investment from the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund, having funded 65 civil-society-led projects in the Cape Floral Region over a five-year investment period. It continues to roll out the Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development Project with an investment of US$11 million from the Global Environment Facility (GEF), with a key focus on strengthening co-operative governance for improved biodiversity management in this global biodiversity hotspot.

Sanbi gave extensive input into the development of the Woolworths Biodiversity Strategy, through the Cape, Skep, Step and Grasslands programmes.

Assessing and monitoring indigenous fauna and flora

Since 2004, Sanbi has responded to its new mandate through the initiation of a suite of projects that will assess and monitor the status of South Africa's indigenous fauna. As part of its Threatened Species Programme, Sanbi co-ordinates several atlas projects, which capture records of species occurrences across the country through the participation of hundreds of volunteer members. Highlights include the following:

- SARCA, launched in May 2005, is a four-year conservation-assessment programme aimed at identifying and conserving reptile species threatened by extinction in South Africa. Funded and developed by Sanbi, the project is driven by experts from South African universities, museums, conservation agencies and the Herpetological Association of Africa. The University of Cape Town's Animal Demography Unit (ADU) is co-ordinating the project, which involves gathering thousands of records of reptile sightings from all over South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. Some 20 volunteers joined the field team on outings and 4 540 photographic records from more than 100 amateur photographers have been submitted to the burgeoning online virtual museum (see *www.sarca.adu.org.za*).
- The launch of the *South African National Survey of Arachnida* took place in September 2006. This collaboration between the ARC and Sanbi is progressing well and has garnered much attention and support from the public and conservation and scientific communities.
- The Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment (Sabca), was launched in May 2007. Sabca is a four-year conservation project aimed at determining the distribution and conservation priorities of all butterfly species in the southern African region, especially those threatened with extinction. This project was made possible through a partnership between Sanbi, the Lepidopterists' Society of Africa (LepSoc) and the ADU. The project is co-funded by the Norwegian Ministry for the Environment and Sanbi through its Environment Co-operation Programme. Sabca is the first major project on insects to be undertaken by Sanbi. Already over 1 820 photographic records from more than 100 amateur photographers have been submitted to the project's online virtual museum (see *www.sabca.adu.org.za*)
- Sanbi's Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers (Crew) has been so successful in its aim to involve local communities in monitoring and conserving their rare and threatened plants that it has now established offices in Pretoria and Pietermaritzburg.

- Sanbi's Birds and Environmental Change in South Africa Programme has progressed with its aim of using birds as indicators of ecosystem change and human well-being. In June 2007, the programme launched the four-year Southern African Bird Atlas Project 2 (Sabap2). Sabap2 is a major public-participation project to learn more about how birds respond to changes in their environment – be it climate change, urbanisation, invasive species, wetland drainage, fragmented habitats, pollution, conservation protection or other habitat changes. Sabap2 is a partnership project of the ADU, BirdLife South Africa, and Sanbi, and is carried out across South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland.

Knowledge and information management

Sanbi's strategic objectives include being the preferred source for biodiversity knowledge and information management in South Africa. Sanbi is actively consolidating its information resources and services, with the aim of supporting research, planning, implementation and monitoring by a range of partners and stakeholders.

Sanbi's Biodiversity Geographical Information System Unit is expanding its services to provide easy access to biodiversity planning and related information for all South Africa's biomes.

Conservation areas

The CBD, to which South Africa is a signatory, requires that 10% of the terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). By May 2008, about 5,9% of South Africa's land surface area was under formal conservation through the system of national and provincial protected areas.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has committed significant financial resources towards the expansion of formal protected areas, bringing the number of national parks to 22, and the total formal conservation estate to four million hectares. Since 2004, the department declared four new MPAs, thus increasing the total coastline under protection to 20%.

The NSBA confirmed that the current protected area network does not conserve a true representative sample of South Africa's biodiversity. Because of historical reasons, formal protected areas were often established with limited consideration to biodiversity and the maintenance of ecological processes. A large proportion of biological diversity and critical ecosystem processes are therefore found outside of terrestrial MPAs.

This has led to the development of the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy. This strategy sets out a framework for the expansion of the protected areas network in South Africa so that a more representative sample of biological diversity may be conserved and managed.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Examples of wilderness areas are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Marine protected areas

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. Many of the new MPAs will be used to further develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

In October 2008, Stilbaai MPA became the 20th such protected area.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks manages several national parks throughout South Africa, excluding in Gauteng, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. The system of national parks is representative of the country's important ecosystems and unique natural features.

Commercial and tourism-conservation development and the involvement of local communities are regarded as performance indicators. These areas include national parks proclaimed in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003, provincial parks, nature reserves and indigenous state forests.

Some of these natural and scenic areas are extensive and include large representative areas of at least one of the country's biomes.

South Africa's national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Blyde River National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Groenkloof National Park
- Kalahari Gemsbok National Park (part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park)
- Karoo National Park
- Knysna National Lake Area
- Kruger National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier National Park
- TMNP (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- Tsitsikamma National Park
- Wilderness National Park
- West Coast National Park
- Wild Coast National Park.

On 14 August 2008, the TMNP celebrated its 10th birthday. One of the key successes achieved has been the delivery of social benefits through the park's poverty-relief programme, which enabled the TMNP to use over R40 million worth of funds from the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's Social Responsibility Programme to upgrade 250 km of the footpath network, build "Touch the Earth Lightly" tourist accommodation, and provide training opportunities to previously unemployed people.

The programme employed 600 people a year for the past five years and included the training of world-class Hoerikwaggo mountain guides and the development of and support for small, medium and micro-enteprises from within the communities bordering the TMNP.

In May 2008, the Kruger National Park celebrated 110 years of existence by holding several events to mark its status as a world leader in conservation policies and management principles.

On 31 May, the South African Mint officially launched the 2008 set of Krugerrand gold coins.

From 31 August to 2 September 2008, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism held the People and Parks Conference in Mafikeng, North West. The conference looked at the role protected areas play in local economic development and poverty alleviation.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within it ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, co-operation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs are expected to allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The six identified TFCAs are as follows:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA

In May 2008, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and South African National Parks completed the second year of implementation of the Infrastructure Development Programme for which a total amount of R541 million was made available over a four-year period.

By May 2008, the programme had employed 1 357 people. Some 50 small, medium and micro-enterprises were empowered and transformation in the construction industry was actively supported. Under this programme:

- 145 tourism-accommodation units were upgraded and many new accommodation units constructed in various national parks
- 89 upgraded and new staff accommodation units were put in place in various national parks.

Construction work has also started on important initiatives that include the following:

- a new transfrontier park entrance gate at Twee Rivieren in the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- conference centres in Mopani and Skukuza rest camps in the Kruger National Park
- a world-class centre in Mapungubwe National Park that will celebrate the rich heritage of this world heritage site.

- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Limpopo/Shashe TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area

"Boundless Southern Africa", the consolidated TFCA brand was officially launched by nine southern African countries at the Tourism Indaba in Durban in May 2008.

Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe unanimously showed their support for the brand as a means of showcasing the TFCAs in the SADC region.

The development of the joint brand is based on the motivation that the 2010 Soccer World Cup tournament will not only benefit South Africa alone but the SADC region and Africa as a whole.

The purpose of the TFCA development strategy for 2010 and beyond is to increase the tourism potential of southern Africa by consolidating the market, infrastructure-development and investment-promotion efforts of existing transfrontier conservation initiatives.

The brand is a reflection of the values of the TFCAs and it will form the basis for awareness-raising campaigns and for the active marketing of TFCAs.

Biosphere reserves

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

Biosphere reserves, including outstanding natural beauty and biological diversity, exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners, and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

South Africa's four biospheres are the:

- Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, which was registered with the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) in 1998
- Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve, which covers 376 900 ha that include a number of threatened vegetation types and important bird-breeding sites
- Waterberg Biosphere Reserve in Limpopo, which covers 1,4 million ha that include the Marakele National Park and the Nylsvlei Ramsar Site
- Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve, which covers more than 3,3 million ha that span the boundary between Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

The core areas of the Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve comprise 13 declared protected areas, with a major portion of the Kruger National Park as the largest core area.

> On 22 September 2008, the South African National Parks (SANParks) officially launched the 2008 week-long celebration of access to parks by South Africans, namely the SANParks Week. Access to most parks was free from 22 to 26 September.
>
> This concept was launched in 2006 to encourage all South Africans to visit national parks.
>
> The objective of SANParks Week is to cultivate a culture of pride in all South Africans in their relationship with the country's natural, cultural and historical heritage, under the established theme *"Know Your National Parks"*. The feature element of the project is free access to all South African day visitors during this week (especially people from communities around the parks) carrying an official identity document, while scholars and young persons under 16 years of age are allowed entry without proof of identity.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

By September 2008, there were 878 world heritage sites in 145 countries. A total of 174 were natural sites, 679 were cultural sites and 25 were mixed sites.

The South Africa World Heritage Convention Committee is responsible for identifying possible world heritage sites in South Africa and co-ordinating the convention. The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), allows for cultural and natural sites in South Africa to be granted world heritage status. The convention obliges the South African Government to guarantee its implementation, ensure legal protection, and develop management plans and institutional structures for periodic monitoring.

The Act makes the principles of the convention applicable to South Africa's world heritage sites, and further provides for the adequate protection and conservation of these sites to promote tourism in a culturally and environmentally responsible way.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco, namely Robben Island; the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park; the hominid sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai (known as the Cradle of Humankind); the Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site); the Mapungubwe Heritage Site; the Cape Floral Kingdom; the Vredefort Dome; and the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.

The Vredefort Dome is an ancient extraterrestrial impact site spanning the Free State and North West provinces. Formed two billion years ago, it is the world's most ancient meteorite impact site and the third-largest, measuring 140 km across.

The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo.

The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils, evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years.

Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are captured in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago.

Although other sites in south and east Africa have similar remains, the cradle has produced more than 950 hominid fossil specimens. The R347-million Cradle of Humankind development, initiated by the Gauteng Provincial Government, is the first public-private partnership of its kind in South Africa. The aim is to develop and manage the world heritage site as a premier tourist destination.

Other partners include the University of the Witwatersrand, which owns the Sterkfontein caves and is the major excavator of the cradle site.

The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape was declared a world heritage site in June 2007. It covers an area of 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west part of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or lharu oms.

Southern Africa's transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs) have packaged 53 investment opportunities in the various countries. They range from small and medium lodge type developments to multimillion rand developments such as the Kavango-Zambesi Waterfront Development.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism hosted an investment conference on behalf of the nine Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries (Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe) in October 2008. The key objective of the conference was to market a portfolio of uniquely packaged tourism investment opportunities in the seven existing TFCAs to potential investors.

The conference provided a platform for potential investors to meet and network with product owners, government authorities and decision-makers. It was aimed at private and institutional investors, property developers, investment-holding companies, hotel-management groups, commercial and investment banks, conservation agencies and donor organisations focusing on the:

- overview of the current investment climate, specifically pertaining to southern Africa
- investment opportunities in the TFCAs
- tender processes for each of the countries.

Habitat- and wildlife-management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and are managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

Through the *National Wetland Inventory*, South Africa has identified 120 000 wetlands, which cover 7% of the country's surface area.

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs and fens to midland marshes, swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of streambank wetlands.

South Africa became a contracting party to the Ramsar Convention in 1975. The country's Ramsar sites include Nylsvley Nature Reserve, Blesbokspruit, Barberspan, Seekoeivlei, Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Ndumo Game Reserve, the Kosi Bay System, Lake Sibaya, the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland, the St Lucia System, Wilderness lakes, De Hoop Vlei, De Mond State Forest, Langebaan, Verlorenvlei, the Orange River Mouth Wetland and the Makuleke Wetland.

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

The Directorate: Biodiversity Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme. The programme ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

The programme aims to protect wetlands in South Africa against degradation and destruction, while striving for the ideal in wise and sustainable use of resources, to ensure that the ecological and socio-economic functions of wetlands are sustained for the future.

South Africa is a member of Wetlands International, an international body dedicated to conserving the world's wetlands.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation; support for SMMEs; and transfer of skills to the beneficiaries of the programme's projects.

The programme contributes directly to the objectives of the EPWP and constitutes a partnership between the departments of environmental affairs and tourism, of water affairs and forestry, and of agriculture. It is managed by Sanbi.

World Wetlands Day marks the date of the signing of the Convention of Wetlands on 2 February 1971 in the Iranian city of Ramsar. The theme for World Wetlands Day 2008 was *Healthy Wetlands, Healthy People*.

Zoological Gardens

Founded in 1899, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is the only zoo in South Africa with national status and membership of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums, the African Association of Zoological Gardens, the International Union of Zooculturists and the International Association of Zoo Educators.

The NZG of South Africa is a proud facility of the NRF. The NRF is a government agency responsible for supporting and promoting research, and providing research facilities to encourage the creation of knowledge, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. (See chapter 17:*Science and technology*.) The 85-ha zoo in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species. These figures comprise the animals housed at the zoo in Pretoria as well as at the two biodiversity-conservation centres in Lichtenburg, in the North West, and Mokopane, in Limpopo, and the satellite zoo and animal park at the Emerald Animal World complex in Vanderbijlpark.

The NZG is the largest zoo in the country. More than 600 000 people visit the zoo annually. The total length of its walkways in the zoo in Pretoria is about 6 km.

An aquarium and reptile park also form part of the zoo facility in Pretoria. The aquarium is the largest inland marine aquarium in the country.

The third-largest collection of exotic trees can be found at the zoo.

In 2001, the NZG established the 203-ha Emerald Animal World housed at the Emerald Casino in Vanderbijlpark. The facility comprises a 189-ha game park and a 14-ha zoo.

The Emerald Animal World facility houses more than 760 animals representing 127 species of mammals, birds and reptiles. Animals that can be viewed there include white rhinoceros, hippopotamus, lion, cheetah, giraffe, various antelope and reptile species, and Cape fur seals. Most of the animals were provided by the national zoo's

Many wetland plants have great medicinal value. In South Africa, traditional medicine is the preferred primary healthcare choice for about 70% of people. Wetlands provide some of the 19 500 tons of medicinal plant material, which are used by 28 million South Africans every year.

biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens, or Johannesburg Zoo, celebrated its centenary in 2004. The core business of Johannesburg Zoo, which is registered as a non-profit company, is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It is also renowned for its successful breeding programmes involving several endangered South African bird species such as the wattled crane and ground hornbill. The zoo covers 54 ha and houses more than 2 000 animals from 365 species.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Makopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering an area of 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the zoo's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and the zoo's own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhinoceros, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

> The world's oldest map of Africa was commemorated in Cape Town on 25 August 2008. The Montalboddo Fracan map of Africa is 500 years old. It was first published in Milan in 1508 and is the first known map of Africa printed as a separate continent. It was first printed in a book compiled by Italian monk Fracanzano Montalboddo. While modern-day maps are much more accurate and contain more information, it is through the Montalboddo Fracan map that Africa as a continent was first recognised and given an identity.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre, situated near Pretoria, is best known for its highly successful captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list of the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species. The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation of coat patterns and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs. It has donated breeding nucleuses of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Mpumalanga was initially established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah. Following the success of the cheetah-breeding programme, it has evolved into a breeding programme for other endangered African animal species. The centre caters for, among other things, five species of vulture: Cape griffins, and white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild-dog-breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme also includes the rare black-footed cat, the vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in co-operation with the NZG in Pretoria), bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, Sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquaria

There are well-known aquaria in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town and Durban.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish. It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin-research centre, various smaller tanks of 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London has a smaller aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

UShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World incorporates a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium (the largest dolphinarium in Africa).

It also offers edutainment tours and special interactive activities such as snorkelling and scuba diving. In addition, it features a rocky touch-pool, where visitors can touch a starfish or sea cucumber with the help of specially trained guides.

Snake parks

The Transvaal Snake Park in Midrand, between Pretoria and Johannesburg, houses up to 150 species of snakes and other reptiles and amphibians from southern Africa and elsewhere. The emphasis is on the development of breeding programmes for animals in captivity.

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers.

Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed safely in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park situated at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

Marine resources

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past 10 years.

The Integrated Coastal Management Bill will replace the Seashore Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935). The Bill also replaces the Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980), and introduces, for the first time, a comprehensive national system for planning and managing South Africa's spectacular and valuable coastal areas.

The purpose of the National Coastal Management Bill is to:

- provide a legal and administrative framework that will promote co-operative, co-ordinated and integrated coastal development
- preserve, protect and enhance the status of the coastal environment as the heritage that belongs to all
- ensure coastal resources are managed in the interest of the whole community
- ensure there is equitable access to the opportunities and benefits derived from the coast
- give effect to certain of South Africa's international legal obligations.

This Bill declares the seashore, coastal waters (including estuaries) and South Africa's territorial seas to be coastal public property. It therefore also requires the State to act as the trustee of coastal public property.

New fisheries

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has completed the allocation of long-term commercial fishing rights of eight to 15 years in 20 fishing sectors. Out of more than 8 000 applicants for fishing rights, 2 480 were granted long-term fishing rights, with 59% of these being Black Economic Empowerment-compliant. By mid-2008, a performance review process of the commercial fishery rights allocation was underway and draft policies on the transfer of commercial fishing rights and allocation of large pelagics had been published. To complete the allocation process, the department is working on a revised Policy on Subsistence/Small-Scale Fisheries.

Aquaculture

Marine aquaculture is an integral part of the department's strategy to diversify the fishing industry. In 2007, the department published the first-ever marine aquaculture policy for South Africa. The policy aims to create an enabling environment that includes transforming and broadening participation in the industry through small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) initiatives and facilitating finance and skills development.

The policies are also intended to improve the management and control of environmental impacts and increase the resource base to include a more diverse suite of species.

Poaching and environmental changes have led to declines in the natural abalone population. This has led to the closure of the wild abalone commercial fishery. The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has identified that abalone ranching can play an important role in enhancing depleted abalone stocks. Furthermore, jobs could be created within the communities adjacent to areas identified to be suitable for ranching.

Over the past couple of years, abalone farming has developed rapidly and production levels are now in the order of about 1 000 tons. With the increase in the availability of abalone spat, various ranching experiments have been initiated, mainly near Port Nolloth along the West Coast and, on a smaller scale, at Cape Recife along the East Coast.

Areas for abalone ranching have been identified from Port Nolloth in the Northern Cape to Hamburg in the Eastern Cape. The department has therefore developed guidelines on abalone ranching and stock enhancement.

In February 2008, regulations concerning diving restrictions were gazetted. These regulations form part of a suite of actions aimed at protecting wild abalone resources.

These regulations indicated the department's intention to ban diving in five areas of the coastline, comprising three islands (Robben Island, Dyer Island and Bird Island) and two coastal areas, from Gansbaai to Quoin Point and at Cape Point. The proposal for a diving ban is an essential component of the strategy to protect abalone in certain key areas where the stock is most likely to recover. The proposed areas were also assessed in terms of their importance to recreational users, in particular scuba divers and scuba-diving businesses, spear fishers and recreational West Coast rock lobster fishers.

Furthermore, any person who wishes to undertake any of the following activities can apply for a permit to engage in diving or be in possession of prohibited gear in the listed areas:

- scientific research and monitoring
- white shark-cage diving
- commercial kelp harvesting
- sea ranching
- salvage operations
- maintenance of legal underwater infrastructure
- any other activity authorised in terms of legislation.

The gazetting of the regulations coincided with the implementation of the emergency suspension of the abalone fishery on 1 February 2008.

4x4 regulations

Following the successful implementation of the 4x4 regulations that provide for the controlled use of off-road vehicles in coastal zones, the monitoring of certain stretches of coast has indicated that the banning of off-road vehicles has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches once more.

According to conservationists from Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife, the number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on the beaches of northern KwaZulu-Natal has also increased since the ban was enforced.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism approved the final policies for boat-based whale watching (BBWW) and white shark-cage diving (WSCD), which were gazetted in June 2008. The gazetting will also serve as a call for applications for the allocation of permits during 2008. These are fast-growing industries that have the potential to generate considerable socio-economic benefits for coastal communities and operators, while providing educational benefits for the participants.

There are nine authorised BBWW operators and 12 authorised WSCD operators who are each restricted to operating one vessel. The department intends to increase this in the new rights-allocation process. Permits will be allocated from Port Nolloth to Sodwana Bay in the BBWW sector while the attraction of white sharks for the purposes of cage diving and surface viewing will be limited to Seal and Dyer Island, Quoin Point, Seal Island in Mossel Bay and Algoa Bay in the Port Elizabeth area. The overall goal of these policies is to provide a proper regulatory framework, to grow these industries and to advance transformation and Black Economic Empowerment.

Interpretive and Informative Marine and Coastal Signage Programme

As part of its education and training programme, the department seeks to raise awareness in coastal areas. Following extensive consultation, more than 90 different-themed interpretive and informative boards were developed and erected at beaches all along the coastline after the reproduction of more than 1 000 copies. These are valuable tools for increasing coastal and marine-environment awareness among beach visitors.

Adopt-a-Beach

The Adopt-a-Beach Programme was initiated to encourage groups of people to adopt or help look after a piece of coast in their region and link with others as part of a national project. Adopt-a-Beach is part of the overall Coastcare Programme and contributes towards the implementation of the awareness, education and training goals of the *White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa (2000)*. More than 250 groups have been registered and are being supported by the department.

Blue Flag Programme

Blue Flag is an international annual award given to beaches that meet excellence in the areas of safety, amenities, cleanliness and environmental standards.

South Africa is the first country outside Europe to win Blue Flag accreditation for its beaches.

The Blue Flag beaches for 2008/09 were:

In the Eastern Cape:

- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Hobie Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- King's Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Wells Estate, north of Port Elizabeth

In KwaZulu-Natal:

- Hibberdene Beach, south coast
- Margate Beach, south coast
- Marina / San Lameer Beach, south coast
- Ramsgate Main Beach, south coast

In the Western Cape:

- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Clifton Fourth Beach, Cape Town
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town

Contracting parties to the Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Region, the Abidjan Convention, met in South Africa on 10 June 2008 to strengthen strategies in response to increasing challenges marine and coastal environments are faced with.

The Abidjan Convention area covers some of the most productive coastal and marine ecosystems in the world, rich in oil, gas and mineral resources and with a great potential for tourism. The coastal zones of the convention area are hubs for intense socio-economic activities, centres of human settlements, transport and industrial and commercial activities. New threats have emerged, in particular invasive alien species and climate change and with it ocean acidification.

- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town

According to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, a further 16 South African beaches are piloting the Blue Flag programme with the aim of achieving full accreditation in 2009 or 2010.

Conservation challenges

South Africa faces many of the problems experienced by developing countries, in which rapid industrialisation, population growth and urbanisation pose a threat to the quality of the environment. The department is reforming environmental law to introduce reform in biodiversity conservation, pollution, waste management and environmental planning.

Urban environmental management

South Africa is an urbanised economy with 58% of the population living in cities and towns. By 2015, it is expected that 68% of the population will live in urban areas due to continued migration from rural areas mainly to the larger cities, which will lead to many environmental challenges in South Africa's cities.

The launch of the five-year Danish-funded Urban Environmental Management Programme (UEMP) in June 2006 marked a milestone in environmental co-operation between Denmark and South Africa. With their latest donation of R275 million, Denmark passed the R1-billion mark in donations made towards improving environmental quality in South Africa. Five key municipalities have been chosen as pilots for this programme, namely Cape Town, Durban, Ekurhuleni, South African waters are of global importance for conserving seabirds. With a total of over 28 albatross and petrel species recorded caught by South African fisheries, the South African seas are an important feeding ground for many albatrosses and petrels. Thirteen of these recorded species are currently threatened with extinction, resulting from several factors, such as the deterioration of breeding habitats targeted hunting and fishing operations.

South Africa's sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands hold 44% of the world population of wandering albatrosses and 21% of the global population of Indian yellow-nosed albatrosses. Surveys show that the numbers of African penguins breeding in the Western Cape have decreased by about 70% in the past four years, and the overall population of the species is presently at its lowest recorded level.

It is within this context that South Africa launched the National Plan of Action for reducing the incidental catch of seabirds in longline fisheries (NPoA seabirds) at the official opening of the international meeting of the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels. Launching the NPoA seabirds demonstrates South Africa's continued commitment to conservation and management of seabirds in a sustainable and responsible manner.

Johannesburg and Sedibeng (Vaal Triangle). The three provincial partners are Gauteng, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Some R85 million has been earmarked for direct support to these cities, with a reserve for other "hotspots" in future. People living in air-pollution hotspots such as the Vaal Triangle and South Durban can expect noticeable improvements over the next five years.

It is expected that the UEMP will lead to an improvement in the quality of life of nearly two million poor households in these five municipalities, whose health is affected by inadequate waste removal, and poor air quality and planning. It will contribute to economic growth by assisting cities to develop energy strategies and IDPs. The professional development of environmental health officers will also receive special attention.

Climate and atmospheric change

The South African Government launched its Long-Term Mitigation Scenario (LTMS) process on climate change in 2006. Findings and policy recommendations based on the LTMS were presented by stakeholders from government, business, civil society and labour, to the Cabinet at its Lekgotla held in July 2008.

Government's vision and the implementation of this policy framework will be the insurance policy current and future generations will have against the potentially devastating impacts of climate change. By adopting this strategic direction, South Africa takes a leading position in the developing world and demonstrates it is ready to shoulder its fair share of responsibility as part of an effective global response.

The international negotiations on strengthening the climate regime after 2012 gained significant momentum at the talks in Bali in December 2007.

This process will conclude in Copenhagen at the end of 2009. South Africa's LTMS process also establishes parameters for its post-2012 negotiating positions.

Government has outlined its vision for climate policy in the following terms:

- in designing the policy for the transition to a climate-resilient and low-carbon economy and society, the mitigation and adaptation response will be balanced
- the climate response policy, built on six pillars, will be informed by what is required by science, namely to limit global temperature increase to 2°C above pre-industrial levels.

The six policy-direction themes are:

- greenhouse gas emission (GHG) reductions and limits
- building on, strengthening and/or scaling up current initiatives
- implementing the Government's "Business Unusual" Call for Action in 2008
- preparing for the future
- vulnerability and adaptation
- alignment, co-ordination and co-operation.

Milestones will include a national summit in February 2009, the conclusion of international negotiations at the end of 2009 and a final domestic policy to be adopted by the end of 2010 after international negotiations have been completed.

The process will culminate in the introduction of a legislative, regulatory and fiscal package to

South Africa's national environment campaign, Indalo Yethu, was lauched in 2007. Meaning "Our Environment, Our Place and Our Future", Indalo Yethu is a legacy project of the World Summit on Sustainable Development, which was held in South Africa in 2002.

give effect to the strategic direction and policy from now up to 2012.

Erosion and desertification

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of the total land area of South Africa is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa. The Department of Agriculture administers the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), in terms of which various measures are being implemented to prevent or contain soil erosion.

In January 1995, South Africa signed the Convention to Combat Desertification, which was ratified on 30 September 1997. The main objectives of the convention include co-operation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The convention aims to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as co-ordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification. The group consists of countries in the southern hemisphere, namely Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, South Africa and Brazil, whose aim it is, to among other things, foster scientific and technological co-operation.

The country has introduced legislation such as the Biodiversity Act, 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Waste management

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has prioritised four projects within the framework of the National Waste Management Strategy. They are:

- recycling
- a waste-information system
- healthcare waste
- capacity-building.

Central to these are pilot projects that are being set up countrywide. The department welcomes partnerships with business to ensure that these projects are successful and become a core of better waste management in South Africa.

In 2008, the National Environment Management: Waste Bill was put before Parliament.

Government aims to reduce the amount of "big five" wastes – plastics, cans, paper, glass and tyres – that reach landfills by 70% by 2022 and to minimisie and treat the remaining 30%. National initiatives embarked on to realise the goal of zero waste include agreements signed by government and members of priority waste-stream sectors such as the manufacturers of plastic bags and the waste-glass industry, and a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) with the waste-tyre sector.

An agreement containing regulations governing plastic shopping bags was signed in September 2002 by the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and representatives from various labour and business organisations.

The agreement, which came into effect on 9 May 2003, stipulates that the thickness of plastic bags be 30 microns. However, manufacturers were allowed to continue using their existing machinery to make bags of 24-micron thickness for the following five years before having to comply with the 30-micron standard.

The agreement states that printing will only be allowed on 25% of the surface area of plastic bags if the ink is not environmentally friendly. In situations where the ink is acceptable, this area can be increased to 50%. The department has a toll-free line to deal with queries about plastic bags.

The plastic-bags agreement and supporting regulations have dramatically decreased the environmental impact of this highly visible waste stream, with a 50% reduction in the consumption of plastic bags since the introduction of the regulations.

As part of the implementation of the plastic bag regulations, Buyisa-e-Bag, a non-profit company, was set up to promote waste minimisation and awareness initiatives in the plastics industry. The company is expected to expand collector networks and to create jobs, as well as to kick-start rural collection SMMEs and create additional capacity in NGOs.

Work is in progress to follow this success with targeted and customised agreements in respect of other problem waste streams, including tyres and glass. The compliance and enforcement of the regulations have been assigned to the South African Bureau of Standards.

The Radioactive Waste Management Policy, which assures citizens that there is a nuclear waste-management plan and strategy, is being implemented, starting with the creation of the National Committee on Radioactive Waste Management.

The National Radioactive Waste Management Agency Bill was approved by Cabinet in April 2008.

During the processing of the Bill, it was agreed between the department and the Parliamentary Portfolio Committee that the title of the National Radioactive Waste Management Agency be changed to the National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI).

The objects of the Bill are to:

- provide for the establishment of the NRWDI
- manage radioactive waste disposal nationally
- manage its functions effectively
- regulate staff matters
- manage all relevant functions.

The establishment of the institute will allow the operators/generators to focus on their core business. However, the generators will remain financially responsible for the disposal of the waste.

This institute will be solely responsible for handling radioactive waste disposal, predisposal management and storage at the disposal site.

Water-quality management

The Directorate: Water-Quality Management of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is responsible for the quality management of national water resources in South Africa.

Water-quality management involves maintaining water resources for use on a sustained basis, by achieving a balance between socio-economic development and environmental protection. From a regulatory point of view, water-quality management entails the ongoing process of planning, developing, implementing and administering water-quality management policy; authorising water uses that have, or potentially have, an impact on water quality; as well as the monitoring and auditing of the aforementioned.

The National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), further enables the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry to manage water quality through source-directed and resource-directed measures. Source-directed measures include the issuing of licences to water users with a potential impact on the resource.

The Act requires that all significant water resources be classified in accordance with the prescribed classification system. (See Chapter 22: *Water affairs and forestry*.)

Air pollution

The National Environment Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), was promulgated in 2005. The Act, which repealed the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 (Act 45 of 1965), gives effect to an integrated pollution and waste-management policy to ensure that all South Africans have access to clean air.

In 2007, as part of implementing the Air Quality Act, 2004, registration certificates issued in terms of the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 were reviewed.

To this effect, it has prioritised the key sectors whose permits require review. These include the petrochemical sector (seven operations); primary steel manufacture (nine operations); primary aluminium production (two operations); ferro-alloy industries, specifically chromium, vanadium and manganese (ferro-silicon) production (27 to 30 operations); pulp and paper industries (nine operations); and coal-fired power stations (national grid) (20 operations).

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has made significant strides in addressing air-pollution problems. In addition to the Durban Multipoint Plan for Air-Quality Management, it has declared the Vaal Triangle air-shed as a priority area requiring urgent intervention by government and all stakeholders. It has established an air-quality monitoring system in the area, and six air-quality monitoring stations have been procured and installed to generate data. Air-quality monitoring stations were also launched in the Highveld Priority Area in August 2008.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing, recovering or stabilising the spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

The department established the National Ballast Water-Management Task Group to develop measures aimed at regulating discharges of ballast water in South Africa's marine and coastal waters.

Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme (SCLP)

The SCLP seeks alternative livelihood options for communities along the South African coast to minimise pressure on marine resources.

Subsistence fishing

The implementation of the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998), has facilitated the allocation of formal rights to fishers in this sector for the first time.

It is an important part of the overall transformation of fisheries in South Africa. A primary goal is to allow subsistence fishers to obtain their food, or food security, through the harvesting of local resources. Consequently, the need to ensure that exploitation is sustainable is vital.

Identifying and working with fishing communities to promote orderly access has been emphasised. Implementation involves co-operation between all spheres of government and civil society.

From a total of 50 commercially exploitable line fish species in South Africa, 19 have collapsed. South Africa has over 200 species with a substantial number of species endemic, which places even greater responsibility to ensure the sustainability and survival of the species.

Scientists estimate that globally, 75% of global fish stocks are either exploited at maximum levels or are overexploited. It takes up to 10 years for a single fish to mature reproductively.

Protecting South Africa's seas

To counter illegal activities along the 3 000-km coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers (FCOs) and 100 honorary FCOs, after the implementation of the Honorary FCO Policy. The department has also taken delivery of four new environmental-protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources.

Three of the four new protection vessels, *Lillian Ngoyi*, *Ruth First* and *Victoria Mxenge*, have been built to patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore. A fourth vessel, *Sarah Baartman*, patrols the most remote reaches of the EEZ and around the Prince Edward islands in the Southern Ocean. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the SADC coastal states.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that it can monitor their movements. Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. South Africa, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique and Tanzania have signed an MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Partnerships

To further counter illegal fishing and corruption, the department entered into partnerships with a broad spectrum of agencies, including national, provincial and local government, as well as NGOs.

Co-operation ensures that resources are used more effectively, resulting in a number of high-profile prosecutions and convictions.

Other important partnerships have been forged with specialised units of the South African Police Service. In addition, SANParks and a number of provincial nature-conservation agencies conduct monitoring, control and surveillance activities within the MPAs.

Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management (EAFM)

In line with the JPoI, the department has begun to explore implementation of the EAFM.

The purpose of the EAFM is to plan, develop and manage fisheries in a manner that addresses the multiplicity of societal needs and desires, without jeopardising the options for future generations to benefit from the full range of goods and services (including fisheries and recreational opportunities) provided by marine ecosystems.

Good progress has been made through national and regional initiatives in implementing practical measures to mitigate the negative effects of fisheries on the ecosystem.

Transboundary research collaborations

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has launched a project (as part of a regional initiative) to investigate the feasibility of an EAFM in the Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME) region, by examining the existing issues, problems and needs related to EAFM, and developing different management options to achieve sustainable management of resources at an ecosystem level.

The BCLME programme is a management-orientated programme aimed at boosting the infrastructure necessary to address cross-boundary problems associated with fishing, mining, oil exploration, coastal development, biodiversity and pollution.

Another programme implemented by the department is the scientific arm of BCLME, the Benguela Fisheries Interaction Training (Benefit) Programme.

Benefit is a joint initiative between South Africa, Namibia and Angola to address fisheries and other marine scientific investigations of important living marine resources and their interactions with the environment. Training staff to undertake research and to achieve the levels of expertise necessary to provide advice to fisheries' management is also an important objective of Benefit.

Both the BCLME and the Benefit programmes are seen as Nepad initiatives, and are supported by SADC as regional projects.

West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project (WIO-LaB)

The WIO-LaB Project deals with the protection, prevention and management of marine pollution from land-based activities.

Commitment was given to this project by the main donors, the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) and the GEF. The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is assessing the effect that litter from rivers has on the oceans, is raising awareness of and educating communities about the importance of protecting the marine environment from pollution resulting from land-based activities, and has created task teams to deal with municipal water and the physical alteration and destruction of habitats.

South Africa has joined several countries across the world in promoting the "eco-village" idea, which focuses on low-impact and sustainable living.

The idea is the vision of One Planet Living – a joint venture between the World Wide Fund for Nature and the British environmental organisation BioRegional.

South Africa's first eco-village will be situated in Sibaya, north of Durban in KwaZulu-Natal. The village will be built on a 885-ha site owned by one of the largest developers in South Africa, Tongaat Hulett Developments. Five thousand homes will be built on this land.

The eco-village concept is based on 10 guiding principles of sustainability, which include eradicating carbon-dioxide emissions; energy efficiency; recycling; sustainable transport systems, which cut dependency on fossil fuels; making use of locally sourced materials and food to boost local economies; adhering to fair trade relationships; promoting biodiversity and preserving local cultural heritage; and endorsing physical, mental and spiritual well-being.

National Policy for Seals and Seabirds

The National Policy for Seals and Seabirds in South Africa and the National Plan of Action for Seabirds, aimed at reducing the incidental catch of seabirds in longline fisheries, have been finalised.

This follows growing concern over the numbers of seabirds, especially albatrosses, being killed by longline vessels in southern Africa. The plan sets out the required mitigation measures to reduce mortality of seabirds to below an interim target level of 0,05 birds/thousand hooks by South Africa's longline fisheries for hake, tuna, swordfish, Patagonian toothfish and sharks.

South Africa ratified the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP) in November 2003. It is a multilateral agreement that seeks to conserve albatrosses and petrels by co-ordinating international activity to mitigate known threats to albatross and petrel populations. South Africa played a key role in negotiating the ACAP, and is home to many important populations of these seabirds, including those on the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands.

Research observer scheme

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism introduced a formal research observer scheme for the following fisheries: deep sea hake trawl; inshore hake trawl; hake longline; pelagic purse seine; South Coast rock lobster; KwaZulu-Natal prawn trawl; large pelagics (experimental); horse mackerel midwater trawl; and deep sea experimental fisheries. This observer scheme provides valuable research data on, among other things, the influence these fisheries have on the ecosystem.

Chemicals

Although relatively small by international standards, the chemical industry is a significant player in the South African economy.

Several steps have been taken to align current legislation with the Constitution of the Republic of

South Africa, 1996, as well as with global chemicals management:

- A special unit has been set up in the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to implement a system aimed at preventing major industrial accidents, as well as systems for emergency preparedness and response.
- The department has initiated an integrated safety, health and environment approach for the management of chemicals in South Africa. This government-level initiative, funded by the UN Institute for Training and Research, will involve a multistakeholder forum, including labour representatives, aimed at integrating legislation.

South Africa has signed the Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants and the Rotterdam Convention on Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade. It also played a part in the process of developing guidelines for the implementation of the Globally Harmonised System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals.

Recycling

The Department of Trade and Industry held a recycling study consultative workshop in Midrand in September 2008. The purpose of the workshop was to:

- better understand business-related challenges
- provide guidance about the current and potential size of the industry
- design SMME incentives
- create employment opportunities.

The project was in line with the department's responsibility of meeting the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) objective to halve poverty and unemployment by 2014 through recycling.

The Deputy Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Rejoice Mabudafhasi launched the Cleaner Fires Campaign, "Basa Njengo Magogo" in Sebokeng in July 2008. Communities using coal as a primary energy source who live near national priority areas that emit hazardous gases, particularly the Vaal Triangle Air-Shed Priority Area, will acquire the new cleaner fire-making methodology called Basa Njengo Magogo, which will drastically reduce coal-induced monozide. This is a joint multistakeholder campaign featuring participants such as the Department of Minerals and Energy, the Department of Health, Sasol, Eskom, Anglo Coal, City of Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni Municipality, Sedibeng District Municipality and the Central Energy Fund.

Since Collect-a-Can was established in 1993, the recycling company has supported Earth Day, with more than 750 000 tons of used beverage cans being recovered and recycled. Collect-a-Can is a joint venture between ArcelorMittal South Africa, which is Africa's major steel producer and producer of tinplate for food and beverage cans and Africa's largest packaging company and beverage can producer, Nampak.

Collect-a-Can annually embarks on various projects which run throughout the year. The biggest project is the schools' competition, a project which aims to encourage, educate and inform children on the importance of a clean environment and how such an environment can be achieved through recycling waste like used beverage cans. The company works within the community to support recycling initiatives and has a strong commitment to socio-economic empowerment.

Environmental injustices

The negative effect of asbestos on the environment and other environmental-injustice issues are a priority for the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. The South African Government has undertaken the following to address the asbestos issue:

- eradicating mine dumps
- developing occupational health and safety regulations on asbestos
- developing safety standards and establishing a single compensation office
- formulating a code of best practice for the maintenance, demolition and disposal of asbestos-containing material
- abolishing the use of asbestos in road construction
- gradually phasing out asbestos use in housing.

The Regulations for the Prohibition of the Use, Manufacturing, Import and Export of Asbestos and Asbestos Containing Materials, which form part of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), were promulgated on 28 March 2008. A grace period of 120 days was allowed for any person or merchant dealing in asbestos or asbestos-containing material to clear their stocks.

The objectives of the new regulations are to prohibit the use, processing and manufacturing, of any asbestos or asbestos-containing product unless it can be proven that no suitable alternative exists. The regulations do, however, provide for asbestos to be used for research purposes. Exposure to asbestos in the workplace, including mining, industrial, commercial, retail and public workplaces, as well as the maintenance of building material, is still controlled by the Asbestos Regulations of 2001 published by the Department of Labour. These require employers to draw up a register of all asbestos-containing material, conduct a risk assessment, educate and inform employees, protect employees from exposure to asbestos and conduct regular dust and health surveillance.

International co-operation

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism promotes South Africa's interests by participating in a number of international commissions, such as the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas, the Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources, and the International Whaling Commission.

The following important instruments have been acceded to, or ratified:

- Agreement for the Implementation of the Provisions of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea on 10 December 1982 relating to the Conservation and Management of Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks (Straddling Stocks Agreement)
- ACAP
- Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the East African Region and Related Protocols (Nairobi Convention)
- Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Region and Related Protocol (Abidjan Convention).

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCC)

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The convention is a global commitment to take collective responsibility for climate change, and is a mandate for action to address the problem.

The convention was signed at the Rio Earth Summit in 1992 by heads of state and other senior representatives from 154 countries (and the European Community), and came into effect on 21 March 1994.

Since mid-1998, some 175 states have ratified or acceded to the convention.

The objective of the convention is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will not have an adverse effect on the climate.

The convention aims to control this level over a period of time, to:

- allow ecosystems to adapt naturally to climate change
- ensure that food production is not threatened
- enable economic development to proceed in a sustainable manner.

All countries that have ratified the convention are required to:

- develop, update and publish national inventories of anthropogenic emissions by sources, and removals by sinks of GHG (the GHG excludes those listed in the Montreal Protocol)
- formulate, implement and update national and regional programmes containing measures to mitigate climate change
- promote and co-operate in the development and transfer of technology that controls, reduces or prevents anthropogenic emissions of GHG
- promote sustainable management, conservation and enhancement of sinks and reservoirs of GHG
- co-operate in preparing for the adaptation to the impact of climate change
- take climate-change considerations into account where feasible, in relevant social, economic and environmental policies and actions, to minimise the adverse effects of climate change on the economy, on public health and on the quality of the environment
- promote and co-operate in the timeous and transparent exchange of information, including scientific, technological, socio-economic and legal information and research
- promote and co-operate in education, training and public awareness
- report to the Conference of the Parties.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites)

Cites, also known as the Washington Convention, was negotiated in 1973 when it was realised that international trade in wildlife and wildlife products could lead to the overexploitation of certain species, thereby threatening them with extinction.

Cites came into force in South Africa on 13 October 1975. South Africa, together with the other 149 member countries, acts by regulating and monitoring international trade in species which are, or may be, affected by this trade.

Montreal Protocol

South Africa became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990 and has a national obligation to safeguard the ozone layer from depletion. South Africa has phased out chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride–making it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

To demonstrate the country's commitment towards the phasing out of ozone-depleting substances (ODS), the following control measures constitute the overall position of South Africa on the Montreal Protocol:

- working groups were constituted to assist government in implementing the protocol
- regulated ODS can only be imported or exported after applying for an import/export permit through the Department of Trade and Industry under the Import and Export Control Act, 1963 (Act 45 of 1963)
- ODS can only be imported after an environmental levy of R5 per kg of CFC has been paid
- information is disseminated to interested and affected parties
- Africa network meetings, as arranged by the UNEP, are attended, where views, experiences and problems are shared to improve co-operation within the region and as per Nepad requirements.

Obligations include:

- ensuring that South Africa, as a party to the protocol, protects human health and the environment against harm from human activities that modify or are likely to modify the ozone layer
- ensuring the protection of the ozone layer by taking precautionary measures to equitably control total global emissions of substances that deplete the ozone layer, with the ultimate objective of totally eliminating them
- reporting and sending to the Ozone Secretariat data on production, imports, exports and consumption of regulated ODS as collected from dealers and relevant departments.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has embarked on a national project to establish methyl bromide consumption trends, and a database of suitable, feasible and economically viable alternatives to methyl bromide.

This document will form the basis for an intensive research/evaluation project to phase out, in the short term, 20% of methyl bromide usage, mainly in the agricultural sector. As of 1 January 2005, all developing countries were to have reduced their respective methyl bromide consumption by 20%, as per the phase-out timetable.

Private-sector involvement

Numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. There are more than 400 organisations in the country concentrating on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, as well as more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations.

Among these are:

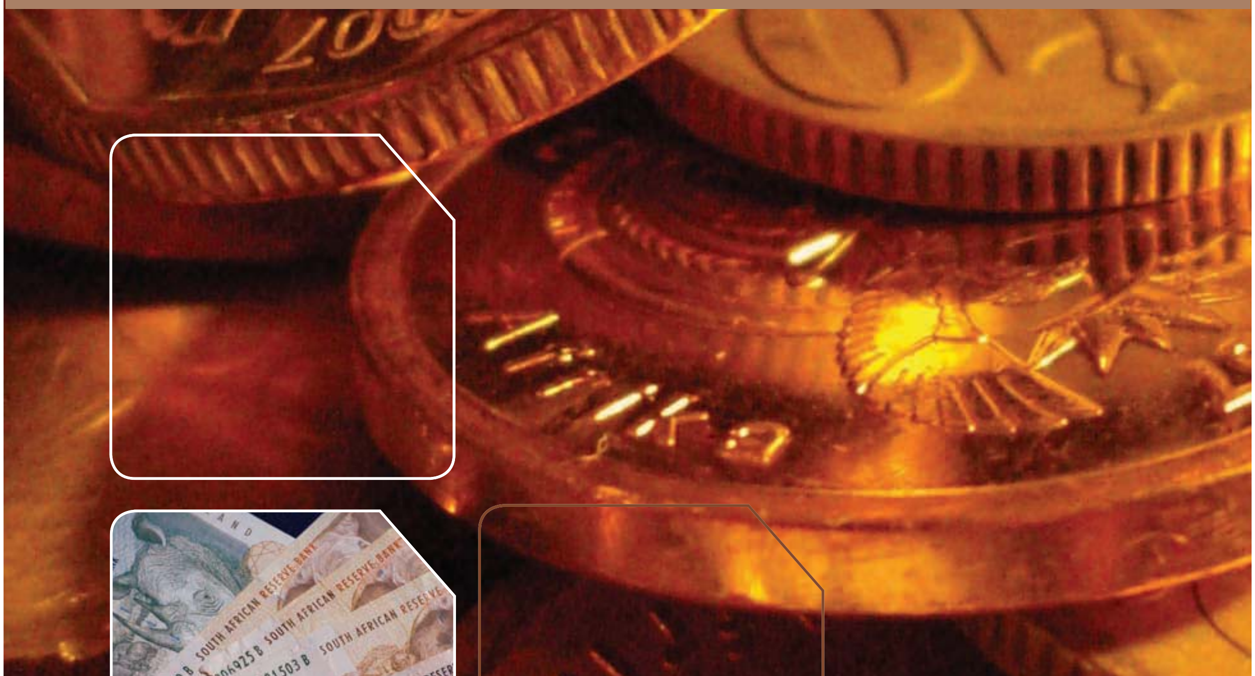
- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- South African National Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- WWF-SA.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Beeld
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
South African National Biodiversity Institute
South African National Parks
www.southafrica.info
www.collectacan.co.za
www.gov.za
www.nzg.ac.za

Suggested reading

Bakkes, C. *In Bushveld and Desert: A Game Ranger's Life*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 2008.
Bryden, B. *Game Ranger Remembers*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.
Cock, J. *The War Against Ourselves: Environmental Justice in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Fig, D. *Staking their Claims: Corporate Social and Environmental Responsibility in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Hauf, T. *Essence of a Land: South African and its World Heritage Sites*. Pretoria: Green Vision Foundation, 2006.
Hugo, ML. *Environmental Management: An Ecological Guide to Sustainable Living in South Africa*. Pretoria: Ecoplan, 2004.
Joubert, L. *Scorched: South Africa's Changing Environment*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Joubert, S. *Kruger National Park: A History*. Johannesburg: High Branching Publications, 2007.
Karoo Veld: Ecology and Management, edited by K Esler *et al*. Pretoria: Briza, 2006.
Le Grange, M. *The Capture, Care and Management of Wildlife*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.
Spence, C. ed. *Ten Days in Johannesburg: A Negotiation of Hope*. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the United Nations Development Programme, 2004.



The National Treasury is responsible for managing South Africa's national government finances. Supporting efficient and sustainable public financial management is fundamental to the promotion of economic development, good governance, social progress and a rising standard of living for all South Africans. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa mandates National Treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of public finances.

In support of government's Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA), National Treasury's work on fiscal policy and budget reform focuses on strengthening infrastructure investment and maintenance, broadening participation in the economy and improving the quality of social services.

Improved budget planning, better documentation and greater transparency in public finances continue to be key priorities. National Treasury is expanding its capacity to provide technical support, particularly for infrastructure planning and project management.

The Constitution lays down a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions. It also creates an independent auditor-general (AG) and an independent central bank, and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Fiscal policy framework

The Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, presented the national Budget for 2008/09 in February 2008.

Government's fiscal policy seeks to support structural reforms of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and an equitable distribution of income. It aims to promote investment and export expansion while enabling government to finance public services, redistribution and development in an affordable and sustainable budget framework. Fiscal policy seeks to:

- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements
- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

Planning and budgeting challenges associated with the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ are being addressed through a dedicated unit, working closely with the Organising Committee and the Deputy Minister of Finance.

The economy and fiscal stance

Highlights included:

- gross domestic product (GDP) growth of 5% in 2007, with growth averaging about 4,3% a year over the forecast period
- consumer price index, excluding interest rates on mortgage bonds (CPIX) inflation, rising to 7,1% in 2008 before declining to 4,9% in 2009
- gross fixed capital formation projected to rise from 21% of GDP in 2007 to 24% in 2010
- estimated consolidated national budget surpluses of 1% in 2007/08 and 0,8% in 2008/09, with projected surpluses over the three-year period
- real growth in consolidated government non-interest expenditure of 6,1% a year over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.
- government's contribution to national savings projected to rise from 0,8% of GDP in 2006/07 to 1,5% in 2010/11
- R60 billion to support Eskom's capital financing requirements over the next five years.

Tax proposals

Highlights included:

- total tax relief for individuals of R7,7 billion
- a reduction in the corporate income tax rate from 29% to 28%
- a simplified tax regime for small businesses
- R5 billion in tax subsidies over the next three years for labour-intensive industries and industrial policy
- an electricity levy of 2 cents per kilowatt hour
- fuel (petrol and diesel) taxes to increase from 2 April 2008 by 11 cents per litre
- a packet of 20 cigarettes to cost 66 cents more
- a 750-ml bottle of wine to cost 12 cents more
- a 340-ml can of beer to cost 5 cents more
- a 750-ml bottle of liquor (spirits) to cost R2,17 more.

Spending on public services

Additions to spending over the next three years included:

- R33,2 billion for provinces, mainly for school education, healthcare, welfare services and roads
- R6,5 billion for municipalities for the extension of free basic services
- R12,5 billion for social grants, including extension of the Child Support Grant to children up to their 15th birthday in 2009 and lowering the age of eligibility for men to receive old-age pension to 60 years
- R9 billion in conditional grants for school-building, HIV and AIDS, hospital revitalisation and school nutrition
- R8,2 billion for public transport, roads and railway infrastructure
- R6 billion for housing, water and general-built environment infrastructure
- R2 billion for 2010 World Cup stadiums and related infrastructure
- R2,5 billion for industrial development and small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs)
- R2,6 billion for agriculture and land reform
- R2,7 billion for information technology (IT) network infrastructure, police forensic laboratories and additional police personnel, and R2 billion for correctional facilities
- R1,4 billion for higher education, research and knowledge development
- R1 billion for programmes under the Expanded Public Works Programme.

The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), National Treasury and the Bond Exchange of South Africa Limited jointly hosted the second Regional Workshop on public debt management and bond market development in Johannesburg in June 2008.

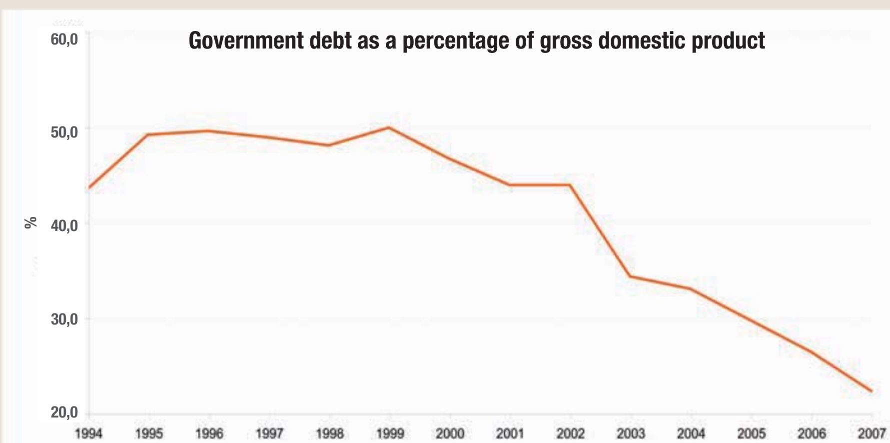
The event formed part of the OECD Project on African Public Debt Management and involved senior debt managers from more than 15 African countries, experts from regional institutions, the Macroeconomic and Financial Management Institute of Eastern and Southern Africa and the Bank of Central African States, in addition to commercial banks and primary dealers.

Debt management

A further priority for National Treasury is the prudent management of government's financial assets and liabilities, including the domestic and foreign-debt portfolio. The main debt-management objective of financing borrowing requirements at the lowest cost within acceptable levels of risk has shifted towards actively pursuing government's macroeconomic objectives, particularly reducing sovereign external vulnerabilities.

Twelve years of prudent macroeconomic policy have contributed to a robust economy capable of both sustaining and accelerating the growth trajectory. The uniqueness of South Africa's economic landscape is reflected in the fact that government is increasing capital and socio-economic expenditure, even as it continues to enjoy a positive fiscal balance, and is reducing the amount of money it needs to borrow.

Government debt decreased from 43,5% of GDP in 1994 to 22,3% in 2007. This led to low debt-servicing costs for the public sector. Revenue collection increased, while spending was controlled. This provides protection against turbulence in international financial markets and frees



Source: Development Indicators, 2008

Consolidated national, provincial and social-security fund expenditure: Functional classification[1]

	2007/08		2008/09		2009/10	
	Revised estimate	% of total	Budget estimate	% of total	Budget estimate	% of total
General government services and unallocable expenditure[2]	34 959,8	6,7	39 500,2	6,7	43 987,7	6,8
Protection services:	85 857,3	16,6	94 377,6	16,1	103 440,6	15,9
Defence and intelligence	27 444,1	5,3	29 491,6	5,0	31 009,5	4,8
Police	38 563,3	7,4	42 730,3	7,3	47 932,2	7,4
Prisons	11 113,8	2,1	12 049,5	2,1	13 077,2	2,0
Justice	8 736,2	1,7	10 106,1	1,7	11 421,7	1,8
Social services:	306 622,9	59,2	349 118,3	59,6	425 735,2	60,5
Education	105 249,4	20,3	120 494,9	20,6	133 354,1	20,6
Health	65 896,3	12,7	72 851,6	12,4	80 817,3	12,5
Social security and welfare	91 650,1	17,7	105 077,7	18,0	116 013,0	17,9
Housing	10 999,1	2,1	13 439,9	2,3	15 980,1	2,5
Community development[3]	32 828,0	6,3	37 254,2	6,4	42 283,1	6,5
Economic services:	90 714,2	17,5	102 374,9	17,5	112 931,9	17,4
Water schemes and related services	9 164,4	1,8	11 043,9	1,9	13 134,0	2,0
Fuel and energy	6 846,3	1,3	5 427,6	0,9	6 279,6	1,0
Agriculture, forestry and fishing	13 692,0	2,6	14 304,8	2,4	14 431,8	2,2
Mining, manufacturing and construction	2 504,2	0,5	2 364,6	0,4	2 472,6	0,4
Transport and commuications	35 256,2	6,8	41 961,6	7,2	47 009,2	7,2
Other economic services[4]	23 251,1	4,5	27 272,4	4,7	29 604,8	4,6
Subtotal:						
Votes and statutory amounts	518 154,1	100,0	585 370,9	100,0	648 807,8	100
Plus contingency reserves	-	-	6 000	-	12 000,0	-
Total non-interest expenditure	518 154,1	-	591 370,9	-	660 807,8	-
Interest	52 829,0	-	51 236,0	-	51 125,0	-
Total consolidated expenditure	**570 983,1**	-	**642 606,9**	-	**711 932,8**	-

1) These figures were estimated by National Treasury and may differ from data published by Statistics South Africa. The numbers in this table are not strictly comparable to those published in previous years, due to the allocation of some of the unallocable expenditure for previous years. Data for the previous years have been adjusted accordingly.
2) Mainly general administration, cost of raising loans, and allocable capital expenditure.
3) Including cultural, recreational and sport services.
4) Including tourism, labour and multipurpose projects.

Source: *2008 Budget Review*

resources for investment towards a more productive economy and expansion of social services.

South Africa's public finances do not centre on servicing debt, but on the essential pillars of human development – poverty reduction, health, education and job creation. Interest costs measured as a percentage of revenue and GDP have fallen to historically low levels, as a result of a favourable interest-rate outlook and lower debt stock. A decade ago, government spent 18 cents of every rand on servicing debt. This decreased to 11 cents in 2007, and by 2009 the figure is expected to be around eight cents. Consequently, the debt burden on future generations continues to decline, releasing additional resources for economic development and poverty relief.

Legislation

In 2008, a number of pieces of draft legislation were under consideration and expected to be tabled in the short and medium term, pending the outcome of policy, drafting and consultation processes. These included:

- the Public Finance Management Bill, which will amend the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- the Direct Charges Bill
- the Financial Services Law General Amendment Bill.

Division of Revenue Act, 2008 (Act 2 of 2008)

The Act provides for the equitable division of revenue raised nationally among the national, provincial and local spheres of government for the 2008/09 financial year and the responsibilities of all three spheres pursuant to such a division, and to provide for matters connected with it.

Financial Services Law General Amendment Bill

In May 2008, the National Treasury tabled a new omnibus legislation in Parliament designed to close regulatory loopholes in current pieces of financial-sector legislation. The department indicated that global integration of the financial sector had necessitated the proposed legislation to reduce the risk profile of financial companies and strengthen the ability to enforce laws.

The Financial Services Laws General Amendment Bill will amend existing legislation such as the Pensions Fund Act, 1956 (Act 24 of 1956); Financial Services Board (FSB) Act, 1990 (Act 97 of 1990); and National Payment Systems Act, 1998 (Act 78 of 1998).

The Bill will create beneficiary funds as opposed to a trust for the payment of death benefits. The non-member spouse of a pension fund involved in divorce proceedings will now have a say in how payment is made. The FSB will establish an enforcement committee empowered to impose administrative sanction and decide on compensation where due. The committee will impose a R1-million fine or a five-year prison sentence. However, criminal proceedings will still be followed where appropriate. The legislation will widen the capacity of the appeal board to include a chairperson of high legal standing, such as a retired judge.

The Bill will also amend the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), to allow the registrar to conduct on-site visits of service-providers. Members of a licensed service-provider will have to meet certain standard operating requirements in the interests of promoting a safe investment environment. Amendments will give the registrar the power to openly declare those service-providers that have been debarred or suspended. The National Payment Systems Act, 1998 will also be amended to provide further powers to the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) to monitor certain entities in the payment system such as Postbank, which currently operates under an exemption of the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990).

Public Finance Management Bill and Direct Charges Bill

The Public Finance Management Bill is intended to ensure sound, transparent and sustainable financial management of the affairs of state institutions and public entities in the national and provincial spheres of government. It aims to ensure that all revenue, expenditure assets and liabilities of those institutions and entities are managed efficiently and effectively. It will give effect to Section 217 of the Constitution by providing for a public-sector procurement system that is fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost-effective and that accommodates the advancement of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination. It also provides for the listing of all existing and new public entities; and for matters connected with these.

The Direct Charges Bill is intended to authorise certain payments and withdrawals from the

National Revenue Fund as direct charges against the fund.

Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives.

To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the PFMA, 1999 since 1 April 2000.

The Act changed the approach to how public funds are managed by introducing a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.

Since its introduction, the PFMA, 1999 has contributed towards measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- the submission by departments of monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

While it is recognised that the PFMA, 1999 has contributed positively towards the enhancement of public-sector financial management, it has been acknowledged that an increased emphasis should be placed on capacity-building to further improve the quality of financial management.

The Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (previously the South African Management Development Institute) has, in association with National Treasury, developed the Financial Management Training Strategy for the roll-out of training programmes to improve the skills of public-sector finance practitioners.

Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)

The Act applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.

The objective of the Act is to secure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities by establishing norms, standards and other requirements for:

- ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in their fiscal and financial affairs
- managing their revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, and handling their financial dealings
- budgetary and financial-planning processes and co-ordinating processes of organs of state
- borrowing
- handling financial problems and other financial matters.

A wide range of supporting publications, guides, regulations and circulars are available on *www.treasury.gov.za* under the MFMA icon.

Financial Sector Charter

The Financial Sector Charter was signed in November 2003, signalling a key milestone in the transformation of the financial sector.

The charter seeks to ensure the broad-based transformation of the sector, based on the following elements: human-resource development (HRD), procurement and enterprise development, access to financial services, empowerment financing, ownership, control and corporate social investment.

National Treasury Financial expenditure

National Treasury plays a pivotal role in managing government expenditure.

It determines financial-management norms and standards, and sets reporting policy that guides the AG's performance. It also assists Parliament, through the Standing Committee on Public Accounts (Scopa), with its recommendations and the formulation of corrective actions. National Treasury closely monitors the performance of state departments and is obliged to report any deviations to the AG.

National Treasury furthermore maintains transparent and fair bidding processes, as well as accounting, logistic and personnel systems. It sets and maintains standards and norms for treasury and logistics, acts as a banker for national departments, and oversees logistical control of stocks and assets.

Exchange-control reforms

Further reforms were announced in the Febuary 2007 Budget Speech. Two of the reforms dealt with simplifying customer foreign-currency accounts and lowering the outward foreign direct investment (FDI) threshold for investments by South African entities outside of Africa, from a controlling interest to at least 25%.

The JSE Securities Exchange Limited (JSE) was also, for the first time, given approval to establish a rand-currency futures market. A new framework, regulating authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, was approved by the Minister of Finance in 2007.

Retirement fund reform

Since the release of the *Social Security and Retirement Reform Paper* in February 2007, significant progress has been achieved in developing proposals for the reform of the social-security system. A number of projects have been undertaken by an interdepartmental task team to assess the detailed operational approach and policy implications.

By mid-2008, progress in developing key design features for the basic social-security benefit included:

- good progress towards a shared government view on basic social-security design, but further analysis was still needed, particularly in relation to industry and the preservation of retirement benefits
- exploring broad institutional-governance options in terms of the co-ordination of administrative arrangements (South African Revenue Service [Sars], the Unemployment Insurance Fund [UIF], Compensation Fund [CF], the Government Employee Pension Fund [GEPF], etc.)
- modelling of a conceptual framework and "administrative clearing house" dealing with system design
- preparing a wage-subsidy discussion paper and an evaluation model.

Furthermore, the options for post-retirement medical-contribution protection were being explored in terms of their linkages with wider social-security reform. Much more work needs to be conducted on private pension and social-security law reform, particularly with regard to the overall design issues, opt-out issues, sequencing of the reform and balance of risk between the State, employees and contributors.

Treasury norms and standards

In terms of Section 216(1)(c) of the Constitution, National Treasury must prescribe measures to ensure both transparency and expenditure control in each sphere of government, by introducing uniform treasury norms and standards. These treasury norms and standards aim at deregulating financial controls, by granting accounting officers of spending agencies more autonomy in financial decision-making within the ambits of impending financial legislation.

Budget evaluation

National Treasury plays an important role in supporting the economic policy to which government has committed itself. It determines the macrolimit on expenditure, which is then matched with requests from departments, in line with the affordability and sustainability of services.

Based on this limit, all national departments are requested to submit budget proposals annually to National Treasury for the following financial year.

Early Warning System

The Early Warning System was first established in 1997. Any likely under- or overexpenditure is brought to the attention of the Cabinet, so that the relevant minister can ensure that appropriate action is taken.

Introducing the system has also assisted in the monthly monitoring of provincial departments' expenditure trends, by having provincial treasuries report to National Treasury in a prescribed format. The information derived from early warning reports is used for advising the Budget Council and the Cabinet. The Minister of Finance is also informed of the early warning report results.

Financial policies, systems and skills development

National Treasury is responsible for financial-management systems and the financial training of government officials.

It delivers services that support the following areas:

- financial systems, which consist of the Personnel and Salary System, Logistical Information System, Financial Management System, Basic Accounting System and Management Information System
- banking services and financial reporting for government
- developing financial management in national and provincial governments.

Procurement

The preferential procurement regulations give substance to the content of the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000). This Act and its regulations apply to all three spheres of government.

Bids are evaluated according to a preference point system. A bidder can score a maximum of 80 or 90 points for price, while 10 to 20 points can be scored for contracting or subcontracting historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs), and promoting or achieving specified Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) goals. A contract is awarded to the bidder who scores the highest total number of points.

The implementation of the regulations enhances the involvement of HDIs in the public bidding system and contributes to achieving RDP goals, including the promotion of small and medium enterprises (SMEs).

One of government's Apex Priorities is the introduction of a system of products for preferential procurement by government from small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs).

Supply Chain Management (SCM)

The SCM Framework, issued in terms of Section 76 of the PFMA, 1999, replaced outdated procurement and provisioning systems in government with an integrated SCM system, and an international best-practice process for appointing consultants.

The SCM Framework also incorporated the preferential procurement policies of government, as espoused in the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), and the regulations issued in terms of this Act.

The PPPFA, 2000, in its current form, became outdated as it was not aligned with the aims of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), and its related strategy. It is envisaged that the PPPFA, 2000 will be repealed and that the framework required by Section 217 of the Constitution will be provided for through appropriate amendments to the PFMA, 1999.

Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)

Government has adopted a strong stance on eradicating money laundering and financing terrorism, in keeping with United Nations (UN) conventions and international standards.

South Africa's system of combating money laundering and the financing of terrorism is based on the interaction of three separate laws. In 1998, the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), was passed, which criminalised money laundering. This was followed by the FIC Act (FICA), 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), which provides for the establishment of the centre, and imposed reporting and administrative obligations on financial and other institutions.

The Protection of Constitutional Democracy Against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004), provides for the reporting of terrorism-financing activities.

The FIC started functioning in February 2003 as a government agency reporting to the Minister of Finance.

The centre is mandated to:

- identify the proceeds of crime and the financing of terrorism
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- advise the Minister of Finance about issues aimed at anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism (AML/CFT)
- monitor the compliance of accountable institutions and supervisory bodies regarding their AML/CFT obligations
- prevent and reduce money laundering and CFT activities
- meet and uphold the international obligations and commitments required of the centre and South Africa as a country.

The FICA, 2001 identifies a range of 19 different business sectors, which it defines as being accountable institutions and most vulnerable to abuse by criminals. These include banks, *bureaux de change,* life-insurance companies, stockbrokers, money remitters, casinos, lawyers, accountants, investment advisers, estate agents and motor dealers. These accountable institutions have certain reporting and administrative obligations, including record-keeping, appointing compliance officers and the training of staff.

The centre analyses and stores reports made by the accountable institutions. After further analysis and due consideration, it makes disclosures to law-enforcement agencies for investigation. It may also make this information available to similar bodies in other countries.

The Amendment Bill to the FICA, 2001 was approved by Parliament on 22 May 2008. These amendments include the ability of the centre to address the deficiencies relating to the supervision of compliance with the Act. It provides for detailed procedures for the administrative adjudication and sanctioning of non-compliance with the FICA, 2001, as well as extended powers for supervisors to address compliance failures appropriately. The Amendment Bill also provides for issues relating to customer due diligence and the updating of the schedules to the FICA, 2001.

By 31 March 2008, the centre had received in excess of 90 067 suspicious transaction reports, of which 24 580 were made during 2007/08.

From 1 April 2007 to 31 March 2008, the centre referred 910 reports of transactions totalling in excess of R1 billion to law-enforcement agencies for investigation.

In 2002, South Africa joined the 14-member Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group. South Africa is also a member of the Financial Action Task Force, which is the international standards-setting body for combating money laundering and financing terrorism.

The centre is a member of the Egmont Group of financial intelligence units, which facilitates the exchange of information, skills and technical assistance between financial intelligence units worldwide.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is a constitutional body established to give advice to Parliament, legislatures and organs of state on matters of intergovernmental finance.

The commission, which came into operation in April 1994, is a statutory institution and permanent expert commission dealing with intergovernmental fiscal relations.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, which are based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial, and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures; and assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as:

- provincial and local government revenue sources
- provincial and municipal loans
- the fiscal implications of the assignment of functions from one sphere of government to another.

Budget Council

The Budget Council consists of the Minister of Finance and the nine provincial members of the executive committees responsible for finance, while the Budget Forum is the Budget Council extended to include representatives of organised local government. The mission of the two forums is to ensure that there is cohesion between national policy priorities, the division of nationally raised revenues, and planning and budgeting in provincial and local spheres of government.

The forums also allow the leadership of the three spheres of government to evaluate the performance of government on key national programmes and, where deemed necessary, to agree on support initiatives that will ensure the attainment of national goals.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC is a corporate body governed in terms of the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

The corporation was officially launched in April 2005. The PIC invests funds on behalf of the South African public sector.

There are currently 40 entities or clients whose funds are managed by the PIC. Major clients include the GEPF, the UIF, the Associated Institutions Pension Fund, the Compensation Commissioner: Pension Fund, the CF and the Guardian's Fund. The strategic focus of the PIC in recent years has been on restructuring to build capacity that is comparable to private-sector asset managers.

Key activities and achievements include:

- revising the PIC's governance structure and regulatory oversight
- concluding comprehensive client mandates that set clear risk-adjusted investment-return targets and service levels
- achieving investment returns that meet or exceed agreed client benchmarks, which are unique and stipulated in each client's mandate
- establishing the subsidiaries, Advent and the Pan African Infrastructure Development Fund (PAIDF), to focus on property investments in townships or rural areas and infrastructure development in Africa
- adopting the role of corporate-governance champion and activist in relation to investments managed on behalf of the PIC's clients
- establishing an enterprise-risk-management capacity comprising the risk, compliance and internal audit divisions
- revising HR policies and recruiting skilled professionals across the three business divisions: investments, risk and operations
- implementing key IT infrastructure and systems, including an investment administration system and a performance and attribution system
- revising client fee scales to a level that can sustain PIC operations in the long term.

Strategic priorities over the MTEF period are to ensure the long-term financial sustainability of PIC operations, retain key customers through investment performance and a high standard of client service, achieve operational excellence and make a positive contribution to South Africa's economy, including corporate governance and shareholder activism.

Macroeconomic strategy

The economy continued to expand at a robust pace of 5,1% in 2007, generating new jobs, broadening the consumer base and providing the impetus for rapid growth in investment.

Economic growth was projected to average just over 5% a year over the next three years. However, the year 2008 saw a somewhat weaker growth in the world economy and interest rate increases.

In 2004, government set out the objectives of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. A growth rate exceeding 5% a year on average between 2004 and 2014 is necessary to achieve these targets. In February 2006, government introduced AsgiSA with the objectives of growing the economy and improving the labour-absorbing capacity of the economy, leading to shared growth.

The methodology employed involves identifying the "binding constraints" to achieving growth objectives. AsgiSA has identified the following binding constraints:

- the relative volatility and level of the currency
- the cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- the shortage of suitably skilled labour amplified by the cost effects on labour of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits to competition and limited new investment opportunities
- the regulatory environment and the burden on SMEs
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

A number of decisive interventions aimed at addressing these constraints and allowing government to achieve its objectives more effectively include:

- macroeconomic issues, including reducing the volatility of the Rand, improved estimation of revenue collections in the budgeting process and improved expenditure management
- the rapid increase in infrastructure spending to improve the availability and reliability of infrastructure and to reduce the cost of doing business
- sector-investment strategies (or industrial strategies) to promote private-sector investment, with a focus on rapidly growing labour-intensive sectors and sectors with BEE opportunities such as business-process outsourcing, tourism and biofuels
- skills and education initiatives to alleviate the pressing shortage of skills, including initiatives to improve skills in areas such as Science, Mathematics, engineering, management and IT
- second-economy interventions to bridge the gap between the first and second economies, including increased participation and broader access to opportunities and education
- public-administration issues, including the reduction of costly institutional interventions.

Government is committed to achieving the objectives set out in AsgiSA. Higher and shared economic growth will allow South Africa to achieve its social objectives of reducing inequality and virtually eliminating poverty.

South African Revenue Service

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), the revenue service is an administratively autonomous organ of state. It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and client-orientated service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal importation and exportation of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement, and storage or use of certain goods.

Tax system

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax-policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government spheres. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function, and are aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. National Treasury and Sars co-operate in compiling tax policies.

In 2001, South Africa's source-based income tax system was replaced with a residence-based system. Residents are now taxed (subject to certain exclusions) on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned.

Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income. Foreign income and taxes are translated into the South African monetary unit, the Rand.

International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between residence and source countries of international investors, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with various countries.

Sources of revenue

Income tax

Income tax is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

In South Africa, income tax is levied on South African residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of gross income less allowable deductions as per the Act.

The income threshold below which no tax is payable by individuals under 65 years was raised to R46 000 for the tax year beginning March 2008, and for taxpayers over the age of 65 to R74 000 a year. The maximum marginal rate of tax remains at 40%, while the threshold was raised from R450 000 to R490 000.

The domestic interest and dividend exemption for taxpayers under the age of 65 was raised from R18 000 to R19 000 and increased from R26 000 to R27 500 for senior citizens.

The proportion of the exemption applicable to foreign-interest income and dividends was raised from R 3 000 to R3 200.

A revised tax regime for medical-scheme contributions and medical expenses was introduced in the 2005 Budget. It had the effect of raising the tax benefit for middle- and lower-income earners, while restricting the tax allowance for more expensive medical schemes. For the tax year 2008/09, taxpayers under 65 are not taxed on, or may deduct, contributions to medical schemes up to R570 for each of the first two persons covered under a medical scheme (taxpayer and one dependant), and R345 for each additional dependant. In addition, they can claim a deduction for medical-scheme contributions above the caps and any other medical expenses, to the extent that the total exceeds 7,5% of taxable income. Taxpayers

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) has firm and cordial relationships with other administrations as exemplified in the participation in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu), the Southern African Development Community, the World Customs Organisation and the Forum for Tax Administrators of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Sars' administrative infrastructure is particularly important to Sacu as it collects more than 90% of the customs and excise revenue within the union.

under 65 years may claim all qualifying medical expenses where the taxpayer or the taxpayer's spouse or child is handicapped. Taxpayers who are 65 years and older continue to enjoy a full deduction of all medical expenses.

Income-tax returns are issued annually to registered taxpayers whose employers have reconciled their EMP501 from 1 July 2008 with Sars. The year of assessment for individuals covers a period of 12 months, which generally commences on 1 March of a specific year, and ends on the last day of February the following year. Companies, on the other hand, are permitted to have a tax year ending on a date that coincides with their financial year.

Tax returns must be submitted to Sars within the specified period.

People who owe Sars tax are charged interest at a rate as published in the *Government Gazette* that is linked to the rate specified in accordance with the PFMA, 1999.

Persons who derive income from sources other than remuneration, such as trade, profession or investments, and companies, are required to make two provisional tax payments during the course of the tax year and may opt for a third "topping-up" payment, six months after the end of the tax year.

Capital gains tax was introduced on 1 October 2001. It forms part of the income-tax system. Capital gains made upon the disposal of assets are included in taxable income.

Local governments levy rates on the value of fixed property to finance the cost of municipal services.

In the 2008 tax season, new emphasis was placed on the information supplied by employers to the South African Revenue Service (Sars) in respect of the pay-as-you-earn (PAYE) deducted from employees. In 2008, employers were required to meticulously and timeously submit records, which ensured that Sars was in possession of accurate information about their employees. The information about the PAYE deducted and paid over to Sars ensures that Sars has accurate information to:

- pre-populate income tax returns for certain categories of individuals
- verify information supplied by individuals on their tax returns.

In addition, the information declared by employers, in terms of existing law, is used in PAYE audits of employers to verify whether the correct amount of tax was levied, deducted from employees and paid over to Sars.

Value-added tax (VAT)

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle. Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise.

Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14% but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

The prices of goods and services must be quoted or displayed on an inclusive basis, which means that VAT has to be included in prices on all products, price lists, advertisements and quotations.

Customs duty

South Africa is a signatory to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement, together with Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland (the BLNS countries).

The five member countries of Sacu apply the same customs and excise legislation, the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods, and the same import duties on imported goods. The uniform application of tariffs and the standardisation of procedures simplify trade within the Sacu common-customs area. Import duties, including anti-dumping and countervailing duties, are used as mechanisms to protect the local industry.

The renegotiated Sacu Agreement is in force and provides a new dispensation for calculating and affecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component.

South Africa has entered into agreements on mutual administrative assistance with a wide range of customs administrations. These agreements cover all aspects of assistance, including the exchange of information, technical assistance, surveillance, investigations and visits by officials. Efforts continue to improve the effectiveness of custom control and trade facilitation.

Following the launch of the Southern African Development Communiy (SADC) Free Trade Area, a SADC Customs Union will be established.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. This duty is levied as a specific duty on tobacco, liquor, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audiovisual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported. In addition, relief is also available for specific farming and forestry, and certain manufacturing activities.

Excise duties are imposed both as a means to generate revenue for the fiscus and to change consumer behaviour.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property by individuals at progressive marginal rates between 0% and 8%. With effect from 1 March 2006, houses costing less than R500 000 attract no duty.

A 5% rate applies at between R500 000 and R1 million, after which 8% applies. The 10% flat rate for companies and trusts was also reduced to 8%. All transactions relating to a taxable supply of goods that are subject to VAT are exempt from transfer duty.

Estate duty

An estate consists of all property, including deemed property (e.g. life-insurance policies, payments from pension funds, etc.) of the deceased. The exempt threshold was increased to R3,5 million in 2007. The duty, at a rate of 20%, is calculated on the dutiable amount of the estate. Certain admissible deductions from the total value of the estate are allowed.

Stamp duty

Stamp duty is levied on instruments such as leases of immovable property and unlisted marketable securities at different rates. It is also payable on leases for fixed property at a fixed rate of 0,5% on the quantifiable amount of the lease. It is proposed that the stamp duties on short-term leases (less than five years) should be abolished.

Uncertificated securities tax (UST)

UST at a rate of 0,25% is payable for the issue of, and change in beneficial ownership in, any securities which are listed on the JSE Limited. In the case of unlisted securities, stamp duty is levied at the same rate of 0,25%. UST on the issue of securities was eliminated from 1 January 2006.

Skills-development levy

This is a compulsory levy scheme for the funding of education and training. Sars administers the collection of the levy. The rate, as from 1 August 2005, is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Air-passenger departure tax

A tax of R120 per fee-paying passenger departing on international flights, and R60 per passenger departing to BLNS countries is payable.

Organisational performance

Sars collected a preliminary R571,8 billion during the fiscal year 2007/08.

The preliminary result was R0,8 billion above the revised budget estimate made in February 2008, and R15,2 billion above February 2007's estimate of R556,6 billion.

The preliminary estimate of national expenditure was R541,6 billion, bringing the main budget surplus to R18,5 billion or 0,9% of GDP, which was 0,1% higher than the February 2008 estimate.

Sars continues to implement improvements in revenue collection to benefit the South African people, by enabling the fiscus to fund government's social-delivery programmes.

E-filing

E-filing (*www.efiling.gov.za*) is a secure service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online. It removes the risks and inconvenience of manual tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the Internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

The e-filing service is on par with international standards, being comparable with services offered in the United States of America, Australia, Singapore, Ireland, Chile and France. Sars has seen e-filing in South Africa grow signifanctly since it was initiated in 2003. In 2007, more than one million individual tax returns were submitted through e-filing and annually millions of returns are submitted by e-filing by businesses and practitioners.

Filing of Tax Returns Season

Filing Season is an extensive marketing and publicity venture to remind taxpayers of their responsibilities to submit their tax returns on time and with the correct details.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers to complete their tax returns correctly. The Filling Season Campaign helped to increase the number of registered taxpayers from 4,8 million in 2003 to just over eight million in 2008.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB was established in terms of the National

Gambling Act, 1996 (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the National Gambling Act 2004, (Act 7 of 2004). The Act provides for the oversight of matters relating to casinos, gambling, betting and wagering and promotes uniform norms and standards in relation to gambling throughout South Africa.

The board has evolved into a cohesive and knowledgeable strategic unit, capable of executing the mandate of the NGB. It performs its regulatory functions diligently, enhances the industry's credibility and creates an increased sense of public awareness about the potential risks of gambling. The regular function is performed concurrently with all nine provinces. The vigorous broad public awareness and education programmes are regarded as a base for dispelling the myths of gambling within South African society.

National Database System for Self-Exclusion

This was the flagship of the NGB for the year ended March 2008. The system is fully developed and the industry and regulators are apprising themselves of how to implement this system, which will take management and care of problem gamblers to the next level.

Interactive gambling

The South African authorities have pronounced the stance with respect to Internet-based gambling activities. Both Houses of Parliament approved the Bill in May 2008 for promulgation into law.

The Interactive Gambling Tax Bill was released for comment in November 2008. The Bill provides for the imposition of a special tax on operators with an interactive gambling site in South Africa.

Research

The National Gambling Board conducted three qualitative research studies and distributed the reports to relevant stakeholders within the gambling industry.

Responsible gambling

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling. It was specifically devised to address the challenges posed by South Africa's developing-nation gambling environment after the promulgation of gambling legislation in the mid-1990s. The Schools Programme, originally pioneered in the Western Cape in 2002 and extended to Gauteng in 2004, has developed into a national schools programme, which went through a pilot phase of introduction in KwaZulu-Natal during March 2008.

The NGB maintains a national statistics database to monitor specific gambling activities as provided by the provincial gambling boards. Based on the results for 2007/08, the gross gambling revenue increased by 16%, from R13,520 billion (2006/07) to R15,618 billion (2007/08).

The NRGP has also implemented a community outreach project directed at social groups who are considered to be particularly vulnerable to problem-gambling behaviour – youth and senior citizens.

Two new treatment innovations were introduced: one was the development of continuing care groups in those centres where such a service was not available, while the other entailed clients being referred by treatment professionals for debt counselling. The NRGP's progress may be measured by the growth in the number of people who are aware of the programme and the growth in the number of those seeking help. Since its inception in 2000, more than 25 740 calls have been received by the toll-free problem-gambling counselling line and about 8 795 callers were referred for free treatment by a medical/treatment professional – about 90 a month.

The NRGP, in conjunction with the NGB, embarked on a three-month commuter responsible-gambling-awareness campaign from June to August 2007.

The National Centre for the Study of Gambling, directed by leading academics at the universities of Cape Town and KwaZulu-Natal, is helping to build and secure South Africa's capacity for continuously enhancing the understanding of gambling behaviour, and to promote the prevention and treatment of problem gambling.

Conferences and forums

The fifth NGB Biennial Gambling Conference and Exhibition at Emperors Palace, Kempton Park, in April 2008 brought together stakeholders and informed regulators and industry on their respective views regarding relevant issues.

In November 2007, the Gambling Regulators Forum, for which the NGB fulfils the secretariat role, held a successful conference in Malawi. This is a platform to share and discuss comprehensive gambling regulations and legislation, as well as other gambling-industry-related matters and challenges. The most significant outcome of the 2007 conference was that a technical team was put together, led by South Africa, to research and design a system that will ensure control over the movement of gambling machines and devices across the borders. The movement of illegal machines promotes illegal operators.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998 in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).

The board's main activities are, among other things, to:

- advise the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensure that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensure that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensure that the net proceeds of the National Lottery are as large as possible
- administer the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and hold it in trust
- advise the minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of Section 26(3) of the Lotteries Act, 1997
- advise the minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administer and invest the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery' operator is Gidani, a 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

Auditor-General

The AG has a constitutional mandate and, as the supreme audit institution of South Africa, it exists to strengthen the country's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector, thereby building public confidence.

Through the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AG's mandate is to promote accountability and good governance within government.

The AG does this by providing world-class audits and reports on the accounts, financial statements and financial management of:

- all national and provincial state departments and administrations
- all municipalities
- any other institution or accounting entity required by national or provincial legislation to be audited by the AG.

The AG may also audit and report on the accounts, financial statements and financial management of:

- any institution funded from the national or a provincial revenue fund, or by a municipality
- any institution that is authorised in terms of any law to receive money for a public purpose.

Public-sector auditing involves investigating and evaluating government and related institutions' financial-management practices, performance and compliance with legal requirements.

By mid-2008, the AG had 1 982 employees, of whom about 833 were trainee accountants. Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as forensic and computer auditing, and audit research and development. The AG also boasts an impressive international auditing complement.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank

The SARB and the Ministry of Finance form the monetary authority in South Africa. The SARB has been given a significant degree of autonomy in terms of the Constitution and must perform its functions independently.

However, the SARB must hold regular consultations with the Minister of Finance. Its management, powers and functions are governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989).

The SARB formulates and implements monetary policy and regulates the supply of money by influencing its cost. Monetary policy is guided by the objectives of the SARB, which are formulated to ensure financial stability. Consistently combating inflation is the cornerstone of the bank's policy.

A formal inflation-targeting monetary-policy framework has been adopted since 2000. Monetary policy is set by the bank's Monetary Policy Committee (MPC).

The committee, consisting of the SARB's governors and other senior officials, usually meets every two months, after which the bank issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and policy changes, if any.

The SARB is responsible for:

- assisting government in formulating and implementing macroeconomic policy
- formulating and implementing monetary policy to achieve its primary goal in the interest of the community it serves
- ensuring that the South African money and banking system as a whole is sound, meets the

community's requirements and keeps abreast of international finance developments
- informing the South African community, and all interested parties abroad about monetary policy, and the South African economic situation in general.

The SARB is managed by a board of 14 directors, seven of whom are elected by the shareholders of the bank and who represent commerce, finance, industry and agriculture. The President of South Africa appoints the governor, three deputy governors and three directors.

The SARB acts as the central bank of South Africa and as a banker to other banking institutions. It provides accommodation to banks and is the custodian of the statutory cash reserves that all registered banks are required to maintain. It also provides facilities for clearing and settling interbank obligations.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is the repurchase transactions (repo) rate, which is the price at which the central bank lends cash to the banking system. The repo rate has become the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The repurchase agreements entered into between the SARB and other banks are conducted on the basis of an outright buy-and-sell transaction, with a full transfer of ownership of the underlying assets. The system also provides for a marginal lending facility, which replaces the previous discount window. This facility is available to banks at their initiative, to bridge overnight liquidity needs. The marginal lending facility forms an integrated part of the South African Multiple Option Settlement (Samos) System. This enables banks to electronically make payments to, and receive payments from, the SARB through their settlement accounts held in the books of the Reserve Bank. Daily settlements of interbank exposures are effected through the Samos System.

Payments through the system can only be made if a bank has sufficient funds in its settlement account. Such funds can be obtained through interbank transfers, repurchase transactions, other types of liquidity-creating instruments of the SARB, or the marginal lending facility. The Samos System, however, allows banks to receive funds obtained in the interbank market directly in their settlement accounts in the SARB's books.

The SARB uses various instruments to achieve its objectives. These include changes in the repo-rate marginal-lending facility; open-market transactions, including selling its own debentures; changes in requirements regarding banking institutions' cash reserves; and controlling liquidity in the money market through repurchase transactions. The bank undertakes national and international transactions on behalf of the State, and acts for government in transactions with the International Monetary Fund.

The SARB is the custodian of the greater part of South Africa's gold and other foreign-exchange reserves. The SARB issues banknotes (printed by the South African Bank Note Company, a wholly owned subsidiary of the Reserve Bank) and controls the South African Mint Company.

Monetary policy

Growth in the broad money supply (M3) maintained strong growth during 2007, registering an annual high 12-month growth rate of 25,8% in August 2007, before decelerating moderately to 21,0% in March 2008. Growth over 12 months in banks' total loans and advances similarly remained relatively strong during 2007, peaking at 27,7% in June 2007, before slowing down to 21,8% in February 2008. However, growth again accelerated to 23,6% in March 2008. Asset-backed credit (mortgage advances, leasing finance and instalment sale credit) constituted the bulk of the increase in banks' total loans and advances throughout 2007 and early 2008.

The moderation in the growth in banks' total loans and advances that was evident from the second half of 2007 was consistent with the gradual tightening of monetary policy since June 2006, accompanied by tighter lending standards set by the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 35 of 2005), from June 2007.

Following interest-rate increases in 2008, the MPC reduced the repurchase rate by 50 basis points to 11,5% per annum with effect from 12 December 2008.

The banking industry

The South African banking system remained stable and banks were sound during 2007. Banks maintained capital-adequacy ratios above the minimum requirement of 10%. The capital-adequacy ratio for the banking sector amounted to 12,78% at the end of December 2007 (December 2006: 12,29%).

By the end of December 2007, there were 33 banking institutions reporting data to the Office of the Registrar of Banks (excluding two mutual banks; however, including one institution doing banking business in terms of an exemption notice under the provisions of the Banks Act, 1990, [Act 94 of 1990], namely Ithala Limited). Forty-six foreign banks had authorised representative offices at the end of December 2007. The number of people employed in the banking sector totalled 139 149 at the end of December 2007.

Banking-sector assets increased from R2 075,3 billion at the end of December 2006 to R2 547 billion at the end of December 2007, representing an annual growth rate of 22,7% (December 2006: 23,7%). Assets of the four big banks amounted to R2 167,8 billion and represented 85,1% of banking-sector assets at the end of December 2007, compared with 84,1% at the end of December 2006. Loans and advances, and investment and trading positions were the main contributors to the increase in banking-sector assets during 2007.

Profitability ratios remained strong throughout 2007. The return on regulatory capital amounted to 18,1% at the end of December 2007, compared with 18,3% at the end of December 2006, while the return on assets amounted to 1,4% at the end of December 2006 and December 2007. The efficiency ratio (also referred to as the cost-to-income ratio) improved from 58,8% at the end of December 2006 to 56,9% at the end of December 2007.

South African banks implemented the Basel Capital Accord (Basel II) on 1 January 2008.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the NCA, 2005 to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner. The NCA, 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA, 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, aims to regulate the granting of consumer credit by all credit-providers, including microlenders, banks and retailers.

It created the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal, which play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act.

The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist overindebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service-providers appointed by the NCR.

Financial Services Board

The FSB is an independent statutory body financed by levies imposed on regulated institutions and persons.

The FSB supervises institutions and services in terms of several parliamentary Acts that entrust regulatory functions to the registrars of long-term insurance, short-term insurance, friendly societies, pension funds, collective investment schemes (CIS), financial services providers (FSPs), exchanges and financial markets.

The FSB also promotes programmes and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial-services industry to inform and educate users of financial products and services.

Included in such functions is regulatory control over central securities depositories and depository institutions responsible for the safe custody of securities.

The FSB is also responsible for the financial supervision of the Road Accident Fund.

The executive officer has the power to impose regulatory sanctions, including the cancellation of authorisation to supply financial services.

The executive officer has formal powers of investigation to which criminal sanctions attach in the event of obstruction.

The executive officer can, in certain circumstances, also petition for the winding up, or placing under judicial management or curatorship, of certain financial institutions such as insurers and pension funds.

Furthermore, the Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998), allows the FSB to obtain warrants for searching and questioning third parties who might have information about unregistered financial institutions, such as those providing insurance or investment services.

The FSB is assisted by an advisory board on financial markets, and by advisory committees on FSPs, long- and short-term insurance, pension funds and CIS. The Financial Services Consumer Advisory Panel advises the FSB and Registrar of Banks on consumer-protection issues falling within the regulators' jurisdiction.

The FSB maintains a close relationship with all existing industry associations. It liaises with overseas regulatory organisations, and is a member of the International Organisation of Security Commissions, the International Association of Insurance Supervisors, the African Association of Insurance Supervisors and the International Network of Pension Regulators and Supervisors.

Domestically, the FSB liaises with bodies such as the Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors, Consumer Affairs Committee and various government departments, as well as with prosecuting authorities such as the South African Police Service and the National Director of Public Prosecutions.

Insurance companies

Short-term (non-life) insurance is concerned primarily with risk management against the risk of a contingency loss in the short term. The contracts usually run from year to year and can be cancelled by either party.

These contracts apply to engineering, guarantee, liability, motor, business, accident and health, property, transportation and miscellaneous insurance. By 31 March 2008, 106 short-term insurers were registered with the FSB, of which 95 represented primary insurers and the remainder reinsurers.

Long-term insurance business consists of life, assistance, sinking fund, health and disability insurance. By March 2008, the number of long-term insurers registered with the FSB totalled 82, of which 76 were insurers and the remainder reinsurers.

According to class of policies, life-insurance business forms the bulk of premiums of primary insurers and accounts for almost 50% of net premiums.

Other financial institutions

Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997), stipulates that the main role of this development-finance institution (DFI) is to promote economic development and growth, HRD and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

The bank operates within South Africa, in the other SADC countries, and increasingly as a development agent and knowledge partner in the wider region of Africa south of the Sahara. The mandate of the bank is mainly infrastructure development in the wider sense of the term.

Historically, the bank has covered economic, social and institutional development. This has been done both via loans of its own funds, and by acting as a catalyst for investments in partnership with the private sector and other DFIs, locally and internationally.

Funding and development impact

The bank is a self-funded institution and raises funding from domestic and international capital markets, bilateral and multilateral institutions and internally generated resources.

Credit lines have been established with reputable and highly rated international institutions, such as the African Development Bank, the European Investment Bank, bilateral sources such as the *German Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau* (KFW), the Japanese Overseas Economic Co-operation Fund and the *Agence Française de Développement*.

The bank's total assets grew to R33,2 billion during 2008 from R27,9 billion in 2006/07. This asset growth of 19% is mainly attributable to the growth in income-earning assets, with a key feature of this increase coming from equity investments, which doubled to R2 billion.

This accelerated asset growth allows the bank to build and optimally leverage on a strengthened balance sheet.

In 2007/08, the DBSA and its co-funders approved projects to the value of R34,4 billion, with the bank contributing 31,5%.

Disbursements totalled R6,2 billion, with the bulk being allocated to projects relating to the contruction of integrated services, energy and social infrustructure. Disbursements made in 2007 will contribute to the creation and maintenance of about 30 000 jobs in South Africa and the impact on the GDP will be about R3,8 billion over the next 20 years. DBSA project funding also has a significant indirect impact on taxes and the potential tax impact of approved projects by the bank and its co-funders for 2007 was estimated at R7,1 billion. During 2007, the DBSA spent R20 million on subsidised lending rates, R48 million on research, R3 million on external training related to the Vulindlela Academy, R63 million on capacity-building grants and development facilitation costs and R121 million on the Siyenza Manje programme.

Strategy

The DBSA's strategy addresses five main themes:

- co-delivering social and economic infrastructure, with a focus on the public sector
- building human and institutional capacity, with a focus on municipalities
- promoting broad-based economic growth, job creation, co-operation, integration and prosperity, with a focus on identified sectors, geographical areas and projects
- serving as a centre of excellence for development financing and effectiveness
- engendering sustainability, both internally and externally.

Vision 2014

Vision 2014, which is guided by the bank's mandate, focuses on the following key goals within the Government's development agenda:

- reducing poverty by half through economic development, comprehensive social security, land reform and improved household and community assets
- reducing unemployment by half through new jobs, skills development, assistance to small businesses, opportunities for self-employment and sustainable community livelihoods
- massively reducing the incidence of tuberculosis, malaria, diabetes, malnutrition and maternal deaths; turning the tide against HIV and AIDS; and improving services to achieve a better national health profile and reduce preventable causes of death
- positioning South Africa strategically as an effective force in global relations, with vibrant and balanced trade with countries of both the South and the North
- providing the skills required by the economy, building capacity and providing resources across society to encourage self-employment.

Strategic initiatives

Key initiatives include leading Siyenza Manje, the municipal task force of engineers and project managers being implemented jointly with National Treasury, the Department of Provincial and Local Government, the South African Local Government Association and other government departments.

The Sustainable Communities Programme is also underway to turn dormitory townships and informal settlements into viable towns, with community centres, clinics, shops, sports facilities, etc. The Local Investment Agency has been established in the Eastern Cape to fast-track private-sector economic development in areas with natural potential. The bank is also heavily involved in supporting the host cities in their development of infrastructure for the 2010 World Cup.

The bank has positioned itself to provide strategic and financial support to the South African Football Association in its planning and co-ordination of infrastructure development around South Africa's hosting of the 2010 World Cup.

Vulindlela Academy

The bank has launched the Vulindlela Academy, a specialised institutional training facility dedicated to creating and upgrading the skills required for increased economic growth.

The DBSA Vulindlela Academy is supported by a local government resource centre and a wide area local government computer network, to connect municipalities to a wide range of resources and facilities.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a DFI within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002). The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry.

Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, co-operatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
  - service delivery
  - resource management
- sustainability.

(See Chapter 3: *Agriculture and land affairs*.)

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

Collective investment schemes

CIS in securities, property and participation bonds are supervised in terms of the CIS Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002).

South African collective investment schemes in securities

There was a net increase of 134 portfolios during 2007/08, which was slightly higher than that experienced during the previous year (121). On 31 March 2008, there were 41 managers with 899 approved portfolios, reflecting the depth of portfolios on offer to local investors.

The industry attracted positive inflows in spite of volatile markets. Considering the outflows experienced in other global industries, the net inflows of R63 billion recorded for the year ended March 2008 indicate a commendable performance by the industry. Total assets under management at the end of the year stood at R659 billion, compared to R596 billion as at March 2007. In general, the industry produced excellent returns.

Foreign collective-investment schemes (FCIS) in securities

The total net investment for the offshore collective investment products saw net outflows of R1,2 billion at 31 March 2008. Retail funds continued to attract investors with net inflows of R459 million in the March quarter, on top of the R803 million in the previous quarter, while the institutional funds had a net outflow of just over R1 billion during the March quarter. The total assets under management reached R117,9 billion at the end of March 2008. This represents a 12,2% increase compared to the 49% increase recorded during the previous year.

There has not been any significant change in movement in respect of foreign operators in the South African markets as evidenced by the net decrease of five schemes and an addition of one portfolio during the year. By 31 March 2008, 67 licensed schemes marketed 383 portfolios in South Africa.

Collective investment schemes in property

The higher-than-expected inflation had a mixed impact in the listed property sector. The increase in interest rates and the expectation of further increases resulted in a significant drop in prices of participatory interests. Although there was a general decline in the markets during the year, the total market capitalisation of the industry increased by 16,5%. This increase may be partly attributed to an increase in the number of participatory interests.

By 31 March 2008, there were 4 180 billion participatory interests in issue with a market capitalisation of R22,6 billion, compared to 2 614 billion participatory interests with a market capitalisation of R19,4 billion at the end of March 2007.

Collective investment schemes in participation bonds

A steady decline of investment continued in this industry. By 31 March 2008, the total investment stood at R3 billion owing to 26 820 participants in five of the seven schemes in operation during the year. Two schemes were winding up their operations and consequently had no investments.

Stokvels

Stokvels are co-operative rotating saving schemes that mobilise funds among mostly black communities for a variety of purposes. Rotating saving schemes similar to stokvels are also found in countries such as South Korea, Jamaica, Egypt and Japan.

Estimates are that the total investment in stokvels and burial societies in South Africa has reached the R20-billion mark. According to a University of Cape Town Unilever Institute of Strategic Marketing research study, this sector touches every industry, either directly or indirectly.

The study shows that the average membership size of burial societies is 88, and that 29% of South African adults are members. This suggests a total of 89 000 burial societies. Figures gathered by the institute show that 2,5 million South African adults (9%) belong to eight million stokvels and that 14% of bank-account holders are stokvel members.

Stokvels and burial societies, according to the study, are based on group affinity and network marketing – selling to a group rather than to an individual.

Financial intermediaries and advisers

The purpose of the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to certain clients in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FAIS at the FSB is responsible for the oversight and supervision of the industry, captured under the FAIS Act, 2002.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the Act provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of their powers in terms of the Act to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to 11 recognised representative bodies.

Advisory Committee on Financial Services Providers

The Advisory Committee on FSPs was appointed by the Minister of Finance to investigate and report or advise on any matter relating to FSPs. With the exception of the registrar, who is an ex-officio member, committee members hold office for a period determined by the minister.

Licensing of financial services providers

In terms of the FAIS Act, 2002, the FSB approves and renders the ongoing supervision of three categories.

Category One consists of financial advisers and those intermediaries without discretionary mandates. Category Two consists of individuals or entities that are involved in discretionary management of securities, loan stock and derivatives on behalf of both individual and institutional clients.

Category Three represents investment managers specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers).

Intensified supervision

The FSB's FAIS has developed a customised risk-based supervision framework, which is vitally important for the successful supervision of FSPs. The diversity of the financial-services industry requires the department to concentrate its efforts on FSPs that call for greater supervisory oversight. It will also ensure a smooth transition from the previous compliance-based supervisory approach. For this purpose, a change-management process will be implemented to support the framework.

Inspections

Eleven formal inspections were requested during 2007/08, mainly in respect of alleged contraventions of the provisions of the FAIS Act, 2002.

Retirement funds and friendly societies

By 31 March 2008, a total of 12 690 registered retirement funds were being supervised by the FSB. The latest available statistics for the year ended 31 December 2006 were in respect of the official (state) funds, Transnet and Telkom funds, bargaining council funds not registered with the FSB and 45% of the registered funds that submitted financial statements.

Membership of retirement funds by 31 December 2006 totalled 9 342 118, of which 7 370 436 were active members and 1 089 000 pensioners, deferred pensioners and dependants. The figures do not reflect the total number of individual members of funds, since some are members of more than one fund.

Contributions received decreased by 4,2% from R75 131 million in 2005 to R72 009 million in 2006. Contributions to official (state), Transnet, Telkom and Post Office funds decreased by 14,4%, while contributions to privately administered, underwritten and bargaining council funds in the private sector decreased by 6,6%.

Benefits paid, which includes amounts paid in respect of pensions, lump sums on retirement, death and resignations, decreased by 2,2%, from R85 937 million in 2005 to R84 024 million in 2006.

Total assets of the retirement fund industry in South Africa increased by 13,3%, from R1 284 billion in 2005 to R1 454 billion in 2006.

Financial markets

Primary capital-market activity

Government bonds

The bond point spread for South Africa (rate at which South Africa has to pay its creditors compared to the United States of America [USA]) has been steadily falling since 2001. This shows that the risk of investing in South Africa has fallen compared to other emerging markets. This is largely due to macroeconomic stability, industrial policies that add to domestic value and increase the country's competitiveness and positive global assessment of the country's socio-political prospects. The rising premium since 2007 is largely a result of the global reaction to the financial crisis in the USA.

Retail bonds can be purchased from government outlets and selected private retailers for amounts ranging between R1 000 and R1 million. Since the introduction of RSA fixed-rate retail savings bonds in May 2004, more than 18 400 investors had invested in these bonds, to a cumulative amount of some R2,5 billion up to April 2008. Interest rates on the South African Government fixed-rate and inflation-linked retail bonds are priced off the

Government bond yield curves. The daily average yield on the R157 Government bond (maturing in 2015) increased significantly from 8,9% on 29 October 2007 to 10,13% on 6 June 2008.

This increase was in response to, among other things, the recent depreciation in the exchange value of the Rand coupled with the increase in the international price of oil and the higher rates of inflation. By contrast, the daily closing yield on the US 10-year bond continued on a downward trend from 5,28% on 13 June 2007 to 3,34% on 20 March 2008, before increasing to 3,92% on 6 June 2008. Consequently, the spread between the South African R157 bond yield and the US 10-year bond yield widened from 293 basis points on 13 June 2007 to 621 basis points on 6 June 2008.

From the end of October 2007, the level of the yield curve shifted upwards across all maturities as bond yields continued to rise in response to the depreciation in the exchange value of the Rand, higher inflation expectations and, for shorter maturities, increases in the repurchase rate. The yield gap, measured as the difference between yields at the extreme long and short ends of the curve, narrowed from a negative 341 basis points on 15 January 2008 to a negative 211 basis points on 6 June 2008. The break-even inflation rate in the five-year maturity range fluctuated higher from a low of 4,96% on 29 October 2007 to 7,79% on 6 June 2008. This was due to a general increase in nominal yields on conventional government bonds and declining real yields on inflation-linked government bonds, as inflation expectations continued to deteriorate.

The currency risk premium on South African government bonds narrowed from 296 basis points in December 2007 to 280 basis points in January 2008, before widening to 380 basis points in May 2008 as a result of a pronounced increase in yields on the South African domestic Rand-denominated bonds compared with yields on dollar-denominated South African bonds. Over the past year, the turmoil in international financial markets was accompanied by the repricing of risk. From a low of 153 basis points in May 2007, the JP Morgan Emerging Markets Bond Index Plus (EMBI+) 5 spread widened to 308 basis points in March 2008, before narrowing to 243 basis points in May 2008. Similarly, the sovereign risk premium on South African US dollar-denominated bonds in the six-year maturity range trading in international markets widened from an average of 67 basis points in May 2007 to 286 basis points in March 2008, before narrowing to 196 basis points in May 2008.

In 2008, government relaunched the retail savings bond and introduced an inflation-linked instrument.

Private-sector bond issuance

The issuance of fixed-income debt has become a convenient and cost-effective means of funding in South Africa, as it has in other emerging markets. Data showed that by 2007 a fifth of corporate funding was obtained through the bond market, as corporates made less use of the more traditional funding means. Funding by means of debt issuance remained attractive in 2007. The nominal value of private-sector bonds listed on the Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa) increased by R57 billion as the exchange attracted 246 new corporate listings. Besa was one of the few exchanges to record such strong growth in corporate listings in 2007. Listings by banks as a percentage of total had tripled relative to 2000, while securitisations had grown 10 fold.

A key corporate listing was that of Lion of Africa Insurance Company Ltd, a black-owned insurance company. International Ferro Metals SA (Pty) Ltd, whose parent company is listed on the London Stock Exchange's AIM, also listed a bond on Besa. Besa also brought to market three new foreign listings in 2007. Among these, was a listing by the Namibia Power Corporation, which was a dual listing with the Namibian Stock Exchange, and a supranational listing by the African Development Bank. The first Exchange Traded Fund was listed on Besa in 2007. The Govex represents a portfolio of South African government bonds held in the same proportion as the Besa Government Bond Index.

Eurorand bonds

Abundant liquidity in the global financial markets led to increased activity in the Eurorand bond market. The Eurorand bond market expanded in 2005 and 2006 with gross issuance of R9,1 billion in 2006, which is 9% less than the R10,1 billion issued in 2005, excluding a R1-billion issue not regarded as a pure eurorand transaction. In 2006, R4,1 billion worth of eurorand bonds matured, resulting in a net issuance of R5 billion.

In the first three months of 2007, gross issuance amounted to R3,7 billion, while R1 billion matured, bringing net issues to R2,7 billion.

During 2006, Germany's KFW and the European Investment Bank dominated issuance in the Eurorand bond market, comprising 3,2% and 26% of total issuance respectively.

Other issuers include Rentenbank (9%), the Province of Ontario (7%), Rabobank Nederland (5%) and Eurofirma (5%). The rest were issued by new issuers such as *Caisse d'Amortissement de la Dette Sociale*, Toyota Motor Credit Corporation, Inter-American Development Bank and General Electric Capital Corporation.

The type of credit issued remained predominantly AAA-rated, and the maturity structure is concentrated in bonds maturing in nine years or less.

Uridashi bonds

Issuance of rand-denominated bonds by foreign borrowers in the Japanese Uridashi bond market remained fluid in 2008. The total nominal value of R16,2 billion issued in the first seven months of 2008 was more than the R13,1 billion recorded in the entire 2007.

Gross issuance of rand-denominated bonds in the European bond markets amounted to R15 billion in the seven months to July 2008 and net issuance amounted to R8,9 billion, some 14% less than in the corresponding period of 2007.

Secondary capital-market activity

Domestic bonds

The cost of capital rose across the board during the second half of 2007, on the back of tighter domestic monetary policy and increased global risk aversion. By the end of 2007, the yield on the benchmark R153 Government bond had increased by 129 basis points, aided by a widening in overall emerging market spreads. These conditions encouraged trading activity and resulted in turnover on the bond exchange, reaching a record R13,8 trillion in 2007. Repo trades during the year amounted to R8,7 trillion while the total number of trades increased by 5% year-on-year to 327 319 and the market recorded an increased turnover velocity of 17,7 times.

Non-resident investors' participation in the South African secondary bond market continued to grow in 2007. Non-residents' nominal turnover increased to R5,5 trillion in 2007 from R4,3 trillion in 2006.

The steady growth in market turnover recorded by Besa since the 1990s attests to the continued development of the domestic bond market, with the development of the repo market helping to improve market liquidity. Indeed, according to the Bank for International Settlements, South Africa's government bond market was the sixth most liquid in 2005, measured in terms of turnover ratio and bid-ask spreads. In addition, both in 2007 and over the first half of 2008, Besa emerged as the fourth largest exchange by total value of bonds traded.

Money-market activity

The South African money market is an over-the-counter market in which a fairly large number of banks and other institutions actively participate. The Reserve Bank implements its monetary policy in terms of a system based on creating a shortage in the money market. The bank refinances this shortage through weekly repurchase transactions with seven-day maturities at its policy rate, the repo rate. The bank therefore influences other market interest rates. The daily liquidity requirement in the money market averaged R12,6 billion in 2007.

The SARB uses mainly four types of open-market operations to drain surplus liquidity from the money market, namely, issuing Reserve Bank debentures, conducting longer-term reverse repo transactions, foreign-exchange swaps and outright sales or switches of government bonds. The amount of liquidity-draining instruments employed by the bank is generally managed in such a way that factors impacting on money-market liquidity – such as the redemption of government bonds and/or coupon interest payments – are broadly offset.

During May 2007, the bank expanded the pool of liquid assets accepted as collateral in the refinancing system to include bonds from the All Bond Index (Albi), excluding those issued by commercial banks.

The bonds are detailed in the table below:

Assets previously and still included as eligible collateral	Assets that have been added as from 23 May 2007
• Government bonds • Land Bank bills • Separate trading of registered interest and principal of securities • SARB debentures • Treasury bills	• Development Bank of Southern Africa (DV07) • Eskom Holdings Limited (ES09, ES170, ES 33) • South African National Roads Agency (SZ25) • Transnet Limited (T011) • Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (WS03, WS04)

Domestic currency market

The South African Rand appreciated by almost 3% against the US Dollar during 2007. Although part of this appreciation was due to general US dollar weakness over this period, which caused most emerging-market currencies to appreciate, the Rand was also supported by domestic economic conditions such as the decline in the inflation rate, positive economic growth, improved sentiment and an increase in official foreign-exchange reserves.

South Africa's official gross reserves increased from US$33 billion at the end of December 2007 to US$34,4 billion at the end of March 2008. Demand for the Rand was also fuelled by foreign portfolio investment, particularly during the last quarter of 2004. According to Bloomberg's annual ranking report, the Rand was the second-best performing currency against the UD Dollar during 2004.

The analysis comprised 60 currencies from developed as well as emerging-market countries. The only currency to marginally outperform the Rand was the Polish Zloty. The Rand also appreciated against other major currencies. Against both the Euro and the Pound, the Rand appreciated by almost 10% and compared with the Yen, the Rand appreciated by 13%.

The average daily turnover in the domestic currency market increased from US$14,2 billion during 2006 to US$16,5 billion during 2007. These increases occurred mainly in the foreign-exchange swap market.

During the first quarter of 2008, the Rand depreciated by 16,4% against the US Dollar, mainly as a result of the continuing turmoil in international financial markets and concerns about the supply of electricity. The depreciation was to some extent moderated by exceptionally high prices of precious metals as well as a sound Budget, which was tabled in February.

Exchange control

Exchange control is administered by the Reserve Bank on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The bank is assisted in this task by a number of banking institutions that have been appointed by the Minister of Finance as authorised dealers in foreign exchange.

These institutions undertake foreign-exchange transactions for their own account with their clients, within limits, and subject to conditions laid down by the Reserve Bank.

The Government is committed to an open capital market and the gradual relaxation of exchange controls.

The following dispensations regarding exchange control are allowed:

Institutional investors

Exchange-control limits on foreign investment by institutional investors – insurers, pension funds, CIS and investment managers – have been gradually liberalised since 1996. Foreign diversification of investment portfolios, consistent with prudential limits, has largely been achieved. This allowed the authorities to replace exchange controls on institutional investors with a system of prudential regulation. This shift entails the removal of the pre-application process for foreign investment and its replacement with a system of quarterly reporting and monitoring of foreign exposures.

Retirement funds, long-term insurers, CIS management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad:

- Retirement funds and the underwritten policy business of long-term insurers may invest up to 20% of total retail assets. Investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes, CIS management companies and investment-linked businesses of long-term insurers are restricted to 30% of total retail assets under management.
- Institutional investors will be allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency denominated portfolio assets in Africa through foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the Besa or JSE Ltd, respectively.
- Foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.
- Institutional investors are required to report on a quarterly basis on the allocation of assets according to the major asset classes and provide information from institutions in excess of the foreign-asset limit on proposed portfolio adjustments to bring foreign asset levels back in line.

South African corporates

With effect from 20 February 2008, the pre-approval process for FDI was removed for transactions totalling less than R50 million per company per year. Authorised dealers will administer the directives and guidelines on these types of investments. The exchange-control requirement that a shareholding of at least 25% is obtained was replaced with the requirement that at least 10% of the foreign target entity's voting rights must be acquired.

Where the total cost of FDI exceeds R50 million per company per calendar year, an application must be submitted to Exchange Control prior to the investment being made.

As a further alternative mechanism of financing offshore investments or to repay existing offshore debt, applications by corporates to engage in corporate asset or share-swap transactions and requests for share placements offshore by locally listed companies will be considered.

The corporates that have existing approved subsidiaries abroad are allowed to expand such activities without prior approval, subject to certain conditions. Dividends declared by the offshore subsidiaries of South African corporates may be retained offshore and used for any purpose, without recourse to South Africa.

Authorised dealers may also extend foreign currency-denominated facilities to South African corporates for financing approved FDI.

To further enable South African companies, trusts, partnerships and banks to manage their foreign exposure, they are, with effect from 20 February 2008, permitted to participate without restriction in the Rand futures market on the JSE Ltd. This dispensation is also extended to investment in inward listed (foreign) instruments on the JSE Ltd and Besa.

Emigrants' blocked assets

A system of exchange-control allowances for the export of blocked assets when persons emigrate, has been in place in South Africa for a number of decades.

Emigrants' blocked assets in excess of the emigration allowance were placed in emigrants' blocked accounts to preserve foreign reserves. Reflecting the improved strength and resilience of the South African economy, these blocked assets are now being unwound.

The imminent elimination of the net open forward position and an increasingly diversified and growing export sector create an environment that is conducive to dealing with the foreign reserve problems of the past. As such, the following applies:

- Emigrants qualify for a foreign capital allowance of R2 million per individual or R4 million in respect of family units emigrating.
- Emigrant-blocked assets are being unwound. Amounts of up to R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, are eligible for exit without the 10% exit levy. Holders of blocked assets wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, must apply to the Exchange-Control Department of the Reserve Bank to do so. Approval is subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of the amount requested.
- New emigrants wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, can similarly apply to the Exchange-Control Department to do so, with approval subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of such additional amount.

Private individuals resident in South Africa

Private individuals resident in South Africa qualify for a foreign-capital allowance of R2 million per private individual who is a taxpayer in good standing and over the age of 18 years, for investment purposes outside the common monetary area (i.e. Swaziland, Lesotho, Namibia and South Africa).

A single discretionary allowance of R500 000 per year for the purpose of travel, gifts, donations to missionaries and maintenance was also introduced for private individuals with effect from 20 February 2008.

Local financial assistance to affected persons and non-residents

To improve access to domestic credit in financing FDI in South Africa or for domestic working-capital requirements, foreign companies or foreign-owned South African companies are permitted to make greater use of local finance.

Foreign companies or foreign wholly owned subsidiaries can borrow locally up to 300% of the total shareholders' investment.

This ratio does not apply to emigrants, the acquisition of residential properties by non-residents or affected persons, and certain other financial transactions, such as portfolio investments by non-residents, securities lending, hedging, repurchase agreements, etc. In these cases, the 100% ratio still applies.

JSE Limited

As South Africa's only full-service securities exchange, the JSE connects buyers and sellers in five different markets; equities, which includes a primary and secondary board; equity derivatives; agricultural derivatives; and interest rate instruments. The JSE is one of the top 20 exchanges in the world in terms of market capitalisation.

JSE Limited is the market of choice for local and international investors looking to gain exposure to the leading capital markets in South Africa and the broader African continent. JSE Limited also provides companies with the opportunity to raise capital in a highly regulated environment through its markets: the Main Board and AltX, the Alternative Exchange. A respected brand associated with high market integrity, the JSE is regarded as a mature, efficient, secure market with world-class regulation, trading, clearing, settlement assurance and risk management.

The exchange has been part of that process, playing an instrumental role in creating the internationally prominent King II Code on Corporate Governance. The JSE's listing requirements require all companies to adhere to key concepts of King II and all companies are required to report on their level of compliance with the code in their annual financial statements. Furthermore, the JSE has harmonised its listing requirements, disclosure and continuing obligations with those of the London Stock Exchange and offers superb investor protection.

The JSE provides a diversified range of products and services. The JSE provides investors with the opportunity to trade a multitude of financial instruments and at the heart of its diversified product offerings are single stock futures (SSFs). This area has grown substantially to become one of the five largest in the world.

SSFs are ideal for conservative investors seeking to hedge their share portfolios, or for sophisticated speculators seeking geared exposure to anticipated share price movements. This market also offers investors derivatives on indices, Kruger rands, dividend futures as well as can-do options, which give investors the advantages of listed derivatives with the flexibility of over-the-counter contracts.

The JSE's Agricultural Products Market reflects the commitment to providing versatility in the product offering. It is a transparent electronic market used vigorously in the price-risk management of commodities through futures. This market continues to grow due to a greater understanding of its function and the development of a broader base of marketing strategies based on the derivative products. It is the first market in the world for trading both the cash spot bond (secondary trading) as well as the interest-rate derivative products, on one trading platform. Its pioneer product is currency futures launched to further develop South Africa's financial markets and increase liquidity in the currency market.

The JSE provides total price transparency through its world-class information systems. The trading activity on the markets generate a wide range of data that assist market participants with make-or-break investment decisions.

The JSE has both domestic and global reach in terms of the provision of all its information, through data-providers, investment banks, other financial industry stakeholders and directly through the exchange.

Interest rate market

Yield-X, the interest-rate exchange, is dedicated to trading a wide range of interest rate products that enable participants to manage interest rate exposure and risk. The product range includes bonds, bond futures, swaps and more.

Bond Exchange of South Africa

Besa is an independent, licensed exchange, constituted as a public company, and responsible for operating and regulating the debt securities and interest-rate derivatives markets in South Africa. Besa was granted its exchange licence in 1996 and over the past 10 years has been at the forefront of market developments in South Africa.

In December 2007, Besa entered a new era, successfully converting from a mutual association to a public company. As the direct regulator of the bond market, Besa operates within the framework of the Securities Services Act, 2004 and a set of rules and directives approved by the FSB.

The South African bond market is a leader among emerging-market economies. Turnover reported on Besa in 2007 reached a record R13,8 trillion while offshore trades in bonds settled through local infrastructure totalled R9,6 trillion for 2007; this represents a turnover velocity of 30 times market cap. By December 2007, Besa had listed some 967 debt securities, issued by

104 sovereign and corporate borrowers, with a total market capitalisation of R862 billion.

Strate Limited

Strate is the authorised Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of all financial instruments in South Africa.

Its core purpose is to mitigate risk, bring efficiencies to the market and improve South Africa's profile as an investment destination.

Currently Strate handles the settlement of equities, warrants and bonds for the JSE Limited and Besa. In the future, Strate will also settle money-market instruments. In addition, Strate is the provider of a growing number of products, data and services in line with market demands and trends.

Strate is aligned to international best practices and continually strives to bring further efficiencies and enhancements for the good of southern Africa's financial community.

Strate is a public unlisted company.

Financial-sector continuity planning

The South African financial sector collaborates extensively in contingency planning for systemic risks that may disrupt settlement, financial intermediation and possibly economic activity in general. The primary objective of this co-operative arrangement is to identify crisis events that may threaten the stability of the South African financial sector and to propose appropriate plans, mechanisms and structures to mitigate such threats.

This arrangement also facilitates co-operation between key financial-sector institutions and regulators in times of a significant catastrophic event, to have the best chance of protecting staff, facilitating recovery and sustaining both a stable financial market and consumer confidence.

Although individual firms are responsible for managing and mitigating risks for their respective operations, the broader collaborative effort is focused on risks that threaten the financial sector as a whole. Such risks range from the impact of global economic threats to potential causes of major operational disruption.

These risks are regularly analysed and appropriate response strategies devised.

Acknowledgements

Bond Exchange of South Africa
Business Day
Development Bank of Southern Africa
Development Indicators, *2008*
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Financial Services Board Annual Report 2006/07
JSE Limited
National Gambling Board
National Treasury
Office of the Auditor-General
South African Reserve Bank
South African Revenue Service
www.bondexchange.co.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.ffc.co.za
www.gov.za
www.jse.co.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.news24.co.za
www.nlb.org.za
www.responsiblegambling.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samint.co.za
www.sars.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Chip, K and Zenobia, I. *E-Commerce: A Southern African Perspective*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2004.
Claassens, M and Van Zyl, A. *Budget Transparency and Participation 2: Nine African Case Studies*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2005.
Kohn, M. *Financial Institutions and Markets*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Levin, A. *The Art of African Shopping*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
Manuel, Markets and Money: Essays in Appraisal, edited by R Parsons. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2004.
Musava, C, ed. *Behind Closed Doors: Secrecy in International Financial Institutions*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.
Porteous, D and Hazelhurst, E. *Banking on Change: Democratising Finance in South Africa 1994 – 2004 and Beyond*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
Student Guide to the South African Financial System, edited by IJ Fourie, HB Falkena and WJ Kok. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Swart, N. *Manage your Money: Basic Financial Skills for South Africans*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.
Van Zyl, C. *et al*. ed *Understanding South African Financial Markets*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

FOREIGN RELATIONS

The Department of Foreign Affairs formulates, co-ordinates, implements and manages South Africa's foreign-policy and international relations programmes throughout the world.

These are guided by a commitment to promoting:
- human rights and democracy
- justice and international law
- international peace and internationally agreed mechanisms for resolving conflicts
- Africa in world affairs
- economic development through regional and international co-operation.

The department continues to implement its strategic priorities in line with government's foreign-policy objectives, outlined in the programme of the International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa's development is inextricably linked to the development of Africa and the southern African region.

Africa faces the challenge of positioning itself to address the marginalisation of the continent by engaging global role-players on socio-economic development and facilitating a fair and just global order.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organisation for the promotion of the continent's accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples. South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, namely the:
- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee (PRC)
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament (PAP)
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council (Ecosocc)
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and People's Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, namely the African Monetary Fund, African Central Bank and African Court of Justice, still have to be operationalised.

The 53-member AU was officially launched in Durban on 9 July 2002, following its inaugural summit.

It replaced the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established on 25 May 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The AU's objectives include:
- achieving greater unity and solidarity between African countries and the peoples of Africa
- defending the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its member states
- accelerating the political and socio-economic integration of the continent
- encouraging international co-operation
- promoting peace, security and stability on the continent
- promoting democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance
- promoting and protecting people's rights
- establishing the necessary conditions to enable the continent to play its rightful role in the global economy and in international negotiations
- promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, and integrating African economies
- promoting co-operation in all fields of human activity to raise living standards
- promoting research in all fields
- eradicating preventable diseases and promoting good health on the continent.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent:
- the permanent home of the PAP will be completed in 2010
- the AU has developed the PSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflicts, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- a common defence policy has been adopted, which includes the Standby Force, with a nucleus of five brigades, one from each region
- the Human and Peoples' Rights Court has been established with Judge Bernard Ngoepe as one of the first judges
- the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality is being implemented
- the Protocol on the Court of Justice is underway

The eight existing regional economic communities (RECs), which include the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the Economic

Community of West African States (Ecowas), have begun to determine time lines to achieve free trade agreements and customs unions.

Promoting peace, security and stability on the continent

The AU is responsible for the peaceful resolution of conflict among member states, through such appropriate means as may be decided upon by the AU Assembly.

The PSC Protocol took effect in December 2003 and comprises 15 member states. The PSC was launched in Addis Ababa, in May 2004. As a collective security and early warning arrangement, the PSC allows for a timely and effective response to conflict and crises in Africa.

In terms of PSC statutes, all African countries should establish their own early warning centres.

The AU PSC Protocol provides for the creation of the African Standby Force, to be operationalised over 10 years.

The second extraordinary session of the AU Assembly, held in Libya in February 2004, adopted the Common African Defence and Security Policy.

South Africa is sparing no effort in conflict resolution and/or peacekeeping missions in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi, Côte d'Ivoire, Sudan, Comoros, Ethiopia and Eritrea.

Socio-economic development and integration of the continent

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies. RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must co-ordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as co-ordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives. Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the PRC.

South African judge, Navanethem Pillay, was appointed as the United Nations' Human Rights Commissioner in Geneva, Switzerland, on 1 September 2008. Pillay was a judge at the International Criminal Court in The Hague.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa, in collaboration with key African countries, has been at the forefront in developing Nepad as Africa's premier development programme, in mobilising African and international support for Nepad and in supporting Nepad structures and processes. Nepad is a holistic, integrated, sustainable development initiative primarily established as an African rejuvenation plan that focuses on creating the conditions for sustainable development, namely:

- peace, security, democracy and political governance
- economic and corporate governance
- regional integration.

The primary objective of Nepad is to eradicate poverty, halt the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process, promote the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the millennium development goals (MDGs).

The underlying principles of Nepad are:

- Accountability: Nepad recognises the importance of good political, economic and corporate governance in creating the conditions for development, with African governments embracing greater accountability to their constituents. Nepad also seeks to base Africa's partnership with the North on mutual accountability.
- Ownership: Nepad is a long-term vision that is African-led and -owned. Ownership should be promoted through broad and deep participation by all sectors of society, and by tapping into indigenous knowledge/expertise to define needs and solutions.
- Partnership: While Nepad is a partnership between and among Africans, it seeks to accelerate sustainable development in Africa through partnerships with the South, and to forge a new partnership with the developed North that changes the unequal relationship with Africa.

Resources for Nepad are mobilised by way of increasing savings and capital inflows via debt relief, increased targeted official development aid (ODA) and private capital investment, as well as through better management of public revenue and expenditure.

The adoption of Nepad in 2001 was the affirmation of a shared vision, conviction and a pledge by Africa and its leaders to eradicate poverty and to place African countries, both individually and collectively, on a path of sustainable growth and development, halting the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process.

Over the past six years, the activities of Nepad evolved from the conceptualisation of frameworks for the actualisation of the new vision and onwards to implementation strategies and action plans in the identified priority areas. Consequently, sectoral frameworks and mechanisms have been developed and are being implemented in the programmes and projects in those priority areas. Such areas include:

- the comprehensive African agriculture development programme
- the short-term action plan for infrastructure development
- the science and technology (S&T) consolidated action plan
- the environment plan
- the AU/Nepad health strategy
- the education action plan
- the tourism action plan
- standards and guidelines for the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM)
- the Africa productive capacity initiative.

A significant achievement of Nepad has been in terms of its identification and processing of priority areas (agriculture, infrastructure, information and communications technology [ICT], S&T, environment and regional economic integration) that were not among top priorities of the development agenda of international partners. As a result, within South-South and South-North co-operation, these priority areas have now become core issues. Furthermore, the successful development and launch of the Investment Climate Facility has been implemented. This facility is aimed at making African countries more attractive to investment globally.

A major achievement in terms of the health focus of Nepad has seen the emergence of the Global Fund through which resources are provided for the overarching strategy to fight HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria, and address their impact on development. Increased support for integrated health systems to deliver programmes and new approaches to the training and retention of health workers are emerging. Countries have moved to implement the Nepad Health Strategy and the partnership with the World Health Organisation (WHO) continues to yield positive results.

Other achievements include the establishment of the Infrastructure Project Preparation Facility at the African Development Bank (ADB) and notable increases in national and multicountry infrastructure project investments by the ADB and other multinational development-finance institutions (DFIs) , including the World Bank. Building on these early successes in infrastructure, the Infrastructure Consortium for Africa (ICA) was established at the ADB, as part of the G-8 support to Nepad, following the 2005 Gleneagles Summit.

A major continental event regarding infrastructure development was the launch of the Pan-African Infrastructure Development Fund during the Accra Summit. This fund, with at least US$600 million at its disposal in mid-2008, aimed at passing the US$1-billion target in 2009.

Nepad has forged global partnerships with industrialised and developing countries and multilateral organisations.

At international level, the UN adopted Nepad as a framework for the programmes of its agencies working in Africa. The G-8 countries also adopted Nepad as a framework for their development support, and responded by developing the G-8 Africa Action Plan, which focuses on Nepad priorities. The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) countries, the Commonwealth and the World Trade Organisation (WTO) also embraced Nepad in a similar fashion.

Nepad introduced the APRM, accepted by member states of the AU as an African self-monitoring mechanism.

The peer review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

Representation in South Africa and abroad			
	2001/02	2004/05	2007/08
South African missions in Africa	28	37	45
South African missions in the world	92	110	121
Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*			

The APRM has received international acclaim and the first sets of reviews have been completed in Ghana, Rwanda, Kenya, South Africa, Algeria, Benin, Uganda, Nigeria and Burkina Faso. Country-review missions were completed in Lesotho, Mali, Mauritius, Mozambique and Tanzania in the second half of 2008, with the possible scheduling of these countries for peer review by January 2009. At the AU Summit in Addis Ababa in July 2008, Mauritania became the 28th member state to accede to the APRM. A formal application for membership of the APRM was received from Togo, which increased the membership of the mechanism to 29 countries, representing more than three-quarters of the countries in Africa.

The Nepad Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee, at its meeting in Addis Ababa on 30 January 2008, agreed to proceed with the integration of Nepad into the AU structures and processes in accordance with the 13-point set of conclusions agreed on at the Nepad Brainstorming Summit in March 2007 in Algiers, Algeria. It was further recommended that a close working relationship be established between the Nepad Secretariat and the AU Commission in facilitating this issue. For South Africa, the implementation of Nepad, in conjunction with the SADC Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan (RISDP) as the regional expression of Nepad, forms a critical pillar that contributes to the overall objective of the consolidation of the African Agenda.

Concerning the implementation of Nepad at national level, this is situated within the overall South African national development framework and strategy, the International Relations, Peace and Security (IRPS) Cluster and other cluster priorities, for example:

- fast-tracking implementation of Nepad priority sectors (i.e. infrastructure, ICT, agriculture, tourism, capacity-building)
- implementing the recommendations of South Africa's *Peer Review Report* in terms of the South African Programme of Action (as co-ordinated by the Department of Public Service and Administration)
- using the National Framework for Local Economic Development (LED) as a platform for development and implementation of Nepad and RISDP programmes within South Africa.

The Addis Ababa Summit decision regarding the expeditious integration of Nepad into the AU structures and processes provides a significant step forward, especially in terms of the continental ownership of Nepad and the AU serving as an implementing agent in its own right.

A critical aspect is the use of continental development funds for Nepad programmes and projects (including the Pan-African Infrastructure Development Fund, the African Development Fund, the African Infrastructure Consortium, the African Water Facility, the ADB Project Preparation Facility and the Common African Agriculture Development Programme Support Group).

Structures

Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee (HSGIC)

The Nepad HSGIC reports annually to the summit of the AU. The chairperson of the AU Commission is an ex-officio member of the Implementation Committee, and the AU Commission is expected to participate in steering committee meetings.

The HSGIC comprises 20 states (four per AU geographic region), including the five initiating states: South Africa, Nigeria, Algeria, Senegal and Egypt.

The main function of the HSGIC is to set policies, priorities and Nepad's programme of action.

Peacekeeping operations

Personnel	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008
Democratic Republic of Congo	1	113	161	164	1 455	1 430	1 230	1 242	1 248	1 248
Eritrea and Ethiopia	0	5	8	11	11	14	7	7	7	2
Burundi	0	0	701	750	1 500	1 437	1 267	1 202	751	1 000
Liberia	0	0	0	0	0	3	3	0	0	0
Sudan	0	0	0	0	0	10	339	620	626	604
Total	**1**	**123**	**1 579**	**1 686**	**4 477**	**4 358**	**4 462**	**4 900**	**4 016**	**4 860**

Source: Department of Foreign Affairs.
The table included deployment of uniformed military observers, hence the small numbers in some cases.

Steering Committee

The Steering Committee comprises representatives of the 20 HSGIC members. It is tasked with developing the terms of reference for identified programmes and projects, and overseeing the Secretariat.

Secretariat

The Nepad Secretariat co-ordinates implementation of projects and programmes approved by the HSGIC. The full-time core staff of the Secretariat, located at the Development Bank of Southern Africa in Midrand, provides liaison, co-ordination, and administrative and logistical functions for Nepad.

The AU's mechanisms for peer review and conflict resolution reflect commitment to human rights, democratisation, good governance, and peace and security.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC has been in existance since 1980, when it was formed as a loose alliance of nine majority-ruled states in southern Africa known as the Southern African Development Co-ordination Conference, with the main aim of co-ordinatng development projects to lessen economic dependence on the then apartheid South Africa. The founding member states are: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mosambique, Swaziland, United Republic of Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The Cabinet Lekgotla, held in July 2008, decided that South Africa should focus on the following priorities:

- enhancing regional political cohesion
- advancing SADC regional economic integration (with a focus on the Southern African Customs Union [Sacu])
- intensifying efforts towards infrastructure development
- advancing the undersea cable initiative to expedite the continent's access to the information highway
- advancing food security issues in the region
- identifying opportunities for the region that are created by the 2010 World Cup
- strengthening the capacity of the SADC Secretariat.

The Summit of the SADC Heads of State and Government was held in August 2008. South Africa took over the chair of the SADC at the summit. The launch of the Free Trade Area (FTA) and the adoption of the SADC Protocol on Gender and Development were some of the highlights of the summit. The launch of the FTA will lay a firm foundation for regional economic integration.

The FTA Agreement is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations with southern African countries through trade. The SADC also aims to create a regional customs union, referred to as the Southern African Customs Union, by 2010.

Other agreements signed at the summit included the Protocol on S&T and the Agreement Amending Article 20 of the Protocol on Trade. In 2008, the Seychelles was welcomed back as a member of SADC. The 2009 Ordinary Summit of Heads of State and Government will be held in the DRC.

Southern Africa

Angola

After the ceasefire of 2002 in Angola, following decades of war, peace still prevails in that country. The signing of the ceasefire agreement ended one of Africa's most protracted and devastating wars.

The Memorandum of Commitment between the Angolan Government and the National Union for the Total Independence of Angola, which was signed on 26 August 2002, is regarded as a watershed along the road to peace and reconciliation. It was agreed then that elections would be held as soon as circumstances permitted.

South Africa committed itself to assisting Angola with its post-conflict reconstruction projects and programmes. The first session of the Joint Commission of Co-operation (JCC) was held in Pretoria in February 2003. Subsequently, significant progress was made in identifying, negotiating and finalising numerous agreements.

The South African Government has offered to provide technical assistance, if and when needed, to the planned elections in Angola.

Lesotho

The most significant and visible beacon reflecting South Africa's bilateral relations with Lesotho is the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), which qualifies as a Nepad project.

The project was started in 1986 as a joint venture to supply water to South Africa, especially the rapidly growing urban population of Gauteng, and to meet Lesotho's electricity needs. The project delivers about 780 million m^3 of water to South Africa per year.

South Africa and Lesotho agreed to engage in a strategic partnership to help Lesotho in accelerating its economic development to raise its status from that of a least-developed country (LDC). For this purpose, South Africa and Lesotho signed the Joint Bilateral Commission of Co-operation (JBCC) agreement in April 2001.

In addition to strategic areas of co-operation, the JBCC also promotes the process of consolidating relations between South Africa and Lesotho.

Since 2001, there has been significant sectoral co-operation between the two countries.

Various projects have been identified and implemented, such as the hydrological project, whereby the South African Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is providing Lesotho with technical assistance and capacity-building to improve hydrological data quality and quantity by modernising data-collection equipment and network design.

Formal bilateral meetings under the auspices of the JBCC are held on a regular basis.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana signed the Joint Permanent Commission for Co-operation (JPCC) in 2003. The JPCC provides a legal and institutional framework for further co-operation in identified strategic areas. The last South Africa-Botswana JPCC meeting was held in November 2007, and took stock of progress regarding JPCC projects.

Malawi

Malawi is one of South Africa's main trading partners in the southern African region, with the trade balance in South Africa's favour.

South Africa-based companies increasingly interested in linking up with and establishing a presence in Malawi range from the finance, telecommunications and the retail sectors, to those in the construction industry.

South Africa's former Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Aziz Pahad, together with his Malawian counterpart, Deputy Minister Henri Mumba, co-chaired the inaugural session of the South Africa-Malawi JCC in June 2008.

Mr Pahad also co-chaired this first session of the South Africa-Malawi JCC within the context of South Africa's priority to strengthen bilateral political, economic and trade relations with Malawi to consolidate the SADC developmental agenda.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with countries in the Indian Ocean islands remain strong.

In March 2008, former President Thabo Mbeki attended the 40th Independence Day celebrations in Port Louis, Mauritius. Bilateral relations have been strengthened since 1994, especially in trade and investments, culture, sport and recreation. There was also progress towards the finalisation of the General Co-operation Agreement as well as agreements in other areas such as education, scientific and technical co-operation, shipping and maritime, environment and tourism as well as social development.

Comoros

South Africa and the Comoros have had official relations since 1993. Following the signing of the Fomboni All-Party Framework Agreement of 17 February 2001, presidential elections for the three sister islands and for the Union of Comoros were held in March and April 2002.

South Africa, as the AU-mandated co-ordinator of the Countries of the Region on the Comoros, is facilitating and closely monitoring the transition process.

Mozambique

South Africa and Mozambique share co-operative and friendly political and economic relations, both in a bilateral and multilateral context.

Mozambique's economy continues to perform well and expectations are that the average growth rate of 7% that has been seen over the past 10 years will continue.

Mozambique remains South Africa's second-largest export market in southern Africa. South Africa and Mozambique's economic relationship is the strongest in the southern Africa region.

In April 2008, the South Africa-Mozambique Heads of State Economic Bilateral Commission was held in Maputo.

The meeting ensured the maintenance of sound political and economic relations between South Africa and Mozambique.

Forty agreements covering various spheres of co-operation were entered into between the two countries.

These include the Maputo Harbour, agricultural development, natural gas trade, de-mining, the Maputo Development Corridor, a joint water commission, promotion and reciprocal protection of investment, and custom administration.

In May 2008, former President Mbeki held political bilateral discussions with his Mozambican counterpart, President Armando Guebuza, in Maputo.

Namibia

Co-operation in various areas marks the relationship between South Africa and Namibia.

The two governments often meet at high-level engagements such as the regular heads of state economic bilateral meetings. The meetings focus on joint economic co-operation projects such as spatial development initiatives, tourism, energy matters as well as matters related to Sacu and the SADC.

The annual Joint Commission on Defence and Security aims to identify, discuss and promote co-operation regarding bilateral and regional issues of mutual interest in the fields of defence, state and public security.

The South Africa-Namibia Heads of State Commission was held in August 2008.

The Economic Bilateral Commission serves as a platform for reinforcing bilateral economic relations between South Africa and Namibia.

Since the establishment of the commission, South Africa has assisted Namibia to establish a cardiac unit at the Windhoek Central Hospital. On 23 June 2008, Namibia opened its first cardiac unit and became the third country on the continent after South Africa and Egypt to have a cardiac unit and to conduct successful heart operations.

South Africa is one of Namibia's important economic partners. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Namibia accounts for two thirds of Namibia's total foreign trade.

South Africa and Namibia are part of SADC and the Economic Partnership Agreement (EPA) configuration that is negotiating with the European Commission. The two countries share a common interest in ensuring that the EPA fosters regional integration and development.

Swaziland

In April 2008, then President Mbeki visited the Kingdom of Swaziland where he held bilateral political and economic discussions with King Mswati III about, among other things:

- economic opportunities presented by the 2010 World Cup
- the Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative, which has been identified as vital for leveraging economic integration between the two countries.

Tanzania

Bilateral relations with Tanzania are cordial and progress is being made in a wide range of fields of mutual interest. Both countries have experienced similar constitutional developments and challenges, and share similar views on multilateral issues. Trade between South Africa and Tanzania is steadily increasing and a number of exchanges have taken place at official level to enhance co-operation.

Close co-operation takes place in a number of fields between the two countries, and memorandums of understanding (MoUs) and agreements on a wide variety of issues have been signed. The Presidential Economic Commission provides the necessary co-operative framework to manage the development and implementation of bilateral projects.

Zambia

South Africa has established a deep mutual bond with Zambia, as evidenced by existing bilateral agreements and an annual increase in trade and investment flow between the two countries.

Former South African President and Mrs Mbeki, supported by the Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, represented the Government and people of South Africa at the official funeral service of the late Zambian President, Mr Levy Mwanawasa, on 3 September 2008.

Uganda

Official diplomatic relations between South Africa and Uganda were established in 1994. In March 2008, Cabinet approved the deployment of South African National Defence Force (SANDF) members in northern Uganda as part of the AU mission.

Kenya

In March 2008, the South African Government sent a relief consignment to Kenya in response to an appeal for emergency support aimed at helping its internally displaced persons, following the elections in December, which resulted in sporadic violence.

The consignment comprised, among other things, 10 000 blankets, 1 000 chemically treated mosquito nets, 1 000 tarpaulins and 2 000 water-purification tablets. The total cost of the intervention was R4 million.

In September 2008, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Mandisi Mpahlwa and the Kenyan Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Uhuru Kenyatta, addressed and opened the first Kenyan Trade Fair in South Africa. They also signed a bilateral trade co-operation agreement and an MoU on economic co-operation.

Zimbabwe

Zimbabwe celebrated 28 years of independence on 18 April 2008. Besides their geographical proximity, South Africa and Zimbabwe also have a common and long history of regional affiliation and cultural ties. The people of Zimbabwe also played an important role in supporting the liberation struggle against apartheid in South Africa.

The relationship at government-to-government level between South Africa and Zimbabwe is cordial and high-level co-operation is taking place.

A political agreement between Zanu-PF and the Movement for Democratic Change (MDC) was signed in Zimbabwe in September 2008 following a long process of negotiations facilitated by South Africa under the aegis of SADC and the AU.

In the agreement, parties declared their commitment to work together to create a genuine solution to the situation in Zimbabwe.

On 30 January 2009, the MDC and Zanu-PF ended more than four months of negotiations and agreed to a transitional power-sharing government.

The agreement came after an Extraordinary Summit of SADC Heads of State and Government meeting that was held in South Africa. The agreement is expected to last for up to two years after which elections are to be held under a new constitution.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa. The SANDF has been deployed in Ethiopia in support of the AU PSC.

Mr Seyoum Mesfin, the Minister of Foreign Affairs of Ethiopia, and a delegation of Ethiopian senior officials visited South Africa to attend the launch of the South Africa-Ethiopia Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC) in March 2008.

The two delegations recalled the signing of the Declaration of Intent in March 1998 and the General Co-operation Agreement between the South Africa and Ethiopia in March 2004.

The next meeting of officials is expected to be convened in Addis Ababa in 2009 to finalise negotiations on all draft agreements that have been exchanged between the two delegations and to further explore areas of co-operation.

This meeting will also prepare for the second session of the JMC to be held in Ethiopia in 2010.

The Ethiopian Prime Minister, Mr Mele Zenawi, visited South Africa in June 2008.

Development co-operation

South Africa is not a donor country, but development co-operation with countries in Africa is integral to the country's foreign policy. Assistance is wide-ranging and includes educational visits by agriculturists, establishing viable training centres, conserving the environment, and rendering medical assistance and technology-exchange programmes. Technical and financial assistance aimed at capacity-building, especially to SADC countries, is a major instrument for promoting economic development, peace and stability, democracy and the African Renaissance on a regional basis.

Relations with central Africa

South Africa continued to strengthen its bilateral relations with the countries in the central African region during 2008/09.

The embassies in Cameroon, Gabon, Congo and Equatorial Guinea are fully staffed and officials represent South Africa in Chad and São Tomé and Principe. An honorary consul has been appointed in the Central African Republic (CAR) to assist with South Africa's programmes in that country.

Gabon

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Gabon were established in 1992. A legal framework was created through the signing of a co-operation agreement, and further agreements were since signed.

A meeting of senior officials between the two countries took place in October 2007 in Gabon.

São Tomé and Principe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Principe and South Africa were established in May 1994. South Africa operates a satellite office in São Tomé and Principe under the accreditation of the embassy in Libreville, Gabon.

A general co-operation agreement between São Tomé and Principe and South Africa was signed in 2005.

Congo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Republic of Congo were established in March 1993. South Africa opened an embassy in Brazzaville in Congo in 2005. An MoU on Defence between South Africa and Congo was signed in April 2008 in Pretoria.

Equatorial Guinea

Diplomatic relations between Equatorial Guinea and South Africa were established in May 1993. The two countries have signed bilateral agreements in the following areas: general co-operation, defence and regular diplomatic consultation. The South African oil company Petro-SA is involved in oil-exploration activities in that country. The two countries are expected to launch a JBCC in the near future.

Cameroon

During 2006, South Africa and Cameroon signed a general co-operation agreement, a trade agreement and an MoU on economic co-operation.

These agreements set the framework for the strengthening of relations and business activity between the two countries.

Central African Republic

South Africa has enjoyed full dipromatic relations with the CAR since August 1993.

In May 2008, Cabinet approved the deployment of 15 SANDF members to CAR.

Chad

The South African embassy in Chad became fully functional in 2007. The Chadian Government is planning to open an embassy in Pretoria in the near future. Interaction between the two governments on bilateral issues continues to take place.

Rwanda

Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and Rwanda in May 1995. The two countries maintain good political relations. Their co-operation focuses on the post-conflict reconstruction of Rwanda and has extended to the co-ordination of Nepad on the continent.

To further strengthen this bilateral structure, the Implementation Monitoring Committee has been established at director-general level to provide the necessary co-ordinating, planning and monitoring framework to manage effective implementation of approved programmes, and to ensure the delivery of cross-cutting training and human-resource (HR) capacity-building programmes.

Burundi

South Africa's good relations with Burundi are demonstrated by the leading role the Government played in the Arusha Peace and Reconciliation Agreement signed by representatives of the main Hutu and Tutsi political parties, the Government of Burundi, and the National Assembly on 28 August 2000. South Africa's contribution towards the establishment of peace and stability in Burundi included the deployment of SANDF troops, with an African peace mission in Burundi, now called as the UN Operation in Burundi.

South Africa has committed itself to working with the regional leadership, the Government and the people of Burundi, including the leadership of the Palepehutu-FNL, in finding a long-lasting solution to their current challenges.

South Africa hosted a special meeting with government representatives of Burundi in June 2008 to discuss a way forward towards peace in that country.

An agreement between South Africa and Burundi was signed in September 2008 in Bujumbura to facilitate the implementation of a co-operation agreement between the two countries in the field of health, including strenthening interventions for safe motherhood, hospital services, reducing malaria morbidity and mortality and the referral of Burundian patients to the South African public health sector.

South Africa continues to contribute to the peace process in Burundi, with the Minister of Defence, Mr Charles Nqakula, being the facilitator.

Democratic Republic of Congo

The DRC has made remarkable progress and presents real opportunities for intraregional economic co-operation, foreign direct investment (FDI) and sustained growth and development. However, cycles of conflict have severely undermined both African and foreign-investor confidence, further weakened indigenous economic development and increased dependence on foreign loans and assistance.

South Africa is fully committed to continued engagement with the DRC, and to assisting the new democratically elected Government with its consolidation of democracy, in line with its foreign-policy objectives.

South Africa has also committed to providing ongoing assistance to the new Government to reform the DRC's economy, and is supporting measures to encourage a predictable and stable economic environment to unlock investment and trade opportunities between the two countries.

The Presidential Binational Commission (BNC) between South Africa and the DRC provides a legal framework to manage the numerous post-conflict reconstruction and development projects in that country.

In April 2008, former President Mbeki hosted his counterpart from the DRC, President Joseph Kabila, in Pretoria for the fifth BNC Summit.

South Africa's assistance to the DRC is broadly based on five priority areas: health, education, water and sanitation and infrastructure, with security sector reform being an all encompassing priority. The BNC, which has been in existence between South Africa and the DRC since 2004, provides a legal and administrative framework to manage and implement a number of post-conflict reconstruction and development projects in that country.

The implementation of projects in the DRC remains the substance of the BNC's work, focusing on the development of the DRC. A detailed report on the progress with respect to implementation of this Apex Priority was presented to the July 2008 Cabinet Lekgotla.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

During 2008/09, South Africa expanded and consolidated its bilateral relations with the region. The following key performance areas were achieved in the region:

- promoting the African Agenda in North Africa
- strengthening AU structures in the region
- contributing towards peace, stability, security and democracy in North Africa
- consolidating and enhancing strategic and structured bilateral relationships with the countries of North Africa
- economic diplomacy and tourism promotion
- promoting public diplomacy
- promoting South-South and North-South agendas.

Algeria

Algeria remains South Africa's strategic partner in North Africa. Synergy at the executive level in terms of the AU and Nepad has resulted in a presidential BNC. Bilateral trade and economic links have developed steadily.

South Africa's economic reach to Algeria includes possible involvement in the energy (hydrocarbons) sector. Since the establishment of the presidential BNC in 1998, various co-operation agreements have been signed.

South Africa has continued its co-operation with three important AU institutions based in Algiers, namely the Centre for the Study and Research on Terrorism, the African Energy Commission and the Pan-African Youth Union.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa established full diplomatic relations with Côte d'Ivoire in May 1992. Given its firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability, democratisation and development on the continent, South Africa will continue to promote the restoration of peace and stability in Côte d'Ivoire.

In this regard, South Africa's mediation efforts, under the auspices of the AU, culminated in the signing of the Pretoria Agreement in April 2005.

South Africa continues to support peace efforts in Côte d'Ivoire.

In March 2008, former President Mbeki met with President Laurent Gbagbo of Côte d' Ivoire, in Cape Town. They discussed among other things, the:

- status of the implementation of the Ouagadougou Peace Agreement
- national identification process
- demobilisation, disarming and reintegration process.

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt continue to enjoy cordial bilateral relations.

In July 2008, former President Mbeki held bilateral political, economic and trade discussions at the Union Buildings in Pretoria with the Egyptian President, Mr Hosni Mubarak, who paid his first state visit to South Africa.

The meeting was held to further strengthen and consolidate bilateral political, economic and trade relations between the two countries.

Sudan

The second session of the South Africa-Sudan JBC took place in May 2008 in Khartoum followed by the launch of the South Africa-Sudan Joint Business Forum. A number of agreements, including the MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Agriculture, an agreement on mutual assistance on customs administration and a letter of intent on health was signed during the JBC.

In March 2008, the AU Post-Conflict and Reconstruction Committee in Sudan, under the leadership of Minister Dlamini Zuma, visited that country and agreed that AU member states would contribute to projects that will assist with the development and reconstruction of Sudan.

South Africa is further involved in post-conflict reconstruction and development in Southern Sudan through the training of Sudan Government officials. Former President Mbeki visited Sudan in September 2008.

During the visit, the South African delegation held talks with President El Bashir on a wide range of issues that covered internal situations in their respective countries, and bilateral, regional and international issues of mutual concern.

Morocco

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Morocco remain cordial, but are influenced by South Africa's recognition of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic, as well as South Africa's principled stand on the issues of decolonisation and self-determination in relation to the illegal occupation of Western Sahara.

Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic

The issue of the illegal occupation of Western Sahara remains a foreign-policy priority for South Africa, especially in terms of the sanctity of colonial borders and the recognition of the Saharawi people's right for self-determination.

Mauritania

South Africa expanded the bilateral legal framework between the two countries and supported the implementation of the democratic roadmap undertaken by the military transitional government following the coup d'état of August 2005.

South Africa also supported the lifting of the AU suspension of the country.

In this regard, South Africa participated in the constitutional referendum in June 2006, legislative and municipal elections in December 2006 and presidential elections in March 2007, as part of the AU Observer Mission for Mauritania. The Islamic Republic of Mauritania opened a resident diplomatic mission in South Africa during 2006.

Liberia

Former Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka hosted Liberian President Ellen Johnson Sirleaf at a gala dinner in July 2008 at the Presidential Guest House in Pretoria.

Nigeria

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Nigeria were established in 1994. The two countries maintain good bilateral relations. Nigeria is one of South Africa's largest trading partners on the African continent. In May 2008, the seventh session of the South Africa-Nigeria BNC was held. In June 2008, the Nigerian President Mr Umari Yar'Adua, visited South Africa. This was his first state visit to South Africa.

More than 200 business people from South Africa and Nigeria converged in Johannesburg and Cape Town for the Nigeria-South Africa Business Forum that took place in Johannesburg and Cape Town, respectively, in July 2008.

The forum sought to strengthen economic ties and co-operation between the two countries by providing the necessary platform for information and knowledge-sharing, and the exploration of future collaborative business ventures.

Ghana

Diplomatic relations were established between Ghana and South Africa in 1994.

South Africa and Ghana have agreements in the following areas: mining, defence, taxation, investment and aviation.

A number of technical exchanges took place between South Africa and Ghana in 2006, including in the fields of defence and aviation.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso established non-resident diplomatic relations in May 1995. In 2006, South Africa established a diplomatic mission in Burkina Faso.

Although Burkina Faso has limited exploitable resources, opportunities exist for South African mining companies to mine gold, zinc and manganese. Since agriculture is the dominant industry, opportunities exist for the trade of various agricultural products. Trade between the two countries is limited. The South Africa-Burkina Faso JCC was established in 2007.

Benin

Diplomatic relations were established between Benin and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Benin maintain good bilateral relations. The two countries signed a general co-operation agreement in October 2003. They have, among other things, identified the following areas of co-operation: agriculture, arts and culture, and justice.

An embassy was opened in Cotonou in February 2007. Benin opened an embassy in Pretoria in 1999. The former Minister of Defence, Mr Mosiuoa Lekota, and Mr Issifo Kogui Ndouro, the Minister of Defence of Benin, signed an agreement to develop and formulate procedures for military co-operation between South Africa and Benin in June 2008.

The agreement also includes promoting the training of military personnel through the exchange of trainees, instructors and observers.

Republic of Togo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. South Africa and Togo maintain good bilateral relations.

The South African ambassador to Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Togo.

Cape Verde

South Africa and Cape Verde established diplomatic relations in 1994. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is also accredited as South Africa's non-resident ambassador to Cape Verde, while the Cape Verdean ambassador to Angola is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

In line with expanding South Africa's effort to expand her diplomatic reach on the African continent, regular interaction with Cape Verde is envisaged in the coming years, including exploring mutually beneficial business opportunities.

The Gambia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and The Gambia were established in August 1998. While South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited to The Gambia as non-resident ambassador, the Gambian ambassador to the AU in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa as that country's non-resident ambassador. South Africa maintains an honorary consul office in The Gambia to look after South African interests.

Guinea

Diplomatic relations were established with the Republic of Guinea in 1995. South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Conakry in November 2005.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Guinea-Bissau in February 2008. The opening of the diplomatic mission will contribute to the strengthening of bilateral relations between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau.

South Africa is also a member of the Country Specific Configuration on Guinea-Bissau with the UN Peace-Building Commission.

As part of this group, South Africa strives to mobilise the international community to contribute to the rebuilding of that country, in both political and economic terms.

In September 2008, a framework co-operation agreement was signed between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau.

Mali

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mali were established in 1994. The latter established an embassy in Pretoria in December 1995. A South African embassy was established in Bamako in November 2002, and the first South African ambassador to Mali was appointed in November 2003.

Mali is a strong supporter of the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad. In August 2002, the Agreement on the Preservation of the Ancient Manuscripts in the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu was concluded between the two countries.

South Africa is supporting a project aimed at improving the preservation of these ancient manuscripts.

They vary in content from religious treatises and poems to documentary letters dealing with legal and commercial matters, while others relate to slavery, mathematics, astronomy, medicine and history – all of them subjects of immense interest to scholars and the African population at large. Three major objectives of the project are to:

- implement a conservation programme to protect and improve environmental storage conditions for the manuscripts
- rebuild the Ahmed Baba Centre to one of international stature while ensuring its architectural harmony with ancient Timbuktu
- promote academic study and public awareness of the magnificent and ancient African and Islamic heritage at Timbuktu.

The two countries exhibited selected manuscripts from the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research at the Iziko Museum in Cape Town in 2008. The exhibition demonstrates bilateral co-operation between South Africa and Mali and affirms Africa's pre-colonial literary tradition. It also brought the people of the two countries closer in the effort to create a united and proud Africa. In January 2009, President Motlanthe attended the official opening of a new facility that was built in Mali to preserve the manuscripts.

South Africa and Mali held the review session of the South Africa-Mali JCC in February 2008. The session assessed progress in the implementation of decisions taken during the second session of the commission in December 2006.

The two countries are committed to promoting democracy and good governance, and there is substantial South African involvement in the Malian gold-mining sector.

Senegal

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Senegal were established in May 1994 and the two countries' representative offices were upgraded to embassy level. Bilateral relations between South Africa and Senegal are based mainly on the Senegalese Government's strong support for the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad, and its strong commitment to promoting democracy and good governance.

Dr Dlamini Zuma co-chaired the inaugural session of the South Africa-Senegal Joint Commission for Bilateral Co-operation (JCBC), with her Senegalese counterpart, Dr Cheikh Tidiane Gadio, on 30 April 2008. During the session, the two countries agreed to co-operate in various areas.

The session also enabled the signing of the bilateral Defence Co-operation Agreement. Agreements on sports co-operation, agriculture, livestock development and minerals and energy were signed in 2008.

Tunisia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Tunisia are characterised by a substantial reservoir of goodwill towards expanding relations, including closer economic and trade ties.

In September 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma co-chaired the fifth session of the South Africa-Tunis JBC with her Tunisian counterpart, Mr Abdelwaheb Abdallah. During her visit in Tunisia, Dr Dlamini Zuma paid a courtesy call to President Zine El Abidine Ben Ali.

Among the highlights of the discussions was the decision to embark on trilateral co-operation between South Africa, Tunisia and Mali on advanced training for Malian archivists tasked with the preservation of the Timbuktu manuscripts.

Libya

Unofficial relations between South Africa and the Great People's Socialist Libyan Arab Jamahiriya are long-standing and go back to the days of the struggle against apartheid.

The first South African formal accreditation was established on 19 November 1996, when the South African ambassador to Tunisia presented his credentials to the Secretary of the General People's Committee for Foreign Liaison and International Co-operation (Foreign Minister).

Relations between South Africa and Libya are solid and have been highlighted by high-profile visits to Libya by both former presidents Nelson Mandela and Mbeki. South Africa made a significant contribution to negotiations for the release of the two Libyan suspects in the so-called "Lockerbie issue".

Sierra Leone

South Africa and Sierra Leone established diplomatic relations in 1998. The South African ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire was accredited to Sierra Leone in December 2002.

Although the country remains poor, various accomplishments towards promoting democracy and development have been achieved.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established between Niger and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Niger maintain good bilateral relations.

South Africa is represented in Niger on a non-residential basis by its ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire. Niger is represented in South Africa by its ambassador in Ethiopia.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

Asia and Australasia

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the New Asia-Africa Strategic Partnership (NAASP) in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Bandung Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP, in the spirit of Bandung, represents a commitment by heads of state and governments to help build closer economic ties between Africa and Asia.

East Asia

Japan

South Africa's bilateral relationship with Japan has expanded across a wide spectrum and is strengthened with regular interaction between the two countries under the auspices of the bilateral Partnership Forum.

The forum was upgraded to the level of ministers of foreign affairs at the end of 2006, when Minister Dlamini Zuma paid an official visit to Japan.

The Partnership Forum provides a framework within which both countries are able to continuously work towards strengthening, developing and broadening relations to the mutual benefit of both countries. Discussions are held over a wide spectrum of areas.

The exchanges in the fields of S&T constitute a priority bilateral sector and are aimed at extending such initiatives to the benefit of the region at large.

The Government of Japan has provided substantial assistance to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa). Japan established the Japanese Jipsa Working Group in Tokyo, which mobilises Japanese stakeholders from across the spectrum (public, private and civil-society institutions) to assist with HR capacity-building.

In March 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma attended the Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD) Ministerial Preparatory Conference. The conference laid a foundation for the Africa-Japan Heads of State Summit held in May 2008 in Japan. South Africa participated in the TICAD IV Ministerial Preparatory Conference within the context of fostering African development through the strategic partnership with Japan.

Launched by Japan in 1993 as an initiative for Africa's development, TICAD is aimed at promoting high-level policy dialogue between African leaders and development partners. TICAD also seeks to mobilise support for African-owned development initiatives. In this regard, key issues addressed at the ministerial conference included the acceleration of sustainable economic growth, achieving the MDGs, consolidating peace and democratisation, and addressing environmental issues.

The conference was organised around the theme "Towards a Vibrant Africa: A Continent of Hope and Opportunity". TICAD's guiding principles of African ownership and international partnerships are entrenched in Nepad values and principles. Both TICAD and Nepad place identical obligations on African countries and their development partners. Of the eight Nepad Programme of Action areas, Japan has identified the following four as immediate priority areas:

- infrastructure
- agriculture
- market access (trade and investment promotion, as well as private-sector development)
- HR development.

The Koreas

As part of Korea's contribution to Jipsa, the country has offered a number of skills-training opportunities to the South African youth.

Negotiations towards a bilateral air services agreement were held in Seoul in early 2008 in an attempt to reach an agreement, which if agreed to, may put into place a direct flight between the two capitals. There has been a notable increase in the number of Koreans visiting South Africa since 2005. On the trade side, a positive trade balance in favour of South Africa was achieved by the end of February 2008.

Relations between South Africa and the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (North Korea) are cordial. In 2007, the two countries celebrated five years of the establishment of diplomatic relations.

Greater China

The year 2008 was significant in that it marked the 10th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between South Africa and the People's Republic of China (PRC). The celebratory programme commemorating this historic landmark was launched with an exchange of congratulatory messages between the two presidents and their foreign ministers on 1 January 2008 with the two countries agreeing to sponsor or co-sponsor a series of events during the course of the year. A series of South African weeks celebrating the 10th anniversary were held in Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou and Hong Kong in April 2008.

The period 2007/08 saw a further strengthening and enhancement of the burgeoning Strategic Partnership between South Africa and the PRC with a number of significant high-level visits and projects reinforcing this relationship.

The third session of the BNC was held in September 2007. Among the conclusions reached at the BNC was an agreement to establish a strategic dialogue between the two foreign ministers to further strengthen and enhance the South African-Chinese Strategic Partnership. At the invitation of Minister Dlamini Zuma, Mr Yang Jiechi, Minister of Foreign Affairs of the PRC, visited South Africa in January 2008 for the inaugural session of the Strategic Dialogue.

Several high-level meetings took place in 2008. South Africa has also confirmed its participation in the Shanghai World Expo, which will be held in 2010. The World Expo with its 150-year history is regarded as the Olympic Games of the economy and S&T and is scheduled to run from 1 May to 31 October 2010. Economic and trade relations between South Africa and the PRC have grown rapidly since the formal establishment of diplomatic relations 10 years ago.

South Asia

South Africa and Afghanistan established diplomatic relations in September 1994. South Africa never recognised the former Taliban regime and has normalised relations with the current Government. The South Africa Liaison Office for

Afghanistan was established in 2003, headed non-residentially by the South African high commissioner to Pakistan.

South Africa and Sri Lanka established diplomatic relations in 1994.

In April 2008, former President Mbeki paid an official visit to India where he led a senior South African government delegation to the inaugural Africa-India Partnership Summit.

Heads of state and government from South Africa, DRC, Ghana, Kenya, Senegal, Uganda, Zambia, Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Egypt, Libya, Algeria, Tanzania and Nigeria as well as the chairperson of the AU Commission participated alongside Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh in the summit that considered modalities to strengthen the co-operation between Africa and India.

While in India, former President Mbeki visited Indian President Pratibha Patil and held discussions with the incoming chairperson of the AU, Tanzanian President Jakaya Kikwete. India is among the top 10 investing countries in South Africa. Several South African and Indian businesses belong to the Indo-South Africa CEOs Business Forum that was established in 2004 to help stimulate trade and investment between the two countries.

The existence of opportunities for closer co-operation between South Africa and India have been identified in the capital equipment, agroprocessed products, autos and components, services, ICT, S&T, health and SMME sectors.

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Pakistan were established in April 1994. A letter of understanding, establishing a joint commission (JC) between the two countries, was signed in 1999. The lifting of the Commonwealth suspensions that had been imposed on Pakistan paved the way for the normalisation of South Africa's relations with that country, and created the opportunity to engage on issues of mutual interest.

The first session of the South Africa-Pakistan Bilateral JC was held in Islamabad in March 2007.

South-east Asia

The Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean) has emerged as one of the most important groupings within the Asia Pacific region. South Africa maintains embassies and high commissions in six of the 10 member states of Asean – Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam and the Philippines. These Asean states and Myanmar (Burma) also maintain embassies and high commissions in South Africa.

Singapore is an important member of the Indian Ocean Rim (IOR) of which South Africa is a member. Singapore has also played a leading role in formulating the NAASP. This partnership mandated all Asian and African countries to give expression to their political relations by expanding trade and economic relations.

Vietnam plays an increasingly important role in South-east Asia and has vast economic potential and opportunities for mining, infrastructure development, and agricultural and manufacturing companies.

South Africa believes that there is large potential for economic relations and especially for the private sector to take up business opportunities in Vietnam. There are many long-term trade and investment opportunities for South African companies in that country. Economic relations with Malaysia and Indonesia remain important, due to Malaysian investment in South Africa and the size of the Indonesian market.

Malaysia has indicated its support for Nepad and has sought to promote the Malaysian-initiated Langkawi International Dialogue aimed at expanding co-operation among countries of the South, including those in southern Africa.

President Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono from Indonesia paid a state visit to South Africa in March 2008.

Taiwan

The fifth session of the South Africa-Taiwan Dialogue Forum took place in South Africa in November 2007. The dialogue forum serves as a vehicle for technical co-operation between South Africa and Taiwan in the fields of trade and investment, health, S&T education, telecommunications and arts and culture co-operation.

Central Asia

The economies of Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Kyrgyzstan and Tajikistan are all at various stages of change and development. Economic opportunities for South Africa in the Central Asian states include infrastructure development, mining technology, energy exploitation and related mining and engineering technology, agro-processing expertise and exports, water-management expertise, and infrastructure for adventure and ecotourism.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

South Africa and Australia established diplomatic relations in 1947 and enjoy very close political and economic ties. As campaigns for the international isolation of South Africa intensified in the 1970s and 1980s, successive Australian governments placed Australia firmly in the anti-apartheid camp, supporting UN resolutions against apartheid and implementing the oil, trade and arms embargo as well as a sports boycott against South Africa.

New Zealand maintains a high commission in Pretoria, while the high commission in Canberra represents South Africa in New Zealand.

Since 1994, political, economic and social links between the two countries have improved significantly. In 1996, the Cape Town Communique was signed, seeking to strengthen co-operation between South Africa and New Zealand.

The political relationship has been further strengthened through visits by numerous high-level delegations to New Zealand to gain expertise in their different fields and to exchange knowledge to enhance capacity-building in central, provincial and local-government structures.

South Africa and New Zealand enjoy wide-ranging multilateral relations. Both are members of the Valdivia Group, which aims to promote southern hemisphere views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific co-operation.

They enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Indian Ocean fisheries, and also interact within the context of the WTO and the Cairns Group.

South Africa and New Zealand also work closely on Commonwealth issues, particularly those affecting Africa. The South African Government wants to strengthen relations with the Pacific Islands. The roving ambassador to the Pacific Islands has been accredited to the Independent State of Papua New Guinea, the Fiji islands and the Solomon Islands.

In February 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma met her counterpart from New Zealand, Mr Winston Peters, for bilateral discussions.

The high commissioner in Canberra, Australia, has been accredited to the Cook Islands, Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of Marshall Islands, the Republic of Vanuatu and the Independent State of Samoa.

The Middle East

In the Middle East, the Department of Foreign Affairs distinguishes between two clearly identifiable subregions. On the one hand, there is the Levant, which comprises Israel, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine and Syria; and on the other is the Arabian/Persian Gulf Region, comprising the member states of the Gulf Co-operation Council, namely Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Iran and Yemen.

The Middle East is an important economic region as it occupies a unique geopolitical position in the tricontinental hub of Europe, Asia and Africa.

It is the source of 67% of the world's petroleum reserves and commands two of the most strategically important waterways in the world, namely the Arabian/Persian Gulf and the Red Sea, giving access to the Asian hinterland via the Gulf of Aqaba. South Africa places strong emphasis on the expansion of diplomatic representation and activities in this region, where it was formerly under-represented, particularly in the area of trade, which has grown significantly since 1994. South Africa has embassies in 10 of the 14 countries in the regions: Iran, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Oman, Palestine, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Syria and UAE. There are also two subordinate consular missions in the region, namely in Dubai (UAE) and Jeddah (Saudi Arabia). Of the 14 Middle East countries, 13 have embassies in South Africa – only Bahrain is not represented in this country.

The South African consulate general in Jeddah, in addition to performing important functions relating to the promotion of trade, also serves members of the South African Muslim community on their annual pilgrimage to Mecca. More than 7 000 South Africans embark on the Hajj pilgrimage each year.

South Africa supports a just, equitable and comprehensive peace process in the Middle East and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region. Peace and security for the Israelis and the Palestinians cannot be achieved without the fulfilment of the inalienable right of the Palestinian people to self-determination within their own sovereign state.

South Africa has continued to call on all parties to the conflict in Israel and Palestine to avoid actions that could add to an already volatile situation. The country has been consistent in calling for the immediate implementation of the Road Map, without preconditions, to achieve comprehensive and lasting peace between Israel and Palestine.

Featuring prominently in the Israeli-Palestinian peace process is the United States (US)-initiated Annapolis International Conference, which took place in November 2007. South Africa was represented by Minister Dlamini Zuma. The conference called for ongoing negotiations between President Mahmoud Abbas of Palestine and Prime Minister Ehud Olmert of Israel, as well as steering committees led by Israeli Foreign Minister Tzipi Livni and former Palestinian Prime Minister Ahmed Qurei, to reach final status agreements.

In an effort to alleviate the humanitarian situation of Palestinians, the South African Government announced its intention to provide financial assistance to Palestine for capacity-building projects. The donation will be made annually for a period of three years from 2008 to 2010

In February 2008 in Cairo, the South African Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, together with Mr Amre Moussa, Secretary General of the League of Arab States, signed an agreement formalising the establishment of the Arab League Office in South Africa. The opening of such an office in South Africa, with full diplomatic privileges, will further promote bilateral relations between South Africa and the Arab countries.

In May 2008, former President Mbeki led a high-powered government and business delegation to Qatar within the context of South Africa's priority to consolidate bilateral political, economic and trade relations with Qatar and the other Gulf States.

Economic-related agreements signed with the Middle East region include those relating to air services, double taxation and fiscal evasion, health, promotion and reciprocal protection of investments and trade.

On 31 July 2008, the 10th meeting of the South Africa-Iran JC was held in Tehran, Iran.

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made major multimillion rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as on the Johannesburg Securities Exchange.

Relations with the Americas

United States of America

The overall bilateral relationship with the USA remains strong with co-operation expanding on matters of common interest and mutual benefit. Since 1999, business, civilian and governmental links with the USA have expanded. The bilateral relationship has been reviewed on an annual basis within the South Africa-USA Annual Bilateral Forum. The reviews focus on the achievements and challenges that have arisen and consider the way forward in various identified categories of interaction, namely:

- peace-building and security
- expansion of democracy and freedom
- spreading economic growth and well-being.

Direct high-level government-to-government contact has continued and interactions at multilateral events such as the G8 and the United Nations General Assembly (UNGA).

In May 2007, former President George W Bush re-authorised the legislation that established the President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (Pepfar). Through Pepfar, South Africa was allocated a total of approximately R6 billion (US$850 million) during a four-year period. In 2007, South Africa received about R2,8 billion, of which 80% was directly disbursed to South African organisations, including dozens of community and faith-based groups. In terms of capacity-building, the visit of the Secretary of Health and Human Services, Mr Michael Leavitt, culminated in projects through which the South African departments of health and of social development received US support in the establishment of training programmes for clinical assistants.

During 2007, the USA remained the largest donor of ODA to South Africa and one of the single largest foreign investors in the South African economy.

South Africa is one of the USA's leading trading partners in Africa, and accounts for the most diverse trade flows. Total trade between the two countries has been increasing steadily in recent years, with South Africa maintaining a trade surplus. The USA is South Africa's second-largest trade partner after Germany, and its second-largest export market. South Africa continues to take advantage of the benefits of the African Gowth and Opportunity Act and will continue to work towards increasing export volumes and diversifying its product lines.

An important pillar of South Africa's bilateral relations is people-to-people interaction. In this regard, a wide range of individuals and institutions continue to interact on a regular basis; notably through the process of engaging the Diaspora, increasing training and capacity-building, and concluding MoUs in areas such as S&T, education, agriculture, sister city agreements, etc. The USA is the second-largest source of tourists to South Africa.

Canada

The annual consultations between South Africa and Canada, first launched in 2003 as a result of a Declaration of Intent signed during former President Mbeki's state visit to Canada, remain an effective vehicle for managing relations in all spheres.

The year 2008 heralded the fifth consecutive annual consultations in Pretoria. The agenda had expanded in scope and includes ODA, trade and investment and co-operation in the fields of sport, arts and culture, S&T, safety and security, minerals and energy, agriculture and transport and Africa and multilateral issues. Twelve South African government departments are now participating in the annual state consultations plenary, while a further six are participating in the back-to-back ODA annual consultations between South Africa and Canada as arranged in close consultation with National Treasury.

Co-operation between the various spheres of government is ongoing with a perennial focus on skills transfer and capacity-building. A steady growth in regular high-level visits in both directions further serves to cement and expand the cordial and mutually beneficial interaction in all spheres.

In the field of ODA, Canada has provided assistance totalling more than US$200 million since 1979 with annual spending averaging about US$14 million since 2000/01. Canada's continued constructive involvement in South Africa focuses on the strengthening of service-delivery in four key sectors, namely HIV and AIDS, governance, rural development and regional co-operation.

In the economic sphere, Canada has become the second-largest investor in South Africa after the USA and is still in an upward curve. Bombardier invested about R13 billion in the Gautrain and the announced Rio Tinto/Alcan investment in an aluminium smelter at Coega amounts to R21 billion. Mining investment also continues to show positive growth and was estimated to total R8,8 billion in 2007. With several major Canadian mining investments due to come off the ground in the next couple of years, Canadian investment in South African mining is expected to double by 2010.

South Africa remains Canada's largest trading partner in sub-Saharan Africa. There has been an exponential growth in trade, with figures doubling between 2000 and 2007.

Annual two-way trade between South Africa and Canada increased by more than 20% in 2007 with South African exports to Canada reaching more than R8 billion, while imports from Canada amounted to about R6 billion.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean (Caricom). The South African embassy in Cuba is accredited to the Dominican Republic, while the South African high commission in Kingston, Jamaica, is accredited to 15 Caricom countries. A high commission, headed by a *chargé d'affaires*, was established in Trinidad and Tobago in 2006.

The majority of the people of the Caribbean are of African descent and thus have strong historical and cultural links with the continent of Africa. South Africa's endeavour, in conjunction with the AU to strengthen co-operation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean, has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

New governments have recently come to power in Barbados, Belize and Jamaica. In February 2008, Cuba's President Fidel Castro relinquished power to his brother Raul Castro as a result of ill health.

Trinidad and Tobago has vast resources of natural gas and is a manufacturing and transport hub in the region. In formulating South Africa's policy in relation to the emerging markets of the Caribbean, it is important to strengthen relations and develop common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and the promotion of the development agenda.

Jamaica and Trinidad and Tobago have established resident missions in South Africa. By mid-2008, the Dominican Republic was in the process of establishing a resident mission in South Africa and an agreement had been granted to the ambassador-designate and to the high commissioner-designate of Jamaica.

The Foreign Affairs Minister of Suriname paid a visit to South Africa to, among other things, officially open that country's diplomatic mission.

The sixth session of the South Africa-Cuba Consultative Forum was held in June 2008 in Pretoria. This historic event preceded the first Summit of the African, Caribbean, Latin American Leaders and the Diaspora.

Accordingly, it laid the basis for the Diaspora to play a pivotal role in the renewal of Africa while simultaneously cementing African-Caribbean-Latin American solidarity and co-operation.

Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Cuba for bilateral discussions in August 2008. The minister briefed South Africa's envoys on regional, continental and international political issues, including the outcomes of the SADC Summit.

Humanitarian assistance of R500 000 was respectively rendered to Haiti and Bolivia.

Latin America

The South American community of nations covers 17 million square kilometres, with 361 million inhabitants, a gross domestic product (GDP) of more than US$973 billion and exports of more than US$180 billion. The developing countries in Central America and the Andean Community are playing an increasingly important role in international political bodies and formations such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) under the Presidency of Cuba and the UN.

Bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and the strengthening of co-operation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels. A number of important visits from Latin America during 2008 provided a platform for closer co-operation.

Of particular importance is the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American countries.

Bilateral relations with Latin America will be used to enhance economic, scientific, technical and business opportunities through bilateral mechanisms such JBCs. Opportunities for interactions with the G5 will be monitored continually.

There is also significant potential for co-operation with the Mercosur (Southern Common Market) trading bloc, which consists of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay and Venezuela as full members (Venezuela still to be ratified by Brazil and Paraguay), and a steadily increasing number of associate members in the Latin American region. A partial Preferential Trade Agreement with the Mercosur was signed in December 2004, with negotiations regarding outstanding detail completed in mid-2008. Negotiations are expected to continue towards a full FTA.

Brazil remains a significant player in the multilateral context, particularly regarding the interests of the South. With its like-minded approach to a number of significant issues affecting the developing world, it remains a strategic partner for South Africa.

In the bilateral sphere, a broad range of contacts and exchanges are ongoing between Brazil and South Africa. A South African investment recruitment mission visited Brazil in June 2008.

The India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum also provides a multilateral mechanism for institutionalised engagement. In this context, South-South co-operation was boosted by the IBSA Ministerial Meeting in Somerset West in May 2008, which covered a broad range of topics and coincided with the first IBSA joint naval exercise.

In October 2008, President Motlanthe, Dr Dlamini Zuma and a large delegation of government officials and business people visited India for the third IBSA Summit in New Delhi. The South African delegation attended the IBSA Summit within the context of advancing South Africa's economic interests within the framework of advancing South-South co-operation.

A range of technical and commercial agreements are either in place or being negotiated with several of the countries in the region.

The inaugural meeting of the South Africa-Argentine JC took place in Pretoria in February 2007, co-chaired by Minister Dlamini Zuma and her Argentine counterpart, Mr Jorge Taiana, with the second meeting taking place in Buenos Aires in July 2008.

The JC with Brazil also took place during 2008, as did the Joint Consultative Mechanism with Chile.

Official and study visits to countries of the Southern Cone by ministers and officials are ongoing. In the sphere of defence, for example, the navies of several Southern Cone countries and South Africa participated jointly in the 2008 Atlasur joint naval exercise, contributing to closer institutional ties.

In August 2008, former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka visited Mexico. She also led a South African delegation to the 17th International AIDS Conference.

Relations with Europe

European Union (EU)

The EU is a unique international organisation comprising 27 member states. Developed primarily as a single market, it is the largest economy in the world with a combined nominal GDP of almost €12 trillion in 2006. The EU has a common trade policy, a common agricultural and fisheries policy, and a regional policy (to assist its underdeveloped regions). Thirteen member states have also adopted a single currency, the Euro. The EU has also developed the Common Foreign and Security Policy and the European Security and Defence Policy.

Since 1994, building on shared values and mutual interests, South Africa and the EU have developed a comprehensive partnership based on the Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA). The TDCA, which was signed in 1999, provisionally came into force in January 2000, and was fully ratified on 1 May 2004, governs South Africa's relations with the EU. Through this agreement, a partnership has been built, which rests on five pillars: trade, political dialogue, development co-operation, economic co-operation and co-operation in other areas.

Following a review in 2004, which was conducted in terms of the requirements of articles 18 and 103 of the TDCA, calling for a review within five years of its entry into force, South Africa and the EU embarked on negotiating new texts during 2007 under titles I (*Political Dialogue*), IV (*Economic Co-operation*), V (*Development Co-operation*), VI (*Other Areas of Co-operation*, and VII (*Financial Aspects of Co-operation*) of the agreement. Following up to five rounds of extensive negotiations in some of the negotiating groups, agreement was reached on new texts in 10 October 2007, when the two chief negotiators initialled agreed texts for 35 new and revised articles. The revised agreement was expected to be signed during 2008.

South Africa and the EU agreed at the 2005 Joint Co-operation Council (JCC) to build on the strong and productive relations underpinned by the TDCA by working towards a truly strategic partnership based on an open and concrete dialogue, pursued on the basis of mutual understanding and ownership of the process. As a consequence, the Joint Action Plan for the South African-EU Strategic Partnership was adopted on 14 May 2007 at the South African-EU Ministerial Troika meeting held in Brussels, Belgium.

The EU has developed strategic partnerships with major actors in the global economic and political spheres, including the USA, Canada, Russia, Japan, Ukraine, China, India and Brazil. The Joint Action Plan for the South African-EU Strategic Partnership develops a strategic partnership that significantly enhances existing co-operation, including most notably at summit level, on issues of mutual interest at bilateral, regional, continental or global level. One of the guiding principles for the strategic partnership is that it must support South Africa's national, regional and African priorities and programmes to eradicate poverty and underdevelopment, such as AsgiSA, Jipsa and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BEE). This is further emphasised in the stated objective of the development partnership between South Africa and the EU to develop the Second Economy and to link it more closely to the First Economy. The broader policy dialogue with the EU and its member states includes the sharing of experiences of the regional policy of the EU, employment and social affairs, macroeconomic dialogue and education and training.

The strategic partnership does not replace but rather builds upon the TDCA. In 2007, two South African-EU ministerial troikas were held under the new strategic partnership. The first annual summit under the partnership took place in July 2008.

Implementation of the TDCA's trade provisions has been underway since 2000 with the aim of establishing an FTA between South Africa and the EU by 2012. Total trade has developed considerably over the past decade. In 2007, South Africa's exports to the EU amounted to R137 billion. The EU ranked as South Africa's number one exporting region for 2006 and 2007. South Africa's total imports from the EU amounted to R 176 billion in 2007, also ranking number one.

As a member of the SADC and the world's oldest customs union, the Sacu, South Africa is participating in the negotiation of the SADC-Economic Partnership Agreement (EPA) with the EU. The revision of the trade chapter of the TDCA has, therefore, been fully subsumed into the SADC-EPA process. The SADC-EPA negotiating framework was presented in March 2006 by the participating member states of Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland and Tanzania. An EU response was presented to the SADC-EPA negotiating forum in March 2007, after which full-scale negotiations began.

South Africa and the EU have signed two separate agreements on wine and on spirits. South Africa has not ratified these agreements pending the conclusion of negotiations on South African

i

The European Union (EU)-South Africa Summit was held in July 2008 in Bordeaux, France. In a joint statement of the European Commission by the former President of South Africa, Mr Thabo Mbeki, President of France, Mr Nicolas Sarkozy, and President Jose Manuel Barroso, the presidents welcomed that, since the establishment of a strategic partnership between South Africa and the EU in May 2007, bilateral relations have developed into an enhanced mutually beneficial partnership, based on strengthened political dialogue and co-operation in a wide range of economic and other areas. The partnership is a reflection of the shared values and interests of South Africa and the EU and an instrument for both sides to jointly pursue their commitment to promote liberty, peace, security and stability in the world and Africa in particular. The presidents identified the following possible areas for enhanced bilateral co-operation in future: energy, space, transport, health, information communications technology, migration and social dialogue. They also welcomed the adoption by the EU of the EU Agenda for Action on the Millennium Development Goals.

trademarks and EU geographical indicators. Negotiations to conclude a fisheries agreement have been abandoned.

The earliest agreement with the EU is the S&T Agreement (1997), which facilitated access by South African researchers into the EU's Framework Programme – the main instrument of the EU for funding excellence-based research.

Through regular and concerted marketing of South Africa's S&T expertise in Europe, as well as the fostering of strategic partnerships with key European research and development (R&D) organisations, South African researchers secured participation in almost 120 Sixth Framework Programme projects, resulting in direct European investment of €15 million into South African research and enabling South African participation in cutting-edge European R&D projects worth more than €500 million.

With regard to development co-operation, the Country Strategy Paper (CSP) between South Africa and the EU for 2007 to 2013 is the jointly agreed framework for development co-operation and implementation. It was drawn up by South Africa, the European Commission (EC) and 10 EU member states.

It is innovative in the sense that it constitutes a joint analysis between partners (i.e. member states and the commission) on South Africa's developmental needs, and a joint strategy to address these needs. The goal of development co-operation will be poverty alleviation in the context of sustainable development, in line with the South African Government's policy objectives, namely to:

- promote pro-poor sustainable economic growth, including in the Second Economy
- improve the capacity and provision of basic services for the poor, including HIV and AIDS and education
- promote good governance.

The CSP sets out a joint response strategy, which is then implemented through the Multi-Indicative Programme. It is much wider in scope than a traditional development strategy, as it aims to develop the TDCA, in the medium term, into a strategic partnership in every area. The EU is South Africa's largest development partner representing about 70% of all ODA. The financial envelope approved for South Africa for 2007 to 2013 is €980 million. The European Investment Bank has also approved a loan mandate of €900 million for South Africa after considerable lobbying by the South African Government.

African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) States – European Union relations

South Africa assumed full membership of the ACP group of countries in 1996. It became a qualified member of the Lomé Convention in 1997 and of its successor, the Cotonou Partnership Agreement (CPA), signed in Cotonou in June 2000.

The CPA is a framework for co-operation between the 78 countries of the ACP group and the EU. The new EU members that acceded in May 2004 adopted the agreement as part of the EU's legislative infrastructure.

Qualified membership means that South Africa is excluded from the trade regime provided in the agreement and from the provisions on ODA. South Africa can, however, tender for projects in all ACP countries and participate fully in all political instruments of the agreement. South Africa's economic relations with the EU are governed by the TDCA.

The CPA differs significantly from its predecessor in that its duration will be 20 years, with a revision clause every five years and a financial protocol for each five-year period. The agreement underscores the importance of regional economic co-operation.

The most far-reaching changes are to be introduced in the area of trade, through regional EPAs, where non-reciprocal preferences will be gradually abolished and regional integration processes encouraged. One of the key aspects of South Africa's membership of the ACP is its active participation in the three ACP-EU joint political organs, namely the Council of Ministers, the Joint Parliamentary Assembly and the Committee of Ambassadors.

South Africa takes part in dialogue on important issues such as peace-building, conflict resolution, respect for human rights, democratic principles and the rule of law. South Africa regularly participates in ACP summits, Council of Ministers' meetings, trade ministers' meetings and the ACP Forum on S&T.

The interest and commitment shown by the EU regarding the African continent and its development is encouraging. Within that context, the EC and the Nepad Secretariat are closely co-operating through established structures and regular dialogue and information-sharing. They have also agreed to increase coherence between EU member states and the EC in support of Nepad projects, the AU and its institutions, and the RECs.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major tourist-providers.

South Africa enjoys close political relations with the Netherlands, Belgium and Luxembourg and engages in substantial and fruitful co-operation partnerships with these countries.

The focus on establishing trilateral co-operation to promote peace, security and economic diplomacy are continuing, with special emphasis on initiatives in support of Jipsa and AsgiSA.

The Belgian Government continues to take a keen interest in South and southern Africa, and the Great Lakes Region, particularly the DRC. There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium on the issues and the complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

In October 2007, the second session of the Belgium-South Africa JC was held in Pretoria, with the focus on bilateral political and economic relations, promotion of the African Agenda, development co-operation and co-operation within the context of the United Nations Security Council (UNSC).

Co-operation with Flanders is strong on AsgiSA and Jipsa, especially in the areas of skills development and the development of SMMEs.

The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral ministerial meetings are held frequently.

In April 2008, former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka led a government delegation on an official visit to the Netherlands. Luxembourg and South Africa enjoy good bilateral relations. High-level visits between the two states take place regularly.

German-speaking countries

Since 1994, the relationship between South Africa and Germany has developed into a strong socio-economic and political partnership that has shown considerable growth in many areas.

Germany has made substantial new investments in the South African economy since the 1994 democratic election and remains one of the country's most important trading partners. Since its inception in 1996, the South Africa-German BNC has become the most significant instrument through which bilateral relations are conducted. The extent of co-operation and joint initiatives is substantial.

Germany ranks with the United Kingdom (UK) and the USA among the three largest economic role-players in South Africa regarding trade, investment, finance and tourism. Major investments by German companies include BMW, DaimlerChrysler, Volkswagen, Siemens, Bayer and Ferrostaal.

In February 2008, the German Minister of Education and Reasearch, Dr Anette Schavan, visited South Africa as the guest of the Minister of Science and Technology Mr Mosibudi Mangena.

She was accompanied by a large delegation of scientific experts and representatives from industry to enhance technical and scientific co-operation and skills transfers.

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland have continued to grow since 1994. As a result of democratic changes in South Africa, Switzerland decided to grant South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

In December 2007, Minister Mangena signed the Agreement on Scientific Co-operation with Switzerland.

In March 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma held bilateral political, economic and trade discussions with her Swiss counterpart, Ms Micheline Calmy-Rey.

The South Africa-Switzerland Joint Working Group meeting was held in May 2008 in Berne, Switzerland.

Bilateral relations with the Republic of Austria are sound. Economic relations were significantly strengthened during the visit in September 2007 by a South African business delegation.

This was followed by a visit by a delegation of the Austrian Chamber of Commerce. Besides engaging the Austrian Government at national level in support of development programmes, increased economic involvement, and support for the African Agenda, provincial partnerships with key Austrian provinces have also resulted in increased business ties and commitments to support training programmes for South African students. Closer co-operation in the field of renewable energies is excpected to intensify in the future.

In April 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma held bilateral political, economic and trade discussions with her Austrian counterpart, Ms Ursula Plassnik, in Vienna.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys excellent relations with all the Nordic countries (Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden). Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development co-operation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close co-operation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad. They are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa, and have already entered into trilateral projects with South Africa such as in the DRC. In March 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma joined Nordic and African foreign ministers at the seventh session of the Nordic-African Informal Foreign Ministerial Meeting in Gaborone, Botswana.

They discussed, among other things, climate change and its effects on Africa, peace and security challenges in Africa and UN issues.

Prime Minister Jens Stoltenberg of Norway paid a working visit to South Africa in April 2008 and signed a Joint Declaration on Climate Change and Energy Issues with former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka. The Sweden-South Africa Business Breakfast Seminar was held in April 2008. The purpose of the seminar, which was hosted by the Department of Trade and Industry, in conjunction with the Swedish Trade Council, Swedish Embassy and Business Unity South Africa, was to strengthen economic and trade relations between Sweden and South Africa.

It focused on issues of common interest for the Swedish and the South African Business Community such as the general business climate in South Africa, possibilities and partnerships around 2010, BEE and the broader economic co-operation between South Africa and Sweden.

United Kingdom and Ireland

The UK is one of the largest foreign direct investors into South Africa and consistently occupies the third position in terms of South African exports. With the number of tourists per year approaching half a million, the UK is also South Africa's most important overseas tourism market.

South Africa receives about R4 billion ODA per year, which accounts for around 1% of the South African total budget per annum. The UK, through its Department for International Development (DFID) as implementing arm, seeks to promote development and reduce poverty in Africa. The UK took the lead initiatives in putting the plight of Africa on the agenda of the G8 discussions held in the UK in 2005, advocating for additional resource requirements to tackle poverty and vulnerability in Africa and "make poverty history".

South Africa's relationship with the UK covers a very wide spectrum and remains sound. The main areas of co-operation are political, trade and investment, security, defence, finance, tourism and other technical sectors. The defence relationship remains important for the strategic interest of both countries. The UK contributed R2,3 million to the establishment of the South African National Peace Mission Training Centre in Pretoria. In the multilateral arena, good working relations exist between South Africa and the UK, where challenges are dealt with as they appear.

The eighth meeting of the South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum was held in Pretoria in July 2008.

Irish Prime Minister, Mr Bertie Ahern, paid a working visit to South Africa in January 2008, accompanied by about 50 Irish businesses investigating investment and joint venture opportunities in South Africa.

In February 2008, former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka launched the Irish and South African Heritage Project at the Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island in Cape Town. The project is based on historical research of bilateral relations that both Ireland and South Africa have shared since 1994. The project will extend relations between the two countries, through potential exchange programmes on e-schools, where students from the two countries would participate.

Former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka visited Ireland in April 2008 to follow-up on AsgiSA and Jipsa projects discussed during her November 2006 visit to Dublin.

In June 2008, South Africa and the governments of Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden signed a Declaration of Intent concerning partnerships in Africa. The Declaration of Intent means they will work together based on the principles of:

- ownership
- alignment
- harmonisation
- managing for results
- mutual accountability.

Mediterranean Europe

South Africa and the countries of Mediterranean Europe maintain excellent relations through several institutionalised mechanisms such as the South Africa-France Political Dialogue, South Africa-Spain annual consultations and various commissions on trade and industry; health; education; arts, culture, and S&T; and sport.

These countries are among South Africa's top trading partners and remain large investors in the South African economy, providing not only capital inflow but also thousands of jobs. Mediterranean Europe has excelled in providing several opportunities for training in terms of Jipsa through government and business interventions.

President Nicolas Sarkozy of France, accompanied by a large government and business delegation, paid a state visit to South Africa in February 2008. During the visit, he addressed Parliament. Both presidents attended the South Africa-France Business Forum to enhance economic ties at the highest level. South Africa and France also co-operate in various multilateral forums, particularly to improve peace and security on the African continent and support the advancement of global governance.

In June 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma met with her French counterpart, Ms Bernard Koucher, in Paris.

Italy and South Africa have agreed to deepen the level of exchanges on a number of issues critical to development on the African continent, especially regarding peace and stability in the Horn of Africa and post-conflict reconstruction in the DRC and the Great Lakes Region. Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Italy in September 2008 to strengthen bilateral relations.

At the invitation of the Spanish Government, South Africa participated in the Zaragoza Expo, Spain, from 14 June to 14 September 2008. About 100 countries from the EU, the Americas and Africa participated in the expo. The expo took place under the theme "Water and Sustainable Development". In line with the theme, South African crafters showcased the depth of South Africa's craft industry.

In June 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma concluded economic bilateral discussions with her Spanish counterpart, Foreign Affairs Minister Miguel Angel Moratinos, in Madrid. Economic relations between South Africa and Spain have grown at a very rapid pace recently, with total trade between the two countries amounting to R19 billion, having doubled over the past four years.

South Africa and Greece have strong cultural ties through the Hellenic community in South Africa, which plays a positive and constructive role in the reconstruction and development of this country. The Hellenic community in South Africa is estimated at 60 000.

In January 2008, the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Ms Sue van der Merwe, hosted the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs of the Hellenic Republic, Mr Theodoros Kassimis, for bilateral political and economic discussions.

Greece is the oldest and the largest market for South Africa in the Balkan region. While Greece is not a major donor country, it has contributed to programmes in education and health in South Africa. These include a US$200 000-donation to a health clinic in Sebokeng and a US$40 000-donation to sports facilities in Soweto and Alexandra.

Central Europe

Former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka paid an official visit to the Czech Republic and the Republic of Slovakia in May 2008.

The visit was the first by a South African Deputy Head of State to the Czech Republic and Slovakia since the Velvet Revolution and the seperation of the two states in 1991. The visit provided an opportunity to concretise bilateral relations between the two countries.

In June 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma visited the Republic of Slovenia for the South Africa-EU Ministerial Troika, which took place in Ljubljana. To meet the challenges of AsgiSA and Jipsa and take full advantage of the new opportunities arising in Central Europe, it is imperative for South Africa to maintain and further strengthen political and economic ties with these countries. Concerted efforts are being made by government to develop political and economic relations with the Central European region.

Eastern Europe

Then Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka held bilateral political, economic and trade discussions with the First Deputy Prime Minister of Russia, Sergei Ivanov, in March 2008 at the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

He was accompanied by the Russian Minister of Natural Resources, Yuri Trutnev who is, together with Minister Dlamini Zuma, the co-chair of the South Africa-Russia Intergovernmental Trade and Economic Committee (Itec). The intersessional Itec meeting laid the basis for the fully fledged Itec, which was hosted by Russia in May 2008.

In November 2008, another intersessional Itec meeting was held in Durban, South Africa.

In March 2008, Bulgaria's Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Feim Chauhev, paid a state visit to South Africa. Bulgaria is one of the new members of the EU. Bulgaria has also historically been viewed as the gateway to eastern Europe and is known to be one of the stabilising countries in the Balkans. Diplomatic relations between both countries started in 1992 and economic relations now stand at about R500 million. Many areas in which South Africa can extend its co-operation have been identified – energy, transport, infrastructure development, health and especially agriculture.

In September 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Belarus and met her counterpart, Mr Sergei Martynov, for bilateral political and economic discussions. During the discussions, Minister Dlamini Zuma indicated that a process was underway to open a South African consul-general office in Belarus, which will be under the supervision of the Moscow embassy, aimed at strengthening economic ties between the two countries.

South Africa was represented by former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka at the first Turkey-Africa Summit, which took place in August 2008, in Istanbul.

The summit was held under the theme: "Solidarity and Partnership for a Common Future".

The Istanbul Declaration, adopted by the summit, captures and promotes Nepad and REC programmes, in particular focusing on eight areas of co-operation:

- developing a concrete manifestation of solidarity and partnership for a common future
- intergovernmental co-operation
- trade, investment and management of SMMEs
- infrastructure, energy and transport
- agriculture, agribusiness, rural development and water resources
- culture and education, media and communication, peace and security.

Multilateral diplomacy

The adoption of the UN World Summit Outcome document in New York in 2005 by more than 150 heads of state and government marked one of the most prominent efforts to protect and strengthen multilateralism.

Expectations of wholesale change and reform of the UN, however, proved not to be realistically attainable. The Review Summit nonetheless agreed on a number of reforms to address events and issues that continue to undermine global peace and security and the multilateral system of governance. South Africa remains an active participant in these ongoing efforts to implement the 2005 World Summit Outcome document to reform the UN. It also believes that the multilateral system should be fully engaged in human development and poverty eradication, starting with the achievement of the MDGs; the common struggle to address environmental degradation; the pursuit of an overarching human-rights agenda; the promotion of democracy and good governance; and all efforts to combat terrorism and the proliferation of weapons, both of mass destruction and small arms. South Africa maintains that issues such as these pose major threats to world peace and security. Through participation in organisations and groups such as the UN, the AU, the NAM, the G77 and the Commonwealth, South Africa seeks to ensure that national interests and objectives, as well as those of the continent and developing countries generally, are taken on board in discussions in multilateral forums and reports.

United Nations General Assembly

South Africa's priorities for participation in the UNGA, its main committees and organs, include:

- pursuing an overarching human-rights agenda, including the right to development
- promoting global peace and security
- protecting and promoting multilateralism, international law and the centrality of the UN Charter
- addressing human development, poverty eradication and environmental degradation
- advancing the active follow-up and implementation of the MDGs, international development goals and the outcomes of major UN conferences
- advancing South-South co-operation through active participation in the NAM and other South-South co-operation arrangements
- promoting the reform of the UNSC General Assembly, Ecosocc and regional organisations, and generally revitalising the UN system
- promoting the Common Africa Position on the reform of the UN, including the equitable representation of Africa on the UNSC
- disarmament, arms control and non-proliferation of both weapons of mass destruction and conventional arms
- implementing the Johannesburg Plan of Action of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

- humanitarian assistance
- promoting the AU and Nepad in the UN context
- promoting gender mainstreaming
- supporting the global campaign against terrorism.

In September 2008, Dr Dlamini Zuma addressed the UNGA in New York.

United Nations reform

The adoption of the 2005 World Summit Outcome by more than 150 heads of state and government, set in motion a number of reforms in the UN system that include:

- establishing a peace-building commission
- establishing a human-rights council
- implementing management reforms in the UN Secretariat
- reviewing the mandates of UN activities and programmes
- finalising the comprehensive Convention against Terrorism and developing a broader counter-terrorism strategy
- maintaining and strengthening political momentum for development.

South Africa supports and actively participates in all negotiations.

United Nations Security Council

The UNSC has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It is organised so as to be able to function continuously, and a representative of each of its members must be present at all times at the UN.

The comprehensive reform of the UNSC remains work in progress. South Africa was elected as a non-permanent member of the UNSC in 2007 for a period of two years.

Science and technology

The South African Government has recognised the importance of harnessing S&T as an integral part of a wider political and economic strategy to address national and regional development priorities.

A major vehicle to achieve this objective is South Africa's bid to host the proposed Square Kilometre Array as an extraordinary opportunity for advancing South Africa and its people through scientific and industrial development, developing regional scientific capacity, human capacity-development in the region, creating business opportunities and providing state-of-the-art infrastructure for South African scientists and engineers as well as those in the region.

In ensuring the implementation of the Tunis Commitment and Tunis Agenda for Information Society, as the outcome of the second phase of the World Summit on the Information Society, South Africa will remain involved in the ongoing discussions on Internet governance as well as bridging the digital divide between developed and developing countries.

Human rights

A commitment to promoting human rights is one of the central considerations in the implementation of South Africa's foreign policy. South Africa is a major player in the development of international human-rights law at the UN, continually evaluating the effectiveness of existing human-rights treaties and proposing additional instruments and striving to advance the progressive realisation of all human rights, both globally and nationally.

South Africa played an active role in the establishment of the UN Human Rights Council (UNHRC) in Geneva, which replaced the former Commission on Human Rights. South Africa is a member of the UNHRC, where it has strongly advocated for a treaty on the right to development as well as sponsored an HRC resolution on the rectification of the legal status of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, which will elevate the committee to be on par with all other treaty-monitoring bodies.

For the same reason, South Africa has supported the elaboration of an optional protocol to the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights to create an individual complaints mechanism for the covenant, thereby strengthening economic, social and cultural rights globally. South Africa was one of the first countries to sign and ratify both the International Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and its optional protocol, becoming a state party to the Convention in November 2007. In compliance with the Convention on the Rights of the Child, South Africa is preparing the third country report on the status of children's rights to the UN Committee on the Rights of the Child.

South Africa is also actively participating in the preparatory committees for the Durban Review Conference, which will be held in 2009, in follow-up to the World Conference against Racism, Racial Discrimination, Xenophobia and Related Intolerance, which was held in South Africa in 2001.

Humanitarian issues

As a signatory to the 1951 Geneva Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, its 1967

Protocol and the 1969 OAU Convention Governing the Specific Aspects of Refugee Problems in Africa, South Africa has committed itself to protecting refugees. These international treaties have been domesticated through the Refugee Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

Fulfilling its obligations under international and domestic law, South Africa played an active role in facilitating the voluntary repatriation of Angolan refugees from South Africa after peace was consolidated in Angola. Given the large number of refugees in Africa and the critical need for burden-sharing by countries, South Africa also contributed to various initiatives to address these needs, including a contribution of R1,5 million to the UN High Commission for Refugees Return and Reintegration Programme for Sudan.

South Africa's foreign-policy interventions on migration are guided by its adherence to the major international human-rights instruments, including the Universal Declaration on Human Rights, and the various refugee conventions and conventions related to, among other things, the rights of women and children. This includes the understanding that migration, if properly managed, could contribute significantly to enhancing sustainable development in African countries.

South Africa's participation in humanitarian assistance is strongly embedded in the principles of UNGA Resolution 46/182 and its guiding principles of providing humanitarian assistance on the basis of neutrality, impartiality and humanity. South Africa plays an active role in providing humanitarian assistance globally, with a particular focus on the African continent in conjunction with the UN and other international organisations, to alleviate the plight of thousands of victims of natural sudden-onset disasters and complex humanitarian emergencies.

Environment

South Africa is committed to maintaining the political momentum gained in the sphere of sustainable development, through the outcomes of the WSSD and the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation.

Various UN conventions for the environment, such as the UN Convention to Combat Desertification, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change and the Convention on Biological Diversity are used by South Africa to meaningfully reduce poverty and, in so doing, meet the aims of the MDGs.

Climate change is regarded as one of the major stumbling blocks to achieving sustainable development. International efforts are aimed at both the mitigation of climate changes by stabilising the concentration of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere and measures to enable countries to adapt to the adverse effects of climate change.

In terms of mitigation, the key negotiation issue is related to the future of the Kyoto carbon market. The current period of legally binding commitments of developed countries expires in 2012.

The 13th conference of the Parties of the Framework Convention on Climate Change (COP13) and COP/MOP 3 of the Kyoto Protocol, which concluded in Bali, Indonesia, on 14 December 2007, succeeded in agreeing to launch negotiations towards a strengthened international climate-change regime.

The decision includes a clear agenda for the key issues to be negotiated up to 2009. These are:

- action for adapting to the negative consequences of climate change
- ways to reduce (mitigate) GHG emissions
- ways to widely deploy climate-friendly technologies
- financing both adaptation and mitigation measures.

These negotiations need to conclude in 2009 for the governments to ratify them before 2012 and to avoid any gap between the first and second commitment periods on the reduction of GHG emissions.

South Africa is firmly committed to the protection of the oceans and the sustainable management of its marine resources. It has ratified all the major treaties dealing with marine, maritime, fisheries and Antarctic matters, such as the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea and its related instruments, the International Maritime Conventions, the UN Food and Agriculture Organisation Compliance Agreement, and the Antarctic Treaty.

Disarmament

South Africa continues to reinforce its position as an active and substantive role-player on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms-control issues at national, regional and international levels.

It actively participated in the various nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation forums, including the 2005 Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) Review Conference.

The failure by some states to implement their obligations under the NPT (particularly on nuclear disarmament) and to roll back agreements made at previous conferences created a climate that made it difficult to make progress with key challenges facing the nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation regime.

Together with other role-players in the nuclear field, South Africa actively participated in the meetings of the policy-making organs of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA). Important issues considered by the IAEA Board of Governors included the implementation of NPT safeguards in Iran and Korea.

South Africa actively participates in the structures of the Chemicals Weapons Convention, the Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention (BWC) and the Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons.

South Africa continues to emphasise the importance of the BWC and the need to strengthen it to adequately address the threat posed by the possible use of biological and toxic weapons by terrorists and other non-state actors.

South Africa was admitted as the first African state to join the Wassenaar Arrangement (conventional arms and dual-use technology-control regime) in December 2005, and became a full participating state on 28 February 2006.

In the context of South Africa's participation in various international arms-control bodies, such as the Nuclear Suppliers Group, the Zangger Committee and the Missile Technology Control Regime, South Africa continues to promote the principle of access to advanced technologies for peaceful purposes, thereby ensuring that non-proliferation controls do not become a means whereby developing countries are denied access to technologies required for their development.

Crime and crime prevention

Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Transnational Organised Crime and its three supplementary protocols: The Protocol Against Smuggling of Migrants by Land, Air and Sea; the Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children; and the Protocol Against the Illicit Manufacturing of and Trafficking in Firearms, their Parts and Components and Ammunition, South Africa participated in the Conference of the Parties (CoP) of the Convention against Transnational Organised Crime in October 2005. Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Corruption, South Africa participated in the first CoP of the Convention against Corruption in 2006.

Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS)

The KPCS is a voluntary tripartite international forum, intent on preventing the use of diamonds in the promotion of conflict, while encouraging the contribution of diamonds to prosperity.

The KPCS forum comprises all major diamond-producing, -trading and -processing countries, as well as the diamond industry and civil society.

The department participates actively in the standing bodies of the KPCS.

One of the department's primary objectives in monitoring the KPCS and participating in the business of KPCS standing and ad hoc bodies is to support government's efforts to ensure that the collective interests of African diamond-producing countries are protected.

North-South co-operation

The Department of Foreign Affairs serves as the focal point for North-South dialogue, engaging key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the OECD and the World Intellectual Property Organisation. To achieve this objective, South Africa ensures that the development agenda remains part of the focus of key economic forums, particularly the annual G8 (Group of Seven most industrialised nations plus Russia) Summit and World Economic Forum meetings.

South-South co-operation

In advancing the development agenda of the South and within the overall context of promoting multilateralism, South Africa participated in the second South Summit in June 2005 in Doha, Qatar.

Progressively, the importance of South-South co-operation is being acknowledged, especially in terms of global, regional and country-level efforts to achieve the MDGs. Rather than being a substitute for North-South co-operation, the modalities of South-South co-operation are complementary.

South African foreign policy seeks to, among other things, persuade the international community to support the efforts of developing countries to expand such co-operation.

Through active participation in other co-operation arrangements such as IBSA, South Africa seeks to contribute to strengthening South-South co-operation and the development of innovative co-operation programmes.

Global finance

The Department of Foreign Affairs has in its engagements solicited the international community to fulfil its Monterrey commitments. It recognises the need for increased and more predictable resources for development.

As such, it supports initiatives such as Action Against Hunger and Poverty to implement innovative financing mechanisms for development on a public, private, domestic or external basis, to complement ODA.

As one of the G20 countries within the Bretton Woods Institutions (BWIs), the department contributes to developing pragmatically the global partnership between developed and developing countries.

Within this context, South Africa is committed to the continuous review of the representivity, operations and strategies of the BWIs and more effective participation by developing countries in these bodies.

Social development

Furthermore, South Africa continues to play a pivotal role in the international arena, particularly in the promotion of the global health agenda.

Having successfully chaired the G77 and China Group during the 44th session of the UN Commission for Social Development and the 39th session of the UN Commission on Population and Development (UNCPD) in 2006, South Africa further advanced the momentum created in both UN commissions.

South Africa delivered a keynote address, which set the tone for the entire session, as well as the 46th session of the commission. South Africa also participated at the 40th session of the UNCPD in April 2007.

At both commissions, South Africa reiterated the country's priority social and population-development issues as contained, respectively, in the WSSD (Copenhagen Declaration, 1995) and the International Conference on Population and Development Plan of Action, which include, among other things, the internationally agreed development goals.

Participation in United Nations budgetary and programmatic issues

Over the past five years, South Africa has played a prominent role in the context of UN budgetary and programmatic issues. South Africa's Auditor-General served on the UN Board of Auditors from 2000 until the end of 2006. The Auditor-General was also re-elected in 2005 as the External Auditor for the UN Industrial Development Organisation for the period 2006 to 2008.

The former Minister of Public Service and Administration Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi was elected vice-president of the second UN Committee of Experts on Public Administration and Finance for the period 2006 to 2009.

Another South African, Judge Mervyn King, who chaired the King Commission on Corporate Governance in South Africa, has been elected chairperson of a high-level steering panel to evaluate governance in the UN.

Active participation in administrative and budgetary issues is aimed at ensuring, to the fullest extent possible, that UN programmes as well as budgetary and administrative priorities adequately cater for development and poverty eradication. In this regard, priority areas for South Africa include the funding of UN structures and programmes that focus on Africa and Nepad, and sufficient funding for peacekeeping operations on the continent.

South African representation on United Nations bodies and organs

South Africa strives to be active in all bodies and functional committees of the UN dealing with its foreign-policy priorities or objectives, and thus serves on the following:

- International Criminal Tribunal for Yugoslavia (2005 to 2009): Judge J Moloto
- UNHRC, successor to the Commission on Human Rights (2006)
- International Criminal Court (2003 to 2009): Judge M Pillay
- International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea (2005 to 2014): Judge A Hoffmann

South Africa serves on the following subsidiary bodies of the Ecosocc

- Commission for Social Development (2006 to 2009)
- Statistical Commission (2006 to 2009)
- Commission on Sustainable Development (2007 to 2010)
- Commission on Population and Development (2007 to 2010)
- Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice (2007 to 2010).

United Nations Country Team (UNCT) in South Africa

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) seeks to implement programmes that are relevant to government's transformation and development imperatives. The UNDP has a country office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the UN resident co-ordinator for all UN operational activities in South Africa.

The UN Development Assistance Framework (UNDAF) is a mechanism to establish an integrated framework for co-operation for development assistance between the UN system, represented through 16 UN funds, programmes and agencies present in South Africa and government.

The UNDAF reflects the priorities conveyed to the UN by government and is based on the Common Country Assessment (CCA). The previous UNDAF ended in December 2006. The department worked with the UNCT in South Africa and numerous other departments to prepare the new UNDAF, which will guide UN support in South Africa from 2007 to 2010. In this process, a CCA has been drafted by government and accepted by the UN and the new UNDAF.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and with a combined population of 1,8 billion (one quarter of world population), making up one fifth of world trade. It is an important multilateral institution uniting countries with common historical backgrounds.

Members range from micro-states in Polynesia to members of the G8, the smallest and poorest to the richest and most populous, with cross-cutting affiliations straddling the North-South divide.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance, public administration and law, a common working language, and commercial and business practices and understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Co-operation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the removal of disparities in living standards across the world, and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy. These programmes are committed to the UN MDGs, Nepad and the plight of small and less-developed countries.

The Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM) takes place biennially. Malta hosted the CHOGM in November 2005 under the theme *Networking the Commonwealth for Development*, also focusing on world trade, migration and terrorism.

Aside from the Final Communiqué, which addresses different issues of concern to the Commonwealth, heads of government also issued the Malta Declaration on Networking the Commonwealth for Development, the Valletta Statement on Multilateral Trade, and the Gozo Statement on Vulnerable Small States.

South Africa made numerous contributions to the Malta Communiqué, in particular on issues relating to the MDGs, the African Agenda and Nepad, and addressing health, education and debt relief. South Africa also supported strong positions on trade liberalisation, climate change and terrorism.

South Africa actively participates in the various ministerial meetings and governing bodies of the Commonwealth. Meetings of ministers of finance have devoted resources in support of the Monterrey Consensus; justice ministers have drafted model anti-terrorism legislation and control measures over money laundering; and ministers of education and of health have adopted codes of conduct in the recruitment of health workers and teachers.

Uganda hosted the CHOGM in November 2007 under the theme, *Transforming Commonwealth Societies to Achieve Political, Economic and Human Development*. Trinidad and Tobago will host the 2009 CHOGM.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM with its 114 member states is the largest political grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.

Multilateral agreements signed or ratified between 1 January 2007 and 31 March 2008		
Date signed	**Title**	**Date**
3 March 1980	Convention on the Physical Protection of Nuclear Material	17 September 2007 (r) Entry into force: 17 October 2007
21 November 1997	Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions	19 June 2007 (a) Entry into force: 8 August 2007
15 September 1999	Sixth Additional Protocol to the Constitution of the Universal Potal Union (UPU)	July or August 2007 (r)
16 November 2001	Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment (See Act 4 of 2007 GG 30213 of 24 August 2007)	18 January 2007 (r) Entry into force: 1 May 2007
16 November 2001	Protocol to the Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment on Matters Specific to Aircraft Equipment (See Act 4 of 2007 GG 30213 of 24 August 2007)	18 January 2007 (r)
27 June 2003	International Convention on Mutual Administrative Assistance in Customs Matters	Entry into force: 1 May 2007
8 July 2004	Protocol to the OAU Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism	12 July 2007 (r)
13 April 2005	International Convention for the Suppression of Acts of Nuclear Terrorism	25 March 2007 (r)
18 August 2005	Protocol on the Facilitation of Movement of Persons (SADC)	9 May 2007 (r) Entry into force: 7 July 2007
26 June 2006	Free Trade Agreement between the EFTA States and the SACU States	4 February 2008 (r)
13 December 2006	Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities	17 April 2007 (r) Entry into force: 1 May 2008
13 December 2006	Optional Protocol to the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities	17 April 2007 (r)
16 January 2007	Multilateral Agreement on Co-ordination of Maritime Search and Rescue Services	
16 August 2007	Memorandum of Understanding among the Southern African Development Community Member States on the establishment of a Southern African Development Community Standby Brigade (SADC)	Entry into force: 16 August 2007
17 August 2007	Memorandum of Understanding among the Member States of the Southern Africa Development Community on the New Headquarters of SADC	Entry into force: 17 August 2007
17 October 2007	Agreement on Customs and Tax Administration Co-operation	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Public Administration and Governance (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Social Issues (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Health and Medicine (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in Wild Resources (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Higher Education (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
17 October 2007	Memorandum of Understanding on Cultural Co-operation (IBSA)	Entry into force: 17 October 2007

Source: Department of Foreign Affairs
r = Ratification
a = Accession

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2008			
Date signed	**Country/organisation**	**Title**	**Date**
6 February 2007	China, People's Republic of	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Table Grapes from South Africa to China	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	China, People's Republic of	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Tobacco Leaves from South Africa to China	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	China, People's Republic of	Protocol on Economic and Technical Co-operation	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
11 February 2007	Central African Republic	Memorandum of Understanding concerning Defence Co-operation.	Entry into force: 11 February 2007
14 February 2007	Burundi	General Co-operation Agreement.	Entry into force: 14 February 2007
28 February 2007	Argentine	Agreement on Bilateral Co-operation in the Field of Sport and Recreation	Entry into force: 28 February 2007
28 February 2007	Argentine	Extradition Treaty	
28 February 2007	Argentine	Treaty on Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters	
5 March 2007	Benin	Joint Communique	
6 March 2007	Uganda	Memorandum of Understanding regarding the Renovation of the OR Tambo School of Leadership.	Entry into force: 6 March 2007
9 March 2007	AU	Agreement on the Material and Technical Organisation of the Third Ordinary Session of the African Union Conference of Ministers of Health	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
12 March 2007	Oman	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
13 March 2007	Saudi Arabia	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and Prevention of Tax Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital	Entry into force: 1 April 2008
19 March 2007	Russian Federation	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Water Resources and Forestry	Entry into force: 19 March 2007
28 March 2007	Australia	Letter of Intent regarding Future Co-operation in Fisheries within the South African and Australian Maritime Jurisdictions in the Southern Ocean	
30 March 2007	FAO	Agreement on Capacity-Building for South African Professional and Emerging Farmers in the Field of Agriculture and Food Security	Entry into force: 30 March 2007
30 March 2007	New Zealand	Co-operation Arrangement	Entry into force: 19 March 2007
2 April 2007	Burkina Faso	Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Co-operation	Entry into force: 2 April 2007
4 April 2007	Malta	Agreement in respect of Police Co-operation	
5 April 2007	Tanzania	Agreement concerning Merchant Shipping and other Related Matters	
5 April 2007	Tanzania	Agreement on Co-operation in areas of Migration Matters	Entry into force: 4 June 2007
5 April 2007	Tanzania	Agreement regarding the Waiver of Visa Requirement for Holders of Diplomatic, Service and Official Passports	
17 April 2007	AU	Permanent Court of Arbitration Agreement regarding the Establishment of a Regional Facility of the Permanent Court of Arbitration for Africa.	Entry into force: 17 April 2007
19 April 2007	Spain	Agreement concerning Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 19 April 2007

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2008			
Date signed	**Country/organisation**	**Title**	**Date**
20 April 2007	UNDP	Cost Sharing Agreement for a Joint Country Level Evaluation of the Role of the United Nations in Contributing to South Africa's Development	Entry into force: 20 April 2007
24 April 2007	USA	Memorandum of Understanding on the Fulbright Exchange Programme	Entry into force: 24 April 2007
25 April 2007	Flanders	Third Joint Commission for Co-operation Programme for the Years 2007, 2008 and 2009	
8 May 2007	AU	Agreement on the Material and Technical Organisation of the Retreat of Ministers of Foreign Affairs to Reflect on the State of the African Union and an Extraordinary Session of the Executive Council of the African Union	Entry into force: 8 May 2007
8 May 2007	Niger	Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Co-operation	Entry into force: 8 March 2007
8 May 2007	Switzerland	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation with respect to Taxes on Income	
10 May 2007	Sudan	Memorandum of Understanding on Development Co-operation for Policing in Sudan	
14 May 2007	EU	The South African-European Union Strategic Partnership Joint Action Plan	
8 June 2007	Netherlands	Agreement concerning the Status of Military and Civilian Personnel of their Department/Ministry of Defence present in each other's Territory for Activities Related to Military Co-operation	
8 June 2007	Netherlands	Arrangement on a Financial Contribution towards the South African Department of Defence's Participation in the African Union Special Task Force in Burundi	
11 June 2007	Slovak Republic	Memorandum of Co-operation (Foreign Affairs)	Entry into force: 11 June 2007
19 June 2007	Lesotho	Agreement on the Facilitation of Cross-Border Movement of Citizens	
19 June 2007	Lesotho	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Correctional Services	Entry into force: 19 June 2007
19 June 2007	Lesotho	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Management of Wild Fires and other Forests Management Issues	
20 June 2007	Republic of Korea	Memorandum of Understanding on Bilateral Co-operation in the Field of Sport and Recreation	Entry into force: 20 June 2007
4 July 2007	Cuba	Agreement on the Employment of Cuban Technical Advisers	
5 July 2007	Lesotho	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Field of Agriculture	Entry into force: 5 July 2007
12 July 2007	Malaysia	Memorandum of Understanding on Agricultural Co-operation	Entry into force: 12 July 2007
3 August 2007	China, People's Republic of	Memorandum of Understanding on Sport Co-operation	Entry into force: 3 August 2007
8 August 2007	Guinea-Bissau	Agreement on Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 8 August 2007
13 August 2007	Malawi	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	Entry into force: 13 August 2007
21 August 2007	DRC	Joint Declaration of Intent concerning Support and Assistance to the Democratic Republic of Congo in the Reform of the Armed Forces	
21 August 2007	DRC	Memorandum of Understanding on Development and Co-operation in Transport-Related Matters	
21 August 2007	DRC	Protocol on Hospital Services	Entry into force: 21 August 2007
23 August 2007	Finland	Agreement concerning the Knowledge Partnership on Information and Communications Technology	Entry into force: 23 August 2007
18 September 2007	Mozambique	Agreement on Combined Border Control Posts on the Mozambique-South Africa Border	

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2008			
Date signed	**Country/organisa-tion**	**Title**	**Date**
18 September 2007	Mozambique	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income	
21 September 2007	IBRD	Global Environment Facility Trust Fund Grant Agreement Plus Project Agreement with Idian Ocean Commission and Project Agreement with the South African Maritime Safety Authority	
21 September 2007	ICAO	Memorandum of Understanding between the Republic of South Africa and the International Civil Aviation Organisation regarding Safety Oversight Audit	
24 September 2007	China, People's Republic of	Agreement on Co-operation in the Minerals and Energy Sector	Entry into force: 24 September 2007
24 September 2007	China, People's Republic of	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Education	Entry into force: 24 September 2007
26 September 2007	China, People's Republic of	Memorandum of Understanding between the Ministry of Public Service and Administration of the Republic of South Africa and the Ministry of Personnel of the People's Republic of China on Co-operation in the Fields of Human Resources Development and Public Administration	Entry into force: 26 September 2007
1 October 2007	UNDP	Agreement on Establishing a Service Centre in South Africa	Entry into force: 1 October 2007
2 October 2007	Kenya	Agreement for the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Co-operation	Entry into force: 2 October 2007
10 October 2007	EU	Additional Protocol to the Agreement on Trade, Development and Co-operation	Entry into force: Provisionally on 1 January 2007
17 October 2007	AU	Agreement on the Material and Technical Organisation of the Conference of African Ministers responsible for Road Transport	Entry into force: 17 October 2007
30 October 2007	Namibia	Agreement on the Transfer of Status Records of Persons Born, Married or Died in Namibia Held by the Government of the Republic of South Africa	Entry into force: 30 October 2007
30 October 2007	Namibia	Memorandum of Understanding on Diplomatic Consultations	Entry into force: 30 October 2007
3 November 2007	Mauritania	Co-operation Agreement in the Field of Mining and Mineral Resources	Entry into force: 3 November 2007
3 November 2007	Mauritania	Co-operation Agreement in the Fields of Petroleum and Energy	
7 November 2007	Sudan	Agreement for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with respect to Taxes on Income	
7 November 2007	Sudan	Agreement for the Reciprocal Promotion and Protection of Investments	
7 November 2007	Sudan	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in Immigration, Population and Election Matters	Entry into force: 7 November 2007
7 November 2007	Sudan	Memorandum of Understanding on Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 7 November 2007
7 November 2007	Sudan	Memorandum of Understanding regarding Economic Co-operation	Entry into force: 7 November 2007
7 November 2007	Sudan	Statement of Intent on Co-operation in the Area of Social Development	Entry into force: 7 November 2007
7 November 2007	Sudan	Trade Agreement	Entry into force: 7 November 2007
8 November 2007	UK	Memorandum of Understanding concerning Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 8 November 2007
15 November 2007	DRC	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation on Issues related to Public Works	Entry into force: 15 November 2007
20 November 2007	Mozambique	Agreement for the Establishment of a Joint Permanent Commission on Defence and Security	Entry into force: 20 November 2007

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2008			
Date signed	**Country/organisation**	**Title**	**Date**
21 November 2007	Angola	Co-operation Agreement between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the Republic of Angola in the Field of Petroleum	
22 November 2007	Angola	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Tourism	Entry into force: 22 November 2007
29 November 2007	Zimbabwe	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	Entry into force: 29 November 2007
12 December 2007	Zambia	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	Entry into force: 12 December 2007
21 December 2007	Denmark	Agreement between the Government of the Kingdom of Denmark and the Government of the Republic of South Africa regarding Accelerating Child and Women's Protection through Prevention and Response to Violence and HIV and AIDS in South Africa (2007–2009)	Entry into force: 21 December 2007
25 January 2008	USAID	Memorandum of Understanding between the Government of the Republic of South Africa through the Department of Education and the Government of the United States through the United States Agency for International Development on Co-operation in the Development of Textbooks and Learning Materials	Entry into force: 25 January 2008
18 February 2008	Multilateral	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operation in the Area of Anti-Corruption	Entry into force: 25 February 2008
22 February 2008	India	Agreement on Co-operation and Mutual Assistance in Customs Matters	
22 February 2008	India	Programme of Co-operation in Science and Technology	Entry into force: 22 February 2008
25 February 2008	Malawi	Memorandum of Understanding on Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 25 February 2008
28 February 2008	Egypt	Executive Programme of Co-operation for the Implementation of the Agreement on Co-operation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	Entry into force: 28 February 2008
28 February 2008	France	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Energy	Entry into force: 28 February 2008
28 February 2008	France	Agreement on Co-operation pertaining to Tourism	Entry into force: 28 February 2008
28 February 2008	France	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
28 February 2008	France	Agreement on Transport-Related Matters	Entry into force: 28 February 2008
28 February 2008	France	Declaration on South Africa-French Co-operation on Jipsa	
28 February 2008	France	Statement of Intent on the Extension of the Continental Shelf, the Surveillance of Fisheries and Scientific Research Co-operation in the Waters Adjacent to the French Southern and Antarctic Territories and Marion and Prioce Edward islands	
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Joint Declaration on a Strategic Partnership for a Peaceful and Prosperous Future	
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Memorandum of Understanding on Co-operative Activities in the Field of Defence	Entry into force: 17 March 2008
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Memorandum of Understanding on Cultural Co-operation	Entry into force: 17 March 2008
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Statement on the New Asian-African Partnership	
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Agreement for the Promotion and Reciprocal Protection of Investments	
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission	Entry into force: 18 March 2008
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Memorandum of Understanding regarding Industrial and Technical Co-operation	

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Department of Foreign Affairs
www.dfa.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.tshwane.gov.za

Suggested reading

Adam, H and Moodley, K. *Seeking Mandela: Peacemaking between Israelis and Palestinians*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.

Adebajo, A and Scanlon, H. eds. *A Dialogue of the Deaf: Essays on Africa and the United Nations.* Johannesburg: Fanele (Jacana Media) 2006.

Adebajo, A, Adedeji, A and Landsberg, C.eds. *South Africa in Africa: The Post-Apartheid Era*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Akokpari, J.eds. *The African Union and its Institutions*. Johannesburg: Fanele, 2008.

Bond, *P. Talk Left, Walk Right: South Africa's Frustrated Global Reforms*. 2nd ed. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Clapham, C, Herbst, J and Mills, G. eds. *Big African States: Angola, Sudan, DRC, Ethiopia, Nigeria, South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Dorrian, P. *The Making of South Africa Inc: Unlocking South Africa's Global Potential*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.

Draper, P. ed. *Reconfiguring the Compass: South Africa's Trade Diplomacy*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2005.

Draper, P and Le Pere, G. eds. *Enter the Dragon: Towards a Free Trade Agreement between China and the Southern African Customs Union*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.

Hughes, T. *Composers, Conductors and Players: Harmony and Discord in South African Foreign Policy*. Johannesburg: Konrad-Adenauer-Stiftung, 2004.

Landsberg, C. *The Quiet Diplomacy of Liberation: International Politics and South Africa's Transition.* Johannesburg: Jacana, 2004.

Le Pere, G and Shelton, G. *China, Africa and South Africa: South-South Co-operation in a Global Era*. Midrand: Institute for Global Dialogue, 2007.

Mills, G. *Security Intersection: The Paradox of Power in an Age of Terror.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2004.

Mills, G and Skidmore, N. eds. *Towards China Inc Assessing the Implications for Africa*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2004.

Murray, R. *Human Rights in Africa: From the OAU to the African Union*. Cambridge: University of Cambridge Press, 2004.

Olivier, G. *South Africa and the European Union: Self-Interest, Ideology and Altruism*. Pretoria: Protea Boekehuis, 2006.

Southall, R. ed. *South Africa's Role in Conflict Resolution and Peacemaking in Africa.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2006.

Wheeler, T. *The History of the South African Department of Foreign Affairs.* 1927–1993. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2005.

Williams, V and Tsanco, T. *Prospects for Migration Data Harmonisation in the SADC.* Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa, 2007.

GOVERNMENT SYSTEM

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 was the result of remarkably detailed and inclusive negotiations that were carried out with an acute awareness of the injustices of the country's non-democratic past. It took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

According to Chapter One of the Constitution, South Africa is a sovereign, democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter Two of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court (CC) guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Since the establishment of Parliament in 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker. The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government. Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions. It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance. NCOP Online (*www.parliament.gov.za/ncop*) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP came into existence on 6 February 1997.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After it has been passed by the council, it must be referred to the assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the council rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments. There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The President

The President is the Head of State and leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from among the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

Deputy ministers

The President appoints deputy ministers from among the members of the National Assembly.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

The Chief Directorate: Traditional Leadership and Institutions in the Department of Provincial and Local Government provides support to traditional leaders and institutions, and is responsible for the development of policy in this regard.

The Presidency, February 2009	
President	Kgalema Motlanthe
Deputy President	Baleka Mbete

It renders an anthropological service, and provides advice and support regarding governance and development matters. It advises and supports the National House of Traditional Leaders and maintains a database of traditional leaders and institutions.

It is also responsible for developing and implementing a regulatory framework for the protection of the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities.

Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Bill

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), was passed in December 2003 and came into operation in September 2004. The implementation of the Act in national and provincial spheres has necessitated that certain improvements be effected to the Act.

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Bill provides for the following amendments:

- recognition of kingships or queenships and the withdrawal of such recognition
- disestablishment of paramountcies and the withdrawal of recognition of paramount chiefs
- establishment of kingship or queenship councils and the determination of their functions
- the determination of the membership of traditional councils and kingship or queenship councils by premiers and the Minister of Provincial and Local Government respectively in line with provincial peculiarities
- establishment of a traditional subcouncil where the area of jurisdiction of a traditional community occupies two or more geographical areas apart from each other
- extension of the original one year to five years, the period within which the traditional authorities must be transformed in line with the Act
- alignment of the terms of office of all the structures.

Traditional councils

The stipulations of Chapter 12 of the Constitution and the advent of democracy required the transformation of the composition of traditional councils. Therefore, legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy (40% of members must be elected) and gender representivity (one third of members must be women).

Legislation has also opened a window of opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve co-operative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), provides for the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders.

> In accordance with the National Programme of Support (NPS) for the institution of traditional leadership, a comprehensive skills development programme for traditional leadership has been developed by the Department of Provincial and Local Government in partnership with the Local Government Sector Education and Training Authority.
>
> In 2008, the Government NSP for Traditional Leadership was expected to be submitted to Cabinet for approval. In addition, all provincial governments had promulgated province-specific legislation on traditional leadership, while 76% of traditional councils and 58% of local houses had been established. The policy document on Khoi-San traditional communities was developed in consultation with the National Khoi-San Council and traditional communities were expected to contribute towards the finalisation of the policy framework by the end of 2008.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the co-operative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders will deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

In March 2008, Cabinet approved the proposal to establish a national department for traditional leadership under the Minister of Provincial and Local Government to restore the dignity of traditional leadership, which is the custodian of African customs and heritage. The process will begin in the 2009/10 financial year. It is expected that the department will be fully established and operational by the 2010/11 financial year.

The National House of Traditional Leaders Bill

The Council of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 was amended through the Council of Traditional Leaders Amendment Act, 1998 (Act 85 of 1998), and the National House of Traditional Leaders Amendment Act, 2000 (Act 206 of 2000).

To improve the functionality and broaden the scope of the work of the national house, the National House of Traditional Leaders Bill provides for the following key issues:

- the continued existence of the National House of Traditional Leaders with added responsibilities
- the composition of the national house to be representative of all provinces, including the provinces that have recently acquired traditional communities after the redetermination of provincial boundaries
- streamlining the process of electing members of the national house in the provinces
- determining powers and duties of the national house in line with the *White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance*
- enhancing the functioning and management of the national house
- providing support to the house by government in respect of administration, finances, capacity-building and resources
- providing for the relationship between the national house and the provincial houses
- providing for the relationship between the national house and kings and queens
- providing for the relationship between the national house and government.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of Section 22(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003. The main objective of the commission is to investigate and make findings on traditional-leadership disputes and claims.

In 2008, the Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims presented its findings on the status of South Africa's existing paramountcies. The determination was made in terms of customary law and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003.

Department of Provincial and Local Government

The mandate of the department is derived from chapters three and seven of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

The aim of the department is to develop and promote a national system of integrated and co-operative governance and to support provincial and local government.

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at 1 February 2009

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture and Land Affairs	Lulama Xingwana	Dirk du Toit
Arts and Culture	Pallo Jordan	Ntombazana Botha
Communications	Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri	Radhakrishna Padayachie
Correctional Services	Ngconde Balfour	Loretta Jacobus
Defence	Charles Nqakula	Fezile Bhengu
Education	Naledi Pandor	André Gaum
Environmental Affairs and Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Joyce Mabudafhasi
Finance	Trevor Manuel	Nhlanhla Nene
Foreign Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Sue van der Merwe, Fatima Hajaig
Health	Barbara Hogan	Molefi Sefularo
Home Affairs	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Malusi Gigaba
Housing	Lindiwe Sisulu	-
Intelligence Services	Siyabonga Cwele	-
Justice and Constitutional Development	Enver Surty	Johnny de Lange
Labour	Membathisi Mdladlana	-
Minerals and Energy	Buyelwa Sonjica	-
Provincial and Local Government	Sicelo Shiceka	Nomatyala Hangana
The Presidency	Manto Tshabalala-Msimang	-
Public Enterprises	Brigitte Mabandla	-
Public Service and Administration	Richard Baloyi	-
Public Works	Geoff Doidge	Ntopile Kganyago
Safety and Security	Nathi Mthethwa	Susan Shabangu
Science and Technology	Mosibudi Mangena	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Zola Skweyiya	Jean Swanson-Jacobs
Sport and Recreation	Makhenkesi Stofile	Gert Oosthuizen
Trade and Industry	Mandisi Mpahlwa	Rob Davies and Elizabeth Thabethe
Transport	Jeff Radebe	-
Water Affairs and Forestry	Lindiwe Hendricks	-

As a national department, its functions are to develop national policies and legislation with regard to provinces and local government, as well as to support and monitor the implementation of the following:
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005)
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004)
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)
- Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998)
- *White Paper on Local Government* (1998).

The department's other function is to support provinces and local government in fulfilling their constitutional and legal obligations.

The vision of the department is to create a capable and well-integrated system of government to achieve sustainable development and enhanced service delivery. The mission of the department is to provide professional and technical support to government by:
- developing appropriate policies and legislation to promote integration in government's development programmes and service delivery
- providing strategic interventions, support and partnerships to facilitate policy implementation in the provinces and local government
- creating enabling mechanisms for communities to participate in governance.

The values of the department as adopted in accordance with the Batho Pele ("People First") principles focus on the following:
- dedication to professional development and service delivery
- professionalism in the conduct of all employees
- leadership and participation in service delivery
- being goal-orientated in undertaking its mandate.

The activities of the Department of Provincial and Local Government are organised under the following seven branches:
- Corporate Services
- Governance, Policy and Research
- Urban and Rural Development
- Systems and Capacity-Building
- Free Basic Services and Infrastructure
- Monitoring and Evaluation.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each of the nine provinces has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined in terms of a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President of the country.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet. Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

However, a provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:
- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- housing
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:
- abattoirs
- ambulance services

Members of the executive councils of provincial governments, as at 30 September 2008

Eastern Cape		KwaZulu-Natal	
Mr Mbulelo Sogoni	Premier	Mr Sibusiso Ndebele	Premier
Mr Gugile Nkwinti	Agriculture	Mr Mtholephi Mthimkhulu	Agriculture and Environmental Affairs
Mr Mahlubandile Qwase	Education	Ms Ina Cronjé	Education
Mr Phumulo Masualle	Finance, Economic, Development and Environmental Affairs	Ms Weziwe Thusi	Arts, Culture and Tourism
Ms Thokozile Xasa	Local Government and Traditional Affairs	Dr Zweli Mkhize	Finance and Economic Development
Ms Pemmy Mojadina	Health	Ms Neliswa Nkonyeni	Health
Ms Thobile Mhlahlo	Housing, Safety and Liaison	Mr Mike Mabuyakhulu	Local Government, Housing and Traditional Affairs
Mr Christiaan Martin	Public Works	Dr Meschack Radebe	Social Welfare and Population Development
Ms Gloria Barry	Roads and Transport	Ms Lydia Johnson	Public Works
Ms Noxolo Abraham-Ntantiso	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture	Mr Bheki Cele	Transport, Community Safety and Liaison
Mr Sam Kwelita	Social Development	Mr Amichand Rajbansi	Sport and Recreation
Free State		**Limpopo**	
Ms Beatrice Marshoff	Premier	Mr Sello Moloto	Premier
Ms Mamiki Qabathe	Agriculture	Dr Aaron Motsoaledi	Education
Mr Cusca Mokitlana	Education	Mr Saad Cachalia	Provincial Treasury
Mr Neo Masithela	Tourism, and Environmental and Economic Affairs	Mr Charles Sekoati	Health and Social Development
Mr Mxolisi Dukwana	Public Safety and Liaison	Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Local Government and Housing
Mr Sakhiwo Belot	Health	Mr Collins Chabane	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Mr Joel Mafereka	Local Government and Housing	Ms Dikeledi Magadzi	Agriculture
Mr Pule Makgoe	Provincial Treasury	Dr Joyce Mashamba	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mr Seiso Mohai	Transport, Roads and Public Works	Mr Justice Pitso	Roads and Transport
		Ms Samson Ndou	Public Safety and Liaison
Ms Mantsheng Tsopo	Social Development	Ms Machuene Semenya	Public Works
Mr Ace Magashule	Sport, Arts and Culture		
Gauteng		**Mpumalanga**	
Mr Paul Mashatile	Premier	Mr Thabang Makwetla	Premier
Mr Khabisi Mosunkutu	Agriculture, Conservation and Environment	Ms Dinah Pule	Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Land Reform
Ms Dorothy Mahlangu	Local Government	Mr Craig Padayachee	Economic Development and Planning
Ms Angelina Motshekga	Education		
Mr Mandla Nkomfe	Finance and Economic Affairs	Ms Mmathulare Coleman	Education
Mr Brian Hlongwa	Health	Mr Fish Mahlalela	Health and Social Development
Ms Nomvula Mokonyane	Housing	Ms Candith Mashego-Dlamini	Local Government and Housing
Mr Firoz Cachalia	Community Safety	Mr Madala Masuku	Public Works
Ms Barbara Creecy	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation	Ms Jabulani Mahlangu	Finance
		Ms Dinah Pule	Culture, Sport and Recreation
Mr Kgaogelo Lekgoro	Social Development	Mr Jackson Mthembu	Roads and Public Transport
Mr Ignatius Jacobs	Public Transport, Roads and Works	Mr Siphosezwe Masango	Safety and Security

Members of the executive councils of provincial governments, as at 30 September 2008	
Northren Cape	
Ms Dipuo Peters	Premier
Ms Tina Joemat-Petterson	Agriculture and Land Reform
Mr Gomolelo Lucas	Education
Mr Pakes Dikgetsi	Finance
Ms Eunice Binase	Health
Mr Boeboe van Wyk	Housing and Local
Ms Thembi Madikane	Government
Mr Goolam Akharwary	Safety and Liaison
Mr Fred Wyngaardt	Social Development
	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mr Pieter Saaiman	Economic Affairs, Tourism, Environment and Conservation
Mr Kagisho Molusi	Public Works, Roads and Transport
North West	
Ms Edna Molewa	Premier
Mr Ndleleni Duma	Arts, Culture and Sport
Mr Jan Serfontein	Agriculture, Conservation and Environment
Mr Darkey Africa	Economic Development and Tourism
Mr Debeza Yawa	Local Government and Housing
Rev Johannes Tselapedi	Education
Ms Nomonde Rasmeni	Health
Ms Maureen Modiselle	Finance
Mr Frans Vilakazi	Transport, Roads and Community Safety
MrJerry Thibedi	Public Works
Ms Nikiwe Mangqo	Social Development
Western Cape	
Mr Lynne Brown	Premier
Mr Cobus Dowry	Agriculture
Mr Patrick McKenzie	Community Safety
Mr Yousuf Gabru	Education
Ms Pierre Uys	Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
Ms Garth Strachan	Finance, Tourism and Economic Development
Mr Marius Fransman	Health
Mr Cameron Dugmore	Housing
Mr Koleka Mqulwana	Transport and Public Works
Ms Zodwa Magwaza	Social Development

- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation and activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Co-ordinating Council (PCC) is a consultative forum where the President discusses issues of national, provincial and local importance with the premiers.

The forum addresses issues such as:

- enhancing the role of provincial executives regarding national policy decisions
- strengthening the capacity of provincial governments to implement government policies and programmes
- integrating provincial growth and development strategies (PGDS) within national development plans
- improving co-operation between national and provincial spheres of government
- improving co-operation on fiscal issues
- ensuring that there are co-ordinated implementation programmes and the necessary structures in place to address issues such as rural development, urban renewal, and safety and security.

Local government

There are 283 municipalities in South Africa. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), which formally recognises organised local government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and to participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The Department of Provincial and Local Government aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities. This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the local

government strategic agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government.

The department is also responsible for co-ordinating and supporting policy development and the implementation of the LGSA, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is a constitutional institution established by the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998.

The main function of the board is to determine municipal boundaries in accordance with the Act and other related legislation, and to advise on demarcation matters.

In addition, the board is tasked with delimiting wards into metropolitan and local municipalities.

South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Provincial and Local Government in terms of the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997).

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the President's Co-ordinating Council (PCC), Minister and MECs (MInMec) forum, the Budget Forum, as well as the NCOP and on the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011)

The implementation of the LGSA from 2006 onwards was a logical extension of Project Consolidate, initiated in 2004. The three core pillars of the LGSA are:

- mainstreaming hands-on support to local government to improve municipal governance, performance and accountability
- addressing the structure and governance arrangements of the State to better strengthen, support and monitor local government
- refining and strengthening the policy, regulatory and fiscal environment for local government and giving greater attention to the enforcement measures.

In 2007, national government together with all provinces, Salga, individual municipalities and key partners outside of government gave active support to implementing this agenda, which focuses on the five key performance areas of local government transformation, namely:

- municipal transformation and institutional development
- basic services and infrastructure
- financial viability and financial management
- LED
- good governance and community participation.

In terms of the five-year LGSA, 164 municipalities have been receiving hands-on support as from April 2008, an increase of 56 municipalities since 2007. National sector departments, namely the Department of Provincial and Local Government, National Treasury, and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, have mobilised 626 technical experts in support of municipalities. The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has also dedicated 51 technical experts to focus on water-related services, particularly in the Free State.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities.

Imbizo is a forum for enhancing dialogue and interaction between government and the people. It provides an opportunity for government to communicate its Programme of Action and the progress being made. It promotes participation of the public in the programmes to improve their lives.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities). The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single employer bodies.

South Africa has nine metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions.

However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of two types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, and the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

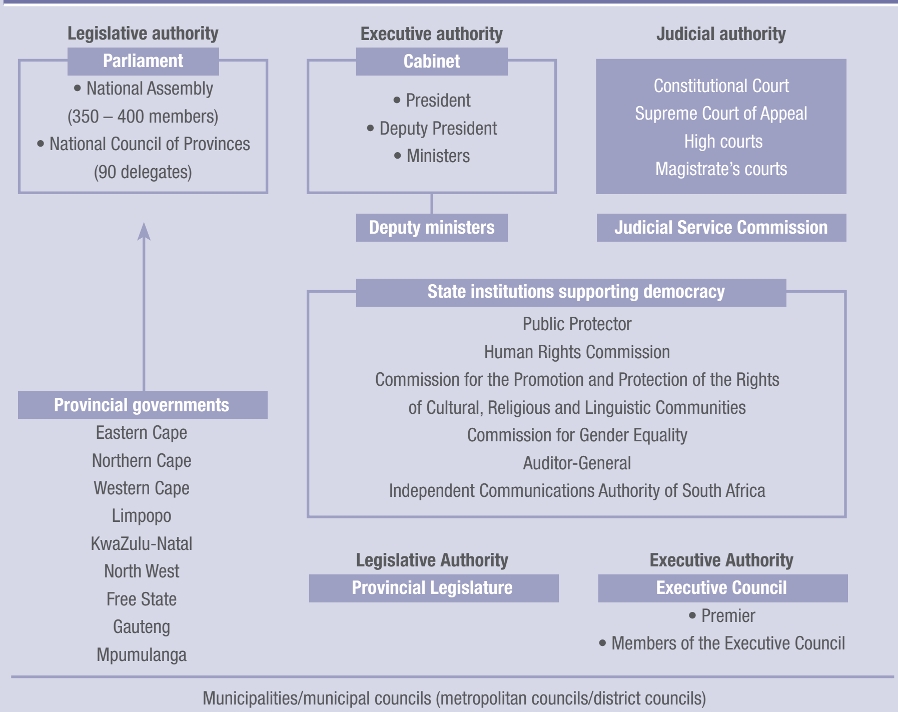
Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils.

District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning.

The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review integrated development plans (IDPs)
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Structure and functions of the South African Government



Integrated development plans

In terms of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000, all municipalities are required to prepare IDPs. Integrated development planning is a process by which municipalities prepare five-year strategic plans that are reviewed annually in consultation with communities and stakeholders.

The aim is to achieve service delivery and development goals in municipal areas in an effective and sustainable way. National and provincial sector departments, development agencies, private-sector bodies, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and communities all have a key role to play in preparing and implementing IDPs.

The IDP Nerve Centre provides a single, web-based information system that allows multiple stakeholders, involved in municipal service delivery, to access, capture, revise and report a core set of planning, funding, programme and project-based information over a multi-year period in a consistent manner.

By May 2008, the IDP analysis sessions were underway in all nine provinces. The objectives of the IDP analysis sessions are to:

- develop a concrete programme, as part of the five-year LGSA
- provide clarity on how sector departments can accelerate their support to municipalities, based on master sector plans.

The engagement of some national departments in the analysis and improvements of IDPs remains a challenge. There is a need for national sector departments to participate actively in IDP analysis sessions to ensure the development and improvement of master sector plans.

The Department of Provincial and Local Government distributed the IDP Format Guide and IDP Analysis Framework to sector departments, provinces and municipalities. The provincial and sector reports were presented at the National Development Planning Forum in May 2008.

In terms of integration of planning, the IDP analysis sessions were held in all provinces in April and May 2008. A winter school was opened in July 2008 at the University of Pretoria to planners from municipalities that had poor IDPs.

A partnership with the South African Planning Institute has been established on a mentoring programme for municipal planners on development administration.

In 2007/08, 79% of IDPs received a credibility rating of between high and medium compared with 40% three years before. Of major significance in this regard is the 100% adoption rate of IDPs as a result of concerted effort of all spheres over the last three years.

Legislation

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 establishes a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.

The Act also establishes a system for municipalities to report on their performance, and provides residents with an opportunity to compare this performance with that of municipalities.

It also regulates public-private partnerships. The Act allows municipalities significant powers to corporatise their services, to establish utilities for service delivery, or to enter into partnerships with other service-providers. The Act provides for the adoption of a credit-control policy for municipalities that will provide for the termination of services in the event of non-payment. Municipalities have the power to pass bylaws to implement the policy.

The Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 is aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities.

The Act is a critical element in the overall transformation of local government in South Africa. It fosters transparency at local government level through budget and reporting requirements.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and equitable valuation methods of properties, and provides for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The largest infrastructure transfer programme is the MIG, currently administered by the Department of Provincial and Local Government. The MIG has shown strong real growth over the period, averaging 6,4% between 2004/05 and 2006/07. Real growth is projected to accelerate to an average of 21,4% over the medium term.

The MIG was introduced in 2004/05 through consolidating various sector infrastructure grants, each administered by different departments, into a single programme. This was intended to make the system of transfers to municipalities simpler, more certain and more supportive of municipal infrastructure priorities. The programme is designed to supplement the capital budgets of municipalities, with a focus on providing basic infrastructure services to the poor, while stimulating and job creation over the medium term.

Funding for electrification has not yet been incorporated into the MIG, due to uncertainties associated with the restructuring of the electricity distribution industry. MIG funds are distributed to all municipalities based on a formula that accounts for existing backlogs in service delivery as well as the functions assigned to individual municipalities.

Local economic development

LED is a key feature of government's overall strategy to address economic challenges.

All metropolitan and district municipalities have convened growth and development summits. The focus in most municipalities is on implementing the decisions and outcomes of these summits.

The National Framework for LED for stimulating and developing sustainable economies promotes a strategic approach to the development of local economies and a shift away from narrow municipal interests focused only on government input and ad-hoc projects, which do not have impact in terms of scale.

There are two major policy thrusts identified in the framework, namely: public-sector leadership and governance and sustainable community investment programmes. Four key strategies emanate from these policy thrusts with accompanying main actions. These are:

- improving good governance, service delivery, and public and market confidence in municipalities
- spatial development planning and exploiting the comparative advantage and competitiveness of districts and metros
- enterprise support and business infrastructure development
- introducing sustainable community-investment programmes focusing on organising communities for development and maximising circulation of public spend in local economies.

The Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme (ISRDP) and the Urban Renewal Programme (URP), which run projects to improve service delivery and alleviate poverty, continue to focus on their key target groups – the poor, the marginalised, the underdeveloped and the disadvantaged.

The programmes aim to maximise the impact of all government resources in the 21 identified rural and urban nodes. Under the umbrella of the ISRDP and URP, the Department of Provincial and Local Government with the support of the Business Trust undertook a nodal economic assessment and profiling of all 21 urban and rural development nodes.

One of the key findings of this study was that the individual nodal economies profiles amply demonstrate that there is significant potential for catalytic economic development in these nodes.

One priority of the Governance and Administration Cluster is to support municipalities in recruiting and mobilising the necessary economic development expertise to act on the findings of this study.

Project Consolidate

In 2004, Project Consolidate, a hands-on support and engagement programme, focusing on targeted municipalities, was launched.

The mainstreaming of Project Consolidate into the LGSA has seen a total of 359 experts deployed to 105 Project Consolidate municipalities by the end of 2007.

By August 2008, 1 134 experts had been deployed to 268 municipalities (including the Project Consolidate municipalities). Key partners, such as the Siyenza Manje initiative of the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), played a valuable role. Deployed experts provide technical assistance in areas such as engineering, finance, town planning, project management and human-resource (HR) development. The involvement of national and provincial sector departments in supporting local government has improved. However, professional vacancy rates remain relatively high.

Government and communication

The vision of the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is to help meet the communication and information needs of government and the people to ensure a better life for all.

It consists of the following chief directorates:

- The Communication Service Agency aims to provide core communication services to the

GSIS and other government departments, both in-house and through outsourcing. It also produces the *South Africa Yearbook* and *Pocket Guide to South Africa*.
- Government and Media Liaison aims to co-ordinate effective, integrated and comprehensive communication and media liaison services across government. It is also responsible for BuaNews, a government news service.
- Policy and Research conducts communication research to provide communication advice and monitors the development and implementation of government programmes from a communication perspective.
- Provincial and Local Liaison supports development communication and extends government's information infrastructure through part nerships with provincial and local government. It facilitates the establishment of Thusong Service Centres (former multi-purpose community centres) to make services and information more accessible to the public, particularly the disadvantaged.

In June 2008, former President Thabo Mbeki officially launched the 100th Thusong Service Centre at Inhlazuka, Umgungundlovu Local Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal.

The Thusong Service Centres are geared to bring government closer to the people and ensure that citizens, especially the poor, are able to access services close to where they live.

Since the establishment of the Inhlazuka Thusong Service Centre, about 2 000 people a month already benefit from services rendered. In 2008, the Thusong Programme was nearing its 10th year of operation as a "one-stop" centre for services and information. The Inhlazuka centre offers the following services to the community:
- South African Police Service
- post office
- tele-centre
- library
- Department of Home Affairs
- Department of Social Development
- Government Communication and Information System
- Department of Labour
- Department of Health
- Department of Education (district office)
- Department of Local Government and Traditional Affairs
- Community development workers
- Richmond Municipality.

The centre also has a canteen and a sports hall, which are used for various functions.

- Corporate Services provides financial management, administrative services, and HR administration and development (HRD). The Project Desk implements project management and co-ordinates services to cross-cutting projects driven by the GCIS, on behalf of other departments.
- *Vuk'uzenzele* is published bimonthly and focuses on economic and other opportunities created by South Africa's democracy.
- The 2010 Communication Project Management Unit facilitates the achievement of the communication objectives for the first African World Cup in 2010.

The chief executive officer of the GCIS is the official spokesperson for government.

The GCIS is central to developing communication strategies and programmes for government's transversal campaigns.

It also assists departments with specific campaigns and events, as well as in developing departmental communication structures.

The GCIS is responsible for maintaining the website, *Government Online* (*www.gov.za*), which includes an information portal for general information about government, and a services portal, which is a source of information about all the services rendered by national government.

The GCIS leads or is involved in various communication partnerships and joint processes, including the following:
- An intersectoral programme to set up Thusong Service Centres and provide information about how to access government services. By January 2009, 130 Thusong Service Centres were in place and more centres were being established. A strategy for setting up one Thusong Service Centre in each of the country's municipalities by 2014 has been approved.
- The transformation of the advertising and marketing industry.
- The Imbizo Campaign of direct interaction between government and the public.

The following entities report to the GCIS:
- the International Marketing Council (IMC)
- the Media Development and Diversity Agency. (See chapters 4 and 5: *Arts and culture and Communications*.)

International Marketing Council

The IMC, the custodian of Brand South Africa, is a presidential initiative under the auspices of the GCIS.

The IMC's role is to build a general climate of positive opinion, domestically and abroad, that will encourage a stronger flow of tourism and increased direct investment into South Africa, and build national pride among South Africans as a nation.

The IMC creates the space on which more direct marketing initiatives by the private sector and government departments play out. It also works closely with South African Tourism to ensure that marketing initiatives in tourism and in investment and trade are complementary.

On the domestic front, the IMC's activities seek to build a nation that is proud of itself and reflects the spirit of a country that is "Alive With Possibility".

Particular support is provided to individuals or institutions that interact regularly with visitors to the country or who are particularly active abroad in profiling the opportunities on offer in South Africa.

The IMC has country managers in the United States of America, United Kingdom and India. The country managers work with the South African diplomatic missions in the various capitals to build South Africa's image and deal with challenges to the country's reputation.

Through the South African Government's International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster, the IMC and its partners are actively developing ways to ensure that the marketing of the country is as effective in places where the IMC does not have direct representation.

IMC activities fall into the following main categories:

- marketing, which uses various forms of advertising and promotion to reach the broad South African public and influential business and opinion leaders in key markets abroad
- public relations, with a strong media-relations emphasis, which reinforces the marketing campaigns and promotes the values associated with Brand South Africa through editorial coverage domestically and abroad
- brand integration, involving the development of a substantial cadre of "brand ambassadors" within key organisations, influencing the quality of their interaction with tourists and business visitors to South Africa
- direct representation to priority countries through the country managers whose role in terms of media relations and partnership building has proved invaluable
- online communication through the official South African web portal – *www.southafrica.info* – which rivals major media houses in terms of the volume it attracts
- initiatives in the area of media relations.

In the build-up to the 2010 World Cup, the IMC will intensify its efforts to foster good working relationships with journalists at home and abroad – in view of media interest generated by World Cup preparations, leadership transition, economic growth and challenges such as crime and energy supply.

The IMC tracks international media coverage on the country through daily monitoring and analysis from the Communication Resource Centre (CRC).

An additional CRC-specific service was the establishment of *MediaClubSouthAfrica.com*. It is a web-based media service developed by the IMC in recognition of the important role the media plays in shaping perceptions of South Africa.

The IMC produces a number of newsletters, including the online *Alive with Possibility*, which is published on a weekly basis and contains positive stories about the country.

The Boundless Opportunities newsletter is produced in partnership with the JSE Securities Exchange Limited and targets JSE stakeholders domestically and abroad.

The IMC produced *South African Story III* – the third edition of a booklet, which contains facts, quotes and anecdotes that illustrate extraordinary South African stories and the challenges facing the country.

Co-operative governance

The importance of co-operative governance and intergovernmental relations in South Africa is reflected in Chapter Three of the Constitution, which determines a number of principles.

A number of intergovernmental structures promote and facilitate co-operative governance and intergovernmental relations between the respective spheres of government.

These include:

- the PCC, comprising the President, the Minister of Provincial and Local Government and the nine premiers
- ministerial clusters, director-general clusters, and the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad), which promote programme integration at national and provincial level
- ministerial forums between responsible line-function ministers at national level and their

- respective counterparts at provincial-government level, which normally meet quarterly and are supported by technical committees
- a number of intergovernmental forums that facilitate co-operative governance and intergovernmental relations.

Oversight, monitoring and early-warning systems play a critical role in helping to make co-operative governance work more effectively.

To improve integration among all spheres of government in both policy development and implementation, the Intergovernment Relations Framework Act, 2005 was promulgated in August 2005.

Elections

The Constitution of South Africa places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

In the 2004 elections, the African National Congress clinched victory in all nine provinces, gaining 279 of the 400 seats in the National Assembly.

The Democratic Alliance followed with 50 parliamentary seats, the Inkatha Freedom Party was third with 28 seats, the United Democratic Movement won nine seats, while the New National Party and the Independent Democrats secured seven seats each. The African Christian Democratic Party won six seats, the Freedom Front Plus four, and the Pan Africanist Congress and the United Christian Democratic Party three each. The Minority Front and Azanian People's Organisation won two seats each.

Seats in the National Assembly, October 2008	
African National Congress	286
Democratic Alliance	47
Inkatha Freedom Party	23
United Democratic Party	6
Independent Democrats	4
African Christian Democratic Party	4
Freedom Front Plus	4
National Democratic Convention	4
United Christian Democratic Party	3
Minority Front	2
African People's Convention	2
Pan Africanist Congress	1
Azanian People's Liberation Organisation	1
Federation of Democrats	1
National Alliance	1

Between 2002 and 2007, several parties took part in floor crossings, changing the political landscape.

However, in 2008, three Bills dealing with the prohibition of floor crossing were introduced.

In September 2009, the chairperson of the IEC, Dr Brigalia Bam, unveiled the 2009 general election logo and theme.

By September 2009, there were more than 20 million registered voters on the national voters' roll. Of these, almost 55% were women.

A general election took place in 2009.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster Management Centre with functional disaster management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster Management Advisory Forum has been recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for disaster-risk reduction.

South Africa has also made significant progress in respect of the implementation of the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint for disaster risk-reduction whose goal it is to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

In 2007/08, government mobilised over R400 million for local disasters and R7 million for regional interventions.

Public Service

The Department of Public Service and Administration develops policy and regulations for the Public Service.

Human-resource management (HRM) in the Public Service was decentralised, and the Minister of Public Service and Administration determined a framework of norms and standards within which departments in the national and provincial spheres must determine their organisational structures and manage their staff. Support efforts have been combined with measures to promote compliance with the Public Service prescripts, including a comprehensive amendment to the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 93 of 1994), enacted in 2007.

The scope of the minister's policy-making powers in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 includes the structure and functioning of the Public Service; conditions of service and other employment practices in the Public Service; labour relations; health and wellness of employees; information management in the Public Service; e-government; integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; transformation; reform; innovation; and any other matter to improve the effectiveness of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The department has led the implementation of a range of policies and processes, including the Batho Pele programme. It has also initiated the Community Development Worker (CDW) Programme in the Public Service, which brings government closer to the people by deploying public servants into communities to advise citizens on their civil rights and learn about their needs. The department also pioneered the Government Employees Medical Scheme (Gems), which is already the second-largest closed medical scheme in the country, covering more than 680 000 lives.

The department was the focal point for the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) process, which culminated in the adoption of a *Country Self Assessment Report and Programme of Action* in 2006 and a *Country Review Report* by the Panel of Eminent Persons in 2007. The Minister of Public Service and Administration was chairperson of the Pan-African Ministers' Conference from 2003 to 2008 and championed a capacity-building programme on governance and administration for the continent.

The department is providing support to post-conflict countries on the continent, including the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) by conducting a census of public servants, introducing anti-corruption initiatives and assisting in the decentralisation process.

The sister department of the Department of Public Service and Administration, the South African Management Development Institute (Samdi), was transformed into the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama), which will focus on providing executive training to senior managers and "massifying" training for new entrants to the Public Service.

The Centre for Public Service Innovation (CSPI), also falling within the minister's portfolio, conducts research and creates an enabling environment for innovation in the Public Service.

Size of the Public Service

By the end of March 2008, the Public Service had 1 204 525 people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). Of these employees, 63% are attached to the social services sector (health, social development, education and home affairs), followed by 20% in the criminal justice sector.

Human-resource development

The department has developed a number of strategic frameworks to guide departments in the implementation of the regulatory framework. The HRD Strategic Framework for the Public Service, launched in 2008, marks a shift from the traditional model of HRD, which focuses narrowly on training, to a more expansive model that ensures that public servants have the capacity to undertake their assigned responsibilities with the necessary level of skill, knowledge, experience and commitment.

HR Connect

Underpinning the HRD Strategic Framework is a project implementing a skills database throughout the Public Service, called HR Connect. The project is being implemented in 22 departments with 30 000 staff. Initial job profiles have been captured on the HR information system database.

The process of gathering information on sector or departmental skills needs and the matching of individual skills with departmental needs commenced in April 2008.

Conditions of service

Occupation-specific dispensations (OSDs) are tailor-made remuneration dispensations for categories of occupations in the Public Service. The introduction of OSDs aims to improve government's ability to attract and retain skilled employees. Agreements have been reached on OSDs for nurses, educators and legally qualified employees, while OSDs for social workers, health professionals and correctional officials have been developed. A remuneration policy framework for the Single Public Service has been prepared.

Policy on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement (Pilir)

The Pilir was implemented in 2006 to improve the management of incapacity leave and ill-health retirement benefits. In respect of ill-health retirements, actuaries at the Government Employee

Pension Fund confirmed that ill-health retirements decreased by 63% in pilot sites, while the average age of retiring employees increased significantly. The actual cost of ill-health retirements over the entire period of investigation was 59,6% of the expected cost. The administration of Pilir was expected to be decentralised to departments in 2009.

Medical assistance

Gems was established by government in 2005 to provide public-service employees with equitable access to affordable and comprehensive healthcare benefits. It commenced operations in 2006. More than half its members at the lower salary levels were not previously covered by a medical aid, demonstrating that Gems is performing a developmental function within the economy. Corporate governance is overseen by a Board of Trustees.

Employee health and wellness

The Public Service has invested in the health of public-service employees and their dependants, including interventions targeted at dealing with HIV and AIDS and other diseases. A practical guide for government departments on managing HIV and AIDS in the workplace was published and training programmes have been developed to build capacity.

A comprehensive, integrated and responsive Employee Health and Wellness Strategic Framework was launched in 2008. A review by Gems has found that lifestyle-related conditions were significant cost drivers for medical assistance in the Public Service.

Single Public Service

The department provides leadership to the Public Service in service-delivery improvement, including the implementation of the Single Public Service initiative, the Batho Pele programme and the expansion of access to public services and e-government. Legislation has been developed and was submitted to Parliament in June 2008 to create a Single Public Service from the national, provincial and local spheres of government, by providing a framework of norms of standards regulating employment and other matters.

Government's Programme of Action is available on *Government Online* (*www.gov.za*). The information is updated regularly to keep the public informed of the implementation progress.

Access Strategy

The Thusong Service Centres, an initiative of the GCIS, are being established in townships or poor rural areas to enhance access to government services. They are being equipped with Internet connectivity to enable them to provide online information on government services (*www.gov.za* or via a call centre [1020]). Plans are in place to establish Thusong Service Centres in shopping malls in major centres. An e-government project aimed at "e-enabling" selected services of government is underway.

Community development workers

By March 2008, more than 3 300 CDWs had been deployed in wards across the country. The CDW programme is one of the primary public-sector reform interventions to enhance development and the implementation of the Batho Pele principles, especially access to services.

The CDWs are pivotal in bringing government closer to the people, and in ensuring that community members become directly involved in the delivery of state services. CDWs have primarily helped citizens to gain access to social services and have increasingly provided support to citizens in taking up economic opportunities.

Batho Pele ("People First")

The Batho Pele programme was revitalised in 2004 and departments were encouraged to develop and implement service-delivery improvement plans (SDIPs). Greater involvement of regional offices in the preparing of plans and the implementation of SDIPs at the level of service-delivery points, including hospitals, police stations and law courts, were encouraged.

A "Know Your Service Rights" Campaign was initiated and a user-friendly booklet published. A training programme, the Batho Pele Change Management Engagement Programme, which is aimed at inculcating the principles of Batho Pele, has been provided to most of the country's municipalities.

Centre for Public Service Innovation

The CPSI has played a leading role in the implementation of several innovative projects since its establishment in 2002. Many of these initiatives have sought to bring the benefits of improved use of information and communications technologies

(ICTs) to the public sector. These have included the Batho Pele Gateway Portal, the installation of general services counters at Thusong Service Centres and mobile and wireless technologies.

The CPSI Public-Sector Innovation Awards pay tribute to public servants, or people working closely with government, who have made a real contribution to improving service delivery. Innovative projects from South Africa have also been entered in the UN Public Service Awards since 2002. Four South African projects were shortlisted for the 2008 Commonwealth Association of Public Administration and Management Awards.

Working together with the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) Governance and Public Administration Programme and the African Union (AU), the CPSI, together with the Department of Public Service and Administration, is implementing the inaugural All Africa Public-Sector Innovation Awards. The programme aims to showcase Africa's innovativeness in ensuring service delivery. The CPSI is also the content manager of the UN Public Administration Network portal for southern Africa.

The "Know Your Service Rights" Campaign was launched in March 2008. It seeks to address concerns that were raised by citizens during studies conducted by the Public Service Commission and the Department of Public Service and Administration. The department developed an information booklet that focuses on highlighting key services provided within the Social Cluster. The major areas of focus are labour, education, health, home affairs, housing, social development, and the basic services of water and sanitation.

The main objectives of the campaign are to:

- inform citizens of the different types of services that government provides and rights that emanate from these services
- make the public aware and educate citizens of means and institutions for exercising such rights and redress mechanisms
- exert positive pressure on the Public Service and its officials through a concerted public-awareness effort that is aimed at educating citizens about their rights in relation to how services are delivered
- discourage complacency among public servants because citizens would be more aware and knowledgeable about their rights and expect service standards and a recourse process should their rights be violated
- strengthen and emphasise the importance of partnerships between the public and government in ensuring citizen participation in the service-delivery continuum.

State Information Technology Agency (Sita)

Sita consolidates and co-ordinates the State's information technology (IT) resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and to improve interoperability. In 2004, Sita embarked on a comprehensive three-year turnaround strategy, called Tswelopele, a Tswana word for "moving forward". The overarching purpose of this large-scale change programme is to restore stakeholder confidence in the organisation and re-establish it as an efficient and effective ICT partner to government.

Government Information Technology Officers' (Gito) Council

The Gito Council is an advisory body which advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery. Its membership consists of the chief information officers from national departments and offices of the premiers. The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement guidelines, e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

Fighting corruption

The fight against corruption remains extremely high on government's agenda. A guide on the minimum anti-corruption capacity requirements has been issued to departments. The National Anti-Corruption Forum, consisting of government, business and civil society, has strengthened the country's partnership approach to promote ethical conduct. Citizens are encouraged to report incidents of corruption to the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH) (0800 701 701).

South Africa acceded to the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions in June 2007 as the first African country and the 37th member of the OECD Working Group on Bribery in International Business Transactions. An impact appraisal of the National Anti-Corruption Framework, has been finalised.

The third Anti-Corruption Summit was held in August 2008.

International and African affairs

The Minister of Public Service and Administration participates in public-administration international knowledge communities, including the

Commonwealth Association for Public Administration and Management, the UN Committee of Experts and the International Institute of Administrative Sciences.

The minister is the chair of the Pan-African Conference of Ministers of Public Service, which drives the implementation of a continental capacity-development programme on governance and administration.

The minister's programme includes the development of the African Public Service Charter, strengthening the capacity of the African regional economic communities and providing support to post-conflict countries.

In 2004, South Africa signed a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) with the Minister of Public Administration of the DRC aimed at facilitating co-operation in the field of governance and administration. Support is focused on four areas of co-operation:

- conducting a census of public servants
- anti-corruption projects
- decentralising public administration
- establishing a management development institute in the DRC.

The biometric enrolment for the Kinshasa Census was completed in 2007. The main aims of the census were to provide an employment profile of the Public Service, including staffing numbers, gender, employment duration, age groups, place of employment, occupational categories and grades. Enrolment in the remaining 10 provinces is underway. A Code of Conduct for the DRC has been published and disseminated.

African Peer Review Mechanism

South Africa is one of 28 African countries participating in the APRM. The Minister of Public Service and Administration was designated as a focal point for the South African process and has the overall responsibility for leading the process and chairing the APRM Governing Council.

An interdepartmental committee and interim secretariat, which is located within the department, was established to assist the minister in setting up the necessary structures to implement the mechanism in South Africa.

South Africa's response to the APR Panel's *Country Review Report* was presented to the APR Forum in July 2007.

The *Country Review Report* identified 18 South African best practices worthy of emulation and strongly endorsed the process undertaken by South Africa in completing its *Country Self-Assessment Report* (CSAR). The CSAR included a Programme of Action (PoA) aimed at addressing the challenges faced by the country, and South Africa submitted its first monitoring and evaluation (M&E) report on the implementation of the PoA to the APR Panel in June 2008.

The review of South Africa by its African peers reinforced the strategic importance of partnership within society, ensuring the capacity of institutions as the bedrock to accelerate development and the fight against poverty. The APRM as an instrument is unique in its commitment and forthrightness to overcome the country's historical legacy and ensure focused efforts to overcome poverty.

> The resolutions of the Third National Anti-Corruption Summit, which was held in August 2008, were noted and endorsed by Cabinet on 18 September 2008. The resolutions include the following: a clear articulation of the national integrity system; implementation of anti-corruption legislation; regulating and managing conflict of interests; legislative measures to ensure that companies involved in price fixing, market allocation and collusive tendering are prohibited from state tenders; ethical conduct; and the need to expedite regulations for political-party funding to encourage transparency.

Governance and Administration (G&A) Cluster

The national cluster system comprises six Cabinet committees and five corresponding administrative structures. The administrative structures are the G&A Cluster; the Social Cluster; the Economic Cluster; the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster; and the International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster. The G&A Cluster is co-chaired by the directors-general of public service and administration and provincial and local government.

Following the 2008 State of the Nation Address, the cluster developed a PoA. The cluster reports bimonthly to Cabinet on the implementation of the PoA. The co-ordinating ministers of the cluster present regular reports to the media. The reports are posted on the Government's website.

The cluster's priorities include:

- good governance (anti-corruption, Batho Pele, employment equity and public participation)

- capacity of the State, skills-development strategies and capacity-development programmes
- macro-organisation of the State (establishment of a Single Public Service, enhancing access to government services, including e-government)
- transversal systems (co-ordinating planning and M&E).

The Department of Home Affairs has implemented several projects aimed at improving the delivery of civic services. The identity document (ID) turnaround time stood at an average of 37 days by January 2009, down from the February 2008 average of 103 days.

By April 2008, as a result of the track-and-trace system, ID distribution was harmonised, as a single service-provider now collects documentation from home affairs offices and delivers it from the central ID processing centre back to local offices, reducing the average "postage" time to three days. The department is also engaging with the South African Post Office to improve distribution to citizens.

ID track-and-trace technology was implemented at 260 home affairs offices. It is now possible to check the status of an application throughout the ID issuing process. SMS and Internet query functionality is also available to assist clients with enquiries. The department's Customer Contact Centre has been expanded to 102 contact centre agents and 22 case-resolution officers and now deals with approximately 80 000 calls per month. Some 80% of calls are answered within 20 seconds.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution. Section 195 sets out the following values and principles governing public administration that should be promoted by the commission:

- a high standard of professional ethics
- efficient, economic and effective use of resources
- a development-orientated public administration
- providing services in an impartial, fair and equitable way, without bias
- responding to people's needs and encouraging the public to participate in policy-making
- an accountable public administration
- transparency
- good HRM and career-development practices
- a representative public administration with employment and personnel-management practices based on ability, objectivity, fairness and the need to redress the imbalances of the past.

In terms of Section 196(4) of the Constitution, the functions and powers of the commission are:

- promoting the values and principles, as set out in Section 195, throughout the Public Service
- investigating, monitoring and evaluating the organisation, administering personnel practices of the Public Service, and in particular, adhering to the values and principles set out in Section 195, and public-service procedures
- proposing measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- giving directives aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the values and principles set out in Section 195
- reporting on its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and directions and advice it may give, and providing an evaluation of the extent to which the values and principles are complied with
- investigating and evaluating the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and reporting the relevant executive authority and legislature
- investigating grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommending appropriate remedies
- monitoring and investigating adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advising national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service, including those relating to the recruitment, appointment, transfer, discharge and other aspects of the careers of employees in the Public Service.

The PSC is accountable to the National Assembly and it must also report to the legislature of the province concerned on its activities in that particular province.

The commission comprises 14 members – five are appointed on the recommendation of a commitee of the National Assembly and one member is appointed from each of the nine provinces. A commissioner is appointed for a term of five years. One regional office in each province, administered by regional directors and support staff, serves as a base for the provincially based commissioners.

Labour-relations improvement

Given the labour-intensive nature of the Public Service, the maintenance of labour peace is a fundamental requirement for the effective functioning of departments. Generally, the Public Service is dependent on sound labour relations for the promotion of its service-delivery objectives. Public servants are the vehicles through which the Public Service ensures delivery on its mandate and a discontent workforce will have negative implications on effective service delivery.

The PSC plays a key role in promoting sound labour relations in the Public Service through the execution of its constitutional mandate. It is the leading arbiter on grievances in the Public Service and also deals with other complaints impacting on the employer/employee relationship. The PSC has developed Grievance Rules in terms of which grievances are handled by departments and the PSC.

During 2007/08, the PSC received 597 grievances. This represented a decline from the previous financial year during which 641 grievances were received. The PSC continues to experience difficulties as a result of inadequate information provided by departments when they submit grievances. As a result, the PSC has had to invoke Section 10 of the PSC Act, 1997 (Act 46 of 1997), on numerous occasions by summoning heads of departments (HoDs) to appear before the PSC.

Public-administration investigations

The PSC undertakes audits and investigations into public-administration practices by responding to complaints lodged in terms of its two complaints access mechanisms, namely, the Complaints Rules and the NACH. The investigation of complaints lodged through both access mechanisms is conducted in terms of the Protocol for Conducting Public Administration Investigations of the PSC.

The PSC avoids the duplication of resources in the handling of complaints through co-operation and referral to institutions vested with the mandate for the further handling of such complaints. These include, among other things, the South African Revenue Service, the Independent Complaints Directorate, the Public Protector and the Auditor-General.

During 2007/08, 150 complaints/requests for investigations were received. The complaints received predominantly related to maladministration, irregularities regarding HR and procurement practices.

Apart from investigations, a number of research projects focusing on public-administration practices were also conducted. One of the flagship research projects of the PSC, is its annual *Overview of Financial Misconduct in the Public Service*.

The PSC also published a report titled *Trend Analysis on Complaints Lodged with the PSC* during 2006/07.

Professional ethics and human-resource reviews

During 2007/08, the PSC continued to establish a culture of professional and ethical behaviour, and to review HR practices in the Public Service through its involvement in the management of conflicts of interest through the Financial Disclosure Framework (FDF) for senior managers, the management of the NACH and by providing secretarial support to the National Anti-Corruption Forum. It also produced various reports and promotional material aimed at promoting professional ethics and strengthening integrity in the Public Service.

To address non-submission or late submission of disclosure forms, the PSC published the *Report on the Management of Conflicts of Interest through Financial Disclosures*, making recommendations to improve compliance with the FDF.

The PSC conducted a survey and produced the *Report on the Management of Gifts in the Public Service* in 2008. Prior to the establishment of the NACH, no mechanism existed in the Public Service for the centralised reporting of corruption. Since its establishment, the NACH has provided free access to the public and government employees to report corruption in the Public Service.

During 2007/08, 1 441 corruption cases were reported.

While integrity among public servants is a fundamental requirement for good governance, the equitable, effective and efficient management of their career incidents and development is of equal importance to ensure that their performance is maximised.

The PSC has therefore continued to prioritise its strategic review of HRM practices within the Public Service and has produced a number of reports aimed at promoting best practice and ensuring compliance with national norms and standards.

To gain deeper understanding of the challenges that the Public Service faced in recruiting and retaining persons with disabilities, the PSC held formal inquiries with selected national and provincial departments in 2008.

Evaluation of employee assistance

In 2007, the PSC completed the *Report on the Evaluation of Employee-Assistance Programmes in the Public Service*. The report identifies some of the best practices that can be used to strengthen ineffective employee-assistance programmes.

This report is significant as there is a clear need to address the increasing number of employee problems and the mounting impact of HIV- and AIDS-related problems in the workplace.

Leadership and performance improvements

Public-service leadership plays a critical role in providing strategic direction in managing government's transformation programme. Given this role, it is important that this leadership is subjected to a proper system of scrutiny and support. The PSC has continued to play a role in this regard by, among other things, facilitating the evaluation of the performance of HoDs, and providing advice on the performance agreements of HoDs. In addition, the PSC's work in this area has involved research on selected critical issues and public-service leadership. These include the implementation of the Performance Management and Development System (PMDS) for senior managers, the turnover rates of HoDs and relationships at the interface between the Executive and HoDs.

The PSC published and distributed the guideline for the evaluation of HoDs. The purpose of the guidelines is to assist executing authorities and HoDs in preparing and conducting the evaluation of performance for a specific financial year. The guidelines introduced cut-off dates regarding retrospective evaluations to promote better compliance with the provisions of the PMDS.

The PSC continued developing and strengthening its work on the Organisational Performance Assessment processes. Information generated through such an assessment can be used to provide feedback to executing authorities on the performance of their departments, in addition to the advice generated on the performance of their individual HoDs.

Service delivery and quality assurance

Public participation plays a significant role in promoting participatory governance in the Public Service. Since citizens are not only beneficiaries of government services but are well positioned to contribute meaningfully towards effective planning and implementation of service-delivery programmes, active involvement of citizens in policy-making and the service-delivery processes is critical to ensure that responsive strategies are put in place. The PSC annually applies assessment instruments that establish the progress the Public Service is making in service delivery.

These assessment instruments include inspections of service-delivery sites and citizens' forums and satisfaction surveys.

During 2007/08, the PSC completed a citizens' satisfaction survey, focusing on farmer support and development services to emerging farmers as well as food-security projects by the provincial departments of agriculture.

To assess the mechanisms that departments use to promote citizen engagement, the PSC conducted an evaluation of the *Implementation of the Batho Pele Principle of Consultation in the Public Service*. The report raises important issues concerning how departments understand and practise "consultation", and some of the critical challenges that impact on participatory governance.

The PSC also monitored and evaluated departments' adherence to the policy prescribed in the Promotion of the Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), in the Public Service. The Act gives people affected by administrative decisions the right to be informed that a decision is to be taken, to be given reasons for decisions and to have decisions reviewed in court.

In its drive to improve the implementation of the verification of qualifications in the Public Service, the PSC evaluated the qualification-verification procedures introduced in departments.

The PSC has recognised the importance of collecting first-hand information on the performance of service-delivery institutions. As a result, the PSC has approved a project on service-delivery inspections.

As part of fulfilling its constitutional mandate, the PSC will continue to generate evidence on the performance of the Public Service to advise Parliament and the executive on progress and to, among other things, draw attention to areas of concern.

Governance monitoring

M&E remains a priority in guiding the transformation of the Public Service into an effective institution that delivers on the objectives of government.

Effective M&E is at the core of the PSC`s mandate, and specific instruments have been developed over the years to support the implementation of this mandate. One such system is the Transversal Public Service M&E System, which the PSC has been applying annually to a sample of national and provincial departments. Apart from the information generated from applying the system to produce a consolidated M&E report for each research cycle, the PSC also uses it to compile the annual *State of the Public Service Report*. During 2007/08, the PSC poduced 22 evaluation reports through its M&E System.

Following an audit by the PSC of government's poverty-reduction programmes and the development of a database of the programmes, the PSC further embarked on a series of evaluations focusing on samples of programmes taken from the database. The sample evaluated comprised public works, land redistribution, income-generating and home-based care projects. The report produced, therefore, builds on the audit of poverty-reduction programmes that was completed earlier.

Being at the forefront of M&E in the country, the PSC saw the need to share its expertise with the broader emerging M&E community. It produced both a pamphlet on basic concepts in M&E and a conceptual framework for meta-evaluation.

In addition, the PSC has over the years established sound networks with the local and international M&E community. These have now yielded various opportunities for engagement on the practice of M&E. Moreover, the PSC has continued to support the work of the South African M&E Association and also participated in the Fourth African Evaluation Association Conference in Niger, and the Networks of Network on Impact Evaluation Seminar in Washington, DC, United States of America. All of these engagements have expanded the networks of the PSC, and were used to profile its work to a broader audience and to improve the quality of M&E.

In October 2008, government released the results of the *Fifteen Year Review,* which it initiated in 2007. It takes stock of progress since the attainment of democracy, in achieving the objective of improving the quality of life of all South Africans.

The review is based on almost a year of research and analysis within government, undertaken by outside experts and organisations. It will feed into the long-term planning which helps direct national development. It is not only about taking stock of progress, but it is equally about identifying shortcomings and challenges.

The review takes a detailed look at the impact of government activities across the different clusters of government, including the special programmes and policies aimed at meeting the needs of women, children, persons with disabilities and young people. The picture it reveals combines progress with persisting and new challenges.

It takes into account major trends in the South African society and internationally, such as: changes in household size and structure, growth in the economically active population, migration, structural unemployment, social cohesion, inequality, state legitimacy, national leadership and social partnership and the global context.

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy

Palama (Sesotho for "ascend") was opened in August 2008. The academy, which has evolved from Samdi, aims to achieve a massive increase in training courses for managers in the Public Service by involving public- and -private-sector educational and training institutions in an expanded training programme.

The academy facilitates and co-ordinates the programmes by monitoring and ensuring quality assurance of the training delivered by participating educational and training institutions.

The academy is part of the Batho Pele initiative, which aims to get public servants to be service-oriented, to strive for excellence in service delivery and to commit to continuous service-delivery improvement. Palama encourages public managers across government to raise their performance and enhance the Batho Pele ethos of service and delivery by taking advantage of the opportunities for management development that the academy is making available.

The academy's main mandate is to ensure the necessary massification of high-quality practical management training for junior and middle managers in all three spheres of government.

At the level of senior management service, the academy wants to improve the provision of executive development programmes offered by Higher Education institutions. At the level of the junior and middle management services, the academy is developing and managing a national learning framework under which the curricula and material to be used by a range of providers will be identified and developed.

Through a series of workshops, the academy has already forged links with its provincial counterparts and with providers for local government such as the Department of Provincial and Local Government and the DBSA and is encouraging better links among them.

Palama will no longer be a provider of training but a facilitator and co-ordinator of service provision. The outcome sought is a change from the selective provision of 150 000 training days a year across all academies to a massified comprehensive provision of training to meet the need.

The academy has identified the following strategic objectives through which it will achieve its mandate:

- developing and administering a training framework of curricula and materials oriented to service delivery to be used by providers of transversal skills training for junior and middle managers
- co-ordinating the provision of executive development programmes for senior management
- capacitating public-sector departments to identify and meet their management development and training needs in relation to their service-delivery objectives
- developing and implementing a suitable quality management and monitoring system
- establishing and maintaining partnerships and linkages with national and international management-development institutes and training providers
- arranging customised training programmes in support of South African foreign policy within the AU and Nepad.

Department of Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs provides individual status-determination services and has a network of offices in all provinces. Mobile offices or units service areas on a regular pre-arranged basis where the establishment of fixed offices is not warranted.

The new organisational structure of the department has been approved by the Minister of Public Service and Administration and 2008 – 2010 will see its full implementation.

The structure supports a new approach to the functioning of the department, including reporting, accountability, quality assurance, leadership support and performance management.

Existing fingerprint records of citizens are being converted on to the Automated Fingerprint Identification System (AFIS). Over 30 million fingerprint records are stored on the AFIS database and remote verification of citizens' fingerprints that are registered on the AFIS database is now possible. By August 2008, online fingerprint verification had been successfully implemented at 93 home affairs offices and training in revised procedures had been provided to 236 staff members.

In line with the recommendations for the new vision and design, the new structure creates a partial separation between the two main core business branches with a shared support structure. The establishment of the organisation will increase from 7 000 to 9 200.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

The Government Printing Works (GPW), a division of the Department of Home Affairs, provides printing, stationery and related services to all government departments, provincial governments and municipalities. It also publishes, markets and distributes government publications. Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service (SAPS), and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

By May 2008, phase one of the Home Affairs Turnaround Strategy was completed. Phase two, which is a large-scale change programme to improve the citizen experience at home affairs offices, is underway. Some of the achievements in the first phase regarding internal governance include:

- suspending or dismissing over 200 officials for dishonest activities in the six months preceding May 2008
- determining a new operating model for the department after a customer survey and stakeholder engagement
- designing a new organisational structure in line with the operating model
- filling top posts and determining a budget structure
- commencing a programme to stabilise the existing operational infrastructure, which includes the network and is aimed at developing real-time online capability and enhanced security.

Civic services

The Branch: Civic Services is mainly responsible for population registration and civic services. Population registration entails recording personal particulars in the Population Register with a view to issuing IDs; identification by means of fingerprints and photographs; and dealing with matters pertaining to the status of persons, such as births, marriages and deaths.

Civic services entail issuing passports, registering foreign births, determining citizenship, and issuing certificates of naturalisation or resumption of South African citizenship.

Citizenship matters

South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof. South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- the registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

Population Register

The current Population Register hosted by the Department of Home Affairs stores and provides citizenry-identification information, including unique identification numbers, addresses, birth dates and marriage status. In essence, this system forms the core of citizenry-information systems within the department.

Evolving technology, modern government structures and the need for more secure systems led to the department embarking on a programme to re-engineer the Population Register. This will align its function with the current government dispensation and future needs of both the Government and third-party institutions. This project is closely aligned with the implementation of the Home Affairs National Identification System, which was approved by government in January 1996.

The focus of the project is on providing a more scalable, adaptable, efficient, secure and interactive database. Features will allow integration with the automated biometric fingerprint system, information sourcing from the electronic document-management system and an electronic web-based query system.

Immigration

The Branch: Immigration is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence in and departure from South Africa. This entails:

- processing applications for visas, temporary residence permits and immigration permits
- maintaining a travellers' and foreigners' control system
- tracing and removing foreigners who are considered undesirable or who are in South Africa illegally.

The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998), gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters. The Act came into effect on 1 April 2000.

In recent years, the department has sought to control illegal immigration through a variety of measures:

- The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), provides for a stricter immigration policy. The implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003. The Immigration Act, 2002 was amended in 2006 to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate skills in line with the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa and the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition.
- The department works closely with the South African Revenue Service and the SAPS to ensure effective border control.
- A computerised visa system was instituted to curb the forgery of South African visas and is being extended to all South African missions abroad.

The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004), into law on 12 October 2004.

The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for different permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment.

The final immigration regulations furthermore aim to establish a new system of immigration control to ensure that:

- temporary and permanent residence permits are issued as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour, foreign investment is facilitated, the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled, skilled HR are increased, and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community are facilitated
- tourism is promoted
- the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- a human rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The Directorate: Refugee Affairs manages refugee services in South Africa. It has established the Asylum Seekers Unit and Country of Origin Information Unit. Amendments to the Refugees Act, 1998, tabled in Parliament in March 2008, will establish a Refugee Appeals Authority and bring the legislation in line with the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005). The draft Refugees Amendment Bill seeks to dissolve the existing Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs and the Refugee Appeal Board and establish a Refugee Appeals Authority. The Bill will have the authority to invite representations from the UN Human Rights Commission, make its own inquiries and ask the asylum-seeker to appear before it. The Bill proposes that unaccompanied children seeking asylum be issued with an asylum-seeker permit and brought before the Children's Court.

These units advise refugee-reception offices on policy-related matters and on the background information of an applicant's country of origin. After being recognised, refugees are issued with refugee IDs, which give them access to the basic services in South Africa, including basic healthcare, education and employment.

The South African Government, through the Department of Home Affairs, issues UN travel documents to refugees. Since May 2005, refugees have been issued with a refugee smart ID, which contains security features that are not forgeable.

This directorate seeks to professionalise the functioning of the refugee regime in preparation for mass influxes in the future, the main focus as a measurement point being the 2010 Soccer World Cup. The department also seeks to assist those who wish to return to their countries of origin after changes in the circumstances that led to their forced migration, by engaging in campaigns of voluntary repatriation jointly with the UN High Commissioner for Refugees, and later declaration and application of cessation clauses, such as the Angolan Repatriation Programme.

The Directorate: Information Co-ordination manages information on the National Immigration Branch to facilitate regional and national operations.

The directorate's main objectives are to:

- establish an information repository, which acts on risks and urgent immigration matters
- ensure dynamic real-time support on tactical and legal matters to immigration officers globally.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry. The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

Control of travellers

The travel documents of persons entering or departing South Africa are examined by immigration officers at recognised ports of entry, to determine whether such persons comply with the requirements.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and who

> In 2007, the Department of Home Affairs launched a Braille version of their information brochure, "Know your Home Afairs Services" in Garankuwa, Gauteng.

are therefore guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, persons who are in South Africa illegally are either prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The Department of Home Affairs is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting persons suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting in Pretoria.

Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act, 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitor's permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relative's permits
- work permits with the following categories:
  - quota work permits
  - general work permits
  - intra-company transfer work permits
  - exceptional skills work permits
  - corporate work permits
  - retired person permits
  - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements, or who are citizens of countries that are exempt from visa requirements for 90 days, may therefore proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such persons can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may likewise obtain visitors' permits at a port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for the period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their countries of origin/residence. In countries where there are no

> The Department of Home Affairs has a contact centre which deals with both civic services and immigration enquiries. The volumes of enquiries for the call centre have been growing from an initial 4 000 calls a month at its inception to 100 000 calls per month.

representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them.

The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, to the nearest regional/district office of the Department of Home Affairs where the applicant is employed. Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest district/regional office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

Removal of undesirable persons

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the Director-General of the Department of Home Affairs.

Acknowledgements

2008 Local Government Budgets and Expenditure Review 2003/04 to 2009/10
BuaNews
BuaBriefs
Department of Home Affairs
Department of Provincial and Local Government
Department of Public Service and Administration
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Government Communication and Information System
International Marketing Council
Office of the Public Service Commission
Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
www.cpsi.co.za
www.dplg.gov.za
www.gcis.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.imc.org.za
www.MediaClubSouthAfrica.com
www.salga.net

Suggested reading

Basedau, M, Erdman, G and Mehler, A, eds. *Votes, Money and Violence: Political Parties and Elections in sub-Saharan Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Bond, P. *Elite Transition: From Apartheid to Neoliberalism in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Bratton, M, Mattes, R and Gyiamh-Boadi, E. *Public Opinion, Democracy and Market Reform in South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2005.
Buhlungu, S. ed. *Trade Unions and Democracy: Cosatu Workers' Political Attitudes in South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2006.
Beckman, B and Gbemisola A. *Intellectuals and African Development: Pretension and Resistance in African Politics*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2006.
Cloete, J J N and C Thornhill. *South African Municipal Government and Administration: New Dispensa tion*. Johannesburg: Dotsquare, 2005.
Crawford-Brown, T. *Eye on the Money*. Cape Town: Umuzi, 2007.
Calland, R and Graham, P. eds. *Democracy in the Time of Mbeki*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2005.
Calland, R. *Anatomy of South Africa. Who Holds the Power?* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
Chipkin, I. *Do South Africans Exist? Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of "The People"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. Edited by Juta's Statutes Editors, reflecting the law as at October 2004. Lansdowne: Juta, 2004.
Cross, C. *et al*. eds. *Views on Migration in Sub-Saharan Africa: Proceedings of an African Migration Alliance Workshop*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Delivering the Dream: Designing and Implementing Strategy in the Public Sector: Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
Daniel, J. *et al*. eds. *State of the Nation: South Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
Feinstein, Andrew. *After the Party: A Personal and Political Journey inside the ANC*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Geyer, Y. *How Local Government Works: Handbook for CBOs*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007.
Geisler, G. *Women and the Remaking of Politics in Southern Africa: Negotiating Autonomy, Incorporation and Representation*. Uppsala: Nordiska Afrikainstituut, 2004.
Good, K. *Realising Democracy and Legitimacy in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa), 2004.
Kadima, D, ed. *Politics of Party Coalitions in Africa*. Johannesburg: Electoral Institute of South Africa, 2006.
Kok, P. *et al*. eds. *Migration in South and Southern Africa: Dynamics and Determinants*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.
Leon, T. *On the Contrary*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.
Levy, M. *From Dakaro to Democracy: A History of Idasa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007.

Mangcu, X. *To the Brink: The State of Democracy in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2008.
Kok, P. *et al*. eds. *Migration in South and Southern Africa: Dynamics and Determinants*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.
MacDonald, M. *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.
Manganyi, C. ed. *On Becoming a Democracy: Transition and Transformation in South African Society.* Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2004.
Mills, G. *Poverty to Prosperity: Globalisation, Good Governance and African Recovery*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2004.
Ndebele, NS. *Fine Lines from the Box: Further Thoughts About our Country*. Cape Town: Umuzi, 2007.
Ramphele, M. *Laying Ghosts to Rest: Dilemmas of the Transformation in South Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2008.
Pillay, U. *et al*. *Democracy and Delivery: Urban Policy in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Piombo, J and Nijzink, L. *Electoral Politics in South Africa: Assessing the First Democratic Decade*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.
Salih, MA. ed. *African Parliaments: Between Governance and Government*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
Saul, JS. *Development after Globalisation: Theory and Practice for the Embattled South in a New Imperial Age*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, 2006.
Saul, J. *The Next Liberation Struggle*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, c.2007.
Seepe, S. *Speaking Truth to Power: Reflections on Post-1994 South Africa*. Pretoria: Vista University and Skotaville Publishers, 2004.
Shain, M. ed. *Opposing Voices: Liberalism and Opposition in South Africa Today*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
Sicre, F and World Economic Forum. *South Africa at 10: Perspectives by Political, Business and Civil Leaders*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 2004.
Skjelten, S. *A People's Constitution: Public Participation in the South African Constitution-Making Process*. Midrand: Institute of Global Dialogue, 2006.
Southall, R and Melber, H. *Legacies of Power: Leadership Change and Former Presidents in African Politics*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Strand, P. *et al*. *HIV/AIDS and Democratic Governance in South Africa: Illustrating the Impact on Electoral Processes*. Pretoria: Idasa, 2005.
Saul, JS. *The Next Liberation Struggle: Capitalism, Socialism and Democracy in Southern Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Steinberg, J. *Notes from a Fractured Country*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. Cape Town: Constitutional Assembly, 1997.
Van Donk, M *et al*. eds. *Consolidating Developmental Local Government: Lessons from the South African Experience*. Cape Town: University of the Cape Press, 2008.

HEALTH

The Department of Health aims to ensure that all South Africans have access to affordable, good quality healthcare through a caring and effective national health system (NHS) based on the primary healthcare (PHC) approach.

Statutory bodies

Statutory bodies for health-service professionals include the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA), the South African Dental Technicians' Council, the South African Nursing Council (SANC), the South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC) and the Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA).

Regulations in the private health sector are effected through the Council for Medical Schemes. The Medicines Control Council (MCC) is charged with ensuring the safety, quality and effectiveness of medicines.

Health authorities

National

The Department of Health's broad aims are to combat communicable and non-communicable diseases, and to strengthen health promotion and health systems.

The department is responsible for:

- formulating health policy, legislation, norms and standards for healthcare
- ensuring appropriate use of health resources
- co-ordinating information systems and monitoring national health goals
- regulating the public and private healthcare sectors
- ensuring access to cost-effective and appropriate health commodities
- liaising with health departments in other international agencies and countries.

Provincial health departments

Provincial health departments provide and manage comprehensive health services at all levels of care. The basis for these services is a district-based PHC model. The major emphasis in developing health services in South Africa at provincial level has been the shift from curative hospital-based healthcare to that provided in an integrated community-based manner.

The provincial health departments are responsible for:

- providing and/or rendering health services
- formulating and implementing provincial health policy, standards and legislation
- planning and managing a provincial health information system
- researching health services to ensure efficiency and quality
- controlling quality of health services and facilities
- screening applications for licensing and inspecting private health facilities
- co-ordinating the funding and financial management of district health authorities
- consulting effectively on health matters at community level
- ensuring that delegated functions are performed.

The national department assists provincial health departments to develop service-transformation plans to reshape and resize the health services and develop appropriate, adequately resourced and sustainable health service-delivery platforms, which are responsive to needs.

Clinics

A network of clinics run by government forms the backbone of primary and preventive healthcare in South Africa.

Hospitals

Hospital management is being strengthened in various ways in all nine provinces. In 2007/08, the Department of Health planned to ensure that at least 50% of hospital managers enrolled in a formal hospital management-training programme.

The Hospital Revitalisation Programme entered its sixth year in 2008, and continues to illustrate the importance of an integrated strategy for improving health-service delivery.

South Africans' use of public healthcare services has almost doubled over the past eight years. The increase was due to improved access as a result of building some 1 600 clinics closer to the communities, improved packages of care available at clinics and the removal of user fees.

In 2008, immunisation coverage stood at 88%. The average number of new cases of diarrhoea per 1 000 children under the age of five dropped by more than half, from 258 in 2005 to 119 in 2006.

The *2006 Antenatal Survey* showed for the first time a decline in HIV prevalence, particularly among young people, and that tuberculosis cure rates were improving annually, while defaulter rates were declining.

The programme includes improving infrastructure, health technology (equipment), quality of care, management and organisational development within targeted hospitals in the programme. Since 2005/06, three new hospitals have been opened, bringing to eight the number of new hospitals. These are George Hospital in the Western Cape, Madikana ka Zulu Memorial Hospital in the Eastern Cape and Lebowakgomo Hospital in Limpopo. An additional three hospitals were expected to be completed by 2008/09. These are Dilokong and Nkhensani hospitals in Limpopo and Barkley West Hospital in the Northern Cape.

Emergency medical services (EMS)

Provincial departments of health are responsible for EMS, which includes ambulance services. Emergency-care practitioners receive nationally standardised training through provincial colleges of emergency care.

Some universities of technology also offer diploma and degree programmes in emergency care. Personnel can receive training to the level of advanced life support. These services also include aeromedical and medical-rescue services.

Personnel working in this field are required to register with the HPCSA's Professional Board for Emergency Care. The Department of Health plays a co-ordinating role in operating and formulating policy and guidelines, and in developing government EMS.

A key objective during 2007/08 was to reduce the response times of EMS in both urban and rural areas. The department assisted provinces to implement EMS plans. Private ambulance services provide services to the community. Some also provide aeromedical services to the private sector.

The South African Military Health Service of the South African National Defence Force plays a vital supporting role in emergencies and disasters. (See Chapter 16: *Safety, security and defence*.)

Comprehensive healthcare

Primary healthcare

The policy on universal access to PHC, introduced in 1994, forms the basis of healthcare delivery programmes and has had a major impact on the South African population.

Fifty-three health districts were established in line with the new metropolitan and district municipal boundaries.

From 1997 to 2006/07, access to PHC, measured by visits, increased from 67 021 961 to 101 644 080.

A PHC audit was commissioned during 2007/08 to gererate comprehensive information on PHC infrastructure and services nationally. The audit was expected to be completed in 2008/09, and the results will be used to improve resource allocation and the delivery of the PHC package of care.

The services provided by PHC workers include immunisation, communicable and endemic disease prevention, maternity care, screening of children, Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI) and child healthcare, health promotion, youth health services, counselling services, taking care of chronic diseases and diseases of older persons, rehabilitation, accident and emergency services, family planning, and oral health services. By mid-2008, PHC workers at about 70% of health facilities had been trained in IMCI.

Patients visiting PHC clinics are treated mainly by PHC-trained nurses or, at some clinics, by doctors. Patients with complications that cannot be treated at PHC level are referred to hospitals for higher levels of care. Beneficiaries of medical-aid schemes are excluded from free services.

The National Drug Policy is, to a large extent, based on the essential drugs concept and is aimed at ensuring the availability of essential drugs of good quality, safety and efficacy to all South Africans.

Since 2004, the Department of Health has prioritised the promotion of healthy lifestyles as one of the critical programmes that need to be advocated throughout the country.

The Healthy Lifestyles Programme was launched to promote health and well-being among individuals, communities and populations, enabling them to address the broad determinations of health and to identify health-risk factors. The critical aspect of the programme is to address the onset and prevalence of non-communicable diseases; the dangers of obesity, unhealthy diet and physical inactiveness; successful ageing and mental health; and the contribution of alcohol abuse to non-natural deaths (violence, road accidents, drowning and injuries).

The last Friday of February each year has been declared Health Lifestyle Day for both South Africa and the continent.

In its drive toward healthier lifestyles for all South Africans, the department is also increasing the number of health-promoting schools from 3 500 to 5 000 schools. These schools have initiated programmes to prevent tobacco use, develop food gardens and promote sports participation.

Public healthcare

Community health

The Community Health Workers Programme is a presidential initiative aimed at addressing health issues and fighting poverty. The Department of Health has decided to review the programme to ensure that these workers are trained to provide a number of services. This includes working closely with community caregivers employed by the Department of Social Development, which also provides home and community-based care.

The Department of Health sees this cadre of health workers as community-based generalist health workers. Their training combines competencies in health promotion, disease prevention, PHC and health-resource networking.

Immunisation

The appropriate and timeous immunisation of children against infectious diseases is one of the most cost-effective and beneficial preventive measures known.

The mission of the South African Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) is to reduce death and disability from preventable diseases by making immunisation accessible to all children.

The key priorities moving into 2008 were to strengthen the EPI, specifically the implementation of the Reach Every District (Red) Strategy, which seeks to improve routine immunisation coverage in all districts countrywide.

The Red Strategy will focus on districts and subdistricts with the lowest immunisation coverage.

In South Africa it is recommended that children under the age of five be immunised against the most common childhood diseases. Immunisation should be administered at birth, six weeks, 10 weeks, 14 weeks, nine months, 18 months and five years of age.

Childhood immunisations are given to prevent polio, tuberculosis (TB), diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, haemophilus influenzae type B, hepatitis B and measles. By 2008, government's immunisation programme was reaching 88% of infants under the age of one year against diseases such as TB, measles, hepatitis and polio.

In September 2008, the Department of Health introduced two new vaccines into its immunisation programme. This will assist in preventing deaths from pneumonia and diarrhoea.

Health budget

Some R15,1 billion was made available for the operations of the national Department of Health for 2008/09. In addition, a number of conditional grants were provided for provinces and these funds were transferred to them by the national department for their disbursement.

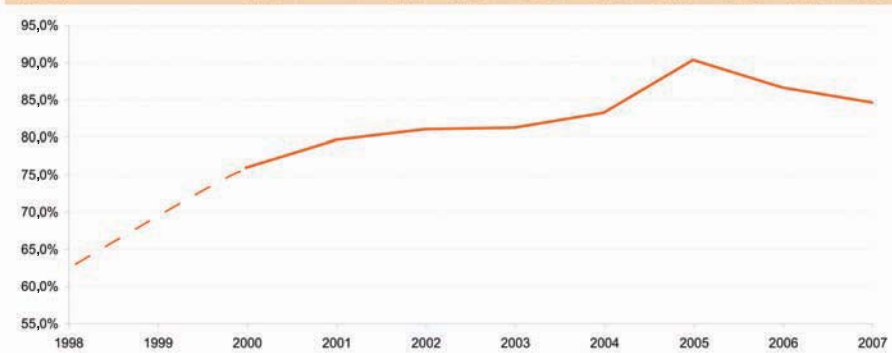
The Hospital Revitalisation Conditional Grant increased by R600 million to R2,883 billion for 2008/09.

The HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant increased by R350 million to R2,585 billion, while the National Tertiary Services Grant increased by R193 million to R6,076 billion for the 2008/09 financial year.

Government plans to increase the number of healthcare workers in the country. An additional 25 000 posts will be filled by 2010.

Immunisation coverage

%	1998	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007
coverage	63.0%		75.8%	79.5%	80.9%	81.1%	83.1%	90.2%	86.5%	84.5%



Health policy

By promoting a healthy lifestyle, the NHS aims to improve public health through disease prevention. It also strives to consistently improve the healthcare-delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

Given that health needs will always outstrip available resources, the health sector identifies key priorities for each planning cycle.

The strategic priorities for 2008/09 were to:

- strengthen health programmes
- improve quality by developing and implementing health-facility improvement plans
- develop an integrated national health information system
- strengthen health financing, in particular, increasing funding for the public health sector
- achieve further reduction in the prices of medicines and pharmaceutical products
- strengthen human resources (HR) for health
- strengthen international health relations
- improve management and communication.

The details are contained in the Annual National Health Plan as well as the Strategic Plan of the national Department of Health.

In August 2008, the Department of Health gazetted the draft policy on African Traditional Medicine (ATM) for comment by the public.

The draft policy deals with and makes policy recommendations around the following key areas:

- legal and legislative framework: the draft policy calls for the incorporation of ATM into the country's health systems based on the large amount of people who use it already
- education, training, research and development: the draft policy recommends that a National Institute of African Traditional Medicine (NIATM) be established to co-ordinate, undertake and provide leadership in the research of ATM
- cultivation and conservation of medicinal plants and animals: the draft policy proposes that the NIATM be responsible for ensuring the safety, quality and timely availability of ATM and raw material.

Telemedicine

The South African Government has identified telemedicine as a strategic tool for facilitating the delivery of equitable healthcare and educational services, irrespective of distance and the availability of specialised expertise, particularly in rural areas. The Telemedicine Project Strategy facilitates frequent contact between doctors in underdeveloped and developed centres.

It also provides the academic professionals from major South African medical academic institutions with the opportunity to extend their educational capabilities to healthcare professionals throughout the rural communities of South Africa. The initial telemedicine evaluation done by the Medical Research Council (MRC) found that access to specialist radiologist reporting was possible within an hour, compared with five to seven days in the past.

Telemedicine has improved medical practitioners' ability to diagnose and manage various medical conditions, particularly those related to trauma and chest diseases, and has reduced professional isolation.

Legislation

National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003)

The National Health Act, 2003 provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa. It highlights the rights and responsibilities of health providers and healthcare users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery from a health facility level up to national level. It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments.

The Act provides for the right:

- to emergency medical treatment
- to have full knowledge of one's condition
- to exercise one's informed consent
- to participate in decisions regarding one's health
- to be informed when one is participating in research
- to confidentiality and access to health records
- to complain about service
- of health workers to be treated with respect.

The draft Tobacco Products Control Amendment Bill seeks to bring South African law into line with the World Health Organisation's (WHO) tobacco-control convention by banning sales to children under the age of 18 – the current age is 16. It intends to address remaining loopholes in tobacco-control legislation.

The Bill also seeks to ban the selling or supplying of any confectionery or toy resembling or representing any tobacco product. It will tighten up on advertising, sponsorship, promotion and distribution, and on information required in the packaging and labelling of tobacco products. In terms of the Bill, it will be illegal to advertise or promote a tobacco product through sponsorship of any organisation, event, service, physical establishment, programme, project, bursary, scholarship or any other method.

A manufacturer or importer of a tobacco product will not be able to make any charitable financial contribution or sponsorship unless it is made anonymously. False, misleading or deceptive labelling of tobacco products will also be outlawed.

In addition, no person will be able to sell, offer to sell, supply, distribute or buy any tobacco product by post, the Internet or any other electronic media. It will be an offence to distribute or supply any tobacco product free of charge or at a reduced price, other than a normal trade discount.

The Medicine Control Amendment Bill provides for the establishment of a new regulatory authority for health products, which will replace the MCC.

The Bill adopts best practices from many democracies and is an effort to further strengthen the regulatory environment while decreasing the time taken to certify and register new medical products and consider clinical trials.

Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005)

The Nursing Act, 2005 provides for the introduction of mandatory community service for nurses. This should contribute significantly to efforts to ensure equitable distribution of nurses to meet the health needs of communities.

The Act seeks to ensure that nursing-education programmes are registered with the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) so that nurses can gain recognised credits and retain them for future studies. The main objectives of the Act are to:

- serve and protect the public in matters involving health services provided by the nursing profession
- ensure that the SANC serves the best interests of the public and does so in accordance with national health policy
- promote the provision of acceptable nursing care
- regulate the nursing profession and the way in which nurses conduct themselves
- promote the operations and functions of the SANC and the registrar
- promote liaison regarding health, nursing education and training standards
- ensure that the SANC advises the Minister of Health on matters affecting the profession
- provide for the registration of nurses and the keeping of registers.

Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002)

The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002, introduced a process to develop and redesign mental health services in line with the rights of mental-healthcare users, as guaranteed by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. This legislation grants basic rights to people with mental illnesses, and prohibits various forms of exploitation, abuse and discrimination.

The Act provides for:

- empowering the users themselves so that they can engage service-providers and society
- allocating adequate resources
- commitment to the cause of mental health at all levels of society.

To achieve this, a series of innovative processes and procedures regarding the care, treatment and rehabilitation of mental-health users, as well as clear guidelines on good practice in relation to the role of mental-healthcare practitioners, will be introduced. Although the Act reserves the right to involuntary hospitalisation, it also contains accompanying conditions for strict admission and reviewing processes and procedures before any decision on psychiatric referrals may be made.

All provinces have established independent mental-health review boards, charged in terms of the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002, to oversee the care, treatment and rehabilitation of patients who were admitted without their consent.

National School Health Policy

The aim of the National School Health Policy and Guidelines is to ensure that all children, irrespective of race, colour and location, have equal access to school-health services.

The policy is in line with the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Rights of the Child, which affirms the State's obligation to ensure that all segments of society, in particular parents and children, are informed and have access to knowledge of child health and nutrition, hygiene, environmental sanitation and the prevention of accidents.

Department of Health officials were expected to visit all provinces, especially those with a school health programme, to embark on a major training campaign of PHC nurses.

The nurses will be trained to:

- provide children with health education
- impart life skills
- screen children, especially those in Grade R and Grade 1, for specific health problems, and at puberty stage when children undergo physiological changes

- detect disabilities at an early age
- identify missed opportunities for immunisation and other interventions.

Social Health Insurance (SHI)

SHI is expected to facilitate access to contributory health cover for families of all employed people. SHI embraces three major principles:

- risk-related cross subsidies
- income-related cross subsidies
- mandatory cover.

In 2005/06, Cabinet approved the establishment of the Risk Equalisation Fund (REF). A draft Bill that amends the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), to give the Council for Medical Schemes the authority to implement the REF was also finalised. The REF will be used to address the existing residual risk rating in the medical schemes industry, and will contribute to improving the efficiency of private healthcare centres by encouraging competition on the basis of quality of services.

Medicine administration

The MCC has been in existence for many years and was set up to specifically ensure regulatory measures, quality and safety of medicines. Essential drug lists and treatment guidelines have been developed for hospitals and primary healthcare facilities.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

In 2008, the Minister of Health pledged to FIFA that the infrastructure of the South African NHS, specifically a comprehensive medical service (including 24-hour emergency medical treatment) and disaster management, would be available during the 2010 World Cup in the host cities.

A total of R286 million has been allocated for health and medical services for the 2010 World Cup, including the acceleration of government's programme for improving EMS.

This includes modernising communications centres, modernising and expanding the ambulance fleet, expanding aeromedical services and enhancing emergency-care training and emergency centres.

The World Cup Health Unit is also working closely with the FIFA World Cup Organising Committee to ensure that stadiums have adequate medical facilities.

Free PHC will be provided for all spectators at official venues, including a script or referral to a health facility, if necessary. However, any investigations, procedures or admissions will be paid for by the patient.

Dispensing machines will be situated throughout the stadiums for basic drug purchases. Twenty-four-hour pharmacies will be in place for the duration of the event.

Health professionals

National Human Resource Plan (NHRP) for Health

South Africa's health system faces complex HR demands, which are also characteristics of health systems in many other countries.

Ensuring an adequate HR pool for the staffing of the public health sector in particular is a major task that is complicated by the burden of many global disease challenges.

Even though the private health sector is not experiencing pressure to the same degree, maldistribution within this sector is a serious issue.

The HR demands are an important part of the challenges confronting the NHS. In this regard, government took a step to strengthen the entire health system by launching the NHRP to address the challenges.

The National Health Act, 2003 requires that the National Health Council formulates policy and guidelines for the development, distribution and effective use, as well as the management, of HR within the NHS. It aims to address the problems of recruitment, training and retention of health professionals.

South Africa has played a significant role in ensuring that the issue of the migration of health personnel remains high on the global health agenda.

To regulate the recruitment of South African health professionals by other countries, the department assisted in developing a code of ethical recruitment for members of the Commonwealth.

Physicians

There are more than 34 500 doctors registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector. In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the Continuing Professional Development (CPD) system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend

Qualified practitioners	Dec 2008
Dental therapists and oral hygienists	5 098
Emergency care personnel	46 305
Medical and dental professionals	44 971
Optometry and dispencing opticians	3 054
Physiotherapy, podiatry and biokinetics professionals	6 754
Psychology professionals	9890
Source: Health Professions Council of South Africa	

workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Between November 2006 and March 2008, the Department of Health appointed 507 foreign medical doctors to public-health-sector posts. A further 515 were endorsed towards sitting for the medical board exams with the HPCSA and 216 were rejected through the screening process of the departments of health and of home affairs in compliance with the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002). Of the 507 appointed, 364 were from developing countries, including 317 from Africa – mainly the Democratic Republic of Congo (137), Nigeria (133) and Zimbabwe (12). Of the 114 doctors from developed countries, 61 were from Britain, 15 from the Netherlands, 11 from Germany, seven from Sweden, and five each from Australia and Belgium.

Newly qualified interns are required to do remunerated compulsory community service at state hospitals. Only after completing this service are they allowed to register with the HPCSA and entitled to practise privately.

Community service for a range of professional groups, such as physiotherapists, occupational therapists and psychologists, aims to improve access to quality healthcare for all South Africans, especially in underserved areas. It also gives young professionals the opportunity to develop skills, and acquire knowledge and behaviour patterns that will help them in their professional development.

Oral health professionals

By December 2008, there were 948 oral hygienists, 477 dental therapists and 4 799 dentists registered with the HPCSA.

Dentists are subject to the CPD and community-service systems. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public-health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists.

The primary object of the SAPC is to assist in the promotion of the health of the population of South Africa. This is achieved in the fields of registration, education, practice and professional discipline.

The SAPC assists in the promotion of the health of the population on a national basis by establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling standards of education and practice of persons required to be registered in terms of the Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974).

The council is responsible for promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care, and for upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice in both the public and the private sectors. The council also advises the minister or any other person on any matter relating to pharmacy.

The SAPC is a statutory council which receives no grants or subsidies from government or any other source. The council is funded wholly by the profession who registers with the SAPC. The main consumer of its services, namely the public does not and is not expected to contribute financially to the functioning of the council.

An important characteristic of the profession is that it is self-regulatory, and that non-professional authorities such as governments or governmental

The clinical associate programme is a three-year programme that will produce a cadre of health professional who will work mainly in community health centres and district hospitals. Upon qualification, they will be registered with the Health Professions Council of South Africa with a defined scope of practice. They will be able to assess patients, make a diagnosis, treat and prescribe appropriate therapy and undertake minor surgical procedures under the supervision of medical officers.

agencies do not dictate to the profession on matters of professional responsibility and training.

The council is a statutory body and the country's official "keeper of pharmacy registers". To safeguard the public, registration with the council is a legal prerequisite for practising pharmacy.

The council is vested with statutory powers of peer review.

It is the vision of the council to ensure that pharmaceutical services in the country are the best to meet the healthcare needs of the people.

Categories of persons registered

In terms of the Act, the following categories of natural and juristic persons are registered with the council: pharmacy students, pharmacist interns, pharmacists performing community service, pharmacists, specialist pharmacists, pharmacist's assistants, responsible pharmacists and providers and assessors.

Pharmacy training

Pharmacy training is provided by eight pharmacy schools that have been approved by the SAPC. Training consists of four years of full-time study followed by a 12-month preregistration practical training period.

The practical training year is of extreme importance for the pharmacy graduate. It is an opportunity for the pharmacist intern to gain practical experience and knowledge.

This practical training period may be conducted in a community pharmacy, institutional pharmacy, manufacturing pharmacy or a provider of a qualification in pharmacy approved by the council for such training. After successful completion of the year of practical training, as well as a preregistration evaluation, the intern is registered as a pharmacist and must do one year of pharmaceutical community service in a public-sector facility before he/she can practise independently as a pharmacist.

A list of institutions that offer pharmacy education is available from the SAPC (*www.pharmcouncil.co.za*) and all enquiries regarding undergraduate and postgraduate studies should be addressed directly to these institutions.

The provincial departments of health also offer bursaries. Enquiries regarding bursaries and university fees must be directed to individual institutions. During academic training, a candidate must register as a pharmacy student after successful completion of the first year of study.

This registration enables him/her to work in a pharmacy under the supervision of a pharmacist. Such registration is cancelled when a candidate discontinues his/her studies.

Nurses

The SANC sets minimum standards for the education and training of nurses in South Africa. It accredits schools that meet the required standards and only grants professional registration to nurses who undergo nursing education and training at an accredited nursing school.

The key roles of the nursing council are to protect and promote public interest, and to ensure the delivery of quality healthcare by prescribing minimum requirements for the education and training of nurses and midwives, approving training schools, and registering or enrolling those who qualify in one or more of the basic or post-basic categories.

Allied health professions

By January 2008, the following practitioners were registered with the AHPCSA:

- Ayurveda practitioners 76
- Chinese medicine practitioners 162
- Acupuncture practitioners 179
- chiropractors 502
- homoeopaths 564
- naturopaths 92
- ostoeopaths 49
- phytotherapists 25
- therapeutic aromatherapists 636
- therapeutic massage therapists 248
- therapeutic reflexologists 1 188.

It was announced in September 2007 that in terms of Section 16 of the Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), and in consultation with the AHPCSA, the provisions of the Act would be applied to the profession of Unani Tibb.

The Professional Board for Ayurveda, Chinese Medicine, and Acupuncture and Unani Tibb was also established in September 2007.

Registered and enrolled nurses, 2007	
Registered nurses and midwives	103 792
Enrolled nurses and midwives	40 582
Nursing auxiliaries	59 574
Students in training	15 258
Source: South African Nursing Council	

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the single largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with over 265 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research, appropriate to the needs of the broader population, into HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition, among other things.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, as well as occupational health practitioners.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational disease and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance.

Medical Research Council

The MRC was established in accordance with the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), and is the largest health research body in South Africa.

The aims of the MRC are to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of South Africans.

Health research is the core business of the MRC and must be validated and of high quality if it is to impact on the health of South Africans.

The MRC's peer review and audit systems ensure such high standards are met. MRC research, development and technology transfer encompass all spheres of knowledge generation that impact on health and quality of life – from basic to applied research.

Following international best practice, all the broad disciplines of human health research are within the ambit of the MRC; from laboratory to clinical, to public health, to policy and to implementation. This work is often done in an integrated, multidisciplinary fashion.

Frequently, a participatory approach is used in setting the research agenda, performing and analysing the research and disseminating the research results.

Health research is the primary instrument by which the MRC seeks to gain a better understanding of people's bodies and minds and their interaction with the environment, as well as discovering methods by which the department can preserve and promote physical, mental and spiritual health.

The portfolio of MRC research must also address the health and development priorities of South Africa as defined by the National Health Research Committee, set up under the National Health Act, 2003, to advise the Minister of Health on health-research priorities for South Africa. The MRC research priorities are agreed upon annually in consultation with the Minister of Health.

Furthermore, the MRC's vision of "building a healthy nation through research" can only be achieved if research results are translated into policy, practice, health promotion and products.

The principal stakeholder of the MRC is the national Department of Health.

The Department of Science and Technology has oversight of all research and development in South Africa, and is therefore an important stakeholder and key enabler for the MRC to deliver on its mandate.

The MRC Strategic Plan is informed by the following:

- the MRC's vision, mission, values and culture
- the MRC's research challenges and opportunities
- national health priorities
- the MRC's shared values and ethics
- the MRC's key performance indicators.

The key strategic imperatives are:

- high-quality, priority-driven research and training
- HR development and retention

Early in 2008, the Medicines Control Council approved and registered a cervical cancer vaccine for use in South Africa.

The vaccine is a human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine indicated for the prevention of pre-cancerous cervical lesions associated with the most common cervical cancer-causing HPV types 16 and 18.

It is designed to enhance the immune response and increase the duration of protection against cancer-causing virus types. During 2008, the vaccine was used in more than 50 countries across Europe, Australasia and South America.

- transformation and development
- capital expenditure
- forging and nurturing strategic partnerships
- communication with key strategic partnerships
- performance management
- promotion of a shared value system and ethics
- translation of research, knowledge management and biotechnology

The role of local government

Local government is responsible for rendering the following:

- preventive and promotive healthcare, with some municipalities rendering curative care
- environmental health services, including the supply of safe and adequate drinking water, sewage disposal and refuse removal
- regulation of air pollution, municipal airports, fire-fighting services, licensing and abattoirs.

Many local authorities provide additional PHC services. In some instances, these are funded by provincial health authorities, but in major metropolitan areas the councils carry some of the costs.

Non-governmental organisations (NGOs)

Many NGOs at various levels continue to play a crucial role in healthcare and co-operate with government priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme (PDPHCP), including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs.

The PDPHCP has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to all NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service-providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are vitally important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Medical schemes

The private medical aid scheme industry is regulated by the Council for Medical Schemes (in terms of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998, [Act 131 of 1998]). The council is funded mainly through levies on the industry in terms of the Council for Medical Schemes Levies Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000). There are about 124 medical schemes servicing about seven million people.

In 2007, the number of beneficiaries covered by medical schemes increased by 5% to 7 478 040. These membership numbers exclude members of bargaining council schemes and Motohealth Care Medical Scheme. Membership of restricted schemes grew by 21,7% – this growth may be attributed to the Government Employees Medical Scheme, which has increased its membership by more than 300% since 2006.

The contributions that schemes collected from their members increased by 12,3% to R64,7 billion, while the claims that schemes paid on behalf of their members rose by 10,2% to R56,3 billion from R51,1 billion in 2006. Contribution increases were higher for open schemes compared to restricted schemes. Of the total amount they spent on healthcare, schemes paid R20,2 billion (36%) to hospitals. Expenditure on private hospitals increased by 12,5% to R19,9 billion in 2007.

This increase was 5,3% when adjusted for inflation. The number of beneficiaries admitted to private hospitals increased to 180 per 1 000 beneficiaries from 171 per 1 000 in 2006. Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered. Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants. If families are unable to bear the cost in terms of the standard means test, patients are classified as hospital patients. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with medical-aid cover, charging a tariff designed to recover the full cost of treatment. This private rate is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals. The Medical Schemes Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 55 of 2001), improves the regulatory capacity of the Registrar for Medical Schemes and regulates reinsurance. The Act:

- provides improved protection for members by addressing the problem area of medical

insurance, revisiting the provision on waiting periods, and specifically protecting patients against discrimination on grounds of age
- promotes efficient administration and good governance of medical schemes by insisting on the independence of individuals in certain key positions
- introduced mechanisms to address problematic practices in the marketing of medical schemes and brokerage of services.

Minimum benefits are also prescribed.

Mobile health

In June 2008, the Phelophepa Healthcare Train was announced as the winner of the United Nations Public Service Award for improving the delivery of services.

The innovative "miracle train", the Phelophepa, has since its inception in 1993 as a modest three-coach eye clinic, developed into a fully fledged healthcare train, boasting four additional clinics providing dental care, healthcare and with the inclusion of a medicine clinic, basic health education and counselling services in South Africa's remote, underprivileged communities.

Working in partnership with provincial departments of health, Phelophepa, which means "good, clean health" in both Setswana and Sesotho, seeks to deliver comprehensive, affordable and accessible healthcare in communities with no health services or with poor infrastructure.

During its coverage of 36 points annually, Phelophepa's personnel educate and guide local volunteers in basic health education.

Communicable diseases

Polio and measles

South Africa was declared free of the wild poliovirus by the African Regional Certification Commission in 2006. This is a subcommitee of the independent Global Certification Commission that works closely with the WHO.

During 2008/09, the department continued its surveillance of polio-free certification indicators, until the Global Certification Commission declares global eradication of polio.

There have been no confirmed measles deaths since 2000, as a direct result of the Measles Elimination Strategy.

The number of children who have been confirmed by laboratory tests to have had measles in South Africa decreased from 829 in 2004 to only 31 in 2007.

Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses

The IMCI promotes child health and improves child survival as part of the National Plan of Action for Children.

It is being instituted as part of the Department of Health's policy on the NHS for Universal Primary Care.

South Africa's nurses and doctors are well trained to treat all diseases using the IMCI Strategy. Diseases such as pneumonia, malaria, meningitis, diarrhoea and malnutrition are easily managed. In South Africa, the IMCI Strategy has been adapted to include assessment and classification of HIV.

The strategy aims to integrate all interventions relating to children to ensure that a package of care is offered to each child.

Malaria

Malaria is endemic to the low-altitude areas of Limpopo, Mpumalanga and north-eastern KwaZulu-Natal. About 10% of the population lives in malaria-risk areas. Limpopo and Mpumalanga have covered more than 85% of malaria risk areas with indoor residual spray for malaria vector control while KwaZulu-Natal is currently at 82%. The development and implementation of malaria health-promotion activities in the three affected provinces is under way.

The number of malaria cases declined drastically over the past eight years from 51 444 in 1999 to 5 210 cases in 2007. Factors behind the decline include an increase in indoor residual spraying using DDT, with an overall coverage of more than 80%. South Africa's collaboration with Swaziland, Mozambique and Zimbabwe – through cross-border malaria-control initiatives – has contributed towards a decline in malaria cases.

South Africa is a signatory to the Abuja Declaration, which undertakes to reduce malaria morbidity and mortality by 50% by 2010.

The South African Malaria Initiative (SAMI) is a national consortium of researchers who are pooling their expertise to find ways of dealing with the disease.

At the launch of SAMI in February 2006, the department emphasised the need for wide-ranging partnerships, and a combination of advanced science, access to South Africa's rich biodiversity, and clinical engagement with malaria patients to achieve results.

The Department of Health has committed funds to support SAMI's collaborative research programmes that are aimed at developing new diagnostic assays, validating new drug targets and identifying new methods for detecing the malaria parasite in mosquito salivary glands. To monitor the disease effectively, the MRC, together with the national and provincial departments of health, has developed a malaria-information system to obtain information about the disease and operational aspects pertaining to control programmes.

Through these public-private partnerships, malaria is being controlled effectively in southern Africa. However, to ensure that the incidence of malaria continues to decline, increased intercountry collaboration is essential.

Malaria-control teams of the provincial departments of health are responsible for measures such as education, patient treatment, residual spraying of all internal surfaces of dwellings situated in high-risk areas, and detection and treatment of all parasite carriers.

The MRC's South African Traditional Medicines Research Group is investigating plants used by traditional healers for the treatment of malaria.

Two plants that are effective against malaria parasites in vitro have been identified, and the active compounds in one of the plants have been identified and isolated.

Insecticide-treated nets are another intervention that has had an impact, reducing the number of malaria deaths, particularly among children under the age of five years.

Tuberculosis

While the South African cure rate has been improving over the recent past, it is still below the cure rate of many developing countries. The worst-affected provinces are the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which contribute about 80% of the country's total TB burden.

As part of TB control, national infection-control guidelines for health facilities were produced and distributed to provinces. Health workers were trained in infection control. Isolation guidelines were prepared, with input from the departments of correctional services and health, and circulated to provinces for comment before finalisation and implementation. By the end of March 2008, all provinces had established TB treatment tracer teams composed of nurses and community health workers to follow up patients that default treatment.

An additional R33 million was allocated to launch the TB Treatment Defaulter Tracing Programme to further decrease the defaulter rate. These funds are being used to deploy an additional 72 teams in subdistricts nationwide that have poor TB treatment outcomes.

By February 2008, about 86% of the defaulters in these subdistricts were traced and 53% started on treatment. An additional R400 million was allocated to strengthen the response to multidrug resistant TB and extreme drug-resistant TB, including improving facilities where these patients are hospitalised. Failure to complete TB treatment poses a major challenge. Government spends R400 on treating every patient with ordinary TB. When patients discontinue treatment and develop a multidrug-resistant form of TB, the cost of treatment dramatically increases to R24 000, including hospitalisation and more expensive drugs.

The Department of Health has implemented the Directly Observed Treatment Short-Course Stra-tegy (Dots), advocated by the International Union Against TB and the WHO. The focus is on curing infectious patients at the first attempt, by ensuring that:

- they are identified by examining their sputum under a microscope for TB bacilli
- they are supported and monitored to ensure that they take their tablets correctly
- the treatment, laboratory results and outcome are documented
- appropriate drugs are provided for the correct period
- TB control receives special emphasis in terms of political priority, finances and good district-health management.

Treatment is free of charge at all public clinics and hospitals in South Africa. The TB-Control Programme is being strengthened by:

- appointing TB co-ordinators in each health district
- strengthening the laboratory system
- strengthening the implementation of Dots
- mobilising communities to ensure that patients complete their treatment.

The key elements of the plan focus on strengthening TB service-delivery systems and processes, and embarking on an intensive communication and social-mobilisation campaign.

i

The Department of Health is rolling out a new rapid diagnostic test for multidrug resistant tuberculosis.

By July 2008, the test was available in four provinces and expected to be rolled out to the rest of the country.

A group of renowned African leaders has come together to take a leadership role on the issues of HIV and AIDS in Africa. Known as the Champions for an HIV-Free Generation, the leaders are calling for their peers to step up efforts in the fight againt the disease. The campaign was launched in August 2008. Led by Botswana's former President Festus Mogae, the group of champions includes South Africans Archbishop Emeritus Desmond Tutu and Constitiutional Court Justice Edwin Cameron, former presidents Joaquim Chissano (Mozambique), Benjamin Mkapa (Tanzania) and Kenneth Kaunda (Zambia) and Professor Miriam Were, chair of the Kenyan National AIDS Control Council. The champions aim to mobilise leadership in Africa and advocate effective policies and action on HIV prevention. They will seek to initiate a dialogue in changing behavioural and societal norms. The campaign has been endorsed by a series of private-sector and governmental organisations from around the world.

The aim is to increase the smear conversion rate in the short-term, and the cure rates in the medium-term in these districts and provinces. Each province is responsible for addressing the following critical issues:

- making available adequate financial and HR responsible for TB at all levels
- ensuring access to laboratory services
- strengthening the TB reporting and recording system
- strengthening referral systems to ensure proper treatment and follow-up of transferred patients and patients requiring treatment for co-infections
- implementing a highly visible social-mobilisation and media campaign
- strengthening the supervision system to ensure facility and community-level health workers receive adequate mentoring and support.

HIV and AIDS

The Department of Health has developed the National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS for 2007 – 2011. The plan emphasises treatment and prevention. It also spells out clear, quantified targets, and places a high priority on monitoring and evaluation.

The primary goal of the NSP is to reduce the rate of new HIV infections and to mitigate the impact of AIDS on individuals, families and communities.

The NSP aims to achieve a 50% reduction in new infections by 2011 and provides an appropriate package of treatment, care and support services.

The package includes counselling and testing services as an entry point; healthy-lifestyle interventions, including nutritional support: treatment of opportunistic infections; antiretroviral (ARV) therapy; and monitoring and evaluation to assess progress and share research.

By the end of February 2008, the department had cumulatively initiated more than 450 000 patients on ARV treatment, in more than 310 accredited sites across the nine provinces.

By June 2008, there were 16 accredited ARV sites in correctional services with 4 294 offenders receiving ARV therapy.

The treatment, care and support intervention is gaining momentum in line with government's commitment to deal with this challenge.

The department has 86% of the subdistricts with at least one service point accredited to provide comprehensive care to people living with HIV and AIDS. The South African National AIDS Council (SANAC) serves as an important platform for partnerships against AIDS. SANAC aims to guide the multisectoral response to HIV and AIDS. It will also ensure effective monitoring and evaluation of the NSP.

HIV and AIDS vaccine research and development

The South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative was established in 1999 to develop and test an affordable, effective, and locally relevant HIV and AIDS vaccine for southern Africa. Saavi works closely with many international organisations, including the African AIDS Vaccine Programme and the International AIDS Vaccine Initiative. It receives funding from various organisations, including the HIV Vaccine Trials Network of the United States' National Institute of Health, and the European Union.

Home- and community-based care (HCBC)

HCBC is a central tenet of the care component of the comprehensive response to HIV and AIDS. This service is provided mainly through NGOs and community-based organisations.

The objectives of the HCBC Programme are to ensure:

- access to care, and follow-up through a functional referral system
- that children and families who are affected and infected by HIV and AIDS have access to social-welfare services within their communities.

More than 30 000 community caregivers received stipends up to December 2007.

Some 14 960 community caregivers received basic HCBC and Ancillary Healthcare National Qualifications Framework Level One and Two training. More than 1,1 million beneficiaries received care and support services between April 2007 and December 2007.

Reproductive health

Government has introduced a number of programmes to support women and men in making their reproductive choices.

Among these are the Family Planning Programme, which provides for counselling; a range of choices of family-planning methods such as contraceptives, access to legal termination of pregnancy and sterilisation under specific conditions; as well as education on sexuality and healthy lifestyles. These services are provided free of charge at PHC facilities.

The Department of Health has developed a card for women's reproductive health to improve continued care and to promote a healthy lifestyle. The card is retained by the patient and facilitates communication between health services. Reproductive Health Month is held annually in February to educate women on their reproductive rights and related issues.

The contraception and the youth and adolescent health policy guidelines promote access to health services for vulnerable groups, by improving the capacity of health and other workers to care for women and children.

The guidelines are aimed at providing quality care, preventing and responding to the needs of young people, and promoting a healthy lifestyle among the youth. The promotion of a healthy lifestyle includes programmes or activities on issues such as:

- life skills
- prevention of substance and alcohol abuse
- provision of a smoke-free environment.

Eight critical areas within the youth and adolescent health policy guidelines have been identified, namely:

- sexual and reproductive health
- mental health
- substance abuse
- violence
- unintentional injuries
- birth defects and inherited disorders
- nutrition
- oral health.

Guidelines for maternity care deal with the prevention of opportunistic infections in HIV-positive women, and the provision of micronutrient supplements to help ensure the well-being of mothers. Guidelines for the Cervical Cancer-Screening Programme aim to reduce the incidence of cervical cancer by detecting and treating the pre-invasive stages of the disease.

The programme aims to screen at least 70% of women in their early 30s within 10 years of initiating the programme. It allows for three free pap-smear tests with a 10-year interval between each test.

Pilot sites for the screening of cervical cancer have been set up in Limpopo, Gauteng and the Western Cape. The project will be rolled out to all provinces.

The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), allows abortion on request for all women in the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, and in the first 20 weeks in certain cases. The Act was amended to improve access to and alleviate the pressure on existing termination services. The system of designating services will be changed to ensure that more public health facilities offer termination procedures.

The Department of Health supports training in abortion care and providing contraception.

Environmental health

In terms of the National Health Act, 2003, environmental health services are vested with local government. This shifted the responsibility for rendering environmental health services to metropolitan and district councils.

Traditional medicine

The National Reference Centre for African Traditional Medicines researches African herbs and evaluates their medicinal value, as part of government's campaign to fight HIV, AIDS, TB and other debilitating and chronic diseases and conditions.

The MRC initiated toxicology studies to further study selected indigenous plants to assess their potential medicinal efficacy.

The launch of the centre was the result of a research programme initiated by the Department of Health and the MRC. It aims to test the effectiveness, safety and quality of traditional medicine, as well as to protect people from unscrupulous conduct and unproven medical claims within the traditional healing sector.

To protect the intellectual property rights of traditional peoples, the MRC will conduct biomedical research on medicinal plants. Traditional claims will also be channelled through this centre.

Government supports research by universities and science councils into the efficacy of many traditional medicines used for various conditions.

The WHO estimates that up to 80% of Africa's people use traditional medicine. In sub-Saharan Africa, the ratio of traditional health practitioners to the population is about 1:500, while the ratio of medical doctors is 1:40 000. Traditional health practitioners have an important role to play and have the potential to serve as a critical component of a comprehensive healthcare strategy.

In South Africa alone, there are an estimated 200 000 traditional health practitioners. They are the first healthcare-providers to be consulted in up to 80% of cases, especially in rural areas, and are deeply embedded in the fabric of cultural and spiritual life. Research also indicates that in many developing countries, a large proportion of the population relies heavily on traditional health practitioners and medicinal plants to meet PHC needs. Although modern medicine may be available in these countries, traditional medicines remain popular for historical and cultural reasons.

The department is undertaking various initiatives in this regard. These include:

- implementing the Traditional Health Practitioners Act, 2007 (Act 22 of 2007), to establish the Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council of South Africa providing for a regulatory framework to ensure the efficacy, safety and quality of traditional healthcare services
- providing for the management and control over the registration, training and conduct of practitioners, students and specified categories in the traditional health profession.

Birth defects

It is estimated that 150 000 children born annually in South Africa are affected by a significant birth defect or genetic disorder.

The Department of Health's four priority conditions are albinism, Down's syndrome, foetal alcohol syndrome and neural tube defects. Implementation of policy guidelines for managing and preventing genetic disorders, birth defects and disabilities will reduce morbidity and mortality resulting from these conditions.

This will involve decentralising training, expanding the sentinel sites for birth-defect monitoring, and co-operating with NGOs in creating awareness. South Africa, through the Birth-Defects Surveillance System, is a member of the International Clearing House for Birth-Defects Monitoring Systems. Links have been made with those sentinel sites reporting on perinatal mortality, as congenital anomalies have been shown to be among the top three causes of perinatal mortality at certain sentinel sites.

Oral health

The Department of Health's policy on promoting oral health has shifted from curative, hospital and urban-based oral healthcare to integrating oral healthcare in the Road to Health Chart for babies, as part of the Healthy Lifestyles Campaign.

Chronic diseases, disabilities and geriatrics

The Department of Health has identified the fight against chronic diseases such as cancer, hypertension, diabetes and osteoporosis as a priority area over the next few years.

The plan is premised on the development of meaningful strategies for preventing diseases such as cancer, with special emphasis on healthy lifestyles, including physical activity. The department has embarked on an outreach promotion programme – Healthy Lifestyles – that discourages tobacco consumption and advocates physical activity, healthy nutrition, safe sex and safe alcohol usage. The department undertook various activities to reduce the burden of non-communicable diseases, including:

- a number of health-screening activities
- the Move for Health Programme to encourage physical activities
- nutrition programmes, including providing vitamins and establishing food gardens
- programmes to reduce risky behaviour such as smoking, and alcohol and drug abuse.

The department aims to reduce avoidable blindness by increasing the cataract-surgery rate.

Government introduced free health services for people with disabilities. Beneficiaries include people with permanent, moderate or severe disabilities, and those who have been diagnosed with chronic irreversible psychiatric disabilities.

Frail older people and long-term institutionalised state-subsidised patients also qualify for these free services.

People with temporary disabilities or a chronic illness that does not cause a substantial loss of functional ability, and people with disabilities who are employed and/or covered by relevant health insurance, are not entitled to these free services.

Beneficiaries receive all in- and outpatient hospital services free of charge. Specialist medical interventions for the prevention, cure, correction or rehabilitation of a disability are provided, subject to motivation from the treating specialist and to approval by a committee appointed by the Minister of Health.

All assistive devices for the prevention of complications, and cure or rehabilitation of a disability, are provided. These include orthotics and prosthetics, wheelchairs and walking aids, hearing aids, spectacles and intra-ocular lenses. The Department of Health is also responsible for maintaining and replacing these devices.

Public-sector hospitals have been made more accessible to people with disabilities. Guidelines on the implementation of the National Rehabilitation Policy have been finalised, and the revision of the price list for orthotic prosthetic devices completed.

In supporting the health needs of the elderly, the department's policy is to keep the elderly in the community with their families as long as possible.

The department continues to develop national policy guidelines on the management and control of priority diseases or conditions of older persons, to improve their quality of life and access to health-care services.

These include developing exercise posters and pamphlets, and guidelines that focus specifically on older persons, e.g. national guidelines on falls in older persons, guidelines on active ageing, guidelines on stroke and transient ischemic attacks, and national guidelines on osteoporosis.

The National Strategy on Elder Abuse, together with the national guidelines on the management of physical abuse of older persons, have been implemented in all provinces.

Occupational health

The introduction of legislation such as the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 181 of 1993), and the Mines Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), has done much to focus employers' and employees' attention on the prevention of work-related accidents and diseases.

The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 30 of 1993), places the onus on medical practitioners, who diagnose conditions that they suspect might be a result of workplace exposure, to report these to the employer and relevant authority.

The Medical Bureau for Occupational Diseases has a statutory function under the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), to monitor former mineworkers and to evaluate present miners for possible compensational occupational lung diseases either until they die or are compensated maximally. The Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases is responsible for paying benefits to miners and ex-miners who have been certified to be suffering from lung-related diseases contracted as a result of their working conditions.

Mental health

The promotion of mental health is one of the cornerstones of South Africa's health policy. The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 provides for the care, treatment, rehabilitation and administration of mentally ill persons. It also sets out the different procedures to be followed in the admission of such persons. The Mental Health Information Centre (MHIC) is situated at the Health Sciences Faculty of the University of Stellenbosch.

It forms part of the MRC's Unit on Anxiety and Stress Disorders, and aims to promote mental health in South Africa.

The MHIC is also actively involved in research, and conducts academic and clinical research trials for conditions such as obsessive-compulsive, panic, post-traumatic stress and generalised anxiety disorders. Research is also undertaken into mood, psychotic, dementia and other major psychiatric disorders. A key focus area is mental-health literacy. The MHIC regularly conducts mental-health attitude and stigma surveys among various population and professional groups.

Quarantinable diseases

The Port Health Service is responsible for the prevention of quarantinable diseases in the country as determined by the International Health Regulations Act, 1974 (Act 28 of 1974). These services are rendered at sanitary airports (OR Tambo, Cape Town and Durban international airports) and approved ports. An aircraft entering South Africa from an epidemic yellow-fever area must make its first landing at a sanitary airport. Passengers travelling from such areas must be in possession of valid yellow-fever vaccination certificates.

Every aircraft or ship on an international voyage must also obtain a pratique from a port health officer upon entering South Africa.

Alcohol and substance abuse

According to a report by the MRC's Alcohol and Drug Abuse Research Group, released in 2008, heroin, one of the most addictive drugs, is increasingly being used by Cape Town youth. The latest report on data collected by the South African Community Epidemiology Network on Drug Use on patients under the age of 20 admitted for treatment during the second half of 2007 shows the Western Cape has the second highest number of heroin addicts in the country.

Of a total of 3 058 patients seen across 29 centres, 11% of Western Cape addicts were using heroin, as opposed to 10% in Gauteng, 6% in Mpumalanga and 3% in the Eastern Cape. KwaZulu-Natal had the highest number of heroin addicts at 39%.

Provincial police statistics showed a 132% increase in drug-related crimes in five years.

In the reporting period, the abuse of over-the-counter and prescription medicines continued to be an issue. Draft regulations on the labelling of alcoholic beverages were published in the *Government Gazette* in February 2005. The regulations define an alcoholic beverage as any drink for human consumption with an ethyl alcohol content of above 1%. The regulations propose a number of messages that should be printed in black and white, covering at least 12,5% of the container label or promotional material of an alcohol product.

The health messages can be in any of the South African official languages, but must be in the same language as that of the container label or promotional material.

The regulations prohibit any claims of health benefits that may be derived from consuming alcoholic beverages. Contravention of these regulations can lead to a fine or imprisonment of up to five years, or both.

Violence against women and children

A series of concrete measures has been implemented to eliminate violence against women and children.

To raise awareness of this grave social problem, the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign is held towards the end of every year.

The 365 Days Programme and National Action Plan to end Violence against Women and Children was launched in March 2007. The plan is a follow-up to the 365 Days of Action to End Gender Violence Conference that adopted the Kopanong Declaration in which a cross-section of South Africans committed to supporting a joint campaign for eradicating this gross human-rights violation.

The Kopanong Declaration envisaged that each year, the 16 Days of No Violence against Women and Children Campaign would become a platform to heighten awareness, and to take stock of gaps and achievements to ensure sustained and measurable efforts to end gender violence.

Violence prevention

The Department of Health plays an important role in preventing violence. PHC professionals are being trained in victim empowerment and trauma support. Healthcare professionals are also receiving advanced training in managing complicated cases of violence in secondary-level victim-empowerment centres, established by the Department of Health in some provinces. There are also violence-prevention programmes in place in schools in some provinces.

The Crime, Violence and Injury Lead Programme, co-directed by the MRC and the University of South Africa's Institute for Social and Health Sciences, aims to improve the population's health status, safety and quality of life.

This is achieved through public health-orientated research aimed at preventing death, disability and suffering arising from crime, violence and unintentional incidents of injury.

The programme's overall goal is to produce research on the extent, causes, consequences and costs of injuries, and on best practices for primary prevention and injury control.

Consumer goods

Another function of the Department of Health, in conjunction with municipalities and other authorities, is to prevent, control and reduce possible risks to public health from hazardous substances or harmful products present in foodstuffs, cosmetics, disinfectants and medicines; from the abuse of hazardous substances; or from various forms of pollution.

By mid-2008, the Tobacco Control Amendment Bill was being processed by Parliament. In June 2008, five schools in the Thabo Mofutsanyana District in the Free State were launched as tobacco-free as part of the collaborative effort to discourage the use of tobacco products among the youth.

The five schools have signed pledges to be tobacco-free and have developed their own institutionalised school-specific tobacco-control policies. Programmes in the five schools are to be evaluated with a view to expanding to other provinces in the country.

Food is controlled to safeguard the consumer against harmful, injurious or adulterated products, or misrepresentation as to their nature; as well as against unhygienic manufacturing practices, premises and equipment.

Integrated Nutrition Programme (INP) and food security

The INP aims to ensure optimum nutrition for all South Africans by preventing and managing malnutrition.

A co-ordinated and intersectoral approach, focusing on the following areas, is fundamental to the success of the INP and includes:

- disease-specific nutrition support, treatment and counselling
- growth monitoring and promotion
- nutrition promotion
- micronutrient malnutrition control
- food-service management
- promotion, protection and support of breast-feeding
- contributions to household-food security.

The INP targets nutritionally vulnerable or at-risk communities, groups and individuals for nutrition interventions, and provides appropriate nutrition education to all.

The Department of Health has established a number of clinic, school and community gardens to assist in developing food security.

In accordance with the the Food Fortification Programme, millers are compelled by law to fortify their white- and brown-bread flour and maize meal with specific micronutrients.

The regulations on food fortification stipulate mandatory fortification of all maize meal and wheat flour with six vitamins and two minerals, including Vitamin A, thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, folic acid, iron and zinc.

Environmental health practitioners at local-government level are responsible for monitoring compliance and for law enforcement. Fines of up to R125 000 can be imposed upon millers who fail to comply.

The National School Nutrition Programme is based on community participation and mobilises communities to develop food gardens. The primary goal of the programme is school feeding, while also uses resources invested by government to create sustainable livelihoods for local communities.

The programme has been transferred from the Department of Health to the Department of Education. (See Chapter 7: *Education*.)

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Medical Research Council
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
National Health Laboratory Service
South African Nursing Council
South African Medical Research Council
South African Pharmacy Council
Sapa

www.gov.za
www.hasa.co.za
www.lovelife.org.za
www.nhls.ac.za
www.mrc.co.za
www.soulcity.org.za
www.health24.com
www.sagoodnews.co.za

Suggested reading

Barnett, T and Whiteside, A. *AIDS in the 21st Century. Disease and Globalisation.* Hampshire. 2nd ed: Palgrave Macmillan, 2006.
Bradshaw, D, Groenewald, P, Laubscher, R, Nannan, N, Nojilana, B, Norman, R, Pieterse, D and Schneider, M. *Initial Burden of Disease Estimates for South Africa, 2000.* Medical Research Council Technical Report. Cape Town, 2003.
Brain Drain of Health Professionals from Sub-Saharan Africa to Canada. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa, Idasa, 2006.
Breier, M and Wildschut, A. *Doctors in a Divided Society: The Profession and Education of Medical Practitioners in South Africa.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press (HSRC), 2006.
Booysens, S W. ed. *Introduction to Health Services Management.* 3rd rev ed. Cape Town: Juta, 2008.
Brook, R. *More than Eyes Can See: A Nine-Month Journey through the AIDS Pandemic*. London: Marion Boyars, 2007.
Chirando, K. *The Political Cost of AIDS in Africa: An Overview.* Cape Town: Idasa, 2008.
Caesar-Katsenga, M and Myburgh, M. *Parliament, Politics and AIDS: A Comparative Study of Five African Countries.* Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.
Cameron, E. *Witness to AIDS*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006.
Chirambo, K. *Democratisation in the Age of HIV/AIDS: Understanding the Political Implications.* Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.
Challenges. Pietermaritzburg*:* Cluster Publications, 2008.
Deacon, H. *et al. Understanding HIV/AIDS Stigma: A Theoretical and Methodological Analysis.* Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
Deacon, H and Stephney, I. *HIV/AIDS Stigma and Children.* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
De Haan, M. *et al. The Health of Southern Africa.* 9th ed. Cape Town: Juta, 2005.
Dennill, K, King, L and Swanepoel, T. *Aspects of Primary Healthcare*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Evian, C. *Primary Healthcare.* 4th rev ed. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.
Green, A. *Introduction to Health Planning in Developing Countries*. London: Oxford University Press, 2004.
Guthrie, T and Hickey, A. eds. *Funding the Fight: Budgeting for HIV/AIDS in Developing Countries*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.
Hassim, A, Heywood, M and Bergen, J. *Health and Democracy: A Guide to Human Rights, Health Law and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* Tokai, Cape: Siberlink, 2007.
Health and Hope in our Hands: Addressing HIV and AIDS in the Aftermath of Rape and Woman Abuse. Johannesburg: Jacana Media, 2004.
Hinga, TM. *et. al*, eds. *Women, Religion and HIV/AIDS in Africa: Responding to Ethical and Theological challenges.*
Channenges. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Iliffe, J. *African AIDS Epidemic: A History.* Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
Izumi, K, ed. *Reclaiming our Lives: HIV and AIDS, Women's Land and Property Rights and Livelihoods in Southern and East Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Jamison, DJ. *et al. Priorities in Health*. Washington: World Bank, 2006.
Katzenellenbogen, JM. *et al. Epidemiology: A Manual for Southern Africa.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Kauffman, K and Lindauer, D. eds. *AIDS and South Africa: The Social Expression of a Pandemic.* Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2004.
Kleintjies, S. *et al. Gender Mainstreaming in HIV/AIDS: Seminar Proceedings.* Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
Labonde, R. *et al. Fatal Indifference: The G8, Africa and Global Health.* Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.
Levin, A. *AidSafari.* Cape Town*:* Zebra Press, 2006.
Makhubele-Nkondo, ON. ed. *HIV/AIDS Dictionary.* Pretoria: Skotaville Media, 2004.
Parry, C and Bennetts, A. *Alcohol Policy and Public Health in South Africa.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Pendleton, W, Crush, J and Lefko-Everett, K. *Haemorrhage of Health Professionals from South Africa.* Cape Town: 2007.
Philpott, S. *Budgeting for Children with Disabilities in South Africa.* Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.
Reclaiming Resources for Health: A Regional Analysis of Equity in Health in East and Southern Africa. Kampala, Uganda: Fountain Publishers, 2007.
Strode, A and Grant, KB. *Understanding the Institutional Dynamics of South Africa's Response to the HIV/AIDS Pandemic.* Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.
Winkler, G. *Courage to Care: A Workbook on HIV/AIDS for Schools.* Southdale: CIE, 2005.
Swartz, L. C*ulture and Mental Health: A Southern African View.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Simbayi, L C. *et al. The Impact of and Response to HIV/AIDS in the Private Security and Legal Services Industry in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC, 2007.
Steinberg, J. *Three-Letter Plague: A Young Man's Journey through a Great Epidemic.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.
Uys, L. *Home-Based HIV/AIDS Care.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
Van Niekerk, A and Kopelman, LM. eds*. Ethics and AIDS in Africa: The Challenge of our Thinking.* Cape Town: David Philip, 2005.
Walker, L, Reid, G and Cornell, M. *Waiting to Happen: HIV/AIDS in South Africa.* Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
Watermeyer, B. *et al. Disability and Social Change: A South African Agenda.* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Wilson, D. *et al.* eds*. Handbook of HIV Medicine*, Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

HOUSING

Government aims to speed up delivery of housing for the poor and have all South Africans accommodated in formally planned settlements by 2014.

The Department of Housing determines, finances, promotes, co-ordinates, communicates and monitors the implementation of policy for housing and human settlement.

By December 2008, government had built 2,7 million houses – providing shelter for more than 13 million people free of charge.

From 2004, government's housing expenditure increased from R4,8 billion to R9 billion in 2007/08, representing an average growth of 23,2% per year. The housing budget is projected to grow from R9 billion in 2007 to R10,6 billion in 2008/09 and R15,3 billion by 2010/11, at an average annual rate of 19,4%.

Comprehensive Housing Plan

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements and has a framework for housing programmes that aims to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

The plan provides for comprehensive oversight by government in promoting the residential property market. This includes the development of low-cost housing, medium-density accommodation and rental housing; stronger partnerships with the private sector; social infrastructure; and amenities.

The plan aims to change spatial settlement patterns by building multicultural communities in a non-racial society.

The Comprehensive Housing Plan is being implemented through a pilot project in each province, which will improve the living conditions of 103 000 households in informal settlements. The informal-settlement upgrading projects provide for phased, area-based development, and fund community participation and project management as an integral part of housing projects. Eradicating or upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is the prime target.

The plan's strategic focus includes ensuring the delivery of affordable housing in sustainable and habitable settlements. Its strategic priorities are to:

- accelerate housing delivery
- improve the quality of housing products and environments to ensure asset creation
- ensure a single, efficient formal housing market
- restructure and integrate human settlements.

Key focus areas identified by the Comprehensive Housing Plan include:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the First Economy residential property boom and the Second Economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The Breaking New Ground (BNG) Programme is aimed at improving overall housing delivery.

A BNG house is a state-subsidy house given to qualifying beneficiaries. BNG builds on existing housing policy articulated in the *White Paper on Housing* (1994), but shifts the strategic focus from simply ensuring the delivery of affordable housing to making sure that housing is delivered in settlements that are both sustainable and habitable. Unlike the previous 20-34 square metre subsidy houses, the BNG house is 40 square metres in size and has two bedrooms, a lounge, an open plan kitchen and a fitted bathroom. This house is also equipped with electricity. The BNG Programme is being implemented through the informal-settlement upgrading programme.

The Government and the private sector, including banks and property developers, signed the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery in 2005 in an effort to accelerate housing delivery to address the housing backlog.

The contract binds signatories to work together to remove bottlenecks in housing delivery, invest more resources in low-cost housing and fast-track delivery. This has brought on board players from the financial construction sectors, and many other stakeholders.

By October 2008, the four major banks had informed the Minister of Housing that they had spent R38 billion of the R42 billion they commited to as part of the Finance Services Charter. These funds are directed to those people who earn between R3 000 and R8 000 a month.

Legislation, policy and initiatives

Inclusionary Housing Policy

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Cosmo City in Johannesburg; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments serve to ensure cross subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

Housing Development Agency

The Housing Development Agency Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), establishes the Housing Development Agency as a statutory body to ensure that the delivery of housing is facilitated. The Act provides for an agreement between the agency and a municipality where a council lacks the capacity to acquire, hold, develop and release land for residential or community development. Its main purpose is to address the:

- shortage of well-located land
- facilitation of the rapid development of sustainable human settlements
- supply of much-needed project-management capacity for government projects.

The agency will also assist in cutting red tape that prohibits the acquisition of suitable land, as well as in the approval of development both by government and the private sector.

The provincial housing departments will be responsible for assisting local authorities in developing their land needs assessments and in co-ordinating individual municipal submissions into a provincial plan. The agency is also expected to facilitate the rapid release of land, which is key to the implementation of the BNG Programme and will improve the efficient location of human settlements. Servcon and Thubelisha will be integrated into the agency.

Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)

The Rental Housing Act, 1999 defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market.

It sets out the duties and responsibilities of both landlords and tenants, and provides for the establishment of rental-housing tribunals in the provinces, thus allowing for a speedy and cost-effective resolution of disputes between landlords and tenants.

Among other things, the Act prescribes that:

- Leases may be oral or in writing. Tenants can demand a written lease.
- The landlord must give the tenant a written receipt.
- The landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in.
- The balance of deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

Three rental-housing tribunals were set up in Gauteng, the Western Cape and North West. Other provinces are in the process of establishing similar tribunals. The Act gives these tribunals the power to make rulings in line with those of a magistrate's court.

The Rental Housing Amendment Bill was approved by Cabinet to, among other things, amend the Rental Housing Act, 1999 to make further provision for rulings by rental-housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental-housing tribunals.

Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 63 of 2000)

The Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 provides for the establishment of the Office of Disclosure and the monitoring of financial institutions serving the housing-credit needs of communities.

It requires financial institutions to disclose information, and identifies discriminatory lending patterns. The Act aims to promote equity and

In a move to give support and economic assistance to military veterans, the Housing Committee of Ministers and MECs (MinMec) approved the Military Veterans Housing-Assistance Programme.

Through this government initiative to assist and integrate military veterans into society, both socially and economically, all military veterans were called upon to apply for government-subsidised housing before 31 December 2008.

By October 2008, more than 10 000 veterans had registered for a housing subsidy and more than 1 500 subsidies had been allocated.

fairness in lending and disclosure by financial institutions.

The Act also aims to eradicate discrimination and unfair practices, by encouraging banks and financial institutions to grant home loans to all its clients. It compels banks and financial institutions to disclose annual financial statements so that their lending practices in respect of home loans can be monitored.

Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998)

In terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998, residential builders have to register with the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC) and are obliged to enrol all new houses under the NHBRC's Defect Warranty Scheme.

The Act aims to protect home owners from inferior workmanship. Builders are responsible for design and material defects for three months, roof leaks for a year, and any structural failures of houses for five years. NHBRC inspectors may assess workmanship during and after the building process.

Banks are compelled by law to insist on home-builder registration and enrolment prior to granting a mortgage loan or finance.

All new government-subsidised housing units constructed as part of approved projects enjoy protection against shoddy workmanship by housing contractors.

Through the Act, properties that were built with funding from the Government's housing subsidy grant only enjoy protection against structural defects and must comply with minimum technical norms and standards.

Previously, the properties of the poor did not qualify for such protection. The NHBRC ensures that registered builders deliver within the minimum housing standards.

The Housing Consumers Protection Measures Amendment Bill aims to amend the Housing Consumers Protection Measurers Act, 1998, so as to, among other things, clarify the scope of application of the Act; provide for late enrolment and non-declared late enrolment; enable owner-builders to apply for exemption; extend claims to include roof leaks; make further provision for the use of money in the funds contemplated in the Act; extend the offences created under the Act; and amend provisions pertaining to the granting of exemptions and to the lodging of appeals.

Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 (Act 19 of 1998)

The Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 prohibits unlawful eviction and sets out detailed procedures for the eviction of unlawful occupiers.

It also prohibits the receipt of payment as a fee for arranging the occupation of land without the consent of the owner, and repeals obsolete laws relating to illegal squatting.

The Act provides a process for fair eviction of unlawful occupiers.

Rental housing for the poor

About 1,8 million South African households in the middle- to lower-income groups live in rented accommodation, as opposed to about 5,2 million households that own property. There has been an improvement in the incomes of the poorest rising from R783 per month to R1032 per month.

Nationally, 71,14% of households rent accommodation, and 71,76% of people renting in metropolitan areas live in formal structures. Black households comprise the largest percentage of renters, followed by coloured households.

The demand for rental housing nationally is expected to increase substantially in the middle- to lower-income groups.

There is a dire need for public rental housing for the poor, which the Department of Housing aims to address by means of various options.

The department has formulated an affordable rental-housing programme for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock, which has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock that will be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low- income households in rental accommodation.

Policy now exists that will allow for the increased allocation of housing units to ex-combatants for Truth and Reconciliation Commission reparations, on a preferential basis. Over the next five years, an average of 30% of subsidised units are expected to be allocated to this target group.

Social Housing Bill

Over the years, the social housing sector has grown, and has been the beneficiary of significant funding from government. It is, however, characterised by a patchwork of policies, findings and institutions that neither supports the growth of the sector nor allows for proper regulation and monitoring of funding and policy. For these reasons, the Department of Housing has taken steps to assist the governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Bill and the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority, all framed by the approved Social Housing Policy.

The objectives of the Social Housing Bill are to establish and consolidate general definitions and principles, which can then be recognised as the authoritative guidelines for the sector as a whole, to establish the Social Housing Regulator and to provide for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. The Bill provides for specific functions and responsibilities for the three tiers of government. It requires the national Government to create the kind of legislative, financial and institutional frameworks that will enable the sector to grow while provincial governments are given responsibilities to approve and administer grant funds and monitor project-level compliance.

Local governments are, on the other hand, required to ensure access to land, infrastructure and services, as well as initiate the identification of restructuring zones.

The Bill's major purpose is the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority, the body that in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), will, among other things, be responsible for accrediting social housing institutions, administer and disburse capital and institutional grants as well as conduct compliance monitoring to norms and standards set by the sector. It will have powers to intervene to resolve maladministration issues and take remedial steps where necessary.

The Social Housing Foundation (SHF) will close down as soon as the regulatory authority has been established. Some of the functions of the foundation will be transferred to the department.

N2 Gateway Project

The project entails the transformation of the informal settlements along the N2 outside Cape Town. This is the biggest housing project ever undertaken. Government is piloting the integration of communities and different income groups, auditing and updating the database of housing needs to ensure the list and choice of beneficiaries is credible, building human settlements with basic economic and social amenities and pursuing a new way of intergovernmental relations.

The project will see the development of about 30 000 dwellings at sites along a 30-km stretch of the N2, from District Six to Joe Slovo, Netreg, New Rest and Boys Town to Delft.

By May 2008,

- 4 500 temporary relocation units had been built
- 705 rental appartments were fully occupied at Joe Slovo
- First National Bank was developing an affordable bonded show village at Joe Slovo phase two and another 850 of these homes at Delft
- contractors had started with earthworks ahead of the construction of a BNG show village of 55 homes
- Delft was a hive of activity, with about 1 000 BNG homes already allocated to beneficiaries at Symphony, where the finishing touches were being applied to 1 400 new homes.

Community Residential Units (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income people. The programme, which was approved by the Housing MinMec, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of exisiting public-sector residential accommodation. The CRU Programme will target low-income

Social housing is state-subsidised rental housing for medium- and low-income people. It services groups who cannot afford to buy a house; groups that are in transition, either geographically or in their life cycle, for example the young, the upwardly or downwardly mobile; single parents with children, especially women; and specific high-priority target groups, such as pensioners and physically challenged.

Social housing specifically targets people who would not normally qualify for state-subsidised housing because of their income bracket or because they have previously benefited from subsidised housing. In South Africa, social housing has been identified as a priority in government's attempt to create integrated human settlements.

persons and households earning below R3 500 a month, who are not able to be accommodated in the formal private rental and social housing market. The programme seeks to support the development of affordable rental stock.

Capacity-building

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity, in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The Department of Housing continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for housing capacity-building, as well as guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The Department of Housing has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

Emergency housing

The National Housing Programme for Housing Assistance in Emergency Housing Circumstances was instituted in terms of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 170 of 1997).

The amendment relates to the provision of the Constitution that everyone has the right to access adequate housing, and that the State must take reasonable legislative and other measures as permitted by available resources to achieve the progressive realisation of this right.

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Housing subsidies

New housing-subsidy programmes are being developed and certain existing programmes have

The South Africa Housing Subsidy Scheme subsidy quantum amounts for the period 2008/09 in respect of a 40 m^2 house

Individual and project-linked subsidies	Top structure funding only	Own contribution	Product price
R0 - R1 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
R1 051 - R3 500	R41 027	R2 479	R43 506
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Institutional subsidies			
R0 - R3 500	R41 027	Institution must add capital	At least R43 506
Consolidation subsidies			
R0 - R1 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
R1 501 - R3 500	R41 027	R2 479	R43 506
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Rural subsidies			
R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
People's Housing Process			
R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506

Source: *Department of Housing*

been enhanced, including rental and social housing subsidies. The housing-subsidy programmes, including project-linked subsidies, are being revised to introduce a procurement-compliant regime, consolidation subsidies, the People's Housing Process (PHP), rural subsidies and institutional subsidies.

Project-linked subsidies

This housing-subsidy mechanism enables a qualifying household to access a complete residential unit, which has been developed within an approved project-linked housing subsidy project for ownership by the beneficiary. Provinces or municipalities employ contractors to build houses for people or beneficiaries who qualify for subsidies. The subsidy amount is linked to the beneficiary's income and any shortfall must be financed by the beneficiary.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of serviced stands. It also allows the beneficiary to enter into house-building contracts, or to purchase existing, improved residential property, which is not part of approved housing-subsidy projects.

This subsidy, which is available on the basis of first-come first-serve, helps qualifying beneficiaries who wish to increase their subsidies by accessing credit, as well as beneficiaries who do not qualify for credit.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism affords former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions that comprise a group of individuals who form a legal entity that acquires residential property to manage to enable them to create affordable housing stock for persons eligible for housing subsidies. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options, on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and to take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy.

Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Relocation assistance

Relocation assistance provides an alternative option to defaulting borrowers who are three months in arrears and where the option of rehabilitating these mortgage loans is not affordable. This alternative provides an opportunity to obtain affordable housing with the assistance of the housing subsidy. An eligible person must enter into a relocation agreement to relocate to affordable housing.

Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme (FLISP)

Government introduced the FLISP to assist first-time home buyers who earn between R3 501 and R7 000 per month to obtain a home loan. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and is only applicable to people who have never before been assisted by the State. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

Subsidy for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy will receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their door, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

Beneficiaries who took occupation of these rented houses before 15 March 1991 can now apply for a discount on the selling of their houses.

In most cases, these houses are given to people free of charge due to the fact that the discount is more than the selling price.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents.

Beneficiaries also have the right to decide on how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

People's Housing Process

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guidance to the beneficiaries to build their own homes. The sudsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is given by the State and the authorities. Unlike the project-linked subsidy where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

Housing institutions

Government has established the following national institutions to facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play. The Department of Housing's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions are the NHBRC, the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC), the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), Servcon Housing Solutions, Thubelisha Homes, the SHF, the South African Housing Fund, the People Housing Partnership Trust and the Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF).

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998. The council protects the interests of consumers and regulates the home-building industry.

The NHBRC is a Section 21 company established to provide for the protection of housing consumers through a home-warranty scheme, and to regulate the home-building industry through the registration of builders and the setting of ethical and technical standards for the residential building industry.

The Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998 extends the NHBRC home-warranty scheme to government housing-subsidy schemes.

The NHBRC raises revenue from fees charged for the registration of home builders and the enrolment of new houses under its warranty scheme.

In the quest to build capacity in the home-building industry, the NHBRC introduced a skills training programme for home builders. These include Construction, Education and Training Authority-accredited training in financial, project and construction management. Training is conducted by the NHBRC at a budget of some R47 million, targeting 9 870 emerging home builders in the housing sector. By 2007/08, 4 512 home builders had been trained. The training of emerging home builders is spread throughout all the provinces and municipalities and in urban and rural areas. The NHBRC will establish construction centres throughout the country to bring training within easy reach.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The Department of Housing established the NHFC as a development-finance institution (DFI) in 1996 to ensure that every low- and moderate-income household gains access to housing finance. The NHFC's revenue is derived from interest and service charges for its wholesale lending and financial services.

The NHFC's mandate has been expanded to enable it to directly lend to low- and medium-income end users. A new business model for the corporation has been developed and approved for implementation. By September 2008, final steps regarding the transformation of the NHFC were being implemented in the context of a government-wide review of DFIs. The NHFC's offering of end-user finance for home ownership targets 8 000 loans in townships and "sterile" areas.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha was formed as a partnership between the South African Government and the Open Society Institute of New York, United States of America (USA), to arrange finance for housing construction.

It is an innovative construction finance company that supports the national programme to house all South Africans in sustainable human settlements. Nurcha provides bridging finance to contractors and developers involved in the construction of subsidy housing, affordable housing, community facilities and infrastructure.

Over the years, Nurcha has raised additional financing through Swedish, Norwegian and other agencies in the USA, and through the Future Growth Fund, Overseas Private Investors' Corporation and Rand Merchant Bank. It is a tax-exempt, non-profit-making company.

In 2008/09, Nurcha continued to finance contractors in the subsidy housing, credit-linked housing and community infrastructure subsectors.

Nurcha is specially geared to provide construction finance for contactors or developers who cannot easily get access to finance through the conventional financial institutions. Each contractor or developer has unique needs and levels of experience. Some require a more closely managed approach than others, including assistance with project and cash- ow management and material procurement. Nurcha assesses the needs of each applicant and structures the loan accordingly.

Emerging contractors with little or no project management experience, and who require a high level of support, are funded and managed through a system of Nurcha intermediaries. In this programme, the project loan account is jointly managed by the contractor and the intermediary so as to ensure controlled payment for material, labour etc. More established contractors and developers who do not require close management are funded directly by Nurcha.

Servcon Housing Solutions

Servcon Housing Solutions (Pty) Ltd has been in practice for more than 12 years. Since its establishment in 1995 as an agreement between the national Department of Housing and the Council of South African Banks, Servcon has grown to be a 100% government-owned enterprise.

Servcon's current activities include:

- a ring-fenced portfolio in 33 310 properties
- a normalisation programme that takes place in Gauteng, Western Cape and Eastern Cape and has 12 274 properties left to be transferred
- normalising and satisfactorily resolving 20 482 properties in a period of eight years
- acquisition of suitably located state-owned land and property for development.

According to a report from Lightstone Risk Management, the number of black property owners increased by more than 60% between 1997 and 2007. Of all the property owners registered with the deeds office in 2007, 36% were black, marking a 63,4/% increase from 1997 when the figure stood at 22%.

The Lightstone data also shows that black people constituted 47% of new property buyers between 1997 and 2007. In terms of property mobility or second-property ownership, the Lightstone report indicates that of the 1997 black first-time buyers, 27% had gone on to engage in further property activity, compared to 31% of coloured, 38% of Asian and 46% of white property owners.

Social Housing Foundation

The SHF was established as a Section 21 company by the Department of Housing. It is mandated to develop and build capacity for social housing institutions, and to develop a policy framework for the sector.

The strategic objectives of the organisation, based on its mandate, mission and vision, are to:

- provide strategic information to the social housing sector
- mobilise resources for the social housing sector
- facilitate the capacitation of sectoral participants
- facilitate sectoral stakeholder alignment
- achieve SHF business-service excellence
- provide social-housing-institution support
- provide sector communication and knowledge management.

It is expected that the SHF will be consolidated under the new Social Housing Regulatory Authority, as envisaged by the new Social Housing Policy and Bill.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The RHLF is a Section 21 company, which was established in 1996 by the Department of Housing in partnership with the German Development Bank. It is a world-class rural housing social venture capital fund that creates new financial arrangements and opportunities for rural families to improve their housing, economic and living environments.

The mandate of the RHLF is to facilitate access to housing finance for low-income earners who intend to improve their housing conditions largely in non-metropolitan areas, such as communal land, small and secondary towns and rural nodes.

The RHLF operates as a wholesale finance institution and, to achieve its mandate, the RHLF lends to intermediary housing lenders who, in turn, lend to individual borrowers. The RHLF is essentially a social venture capital fund. Traditionally, the RHLF has facilitated loans for rural housing through approved housing lenders who are willing and able to lend to people who want to build and improve their living conditions in rural areas. In addition, the RHLF has invested in a number of its approved intermediary lenders. Since inception, RHLF has disbursed more than 157 000 loans to the cumulative value of some R0,6 billion.

The RHLF has proved that the market for rural-housing finance credit does exist.

Increasingly, the RHLF is making access to housing finance possible for people in rural nodes.

Thubelisha Homes

Thubelisha is a dynamic and rapidly expanding housing-support institution reporting to the national Department of Housing. It provides specialised interventions that positively impact on the development of integrated sustainable human settlements and accelerate affordable housing delivery.

With a track record of successfully completed projects and a national footprint in all nine provinces, Thubelisha's mandate has been expanded to include the project management of housing projects and integrated sustainable developments, as well as the construction of affordable housing and related services.

Thubelisha supports the Minister of Housing's BNG initiative through the following programmes:

- upgrading informal settlements
- unblocking projects through delivery-enhancing interventions
- fast-tracking housing solutions using the emergency housing circumstances programme for people living in areas of stress
- implementing mega projects.

In 2006/07, Thubelisha secured 22 149 stands, completed 6 475 houses, handed over 6 198 houses and achieved a turnover of R314 million. Houses completed were 51% of the adjusted target while turnover was 73% of the target.

Corporate social investment

The company's experiential programme provides graduates with a six-month practical training programme and exposure to the subsidised housing market and construction industry.

Training modules include New Business Development Management, Project Management, Subsidy Administration and Stakeholder Management.

Through its partnership with Women For Housing, Thubelisha has initiated the Contractor Development Programme, which provides contractors with technical and business training. Successful contractors are listed on a database and provided with regular work. A significant portion of the programme targets female contractors, assisting them with career and business development.

Projects

Thubelisha has been appointed as the project manager and implementing agent of the N2 Gateway Project in Cape Town.

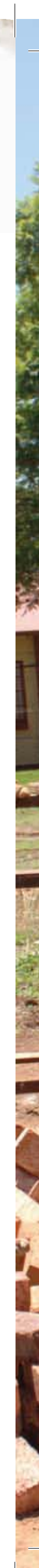
It also project-manages the upgrading of backyards in Orlando East. This is a pilot project to convert 750 backyard shacks being rented out by home owners into two- or three-roomed outbuildings. Provision is made for communal ablutions, and all this is done free of charge to the home owner.

Acknowledgements

A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector, published by the German Technical Co-operation
BuaNews
Department of Housing
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Servcon
Thubelisha Homes
Rural Housing Loan Fund
www.gov.za
www.propertyscene.co.za

Suggested reading

Boraine, A. ed. *State of the Cities Report 2004*, Johannesburg: South African Cities Network, 2004.
Harrison, P. *et al*. eds. *Confronting Management: Housing and Urban Development in a Democratising Society*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.
Huchzermeyer, M and Karam, A. eds. *Informal Settlements: A Perpetual Challenge?* Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2006.
James, W. ed. *Houses for Africa: An Inspirational Source Book for Building and Finishing Your Home*. Johannesburg: Emden Publishing, n.d.
Khan, F and Thring, P. *Housing Policy and Practice in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2003.



The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development aims to uphold and protect the Constitution and the rule of law. Its objective is to render accessible, fair, speedy and cost-effective administration of justice in the interest of a safer and more secure South Africa.

The department's four national core branches are Court Services, Master of the High Court, Legal Advisory Services and Legislative Development. The National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) forms a separate programme on the department's Budget Vote.

To ensure the efficiency of its services and to enhance accessibility, the NPA, Court Services and the Master of the High Court have established provincial and local structures linked to courts to co-ordinate the implementation of national policy.

Legal Advisory Services has also established state-attorney offices in Pretoria, Johannesburg, Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, Port Elizabeth, East London, Thohoyandou and Durban to provide decentralised services. The following constitutional institutions, among other things, were established to strengthen constitutional democracy:

- the South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC), which promotes, protects and monitors the observance of human rights in South Africa
- the Commission on Gender Equality (CGE), which promotes respect for gender equality and the protection, development and attainment of gender equality
- the Public Protector, who investigates any alleged improper, unlawful or prejudicial conduct in state affairs or in public administration in any sphere of government.
- the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, which administers the following public entities:
  - the Special Investigating Unit (SIU), which provides professional forensic investigating and litigating services to all state institutions at national, provincial and local level to combat maladministration, corruption and fraud, and to protect state assets and public money
  - the Legal Aid Board (LAB), which provides legal aid and representation to indigent people at the State's expense.

Between 2004/05 and 2010/11, the department's budget is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 13,4%, from R5,5 billion to R11,7 billion.

The department's total budget for the 2008/09 financial year was R9,7 billion. Some R3,4 billion was allocated to the Court Services branch, including R368 million to improve infrastructure. Some R2,1 billion was allocated to the NPA and R968 million went to the Chapter Nine constitutional institutions and public entities reporting to the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of the State at all levels of government.

In terms of Section 165 of the Constitution, the judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of state and persons to whom it applies.

Chapter Eight of the Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)
- high courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

In line with this, Parliament has also established special income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, "military courts" and equality courts.

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development is leading a process to rationalise high courts. The Superior Courts Bill, which was introduced in Parliament in 2005, will abolish the last remnants of the homeland-based supreme courts, and will introduce new provincial divisions of the High Court in each province. Their jurisdiction and capacity will be determined in accordance with people's needs. This will result in the opening of high courts in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, which the Pretoria High Court currently services.

There are 199 permanent judges at any given time and also a fluctuating number of acting judges.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill. The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges. Justice Pius Langa is Chief Justice of South Africa and Justice Dikgang Moseneke is Deputy Chief Justice. There are 11 constitutional court judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA, and a number of judges of appeal determined by an Act of Parliament. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions. The SCA comprises 25 judges, including its president.

High courts

There are 10 high court divisions: Cape of Good Hope (with its seat in Cape Town), Eastern Cape (Grahamstown), Northern Cape (Kimberley), Orange Free State (Bloemfontein), Natal (Pietermaritzburg), Transvaal (Pretoria), Transkei (Mthatha), Ciskei (Bhisho), Venda (Sibasa), and Bophuthatswana (Mmabatho). Each of these divisions, with the exception of Venda, has a judge president and, if the Judge President so determines, one or more deputy judge presidents, and as many judges as the Judge President may determine from time to time.

There are also three local divisions: the Witwatersrand Local Division (Johannesburg), Durban and Coast Local Division (Durban) and South-Eastern Cape Local Division (Port Elizabeth). Judges in these courts preside over these divisions.

A provincial or local division has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These divisions hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where minimum or maximum sentences are prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically visit areas designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned.

Other high courts

The Land Claims Court and the Labour Court have the same status as the high court. The Land Claims Court hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws. The Labour Court adjudicates matters relating to labour disputes. Appeals are made to the Labour Appeal Court.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the SCA and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts are required to uphold and to enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all state organs and all persons. The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and to develop common law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

Regional courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts. Regional courts are then established per province at one or more places in each regional division to hear matters within their jurisdiction.

Unlike the High Court, at present, legislation limits the penal jurisdiction of the regional courts to serious criminal matters. By mid-2008, draft legislation was being considered to give regional courts civil jurisdiction also. There are nine regional court presidents and 328 regional court magistrates.

Magistrates' courts

Magisterial districts have been grouped into 13 clusters headed by chief magistrates. This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

It has also facilitated the separation of functions pertaining to the judiciary, prosecution and administration; enhanced and developed the skills and training of judicial officers; optimised the use of limited resources in an equitable manner; and addressed imbalances in the former homeland regions. In terms of the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993), all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

Although regional courts have a higher penal jurisdiction than magistrates' courts (district courts), an accused cannot appeal to a regional court against the decision of a district court; only to the High Court.

By mid-2008, there were 366 magisterial districts and main magistrates' offices, 80 branch courts and 246 periodical courts in South Africa. There were 1 830 magistrates in the country, including regional court magistrates. In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services. Because this compels the poor to travel to the main cities for judicial services, 24 of the 80 branch courts countrywide were to be converted during 2008/09 to hear, among other things, maintenance, domestic violence, deceased estates and children's court cases. An estimated seven million people will benefit from these courts.

A ground-breaking programme in the justice sector, inroduced in 2008, is set to create a skills base of qualified and experienced attorneys which will ensure that poor communities have access to free legal services.

The candidate attorney programme is located at most of the major universities in South Africa and provides LLB graduates an opportunity to serve their articles through university law clinics and simultaneously give legal services to disadvantaged communities.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development will pay the graduates a monthly stipend for 24 months, their practical law school fees, registration of articles and board examination fees to qualify as attorneys after the two-year period.

Criminal jurisdiction

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to an imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000. A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

Any person charged with any offence committed within any district or regional division may be tried either by the court of that district or by the court of that regional division.

Where it is uncertain in which of several jurisdictions an offence has been committed, it may be tried in any of such jurisdictions.

Where, by any special provision of law, a magistrate's court has jurisdiction over an offence committed beyond the limits of the district or regional division, the court will not be deprived of such jurisdiction.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences. Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions (DPP) decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

Prosecutions are usually summarily disposed of in magistrates' courts, and judgment and sentence passed.

The following sentences may, where provided for by law, be passed upon a convicted person:
- imprisonment
- periodical imprisonment
- declaration as a habitual criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- committal to an institution established by law
- a fine with or without imprisonment as an alternative, correctional supervision or a suspended sentence
- declaration as a dangerous criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- a warning or caution
- discharge.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment. Where a court convicts a person of any offence other than one for which any law prescribes a minimum punishment, the court may, at its discretion, postpone the passing of sentence for a period not exceeding five years, and release the convicted person on one or more conditions; or pass sentence, but suspend it on certain conditions.

If the conditions of suspension or postponement are violated, the offender may be arrested and made to serve the sentence. This is done provided that the court may grant an order further suspending the operation of the sentence if offenders prove that circumstances beyond their control, or that any other good and sufficient reason prevented them from complying with the conditions of suspension.

Other criminal courts

In terms of statutory law, jurisdiction may be conferred upon a chief or headman or his deputy to punish an African person who has committed an offence under common law or indigenous law and custom, with the exception of certain serious offences specified in the relevant legislation. The procedure at such trials is in accordance with indigenous law and custom. The jurisdiction conferred upon a chief and a magistrate does not affect the jurisdiction of other courts competent to try criminal cases.

Community courts

South Africa's community courts provide timely judicial services – usually within 24 hours of an arrest of a criminal suspect. This assists in easing the country's court case backlog. Community courts, like the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

The business community and other civil-society formations contribute significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. By mid-2008, four were fully operational and had been formally launched in Hatfield, Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchells Plain and Cape Town.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjhaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Courts for income tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office. In 2005, a new tax court facility was opened in Megawatt Park, Sunninghill, Gauteng.

Family courts

A family court structure and extended family advocate services are priority areas for the department. The establishment of family courts in South Africa was motivated by three broad aims, namely to:

- provide integrated and specialised services to the family as the fundamental unit in society
- facilitate access to justice for all in family disputes
- improve the quality and effectiveness of service delivery to citizens who have family law disputes.

To ensure the proper and efficient functioning of maintenance courts, government has introduced initiatives that include appointing and training 171 maintenance investigators, creating 569 maintenance clerk and 83 legal intern positions, appointing 87 legally qualified maintenance officers to improve service delivery, and facilitating the development of Magistrates' Guidelines for the Implementation of Maintenance and Operation Isondlo.

Operation Isondlo (an initiative which the Department of Justice and Constitutional Developement initiated in 2006/07) has led to many children's maintenance defaulters being traced, appearing in court and paying maintenance.

The Access to Justice Week, officially launched in August 2008, was initiated by the South African Women Lawyers Association in partnership with the Department of Justice and Consitutional Development.

Access to Justice Week ensures that poor, previously marginalised and rural females receive free legal advice. During this week, female lawyers are stationed at different public areas in South Africa to give free legal advice on maintenance, wills, domestic violence, rights in marriage, divorce, custody and access, small claims courts, guardianship and fostering.

Many new applications have been received countrywide and the number of children receiving maintenance has increased. In 2007/08, 20 744 warrants of arrest were issued for defaulters.

Mediation in maintenance matters

In dealing with maintenance, there is an inevitable link of dealing with mediation, although it is not really recognised as mediation as such. The Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), provides for an element of mediation to be used as a mechanism in resolving disputes. A need has been identified to train officials to deal with mediation as this provides an opportunity for both parties to talk things through. Both parties contribute towards amicable resolution of maintenance and bring about restoration of dignity to the aggrieved party.

The Johannesburg Family Court and Pretoria Magistrate Court have been identified as pilot sites as they are centrally located and it would be easier for the national office to monitor and maintain contact for their progress, before moving to other regions. Once this is fully operational, it will reduce high volumes of maintenance cases that block the court and reduce the high turn-around time in finalising family law matters.

Domestic violence

The overall strategic objective of the Domestic Violence Programme is to strengthen the effectiveness of the Domestic Violence Act (DVA) 1998 (Act 116 of 1998). This will be implemented through a series of review projects aimed at identifying challenges and best practice in the past 10 years of the implementation of the DVA, 1998. The projects will lay the foundation for informing the development of a framework for the effective and co-ordinated implementation of actions aimed at providing victim-friendly court-support services. This will include a holistic approach to all implementation initiatives aimed at the eradication of domestic violence.

Equality courts

The establishment of equality courts seeks to achieve the expeditious and informal processing of cases, which facilitates participation by the parties to the proceedings. The courts also seek to ensure access to justice to all persons in relevant judicial and other dispute-resolution forums.

South Africans' rights are entrenched in and protected by the South African Constitution and its Bill of Rights. In turn, laws give effect to the various rights. The right to equality, as one of these rights, is protected by law in the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two acts work in synergy.

The Equality Act, 1998 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness on equality.

By the end of 2007/08, 219 magisterial courts had been designated as equality courts and the remaining 152 magisterial districts were expected to be designated in 2008/09. Section 16(1)(a) of the Equality Act, 1998 provides that every high court acts as an equality court for its area of jurisdiction. To support the effective functioning of equality courts, 371 clerks of court, 129 judges and 732 magistrates were trained in equality matters.

To ensure the effectiveness of equality courts, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development was expected to embark on a nationwide campaign in 2008/09 to raise awareness on the purpose of the Equality Act, 1998 and the equality courts.

Civil jurisdiction

Except when otherwise provided by law, the area of civil jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is the district, subdistrict or area for which the court has been established. South African law, as applied in the Western Cape, is in force on Prince Edward and Marion islands which, for the purpose of the administration of justice, are deemed to be part of the Cape Town magisterial district.

On 1 May 1995, the civil jurisdictional limits of magistrates' courts were increased for both liquid and illiquid claims, from R50 000 and R20 000 respectively, to R100 000.

In addition to the considerable increase, the previous distinction between jurisdictional limits regarding the different causes of action was abolished.

Unless all the parties in a case consent to higher jurisdiction, the jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is limited to cases in which the claim value does not exceed R100 000 where the action arises out of a liquid document or credit agreement, or R50 000 in all other cases.

Small claims courts

Small claims courts have been established in terms of the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984), to adjudicate over small civil claims. They are created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims. The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R7 000. In 2008, there were 168 established small claims courts throughout the country. Matters within small claims courts are presided upon by commissioners who are usually practising advocates or attorneys, a legal academic or other competent person. The service is voluntary as there are no fees paid to the commissioners.

In 2007/08, the department appointed 60 commissioners and 23 advisory board members to assist small claims courts.

Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. The commissioner's decision is final and there is no appeal to a higher court; only a review process is allowed.

The department has developed a national programme on re-engineering small claims courts, which aims to strengthen and roll out these courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

Funding from the Swiss Agency for Development and Co-operation has enabled the Small Claims Court Project Office to be set up to manage the National Plan of Action aimed at re-engineering small claims courts and specifically addressing issues of training for commissioners and clerks.

Other civil courts

An authorised African headman or his deputy may hear and determine civil claims arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before him by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

Courts constituted in this way are commonly known as chiefs' courts. Litigants have the right to choose whether to institute an action in the chief's court or in a magistrate's court. Proceedings in a chief's court are informal. An appeal against a judgment of a chief's court is heard in a magistrate's court.

Transforming the judiciary

A key aspect of the transformation of the justice system concerns the department's key strategic partners and stakeholders. The considerable effort put into transforming prosecution and allied services into a prestigious professional force, in accordance with the Constitution, is paying off.

By mid-2008, of the 199 judges, 48,23% (96) were white, 35,68% (71) were African, 7,54% (15) were coloured and 8,55% (17) were Indian. Overall, 18,59% were female and 81,42% male. In terms of the lower-court judiciary, of the 1 830 magistrates, 47% were white, 38% African, 7% coloured and 8% Indian. Overall, 31% were female and 69% male.

The transformation of the judiciary is closely linked with the transformation of the legal profession and of legal scholarship. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has worked in partnership with law schools in transforming the curriculum of the basic law degree to bring it in line with modern best practices. In addition to encouraging law schools to widen access to students from previously disadvantaged communities, these institutions will further be encouraged to forge linkages with leading law firms, with prominent practitioners and with relevant international organisations. This will:

- ensure the relevance of the training they offer to the practical demands of the profession
- expose students, especially those from previously disadvantaged communities, to the profession and vice versa to facilitate professional training prospects
- engage the legal profession in the evolution of a new legal system that fully expresses the constitutional and cultural aspirations of the new dispensation.

The department assists law graduates through its internship programme, which also provides

> In 2008, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development finalised the Legal Services Charter. Full participation of the legal profession is a reflection of the commitment of the legal sector towards establishing a tranformed justice system.

research training to give much-needed assistance to state legal officers, prosecutors, public defenders, the judiciary and the magistracy.

Transformation of the legal profession includes making judicial services accessible to the poor, the uneducated and the vulnerable. This entails establishing a physical presence in rural areas and in townships, offering affordable fees and providing speedy and empathetic services. It also entails facilitating access of all aspects and levels of the profession to aspirant lawyers, especially to those from previously marginalised backgrounds.

The provision of alternative dispute-resolution mechanisms is another key aspect of transforming justice services, thus making justice more accessible and more affordable.

The department gives prominence to integrating and modernising justice services through technology. It seeks to evolve simplified, cheaper and faster processes geared for the poor and vulnerable in townships and rural areas. It seeks to achieve this in partnership with its customers, with other government departments and with stakeholders.

The South African Judicial Education Institute Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), will, for the first time in history, introduce a state-sponsored judicial education programme for judges. The Judicial Education Institute will provide training for both judges and magistrates.

The Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Amendment Bill will enhance the accountability of judicial officers by introducing complaints-handling procedures for judges.

Other bills identified for priority introduction in 2008 included: Constitution 14th Amendment Bill and Constitution 15th Amendment Bill, dealing with floor-crossing; the Reform of Customary Law of Succession Bill; Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Bill, conferring civil jurisdiction on regional courts; Traditional Courts Bill, regulating the role of traditional leaders in the administration of justice; National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) Amendment Bill; Criminal Procedure Amendment Bill, dealing with the expungement of criminal records for certain offences and the postponement of certain criminal proceedings by means of audio-visual linkage; the Renaming of high courts Bill to bring the names of the high courts in line with the Constitution; and the Legal Practice Bill.

The department was also finalising a consolidated policy framework document to address other outstanding aspects relating to the transformation of the judicial system. These include rationalising high courts, harmonising the appointment procedures for judges and magistrates and addressing aspects relating to language use in courts.

By mid-2007, the special project of selecting aspirant female judges had been completed. Twenty-three women were selected from the legal profession to undergo a specially designed judicial education programme, which commenced in June 2007.

Transforming the judicial system also includes transforming traditional courts. Traditional leaders are conferred with criminal and civil jurisdiction to exercise judicial authority in respect of certain offences and claims. The conferment is by virtue of sections 10 and 20 of the Black Administration Act, 1927 (Act 38 of 1927).

Since the Act is not consistent with the current constitutional dispensation, it was repealed in November 2005.

Only sections 12 and 20, which deal with the establishment and functioning of traditional courts, were kept in operation until 30 September 2007. The Repeal of the Black Administration Act, 1927 and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 13 of 2007), extended the deadline of 30 September 2007 to 30 June 2008.

The extension allowed the department to formulate policy on the role of traditional leaders under a democratic dispensation, which will be followed by appropriate legislation to replace the repealed sections.

An interdepartmental task team, comprising officials of the departments of justice, provincial and local government, and land affairs, was appointed to draft the required policy in conjunction with the national and provincial houses of traditional leadership. The policy was approved by Cabinet and launched on 28 March 2008 in Nelspruit. The Traditional Courts' Bill has also been introduced into Parliament. The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Bill was finalised by Parliament in 2007.

Court performance

The branch Court Performance is responsible for the development and monitoring of processes and systems, introducing case-flow management (CFM), that facilitate efficient and effective court and case management, develop and facilitate the implementation of a court-management policy framework, evaluation of the quality of services and performance within the courts and facilitation of the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance. It is also responsible for providing an effective and responsive management and administrative support for judicial decision-making process within the court environment.

As a service-delivery improvement programme, the CFM Project seeks to put in place institutional arrangements for integrated CFM in the court system. Given the broad and large sector of the justice system, this will be done incrementally over the years. The project therefore supports the institutional arrangements in the following ways:

- establishing judicial leadership regarding CFM – as the judiciary is in control of the court, it makes sense to facilitate extending such control to judicial pre-adjudication stages to achieve a holistic CFM judicial leadership
- re-engineering CFM support structures in the courts to respond adequately to the CFM regime.

The following projects are linked to the Integrated CFM project:

- registrars
- legally qualified clerks of court
- court clerks to support the proceedings of each court
- court managers' skills-development programme
- legal research support to the higher courts
- facilitating development and maintenance of CFM systems through exploiting technology to inculcate a culture of management by information
- E-Scheduler
- Video Remand System
- Digital Court Recording System (DCRS)
- Document Management System
- Scanning Solution
- transcription services
- Re Aga Boswa
- case backlogs.

Actual implementation at the courts will be facilitated by the regional offices in each province.

> Operation Sesifikile was launched as part of transforming the master's offices. Through this initiative, the services of the Office of the Master of the High Court have been expanded to rural and other remote areas to reach the vulnerable members of society. During 2007/08, 16 new service points were provided to extend services to the rural areas. There are at least 600 legally qualified personnel to fill the posts of Master, Deputy Master and Assistant Master.

> The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development introduced an internship programme to give graduates opportunities to acquire the required skills in law. In 2008/09, the department put aside R15 million to sustain the programme. In 2007, more than 130 legal graduates were placed in the various areas of the legal profession as part of the National Youth Service Programme. In 2008, at least 80 were placed with university law clinics, while another 45 were placed with the offices of the state attorney countrywide.

This approach will provide for a uniform CFM framework, which will be streamlined in the entire court system. This will have the benefits of cases being managed better, the customers of the court seeing quicker results and confidence in the justice system being restored.

The Court Performance Programme is faced with the following challenges:

- increasing capacity at programme and region/court levels to effect service delivery
- increasing/improving skills and competencies
- continued efforts to reduce case backlogs
- outdated court procedures/processes and the regulatory framework
- organisational efficiency
- skills required to operate the new systems and support.

As an effort to address these challenges the Court Performance Programme has embarked on a number of roadshows and information sessions.

Case-flow management

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is engaged in the development of an enhanced version of the CFM framework for implementation by involving all stakeholders. In the process, the participants from other partner organisations will make meaningful contributions on the issues and blockages affecting the proper implementation of CFM in the court environment. Efforts to eradicate such blockages will be proposed by adopting workable solutions. These include the following:

- continuous co-operation of stakeholders to implement and maintain CFM at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and CFM buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of CFM forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of CFM governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts environment

- maintaining the CFM concept (guidelines, plans, governance, reporting, and systems).

E-Scheduler

The E-Scheduler is one of the most prominent information technology (IT) innovations of the department. It is set to make a dynamic impact on service delivery. This application is used to register criminal case information for the district court environment. The enhancement for the regional court environment has been completed and is currently in testing phase. The E-scheduler, which is the department's official monitoring case-management tool, is used to determine performance at court, as well as at institutional level.

The system provides for daily information capturing, which includes, among other things, the following:
- case details (case number, name of investigating officer, date reported, first appearance date, relevant charges and remand dates)
- details of the accused party
- postponement details (the postponement history of the case).

The application allows the court to schedule cases, thereby determining when the future court diary is available. This information can be displayed both per court and per court room. The daily court roll is also available for printing, for perusal and to address queries from the public and the South African Police Service (SAPS) in some instances.

The following reports are available on the application:
- case cycle-time statistics
- cases registered per month
- charge sheet filing audit
- cases scheduled for the court (notice board)
- monthly statistics – cases closed, children outstanding on the roll, outstanding cases, postponed cases and unreturned cases.

Video postponements

By mid-2008, the pilot was still in place in KwaZulu-Natal and over a period of 15 months, the successes yielded were 4 899 remands concluded without the detainees leaving the correctional facility. The system has added tremendous value to the process of conducting remands and ensuring faster turnaround on cases using the system. The video remand system will be implemented in the top 40 courts, which will be aligned to the 169 contact crime priority police stations and linked to correctional centres housing the remand inmates.

Scanning solution

The E-scheduler system provides document scanning of all incoming cases' dockets/charge sheets.

A total of 300 scanners have been procured and placed into various courts throughout all provinces. As soon as the finalisation of the final version of the scanning solution is signed off, the roll-out will take effect in all the courts with scanners installed. More scanners will be purchased in the new financial year, with respective budget allocations.

Digital Court Recording System

The DCRS has been rolled out to all courts to replace the outdated analogue recording machines. By mid-2008, a total of 2 430 recorders had been installed in the courts. The roll-out, which commenced in October 2006, has been completed in 164 high-court rooms, which have also been installed with a server in each court house (13 servers in total).

Document Management System

By mid-2008, the analysis of the process flow of documents to support an automated process of filing, archiving and retrieving files in the court environment had been finalised in courts.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report to him on the outcomes of these.

The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section Two of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 regarding:
- serious maladministration concerning the affairs of any state institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any state institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property, and any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on state property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property

- corruption in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause to or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category of the public.

The unit can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it uncovers during an investigation and can therefore, for example, obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

A critical factor contributing towards the success of the SIU has been the development of an integrated forensic service to state institutions that require an intervention to address allegations of corruption, maladministration and fraud which include forensic audit and investigation; remedial legal actions encompassing civil, criminal and disciplinary action; as well as the recommendation and facilitation of systemic recommendations.

The SIU's output-driven approach to investigations is supported by an effective national presence and excellent relations with other law agencies such as the National Prosecution Service (NPS), the core prosecuting division of the NPA, and other attached divisions, such as the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit in the case of fraud and other related matters, and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

South African society post-1994 has been marked by profound political changes and the establishment of progressive legislation, policies and programmes that have served to lay the basis for a new society. Key milestones along the way have been the adoption of the new Constitution in 1996 that outlined the formation of the NPA and Section 179 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, that created a single NPA.

Also vital within the Criminal Justice System (CJS) was the formation of the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions (NDPP), established on 1 August 1998.

Legislation governing the prosecuting authority is the NPA Act, 1998. The Constitution, read with the said Act, provides the prosecuting authority with the power to institute criminal proceedings on behalf of the State and to carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting criminal proceedings.

Over the years, various units have been added, resulting in a formidable prosecuting and crime-fighting force that has made its mark on the South African scene and has gained a reputation as a professional organisation of note. The NPA structure includes the NPS, the AFU, and specialised units such as the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU), the Witness Protection Programme (WPU), the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU) and the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit.

In October 2008, Parliament approved the NPA Amendment Bill and the South African Police Service (SAPS) Amendment Bill, which provide for the dissolution of the Directorate: Special Operations (DSO). The DSO and SAPS Organised Crime Unit will become a single agency in the SAPS. The Bills were signed into law in January 2009.

While the core work of the NPA will remain prosecutions and "the people's lawyer", the NPA Strategy seeks to ensure that the organisation becomes more proactive so as to:

- contribute to economic growth
- contribute to freedom from crime
- contribute to social development
- promote a culture of civic morality
- reduce crime
- ensure public confidence in the CJS.

Over the years, the NPA has been involved in ground-breaking work in bringing criminals to boot and precedent-setting cases that have struck a cord with the nation as a whole and contributed to the development of South African post-1994 jurisprudence.

National Prosecutions Service

The significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by a Deputy National Director who reports to the NDPP. A Director of Public Prosecutions (DPP) heads the organisation in each region, with public prosecutors and state advocates manning the nation's district, regional and high courts.

The NPA as "the people's lawyer" thus represents and acts on behalf of the people in all criminal trials. The NPA does not seek only to secure convictions but rather to ensure that the interest of justice is served in all cases. The NPA is blessed to have some of the country's most committed, intelligent, creative and ambitious attorneys in its employ. Prosecutors are significant drivers of the CJS, controlling the speed and direction of court proceedings.

Witness Protection Programme (WPU)

In 2001, the WPU was transferred from the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development to the Office of the NDPP. The office was created in terms of the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998), to provide for temporary protection, pending placement under protection; placement of witnesses and related persons under protection; and services related to the protection of witnesses and related persons.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998). The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought with the proceeds of crime, or property that has been used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

According to the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's *2007/08 Annual Report*, the AFU had finalised 1 100 cases to the value of R663 million.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU was established on 1 August 1999 as a pilot project to combat the deteriorating situation pertaining to commercial crime. The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime. The SCCU's mandate is to accept responsibility for the investigation and prosecution of commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS in Pretoria and Johannesburg, respectively. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments. The investigation and prosecution process of the SCCU is driven through a combined prosecutor and investigator approach conducive to the methodical planning of the outcome and speedy finalisation of cases registered.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by Presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the NDPP. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statue of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply to amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Since its establishment in October 1999, the SOCA Unit has aimed to:

- reduce victimisation of women and children by enhancing capacity to prosecute sexual offences and domestic violence cases
- reduce secondary victimisation of complainants and raise public awareness of the scourge of sexual offences and domestic violence
- ensure proper management of young offenders.

SOCA acts against the victimisation of women and children, with specialised prosecutors positioned

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is in the process of rolling out the Justice Deposit Accounts System in the country's courts. The system will be used for depositing maintenance money, making the system more efficient.

In 2008, the department was in the process of designating branch courts as main courts in various rural areas and townships. In recent months, the department has focused on creating the necessary infrastructure and human-resource capacity in branch courts to make them more self-functioning.

in dedicated sexual offences courts. Supporting activities operated by SOCA include its multidisciplinary Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs), recognised by the United Nations General Assembly as a "world best practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. TCCs are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a critical part of South Africa's anti-rape strategy, aiming to reduce secondary trauma for the victim, improve conviction rates and reduce the cycle time for finalising cases.

TCCs are in operation in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. They are also linked to sexual-offences courts, which are staffed by prosecutors, social workers, investigating officers, magistrates, health professionals, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and police, and located in close proximity to the centres.The centres are managed by a top-level interdepartmental team comprising various role-players.

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into Bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court. The General Council of the Bar of South Africa is the co-ordinating body of the various Bar associations. There is a law society for attorneys in each of the provinces. A practising attorney is *ipso jure* a member of at least one of these societies, which seek to promote the interests of the profession.

The Law Society of South Africa is the co-ordinating body of the various independent law societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts.

Attorneys who wish to represent their clients in the High Court are required to apply to the registrar of a provincial division of the High Court. Such an attorney may also appear in the Constitutional Court. All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney. One of these is that persons who intend to be admitted as attorneys and who have satisfied certain degree requirements prescribed in the Act, are exempted from service under articles or clerkship. However, such persons must satisfy the society concerned that they have at least five years' appropriate legal experience.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Other legal practitioners

In terms of the NPA Act, 1998, state advocates and prosecutors are separated from the Public Service in certain respects, notably by the determination of salaries.

State attorneys derive their power from the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957), and protect the interests of the State in the most cost-effective manner possible. They do this by acting on behalf of the State in legal matters covering a wide spectrum of the law.

State attorneys draft contracts for the State and also act on behalf of elected and appointed officials in the performance of their duties, e.g. civil and criminal actions instituted against ministers and government officials in their official capacities.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South

Justice Richard Goldstone was named the 2008 recipient of the MacArthur Award for International Justice.

The South African judge and prosecutor was honoured by the United States-based foundation for his work as Chief Prosecutor during the International Criminal Tribunals for Rwanda and the former Yugoslavia.

The award is given to individuals and organisations that have been transformative forces in the fields of human rights and international justice, making significant contributions to advancing both fields.

Prior to his appointment as Chief Prosecutor of the International Criminal Tribunals in 1994, Goldstone chaired South Africa's Commission of Inquiry Regarding Public Violence and Intimidation, commonly called the "Goldstone Commission".

The MacArthur Award for International Justice will be conferred upon Goldstone in The Hague in May, 2009.

Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect these rights.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of state.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and to equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security of the person.

Since 1994, and in keeping with the promotion of a human-rights culture, the focus is progressively shifting from an adversarial and retributive CJS to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime, approved by Cabinet, seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has embarked on a programme of information sessions in all nine provinces to raise awareness of the Service Charter for Victims of Crime.

Crime prevention

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is one of five core departments in the Justice, Crime Prevention and Secutiry (JCPS) Cluster that has been tasked with implementing the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS). This is government's official strategy to combat, control and prevent crime. (See Chapter 16: *Safety, security and defence*.)

The main responsibilities of the department in implementing the NCPS are to:

- promote legislation to create an effective CJS
- create an effective prosecution system
- create an effective court system for the adjudication of cases
- co-ordinate and integrate the departmental activities of all role-players involved in crime prevention.

Integrated Justice System (IJS)

The IJS, approved in 2002, aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and ultimately rehabilitation of offenders. A second version of the IJS was published in May 2003. Issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of governmental meetings and forums.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

Modernising the justice system

This includes establishing proper governance structures, effective monitoring mechanisms based on proper review findings and the integration and automation of the justice system. While each department within the JCPS Cluster must have its own IT plan to achieve its specific vision, mission and objectives, the IJS Board co-ordinates the broader and shared duty to integrate information flow throughout the CJS.

Child justice

The department continues to prioritise access to justice for vulnerable groups, including:

- implementing relevant legislation and enabling policy, for example, accelerating the finalisation and implementation of the Child Justice Bill
- the Sexual Offences Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), which, among other things, broadens the definition of sexual assault

- ensuring assistance from prosecutors and public defenders for child maintenance
- enforcing the right of children to receive support from earning parents
- prioritising child justice and all cases involving children, especially those in prison awaiting trial.

The Child Justice Bill was resubmitted to Parliament during the first quarter of 2008. The passage of the Child Justice Bill through Parliament will assist with formalising the legislation and practice, many parts of which have already been successfully piloted in South Africa.

The aim of the Child Justice Bill is to:

- establish a CJS for children who are in conflict with the law and are accused of committing alleged offences, in accordance with the values underpinning the Constitution and international obligations
- create, as a central feature of this new CJS for children, the possibility of diverting children away from the CJS
- provide for the minimum age of criminal capacity of children as being 10 years of age
- make provision for child-justice courts to hear all trials of children who are charged with certain serious offences
- extend the sentencing options available in respect of children who have been convicted
- entrench the notion of restorative justice in the CJS in respect of children who are in conflict with the law
- provide for related matters.

Children awaiting trial

The national and provincial focus to fast-track all children awaiting trial in prisons and police cells has led to a reduction in children awaiting trial.

Specific interventions to address the backlog of cases pending trial include moving away from placing children who are in trouble with the law in correctional detention centres. Children awaiting trial will be placed under home-based supervision, in places of safety or in the care of parents or caregivers.

Three one-stop child-justice centres have been established in Port Elizabeth, Bloemfontein and Port Nolloth. The National Inter-Sectoral Committee on Child Justice monitors and evaluates all child-justice issues and reports to the JCPS Cluster. This forum has also been established at regional level. With the expected adoption of the Child Justice Bill in 2008, the departments have gone ahead with practical steps to improve the lives of children going through the CJS. During the past five years, for example, focused attention to this matter has resulted in the numbers of children awaiting trial in and sentenced to correctional facilities decreasing by 50%.

The Legal Aid Board (LAB) has appointed children's units to legally represent children in conflict with the law and appearing in courts. The number of children assisted in this regard increases by 20% every year.

The number of children being diverted from the CJS during the past five years has increased every year. Statistics received from the NPA indicated that 19 066 children were diverted from the CJS between April 2007 and March 2008.

A time policy for children awaiting trial has further been agreed upon, as:

- three to six months for children's cases in district courts
- six to nine months for children's cases in regional courts
- nine to 12 months for children's cases in high courts.

Implementation of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)

The department has prioritised the planning for and implementation of the Children's Act, 2005, especially relating to the protection and care of children through children's court processes. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is working closely with the Department of Social Development to ensure an integrated and uniform approach to the Children's Act, 2005.

To improve general service delivery in the children's courts, the department intends to continuously train the administrative personnel and magistrates in children's courts, especially in view of the new legislation.

The role of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is to ensure that courts, and especially children's courts, are capacitated to handle disputes affecting children in courts.

Sections 14 and 15 of the Children's Act, 2005 have been put into operation. These sections provide rights to access to courts for children and the right to enforcement of the rights of children through the courts.

Persons who may approach a court are:

- a child who is affected by or involved in the matter to be adjudicated
- anyone acting in the interest of the child or on behalf of another person (child) who cannot act in their own name

- anyone acting as a member of, or in the interest of, a group or class of persons (children)
- anyone acting in the public interest.

Section 28(3) of the Constitution provides that a child is anyone under the age of 18 years.

In terms of the above rights and sections which have been put into operation, all children's rights are protected through court processes. The department therefore foresees that courts will be requested to help protect and enforce children's rights in a rights-based approach.

However, the department also believes that approaching the courts should be a measure of last resort. The department has started consultations with the relevant role-players in this regard. The first port of call for the protection, promotion and realisation of children's rights should be the children's families, caregivers, the community and service-delivery departments.

For the above purpose, measures to resolve disputes outside the formal court procedures have also been provided for in the Children's Courts Chapter of the Children's Act, 2005, such as family group conferences, mediation services and pre-trial conferences.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice means the promotion of reconciliation, restitution and responsibility/accountability through the involvement of a child, the child's parent, the child's family members, communities and all interested parties in all matters of a criminal or civil nature.

Restorative justice elements in many pieces of legislation, such as the Child Justice Bill, the Traditional Courts Bill and the Children's Act, 2005 will promote the use of restorative justice in the handling of matters within and outside the criminal and civil justice systems.

The JCPS Cluster ensures that the many practical steps and programmes that have been developed during the past few years, both in government and NGO sectors, will be aligned and will have an impact towards nation-building, restorative justice and the healing of past and present wounds caused by crimes.

Victim-Empowerment Programme

This programme aims to improve services rendered to victims of crime.

The NPA has court-preparation officials on contract who provide support to crime victims and especially abused children, in preparing them for court proceedings.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime is expected to go a long way towards assisting crime victims and contributing to interdepartmental and cluster co-ordination and co-operation. The Development Committee is mandated to align and co-ordinate cluster activities across the various departments, with the ultimate aim of improving service delivery, policy co-ordination and planning.

It consists of senior representatives from each of the partner departments participating in the IJS, and is chaired by the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. National Treasury, the judiciary and the Department of Home Affairs are also represented on the committee.

E-Justice Programme

The E-Justice Programme supports the fundamental reforms necessary to establish a more fair, accessible and efficient justice system in South Africa. The programme aims to reform and modernise the administration and delivery of justice through re-engineering work processes by using technologies, and strengthening strategic planning and management capacity, organisational development and human-resource interventions.

The E-Justice Programme has evolved into the Information and Systems Management Programme, which has 25 projects in addition to the three main ones, namely the Court Process Project, Digital Nervous System (DNS) Project and Financial Administration System Project. The E-Justice Programme is funded mainly by the Justice Vote and supplemented with donor funding from the European Union Commission, the Royal Netherlands Embassy and the Irish Embassy. With the completion of the DNS III Project in March 2007, 554 sites were deployed and 14 000 users trained. This was expected to substantially enhance service delivery at suboffice level.

Legislative development

The Legislative Development Branch of the department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts. The branch is also responsible for researching, developing and promoting supporting legislation, reflecting the basic constitutional ideals, which facilitates a justice system that is simple, fair, inexpensive and responsive to the needs of the diverse communities in South Africa.

The branch consists of three main components, namely, the research activities of the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC), the Secretariat for the Rules Board for Courts of Law and the Legislative Development component.

The branch's Legislative Development component researches, develops and promotes appropriate legislation affecting the department's line functions.

In 2007, the department, among other things, promoted the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007). The Act comprehensively and extensively amends all aspects of the laws and implementation of the laws relating to sexual offences, and deals with all legal aspects of, or relating to, sexual offences in a single statute. For instance, the common law offence of rape was repealed and replaced with a new expanded statutory offence of rape that is applicable to all forms of sexual penetration without consent, irrespective of gender.

The Criminal Law (Sentencing) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 38 of 2007), was enacted to further regulate the imposition of discretionary minimum sentences for certain serious offences. For example, it gives the regional court jurisdiction to impose a life sentence for certain offences, such as premeditated murder.

The Constitution 13th Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 23 of 2007), re-enacted provisions of the Constitution relating to the provincial boundary between the provinces of the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

State Legal Services

State Legal Services provides government with legal services and facilitates constitutional amendments through three subprogrammes.

State Legal Services provides for the work of the State Attorney and state law advisers. The former acts as attorney, notary and conveyancer for government.

State law advisers provide legal opinions for all organs of state, scrutinise and amend international agreements, draft legislation and subordinate legislation and attend relevant parliamentary portfolio committees as legal advisers for all national departments.

The component hosts the National Forum Against Racism and facilitates South Africa's participation in the International Court for Criminal Justice.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other states/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign states to promote international legal co-operation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African states, especially with the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The chief directorate co-ordinates human-rights issues at international level under the auspices of the United Nations (UN) and the African Union (AU).

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison with SADC states
- co-ordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with other international bodies, such as the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign states outside the SADC region
- negotiating extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements with other countries/international bodies
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human-rights treaties, including report writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process
- processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

International Criminal Court (ICC)

As required by the Rome Statute of the ICC, South Africa promulgated the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002).

This Act provides for a framework to:

- ensure the effective implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC in South Africa

- ensure that South Africa conforms with the obligations set out in the statute
- address the crime of genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes
- address the prosecution in South African courts of persons accused of having committed said crimes in South Africa and beyond the borders of the country in certain circumstances
- deal with the arrest of certain persons accused of having committed said crimes and their surrender to the ICC in certain circumstances
- enhance co-operation between South Africa and the ICC.

Legal structures

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court is involved with the administration of justice in estates of deceased persons and those declared insolvent, the liquidation of companies and close corporations, and the registration of trusts. Each year, the value of estates under the supervision of the masters' offices amounts to about R18 billion. This includes about R4 billion in the Guardian's Fund.

The key statutory functions of the masters' offices are to:

- control the administration of deceased and curatorship estates
- control the administration of insolvent estates and the liquidation of companies and close corporations
- control the registration and administration of both testamentary and inter vivos trusts
- manage the Guardian's Fund
- assess estate duty and certain functions with regard to estate duty
- accept and take custodianship of wills in deceased estates
- act as an office of record.

Deceased estates

On 15 October 2004, the Constitutional Court declared Section 23 and regulations of the Black Administration Act, 1927 (Act 38 of 1927), unconstitutional.

In 2005, legislation to repeal the Black Administration Act, 1927 was finalised. This decision implied that the Master of the High Court takes over the powers of supervision in all deceased estates, and that all estates have to be administered in terms of the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), as amended.

All intestate estates must be administered in terms of the Intestate Succession Act, 1987 (Act 81 of 1987), as amended. This will ensure that all South Africans are treated equally, and that the dignity of each person is restored.

The institutional structures are the following:

- The Chief Master heads the national office and is responsible for co-ordinating all the activities of the masters' offices.
- There are masters' offices in Bhisho, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, Grahamstown, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Mafikeng, Polokwane, Port Elizabeth, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria, Thohoyandou and Mthatha.
- Suboffices are located in places where the High Court does not have a seat, but where workloads require the presence of at least one assistant master.
- At service points, officials attached to the Branch: Court Services deliver services on behalf of, and under the direction of, the Master. Each magistrate's court is a service point. Each service point has at least one designated official who is the office manager or a person of equal rank. They only appoint masters' representatives in intestate estates of R50 000 or less, in terms of Section 18(3) of the Administration of Estates Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 47 of 2002).

Curatorships

On 26 December 2004, the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), came into operation, repealing the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act 18 of 1973).

The new Act provides that where a person falls within the ambit of this Act, the Master can appoint an administrator to handle the affairs of the person. The administrator, in this instance, replaces the appointment of a curator, as was done in the past.

In terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 the Master also appoints curators in these estates to administer the assets of persons and legal entities attached by the AFU, in terms of a court order.

Guardian's Fund

The fund holds and administers funds which are paid to the Master on behalf of various persons, known or unknown.

These include minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons, or persons having an interest in the money of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature.

The money in the Guardian's Fund is invested with the Public Investment Corporation and is audited annually. Interest is calculated monthly at a rate per year determined from time to time by the Minister of Finance. The interest is compounded annually at 31 March. Interest is paid for a period from a month after receipt up to five years after it has become claimable, unless it is legally claimed before such expiration.

Five years after the money has become claimable, the Master pays the unclaimed money to the Receiver of Revenue Payment Register. This does not mean that the owner of the money cannot claim the money from the Guardian's Fund. However, 30 years after the money has become claimable, the money is forfeited to the State. Every September, the Master advertises unclaimed amounts in the *Government Gazette*.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for Courts of Law was established by the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985), to review the rules of court and to make, amend or repeal rules, subject to the approval of the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development. The Rules Board Secretariat provides secretarial and administrative support to the board. The secretariat also conducts research into the rules of court.

Justice College

Justice College provides vocational training to all officials of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It also presents training to autonomous professions such as magistrates and prosecutors. Training is integral to the department's efforts to widen and improve citizens' access to justice, enable the department to meet its strategic objectives and empower employees to heighten their performance.

Justice College is being transformed by reviewing the governance structure, processes and systems, and revamping the curriculum to ensure that the college serves the training and development needs of all its stakeholders.

By 2008, the college had been granted provisional accreditation status and was continuously extending its scope of its accreditation as a training-provider.

The transformed college will extend training to all professionals and officials of the department, including state attorneys, masters, family advocates, registrars, court managers and interpreters.

The college provides training in legislative drafting to officers working with legislation in the various government departments. The department recognises that well-drafted laws facilitate good governance and enhances democracy. Training is given to national, provincial and municipal officers and officers working for statutory bodies.

The training focuses on creating awareness in officers of the constitutional imperatives in legislative drafting generally and this should minimise constitutional challenges to legislation. Focus is also put on developing policies and drafting laws that are easily understood by the target audience and thus facilitate access to justice by all. Training interpreters is a departmental priority.

The college continues presenting courses that focus on complex concepts including, but not limited to, environmental crimes; cyber crimes, the National Credit Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005); and developing legal terminology in indigenous languages.

The college is developing curricula on cross-cutting, non-legal, but essential training programmes, such as management and leadership, project management, service excellence and general administrative training

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to assist the courts in establishing the best interest of minor children in civil legal disputes involving such children.

The Family Advocate derives its duties and obligations from the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act 24 of 1987), and other related legislation. In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The Office of the Chief Family Advocate is the designated central authority regarding the implementation of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, to which South Africa became a signatory in 1996. Under this Act, the Chief Family Advocate assists in securing the return of, or access to, children abducted or unlawfully retained by their parents or caregivers.

The sections of the Children's Act, 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007 have significantly expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation. Furthermore, litigants are now obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation and unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation at all.

In addition, children's rights to participation in, and consultation on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

The Family Advocate's office won (in competition with all government departments) the Department of Public Service and Administration's Innovator of the Year Competition.

Legal Aid Board

The LAB continues to provide legal assistance to the indigent, in accordance with the Constitution and other legislative requirements. This is done through a system of in-house outsourcing to private lawyers (a system of judicare) and co-operation partners.

With its national infrastructure in place, the LAB focuses on improving access to clients and communities, and on improving the quality of delivery of legal services. There are 58 justice centres, 35 satellite offices and 13 high-court units.

The LAB and the SAPS are working on systems that will allow legal-aid applications to be submitted electronically from police stations, to facilitate access to legal representation and ensure that arrested people have legal representation when they first appear in court. This is expected to reduce delays caused by accused people having to find attorneys.

Public Protector

The Public Protector was established in terms of Chapter Nine of the Constitution to strengthen constitutional democracy. The Public Protector investigates any conduct in state affairs or public administration (including national, provincial and municipal administrations, or government entities such as Eskom and Transnet) that is suspected to be improper or that results in impropriety or prejudice. The Public Protector may not investigate court decisions.

Despite the high-profile cases involving politicians that have been investigated, most of the office's work involves complaints from people in townships, shack dwellers and those in rural areas who are struggling to access services to which they are entitled.

Some of the cases investigated include long delays in pension payouts from government and parastatals; the adverse impact of a decision or policy on individuals, institutions or groups; denial of access to information; and insufficient reasons provided for a decision taken.

With a staff complement of about 200, the Public Protector resolves about 17 000 cases per year. The bulk of the cases are resolved within three months.

The Public Protector's services are free and available to anyone who has a complaint. Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible.

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government or any political party. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functions of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

The commission also attends to grievances, complaints and misconduct investigations against magistrates. It advises the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development on matters such as the appointment of magistrates, promotions, salaries and legislation.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity; grievances; salary and service conditions; and the training of magistrates.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is an independent statutory body, established by the SALRC Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973). The SALRC and its secretariat are responsible for research in respect of the law of South Africa with a view to advising government on the development, improvement, modernisation and reform of the law of South Africa in all its facets, by performing, among other things, the following functions:

- executing the law-reform programme of the SALRC by conducting legal research, including legal comparative research, by developing proposals for law reform and, where appropriate, by promoting uniformity in the law
- preparing legislative proposals
- establishing a permanent, simplified, coherent and generally accessible statute book, complying with the principles of the Constitution
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- assisting parliamentary committees during the deliberation of draft legislation emanating from the SALRC
- advising ministers and state departments on proposed legislation and recommendations.

The SALRC's investigation into statutory law revision is one of considerable magnitude that Cabinet has endorsed.

The SALRC has identified the speedy completion of the review of pre-1994 statutes, with a focus on statutes that blatantly violate Section Nine of the Constitution (equality clause), as a priority.

The SALRC was expected to release reports on the following:

- trafficking in persons
- protected disclosures
- assisting adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- sexual offences and adult prostitution
- privacy and data protection
- stalking.

Judicial Service Commission

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the JSC, appoints the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief Justice, and the President and Deputy President of the SCA. The President appoints other judges on the advice of the JSC. In the case of the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief Justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

The JSC was established in terms of Section 178 of the Constitution to perform this function. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the commission gives public notice of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations.

The JSC shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews. Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The JSC has determined criteria and guidelines for appointments, which have been made public.

The interviews are conducted as public hearings and may be attended by anyone who wishes to do so. Following the interviews, the JSC deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

South African Human Rights Commission

The SAHRC is a national institution that derives its powers from the Constitution and the South African Human Rights Commision Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994). It is also given additional powers and responsibilities by other national legislation. Since its inauguration in October 1995, the commission has taken up the challenge of ensuring that the noble ideals expressed in the Constitution are enjoyed by all in South Africa.

The SAHRC works with government, civil society and individuals, both nationally and abroad, to fulfil its Constitutional mandate.

In terms of Section 184(1) of the Constitution, the SAHRC must:

- promote respect for human rights and a culture of human rights
- promote the protection, development and attainment of human rights
- monitor and assess the observance of human rights in South Africa.

The operations of the SAHRC consist of the following programmes:

- Strategic Management and Support Services
- Commissioners
- Education, Training and Public Awareness
- Legal Services
- Research and Documentation
- Parliamentary Liaison and Legislation and Treaty Body Monitoring
- Information and Communication
- Special Programmes
- Co-ordinators
- Civil-Society Advocacy Project.

Structure

The SAHRC is made up of two sections: the commission, which sets out policy; and a secretariat, which implements policy. The chairperson is overall head, and the chief executive officer is head of the Secretariat, accountable for the finances of the SAHRC and responsible for the employment of staff.

As set out in Section Five of the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 the SAHRC has established standing committees to advise and assist it in its work. The SAHRC appoints the members of the standing committees, each of which is chaired by a commissioner. The SAHRC has also established provincial offices to ensure its services are widely accesible.

Education and Training

The objectives of the Education and Training Subprogramme are to conduct training workshops, seminars, presentations and capacity-building programmes on equality, economic and social rights, promotion of access to information and other focus areas of the SAHRC. The SAHRC continues its collaboration with the SADC region.

Legal Services

This subprogramme implements the commission's protection mandate and deals primarily with complaints of human-rights violations in pursuance of redress, monitoring the agencies of the justice system, submitting recommendations and conducting hearings and public inquiries.

Research and Documentation

This subprogramme implements the commission's monitoring and assessment of the observance of the human-rights mandate. It has three components: the Equality Unit, the Economic and Social Rights Unit and the Library.

Commission on Gender Equality

The CGE is one of six state institutions set up in terms of the Constitution to promote democracy and a culture of human rights in the country. The commission's role is to advance gender equality in all spheres of society and to make recommendations on any legislation affecting the status of women.

The CGE has the following powers and functions:

- developing, conducting or managing information and education programmes to foster public understanding of matters pertaining to the promotion of gender equality and the role and activities of the commission
- monitoring and evaluating the policies and practices of state organs, statutory and public bodies, as well as the private sector, to promote gender equality
- investigating any gender-related complaints received or on its own initiative
- liaising with institutions, bodies or authorities with similar objectives
- conducting research to further the objectives of the CGE.

Complaints are received from the public at large and dealt with either through personal consultations, telephonically or in writing, including electronically.

In cases where the complaint does not fall within the CGE's mandate, it may be referred to a relevant institution or forum.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) Unit

The TRC Unit was established in September 2005 to audit, monitor and co-ordinate government's implementation of the TRC recommendations.

The TRC Unit works closely with the President's Fund Office, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Developement. The President's Fund Office has been giving effect to the payment of both urgent interim reparations and final reparations to the 16 837 victims who applied for reparations and were approved by the TRC.

By the end of April 2008, 15 839 beneficiaries had received reparations. A total of 998 beneficiaries still had to be paid, including beneficiaries who must still comply with regulatory requirements, cases where the rightful next of kin of deceased beneficiaries still had to be established, and 423 beneficiaries who still had to be traced. By the end of April 2008, a total of R525 million had been paid in respect of urgent interim and final reparations.

The TRC Unit's activities also include liaison with relevant stakeholders and rendering assistance to TRC-identified victims on an ad hoc basis. This includes assistance to the families of missing persons (reported to the TRC) who have been exhumed by the NPA's Missing Persons Task Team. Such assistance has included applications for reparations and special pensions (where relevant), obtaining death certificates, arranging bereavement counselling for the affected families in conjunction with the Department of Social Development, and assisting victims' children born outside South Africa to reclaim their rightful citizenship.

The TRC Unit has developed a policy in consultation with relevant stakeholders to co-ordinate the exhumation process. At the same time, the unit has facilitated the development of regulations that will enable access to the monies in the President's Fund to assist the affected families with, among other things, travelling and reburial costs.

In 2008, draft regulations on medical and education assistance were almost finalised.

Department of Correctional Services

The responsibilities of the department are not merely to keep individuals who have committed crimes out of circulation in society, or to enforce a punishment meted out by the courts, but also to correct offending behaviour in a secure, safe and humane environment to avoid repeat offending/recidivism.

However, corrections is also a societal responsibility and rehabilitation cannot be complete or sustainable without reintegrating offenders back into their communities upon their release. The department's parole system reflects the principles of social reintegration. While the offender on parole is under the supervision of a correctional official based in the community, the view of the department is that the community should assume a bigger role in ensuring that lasting corrections/rehabilitation takes place. In view of this, the department strives to establish new and strengthen existing partnerships with many community organisations, NGOs and the business sector to ensure that this view becomes entrenched in the fabric of South African society.

The department structurally operates within six geographic regions. This means that some of the provinces have been lumped together to form one region. The six regions are Gauteng, Limpopo/Mpumalanga/North-West, Free State/Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and Eastern Cape.

Inmate profile

In March 2008, there were 165 840 inmates in correctional service centres, accommodated in 239 facilities throughout the country. Of the 239 correctional centres, eight are female centres, 13 are for the youth, 130 are male centres and 86 are mixed female and male. By March 2008, two centres were closed for renovations. There are two private prisons in South Africa.

Overcrowding

Overcrowding in correctional service centres continues to pose a challenge and impacts on how the department functions and on its service delivery. At the close of the 2007/08 financial year, the department's facilities were overcrowded by nearly 45%.

Overcrowding has an impact on the provision of programmes in that officials are often not able to reach the targets they set. Overcrowding puts constraints on building infrastructure, and has created a shortage of beds, thus increasing the demand for more space. The department is implementing an eight-pronged strategy to address overcrowding.

The department partly manages overcrowding through the transfer of offenders between centres and releases resulting from sentence conversion. The construction of new centres should furthermore alleviate the pressure put on facilities and staff because of overcrowding. Over and above these, there is an intersectoral team, the Management of Awaiting-Trial Detention Project, and continued efforts to encourage the judiciary to use the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), to reduce overcrowding. In March 2008, there were 52 662 awaiting-trial detainees in the department's correctional centres.

Policy development

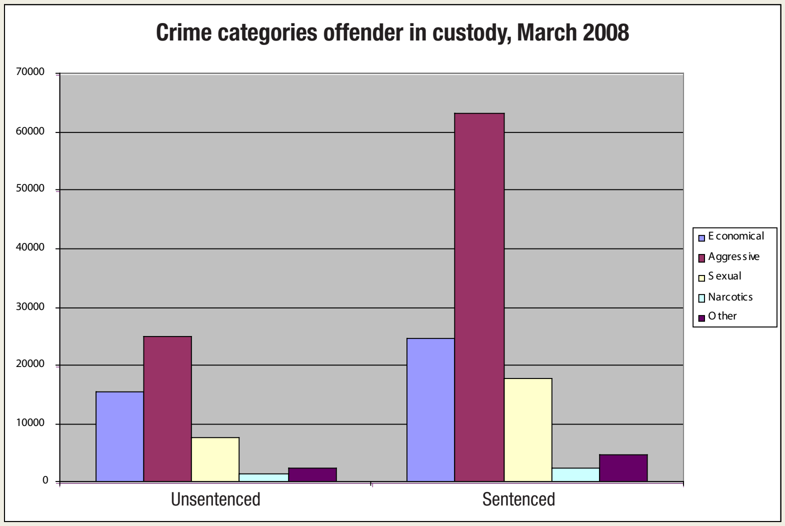
The Department of Correctional Services' guiding policy is the *White Paper on Corrections*, which was adopted by Cabinet in 2005. Since its adoption, the department has undergone various changes that included policy review and amendment of the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998). By 2008, more than 40 policies had been reviewed and aligned to the White Paper, replacing what was referred to as A and B orders. The department has also gone a step further to ensure implementation takes place. Over 400 officials have been trained on policy development and implementation.

The department's spending improved from 94,1% (R9,3 billion against an allocated budget of R9,8 billion) in 2006/07 to 97,7% (R11,1 billion against an allocated budget of R11,4 billion) in 2007/08.

Departmental achievements

Some of the department's achievements include the following:

- Stakeholders and communities were successfully mobilised to participate in Corrections Week, with the aim of strengthening corrections as a societal responsibility and encouraging society to play a role in rehabilitation and the



Source: Department of Correctional Services

reintegration of offenders. Corrections Week is an annual event that celebrates achievements and pockets of excellence in the department.

- A stakeholder conference was held in February 2008 during which resolutions were taken and a pledge was signed. The stakeholders renewed their commitment to build a corrections community that will serve as a legitimate platform for promoting consensus, co-operation, research, and networking, as well as to drive the implementation of a joint programme of action.
- Twenty-four pharmacists were allocated to the department to undertake community service.
- Ten computer-based training centres for offenders were established. Computer-based training forms an integral part of the subject Life Orientation within the National Curriculum Statement for grades 10 to 12 as well as the National Curriculum Vocation. The department has embarked on this national project to ensure that presentation of the curricula is aligned with national requirements.
- The department was involved in the "Second Chances" Conference hosted by the President's Awards for Youth Empowerment. The aim of the conference was to share best practice, knowledge and first-hand experience with colleagues from correctional systems internationally. Correctional Services South Africa was used as an example since the department is one of the first countries internationally that has successfully implemented the President's Awards programme (under the Internal Awards) within a correctional environment.
- During the 2007/08 financial year, 45 324 submissions for placement on parole, including placement under correctional supervision were dealt with by the 52 national parole boards. Of the 48 967 cases that served before the boards, 22 254 were approved.

Improving service delivery

The focus of the department continues to be improving service delivery. In 2007/08, the department enhanced a number of initiatives that will improve how the department functions and its service delivery:

- Integrated Human-Resource Strategy
- Compliance Improvement Plan
- Risk-Management Framework
- key strategic projects
- Service-Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP)
- security enhancement
- care and development of inmates.

Integrated Human-Resource Strategy

The department developed and launched the Integrated Human-Resource Strategy in 2007/08 aimed at establishing a framework providing for effective work organisation, recruitment, retention and development of its employees. The department recognises personnel as a critical asset for the implementation of its mandate. The focus areas include recruitment and retention, training and retraining, enhancing capacity to deliver, employee relations and wellness, organisational culture, career management and organisational design.

Compliance Improvement Plan

This plan is used as a system to monitor the performance of management areas and centres on matters that have been recurring in the findings of the Auditor-General's reports. Accountability has been built into the system by requiring regional offices to submit bimonthly certifications on the progress, which is made by different management areas under their jurisdiction, in managing and ensuring compliance. These certifications are followed by inspections, which are quantified and recorded to monitor performance trends of each management area and centres falling under it. Performance trends are used in the performance assessments of different regional and area commissioners. The results of these inspections are also used in quarterly progress reports to the department's Risk Management Committee (RMC) and the Audit Committee.

The overall improvement in compliance moved from 79% to 84% in 2007/08. The challenge of non-compliance has entrenched itself over some time in the department but management is determined to turn the situation around within a reasonable period. Compliance Improvement Plan inspections are monitored by the RMC.

Risk-Management Framework

The department established the RMC in 2002. The RMC meets on a quarterly basis to assess the level of risk and progress on mitigation of risks. The quarterly risk-mitigation reports on the 2007/08 Significant and Prioritised Risk Profile were presented to each executive management committee meeting in 2007/08, focusing on recommendations to enhance the mitigation of each risk.

Key strategic projects

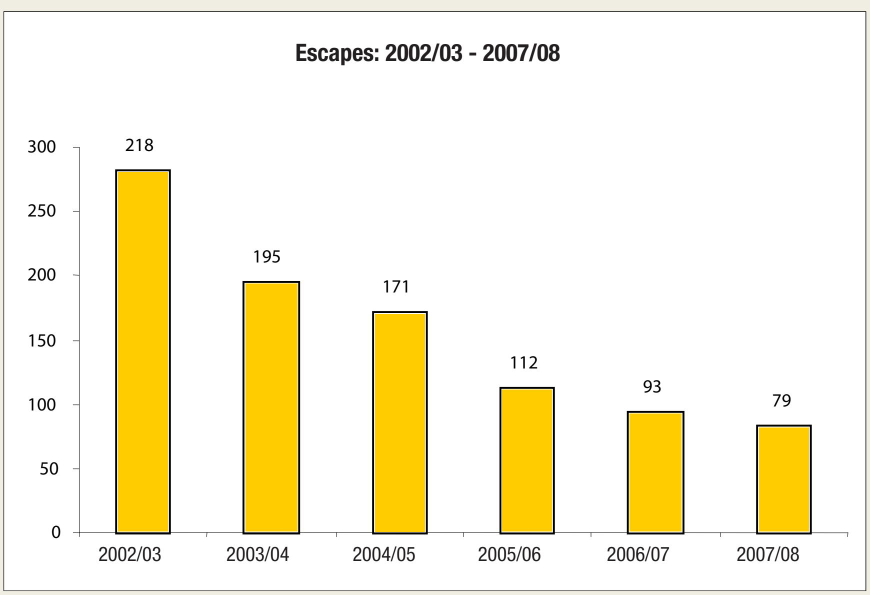
The department has identified eight projects to deliver on its manadate as per the *White Paper on Corrections*. The aim of these projects is to prioritise objectives and deliver them within a period of one to 10 years. The projects identified are the following:

- Infrastructure Development
- Social Reintegration
- Offender Rehabilitation
- Security Enhancement
- Management of Awaiting-Trial Detainees
- Monitoring, Evaluation and Reporting
- Seven-Day Establishment and Job Refinement
- Centres of Excellence.

The department established a project management office to assist in delivery on these projects.

Service-Delivery Improvement Plan

Three SDIPs were identified for the 2008/09 financial year. They aim to:



Source: Department of Correctional Services

- fill vacancies across the department
- improve Adult Basic Education and Training for thousands of offenders who have no functional skills, to reduce survival crimes
- improve the management of visitations to support family ties between offenders and their families.

Enhancing security

Security continues to receive priority attention as one of the core pillars of the department's legal mandate. The department has developed measures to improve security. These include the Biometric Access Control System, electric fencing and X-ray scanners. These interventions have contributed to the significant decline in the rate of escapes over the past 13 years. The approval of the vetting field unit for the department will assist in expediting the vetting of officials, especially in critical areas such as maximum-security facilities.

The Department of Correctional Services initiated a security threat and risk-assessment project with the National Intelligence Agency, SAPS and the Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Limited, which will deliver a report in 2008/09 to be used in reviewing the work of the Security Enhancement Project, initiated in 2007.

Care and development of inmates

The department continues to improve the healthcare of inmates. During 2007/08, four facilities were accredited for the provision of antiretroviral treatment, bringing the total number of facilities accredited to 16. The implementation of the Occupation Specific Dispensation for nurses will also ensure availability of suitably qualified nurses to take care of the health of inmates and assist in the retention strategy in relation to nurses.

The department entered into a partnership with the Shuttleworth Foundation during 2006, with the aim of establishing a pilot Information and Communications Technology Skills Programme at two identified correctional centres, namely Malmesbury and Pollsmoor. The pilot project was concluded in 2007 with a 100% pass rate.

The ICDL Foundation in Ireland has recognised the Minister of Correctional Services and the Department of Correctional Services as a world finalist for an innovation award for the implementation of the Open Source Learning Centre Programme.

Acknowledgements

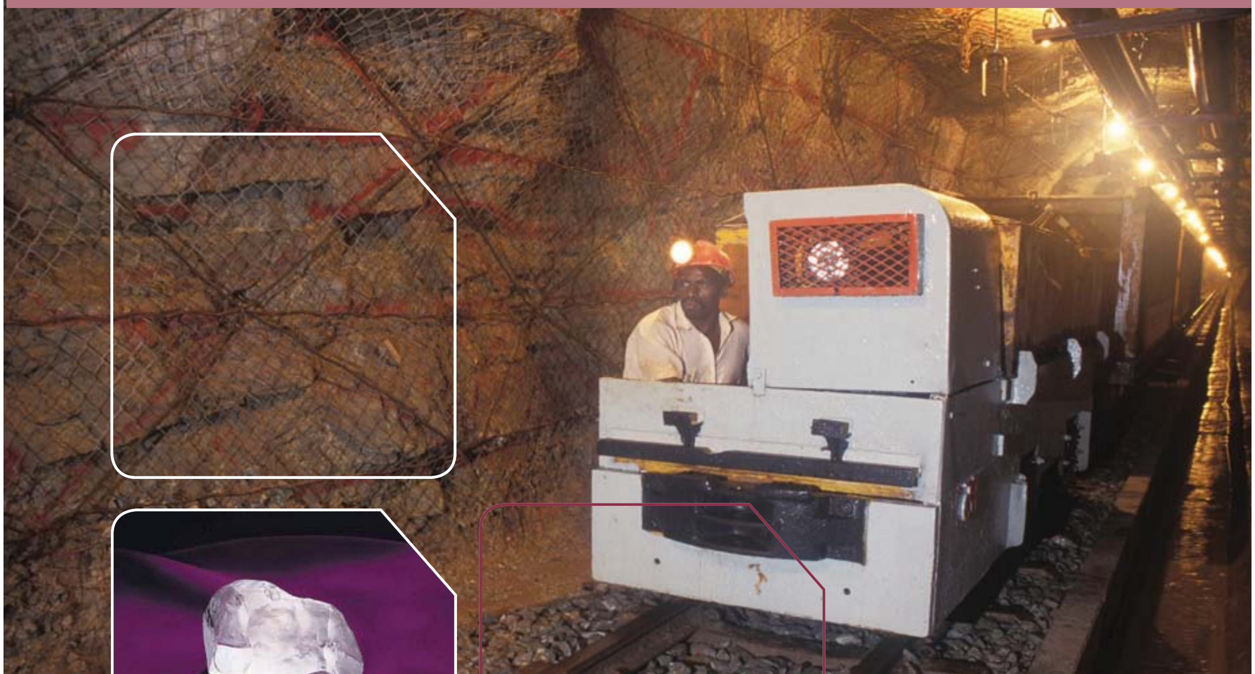
Beeld
BuaNews
Commission on Gender Equality
Department of Correctional Services
Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Public Protector
South African Law Reform Commission
www.dcs.gov.za
www.financialmail.co.za
www.gov.za
www.idasa.org.za
www.southafrica.info

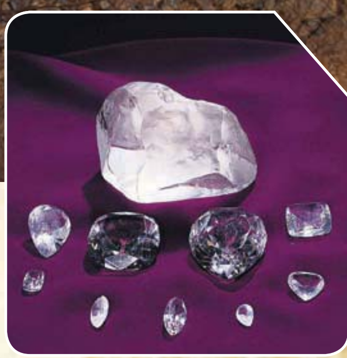
Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. *The Dirty Work of Democracy: A Year on the Streets with the SAPS*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
Asmal, K, Chidester, D and Lubisi C. eds. *Legacy of Freedom: The ANC's Human Rights Tradition: Africans' Claims in South Africa, the Freedom Charter, the Women's Charter and Other Human Rights Landmarks of the African National Congress*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
Bennett, TW. *Customary Law in South Africa*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.
Bizos, G. *Odyssey to Freedom*. Johannesburg: Random House, 2007.
Burchell, J and Erasmus, A. *Criminal Justice in a New Society: Essays in Honour of Solly Leeman*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.
Burger, J. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Policing in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.
Bonthuys, E and Albertyn, C. eds. *Gender, Law and Justice*. Cape Town: Juta, 2007. Chenwin, Lilin.
Doxtader, E and Philippa-Joseph, S. *Truth and Reconciliation: The Fundamental Documents*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2007.
Du Toit, *et al*. *Labour Relations Law: A Comprehensive Guide*. 5th ed. Durban: Lexis Nexis Butterworths, 2006.
Dawes, A *et al*, eds. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South Africa Rights-Based Approach*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.
Foster, D, Haupt, P and de Beer, M. *The Theatre of Violence: Narratives of Protagonists in the South African Con ict*. Cape Town: Institute of Justice and Reconciliation, 2005.
Gibson, JL. *Overcoming Apartheid: Can Truth Reconcile a Divided Nation?* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2004.
Glauber, I. *The Death Penalty as a Deterrent*. Johannesburg: The Author, 2004.
Grogan, J. *Dismissal, Discrimination and Unfair Labour Practices*. Cape Town: Juta, 2005.
Hellum, A. *et al*. *Human Rights, Plural Legalities and Gendered Realities*. Harare: Weaver Press, 2007.
Jordaan, P. *Credit Law of South Africa: A Guide to Consumers, Credit Users and Credit Granters*. Pretoria: van Schaik, 2007.
Kaliski, S, ed. *Psycholegal Assessment in South Africa*. Cape Town: OUP SA, 2006.
Landis, H and Grossett L. *Employment and the Law: A Practical Guide for the Workplace*. Cape Town: Juta, 2005. 2nd ed.
Lange, C and Wessels, J. *The Right to Know: South Africa's Promotion of Administrative Justice and Access to Information Acts*. Cape Town: Siberink, 2004.
Lewis, HP. *God's Gangsters: The History, Language, Rituals, Secrets and Myths of South Africa's Prison Gangs*. Cape Town: Ihilihili Press, 2006.
Maxwell, E and Mogwe, A. *In the Shadow of the Noose*. Gaborone: Ditshwanelo, 2006.
McQuoid-Mason, D. ed. *Street Law South Africa: Practical Law for South Africans*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.
Nagtegaal M, Nagtegaal J and Nagtegaal V. *Her Law: Making the Law Work for You*. Cape Town: Oshun, 2007.
Oduyoye, M and Kanyoro, M. *The Will to Arise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2006.
Oomen, B. *Chiefs in South Africa: Law, Power and Culture in the Post-Apartheid Era*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Pickover, M. *Animal Rights*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
Richter, L. *et al*. eds. *Sexual Abuse of Young Children in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
Sanders, M. *Ambiguities of Witnessing: The TRC and Public Testimony*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Suttner, R and Cronin, J.*50 Years of the Freedom Charter*. Pretoria: Unisa, 2006.
Truth and Reconciliation Commission of South Africa Report, Cape Town: Juta, 2003.
Turrell, R. *White Mercy: A Study of the Death Penalty in South Africa*. Westport. Cape Town: Praeger, 2004.
Van der Walt, J. *Law and Sacrifice: Towards a Post-Apartheid Theory of Law*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.

MINERALS, ENERGY AND GEOLOGY





The aim of the Department of Minerals and Energy is to formulate and implement an overall minerals and energy policy to ensure the optimum use of minerals and energy resources.

The Hydrocarbons, Clean Energy and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels and energy efficiency.

The Electricity and Nuclear Branch is responsible for renewable energy, the designated national authority and energy planning. Additional responsibities include data and statistics, the roll-out of integrated energy centres (IECs) and the establishment of a national energy database.

The Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch is responsible for formulating and promoting mineral-related policies that will encourage investment into the mining and minerals industry, making South Africa attractive to investors.

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) is responsible for implementing mine health and safety legislation.

The Mineral Regulation Branch regulates the mining and minerals industry to achieve transformation and contribute to sustainable development.

Policy

Mining and minerals policy is based on the principles of the Freedom Charter, according to which the mineral wealth beneath the soil will be transferred to the ownership of the people as a whole.

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of black people in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources. The MPRDA, 2002 enshrines equal access to mineral resources, irrespective of race, gender and creed.

By mid-2008, as a consequence of this Act, employment figures had reached the half-a-million mark for the first time in many years. When the Act was passed, there was only one junior mining company. By mid-2008, there were 21 junior mining companies.

Aided by the Department of Minerals and Energy, skills development is taking place in the jewellery sector to enable people to take leadership roles and the provinces to play supporting roles.

The South African Diamond Board was established in 1987 in terms of the Diamond Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986), to regulate control over the possession, purchase, sale, processing and export of diamonds. During 2007, three pieces of legislation, namely the Diamond Amendments Act, 2005 (Act 30 of 2005), the Diamond Second Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 30 of 2005), and the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), were promulgated, thereby broadening the legal mandate of the board to also regulate precious metals. Subsequently, the South African Diamond Board was de-listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in March 2007 and replaced by the South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR), which was established by Section Three of the Diamonds Act, 1986 (as amended in 2005).

The SADPMR and the State Diamond Trader (SDT) were officially launched in February 2008, although they had already begun operating by proclamation in 2007.

Their establishment signalled a number of significant changes in the regulation of diamonds and precious metals and heralded a new era where the SDT began to sell rough diamonds to those South Africans who were previously excluded. The two entities are a product of the Department of Minerals and Energy's commitment towards maximising value addition of South Africa's mineral resources with particular reference to diamonds and precious metals.

The SDT opened in Johannesburg and is expected to move to Kimberley in the Northern Cape at a later stage. The Precious Metals Act, 2005 provides for the acquisition of smelting, refining, using and disposing of precious metals, with the emphasis on adding increased value.

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Amendment Bill was submitted to Parliament in 2007. After thorough consultation, the following were agreed upon to achieve alignment of environmental management requirements in the MPRDA, 2002 and in the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998):

- one environmental management system to be followed in South Africa
- the Minister of Minerals and Energy to be the responsible authority implementing environmental matters in terms of NEMA, 1998, as it relates to prospecting, mining, exploration, production and related activities in a prospecting, mining, exploration and production area

- the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to be the appeal authority on all environmental authorisations issued in terms of NEMA, 1998
- both NEMA, 1998 and MPRDA, 2002 needed to be amended to give effect to the agreement made by the ministers.

An amendment to geosciences legislation was also to be made to align it with the MPRDA, 2002 but, more importantly, will empower the Council for Geoscience (CGS) to be the custodian of all geological data received during or after prospecting and mining operations, "for investment purposes".

The Bill will go a long way in providing certainty for investors, thus creating more employment. The Geoscience Amendment Bill aims to align the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), with the MPRDA, 2002 and expand the functions of the CGS. The Bill was introduced to Cabinet in January 2008, but was referred back for further consultation with other departments. By mid-2008, the consultation process was in progress.

The Department of Minerals and Energy is reviewing the Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), to improve sanctions for non-compliance and extend the application to cover corporate bodies. The new Bill will also establish a mine inspectorate as an entity of government to help the department to deal with acute skills shortages in this area. This review will effectively regulate occupational health and safety at mines.

The Bill empowers the Mine Health and Safety Council to appoint its committees to deal with current and emerging sector challenges. This review will enhance the effectiveness of the council as an advisory body on mine, health and safety. In 2008, the Energy and Security Bill was approved by the National Assembly. This covers sustainable energy development and gives certain powers to the Minister of Minerals and Energy.

It will make interventions possible to ensure energy security and uninterrupted availability of energy supplies, make regulations pertaining to appliances, address environmental requirements on the subject of climate change and water use, enforce mandatory co-operation in the development of sector energy plans and establish the National Energy Efficiency Agency.

The Electricity Distribution Industry (EDI) Restructuring Bill will focus on issues surrounding the establishment of regional electricity distributors (REDs) and the transfer of Eskom's assets and business. The Department of Minerals and Energy has tabled the National Radioactive Waste-Management Agency Bill in Parliament.

The agency will be responsible for, among other things, the production of disposal solutions, the issuing of disposal certificates, managing disposal facilities and designing new facilities when needed. Emphasis will be placed on improving communication to the general public on waste-management issues.

The National Energy Regulator Amendment Bill will provide a legislative mandate for the present body over the whole energy sector.

Implementation of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002

The Department of Minerals and Energy's efforts to pursue and consolidate gender empowerment in the mining industry have culminated in the revitalisation of the South African Women in Mining Association (Sawima) and the official launch of their national offices in Johannesburg. Through Sawima, the department will continue to lend assistance to women in mining to ensure that this sector does not continue to be the domain of men only.

The department hosted the Women in Mining Colloquium in November 2007 to deliberate on issues and challenges facing the active participation of women in the mining sector. The colloquium provided the platform for dialogue as well as for the exchange of experiences and information pertinent to women in mining.

From 2006 to March 2008, the department ran a sustainable development project targeting women and the youth and focusing on training and skills development in beneficiation, mining and rehabilitation. The mining communities in Griekwastad, Prieska and Kuruman in the Northern Cape were given training on the dangers of asbestos, rehabilitation of asbestos mines and beneficiation of semi-precious stones.

Training in the Free State and Limpopo focused on crushing waste rocks to produce aggregates for the construction industry. About 173 beneficiaries were trained, 54% of whom were male and 46% female.

The department continued with training interventions in niche areas of beneficiation, particularly stone-setting in jewellery manufacturing to alleviate the shortage of skilled labourers in the jewellery manufacturing industry.

By mid-2008, the third group of trainees in the Jewellery Manufacturing Programme with China had already been placed with jewellery companies in South Africa. This group from the Western Cape received training in China from September 2007 until January 2008. The department, in partnership with the Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA), facilitated training on computer-aided design for 12 students, which was done parallel to the Design Indaba Expo that took place in February 2008.

Youth in Energy and Mining was established in 2006 to facilitate youth programmes and reach out to as many youth in the country as possible.

To further fulfil the objectives of the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa), the CGS, the Central Energy Fund (CEF) Group of Companies and the University of Fort Hare are collaborating on a skills-development programme in the fields of geology, chemistry and economics.

Furthermore, the department uses the MPRDA, 2002, through its requirements for a social and labour plan, to intensify the struggle against poverty.

Housing projects, schools and clinics are initiatives undertaken by mining companies in an effort to fulfil the criteria as set out in the Act.

Mine environmental management

Mine environmental management, which forms an integral part of the management of mineral resources, focuses on:

- the approval and monitoring of the implementation of environmental management plans and mine environmental management programmes
- regular inspections to strengthen enforcement to prevent mining legacies
- identifying and managing "hot spots"
- approval of mine-closure applications and the monitoring of implementation of these
- rehabilitating abandoned and ownerless mines.

Considering the extent of environmental damage caused by mining in South Africa, the Department of Minerals and Energy entered into a three-year agreement with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the CGS and Mintek to find solutions for long-term rehabilitation and environmental management. The Sustainable Development Through Mining Programme was established and resulted in addressing the following:

- a derelict and ownerless mines database
- a regional mine closure strategy for the Witwatersrand Water Basin
- a sustainable development strategy for minerals and mining
- mine environmental management guidelines for implementation, monitoring and mine closure
- instruments and tools to assist with evaluating, inspections and decision-making.

The department has been assigned the responsibility to reduce government's environmental liabilities as a result of pollution emanating from unrehabilitated, derelict and ownerless mines.

In 2007, about 13 projects were implemented with a budget of R55 million. The focus was on asbestos mines because of the potential health hazards posed by them.

Mining outcomes of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Representatives from nearly 200 countries assembled at the WSSD in Johannesburg in September 2002 to reaffirm their commitment to sustainable development. As a follow-up to the WSSD mining outcomes, the Department of Minerals and Energy initiated a process in 2005 by developing a strategy to address the WSSD outcomes for minerals and mining.

In 2008, the department was finalising a strategy to achieve the mining priorities of the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation. The key strategic objectives of the strategy are:

- That the South African mining sector reflects the sustainable development values, principles and aspirations of the country. All stakeholders in the sector must share a sustainable development vision based on a culture of mutual respect.
- The vision of sustainable development in the sector must be communicated effectively to all stakeholders.
- To recognise that sustainable development strategy and policy must transcend both the Government of the day and the requirements of the United Nations Conference on Science and Technology for Development and should be valid and appropriate across all time scales. Furthermore, that community empowerment, and environmental and social rights are central and enduring tenets of the sector and that all those operating within the minerals sector earn a social licence to do so.

- That the Sustainable Development Strategy facilitates the transition from finite resource-based industries and economies to sustainable knowledge-based economies and that building and accounting for social and natural capital is implicit.
- That the Sustainable Development Strategy promotes economic diversification in existing and future mining industries and that the minerals sector should take due cognisance of globalisation's influence on sustainable development and the consequences of these (including the implications of trade barriers, global market forces, international agreements, requirements and conventions).
- That the Sustainable Development Strategy acknowledges the potential and realised contribution of the industry for socio-economic empowerment and that policy creates conditions to ensure the continuation of this contribution.
- That value extraction from South Africa's minerals sector benefits vulnerable groups and value addition from South Africa's mineral resources is maximised locally.
- That government is empowered to facilitate sustainable development outcomes and link to national and international sustainable development strategies and initiatives and that all role-players realise the synergies achieved through effective co-operation.
- That the minerals sector moves towards sustainable end states and internalises negative costs and associated consequences and that the cumulative and life-cycle aspects of the sector are fully aligned with sustainable development principles.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP had been established to champion, among other things, the mining and mineral-related initiatives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad).

The Global Mining Dialogue was also established to promote WSSD mining outcomes in the international arena. During an AMP meeting, held in 2007, it was reported that there was progress on the AMP Sustainable Development Strategy.

The approach is based on the outcomes of the WSSD. Progress was as follows:

- The Draft Charter for Sustainable Development for the Minerals and Mining Sectors in Africa had to be finalised and adopted.
- More women should participate in mining and it has been identified as one of the main constraints for achieving sustainable development.
- A proposal was made that an AMP Women in Mining Desk be established to promote the participation of African women in the mining sector.

Sustainable development on the African continent

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project (Westcor) was signed in October 2004.

This Nepad flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydroelectric energy of the Inga rapids site in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). It will ensure the security of supply in the Southern African Development Community (SADC). The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

Mining industry

With the implementation of the MPRDA, 2002 and the Mining Charter, there has been an increase in the number of women participating in the mining industry. The most significant transactions approved recently saw the creation of black-owned companies.

Anglo Platinum sold a majority stake in the Lebowa Platinum Mines to Anooraq, the third-largest producer of platinum in South Africa. Furthermore, Anglo Platinum sold its 22% shareholding in Northam to Mvelaphanda Resources, making Northam a black-owned and -controlled mine. Anglo Platinum also sold 50% of its stake in the De Brochen Project to Mvelaphanda, making this project 100% black-controlled.

In relation to coal, Anglo Operations through Anglo Coal, facilitated the creation of a new coal company Anglo Inyosi Coal, wherein historically disadvantaged South Africans (HDSAs) own 26% of its equity. Kgalagadi Manganese is 80% owned by an empowerment company.

A number of community projects have been approved, wherein communities are holders of mining rights. Some examples of these are the following: Itereleng Bakgatia Resources, Marual Platinum and Lesizwe Platinum.

South Africa produces 10% of the world's gold, and has 40% of the world's known resources. It is estimated that 36 000 tons (t) of undeveloped resources – about one third of the world's unmined gold – still remains. These ores are increasingly difficult to exploit due to the great depths where they are situated and their fairly low-grade quality.

Following the successful conclusion of the protracted land claim by the Richtersveld community, the state-owned mining firm Alexkor is in a period of transition and has entered into a process of restructuring.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The Mining Charter, which is founded on an accord reached between government and the private mining sector, promotes BEE. In June 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy announced that the South African Supplier Development Agency (Sasda) would be incorporated into the CEF Group of Companies as part of broader initiatives to accelerate the empowerment of BEE suppliers in the oil industry. Sasda was established in March 2005 by the department in conjunction with the seven major oil companies which constitute the South African Petroleum Industry Association (Sapia). Sasda's brief is to facilitate increased access by BEE suppliers to procurement opportunities in the petroleum industry, in compliance with the Liquid Fuels Charter of 2000. One of its key focus areas is the development of black suppliers to meet the industry's required standards.

Mineworkers

According to the Chamber of Mines, the South African mining sector in 2007:

- Directly employed 495 474 workers, compared with 458 600 in 2006. It was estimated that another 165 000 workers were employed in associated industries that either supplied products to, or used products from the mining industry (the multiplier linkages of the industry). Around five million people are directly dependent for their daily subsistence on mine employees.
- Accounted for 6% of those employed in the non-agricultural formal sector of the economy and 7,5% of the total private sector of non-agricultural employment.
- Paid R50 billion in wages and benefits to employees, which accounted for about 5,9% of the total compensation paid to all employed people in the country. This contributed substantially to domestic demand in the South African economy.

Mine health and safety

The MHSI, established in terms of the MHSA, 1996, is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mineworkers or people affected by mining activities.

The activities of the MHSI focus on achieving a safer and healthier mining industry for all. The MHSI works closely with industry and worker unions to reduce the incidence of mine accidents, with stakeholders committing themselves to continuously reduce fatalities by at least 20% a year. The inspectorate is also pursuing a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss or occupational deafness by 2013, and to reduce the social costs of diseases and injuries to vulnerable communities in particular.

The Department of Minerals and Energy continues to work with security forces to develop a strategy of combating illegal mining, which is one of the biggest threats to mineworkers' health and safety.

South Africa is committed to combating HIV and AIDS in the mining industry.

Mine Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The MQA was established as a Sector Education and Training Authority under the leadership of the Department of Labour. The MQA aims to facilitate the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring the implementation of a sector skills plan
- registering skills-development facilitators at workplaces within the sector
- approving work-skills plans and annual training reports of companies in the sector
- developing unit standards and qualifications
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning provision in the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships

- administering existing apprenticeship systems
- administering and disbursing skills-development levies.

The MQA has introduced several initiatives to address skills shortages that specifically aim to support transformation across the mining and minerals sector. Two strategic documents support BEE in the mining industry. Firstly, the service-level agreement signed with the Department of Labour commits to targets set by the National Skills Development Strategy that are underpinned by equity principles aimed at accelerating Broad-Based BEE and employment equity.

Therefore, of all people trained, 85% should be black, 54% women and 4% people with disabilities.

The second strategic document that supports BEE in the mining industry is the MQA Mining Charter Support Strategy. In support of the Mining Charter, the MQA has introduced the Executive Preparation Programme, the Graduate Development Programme, a bursary scheme (including support for undergraduate practical training), the Universities Employment Equity Project, and support for small-scale miners. The MQA also supports SMMEs in the sector through grants for training in small-scale mining, mineral beneficiation, jewellery manufacturing and diamond processing.

The human-resource development guidelines provide for enhanced opportunities to be made available to HDSAs within the mining and minerals sector. The guidelines specify that by 2010, 40% of managers controlling the full spectrum of activities should be from historically disdvanted backgrounds and that women must occupy 10% of all positions.

Consequently, the MQA Executive Preparation Programme was created to aid HDSAs. Its focus is on developing strategic and in-depth understanding of the mining and minerals sector in some 26 learners per six-month term.

The Graduate Development Programme was also introduced for unemployed graduates from universities of technology who had qualifications and skills that were scarce and critical according to the Mineral Sector Skills Plan, but who needed to gain work experience.

Chamber of Mines

The Chamber of Mines was established in 1889, and consists of independent mining-finance corporations, individual mines and mining companies. The members account for more than 85% of South Africa's mineral output.

The Chamber of Mines provides an advisory and service function to its members and to the industry on a co-operative basis. It covers areas such as industrial relations; education and training; security and healthcare; technical, legal and communication services; and the provision of statistical data.

Subsidiary companies provide training, examination administration, visits to operational gold and diamond mines, the monthly newspaper *Mining News*, mine-rescue, environmental management, and centres for human development to the South African mining industry and, in some instances, also to customers outside the mining industry.

Other areas of industry networking include:

- the Employment Bureau of Africa (Teba)
- Teba-Bank, which provides efficient and cost-effective banking services for mineworkers
- Rand Mutual Assurance, which provides compensation benefits for accidental injury or workers' death while on duty
- Rand Refinery Limited, the world's largest gold refinery

South Africa's mineral reserves, 2007

Commodity	Unit	Reserves	%	World ranking
Alumino-silicates	Kt	51	n/a	n/a
Antimony	t	200	4,7	4
Chrome ore	Mt	5 500	72,4	1
Coal	Mt	27 981	6,1	8
Copper	Kt	13 000	1,4	14
Fluorspar	Mt	80	16,7	2
Gold	t	36 000	40,1	1
Iron ore	Mt	1 500	0,9	9
Lead	Kt	3 000	2,1	6
Manganese ore	Mt	4 000	80	1
Phosphate rock	Mt	2 500	5,0	4
Platinum-group metals	Kg	70 000	87,7	1
Silver	t	n/a	n/a	n/a
Titanium minerals	Mt	244	16,9	2
Uranium	Kt	341	7,2	5
Vanadium	Kt	12 000	32,0	1
Vermiculite	Kt	80 000	40,0	2
Zinc metal	Kt	15 000	3,3	8
Zirconium	Kt	14 000	19,4	2

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram

Source*:* Department of Minerals and Energy

- the Nuclear Fuels Corporation (Nufcor)
- Colliery Technical Services, which includes the Colliery Training College
- Rescue Drilling Unit
- Collieries Environmental Control Services
- Mintek, which specialises in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Junior and small-scale mining

The Department of Minerals and Energy is committed to ensuring that the small-scale mining sector becomes sustainable. The Small-Scale Mining Board is responsible for finding and implementing solutions to overcome identified limitations within the small-scale mining sector.

The National Small-Scale Mining Development Framework assists small-scale miners with the challenges they face. The small-scale mining sector contributes significantly to job creation in the mining industry. It is estimated that about 3 000 jobs can be created for every 15 sustainable small-scale mining projects given assistance. There is a need to involve more technical partners and business professionals to mentor each project in operation.

The framework's target market for assistance comprises:

- illegal or unacceptable operations, which are legalised and converted into sustainable operations
- undercapitalised operations, which require expansion or optimisation
- first-time entrepreneurs interested in new projects.

The small-scale mining sector includes:

- artisanal or subsistence mining operations (new entrants)
- suboptimal formal mining operations
- entrepreneurs with start-up capital.

The Directorate: Small-Scale Mining helps aspiring small-scale miners:

- to establish a legal entity
- to identify mineral deposits
- with environmental impact assessments (EIAs) and mineral rights
- with legal and contractual arrangements
- to calculate a reserve estimation of the selected deposits
- to carry out mining-feasibility studies
- to perform market studies
- with mining equipment.

The directorate co-ordinates a substantial amount of expert capacity and experience, and specialises in planning and developing viable mining projects through its pre-feasibility stages.

The South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber, launched in July 2005 in Kimberley, Northern Cape, represents the interests of small-scale miners nationally. Its objectives include positioning small-scale mining member companies to use available mining opportunities in and beyond South Africa's borders.

It also aims to provide a model for small-scale mining that can be used as a basis to link up with the SADC and the AMP.

The department continued supporting the development of small-scale mining and, for the first time, extended this support to jewellery-fabrication projects in 2007 and 2008.

To create more jobs, the Department of Minerals and Energy, through the Directorate: Small-Scale Mining, has supported 18 small-scale mines that are in operation in the country.

Eight small-scale mining operations were expected to be launched in 2008. In 2007/08, the Directorate: Small-Scale Mining received 40 applications for mining permits requesting funds for equipment.

Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is found in diverse geological formations, some of which are unique and extensive by world standards. Some of the country's minerals include:

- Gold – the unique and widespread Witwatersrand Basin yields some 96% of South Africa's gold output.
- Diamonds (in kimberlites, alluvial and marine deposits) – the country is among the world's top producers.
- Titanium – heavy mineral-sand occurrences containing titanium minerals are found along the coastline.
- Manganese – enormous reserves of manganese are found in the sedimentary rocks of the Transvaal Super Group.
- Platinum-group metals (PGMs), chrome and vanadium – these minerals occur in the Bushveld Complex in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. More than half of the world's chrome and platinum reserves are in this deposit.
- Bituminous coal and anthracite seams occur in the Karoo Basin in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-

Natal, the Free State, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape.
- Copper, phosphate, titanium, iron, vermiculite and zirconium are found in the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex in Limpopo.

South Africa's reserves of the following commodities are globally the highest, namely:
- manganese
- chromium
- PGMs
- gold
- alumino-silicates
- vanadium.

South Africa's mineral industry is export-oriented as a result of the relatively small domestic market, but emphasis is now placed on encouraging local value addition to raw and semi-processed minerals. South Africa is the world's greatest exporter of gold, PGMs, chromite and ferro-chrome, manganese ores and ferro-manganese, vanadium and antimony products, as well as vermiculite and zirconium.

Other important export commodities include coal and titanium slag.

South Africa's mineral production, 2007				
Commodity	**Unit**	**Production**	**%**	**World ranking**
Aluminium	Kt	914	2,4	9
Alumino-silicates	Kt	265	59,0	1
Antimony	t	3 354	2,5	7
Chrome ore	Kt	9 683	n/a	n/a
Coal	Mt	247,8	4,5	5
Copper	Kt	110	0,7	16
Fluorspar	Kt	285	6,0	4
Gold	t	253	10,3	2
Iron ore	Mt	41,3	2,5	7
Lead	Mt	42,0	1,2	11
Manganese ore	Kt	5 589	14,2	2
Nickel	Kt	42,0	3,1	9
Phosphate rock	Kt	2 556	1,7	10
Platinum-group metals	Kg	304 031	56,7	1
Silver	t	70	0,3	21
Titanium minerals	Kt	1 181	19,5	2
Uranium	t	639	1,6	11
Vanadium	Kt	23,5	40	1
Vermiculite	Kt	200	38,5	1
Zinc metal	Kt	31,4	0,3	25
Zirconium minerals	Kt	405	41,6	2

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram

Source*:* Department of Minerals and Energy

South Africa is largely self-reliant with regard to raw minerals, but coking coal, sulphur, potash and soda ash are among those imported.

South Africa's total sales of primary minerals increased to R223,9 billion in 2007. The value of exports of primary minerals in 2007 increased to R161,8 billion.

The Directorate: Mineral Economics of the Department of Minerals and Energy monitors and analyses the global supply and demand of minerals that affect the South African economy.

Gold

South Africa's gold production decreased by 7,2% from 272,1 t in 2006 to 252,6 t in 2007, largely as a result of the mining of lower-grade ore, made economic by higher rand gold prices, as well as new safety procedures, which involved the temporary closure of a shaft where a fatal incident had occurred to facilitate an audit with a view to improving safety.

Gold's total sales revenue increased by 1,6% to R38 billion, due to a 19,7% rise in the average Rand price for the year, despite lower sales volumes.

Silver

South Africa's silver mine production in 2007, at 69,8 t, was 19,7% lower than the 2006 figure of 86,9 t. Silver was produced as a by-product of the gold, lead-zinc, copper and PGM mines. Local sales value decreased from R11,0 million to R10,9 million due to the higher price, despite lower sales volumes. The export sales value decreased from R239,6 million to R224,1 million.

Coal

In 2007, South African mines produced 247,7 million tons (Mt) of coal. Of this 182,8 Mt were sold locally for R19,7 billion, and 67,7 Mt realised R24,4 billion on export markets. South Africa has estimated recoverable coal resources of 31 billion tons.

Platinum-group metals

South African PGM production dropped by 1,7%, to 304 t in 2007 from 309,3 t in 2006. Production of platinum and palladium decreased by 5,3% to 160,9 t and by 3% to 83,6 t respectively, while the production of rhodium rose by 7,2% to 21,1 t. PGM export sales revenue increased by 23,1% to R66 billion, due to a higher average rand basket price for 2007, despite lower sales volumes.

Non-ferrous minerals

This sector comprises a mixture of metals and metal concentrates. Copper, nickel and cobalt production and sales are, for the most part, reported as metals, whereas titanium (actually ilmenite and rutile concentrates), zirconium, zinc, lead and antimony are reported either as tons of concentrate or tons of metal in concentrate.

Of the latter, very little, if any, titanium or antimony concentrate ever reaches the metallic stage, and in the rest of the world these are regarded as industrial minerals (i.e. non-metallics). In 2007, sales in this sector totalled R19 billion, representing 8,5% of total mineral sales. Local sales made up 40,8% of total non-ferrous mineral sales.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is an important source of ferrous minerals, being the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores and a significant supplier of manganese alloys, ferrosilicon and silicon metal.

International crude and stainless steels manufacturing industries, which consume over 90% of ferrous mineral production, drive the demand of these minerals.

The recent tightness in raw material supply/demand has pushed ferrous mineral prices to record levels. As a result, revenues generated from mineral sales increased by 40% to R49,8 billion in 2007, when compared to 2006, despite the 4% weakening of the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

Around R38 billion of sales revenues were derived from exports, which consist of less than 1% of primary minerals, mainly iron ores. When compared to the past two to three decades, the South African ferrous minerals industry has made good progress in mineral beneficiation and has the potential to improve on further downstream beneficiation as security of supply as well as proximity to supply could become priority in future.

> The former Minister of Health, Dr Manto Tshabalala-Msimang, signed a historic agreement with the Chamber of Mines and the National Union of Mineworkers on 29 May 2008, allowing for the improvement of access to healthcare and medical benefits for ex-mineworkers.
>
> The agreement commited the three parties to improving public health facilities that will be largely used by ex-mineworkers in South Africa and neighbouring countries for benefit medical examinations.

Industrial minerals

This sector comprises a wide variety of generally non-metallic minerals, with local sales accounting for some 88% of total revenue from industrial minerals in 2007. Local sales increased by R900 million from R6,9 billion to R7,8 billion in 2007.

The greatest contributor to the local sales value was sand and aggregate (43%), with limestone and lime (21,8%) being the second-biggest contributor. Fluorspar (28,7%), andalusite (26,4%), vermiculite (18,3%) and granite (14,9%) were significant contributors to the value of exports.

Processed minerals

Ferro-alloys and aluminum are the greatest revenue earners in this sector, contributing 78% of the R54,76 billion sales in 2007. In rand terms, processed mineral sales were 21% greater than in 2006. Exports yielded 76% of the total sales of processed minerals.

Other minerals

This sector is dominated by diamonds and includes hydrocarbon fuel and uranium oxide. Revenue from these minerals increased by 0,7% over that of 2006, to R15 billion. New investment by companies such as Uranium One and First Uranium have contributed greatly to the recovery of this sector.

Energy

The Department of Minerals and Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- attaining universal access to energy by 2012
- providing accessible, affordable and reliable energy, especially to the poor
- diversifying primary energy sources and reducing dependency on coal
- good governance, which must also facilitate and encourage private-sector investments in the energy sector
- environmentally responsible energy provision.

Estimates suggest that R107 billion would be needed between 2005 and 2009 to meet the country's growing energy needs. Some R23 billion is reserved for independent power producer (IPP) entrants. Eskom will invest more than R300 billion in new generation, transmission and distribution capacity up to 2013.

In August 2007, Cabinet approved the Energy Security Strategy, a policy document that will change South Africa's approach to energy security.

The fuel shortages of 2005 and projected challenges coming out of studies conducted since then, as well as the load-shedding incidents that have hit the Electricity Supply Industry (ESI), have created the need for the strategy.

The strategy is presented in phases with phase one focusing on liquid-fuels issues, the energy security framework and the proposed energy planning approach. Phase two will address issues pertaining to electricity.

The strategy seeks to:

- secure adequate supplies of affordable energy for continued economic growth and development in the short term
- enable policy- and decision-makers to make informed decisions on these complex interdependent energy outcomes in the medium term
- ensure that strategic planning and subsequent growth and development are sustainable in the long term.

Key elements of the policy include:

- Implementing the Integrated Energy Modeling and Planning Approach, which is aimed at ensuring co-ordination and enhanced planning integration in dealing with future energy policy in support of achieving energy security.
- Improving Spoornet's operational efficiencies regarding its service to the liquid-fuels sector, by focusing on routes that allow for block trains/loads and the allocation of additional capacity to the Durban-Gauteng Corridor.
- Improving operational efficiencies at ports, especially during periods of increased demand for imported crude oil or refined products in South Africa, which includes ensuring that back-of-port facilities are not used as part of refining operations.
- Promoting local refining as far as possible, with a particular preference for production from local resources, including those from South Africa's neighbouring states.
- Developing Transnet Pipelines' new Multi-Products Pipeline, which is necessary to alleviate the identified capacity constraints in the petroleum supply chain by 2010.
- Promoting energy efficiency and other demand-side initiatives in all energy-demand sectors of the economy. This should be complemented by measures aimed at effectively managing interactions with the natural environment.

In January 2008, following the energy situation in the country, government and Eskom announced the Electricity Emergency Programme which entails:

- the Power Conservation Programme
- proposed power-rationing programme.

Other intervention measures that seek to influence consumer behaviour in the medium to long term are discussed below.

Efficient lighting roll-out programme

It has been established that of the 10 million plus electrified households in South Africa, there is an estimate of eight incandescent lights per household. It is projected that 800 megawatt (MW) could be saved by replacing incandescent lamps with compact fluorescent lights (CFLs).

The final target is to reduce the demand by 750 MW by 2010. The programme also accommodates a free CFL exchange for low-income households until 2015.

To ensure that this roll-out is sustained, the Department of Minerals and Energy intends to issue a restriction on the manufacturing of incandescent light bulbs. There will be certain exclusions granted for lamps for ovens, microwaves and for sensitive buildings and special cases.

Solar water-heating programme

The Department of Minerals and Energy and the CEF have embarked on a solar water-heating project, which promotes the use of solar geysers. This project implemented 500 solar water heaters and has reduced energy consumption in residential sector water heating, which contributes about 40% of household electricity consumption.

There is a subsidy of 20% to 30% depending on the cost of the unit. The potential savings of this programme is 650 MW. The programme targets households, group houses (such as army bases and mine residences) and commercial and industrial applications.

Traffic lights and public lighting

All major traffic intersection lights will be converted to solar power with a battery back-up. Other public lighting will be replaced with energy-efficient lights. This will cost about R400 billion and will also be another opportunity for employment creation and skills development.

Hospitality industry

The Department of Trade and Industry will proclaim that the hospitality industry converts all water heating to solar power. The water-heating method can be in the form of solar pre-heaters, thereby ensuring that electricity is not used whenever there is enough solar radiation available to heat water.

National building standards

Local government has indicated that the municipal bylaws will entrench energy-efficient behaviour. This can be done by ensuring that the building standards to improve energy efficiency are legislated and implemented.

Smart metering for residential customers (load management)

Although smart metering can be initiated in the short term, the benefits will be reaped in the medium to long term. Smart metering requires the use of wireless technologies, which have to be retrofitted to existing conventional and pre-paid meters. In this manner, the utility (Eskom or the municipality electricity distributor) will be able to remotely manage customer load.

A quick cost-benefit analysis indicates that improved communication between the utility and the customer meter will result in big energy savings during the peak demand periods.

The potential reduction is estimated to be 3 265 MW, made up of:

- geysers: 2 161 MW
- laundry (2% contribution to peak): 246 MW
- pool pumps (1% contribution to peak): 122 MW
- other appliances (6% contribution to peak): 736 MW.

Fuel switching

This refers to a Department of Minerals and Energy-driven Liquified Petroleum Gas (LPG) pilot project roll-out, which aims to:

- convert and connect households to LPG
- promote LPG as an appropriate household energy for thermal purposes with a long-term view of converting consumers to natural gas as and when it becomes available throughout the country
- contribute towards the demand-side management (DSM) interventions of energy, especially with regard to electricity use during peak periods.
- use DSM funds to assist those sectors of communities, especially the low-income households to switch to LPG for cooking and space heating
- inform the department on the important policy issues and insights into the operation of the LPG industry, which will be used to inform policy.

Some challenges have to be overcome in respect of fuel switching to LPGs. Firstly, the affordability of LPG appliances for low-income households proves to be a barrier to the usage of LPG, hence the subsidisation undertaken by the department of such appliances. Secondly, sustainable supply of the product will have to be resolved in the long term. This would require investment in logistical infrastructure and import terminals associated with trading in LPG, as well as increased local production during seasons when large volumes of LPG are consumed.

The exorbitant and unregulated retail price of LPG proves to be a further barrier to the massive uptake and usage of LPG by households. To this effect, through the Department of Minerals and Energy's pilot project lessons, draft LPG price regulations have been formulated and a stakeholder workshop was held. The department expected to have these regulations promulgated and effected by March 2009.

Other medium-term interventions

Medium-term interventions that are likely to influence behaviour in the long term are the following:

- implementing the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), as amended, especially on the issues pertaining to energy efficiency
- adjusting the tariff regime to reflect the actual cost of providing electricity
- regulating the maintenance regime of the electricity infrastructure
- addressing technical and non-technical losses in generation, transmission and distribution of electricity
- the availability of primary energy (especially coal) for power generation.

The Department of Minerals and Energy has embarked on a number of renewable energy projects geared at increasing power generation in the country. Most of these projects have been supported by the department either through policy pronouncements or through financial support.

According to National Treasury, Eskom has 26 power stations in the country with the capacity to generate 37 761 megawatt (MW) of electricity. Due to maintenance and technical problems, only 35 436 MW are normally available, with peak hours taking a dedicated 2 325 MW daily.

The power utility's short-term capacity expansion includes the construction of a further two gas-fired power stations in Mossel Bay and Atlantis in the Western Cape, which will add an additional 1 042 MW to the national grid.

The Renewable Energy Subsidy Office has started disbursing subsidies for renewable energy projects and in 2008, the department provided R4 million for the development of these projects.

The department's projects cover hydropower, biogas to electricity, wind-power (Darling Wind Farm) and a green-power pilot project, which includes biomass electricity co-generation. The capacity of these projects is about 30 MW.

Energy and the economy

Energy comprises about 15% of South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP), and creates jobs for about 250 000 people. Eskom's electricity sales totalled 223 621 gigawatt/hour (GWh) by March 2008. Sales volumes of 2,86% were achieved compared with the target of 2,5%.

The peak demand on the integrated system totalled 36 513 MW in July 2007.

This energy intensity is above average, with only 10 other countries having higher commercial primary energy intensities. It is largely a result of the economy's structure with dominating large-scale, energy-intensive primary mineral beneficiation and mining industries.

Coal, as the major indigenous energy resource, is relied on for the generation of most of the country's electricity and a significant proportion of its liquid fuels. Diversification of the primary energy mix, which comprises about 88% coal, is especially challenging.

South Africa has an abundance of low-cost coal, which means that reliable and inexpensive supplies are at hand.

On the face of it, this facilitates Eskom's mandate of providing South Africa with affordable and reliable electricity.

Yet Eskom also has a duty to manage environmental impacts and has a responsibility to combat climate change.

Energy efficiency

The Energy-Efficiency Strategy, which was approved in March 2005, sets a national target for improving energy efficiency by 12% by 2015.

In June 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy launched the Intensive Multimedia Energy-Efficiency Campaign in partnership with the Department of Public Enterprises, Eskom and other state organs. The campaign targets ordinary households, commercial and industrial consumers to influence prudent consumer behavioural patterns without negatively affecting the economy.

South African thermal-processing specialist Prestige Thermal is leading the way in the global waste-to-energy conversion industry, having opened the world's largest conversion plant in July 2008.

The company has been at the forefront of conversion-technology research for over six years. Its work has led to the development of specialised autoclaving technology through which waste is reduced to cellulous fibre and pyrolysis, a process whereby solid waste material is converted into clean gas. Employing these new technologies, Prestige Thermal's R28-million plant in Wadeville, Gauteng, has the capacity to produce three megawatt of electrical energy from three tons of municipal solid waste.

This intervention should yield enormous benefits in the form of lower energy demand, energy security being promoted, and a contribution to environmental conservation and savings for individual households.

All state-owned enterprises (SOEs) have been requested to make energy efficiency a part of their shareholders' compacts. In addition, large companies have joined forces with the Department of Minerals and Energy and Eskom, by signing an energy-efficiency accord, thus committing themselves to targets in the department's strategy.

By mid-2008, the Department of Minerals and Energy was making progress in implementing the national Energy-Efficiency Accord. However, the biggest savings are expected to take place in 2009/10.

In December 2008, Deputy President Baleka Mbete launched a summer energy-efficiency campaign. In 2008, government addressed energy-saving measures through a range of initiatives. By retrofitting over 4 000 national government buildings alone, a saving of R56 million in energy costs was achieved.

The CEF is expected to ensure that South Africa's energy is fully developed and used efficiently for the benefit of all South Africans. The CEF established two new energy bodies to deal with the country's energy challenges. These are the National Energy-Efficiency Agency (NEEA) and the South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri).

The NEEA is a division of the CEF and assists with promotional activities regarding the national energy-efficiency drive.

The NEEA's initial focus is on prioritising and recommending energy efficiency and DSM projects. It develops strategies to address the growing demand for all kinds of energy in South Africa. It also creates energy-efficiency and DSM awareness campaigns to assist the public when purchasing energy-consuming equipment and appliances. The NEEA oversees the integration and co-ordination of training in existing energy-efficiency projects, and assists with skills transfer, capacity-building and the creation of additional jobs in the field of energy conservation.

In line with the national Energy-Efficiency Strategy, the NEEA is subject to review every three years. Initially, it will operate under the CEF corporate umbrella, but is expected to develop its own unique identity as time progresses.

Saneri, a subsidiary of the CEF, facilitates skills development and undertakes research and technology development that will ensure that South Africa's energy resources are used and optimised.

It is designed to generate new ideas to develop practical guidelines for taking advantage of the natural resources of clean and renewable energy.

Eskom launched a DSM programme, which is intended to reduce demand by about 3 000 MW by 2012 and a further 5 000 MW by 2025. The programme's objective is to alleviate imminent supply constraints and obviate the need for more costly supply options. Eskom will pursue energy-saving measures nationally, following the success of a campaign that saved about 500 MW a day in 2006 in the Western Cape during power shortages in winter.

Designated National Authority (DNA)

The Department of Minerals and Energy established the DNA to review clean development mechanism (CDM) projects. The purpose of this initiative is to ensure that the CDM investment taking place in South Africa is in line with sustainable development objectives addressing economic, environment and social development with the emphasis on investments, job creation, poverty alleviation, technology and skills transfer.

During 2007/08, the department approved 80 CDM projects. These projects have the potential of contributing to government's sustainable-development objectives in the form of poverty alleviation and job creation, access to clean energy by contributing to renewable energy and energy-efficient targets, technology transfer and economic development. These projects will assist South Africa reduce to greenhouse gas (GHG) emmissions such as carbon dioxide, which is emitted largely by the energy sector.

The project types reviewed are in the energy sector, namely fuel switching, cogeneration, renewable energy generation and energy efficiency. Collectively, these projects' lifespan will reduce about 20 Mt of carbon dioxide equivalent per year, bring foreign revenue of about R207 million (at 10 euros per ton) and contribute about 34 318 MW by way of electricity generation and energy savings.

Projects are located in various provinces such as KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and Western Cape. The majority of these projects are implemented at local government level, notably within the metropolitan municipalities. The potential revenue that will be generated through the sale of certified emission reductions will bring additional revenue streams to municipalities to improve their service delivery.

A number of big industries such as Sasol, Eskom, Mittal Steel, Mondi, Sappi and South African Breweries have also taken up CDM investments with the aim of contributing to sustainable development objectives and emission reduction.

Energy statistics

Detailed, complete, timely and reliable statistics are essential to monitor the energy situation in South Africa. In addition, energy statistics on supply, trade, stocks, transformation and demand are the basis for any sound policy decisions.

The Department of Minerals and Energy, in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is responsible for providing energy data and statistics.

It has initiated a programme to strengthen the expertise and experience of the department's staff to be able to collect, verify, analyse and publish energy statistics. In addition, it intends to reduce the backlog in providing energy balances to one year. Energy statistics are available from publications such as the *Energy Digest* and *Energy Price Report*, as well as in electronic format and on the department's website.

The department, through the Energy Bill, intends to make the provision of energy data mandatory.

Integrated energy planning (IEP)

IEP involves estimating how much energy all consumers (such as industry or households) will need in future to deliver certain services, and identifying a mix of appropriate sources and forms of energy to meet these needs in the most efficient and socially beneficial manner.

In terms of the *Energy White Paper* (1988), the department will ensure that service-providers and energy suppliers adopt an integrated resource-planning approach for large investment decisions, in terms of which comprehensive evaluations of the economic, social and environmental implications of all feasible supply- and demand-side investments will have to be undertaken.

The Department of Minerals and Energy published IEP1 in 2003, and has commissioned the development of the National Integrated Energy Modelling System. The system is expected to be in place in 2009, and will allow for data capturing and the development of a long-term energy plan.

Integrated Energy Centre (IEC) Programme

The department, in partnership with municipalities, oil companies and other stakeholders, is establishing IECs countrywide. The main objective is to bring affordable and sustainable energy services and information closer to poor communities.

Underlying this is a strong social-responsibility drive aimed at poverty alleviation, job creation and capacity-building.

By mid-2008, there were five operational IECs, namely: Kgalagadi IEC in Kuruman, Northern Cape; Caba Mdeni IEC in Matatiele, Eastern Cape; Moshaweng IEC in Laxey, Northern Cape; Eshane IEC in Greytown, KwaZulu-Natal; and Mutale IEC, Limpopo. Other IECs are at various stages of development. The department has approved a sustainability strategy and roll-out plan to establish more IECs until 2015, targeting the nodal areas first, followed by peri-urban and urban areas.

Energy demand by the economic subsector

Households

Energy consumed by households represents some 17% of the country's net use. Most household energy is obtained from fuel wood (50% of net household energy), primarily in rural areas, with the remainder obtained from coal (18%), illuminating paraffin (7%) and a small amount from LPG.

Currently, South Africa produces over 10 000 t of this commodity a year. The total sales of the product generate turnover of close to R2 billion.

LPG consumption has been growing at an average of 4% over the past few years. South African LPG consumers include commercial, industrial and households.

LPG can also be used by low-income households in both rural and urban areas in South Africa.

The estimated number of households with access to electricity increased from 4,4 million in 1994 to 8,8 million in 2007. The rate of new electrical connections is slowing down as it now has to be preceded by the establishment of bulk infrastructure in areas that were not previously served.

Close to half of all customers who receive electricity services from municipalities receive free basic electricity, with a large percentage of users in Gauteng and Free State receiving free basic electricity. Better long-term planning in terms of generation, distribution and maintenance is critical for the achievement of the goal of universal access to electricity by 2014.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

Coal meets about 88% of South Africa's primary energy needs. Eskom announced its intention to begin diversifying its primary energy mix (using less coal) five years ago. It is building open-cycle gas turbines at Atlantis and Mossel Bay, of which 1 024 MW was commissioned in 2007 in record time. In addition, Eskom plans to build a 100-MW wind facility in the near future, pending licensing approvals. Feasibility studies continue regarding other renewable-energy and gas-plant initiatives.

Many coal deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, some 28% of South Africa's production is exported internationally, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporter in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries ranging from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers. Operating collieries decreased to 60 during 2006. Of these, a relatively small number of large-scale producers supply coal primarily to electricity and synthetic fuel producers. About 46,5% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 53,5% is produced by opencast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies, namely Anglo Coal, BHP Billiton, Sasol Mining, Exxaro Coal, Kumba

Coal and Xstrata Coal accounting for 90% of the saleable coal production. The eight largest mines account for 61% of the output.

South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced annually. The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries. About 109 Mt is used for electricity generation; 44 Mt for petrochemical industries such as Sasol; 10,4 Mt for general industrial sector use; and 5,7 Mt for the metallurgical industry. Coal merchants buy 8,4 Mt to sell locally or abroad.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first as a steam-coal user and seventh as an electricity generator in the world. Sasol is the largest coal-to-liquids producer.

Total discards on the surface could reach more than two billion ton by 2020, should none of this material be used. As a result, the Department of Minerals and Energy is investigating ways to promote and encourage the economic use of discards.

Environmental concerns pose the main challenge to coal as an energy source. Not only does the burning of coal cause air pollution, but the extraction of coal also affects the environment negatively. The department and the coal-mining industry are fostering the introduction of clean coal technologies in South Africa.

Eskom has successfully commissioned an underground coal-gasification pilot plant next to Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The underground coal-gasification process uses a matrix of wells drilled into the coal bed.

Air is injected and the coal is ignited underground, thus producing a synthetic gas, which is harvested and used as fuel for either boilers or turbines. The technology promises a commercially competitive combustible gas and has synergies with conventional mining, that would enable mines to exploit coal reserves that could not normally be mined. This application is a first for Africa and the frontrunner in terms of Eskom's research into clean coal technologies.

During the first year of operation, it produced more than 13 million cubic metres of gas, or enough to supply the heating and cooking requirements of 330 medium-sized houses. In parallel with the research and development (R&D) phases, a motivation is being compiled for a new 2400-MW commercial power station which will be proposed to Eskom and stakeholders. An EIA has also been commissioned for this concept.

Nuclear

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), and the National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999). The Department of Minerals and Energy administrates these Acts.

The Department of Health administrates the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to groups III and IV hazardous substances.

Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in June 2008. This approval follows the consideration of public comments. The objective of the policy is to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying South Africa's primary energy sources to ensure energy security. The policy will also ensure the reduction of the over-reliance on coal, which contributes to South Africa being among the highest emitters of GHGs. In 2008, the Department of Minerals and Energy was finalising an implementation plan in consultation with key stakeholders.

Eskom is investigating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This would entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The following main organisations are directly involved in the nuclear sector:

- The Department of Minerals and Energy plays a leading governance role regarding nuclear technology, non-proliferation and safety. The Minister of Minerals and Energy is the executive authority responsible for overseeing the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa) and the NNR.
- Necsa undertakes and promotes R&D in the fields of nuclear energy, radiation sciences and technology, medical-isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities management, waste management and decommissioning. Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries.
- The NNR oversees safety regulation of nuclear installations and activities involving radioactive material at Necsa's Pelindaba site, Vaalputs Radioactive Waste Disposal Facility, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, certain mines and other small users.
- The Department of Health (Directorate: Radiation Control) issues licences for Group III

hazardous substances (electronic-product generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group IV hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).

- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation. It is owned by Eskom, which reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises.
- iThemba Laboratories is responsible for medical isotopes and medical applications. This public entity falls under the Department of Science and Technology.
- Nufcor is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export. It is privately owned by AngloGold.

The department continues to participate in the Women in Nuclear South Africa (Winsa) Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and Winsa to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Necsa will receive R10 million a year for the next three years to establish the National Nuclear Manufacturing Centre. It will incorporate Necsa's existing facilities at the Pelindaba complex outside Pretoria, including Fabritek (the manufacturing component of the former Atomic Energy Corporation), an existing design centre, and Necsa's current fuel-manufacturing activities at the Safari-1 research reactor.

This centre intends to do its own manufacturing but also assists other South African companies to meet the required standards and be able to manufacture for nuclear.

The NNR has to strengthen its capacity to evaluate different technologies, and the State will also have to improve its system for ensuring compliance with its non-proliferation obligations.

The expanded nuclear programme is expected to result in the development of a nuclear energy industrial complex, which will lead to job creation in the nuclear sector. This envisaged energy complex will centre on uranium beneficiation and power-plant manufacturing infrastructure.

Liquid fuels

The liquid fuels industry was licensed for the first time in 2005. The objectives of the licensing framework as detailed in the Petroleum Products Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 58 of 2003), include:

- promoting an efficient manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing petroleum industry
- facilitating an environment conducive to efficient and commercially justifiable investment
- promoting the advancement of HDSAs
- creating employment opportunities and small businesses in the petroleum sector.

Aggregate sales of major petroleum products showed an increase of 4% in the first quarter of 2008 as compared to the first quarter of 2007. The most significant increases were in diesel, (9,5%) and industrial heating fuels (35,6%). Volume growth of other products were between -3,2% and 7,6% compared to the first quarter of 2007.

Petrol and paraffin sales declined by 0,9% and 3,2%, affected by price increases while jet fuel sales grew by 3,3%. LPG volumes were the same as in 2007 and bitumen volumes increased by 7,6%.

i

Energy Champions (ECs) were inaugurated in June 2008, to inform, educate and mobilise the entire societal spectrum towards the sustainable use of electricity. Specific short-term targets to be reached by the ECs were identified during a workshop in September 2008:

- energy efficiency in government buildings reported on 38 buildings to be retrofitted over six months and 56 in the 2009/10 financial year
- taking part in media briefings on progress made once a month for a period of a year
- working with government to enforce the campaign against electricity theft
- engaging in immediate high-visibility campaigns, providing energy-saving tips targeting, among other things, households, industries, commercial customers, agriculture and tourism
- accelerating an efficient traffic-signal and street-lighting programme
- working with the departments of education and health and Sports and Recreation South Africa to intensify the campaign
- embarking on a comprehensive programme for skills development
- mobilising children and elders
- enhancing environmental awareness with regard to efficient use of technology before, during and after the 2010 Soccer World Cup.

In the first quarter, the percentage split of petrol sales between unleaded petrol (ULP) and lead-replacement petrol (LRP) was 62,4% for ULP and 37,6% for LRP. This indicates a growing increase in the penetration of ULP.

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to the price of petrol in United States (US) dollars in certain international petrol markets. This means that the domestic price is influenced by supply and demand for petroleum products in international markets, combined with the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

The Petroleum, Gas and Oil Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA) is responsible for exploring and exploiting oil and natural gas, as well as producing and marketing synthetic fuels produced from offshore gas at the world's largest commercial gas-to-liquids plant in Mossel Bay.

The Department of Minerals and Energy, together with the oil industry, established the Fuel Strategic Supply Task Team. It identified current and future supply constraints. Possible strategies and options to deal with these issues include the need for investment by SOEs in pipelines, storage and handling facilities. The findings pointed to inefficiencies emanating from industry practices, especially in port and railway operations. Changes in the industry's operations are expected to result in rail-infrastructure capacity doubling and port capacity increasing.

South Africa's national oil company, PetroSA, is well placed to provide a sustainable solution to the fuel-supply challenges. The Government endorses PetroSA's plan to build a world-class crude refinery at Coega. This refinery will have a capacity of 400 000 barrels per day, producing high-quality gasoline and diesel, which will meet the proposed clean fuels specification legislation.

The deep-water port of Coega is the location for the new refinery to alleviate South Africa's reliance on Durban, which currently handles 75% of the country's crude imports. The refinery project will create 8 000 direct and 39 000 indirect employment opportunities. Once commissioned, it will provide commercial growth to a relatively underdeveloped area.

Work-in-process includes:

- upgrading discharge and storage facilities at Cape Town
- additional storage cover at Mossel Bay
- product-handling terminals at Coega
- a two-phase, R5-billion, eight-well drilling programme has commenced to maintain fuel production beyond 2010.

The Government is confident that these initiatives will attract foreign investment, which will enable South Africa to expand its liquid fuels presence, also in Africa and the world.

In collaboration with the oil industry and Transnet, adequate port, pipeline and rail capacities to guarantee uninterruptable supply of liquid fuels into the country will be ensured.

Sasol

Sasol Limited is an innovative and competitive global energy company.

It is engaged in the commercial production and marketing of chemicals and liquid fuels, with a growing interest in oil and gas exploration.

Sasol was established in 1950 by the South African Government to manufacture fuels and chemicals from indigenous raw material. The company has developed world-leading technology for the commercial production of synthetic fuels and chemicals from low-grade coal, as well as the conversion of natural gas to environment-friendly fuels and chemicals. It is committed to sustainable development and is a signatory to Responsible Care, a worldwide initiative by the chemical industry that strives to improve performance in safety, health and environment.

About 30 000 workers drive the company forward in exploration, mining, science, technology R&D and business development. Sasol is listed on the Johannesburg Securities Exchange and the New York Stock Exchange.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF is involved in the search for appropriate energy solutions to meet the future energy needs of South Africa, the SADC and the sub-Saharan African region. This includes oil, gas, electrical power, solar energy, low-smoke fuels, biomass, wind and renewable energy sources. The CEF also manages the operation and development of the South African Government's oil and gas assets and operations.

The CEF, through its integrated oil-company subsidiary, PetroSA, is involved in exploration for oil and gas onshore and offshore in South Africa and the rest of Africa. It is also involved in producing environmentally friendly petroleum fuels and petrochemical products from gas and condensate at its synfuels refinery outside Mossel Bay, and the management of oil-storage facilities. The Strategic Fuel Fund manages South Africa's strategic crude oil reserves.

The CEF has established the Energy Development Corporation (EDC) to pursue commercially viable investments in renewable energy. The EDC's focus is on niche areas, and commercial and development projects that catalyse the renewable energy sector and social projects that benefit previously disadvantaged communities.

CEF subsidiary Oil Pollution Control SA provides oil-prevention control and clean-up services, mainly in South African ports and coastal areas.

CEF subsidiary Petroleum Agency South Africa (Pasa) manages the promotion and licensing of gas exploration, development and production in South Africa and the coastal areas offshore as part of creating a viable upstream oil industry in South Africa.

CEF subsidiary iGas is the official agent of the South African Government for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry, comprising liquified natural gas and LPG in South Africa.

Oil and gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves and about 95% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola).

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- coal to liquid fuels and gas to liquid fuels (Sasol)
- natural gas to liquid fuels (PetroSA).

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls. The Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets. Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while providing a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

The refiners and wholesale marketers move products from the refineries by coastal barge, rail, truck and pipeline to roughly 200 depots. From these, about 4 600 service stations and 100 000 direct consumers (mostly farmers) are served.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

Limited natural gas reserves exist around the South African coast. PetroSA exploits the reserves off the coast of Mossel Bay, where the Mossgas plant converts the gas into liquid fuels.

Sasol produces gas from coal and is researching prospects to import gas from Namibia. Even though gas consumption has increased in recent years, the importance of gas in the South African energy economy is still low compared with other countries. By August 2008, the Department of Minerals and Energy was increasing the sources of introducing natural gas into the South African economy for thermal applications of energy. The department started with LPG, followed by liquefied natural gas (LNG) and hopefully ending up with natural gas from South Africa's own or neighbouring shores.

High LPG retail prices have prompted the department to investigate an appropriate and cost-effective way to deliver LPG to the people. The department has embarked on pilot programmes in partnership with municipalities.

The department launched two pilot projects in Tshwane and Mpumalanga. By June 2008, more than 18 252 households had been connected through the Atteridgeville project. The Thembisile (Mpumalanga) pilot project had connected over 8 616 households.

This demonstrates that the LPG uptake is on the increase and that households are keen to use it. The department has developed draft regulations in respect of the maximum retail price of LPG supplied to residential customers. The objective of these regulations is to regulate the price of LPG to make it more affordable for households. These were expected to be promulgated during 2008.

The department will also start a new pilot project in Mamelodi, outside Pretoria, which will be based on natural piped gas taken from the Sasol pipeline.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage. When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, owing to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations. Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho and Swaziland.

Biofuels

The Biofuel Industrial Strategy for South Africa, approved by Cabinet in December 2007, has a short-term focus (five-year pilot) to achieve a 2% penetration level of biofuels, or 400 million litres a year.

Pasa promotes the exploration for natural oil and gas resources.

The Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001), aims to:

- promote the orderly development of the piped-gas industry
- establish a national regulatory framework
- establish the National Gas Regulator as the custodian and enforcer of the national regulatory framework.

Piped-gas regulations were promulgated in 2007. The regulations address, among other things, issues such as distribution criteria, price regulation principles and procedures, a review of licence conditions, third-party access to transmission pipelines, third-party access to storage facilities and the determination of gas specifications.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia.

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply rose from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005). This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in Kudu Gas Field.

Electricity

Eskom generates about 95% of electricity in South Africa and about 45% in Africa. About 88% of South Africa's electricity is generated in coal-fired power stations. Koeberg, a large nuclear station near Cape Town, provides about 6% of capacity. A further 2,3% is provided by hydroelectric and pumped storage schemes.

In South Africa there are few, if any, new hydro sites that could be developed to deliver significant amounts of power, due to water scarcity. Eskom currently dominates electricity generation. This national SOE also owns and operates the national electricity grid.

In global terms, the utility is among the top 10 in generating capacity, among the top 11 in terms of sales, and has one of the world's biggest dry-cooled power stations, namely Matimba Power Station.

Electricity, as a key strategic economic sector, underpins government's growth and development objectives. The Department of Minerals and Energy has several policies to ensure an adequate supply of electricity-generation capacity and that the distribution infrastructure is maintained.

Ever-increasing demand for electricity in an expanding economy has brought the era of excess capacity to an end. Eskom's net generating reserve margin is about 8% compared to the internationally accepted range of between 15% and 18%. Between October 2007 and February 2008, the country suffered major supply interruptions as load shedding had to be implemented to manage the energy shortage.

Eskom's power stations are ageing. In many cases, refurbishment is necessary to extend their economically useful life. Continued high-load factors at the stations (required to meet demand) put severe stress on all parts of the plant as they are frequently required to operate outside initial design parameters. These loads require a high level of planned maintenance.

Additional power stations and major power lines are being built at a massive scale to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa. The approved capacity expansion budget is R343 billion up to 2013 and is expected to grow to more than a trillion rand by 2026. Ultimately, Eskom will double its capacity to 80 000 MW by 2026.

The budget, approved by the Eskom Board and Government, is designed to meet the challenges of electricity reliability and availability and is aligned

In accordance with the South African Power Project, South Africa plans to double its electricity capacity over the next 20 years, and diversify its primary energy source from fossil fuels, to nuclear and renewable energy sources.

The estimated cost of this over the next two decades is about R1 trillion. This power project provides a comprehensive framework that links new investments in plants, skills, technology transfers, as well as research and development projects.

with government's target of a 6% GDP growth between 2010 and 2014. Eskom will deliver an additional 14 759 MW in generating capacity by 2017.

The Eskom Build Programme is on track to deliver the projects as planned. Since the programme started in 2005, an additional 2 248 MW has been commissioned.

The formal opening of both Ankerlig and Gourikwa power stations took place in October 2007 at Ankerlig. In May 2007, Nersa granted Eskom the licence to build the first new coal-fired power station in more than 20 years – Medupi Power Station in Lephalale, Limpopo. An official sod turning took place on 14 August 2007. In November 2007, Hitachi Power Africa and Alstom S&E were awarded the R20-billion boiler and the R13-billion turbine contracts respectively for the power station. More than 50% of the combined value of the contracts will be procured locally.

On 29 February 2008, Eskom awarded contracts worth about R31,5 billion for its "Bravo Project", a coal-fired power station to be built at Emalahleni in Mpumalanga by 2017. Hitachi Power Africa was awarded the boiler contract worth R18,5 billion and Alstom S&E the turbine contract valued at R13 billion. Site preparation was expected to start in June 2008.

The return to service of the three moth-balled power stations – Camden, Komati and Grootvlei – is progressing well. The original planned target date of end October 2011 for commercial operation of all 23 units (3 677 MW installed capacity) will be achieved.

Work is also progressing well on Ingula, a pumped storage scheme near Ladysmith, KwaZulu-Natal, with a sent-out capacity of 1 332 MW. The station is planned to be fully operational by the middle of 2013.

The Apollo substation refurbishment was completed by June 2008 and increased the availability and maintainability of the Cahora Bassa/Apollo HVDC interconnection.

The transmission power-delivery programme is being severely impacted on by outstanding approvals, such as land, servitudes, environmental authorisations, etc.

A team of more than 2 500 engineering, project management and commercial resources, supplemented by 19 local and foreign engineering and project-management companies that are contracted as partners over the next 10 years, is actively involved in the execution of the Build Programme.

While Eskom does not have exclusive generation rights, it has a practical monopoly on bulk electricity. It also operates the High-Voltage Transmission System and supplies electricity directly to large consumers such as mines, mineral beneficiators and other large industries. In addition, it supplies directly to commercial farmers and, through the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP), to a large number of residential consumers. It sells in bulk to municipalities, which distribute to consumers within their boundaries.

The department is procuring about 1 000 MW of new-generation capacity from the private sector. This is in line with government's objectives to introduce private-sector participation and to promote BEE in the energy sector. This will be achieved through a competitive tender process for IPPs to provide the required capacity by the first quarter of 2009.

One open-cycle gas turbine plant (of approximately 300 MW) is planned for the Eastern Cape and another (of about 750 MW) for KwaZulu-Natal, as part of a R150-billion expansion programme over the next five years. Eskom is playing an active role as the purchaser of this energy and provider of transmission infrastructure. The process of identifying a successful bidder was expected to be finalised in 2008.

In 2007, Nersa released an audit report conducted in 11 electricity-distribution utilities in the country. The report showed that the distribution industry's operations were suboptimal, with an infrastructure maintenance backlog of about R7 billion. This scenario calls for the acceleration of the restructuring of the EDI.

In October 2006, Cabinet decided to restructure the EDI into six wall-to-wall regional electricity distributors (Reds) as public entities managed through the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), and regulated by Nersa.

By June 2008, the department was in the process of finalising legislation governing the establishment of Reds.

By June 2008, EDI Holdings and the department had visited all nine provinces and 121 of the 187 municipalities that distribute electricity had signed co-operative agreements with EDI Holdings.

Four metros, Eskom and 13 other municipalities had completed the process of ring-fencing their electricity distribution businesses.

In September 2007, Cabinet resolved that Eskom be designated as the single buyer of power from IPPs in South Africa.

Eskom is offering home owners rebates of 15% to 20% on the cost of installing solar water-heating systems through its Solar Rebate Programme, enabling home owners to save from about R1 860 to R4 900 on the cost of a solar water-heating system.

Typically, installed systems can range between R14 000 and R33 000, depending on the make and size of the geyser, type of roof, as well as overall complexity of installation.

The programme applies only to systems that have been tested by the South African Bureau of Standards.

The requirements for receiving the rebate include that the system incorporates a functioning timer, and is installed by an Eskom-approved service-provider, while a valid claim for the rebate must be submitted, using forms provided by the installer.

Eskom will be responsible for ensuring that adequate generation capacity is made available and that 30% of the new power-generation capacity is derived from IPPs.

This policy will ensure that the responsibility and accountability for the construction of power-generation capacity is coordinated, and will provide more certainty to private providers.

The introduction of the private sector into the power-generation sector will also allow production-cost benchmarking with the State utility, thus ensuring that electricity is produced at the lowest possible cost. Eskom is running the pilot National Cogeneration Programme to source cogeneration capacity from the market. Cogeneration involves the use of unused waste heat, power or resources by private companies to generate electricity.

In October 2007, organisations were invited to submit tenders to take part in cogeneration with Eskom. The potential bidders in the programme were given two opportunities to comment on the power purchase agreement (PPA) that would be offered under this programme. A final PPA was released to bidders on 20 March 2008.

The closing date for bid submissions for the pilot programme was 30 May 2008, and contracts were expected to be awarded before the end of September 2008. Eskom received a good response from interested parties and it is hoped that PPAs for more than 900 MW of capacity can be signed with cogenerators under this programme.

Over the next 20 years, Eskom will build all nuclear power plants in South Africa while the IPPs will build more than 50% of all non-nuclear power plants. The Department of Minerals and Energy will develop the Integrated Resource Plan that will define the magnitude of power-generating capacity needed to meet the country's electricity demands. Nersa will regulate the single-buyer function and specifically approve all commercial agreements between the single buyer and the private producers. Institutional and regulatory mechanisms will be put in place as per the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006).

Integrated National Electrification Programme

The INEP remains the flagship of the Department of Minerals and Energy. Eskom is responsible for implementing the programme in its licensed areas of supply on the department's behalf.

In 2008, out of R1,4 billion allocated for household electrification, a further R380 million was set aside for the building of 10 substations with primary emphasis on the provinces with the least development, namely Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

In 2008, the department planned to electrify 150 000 households and 2 500 schools and improved the quality of electricity supply in preparation for 2010 and beyond. The department has eradicated the backlog of electrification of clinics and aims to achieve universal access to schools by the end of the 2009/10 financial year.

Out of 2008's electrification expenditure of R1,4 billion, R894 million was used for empowerment initiatives. Of this amount, 52% was spent on BEE companies. In 2007, a total of 5 594 jobs (479 women, 146 disabled and 3 661 youth) were created through the electrification programme. As far as learnerships are concerned, Eskom exceeded its target and reached 1 599.

Eskom continues to exceed its electrification targets. The target for 2007 was 160 321 connections but the actual number connected was 168 538.

Since the inception of the electrification programme in 1991, 3 638 188 (2007: 3 469 650) homes have been electrified. The Electricity Basic Services Support Tariff Policy aims to bring relief, through government intervention, to low-income households and to ensure optimal socio-economic benefits from the INEP. Qualifying customers are eligible for 50 kilowatt-hours (KWh) of free electricity per month. Eskom and municipalities are the service-providers for free basic electricity in their respective areas of supply.

Between April 2007 and March 2008, access to free basic electricity increased from 60% to 73%.

By providing this basic service, government hopes to offer social relief to those who typically earn less than the national minimum-wage levels.

Although these users have access to a basic quantity of 50 KWh per household per month in terms of the policy, they pay the normal tariff for any consumption exceeding 50 KWh per month.

The programme is funded by the Department of Provincial and Local Government through the equitable share allocation.

Each household connected to the Solar Home System receives up to R48 worth of electricity a month.

Rural solar-energy users are liable for any amount above the monthly subsidy.

To make paraffin more affordable, the Department of Minerals and Energy removed the value-added tax levy on it.

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

Nersa, which was launched in November 2005, is the regulatory authority established in terms of the National Energy Regulator (NER) Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004), with the mandate to undertake the functions of the gas regulator as set out in the Gas Act, 2001; the Petroleum Pipelines Regulatory Authority, as set out in the Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003); and the NER as set out in the Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended.

While Nersa has regulated the electricity industry for the past 10 years, the piped-gas and petroleum-pipeline industries in South Africa are now regulated for the first time. Three industries fund Nersa through levies.

The funds consist of money appropriated by Parliament, levies imposed by, or under, separate legislation, charges for dispute resolution, licence fees, and funds collected under Section 5B of the Electricity Act, 1987.

The Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill will ensure that Nersa plays an unambiguous role in its quest to achieve better regulation outcomes in the entire electricity value chain.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South African

Necsa was established as a public company in terms of the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), and is wholly owned by the State. The main functions of Necsa are to undertake and promote R&D in the field of nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology; to process source material, special nuclear material and restricted material; and to co-operate with persons in matters falling within these functions.

Apart from its main operations at Pelindaba, which include the Safari-1 research reactor, Necsa also operates the Vaalputs National Radioactive Waste Disposal Facility, which is licensed to receive low and intermediate radioactive waste. South Africa has technical expertise on nuclear technology at Necsa, including expertise on uranium conversion and enrichment remaining from South Africa's previous nuclear programme.

The Nuclear Energy Policy and Strategy for South Africa states that government, through Eskom, is taking the lead in respect of the extensive Pressurised Water Reactor to substantially diversify the generation base and reduce overall carbon emissions. The policy also highlights that in this extended programme, Necsa will play a vital role as the State's body to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy R&D and innovation in South Africa. To implement a sustainable nuclear programme and obtain all the potential economic benefits, South Africa, through Necsa, will endeavour to implement, or obtain interests in, the complete nuclear fuel cycle, including uranium conversion, enrichment and fuel fabrication. Necsa hosts the Pebble Bed Modular Reactor nuclear fuel development laboratories, helium tests facility and the future Fuel Production Plant.

Necsa, through its fully owned commercial subsidiaries Pelchem (Pty) Limited (Ltd) and NTP Radioisotopes (Pty) Ltd, sells fluorine and fluorine-based products as well as radioisotopes on the international market.

NTP Radioisotopes (Pty) Ltd is among the top three global producers and suppliers of radiation-based products and services that are routinely and reliably provided to customers throughout the world. Its principal product, Fission Mo-99, is used in products that allow for the estimated 30 million nuclear medicine imaging scans performed on patients throughout the world every year. NTP supplies more than 90% of the total South African nuclear medicine demand through its subsidiary companies AEC Amersham (Pty) Ltd and Cyclotope (Pty) Ltd. The latter pioneered the introduction to South Africa of the first commercially available positron emission tomography tracer. In addition, NTP supplies radioisotopes used for industrial applications to the entire South African market and exports these products to a number of countries through its distributors. NTP Logistics (Pty) Ltd specialises in the international and domestic transport of radioactive and other dangerous goods.

National and regional co-operation

Nersa, represented by its chief executive officer, was elected as chair of the African Forum for Utility Regulators (Afur) from 2006 to 2009.

The Afur focuses on issues related to the regulation of energy, telecommunications, transport, and water and sanitation industries, with particular emphasis on common issues. Afur is regarded as a key building block in the African Union's efforts and its socio-economic programme, the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), in the integration and rebirth of Africa.

Afur's vision and objectives are derived from Clause 110 of the Nepad Framework Document, which recognises the establishment of the Afur and regional regulatory associations.

Afur operates as a formal association of African regulators, with its own constitution stipulating its objectives, functions and other operational requirements.

Afur's objectives entail supporting the development of effective utility regulation in Africa by facilitating the harmonisation of regulatory policies, exchange of information and lessons of experience among regulators, and capacity-building in support of the socio-economic development of the continent.

Nersa is also a founding member of the Regional Electricity Regulators' Association and the South African Utility Regulators' Association, which were launched in September and October 2002 respectively.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP is the first formal power pool in Africa.

The objectives of the SAPP are, among other things, to:

- co-ordinate and co-operate in planning and operating electricity power systems to minimise costs, while maintaining reliability, autonomy and self-sufficiency
- increase interconnectivity between the SADC countries to increase the reliability of power supplies
- facilitate cross-border electricity trading
- fully recover operations costs and equitably share benefits, including reductions in generating capacity and fuel costs, and improved use of hydroelectric energy.

Member countries are Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia, Zimbabwe and the DRC.

The SAPP faces the following challenges:

- lack of maintenance of infrastructure
- lack of funds to finance new investments
- insufficient electricity generation
- high losses.

To lay down the rules governing electricity exchange between utilities, the SAPP Agreement between operating members was drafted.

Biomass

Biomass is estimated to comprise 8% of South Africa's primary energy supply. Renewable energy comprises biomass and natural processes that are replenished and can be used as an energy source. Biomass is used commercially in pulp and paper mills and sugar refineries by burning bulk from logs, black liquor and bagasse to produce process heat. The energy produced is used by those industries to meet their needs.

In future, some of this energy could be sold to the national grid (depending on electricity prices and environmental regulations). However, given the limited potential for agricultural expansion due to a lack of water and arable land, it is unlikely that this could make a major contribution.

In households, biomass is used for cooking and heating.

Renewable energy

Renewable energy sources, other than biomass, have not yet been exploited optimally in South Africa.

The Department of Minerals and Energy strengthened international relationships in this area through the support offered to partnerships established during the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD) in 2002. Such partnerships will overcome market barriers and promote widespread use of sustainable energy solutions. These include the Global Village Energy Partnership and the Renewable Energy and Energy-Efficiency Partnership.

Cabinet approved the *White Paper on Renewable Energy* in November 2003, which stipulates the following target: a 10 000-GWh renewable energy contribution to final energy consumption by 2013, to be produced mainly from biomass, wind, solar and small-scale hydro. The renewable energy is to be used for power generation and non-electric technologies such as solar water-heating and biofuels.

This is equivalent to replacing two 660-MW units of Eskom's combined coal-fired power stations, or replacing 1 100 ML of diesel (14%) with biodiesel. This is in addition to the estimated existing 8% to 9% renewable energy contribution mainly from fuel wood and waste.

A macroeconomic analysis of the targets in the White Paper concluded that:

- the target is economically viable with government financial support and "green" funding (such as CDM and "green" premium)
- achieving the target could add about 1 667 MW new renewable energy capacity with a net impact on GDP of as high as R1 071 million per year compared with coal-fired power stations, and additional government revenue of R299 million.

Just over 20 000 new jobs would be created and water savings of 16,5 million kilolitres would be achieved, translating into a R26,6-million saving.

The study also highlighted the 10 000-GWh low-cost renewable energy technologies and applications to be implemented first, based on the level of commercialisation of the technology and the natural-resource availability.

These technologies include:

- sugar-cane bagasse for cogeneration (59%)
- landfill gas extraction (6%)
- mini-hydroelectric schemes (10%)
- commercial and domestic solar water-heaters (23%)
- wind energy (1%)
- biomass pulp and paper (1%).

The White Paper addresses four key strategic areas, namely:

- financial instruments to promote the implementation of sustainable renewable energy through the establishment of appropriate financial instruments
- legal instruments to develop, implement, maintain and continuously improve an effective legislative system to promote the implementation of renewable energy
- technology development to promote, enhance and develop technologies for the implementation of sustainable renewable energy
- building capacity and education to develop mechanisms to raise awareness of the benefits and opportunities that renewable energy offers.

Technological feasibility studies will be conducted for possible implementation in the medium to longer term. These include:

- Grid-connected wind farms.
- Wind farm/pumped storage as a means of addressing peak loads on the national electricity grid.
- Small-scale hydropower.
- Landfill gas exploitation.
- Rural water supply and sanitation.
- Domestic and commercial solar water heating. Solar thermal-power generation is a collaborative programme with Eskom. It also involves the SolarPACES Programme of the International Energy Agency.

The Department of Minerals and Energy's capacity-building programme for renewable energy and energy efficiency, which was funded by the Danish International Development Agency (Danida), yielded significant value in capacity-building in the department, as well as various strategies and studies to support the enabling environment created by government.

The Department of Minerals and Energy and National Treasury approved the Renewable Energy Subsidy Scheme in September 2005. The scheme started off with once-off capital grants that are made available for renewable energy projects.

In October 2005, the Renewable Energy Finance and Subsidy Office's website – *www.dme.gov.za/dme/energy/refso.htm* – was established. It is useful for providing information and application forms to potential applicants.

The department is working with stakeholders such as the National Treasury and Nersa on a long-term sustainable financing mechanism for grid-based renewable energy applications.

Eskom participated in a pilot project of the Department of Minerals and Energy, which investigates green power trading.

Eskom contributed to the development of draft market rules and will act as the independent market operator for the duration of the project.

Eskom's Renewable Energy Strategy states a commitment to increase the share of renewable energy in Eskom's energy mix.

The aim is to include 1 600 MW of renewable energy in the mix by 2025.

Eskom has also partnered with the World Wildlife Fund South Africa to develop a renewable energy research fund for renewable energy projects outside Eskom.

Eskom has committed R3 million to the fund over three years.

Solar

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day.

The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m^2 for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m^2 for Europe.

This makes the local resource one of the highest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The country's solar-equipment industry is developing. Annual photovoltaic (PV) panel-assembly capacity totals 5 MW, and a number of companies in South Africa manufacture solar water heaters.

Solar power is increasingly being used for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

Solar water heating is used to a certain extent. Current capacity installed includes domestic (330 000 m^2) and swimming pools (327 000 m^2), commerce and industry (45 000 m^2) and agriculture (4 000 m^2).

Pebble Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR) (Pty) Limited was established in 1999 with the intention to develop and market small-scale, high-temperature reactors both locally and internationally. The PBMR project team is based in Centurion near Pretoria.

The PBMR is a high temperature reactor (HTR) with a closed-cycle gas turbine power conversion system. Although it is not the only HTR currently being developed in the world, the South African project is on schedule to be the first commercial scale HTR in the power-generation field.

The PBMR comprises a steel pressure vessel, which holds the enriched uranium dioxide fuel encapsulated in graphite spheres. The system is cooled with helium and heat is converted into electricity through a turbine.

From a small research and development company with about 100 employees at its inception in 1999, the PBMR has grown into one of the largest nuclear reactor design teams in the world. In addition, more than 1 000 people at universities, private companies and research institutes are involved with the project. The PBMR is preparing for a project at Koeberg near Cape Town, where Africa's only nuclear power station is based, and a fuel plant at Pelindaba near Pretoria, where the pebble fuel will be manufactured.

Three co-operatives with over 10 permanent employees each have been started in the Eastern Cape to maintain 8 000 solar home systems installed under the previous electrification programme.

Solar-passive building design

Research has shown that low-cost housing could be made "energy smart" by using elementary "solar-passive building design" practice. This could result in fuel savings of as much as 65%, which could significantly benefit households' energy costs. Energy-efficient homes may be constructed at the same direct cost (and lower life-cycle cost) as energy-wasteful houses. The challenge is to develop awareness and to ensure implementation of basic energy-efficiency principles. Government is considering the following building norms and standards: orientation for the purposes of passive solar design, lighting, and installation of solar water heaters, insulation, ventilation, heating and air conditioning.

Solar-thermal power generation

The minimum direct normal radiation (DNR) to justify a combined solar-thermal power plant is 1 800 kWh/m^2 per year. According to the Renewable Energy Resource Database, the area exceeding the minimum required DNR in South Africa covers about 194 000 km^2. A 100-MW solar-thermal plant requires roughly 3 km^2 (1 800 kWh/m^2 per year).

If 1% (1 940 km^2) of the identified area is available for solar-thermal power generation, then South Africa has an installed potential of 64,6 GW, which is about 36 217 GWh/year. Back-up and energy-storage constraints are limiting the wider economical utilisation of solar-electricity generation (solar thermal and PV).

Concentrating Solar Power (CSP) Project

If feasibility studies provide satisfactory results in assessing the new technology, Eskom will establish a 100-MW pilot CSP plant in the Northern Cape. An EIP was completed and positive environmental authorisation obtained from the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism in September 2007, while the project feasibility assessment was finalised in November 2007.

A prototype heliostat (large two-axis mirrors), one of the key components, has been installed at Eskom's R&D facility.

The Upington area in the Northern Cape was identified as a feasible location for the CSP plant. Upington further has one of the highest solar values with a direct normal insulation level of about 2 900 kWh/m^2 per year.

The CSP plant being considered has molten salt-type central-receiver technology, which is based on the concept of thousands of large heliostats tracking the sun and reflecting the beam radiation to a common focal point. This focal point (the receiver) is located well above the heliostat field to prevent interference between the reflected radiation and the other heliostats.

Wind

Eskom's Klipheuwel, just north of Cape Town, is the first large wind-turbine facility in sub-Saharan Africa. The pilot phase of the Klipheuwel research and demonstration project ran from August 2002 to the end of 2005. During that time, the Klipheuwel Pilot Wind Farm generated more than 12 GWh of electricity, thus reducing carbon dioxide emissions by 11 000 t. The three wind turbines operated at an average availability of 90%. The project's research phase has been completed and this wind farm will be operated commercially for its anticipated 20-year lifespan as calculated from 2006.

In 2007, Eskom decided to invest in a 100-MW wind facility in the Western Cape, which will consist of 50 turbines, each rated at 2 MW. Subject to the necessary approvals being obtained, the plant could be in operation by 2010.

The R75-million national demonstration project in Darling in the Western Cape is the first "green-energy" initiative in the country to produce electricity from wind power on a commercial basis.

The Darling Wind Farm has four wind turbines which can supply 5,2 MW. All the electricity produced will be sold to the City of Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine will produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

The project is referred to as the National Demonstration Project and will be used as an example for future public-private partnerships in the establishment of alternative electricity generation. The project was developed by the Darling Independent Power Producer, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the CEF. Danida is also funding part of the project.

Hydro

An assessment conducted by the Department of Minerals and Energy, the *Baseline Study on Hydropower in South Africa*, indicated that specific areas in the country show significant potential for developing all categories of hydropower in the short and medium term.

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for developing small, i.e. less than 10-MW hydropower plants.

The advantages and attractiveness of these plants are that they can either be stand-alone or can exist in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources.

Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water (such as water supply, irrigation and flood control), which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Eskom has started the construction of the Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme (1 332 MW) near Van Reenen, KwaZulu-Natal. It is expected that the first unit will be operational in 2012. Preliminary work for the design and construction of a second pumped storage scheme in Mpumalanga has commenced.

The SAPP allows for the free trading of electricity between SADC member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls).

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of the DRC, Angola, Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. The first project is Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources will constitute a significant infusion of renewable energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term. The Lesotho Highlands Water Project can contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term. Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Ocean energy

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not currently being harnessed is that no reliable technology exists that can generate electricity from this resource.

Various companies are testing systems internationally to develop technically viable solutions. Once technical reliability has been proven, cost-effectiveness in relation to other solutions will have to be established.

Eskom has continued with resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with Marine and Coastal Management, of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

Sasol, Eskom, Petrolium Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa, Anglo American and the South African National Energy Research Institute are sponsoring the development of the South African Carbon-Dioxide (CO^2) Storage Atlas. The total sponsorship amounts to R2 million. The purpose of the atlas is to identify potential sites for geological storage of CO^2 as a measure for lowering greenhouse emissions from industrial sources that mainly use coal. CO^2 will need to be captured from industrial gases and geologically stored by compressing it into liquid form. It is possible to track international developments in capture technology, but storage potential has to be determined locally. The onshore central basin of the Karoo Supergroup may offer storage oppportunities. Offshore sedimentary rocks along the coastline also hold some potential for storage.

The Council for Geoscience and the Petroleum Agency of South Africa will publish the initial assessment of storage potential in a user-friendly atlas by April 2010. This information will provide guidance for further exploration, should carbon capture and storage technologies be pursued in South Africa.

Energy and the environment

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a co-ordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Minerals and Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions. However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita. These calculations make South Africa one of the top 15 most energy-intensive economies that contribute significantly to GHG emissions.

Therefore, South Africa must proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Minerals and Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Sources of greenhouse gas emissions

The energy sector is a major source of GHGs, because of South Africa's heavy reliance on coal for electricity generation, the Sasol oil-from-coal process and a variety of other indigenous energy uses, such as household coal-burning.

The reduction of particulate emissions from Eskom coal-fired power stations has been the most significant environmental challenge the organisation has faced. Particulate reduction began in the 1980s. Initial reductions followed the mothballing and closure of many of the older plants. From the early 1990s, reductions were achieved by installing bag filters and managing electrostatic precipitators better. In the late 1990s, Eskom

Eskom has signed an agreement with French development agency, *Agence Francaise de Dévelopment,* for a €100-million loan over 20 years to help finance a new wind-farm project.

The 100-megawatt wind farm will be built on the West Coast near the town of Koekenaap, east of Vredendal in the Western Cape and will be operational in early 2010.

The two companies concluded the deal in March 2008 during an official visit to South Africa by French President Nicolas Sarkozy.

developed a stringent five-year target to cut particulate emissions from an average of 0,37 kg/MWh to 0,28 kg/MWh. Between 1990 and 2003, total annual particulate emissions were reduced from 271 000 t to 57 000 t, while the energy delivered increased by 64 000 GWh.

Energy and the national environment

There is some contention regarding the polluting effects of the energy sector, particularly in the Mpumalanga Highveld, where most of Eskom's coal-powered stations and the largest Sasol plants are located.

Eskom has announced a much higher proportion of nuclear energy as part of the future energy mix by 2025. Eskom's proactive climate-change strategy contains a commitment to reduce its GHG emissions. The strategy has been summarised into Eskom's six-point plan on climate change. The elements of this plan are:

- diversifications of the general mix to lower carbon-emitting technologies
- energy-efficiency measures to reduce demand, GHG and other emissions
- adaptation to the negative impacts of climate change
- innovation through research, demonstration and development
- investment through carbon-market mechanisms
- progress through advocacy, partnerships and collaboration.

Energy and the household environment

Coal is used by about 950 000 households countrywide. This causes indoor air-pollution problems, which have a serious health impact.

It has been found that in some cases, especially regarding particulate matter, exposure can exceed World Health Organisation (WHO) standards (180 mg.m^3) by factors of six to seven during winter, and two to three in summer. A national programme has been established to introduce low-smoke energy alternatives into the townships.

Fuel wood is used by millions of rural households as their primary energy source. Studies have shown that fuel-wood users are exposed to even higher levels of particulate emissions than coal users. In one study, exposure levels were found to exceed the WHO lowest-observed-effect level by 26 times. The Department of Minerals and Energy participates in the National Housing Interdepartmental Task Team and has contributed towards the development of norms and standards for solar-passive and thermally-efficient housing design.

The department is investigating the introduction of improved woodstoves and other alternatives, such as solar cookers and biogas, in an attempt to address these pollution problems.

The *White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development* (2002) commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

One way of doing this and simultaneously dealing with South Africa's electricity infrastructure pressures, is to have more energy-efficient houses that use the sun's free energy.

The Department of Science and Technology, the Overstrand Municipality and the Cape Town Grail Centre Trust are collaborating on a sustainable development project involving the construction of more than 600 low-cost houses that will use building material offering better insulation, and have solar water heaters. Projects of this nature could yield useful lessons and technologies to support the Department of Housing in its shift towards environmentally sustainable housing projects.

In the search for energy solutions, the Department of Science and Technology's work on hydrogen fuel cells continues.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved and along with them, mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved. Ten of the more significant geological formations in South Africa are discussed below.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga. The renowned Barberton Greenstone Belt, the largest of its kind in South Africa, contains remnants of original crust, dated at around 3,5 billion years old.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface. Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae. Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite, chrysotile asbestos and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the "Ridge of White Waters" are world famous. Nearly half of all the gold ever mined has come from the extensive Witwatersrand conglomerate reefs that were discovered in 1886, not far from Johannesburg's city centre. The Witwatersrand is the greatest goldfield known to mankind. More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many excellent outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates. These "gold reefs" were formed from gravels transported into the basin and reworked 2,75 billion years ago. The gold and uranium originated from a rich source in the hinterland.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km^2 and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PGMs and vanadium.

This mega-complex was emplaced in a molten state about 2 060 billion years ago into pre-existing sedimentary rocks, through several deep feeder zones.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex is best viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features potholes at Bourke's Luck, the Blyde River Canyon and the dolomite formation in which giant stromatolites bear witness to the 2,5 billion-year-old fossiled remains of vast oxygen-producing algae growth.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The northern area of the Drakensberg has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution.

During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

Kimberlite originates as magma from very deep below the surface, and typically occurs as small volcanic pipes and craters at the surface. Included within solidified kimberlites are fragments of deep-seated rocks and minerals, including rare diamonds of various sizes.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth.

One such site is the Vredefort Dome, the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth.

Declared a world heritage site in 2005, it lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

This spectacular and complex geological feature, measuring 70 km across, was caused by the impact of a 10 km-wide asteroid some two billion years ago. Only a partial ring of hills remains of the dome, created by the rebound of rock below the asteroid's impact site. The original crater – now eroded – is estimated to have been between 250 km and 300 km in diameter.

The Vredefort structure comprises a core zone of granitic rocks, surrounded by a ring-like collar zone of younger bedded formations. Only the north-western portion of the structure remains visible. The south-eastern half was flooded by sediments of the Karoo Supergroup, which cover the Free State. About 40 km north of Pretoria is a small bowl-shaped meteorite-impact crater, termed Tswaing. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg complex and National Park, located some 120 km north-west of Johannesburg in North West, is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world.

The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and vulcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures, created during the collapse of the volcano.

There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Pilanesberg is also the site of a magnificent game reserve containing the Big Five and the world-renowned Palace of the Lost City hotel complex and golf course.

Cradle of Humankind

This world heritage site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research material.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is, arguably, South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded around 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak. Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

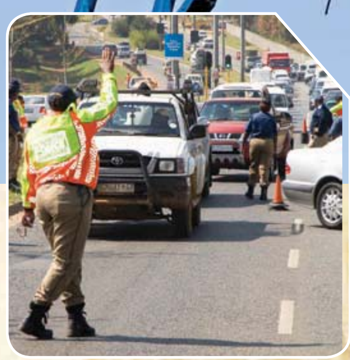
Acknowledgements

Business Day
Chamber of Mines
Council for Geoscience
Department of Minerals and Energy
Developmental Indicators, 2008
Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2006 published by the Department of Minerals and Energy
Eskom
Mining Weekly
South Africa: The Good News
www.cef.org.za
www.globaldialogue.info
www.gov.za
www.hartrao.ac.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.sabcnews.com
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Brooke-Simons, P. *Cullinan Diamonds: Dreams and Discoveries.* Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.
Deep South Africa: A Celebration of the South African Mining Industry. Cape Town: Nelida Publishing, 2007.
Eales, H. *Riddles in Store: Controversies, Theories and Myths about Southern Africa's Geological Past.* Johannesburg: Witwatersrand: Witwatersrand University Press, 2007.
Fig. D. *Uranium Record: Questioning South Africa's Nuclear Direction*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
Reimold, WU and Gibson, RL. *Meteorite Impact! The Danger from Space and South Africa's Mega-Impact, The Vredefort Structure*. Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2005.
Ward, S. *The Energy Book for Urban Development in South Africa*. Noordhoek: Sustainable Energy Africa, 2002.

SAFETY, SECURITY AND DEFENCE



The aim of the Department of Safety and Security is to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property, and uphold law enforcement.

The Department of Defence defends South Africa's territorial integrity and its people.

Safety and security

In accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the Minister of Safety and Security is responsible for policing in general and is accountable to Cabinet and Parliament. Important features of the minister's responsibilities include determining national policing policy and providing civilian oversight. The following three structures fall under the Minister of Safety and Security:

- Secretariat for Safety and Security
- Independent Complaints Directorate (ICD)
- South African Police Service (SAPS).

Secretariat for Safety and Security

In terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995), the Secretariat for Safety and Security's functions are to:

- advise the minister
- promote democratic accountability and transparency in the SAPS
- provide the minister with legal services and advice on constitutional matters
- monitor the implementation of policy
- conduct research on any policing matter in accordance with the instructions of the minister, and evaluate the performance of the SAPS.

Independent Complaints Directorate

The ICD's primary role is to ensure that complaints about criminal offences, corruption and misconduct allegedly committed by SAPS and municipal police services' (MPS) members are investigated effectively. Police conduct or behaviour that is prohibited in terms of the SAPS standing orders and police regulations includes neglect of duties or improper performance of duties and failure to comply with the SAPS/MPS Code of Conduct.

The ICD has an additional mandate in respect of monitoring the SAPS' implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998). The ICD investigates all deaths in police custody or as a result of police action, and other criminal cases.

An investigation is conducted upon receipt of a complaint to determine any indications of criminal conduct or involvement by SAPS members. Where there are no indications of criminal conduct or police involvement, the matter is left to the police to investigate, while the ICD monitors and supervises the investigation. If it is established that there was criminal conduct on the part of the police, the ICD conducts a full investigation.

Upon completion of an investigation, the ICD may make recommendations to the Director of Public Prosecutions about the prosecution of the SAPS/MPS member(s) implicated, and to SAPS/MPS management regarding departmental prosecution of the affected member. The ICD reports to Parliament through the Minister of Safety and Security. However, the organisation operates independently from the SAPS.

In its endeavour to make its services accessible to communities, the ICD opened two satellite offices during 2007/08: in Mthatha, Eastern Cape, and Richards Bay, KwaZulu-Natal, respectively. Four satellite offices were expected to be opened in other provinces during 2008/09. The ICD is the Secretariat of the African Policing Oversight Forum and has influenced the creation of oversight mechanisms in several African countries.

South African Police Service

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all South Africans.

The values upheld by the SAPS are to:

- protect everyone's rights and be impartial, respectful, open and accountable to the community
- use its powers responsibly
- provide a responsible, effective and high-quality service with honesty and integrity
- evaluate its service continuously and strive to improve it
- use its resources efficiently
- develop the skills of its members through equal opportunities
- co-operate with the community, all levels of government and other role-players.

The SAPS' key aims are based on the objectives provided for in Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996:

- prevent, combat and investigate crime
- maintain public order
- protect and secure South Africans and their property
- uphold and enforce the law.

The department's Strategic Plan for 2005 to 2010 lays down four key strategic priorities for the medium term, namely to:

- Combat organised crime, focusing on drug- and firearm-trafficking, vehicle theft and hijacking, commercial crime and corruption.
- Combat serious and violent crime via strategies to counter the proliferation of firearms, improve safety and security in high-crime areas, combat crimes such as taxi and gang violence and faction-fighting, and maintain security at, among other things, major public events. These crimes have since been categorised as contact crimes, which relate to social-fabric crimes and violent organised crimes.
- Combat crimes against women and children focusing on rape, domestic violence, assault and child abuse.
- Improve basic service delivery by the SAPS.

Government departments are clustered into groups comprising departments with similar sectoral challenges, to promote integrated governance. The Department of Safety and Security is an integral part of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster, which co-ordinates interdepartmental crime prevention and security initiatives across the Integrated Justice System (IJS).

The Government's Programme of Action priorities in relation to the SAPS are: crime reduction, including crime prevention and public safety; focusing on contact crime by, among other things, the development of social crime-prevention reduction programmes; integrated law-enforcement operations and partnerships with organs of civil society and communities; addressing organised crime; improving the effectiveness of the IJS; improving the levels of national security by, among other things, managing an overarching strategy on border security; and developing and implementing safety and security measures for the 2009 general elections as well as for the 2009 FIFA Confederations Cup and the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The Apex Priorities, set to enhance government's existing policies and to further improve development in the country, were announced in 2007. During 2008, the Apex Priorities were integrated into the Programme of Action. The broad Apex Priorities in relation to the SAPS involve implementing special crime-combating and security initiatives, and intensifying partnerships in the fight against crime.

The Strategic Plan 2005 to 2010 provides the strategic direction of the SAPS for a five-year period while the Annual Performance Plan, extrapolated from the Strategic Plan 2005 to 2010, indicates the priorities and objectives that the SAPS will focus on during a particular financial year. The Annual Performance Plan for the SAPS for 2008/09 therefore extended the policing priorities and objectives within the strategic direction provided by the Strategic Plan 2005 to 2010.

Strategic overview and key policy developments

Partnerships

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing, which involves partnerships between the community and the SAPS. Community policing was introduced in the SAPS in 1994 as an approach to policing which recognises the interdependence and shared responsibility of the police and the community in establishing safety and security. The key to this approach is the establishment of active partnerships between the police and the public through which crime and community safety issues can be jointly addressed.

Community policing forums (CPFs) are actively involved in crime-prevention and awareness programmes, and allow the SAPS to mobilise and involve communities in the fight against crime. CPFs also assist the police by mobilising partnerships with businesses. By March 2008, 1 111 CPFs were fully operating at 1 115 police stations. The National Community Policing Consultative Forum (NCPCF) represents role-players from the SAPS, the National Secretariat for Safety and Security and the provincial chairpersons of the CPFs. By mid-2008, the NCPCF was discussing the following:

- standardising the CPFs' constitution
- developing a draft communication and marketing strategy for CPFs
- developing training material for CPFs.

It is envisaged that the CPFs will be empowered to help the police become known in their communities, identify trustworthy and capable persons from their communities to be recruited into the police reservist service and mobilise volunteers who could assist the police in certain areas of policing, including trauma counselling for victims of domestic violence, and abused women and children.

The SAPS is dedicated to uplifting historically disadvantaged communities. This includes building community safety centres (CSCs) that focus on delivering basic and easily accessible services to communities, especially in deep rural areas and informal settlements.

CSCs bring together the SAPS and the departments of justice and constitutional development, correctional services, health and social development.

In line with the philosophy of community policing, sector policing is viewed as an enabling mechanism, which organises and mobilises communities on microlevel (for example within the boundaries of neighbourhoods or so-called sectors) to bring the SAPS closer to the community. Sector policing entails that, by understanding the causes of crime and the factors that enable it to take place, the police and the community join their capabilities and, in partnership, launch projects to address such causes.

Sector policing is based on the following principles:

- the geographical division of a police station area into smaller, manageable sectors, based on geographical constraints, the composition and diversity of communities and community interests and needs
- establishing sector teams, managed by a sector commander and with adequate resources to ensure the provision of an appropriate and effective policing service in a specific sector
- participation by role-players, within their areas of responsibility, in establishing safer communities
- using intelligence-driven crime prevention projects at sector level in co-operation with identified role-players
- establishing an effective communication structure in the form of a sector crime forum, as a sub-forum of the CPF, to ensure the integration and co-ordination of attempts to establish safer communities.

The focus of implementing sector policing is on the 169 high-contact crime stations. Sector policing is another area where the success of policing is reliant on active community participation. Sector policing has been implemented at 139 of the high-contact crime centres. In total 737, 24-hour sectors are in operation and are supported by 6 566 members.

However, the effectiveness of sector policing (to ensuring closer co-operation and integration with the community) entails a resource-intensive exercise and the establishment of local partnerships.

The draft Sector Policing Policy was revised during February 2008. Together with the operational strategy of the SAPS, it addresses the rural safety aspects and the needs of the total rural community, including the farming community. The sector policing approach aims to sustain and integrate the rural safety strategy by providing properly trained and resourced capacity to implement rural safety measures. The strategy further aims to promote the effective and dedicated participation and involvement of all internal and external role-players in an integrated, joint and co-ordinated manner.

The Big Business Working Group was established in 2006. Along with Business Against Crime (BAC), it supports government in its response to the high levels of crime. In terms of this approach, business assists government in achieving a sustained, systematic and rational problem-solving response to the complexities of tackling crime challenges.

Emanating from this, the Crime Leadership Forum was established with the ministers of the six departments forming the JCPS Cluster and senior business leaders. This forum provides a platform for constructive debate and deliberations on the crime challenges facing the country, and the prioritising of approaches through which the business sector will be able to provide meaningful support to government in tackling crime.

Four working groups were established in priority areas. Priorities and work programmes were developed in each working group, namely Violent Organised Crime, Criminal Justice System (CJS) Review, Baseline Effectiveness, and Innovation. Three broad operational and co-operative initiatives deal with violent organised crime. These initiatives, facilitated and promoted by the BAC, are enhanced by the Industry Alignment Forum, which has 14 industry association members representing about 250 chief executive officers. The initiatives include the Vehicle Hijacking Project, Retail Robberies Initiative and the Cash Risk-Management Initiative.

To improve the baseline effectiveness of the CJS and the CJS Review, four broad initiatives have been identified and are facilitated by BAC. These initiatives include the Support Programme for Police Stations, the Criminal Justice Strengthening Programme, Specialised Commercial Court Centres and the Correctional Service Support Programme.

The Big Business Working Group has received innovative ideas of assistance from skilled persons interested in improving the CJS and mobilising the public against crime. Business is at present supporting a crime-prevention programme aimed at the youth in schools.

Revised reservist system

The SAPS introduced an alternative system to the phased-out commando system to prevent a security vacuum. One of the strategies for doing this is increasing reservist numbers.

The revised system of police reservists, among other things, consolidates the SAPS sector-policing programme. It provides for four categories of reservists, namely Functional Policing, Support Services, Specialised Functional Policing (pilots, divers, social workers etc.) and Rural and Urban Sector Policing. Different categories of reservists have been established.

The category into which reservists have been appointed will determine the nature of the work that they will perform. The categories are the following:

- Category A: Functional Deployment
- Category B: Deployed as Support Personnel in Stations
- Category C: Specialised Support Personnel in Stations, for example, doctors and pilots
- Category D: Rural and Urban Safety.

During the period under review, 30 255 reservists were recruited (7 222 were recruited for Functional Deployment, 22 520 for Rural and Urban Safety and 513 for Category B and Category C). The new recruits included 292 commando members.

The main thrust of the revised system is to create a voluntary part-time professional police service. The system also provides for the call-up and payment of reservists, based on identified policing needs, specific crime threats and trends at station level. Modular outcomes-based training programmes have been completed to enhance the skills and knowledge of all reservists.

Reducing contact crime

Government aims to reduce contact crimes by 7% to 10% a year, focusing specifically on the 169 high-contact crime stations.

Eight serious crimes are grouped together as contact crime or violent crime against victims. These crimes are murder, attempted murder, rape, assault GBH (assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm), common assault, indecent assault, aggravated robbery and other robbery. The crimes in question account for 32,5% of South Africa's recorded serious crimes. A number of the contact crimes are social or domestic in nature and occur in social environments (for example, privacy of residences), which are usually outside the reach of conventional policing. These crimes usually occur between people who know each other (for example, friends, acquaintances and relatives).

Docket analysis indicates that 89% of both assault GBH and common assault cases, 82% of murders and 76% of rapes involve people known to one another. In addition, 59% of the attempted murders occur under similar circumstances.

The crime statistics for the period 1 April 2007 to 31 March 2008 were released in June 2008.

The figures for the period were compared to the same period the previous year (1 April 2006 to 31 March 2007). It was reported that all eight contact crimes showed decreases during the reporting period. The reduction in these crimes is as follows:

- common robbery: 9,5%
- rape: 8,8%
- attempted murder: 7,5%
- robbery with aggravating circumstances: 7,4%
- common assault: 6,6%
- murder: 4,7%
- assault GBH: 4,6%
- indecent assault: 2,1%.

An overall decrease of 6,4% in the incidence of contact crimes was achieved during the period under review. Of particular significance was the decrease in robbery with aggravating circumstances by 7,4% and murder by 4,7% during this reporting period because these crimes increased during 2006/07 by 4,6% and 2,4% respectively.

Although robbery with aggravating circumstances only accounts for about 5% of contact crimes and 2% of all serious crimes, the increase in some subcategories, such as robberies at residential premises, robberies at business premises, truck hijackings and carjacking, is of extreme concern.

These subcategories showed increases of 13,5%, 47,4%, 39,6% and 4,4% respectively.

However, most of the property-related, contact-related and other serious crime categories experienced decreases.

Reductions were recorded in the incidence of malicious damage to property (-5,4%), arson (-6,6%), burglary at residential premises (-5,6%), theft of motor vehicles (-7,9%) and stock theft (-1,2%).

Reducing violence against women and children

Deterring sexual offences against women and children is a priority for the SAPS. The objectives are to improve the rate of detection and conviction of perpetrators, eliminate secondary victimisation, improve structures and mechanisms in support of victims of violent crimes, reduce false reporting and improve on the prevention of these crimes.

To enable the SAPS to ensure alignment and monitoring of integrated services, strategic participation was ensured in the National Child Protection Committee (it gives support to children living on the streets), National Youth Commission (it monitors implementation of the youth-development policy), Victim Charter Implementation Committee, Inter-Sectoral Steering Committee on Child Justice and the Commission on Gender Equality (it reviewed and finalised the Sexual Offences Bill). In 2007/08, six awareness campaigns were conducted in partnership with other departments, focusing on substance abuse.

During 2007, the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children Campaign, conducted 2 092 awareness initiatives focusing on the general public, children, the youth and vulnerable groups.

These campaigns reached about 205 276 people and 101 961 pamphlets were distributed.

Successes of crime-combating operations undertaken in support of the 16 Days of Activism Campaign included 2 049 arrests, and the confiscation of 23 firearms, various drugs and 4 933 litres of alcohol.During 2007/08, 3 848 members were trained in the Domestic Violence Learning Programme, and 609 members were trained in the Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP). To reduce crime where alcohol, drugs and gangsterism are contributing factors, awareness campaigns were conducted to educate the community and the youth on the dangers of substance abuse. Other ongoing campaigns focused on the education of youth on gang-related crime and the dangers of peer pressure within gangs.

As part of the VEP, various victim-friendly facilities have been established and upgraded at police stations nationwide.

Improving policing capacity

The 2007/08 budget allocation was R36,4 billion, and is expected to reach R49,4 billion by 2010/11.

The strong growth in expenditure largely reflects the employment of large numbers of additional police officers, investments in capital infrastructure and concomitant resources such as the automated vehicle location system, and the security requirements for the 2010 World Cup.

To improve the capacity of the SAPS to perform its functions at ports of entry and exit, sector policing at station level and the 2010 World Cup, personnel numbers have been increasing and are expected to reach 192 000 by the end of March 2010. Police numbers are expected to be expanded to reach about 201 000 by the end of March 2011.

This will be complemented by the expansion of the department's vehicle fleet, equipment supplies, technological infrastructure and reservists.

By May 2008, there were 1 114 fully fledged police stations countrywide.

Restructuring

The restructuring of the SAPS focuses on:

- reducing policing levels from four to three, namely national, provincial and station levels
- reducing provincial and national structures to improve co-ordination, and providing functional policing and support services
- redeploying to station-level certain specialised operational policing functions to ensure crimes are investigated where they occur
- ensuring that each station has national-, provincial- and area-skilled persons to increase the leadership, management, decision-making and skill levels at stations dealing with crime challenges unique to that station
- empowering station commissioners to render a comprehensive service and effectively manage all resources
- amending accountability frameworks to assess the performance of stations and station commissioners in terms of standardised performance indicators.

The most important change will be the dissolution of area offices, which are expected to devolve to the various police stations as part of the station-empowerment strategy.

Experienced operational managers and personnel from 43 area offices in the nine provinces and from the national and provincial offices, where necessary, have been redeployed to police stations to boost their administrative and operational managerial ability and increase the staff complement.

Regional and continental initiatives

The department has provided support to government's regional and continental objectives by implementing the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Protocol on the

Control of Firearms through the Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Co-operation Organisation (SARPCCO) and the African Union (AU) Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism.

It also provides operational support and institutional capacity-building to police agencies in southern Africa through SARPCCO, for example in Rwanda.

These initiatives aim to promote development, stability and security, and have a positive impact on policing in South Africa through shared information and experiences.

The SAPS has co-operation agreements with France, Argentina, Chile, Brazil, the Russian Federation, Hungary, Egypt, China, Nigeria, Mozambique, Portugal, Swaziland and the People's Republic of China. Negotiations are ongoing to include more countries on its list of international partners against organised crime.

South Africa is among 182 countries whose police structures are affiliated to Interpol. It has a number of liaison officers based at South African missions abroad to interact continuously with its counterparts in detecting international crime.

The SAPS is involved in removing and destroying weapons and ammunition in Mozambique and the DRC. Along with the departments of defence and of foreign affairs, the SAPS is a key member in the review of a White Paper on South Africa's participation in international peace missions.

Technology and technical management

The primary purpose or focus of technology management is to manage and assess existing technology capabilities and acquire new technology capabilities to fulfil its mission and respond appropriately to strategic priorities.

During 2006/07, the SAPS focused on technology to enhance the improvement of the operational environment, as well as the enrichment of collaboration between the entities within the JCPS Cluster. The following technological projects were processed and managed:

- Ground Penetrating Radar: the radar responds to changes in soil conditions induced by excavations and can detect a number of items either directly or from disturbed soil conditions while displaying and recording the data on a digital video logger
- chemical detectors (Raman Spectroscopy): a hand-held device that can instantaneously identify a wide spectrum of organic compounds, inorganic compounds and aqueous solutions

> i
>
> In July 2008, the South African Police Service (SAPS) unveiled its plans to secure the skies, stadiums, highways, streets and tourist destinations for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The security preparations include R665 million to be spent on infrastructure and R640 million on deploying tens of thousands of police officers who will patrol and police crucial venues during the tournament. Some 41 092 police officers will be deployed above those already deployed for normal policing. By July 2008, the SAPS had started procuring items needed to police the event, including water cannons, body armour, 100 BMWs for route patrols, mobile police stations for the stadiums, 300 surveillance cameras, helicopters and unmanned surveillance aircraft.

- drug-testing kits: a narcotic identification test that provides rapid identification of illegal drugs and other contraband
- X-Ray fluorescent technology: assists in the identification of illegal drug, toxic, and industrial compounds and other contraband.

The proficiency and investigative accuracy of general detectives were enhanced through introducing, processing and managing the following projects:

- Facial Recognition
- Digital In-Car Video System
- Body Worn Surveillance System
- Thermal Night Vision
- Layered Voice Analysis Technology.

Organisational profile

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. Five deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner.

Visible Policing and Cluster Co-ordination fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Operational Services.

The Detective Service, Crime Intelligence, Criminal Record and Forensic Science Services (FSS) fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Crime Intelligence and Crime Detection.

The Protection and Security Service, Supply Chain Management (SCM), and the National Inspectorate fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: SCM, Protection and Security and Evaluation Services.

Career Management, Training, Legal Services, Strategic Management and Finance and Administration fall under the Deputy National

Commissioner: Human Capital Development, Legal, Financial and Administration Services

Personnel Services, Efficiency Services, Information and Systems Management (ISM), Communication and Liaison Services and Internal Audit fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Personnel Management and Organisational Development.

Visible Policing

Visible Policing is responsible for providing a proactive and reactive policing service. It is regarded as a line function and its components are Crime Prevention, Social-Crime Prevention, Police Emergency Services, Specialised Operations, Firearms and Liquor Control, Borderline Operations and Crime-Combating Operations.

Visible Policing is responsible for combating crime through anti-crime operations, activities at police stations, high visibility and the availability of police officials at grassroots level. It also oversees sector policing, community policing, reservists, MPS, closed-circuit television (CCTV) surveillance, borderlines and specialised police services.

Social-Crime Prevention deals with crimes effecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children.

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress and provides services through dog, mounted, hostage and suicide negotiation, police diver and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad.

Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

Firearms and Liquor Control eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. It also ensures effective compliance and enforcement of liquor-control legislation, firearm legislation and the Second Hand Goods Act, 1955 (Act 23 of 1955), to address serious, violent and contact crimes.

In 2008, during day-to-day operations, 118 514 firearms were destroyed.

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, such as: combating public violence, stabilising serious- and violent-crime incidents, policing public gatherings, rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force) and handling high-risk operations.

Six Robinson helicopters were procured for the SAPS Air Wing and were delivered from June 2008. These small cost-effective helicopters were deployed in provinces as a vehicle to speed up experience-building of young pilots to get them operationally ready within a short period of time. They will also contribute as an additional tool in aerial observation to combat crime. A Cessna Sovereign Jet was also introduced into the SAPS during March 2008, which enhances the SAPS' capacity to speedily transport top management and special units over longer distances whether within or outside the borders of South Africa.

Borderline Operations combats transnational crimes at air, sea and land borderlines. Land Borderline Control polices the South African land borderline. Air Borderline Control polices more than 1 000 smaller airfields and airstrips. Sea Borderline Control is responsible for policing smaller sea harbours and slipways, including the South African ocean. During 2006/07, the operational area of responsibility extended seawards by 200 nautical miles and 10 kilometres inland off the shoreline. The process of the SAPS taking over the borderline-control function from the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is expected to be finalised in 2009.

Crime-Combating Operations combats crime and maintains public order. Mobilisation and Operational Support provides administrative support pertaining to local and external deployments and special duties.

Cluster Co-ordination

Cluster Co-ordination is responsible for co-ordinating the planning and monitoring of identified major joint intelligence and operational structure events, namely the Confederations Cup in 2009 and the 2010 World Cup.

The Secretariat of the JCPS Cluster is responsible for the functioning of the cluster in terms of its administration and liaison with other departments regarding all interdepartmental issues, for example, the Forum of South African Directors-General, SARPCCO and the AU Standby Force.

South Africa is expected to deploy 30 000 police officers specifically to ensure the safety of visitors to the country during the 2010 World Cup. There will be one police officer to every 10 foreign tourists expected for the duration of the event. Government plans to increase the number of police officers in the country to 192 000 by the end of 2009/10.

To maintain safety and security during the 2010 World Cup and comply with FIFA requirements, an additional amount of R665,6 million was allocated to the Department of Safety and Security in the 2007 Budget for the procurement of operational equipment such as helicopters, CCTV, radio communications, roadblocks and riot and other technical equipment.

A dedicated structure for continuous safety and security planning has been established and works in collaboration with the 2010 Organising Committee. A strategy has also been developed to co-ordinate the gathering and dissemination of intelligence.The plan is to make available police escorts for teams, referees and members of the FIFA delegation, to provide security at land, sea and air borders, routes and venues (stadiums, hotels, events and tourists attractions). The SAPS also plans to patrol routes to and from the airports, into the cities and to provide video feeds to the operational headquarters in Pretoria, using command vehicles and helicopters equipped with cameras. International police officers from every country playing in the event will also be present, wearing their own uniforms, to assist the SAPS and public.

Detective Services

Detective Services is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime, including organised crime, commercial crime and crimes against women and children.

Crime Intelligence

This division of the SAPS is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, co-ordinating and analysing information-gathering. It also provides technical-intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS.

Criminal Record Centre (CRC) and Forensic Science Services

The function of the CRC is primarily the provisioning of previous conviction reports to courts, while the FSS provides scientific support in the investigation of crime.

The following improvements and additions to the CRC's capacity will assist in investigating crime:

- About 60 local CRC fingerprint laboratories were upgraded to international specifications.
- A shoe-print system has been implemented to assist investigating crime.
- A "scene-of-crime" terminal has been acquired and is to be implemented as a pilot project. This terminal will provide the local CRC personnel the option of searching latent fingerprints obtained at the crime scene against the Automated Fingerprint Identification System (AFIS) database.

The CRC, in conjunction with the South African Qualifications Authority, is developing a three-year qualification in the forensic-science field. The qualification, once in place, will contribute to the international accreditation process for the CRC.

The Biology Section of the FSS has ensured that the Genetic Sample Processing System (GSPS) is now fully functional and is greatly adding to the laboratory's capacity to process DNA-related entries. It is primarily used to analyse samples where the suspect is unknown. The production of the GSPS is scheduled to reach a target of about 4 000 various DNA analyses (inclusive of isolation, amplification and fragment analyses) per week.

By using the GSPS, the laboratory will be able to ensure that more than 1 000 entries per month are finalised.

The Ballistics Section has implemented the national Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) database, which contributes to greater accuracy in the identification of firearms. A three-dimensional correlation system is being implemented, which, being part of the IBIS, will improve the accuracy of identification of firearms from about 85% to 100%.

The Chemistry Section has procured additional Liquid Chromatograph Mass Spectrometry equipment, which will be used for analysis of medicine-related entries.

The Explosives Section has ordered eight new robots that will assist explosive experts in the analysis and disarming of explosive devices.

The Scientific Analysis Section has been implementing and validating a new methodology that is being used in the profiling of precious metals handed in as exhibits in cases. This methodology enables legally produced gold, for example, to be distinguished from illegally produced gold. In cases where illegally produced precious metals are identified, the process allows the analyst to go further and identify the mine from which the precious metal originated.

The Questioned Documents Section, which is the section of the laboratory that deals with documents in dispute, has established a chemistry subsection, which will have as its main aim the analyses of ink and paper used in disputed documents. By the end of 2008, SAPS crime scene investigators were increased from 1 850 to 6 000 and forensic analysts were doubled to 2 000.

Protection and Security Services

This division comprises the VIP Protection Service, Static and Mobile Security, Railway Policing, Government Security Regulator, Ports of Entry Security and Operational Support.

The VIP Protection Service provides for the protection, while in transit, of the president, deputy president, former presidents and their spouses, national ministers, premiers, members of provincial executive committees and any other office bearer whose safety is of national importance.

This component is also responsible for protecting visiting foreign dignitaries who qualify for protection, and judges and magistrates presiding over trials where their safety may be threatened.

Static and Mobile Security provides for the protection of other local and foreign VIPs, the places in which all VIPs, including those related to the president and deputy president, are present, as well as valuable government cargo.

Railway Policing prevents and combats organised crime, serious and violent crime, and crimes against women and children in the rail environment.

The Government Security Regulator provides for security regulation, and the administration relating to national key points and strategic installations.

The Security Advisory Service is responsible for evaluating all ports of entry (harbours, airports and border ports) and auditing the physical security at all government departments and VIP's residences and offices. Ports of Entry Security is responsible for the security of all ports of entry, such as border posts, airports and harbours.

> i
>
> The vehicle fleet of the South African Police Service (SAPS) has been modernised and increased. In 2003, the SAPS had 27 055 vehicles. This increased to 37 617 in 2008. Police stations that have been built recently have victim-friendly facilities for the victims of sexual offences. There are 594 such facilities across the country. The personnel who render services there are mostly volunteers from the various levels of medical care and social services in South Africa.

Supply Chain Management

This division is responsible for meeting the total logistical needs of the SAPS through effective and efficient demand, acquisition, logistical, disposal and performance management.

Additional funds have been made available to procure more vehicles for the SAPS. During 2007/08, more than 8 000 vehicles were purchased. During this period, more than 5 000 vehicles were boarded. By January 2008, 159 000 bulletproof vests and 180 000 standardised firearms had been issued to SAPS members.

National Inspectorate

The National Inspectorate of the SAPS was reorganised in March 2007 to centralise command and control of all provincial evaluation capacities. Its inspection activity, unless otherwise directed by top management or special requests of provincial commissioners, is generally directed by information obtained at the Management Information Centre, where various analyses are carried out to promote intelligence-driven inspections.

Career Management

This division renders a people-centred Human Resource (HR) service to all personnel and ensures their optimal deployment.

It provides HR support and capacity-building to the SAPS, including management interventions, career coaching, career alignment and strategic workforce planning.

Training

The SAPS Training Division is responsible for provisioning of quality education, training and development in support of creating a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

This is accomplished by:

- auditing in the SAPS
- determining training needs in the SAPS
- researching, designing and developing outcomes-based learning solutions
- setting and assuring quality standards
- providing basic, advanced and specialised training
- facilitating mentoring, coaching and "on-the-job" training
- facilitating international development assistance
- providing tangible management support.

The division developed 10 new programmes for the SAPS, revised two existing programmes and implemented 12 new learning programmes during 2007/08. Some of the new learning programmes that were developed are the Learning Programme for Human Rights in Policing, the "A" Reservist Learning Programme, the Commercial Crime Learning Programme, Hostage Negotiation and the Crime Intelligence Analysis Learning Programme for SARPCCO. The Child Protection, Sexual Offences and Family Violence Learning Programme, Cyber Forensics Learning Programme, Organised Crime and the Youth Programme were all successfully implemented.

The Basic Training Learning Programme (BTLP) for new recruits is presented in three semesters, namely:

- Semester one: six months at any one of the 10 basic training institutions countrywide
- Semester two: six months of field training at a designated field-training police station
- Semester three: 12 months of probation at the point of placement.

An additional 439 field training officers were trained during 2007 to give effect to an acceptable trainer-trainee ratio in the second semester.

A total of 18 637 reservists underwent training in any of the four introductory training course options as follows:

- Option one: phase one is a 14-day uninterrupted training and phase two is practical on-the-job training
- Option two: phase one is six days' uninterrupted training with four weekend camps and phase two is practical on-the-job training
- Option three: phase one consists of eight weekend camps and phase two is practical on-the-job training
- Option four: phase one consists of 151 sessions and phase two is practical on-the-job training.

The development of station commissioners has been identified as a priority and a new Station Management Learning Programme was specifically developed to train all station commissioners. It was envisaged that all current station commissioners will have received training before the end of 2008/09.

To support the enhancement of the crime-investigation function, the SAPS continues to focus on developing detectives by providing general, specialised and management learning programmes.

Training of detectives in the Detective Learning Programme, Family Violence, Child Abuse and Sexual Offences Investigators Learning Programme (crime against women and children), Detective Commanders Learning Programme and Organised Crime will continue to be prioritised. Some 1 600 employees attended the Detective Learning Programme.

The implementation of the new three-month Intelligence Trade Craft Learning Programme being presented at the SAPS Training Institution, Hammanskraal, has greatly contributed to the development of members from the crime intelligence environment.

The street-survival and tactical-survival techniques learning programmes continue to provide functional members with the competencies necessary to ensure the safety of themselves and their communities in an efficient manner.

A total of 62 294 members underwent street-survival training and a further 1 101 members were trained in tactical-survival techniques.

To ensure effective policing of ports of entry, 110 members working at ports of entry were trained in border policing in 2007 and a further 200 received training in the 2008/09 financial year.

Legal Services

This division provides a legal-advisory service to the SAPS in respect of the development, interpretation, application and implementation of policy; the drafting of legislation; the management of litigious matters; the administration and management of contracts and agreements; arbitration; the management of national and international crime operations; special projects; the promotion of corporate identity and good governance; and the general administration and management of legal services.

Strategic Management

The functions of this component include facilitating the development and compilation of a strategic plan and a one-year performance plan for the SAPS, facilitating the development of operational plans in support of the strategic plan at all levels, co-ordinating the strategic implementation of plans, and co-ordinating strategic monitoring and evaluation in the SAPS.

Various plans such as the Firearms Strategy, Prevention of Attacks and Killings of Police Officials, the Corruption and Fraud Prevention Plan and the Risk-Management Strategy have been developed to assist with the implementation of strategic plans.

The component has a research unit that co-ordinates all research requests and conducts surveys.

Finance and Administration

This division ensures that the SAPS' budget is managed cost-effectively.

It manages financial and auxiliary services and oversees the management and use of all resources in accordance with relevant directives and legislation. It has a capacity for support and interventions at national level pertaining to, among other things, managing the national SAPS Budget.

Personnel Services

This division manages personnel-related matters in support of the operational priorities of the SAPS. It consists of the following three components:

- Employee Assistance Services maintains a professional occupational social-work service, as well as a disability and HIV- and AIDS-support service. It offers a professional spiritual-support service; conducts psychological interventions and evaluations; and manages, develops and enhances sport and recreation within the SAPS. It provides a national call-centre service and functions as a 24-hour helpline for the wellness of SAPS members.
- Personnel Provision and Maintenance comprises the Promotions and Awards, and Personnel Provision sections.
- Service Terminations and Behaviour Management comprises three sections, namely Medical Administration, Service Absence and Terminations, and Behaviour Management.

Efficiency Services

Efficiency Services is responsible for organisational development and maintenance in the SAPS. Its functions include developing and maintaining organisational structures, working procedures and methods, and official forms and registers within the framework of the strategic objectives of the service.

Other functions include organisational and business-process analyses and design, resource establishment, facilitation of managerial processes and dealing with relevant organisational enquiries.

Information and Systems Management

The SAPS Information Systems and Information Communications Technology (IS&ICT) Resourses Strategy's three key priorities are to:

- sustain the current IS&ICT, which also includes the renewal and regular enhancement of outdated IS&ICT, and the expansion to accommodate natural growth in capacity
- improve, expand, develop, enhance and upgrade the IS&ICT resource capabilities
- procure and implement the IS&ICT resources.

The focus for 2008/09 was to address three organisational and operational concerns:

- the prevention of lost dockets
- more efficient control of vehicles
- more efficient control over firearms.

To achieve this the SAPS planned to upgrade the network and hosting services; replace outdated computer equipment and implement various systems, including the Firearm Control System to address the issuing of firearm permits to SAPS members; implement Electronic Vehicle Monitoring for Command and Control (AVL System) to ensure that SAPS vehicles are effectively dispatched; scan case dockets to prevent lost, sold or stolen dockets (E-Docket); and create video images for exhibit/identity purposes within the IJS (National Photo Image System) and Crime Intelligence Information System.

Communication and Liaison Services

Communication and Liaison Services promotes the image of the SAPS by:

- meeting the organisation's communication needs through internal and external communication, and by dealing with the local and international media
- building community relations
- doing communication planning, research and marketing
- effectively using various mediums of communication such as POL TV, *Police File*, the *SAPS Journal*, the SAPS website and intranet
- producing training videos.

The component preserves and promotes the image, identity and heritage of the SAPS. It is responsible for the SAPS library, music services, museum protocol, and film and TV liaison.

Critical communication events include the SAPS theme "ACT Against Crime Together", which is strengthened by means of the National Anti-Crime Project of government. The project aims to mobilise communities and business towards joint partnerships for reducing levels of crime in South Africa.

This message is relayed through continued unmediated communication with all sectors of society, izimbizo and marketing campaigns. It serves to mobilise persons to ACT Against Crime Together and report criminal activities.

The 74 ports of entry (54 land ports, 11 airports, eight seaports and one dry dock) in South Africa were previously manned by about 700 police officials nationally, carrying out multi-agency functions in most cases. Since the implementation of the Border Control Security Strategy, the deployment of police officials to ports of entry has increased to 3 500 officials who are focusing primarily on crime prevention and detection, while their partners in other departments focus on their responsibilities, albeit in an integrated manner.

This number is expected to increase to more than 11 000 over the next few years. The South African authorities have been tightening up border controls and improving other security measures at most of the major ports of entry and exit (sea, air and land).

The number of illegal firearms recovered at ports of entry and exit increased from 121 in 2006/07 to 952 in 2007/08.

The number of stolen vehicles recovered at ports of entry and exit decreased from 1 045 in 2006/07 to 919 vehicles recovered in 2007/08. The value and quantity of drugs seized at ports of entry and exit increased in value from R330 million in 2006/07 to R1,5 million in 2007/08.

The value of illegal goods recovered at ports of entry and exit decreased from R193 million in 2006/07 to R1,5 billion in value of goods seized in 2007/08.

The number of arrests at ports of entry and exit for illegal firearms; stolen vehicles; drugs; illegal goods; human smuggling and trafficking; marine life resources; precious metals and stones and non-ferrous metals; increased from 30 410 in 2006/07 to 51 856 arrests in 2007/08.

Crime Line is a project in which the SAPS and the Primedia Group have joined hands to urge community members to blow the whistle on criminals. This is done by reporting criminal activity anonymously to 32211. The information received is passed on to SAPS Crime Stop offices. In August 2008, Crime Line arrests passed the 500-mark. Stolen property, drugs and counterfeited goods to the value of R20,4 billion were recovered.

Internal Audit

Internal Audit evaluates and contributes to improving the risk management, control and governance systems of the SAPS. To achieve its objectives, the component considers the adequacy and effectiveness of controls and the likelihood of risk, and recommends improvements in areas where audits were completed.

Business Against Crime

BAC was formed in 1996 at the request of former President Nelson Mandela. For business to play a pivotal role in supporting government's crime-fighting initiatives, its resources and skills are needed. BAC is a Section 21 not-for-profit organisation mandated to support government in the fight against crime. The organisation is primarily funded by business-sector donations, and has a presence in seven provinces, with a national office in Johannesburg.

The BAC's vision is for a safe and secure South Africa where its people and businesses live without the threat of crime and violence.

The BAC's mission is to:

- facilitate an effective and close working relationship between government and industry in the fight against crime
- facilitate the implementation of a long-term social-crime prevention strategy with government
- partner business with international organisations to support government in the fight against crime
- facilitate the alignment of business-wide and other relevant non-governmental organisations' crime-fighting initiatives
- facilitate the achievement of government's goals for reducing crime, as set out in the National Crime-Prevention Strategy and departmental plans
- leverage resources, skills and the expertise of business to assist government in attaining an effective and efficient Criminal Justice System (CJS)
- build community and business confidence and support by communicating the successes of the fight against crime consistently and aggressively.

Programmes

The BAC's programmes include:

- The Criminal Justice Strengthening Programme ,which is designed to build, support and strengthen the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, through the professional management of courts and court services.
- The Tiisa Thuto Programme, which seeks to teach scholars non-violent methods of conflict-resolution and positive morality, including life skills and personal values, to reduce crime and violence and improve standards of learning.
- The Support Programme for Police Stations, which aims to improve service delivery at police

stations through effective management, best practices, and skills and capacity development.
- The Commercial Crime (including fraud and corruption) Programme, which established specialised commercial court centres (SCCCs) countrywide, staffed by specialists, to convict people awaiting trial quickly and efficiently, and secure appropriate sentences.
- The Organised Crime Programme, which aims to reduce large-scale syndicated crimes by removing the commercial benefit of trading in stolen goods, as well as ensuring the effective prosecution of offenders. The focus is on vehicle theft and hijacking, and the theft of cellphones and copper cables.
- The reorganisation of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development into functional business units, which have a proper management structure and accountability criteria at all levels. The programme involves implementing financial policies and procedures for managing the department in accordance with good business practice and generally accepted accounting principles.
- The Support Programme, which seeks to enhance the department's internal capacity through a number of interventions, to address overcrowding and recidivism in prisons.
- The BAC National Vehicle Crime Project, which includes the microdotting of vehicles as a measure against vehicle theft.

Defence

Department of Defence

The 1996 Constitution and the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), stipulate the mandate for the Department of Defence.

The White Paper on Defence (1996) and the *Defence Review* (1998) articulate South Africa's post-apartheid national defence policy. These laws and policies direct and guide the functions and roles of the Department of Defence.

Mission

The mission of the Department of Defence is to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities commensurate with the (security) needs of South Africa and its people, as regulated by the Constitution, national legislation, and parliamentary and executive direction. The department's mission success-factors involve:
- national consensus on defence
- excellent strategic direction
- excellent resource management
- effective combat and support forces
- professionalism in the conduct of operations
- successful implementation of the transformation process.

Legislation

Defence Act, 2002

The Defence Act, 2002 regulates the defence function.

Functions

The SANDF may be employed for:
- defending South Africa, and for protecting its sovereignty and territorial integrity
- complying with South Africa's international obligations regarding international bodies and other states
- preserving life, health and property
- providing and maintaining essential services
- upholding law and order in South Africa in co-operation with the SAPS, under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to maintain law and order on its own
- supporting any state department for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment
- functioning in support of national interests.

Only the President (as Commander-in-Chief) may authorise the deployment of the SANDF, in the defence of South Africa and its people, fulfilment of an international obligation or co-operation with the SAPS.

Policy developments

The Department of Defence has recently drafted a *Defence Update* for the consideration of the executive and the legislature.

The *Defence Update* seeks to strategically align the department with the long-term strategic framework of government as adopted at the January 2008 Cabinet Lekgotla.

In addition, the *Defence Update* gives specific attention to the strategic changes that have arisen on the African continent with the establishment of the AU and the continuation of complex peacekeeping missions unfolding across Africa. The *Defence Update* also seeks to strategically capacitate the SANDF to address the challenging dynamics of peace and security on the African continent. Accordingly, the SANDF's Force Design will require defence resources for a capacity to deal with, among other things, the important tasks of peace-keeping, humanitarian assistance, disaster relief and security-sector reform.

The SANDF's Force Design is characterised by the "Core Growth-One Force" concept (the critical mass required and the integrated use of regulars and reserves), which underpins the design and management of the future force.

The *Defence Update* articulates a "Credible Force Design" that is able to meet both the constitutional obligations of defending South Africa and its people from a conventional external threat, as well as its sovereignty, territorial integrity and the divergent requirements in fulfilment of the African Agenda. The landward forces of the SANDF are the backbone of South Africa's peace and stability initiatives on the continent, which performs functions under hugely differing conditions of climate and terrain, and against a variety of complex challenges. This reality has necessitated that the landward forces become much more flexible and mobile, through a concerted capital renewal process until 2031/32. *Defence Update* thus clearly argues for the renewal of the SANDF's Landward Conventional Defence Capabilities, inclusive of both motorised and mechanised forces.

Strategic orientation of the Department of Defence

Defence Strategy

The Department of Defence's Strategy is based on the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence,* the *Defence Review* and the National Security Strategy. The Defence Strategy articulates the functions of defence as set out in legislation and policy, which include defence and protection of the country and its people against military and non-military threats and the promotion of regional and continental security initiatives of the government.

The Defence Strategy promotes good departmental governance and the continuous improvement of defence capabilities, and also ensures that resources are provided to all required elements of the Department of Defence.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Airforce (SAAF), SA Navy and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and their preparation and maintenance for mission readiness and operational employment. Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint or multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Each formation has its own commander. A formation includes, where practical, all units and support elements related to a specific user-system type. Each formation is capable of providing a fully supported user-system to a commander responsible for the exercising and combat-readiness of land, air, maritime and military health capabilities, such as a brigade or division commander.A formation can provide the same service to a task-force commander appointed by the Chief of Joint Operations. This is a considerable improvement in cost-effectiveness, while it also provides the best way of retaining core defence capabilities, especially expertise in critical mass function. Some examples of formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – direct combat system
- SA Navy – the fleet
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A formation's specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

Force employment

The SANDF exists to employ military capabilities in the execution of operations. The complexity of contemporary military operations demands a high level of integration between force elements contributed by the various services of a defence force. The Chief of Joint Operations, on behalf of the Chief of the SANDF, is responsible for employing forces of the SANDF and is supported by the services and other divisions. For internal operations, nine tactical-level headquarters have

In 2008, the Military Discipline Bill was before Cabinet for approval. In essence, the Bill proposes to form a statutory basis for administration of justice in the South African National Defence Force (SANDF). The objectives of the Bill are to:

- provide for proper administration of military justice in a manner that achieves the maintenance of discipline in the SANDF and promotes equality, fairness, transparency and accountability
- establish independent military courts and appoint independent judicial officers
- ensure fair military trials of persons who appear before military courts
- promote fair treatment of persons who are subject to the Commanding Officer's disciplinary hearing
- ensure that the military legal system and all its aspects comply with the Constitution.

been established, one in each province. If required, temporary joint task force headquarters may be created for specific operations. Combat-ready units are prepared, provided and supported, as required.

Force support

The preparation and employment of the SANDF is supported by the acquisition, maintenance and disposal/retirement of HR, finances, logistic supplies (including facilities and infrastructure) and information systems and which are administered by internal controls within the business rules derived from the applicable resource regulatory framework.

Military Strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *Defence Review*, the *White Paper on Defence* and the National Security Strategy.

Military strategic objectives

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity. The military strategic objectives of the SANDF are the following:

- Enhancing and maintaining comprehensive defence capabilities by providing self-defence in accordance with international law against any external aggression which endangers the stability of South Africa.
- Promoting peace, security and stability in the region and on the continent. The purpose is to provide armed forces for external deployment in accordance with international obligations, or support to enhance security of decisions by the executive.
- Supporting the people of South Africa by being employed for service in South Africa by means of operations other than war during periods when the responsible state departments do not have the capacity to do so.

Missions

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the peacetime strategy for force preparation, and to guide joint and combined force preparation and force employment during times of conflict. The missions envisaged for the next 10 years include:

- repelling conventional and unconventional onslaught
- peace-support operations
- health support
- defence diplomacy
- special operations
- support to other government departments
- disaster relief and humanitarian assistance
- presidential tasks.

Military strategic concepts

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives:

- Providing mission-essential training: The SANDF educates, trains and develops its soldiers in the essential skills required to execute the tasks necessary to accomplish its missions. It focuses on force training and preparation aligned with the allocated budget.
- Establishing a mission-trained force: The SANDF is to have the capability to establish a mission-trained force that can engage in specific missions. The force will be relatively small, but must ultimately be prepared according to the missions and capabilities required.
- Selective engagement where possible: The SANDF will execute all missions as ordered, but will be selective in the courses of action it will follow, the force levels it will field, as well as the capabilities and resources it will provide and maintain. It focuses on consciously taking calculated strategic and operational risks.
- Strategic positioning: This entails establishing early-warning mechanisms, such as deploying military attachés and getting involved in subregional institutions to enhance peace and security in the region. This supports development initiatives such as SADC and the AU.

Military strategic capabilities

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:

- command and control, ICT, information, intelligence, infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities
- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- support capability.

Employment of the SANDF

Conventional operations

In the event of a conventional military threat against South Africa, the broad joint concept of operations will be as follows:

- land operations: the SANDF will conduct offensive, proactive and reactive land operations directed at stopping and destroying the enemy before it can penetrate South African territory
- air operations: opposing air power will be neutralised mainly through defensive counter-air operations assisted by air-mobile land operations aimed at destroying the enemy's air force on the ground
- maritime operations: opposing maritime forces will be attacked at range, while the defence of own and friendly shipping will be enhanced by defensive patrols and escort
- SAMHS operations: during conventional operations, the SAMHS deploys its mobile formation in direct support of land, air and maritime operations.

Non-conventional operations

The broad non-conventional concepts of operations are as follows:

- support to the SAPS in maintaining law and order will be provided by general support tasks and focused rapid-reaction operations directed at priority crime and the conduct of special operations
- border control will be exercised on land, sea and air by high-technology surveillance supported by rapid-reaction forces
- general area protection will be provided by a combination of high-density and rapid-reaction operations.

Operational commitments

Operational commitments include:

- achieving international and regional defence co-operation aims
- executing limited peace operations
- effective land, sea and air-border control
- maintaining law and order in support of the SAPS, with special attention to combating taxi violence, robberies and heists
- controlling South African maritime areas of responsibility, including the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ)
- when requested, providing support to civil authorities within the scope of regulations regarding:
  - – the preservation of life, health and property
  - – the maintenance of essential services
  - – the provision of medical and health services
  - – search-and-rescue operations
  - – missions to the Antarctic and the southern oceans
  - – diplomatic initiatives
- air-transport missions, including for diplomatic commitments and scheduled departmental flights
- area-defence operation missions
- multinational and joint-force preparation missions
- special forces missions.

Borderline control

The SANDF deploys forces in support of the SAPS along South Africa's international borders. The SANDF is gradually phasing out its role in this regard. SANDF deployment consists of an average of nine infantry companies patrolling selected stretches of the borderline as the situation demands, supported by elements of the SAMHS and the SAAF. The SAAF contributes aircraft to deploy land forces along the land borders where necessary. It also conducts reconnaissance flights along the land and sea borders to assist the SA Navy in patrolling the EEZ.

The SA Navy patrols the coastline, assisting the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism with the prosecution of illegal fisherfolk, while also maintaining a presence at sea, thereby deterring other criminal activities such as drug smuggling.

The SAAF further assists the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA) and the SAPS border component in reducing the incidence of illegal aircraft flights into the country, which in most cases, are involved with smuggling. The SAMHS is the confirming authority for all flight medicals for air crew registered with the CAA.

i

The *SAS Queen Modjadji I*, the last of three new submarines acquired by the South African Navy, left Germany in April and arrived in Simon's Town, Cape Town, in May 2008. The submarine was united with her two sister ships, the *SAS Manthatisi* and *SAS Charlotte Maxeke*, which have already been taken into service by the South African Navy.

The fleet of three submarines was bought as part of South Africa's multibillion rand strategic arms acquisition programme, in which the Navy also received four new patrol frigates as part of the package, as well as four Super Linx helicopters to be operated by the South African Air Force from the ships.

Other defence commitments

The Department of Defence's other commitments are to:

- achieve a reasonable level of military diplomacy by:
  - placing and managing defence attachés
  - establishing and maintaining bi- and multilateral agreements
  - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, AU and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meet the international obligations of the Department of Defence in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- provide healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

Peace operations

Based on the *White Paper on South African Participation in International Peace Missions*, the SANDF continues to support peace missions.

Some 3 000 SANDF soldiers are deployed at any given time in peace support and related operations outside South Africa's borders.

The number of South African peacekeeping operations on the African continent has increased. As an erst-while member of the African Union Peace and Security Council (AU PSC) and a non-permanent member of the United Nations Security Council (UNSC), South Africa has become a significant contributor to peacekeeping in Africa. This includes troop contributions (both military units and individuals as civilian police, military observers and military staff officers) and mediation or facilitation. For the first time, members have also been deployed outside the African continent with, for example, the deployment of five members in support of the UN Political Mission in Nepal (UNMIN).

South Africa has also rendered assistance to a number of countries during disasters (for example, Mozambique) and elections (for example, Madagascar and Lesotho) while assistance in support of post-conflict reconstruction is ongoing in countries such as the DRC and Sudan.

Organisational structure

The Department of Defence adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence, through various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence (JSCD) and the Defence Secretariat. While the minister is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the JSCD ensures that the Executive Authority (Minister of Defence) remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the co-ordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

Secretary for Defence

In terms of the Defence Act, 2002, the Defence Secretariat is responsible for:

- supporting the Secretary for Defence in his/her capacity as the head of the department, the accounting officer for the department and the principal departmental adviser to the Minister of Defence

SOUTH AFRICA'S INVOLVEMENT IN PEACEKEEPING OPERATIONS IN AFRICA

	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008
MONUC (DRC)	1	113	161	1 430	1 430	1 230	1 242	1 248	1 248
IEMF (DRC)				22					
TPVM (DRC)			3	3					
UNMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	3	6	6	6	10	6	6	6	1
OLMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	2	2	5	5	4	1	1	1	1
SAPSD (Burundi)		701	750						
AMIB (Burundi)				1 500					
ONUB (Burundi)					1 100	930	865		
BINUB (Burundi)								1	
AUPF (Burundi)					337	337	337		
AUSTF (Burundi)								750	1 000
UNMIL (Liberia)					3	3			
UNMIS (Southern Sudan)								4	4
AMIS (Southern Sudan)					10	339	620	620	
UNAMID (Sudan-Darfur)									800
Southern Sudan-Uganda								2	
Total number of personnel deployed	118	870	925	2 966	2 894	2 846	3 071	2 632	3 054

Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

- performing any functions entrusted by the Minister of Defence to the Secretary for Defence, in particular those necessary to enhance civil control by Parliament over the Department of Defence, parliamentary committees overseeing the Department of Defence, and the Minister of Defence over the Department of Defence
- providing the SANDF with comprehensive instructions regarding the exercise of powers
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister of Defence to the SANDF, and reporting on them to the minister
- ensuring discipline of, administrative control over, and the management of employees, including their effective utilisation and training
- instituting departmental investigations as may be provided for by the law.

Chief of the South African National Defence Force

The functions of the Chief of the SANDF include:

- advising the Minister of Defence on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister of Defence under the authority of the President, as prescribed by the Constitution
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing management and administration
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Defence capital programmes

Army acquisition

By mid-2008, a total of 39 capital-acquisition projects were in various phases. The focus in the medium term will be on the light and mobile capabilities, which include:

- infantry capabilities regarding soldier systems, anti-tank capabilities and mobility together with engineer capabilities dealing with water purification and earth-moving capabilities
- upgrades of existing armour equipment
- artillery and air defence artillery projects addressing the command and control functions, censors and weapon systems to satisfy the requirement for light and mobile forces
- battlefield surveillance as a priority while various logistics projects will ensure sustainment of the landward forces.

Air Force acquisition

The full fleet of Hawk lead-in fighter trainer aircraft has been delivered to the SAAF and flying training at Air Force Base (AFB) Makhado is progressing according to the scheduled training programme.

The first dual-seat Gripen aircraft was delivered to the SAAF in April 2008, with another four aircraft scheduled for delivery by the end of 2008. Single-seat aircraft deliveries are scheduled for the end of 2009, with final delivery of the fleet in 2011.

Twenty-four of the ordered 30 light-utility helicopters have been delivered and the aircraft have entered operational service at all the designated squadrons. All four Super Lynx maritime helicopters were delivered to the SAAF during July 2007 and, by mid-2008, the aircraft were in the final stages of verification for sea operations onboard the SA Navy's patrol corvettes.

By mid-2008, the operational test and evaluation phase was nearing completion and the aircraft were expected to be in full operational service by the end of December 2008.

Airbus Military SL announced a schedule slip of six months in the delivery of the first A400M, with another six months of risk projected. Taking this into account, the first South African A400M will be delivered at the end of 2011. Work has started to construct the new squadron facilities at AFB Waterkloof, that will house the fleet of eight aircraft.

A binational development programme for an infrared air-to-air missile between South Africa and Brazil has been launched, and progress has been made in almost every critical area of design and verification. South Africa will use this missile and Brazilian fighter aircraft after the product has gone into full production in 2011.

A capital programme aimed at the mid-life upgrade of the Pilatus Astra basic training aircraft has been initiated, and a contract for this work was expected to be awarded to Pilatus Switzerland before the end of 2008. The first prototype will be delivered within 18 months from contract placement.

The ongoing life extension programme of the dynamic components of the Oryx medium helicopter fleet was extended to include the upgrade of some avionics and the replacement of the communications suite. This project will run over a four-year period and is expected to deliver the last upgraded aircraft by 2012.

Several smaller projects have been started, such as the replacement of the inventory of outdated pilot personal-locator beacons and the replacement of the radio-switching network for air operations. These projects will enhance existing operational capabilities and close critical gaps in mission-support systems that were hampering the successful conduct of air operations.

Naval acquisition

The four frigates, which have been commissioned and handed over to the SA Navy are:

- *SAS Amatola*
- *SAS Isandlwana*
- *SAS Spioenkop*
- *SAS Mendi.*

Command and Management Information System

The project to provide a tactical telecommunications system for the SANDF has finalised the full system's architecture and it was envisaged that formal acquisition studies of the first components to the system would commence during the course of 2008, with the commencement of the acquisition of some products in 2009.

The projects for a mobile and transportable power-provision system, static and mobile telecommunications carrier system as well as a static electronic warfare system are continuing with their respective definition phases.

The definition of the joint tactical command and control system for brigade level and lower has been completed and the process of acquiring a solution has commenced, with a planned delivery date of 2009.

Special Forces Systems

The design phase of a high-altitude parachute system has being completed and, by mid-2008, approval for continuation was being processed.

South African Military Health Service System

The biochemical defence system for both urban and conventional employment has been re-directed and by mid-2008 the definition phase was being conducted.

High-level defence interventions

Defence transformation

Defence transformation aims to:

- maximise defence capabilities through an affordable and sustainable force design and structure
- minimise defence costs using business processes, for example, engineering and restructuring of especially the support structures
- institutionalise appropriate leadership, command and management practices, philosophy and principles
- align defence policies, plans and management with overall government transformation and administrative-reform initiatives
- ensure compliance with the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended by Act 29 of 1999 and National Treasury regulations.

Shared defence values

After comprehensive research, seven shared values for the department were approved:

- military professionalism
- human dignity
- integrity
- leadership
- accountability
- loyalty
- patriotism.

High-level business process management

To optimise the performance in complex organisations, such as the Department of Defence, it is vital that business processes are aligned with the organisational strategy and policy framework to make the most effective, efficient and economic use of resources.

The Department of Defence is an organisation subject to change due to, not only local but also international, political, social, economic and technological pressures. This necessitates the management of business processes to study the impact of such change quickly and effectively, and address these changes to the organisation. Business process management (BPM) facilitates the orderly and accountable change from one business architecture baseline to the next.

To practise BPM effectively and efficiently, it is essential to establish and sustain a BPM capability which comprises, among other things, a BPM policy framework, process managers, appropriate tools and highly skilled BPM practitioners.

BPM should be accommodated within the Department of Defence's management philosophy and should be practised within an organisational culture supportive of BPM.

Project Loquacious has been established to enable BPM in the Department of Defence as the most appropriate management philosophy to ensure the optimal management and use of business processes so that the Department of Defence's strategic objectives can be achieved effectively, efficiently and economically.

Human Resource 2010 Strategy

A key initiative to sustain the Department of Defence's state of readiness in the context of people-centred transformation is the HR 2010 Strategy (HR 2010).

HR 2010 aims to ensure that the department has the most effective, efficient and economical HR composition of both uniformed and civilian members to deliver on its mandate and support for government.

Military Skills Development System (MSDS)

The MSDS was launched in 2003 and since its inception some 20 488 South Africans have participated in it.

The MSDS aims to ensure a continuous intake of young, healthy South Africans into the SANDF to rejuvenate the Regular Force of the SANDF, as well as to supply the Reserve Force in an effort to maintain mission readiness.

There has been a 40% improvement in the rankage profile of SANDF troops and, as the number of youth intakes increases over the next three years, the capacity of the reserves will be addressed.

The MSDS not only provides young South Africans with military skills, but also contributes to their social upliftment by providing them with skills that they will use in their civilian lives after completing their military service.

Bases

Bases are lower-level structures provided by all the services. Units are generally clustered in or around bases, and share common facilities and services.

Bases exercise administrative control, but not command over attached units.

One Force

"One Force" comprises the regular and reserve-force components of the SANDF. The Regular Force consists of highly trained soldiers to operate and maintain a core capability, as well as sophisticated equipment and defence systems. The Reserve Force is the former part-time component of the SANDF. Members are trained to support the core defence commitment.

Resettlement

The Directorate: Personnel Separation has executed programmes at various levels in terms of HR 2010.

The directorate serves as a nodal point for redeployment and resettlement.

The Department of Defence established the Personnel Rationalisation Advisory and Co-ordinating Committee to ensure efficient and cost-effective support programmesfor resettling and redeploying the department's members and employees affected by separation.

The directorate has established and implemented the Social Plan, which addresses the reskilling and psychosocial needs of the department's employees.

Professional multidisciplinary teams execute this support programme. The HR Planning Instruction guides the process of interdepartmental transfers of redeployable members and employees.

Military veterans

The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect on 1 February 2001. The regulations in terms of the Act were approved for promulgation by the Minister of Defence.

The minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans' Affairs from nominations received from the recognised military veterans' organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.

Facilities, land and environment

Facilities, Land and Environmental Management in the Department of Defence strives for the efficient management of these entities. The department has adopted the process of base conversion. The focus is on the role and responsibilities of the military process of conversion aimed at assisting role-players in closing down and re-using military bases.

The Military Integrated Training Range Guide provides military environmental managers with information that will ensure the long-term continuation of environmentally sound management practices. It will also enhance the ability of the defence sector to sustain long-term and cost-effective range operations.

The department continues to demonstrate its responsibility as the custodian of land entrusted to it through active co-operation in government's land redistribution and restitution policies.

Over the past decade, the department has been rationalising its land portfolio and has made one-third (close to a quarter million hectares) of its original estate available for non-military use.

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002), established the NCACC (a committee of ministers of which the Minister of Defence is a member) as a statutory body to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control, and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.

The NCACC's Policy for the Control of Trade in Conventional Arms was promulgated in January 2004. National conventional arms-control regulations, published in May 2004, deal with applications for permits and the list of dual-use goods, technologies and munitions that are subject to control. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, after which the Ministry of Defence processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as foreign affairs or trade and industry. The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision. An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the JSCD.

Public-sector South African defence industry

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

Armscor is a statutory body established in accordance with the Armscor Limited Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003). The Minister of Defence is the executive authority responsible for Armscor. The management and control of Armscor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armscor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate. These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme, and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities. Armscor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and, with the approval of the Minister of Defence, for any organ of state, public entities and any sovereign state that may require such services.

Armscor renders a quality-assurance capability in support of acquisition and technology projects as well as for any other service required by the Department of Defence.

Armscor provides for a quality-assurance capability in support of acquisition and technology projects as well as for any other service required by the Department of Defence. To enhance this capability, Armscor is a certified International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000.
Armscor is financed mainly by an annual payment from the Department of Defence, interest received on investments, letting of its buildings, commission from stock sales and income from subsidiaries. The acquisition of arms is transparent and fully accountable. Armscor publishes the monthly *Contracts Bulletin*, which contains all requests for proposals and bids awarded. A daily electronic bulletin is also available to the industry through a secure computer network.

Armscor Business (Pty) Ltd

This subsidiary of Armscor offers defence-support services of an exceptional standard to the Department of Defence.

The core of these services includes defence research and development, test and evaluation, disposal of defence material and logistic support services. To fulfil this mandate, Armscor Business is structured into three groups as outlined below.

Defence, Science and Technology Institute

- The Institute for Maritime Technology aims to satisfy strategic needs for technomilitary maritime support, products and services; and to establish applicable technology and systems to further the interests of the SANDF.

- Protechnik Laboratories conducts research, and develops and implements projects in the fields of chemical and biological defence, and the non-proliferation of chemical weapons.
- The Defence Institute assists the defence community in developing informed solutions to decision-making problems over the full life-cycle of defence capabilities.
- Hazmat Protective Systems manufactures and distributes protective equipment such as filter canisters, cartridges and masks, and impregnates activated carbon.
- Ergonomics Technologies is a leading ergonomics consultancy providing a comprehensive service in ergonomics, and occupational health and safety, both locally and internationally. It is an inspection authority in occupational hygiene, approved by the Department of Labour.
- Flamengro, the Fluid and Mechanical Engineering Group, specialises in the numerical stimulation of the dynamic behaviour of fluid flow and structures, and the processing of experimental data to serve as input for improved simulations or to evaluate the accuracy of theoretical predictions.
- Armour Development provides a research and development capability for armour protection and anti-armour attacks.

Test and Evaluation Group

- Gerotek Test Facilities provides specialised services such as testing and evaluating vehicles and vehicle components, researching and developing vehicle-testing technologies and methods, VHF/UHF and microwave antenna-testing and evaluation, environmental testing, and verifying military products against specification. The Events Division offers restaurant, conference and development facilities, whereas the Training Division offers various driver-training courses.
- Alkantpan offers an all-purpose weapon and ammunition test range for the testing of all kinds of weaponry, ranging in calibre from 20 mm to 155 mm and larger.

Defence Support Group

- Armscor Defence Asset Management Centre provides decision-making support in the acquisition, operational and phasing-out phases of systems by rendering data and asset-management services.
- Defence Materiel Disposal is the appointed agent of the Department of Defence to dispose of redundant military defence equipment.
- AB Logistics Freight is a registered and accredited customs-clearing agent with the South African Revenue Service, and a member of the Federation of Freight Forwarders Associations and the South African Association of Freight Forwarders. It also enjoysauthority to act as a customs-clearing agent in South Africa.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a state-owned company operating in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. It was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973). On behalf of the shareholder, the Minister of Public Enterprises appoints an independent board of directors, while the executive management team is responsible for the day-to-day management of the company.

Major restructuring, which started in 2005, resulted in the Denel Group now being essentially decentralised and unbundled into a holding company, with equity in several stand-alone businesses. Some of these have be corporatised, while others are in the process of being incorporated. Each of these already has its own board of directors and operates as if on its own.

Denel (Pty) Ltd as the state-owned holding company will retain equity in these businesses, varying from full ownership (100%) to minority shareholding. While the unbundling of the South African Government's defence company is key to refocusing the business, government considers Denel a strategic asset. It therefore retains a "golden share" in the businesses to protect the country's technological capabilities and ensure their role as key domestic suppliers to the SANDF.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of defence systems in the SANDF's arsenal. As such, they ensure a greater measure of strategic independence for the country, while providing the SANDF with the cost-effective means to undertake its role in peacekeeping and in peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

Denel has developed innovative technologies in several niche areas, notably in artillery, munitions, missiles and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs). Along with specific production capabilities, its businesses are well positioned to act as specialised contractors to global defence suppliers.

As a state-owned enterprise, Denel is subject to the PFMA, 1999, while being managed in accordance with sound business principles and good corporate governance.

Denel's core businesses and subsidiaries

In decentralising the group structure, Denel envisages several new companies in which it would hold equity on behalf of the South African government.

As the process of incorporating the new companies unfolds, the businesses are already being managed as stand-alone companies.

In 2007/08, Denel sold a majority holding in its optronics division to German firm, Carl Zeiss, which now owns 70% in the new entity, Carl Zeiss Optronics (Pty) Ltd. Denel holds a minority holding (49%) in Turbomeca Africa (Pty) Ltd, which is in the business of the manufacturing of aircraft gearboxes and the maintenance and repair of aero-engines.

The majority shareholder is Turbomeca, which is part of the Safran Group in France. In early 2008, agreement was reached with Germany's Rheinmetall defence companyfor it to acquire a majority holding in Denel Munitions.

The finalisation of the transaction was expected in the second half of 2008. Denel's businesses and subsidiaries are as follows:

- Denel Aviation: With more than 40 years' experience in the maintenance, repair and overhaul (MRO) business, Denel Aviation has traditionally provided support services to the SAAF and the South African aviation industry. The line and heavy maintenance capabilities for fixed wing and rotary wing aircraft are complemented by maintenance workshops for mechanical, electrical and avionic aircraft components. Denel Aviation's rotary wing capabilities were enhanced by accreditation from Eurocopter in 2007. This enables Denel Aviation to give the SAAF strategically important support regarding the Oryx transport helicopter and Rooivalk attack helicopter for the next 15 years or more.
- Denel Dynamics: As a business dedicated to the domains of missiles and UAVs, Denel Dynamics also comprises Denel Integrated Systems Solutions, a unit responsible for the SANDF's ground-based air defence system (GBADS). During 2007/08, it agreed an equity partnership with South African firm, ATE, in the business of UAVs. Following its earlier success with the Umkhonto-IR surface-to-air missile in Finland, Denel Dynamics also had its missile selected by the Swedish Navy. The company is continuing development on the bi-national A-Darter air-to-air missile programme with Brazil, enabling South Africa to remain at the forefront of modern missile technology development.
- Denel-Saab Aerostructures (Pty) Ltd: Having acquired a 20% holding in Denel's aerostructures business during 2006, Saab of Sweden is also responsible for managing the entity. This business, which is adjacent to OR Tambo International Airport, supplies aircraft detail components and aerostructure subassemblies. It also undertakes the assembly and integration of airframes. On the multinational Airbus A400M military transport programme, Denel-Saab Aerostructures is responsible for designing and building crucial parts, including the 15-m long wing-to-fuselage fairing and the interior structure of the vertical tail. It also manufactures parts for the Gripen jetfighter, while doing final assembly of the SAAF's A109 LUH helicopter. It has a long-standing contract to supply parts to Boeing for commercial airliners.
- Denel Land Systems (DLS): Based near Pretoria, DLS is a landward defence-system solutions business, with its primary focus on the SANDF's requirements. Where it has a competitive advantage, DLS serves international customers as system integrator and subsystem/product supplier. It is renowned for developing, producing, maintaining and upgrading infantry systems, artillery gun systems (like the renowned 155-mm G5 and G6 systems) and combat turrets, as well as small arms. Having won the R8-billion contract from Armscor to develop a new generation infantry combat vehicle (ICV) for the SA Army (Project "Hoefyster"), DLS is progressing well with the development of five variants of the "Badger" ICV, based on a Finnish Patria platform. This system will replace the army's 30-year old "Ratel" vehicle.During 2007/08, DLS was contracted to upgrade some of the SA Army's "Rooikat" combat vehicles and to develop a new long-range mortar system (Project "Acrobat").
- Denel Munitions: As an integrated producer of ammunition and associated chemical products, Denel Munitions has an extensive portfolio of ammunition. It ranges from small (5,56 mm to 12,7 mm) and medium calibre

(20 mm to 35 mm) to large calibre (76 mm to 155 mm) and military and commercial ammunition and includes artillery projectiles, charges and pyrotechnic carriers, mortar bombs and various subsystems. Denel Munitions also supplies critical subsystems like propellants, warheads and safety-and-arming devices for the Denel Dynamics range of missiles and guided weapons. The Denel Munitions' facilities are located in seven plants across the country, notably the Western Cape, Gauteng and the North West. In 2008, Denel Munitions' PMP plant in the west of Pretoria celebrated 70 years of manufacturing small and medium calibre ammunition. In February 2008, Rheinmetall of Germany agreed to take a majority (51%) equity holding in Denel Munitions, excluding PMP, subject to certain suspensive conditions. Denel (Pty) Ltd will retain the other shares. Denel Munitions has several partnership arrangements, notably with the US firm General Dynamics Tactical Ordnance Systems on 105-mm and 155-mm artillery projectiles and with its Europe's Nitrochemie on artillery modular charges.

- Mechem (Pty) Ltd: Now an incorporated business, Mechem is a highly successful mine-action company. It provides turnkey landmine-removal and contraband-detection services to commercial clients all over the world. As one of the largest demining contractors to the UN, Mechem has successfully conducted demining operations in support of UN peacekeeping missions in Sudan, Eritrea, the DRC and Afghanistan.
- Overberg Test Range (OTB): This versatile missile and aircraft test range at the southernmost tip of Africa specialises in in-flight systems performance measurements for the local and international aerospace industries. Its spectrum of services ranges from tests of short-range guided munitions for land, sea and air combat, to evaluations of stand-off weapons and aircraft performance. Having supported several launches for Boeing/National Aeronautics and Space Administration in 2007, OTB was contracted in 2008 to assist with the European Space Agency's launch of its "Jules Verne" spacecraft to the International Space Station. By mid-2008, OTB was the subject of a study into the possible establishment of a South African defence research institute.

Intelligence services

There are two civilian intelligence structures, namely the National Intelligence Agency (NIA) and the South African Secret Service (SASS).

The intelligence community provides evaluated information to:

- safeguard the Constitution
- promote the interrelated elements of security, stability, co-operation and development, both within South Africa and in relation to southern Africa
- uphold the individual rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution
- promote South Africa's ability to face foreign threats and enhance its competitiveness in a dynamic world.

National Intelligence Agency

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defines the primary functions of the NIA as being to gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Co-ordinating Committee (Nicoc)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state, and transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department without delay
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and, for this purpose, conduct and co-ordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

South African Secret Service

Section 2(2) of the National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994, as amended, stipulates the role of the SASS as being to:

- gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, in order to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence relating to national strategic intelligence to Nicoc
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state and,

without delay, to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to Nicoc.

Intelligence oversight

Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence (JSCI)

Integral to the *White Paper on Intelligence*, drafted in 1994, was the establishment of legislative oversight mechanisms. The JSCI is an oversight parliamentary body comprising members of the six largest political parties. Selection to the committee is based on proportional representation decided on by the percentage of votes received in the last national election.

The JSCI hears complaints from the public, scrutinises the finances and operations of the services, and reports to Parliament on these.

Parliamentary members serving on the JSCI take an oath of secrecy and undergo security screening to ensure that they do not compromise the work of the services in the course of performing their duties.

Inspector-General

The Inspector-General monitors compliance with the Constitution, laws and policies of the country. The Office of the Inspector-General reports to the Minister of Intelligence Services.

The office reviews the activities of the services, receives and investigates complaints from the general public and the JSCI, or is tasked by the Minister of Intelligence Services.

The Inspector-General is appointed by the President following approval by two-thirds of the members of the National Assembly.

Other civilian intelligence structures

Office of Interception Centre (OIC)

The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002), was implemented in 2005. In line with this, the OIC was established in July 2006. Oversight and control of this centre reside with the Minister of Intelligence Services, the JSCI and the Inspector-General. The office provides a service to all law-enforcement agencies, alleviating duplication, pooling resources and limiting abuse of this instrument.

South African National Academy of Intelligence (Sanai)

Sanai plays a central role in providing quality training to members of the intelligence services.

Training at Sanai, which was established in February 2003, is geared towards producing officers who understand the political and security realms of South Africa and Africa. The academy comprises the Academic Faculty, the Intelligence Research Institute and the ETD Support Component. Located in Mafikeng, North West, the Sanai campus is named after the late Mzwandile Piliso, a veteran intelligence officer who played an important role in establishing a non-statutory intelligence body that served the liberation movement.

Intelligence Services Council (ISC)

The ISC conducts continuous research towards developing effective and competitive working conditions for members, commensurate benefits, career options and, eventually, retirement benefits.

Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec)

Comsec was established as a private company in February 2003 to ensure that critical electronic communications of government and related organs are protected and secured. Comsec's functions include securing government communications against unauthorised access and technical, electronic or any other related threats. The company will, in concurrence with the NIA, provide verification services for electronic communications security systems, products and services used by the State. Comsec strives for greater co-ordination, integration, alignment and the maintenance of communications security.

National Communications Centre (NCC)

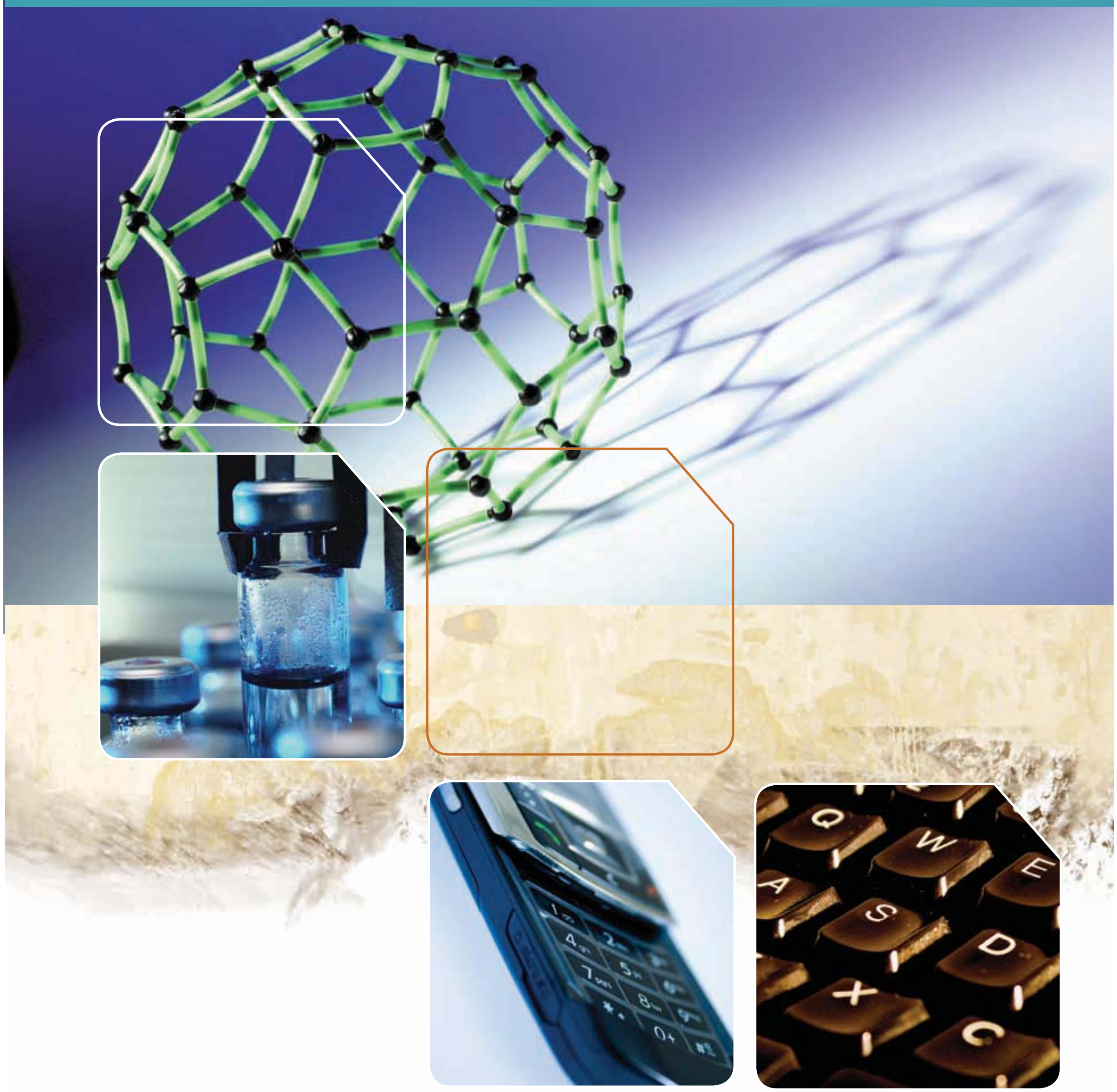
The NCC serves as an advisory structure to the Minister of Intelligence Services on matters related to signals-intelligence procurement, management and direction. This includes areas such as the Signals Intelligence Evaluation Centre and the OIC.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Denel
Development Indicators, 2008
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Secretariat for Safety and Security
South African National Defence Force
South African Police Service
www.gov.za
www.nia.gov.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.sass.gov.za

Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. *The Dirty Work of Democracy*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
Altbeker, A. *A Country at War with Itself: South Africa's Crisis of Crime*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Burger, J. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Punishment in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.
Buur, L, Jensen, S and Stepputat, F, eds. *Security Development* NEXUS: *Expressions of Sovereignty and Securitisation in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2007.
Cohen, D. *People Who Have Stolen From Me.* Johannesburg: Picador, 2004.
Dixon, B and van der Spuy, E. *Justice Gained? Crime and Crime Control in South Africa's Transition*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.
Du Plessis, M and Ford, J. eds. *Unable or Unwilling: Case Studies on Domestic Implementation of the ICC Statute in Selected African Countries.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2008.
Diedericks, A. *Journey without Boundaries: the Operational Life and Experiences of a S A Special Forces Small Team Operator*. Durban: Just Done Publications, 2007.
Gumedze, S. ed. *Private Security in Africa: Manifestation, Challenges and Regulation*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2007.
Hammerstad, A. ed. *People, States and Regions: Building a Collaborative Security Region in Southern Africa.* Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2005.
Hendricks, C. ed. *Polling Station: From State Security to Human Security in Southern Africa.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2006.
Irish-Qobosheane, J. *Gentlemen or Villains, Thugs or Heroes*: *the Social Economy of Organised Crime in South Africa*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2007.
Kirsten, A. *A Nation without Guns: the Story of Gun Free South Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2008.
Kynoch, G. *We are Fighting the World: A History of the Marashea Gangs in South Africa*, 1947 – 1999. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Marks, M. *Transforming the Robocops: Changing Police in South Africa.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Marks, M. *Young Warriors: Youth Politics, Identity and Violence in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Mills, G. *Security Intersection: The Paradox of Power in an Age of Terror*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
Nortje, P. *32 Battalion: the Inside Story of South Africa's Elite Fighting Unit*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2003.
Okamu, W and Botha, A. eds. *Understanding Terrorism in Africa*: In Search for an African Voice. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2007.
Pistorius, M. *Profiling Serial Killers and Other Crimes in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2005.
Rupiya, M, ed. *The Enemy Within: Southern African Militaries' Quarter-Century Battle with HIV and AIDS.* Tshwane (Pretoria): ISS, 2006.
Sanders, J. *Apartheid's Friends: The Rise and Fall of South Africa's Secret Service*. London: Murray, 2006.
Solomon, H. ed. *Towards a Common Defence and Security Policy in the Southern African Development Community.* Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa, 2004.
Wannenburg, G. *Africa's Pablos and Political Entrepreneurs: War, the State and Criminal Networks in West and Southern Africa*. Johannesburg: South African Insitute of International Affairs, 2006.
Webb, S. *OPS Medic: a National Serviceman's Border War*. Alberton: Galago Books, 2008.



The Department of Science and Technology (S&T) strives towards introducing measures that put S&T to work to make an impact on growth and development in a sustainable manner in areas that matter to all the people of South Africa.

The department primarily focuses on implementing the National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), which was adopted in 2002. It provides for an integrated approach to human-resource (HR) development, knowledge generation, investment in infrastructure and improving the strategic management of the public S&T system.

These measures include focused interventions, networking and acting as a catalyst for change in terms of both productive components of South Africa's economy, making it competitive in a globally competitive liberalised environment, and also in respect of the huge development backlog existing among the poorest components of society.

The revised strategic-management model for the S&T system enables the department to develop emerging and rapidly changing areas of S&T, and to co-ordinate and support sector-specific S&T activities initiated by other government departments. Expenditure is expected to continue to increase rapidly, to R4,1 billion in 2009/10, representing an average annual increase of 20%.

Most of this expenditure comprises transfers to public entities for S&T initiatives. South Africa has to address what the NRDS identifies as the "innovation chasm", the gap that exists between the knowledge generators and the market. The establishment of the Technology Innovation Agency is expected to narrow this gap.

Once established, the agency will have the competency to assist the National System of Innovation (NSI) to acquire the existing body of knowledge, and to develop technology-based services and products that could be commercialised and diffused through the economy. Legislation in this regard was tabled in Parliament in May 2008.

In July 2007, Cabinet approved the department's plan, Innovation towards a Knowledge-Based Economy. This aims to help drive South Africa's transformation towards a knowledge-based economy in which the production and dissemination of knowledge leads to economic benefits and enriches all fields of human endeavour. To this extent, success will be measured by the degree to which S&T plays a driving role in enhancing productivity, economic growth and socio-economic development.

The plan addresses an array of social, economic, political, environmental, scientific and technological benefits, and is designed to stimulate multi-disciplinary thinking and challenge South Africa's researchers to answer existing questions, create new disciplines and develop new technologies.

It sets core projects, which are summarised as South Africa's "grand challenges" in S&T and include: the farmer to pharma value chain, space and S&T, energy security, S&T in response to climate change and human and social dynamics.

Legislation

Government plays a formative role in research and innovation by developing and approving policy, legislation and regulatory frameworks; setting the overall national agenda; and creating an enabling environment for research and innovation to thrive. Since 1994, government has put forward a range of mechanisms to encourage innovation in the private sector, government research institutes and the Higher Education (HE) sector.

The Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa) and the sector education and training authorities (Setas) are other strategies and tactics used to increase various skills in South Africa. In particular Jipsa, as a framework, is aimed at addressing the shortage of urgently needed skills. It targets and mobilises unemployed graduates, and retired and foreign experts for deployment into the economy.

Through this process, knowledge is shared and transferred.

The department is determined to realise its mission to develop, co-ordinate and manage an NSI that will help achieve a critical mass of the required human capital, realise sustainable economic growth and improve the general quality of life of the people of South Africa and of the people in neighbouring countries.

As part of developing the NSI, all programmes and initiatives are carried out in partnership with business, labour, academia, research councils, HE institutions and other knowledge producers.

National System of Innovation

The *White Paper on S&T* (1996) introduced the NSI as the basis of the S&T interventions in the South African economy.

Aligned with South Africa's national devel-op-mental priorities and programmes, such as, among other things, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and the National Spatial Development Programme, substantial progress has already been made in this regard. The Department of Science and Technology's budget allocation of R3,7 billion for the 2008/09 financial year brought national spend on research and development (R&D) to 0,9% of gross domestic product. The department aimed to see this grow to 1% by the end of 2008/09.

Some R195 million was set aside for the strengthening of the scientific capacity of HE institutions. This included increasing the number of research chairs by 30% over the next three years.

This investment is in line with the department's NRDS, which places enormous value on human capital and skills development.

The Department of Science and Technology is providing resources and co-operating with universities and the National Research Foundation (NRF) to use a licensed information technology (IT) platform to gather and make available information on research activity within tertiary education institutions.

The largest share of the department's budget over the medium term, about R323 million, has been allocated to the Human Capital and Knowledge Programme, which addresses the adequate development and renewal of human scientific resources. It will strengthen current programmes, which include the:

- Research Professional Development Programme, which targets young Science, Engineering and Technology (SET) masters and doctoral students
- Postdoctoral Fellowship Programme
- Centres of Excellence (CoE) Programme.

The Technology Innovation Agency (TIA) Bill calls for the creation of an agency that will stimulate the development of technology-based products and services and technology-based public and private enterprises, and help grow a technology base for South Africa's economy.

The primary objective of the agency will be to stimulate and intensify technological innovation for the purposes of improving South Africa's economic growth, thereby enhancing the quality of life of South Africa's people. The agency is intended to develop and support local technological inventions and innovations, and create an enabling environment for their commercialisation.

The Bill further provides for the appointment of the TIA Board, the CEO and staff, and sets out the powers and functions of the agency, which will include, among other things, to:

- provide financial assistance to people, consortia or enterprises to enable them to develop and commercialise their technological innovations and inventions
- draw together and integrate the management of disparate technological innovation initiatives that are specifically at the technology development stage.

Innovation Fund (IF)

The IF promotes technological innovation through investments into novel technologies that will lead to established successful companies or the expansion of industrial sectors. To give effect to this, the IF has a series of investment instruments structured to fund end-stage R&D, commercialisation, start-up companies and intellectual property management.

The IF addresses serious problems that could impede socio-economic development or affect the country's ability to compete in products and services. Through the IF and the Bioregional Innovation Centres (Brics), the department is focusing its efforts on establishing the institutional infrastructure, legislation and policy framework needed to integrate the process of knowledge creation and its subsequent commercialisation for national benefit.

Among other things, the fund promotes technological innovation through consortia of expertise drawn from both public and private sectors.

The instruments of the IF are specifically tailored to foster the pursuit of high-risk technologies by business entities, by creating partnerships that draw on technical expertise in the public research enterprise. The incentive to the business partners is the equal sharing of the R&D costs of the market-oriented research agenda.

The IF is managed by the NRF. It provides funding to near-market and end-stage research, which produces new intellectual property (IP) and commercial enterprises, and expands existing industrial sectors.

HE students, particularly first-degree engineering students, can take advantage of the fund by developing, as part of their final-year work, projects resulting in the creation of new IP or the establishment and/or expansion of commercial enterprises.

The NRF claims a management and administration fee from the allocated budget for support services rendered.

Promoting niche areas

Astronomy

Through the Astronomy Geographical Advantage Programme, South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment in space science to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

A key result was the launch of the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

The Salt is a multimillion rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America (USA), New Zealand and the United Kingdom (UK). The Salt is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

South Africa has been shortlisted, along with Australia, as one of the sites for the world-class radio telescope, the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). A final decision in this regard is expected in 2011.

The SKA will be the biggest telescope ever built, the only one of its kind worldwide, and the only instrument able to answer the most basic questions of the origin of the universe and the birth and evolution of stars and galaxies. It will investigate the origin of magnetism in the universe and will be the most powerful instrument ever to search for extraterrestrial intelligence.

South Africa has assembled a team to build the Karoo Array Telescope (Kat). The Kat team and researchers in the UK, the Netherlands, Australia and the USA are developing digital signal processing for the telescope, and software and innovative telescope antennas, using composites.

The SKA and Kat projects are important for developing high-level skills and expertise in South Africa.

The MeerKat radio telescope is both an SKA "pathfinder telescope" and an indigenous initiative to build a hi-tech, world-leading centimetre-wave radio telescope that will set a standard for many years.

South African scientists and engineers began the design, development and construction of MeerKat four years ago, in collaboration with the universities of Cambridge, Oxford, Manchester, California, Caltech, the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and others.

MeerKat will be complete and in service by late 2012 and will consist of up to 80 12-metre antennas. The final number of antennas to be built remains subject to budget constraints.

Preparatory construction work is underway at a site near Carnarvon, in the Northern Cape, that will host the first phase of the MeerKat radio telescope project by the end of 2009.

The Department of Science and Technology has provided funding for graduate study associated with these projects.

This programme is being extended to South Africa's partners in the SKA bid – Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique and Namibia.

The 2007/08 Budget allocated R500 million, both for the SKA and for the construction of the Kat, which will in turn provide the means to train scientists and engineers to acquire relevant capabilities and skills.

The Kat team has been recognised for its competence and is being called upon to assist and advise the international SKA project office on system engineering, costing and other key technology areas.

> A survey by the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) found that South Africa spent at least R16,5 billion on research and development (R&D) in 2006/07, an indication that the country is progressing towards being a knowledge-based economy.
>
> The purpose of the survey, conducted by the HSRC's Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators, found that R&D expenditure had increased from R14,1 billion in 2005/06.

Space science

In the Department of Science and Technology's Ten-Year Innovation Plan, the development of space S&T has been identified as one of five priority areas.

The National Space Agency Bill was signed into law in January 2009. The agency will promote the peaceful use of outer space; foster research in astronomy, Earth observation, communications, navigation and space physics; foster international co-operation in space-related activities; and advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies through human-capital development and outreach programmes.

The agency must facilitate the development of space missions, develop technology platforms and acquire, assimilate and disseminate space satellite data for any organ of state.

It will also implement the National Space Strategy, which was approved by Cabinet in December 2008, to stimulate the capability to place South Africa among the leading nations in the innovative use of space S&T.

Biotechnology

The National Biotechnology Strategy (NBS) sets the agenda for the development of South Africa's biotechnology industry.

AsgiSA has identified biofuels as a potential contributor to rural development. This includes the establishment of sustainable rural jobs, both in the agricultural sector and in the processing of biofuels. Efforts are underway to examine the introduction of biofuels in the commercial transport sector, as a way of stimulating a biofuels industry in South Africa.

However, such a strategy needs to be complemented by other biofuels-related initiatives that will enable the products to be used beyond the commercial transport fuel sector. One such initiative is the local production of biofuels for local users. Internationally, this has taken the form of the development of a local biofuels industry that supplies fuel for running public transport.

This project will explore the potential of such an approach through the deployment of appropriate technology and initiation support for R&D activities. Results of this project should serve as a benchmark and model for public transportation.

The biotechnology sector is attracting a fast-growing portion of R&D funding. The department is also committed to developing biotechnology in Africa. In August 2005, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) initiated a southern regional hub of the New Partnership for Africa's Development's (Nepad) African Biosciences Initiative.

In 2008, the Centre for Proteomic and Genomic Research (CPGR), the first of its kind in South Africa, opened at the University of Cape Town's medical campus, giving local researchers a powerful new tool for combating a variety of diseases.

The centre is, among other things, engaged in researching a new and improved molecular diagnostic marker of diseases such as malaria, leukaemia and colorectal cancer; is conducting a search for markers of pathogen resistance in maize; and is assessing the possible health risks associated with the development of genetically modified plants.

The centre combines an integrated technological approach with a strong focus on translating information-rich discoveries into practical applications.

The centre will provide advanced biological solutions and project support to the country's scientific community, as well as high-quality analytical services to academia and industry.

Research related to agriculture, human and animal health, environment and industry is being prioritised. Other initiatives include the establishment of Brics, namely: Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad), Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre.

Brics were created as instruments for implementing the NBS. Their focus areas cover a wide spectrum of subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bio-informatics and plant biotechnology.

One of the challenges facing the South African biotechnology sector is the public's lack of understanding and knowledge of biotechnology applications and benefits.

As a result, the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme was initiated to provide South Africans with information, enabling them to participate meaningfully in debates about biotechnology and to make informed decisions in this regard.

In addition, the implementation of the NBS has seen the development of the National Bio-Informatics Network (NBN) at eight universities, investing in technology research and development (R&D), infrastructure and teaching.

The results of biotechnology investments have long lead times, sometimes up to 15 years, yet some success stories resulting from the investments and interventions made by the biotechnology institutions are already being reported.

The goal is to expand the country's biotechnology platform and develop a bio-economy base.

Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS)

The IKS has had a number of successes since its launch in 2004.

This includes the timely establishment of the Ministerial Advisory Committee, which assists in establishing IKS chairs to be located within HE institutions, based on nationally prioritised areas such as traditional medicines, knowledge studies and indigenous food security.

Government plans to develop IKS databases, following an audit of those residing at various institutions. It is also envisaged that a hardware multimedia recording system to capture documentation, such as the registration of holders of indigenous knowledge, interviews and satellite-information linkages, will be developed.

Public funding

The provision of public funding is a key component of government's responsibility of creating an enabling environment for R&D. To track investments, government has initiated a process whereby a national R&D survey is conducted every year. The link between government and industry is crucial. Current human-capital programmes have introduced research chairs with industry partnerships to strengthen this linkage.

The need to attract and retain more talented recruits to the sciences stimulated a number of human-capital programmes, such as the CoEs and the South African Research Chairs Initiative (Sarchi). More than 72 research chairs have been established at HE institutions, 16 of which are in new disciplines. The target is to establish 210 research chairs by 2010 to contribute to the growth of high-level research capital and production capacity in the academic and industrial sectors.

Working with the National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci), the department has produced a comprehensive report on the infrastructure requirements for both science and innovation. This will form the basis of a long-term infrastructure plan for S&T.

Other infrastructure projects that government is expected to benefit from include the Centre for High Performance Computing (CHPC), nanotechnology characterisation centres, astronomy and space science.

Regarding nanotechnology and nanoscience, government is in the process of creating the physical infrastructure that will enable first-class basic research, exploration of applications, the development of new industries and the commercialisation of innovations.

In April 2008, the South African National Research Network (Sanren) reached a significant milestone when the first four research infrastructure sites went live in Johannesburg, representing a major step forward in the creation of an information and communications technology platform for South African research.

Teams from the Tertiary Education Network, the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of Johannesburg and the second landline operator Neotel worked together to deploy the network.

The Sanren project is sponsored by the Department of Science and Technology and managed by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research's Meraka Institute, while Sanren is providing the network equipment and Neotel is providing the optical fibre circuit to ensure a high capacity backbone for the Johannesburg ring.

Policy and initiatives

National Research and Development Strategy

The NRDS is an enabling framework for South Africa's innovation system to prioritise economic sectors with growth potential, such as biotechnology, nanotechnology, IT and space technology. The strategy has enabled government to increase investment in human capital to transform and fill the skills gaps identified in key sectors.

More focused sector strategies, such as the Biotechnology Strategy, the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS) and the Nanotechnology Strategy, were formulated.

A need was identified to enhance the research infrastructure to create a knowledge workforce for advanced technology businesses, and so support the country's future competitiveness and its ability to achieve an improved quality of life.

The NRDS focuses on three broad areas:

- Innovation, primarily through technology missions: The emphasis is on technological innovation, demonstrating technology, incubating new technology-based businesses and enhancing networks of knowledge workers and organisations in specific areas of technology.
- Strengthening SET, HR and transformation: The emphasis is on establishing CoEs, founding and funding networks for Nepad and the Southern African Development Community (SADC), strengthening global science networks, formulating strategies aimed at sourcing new finance for R&D equipment, strengthening institutional and individual research capacity in science focus areas through the NRF, and increasing public understanding and engagement.
- Creating an effective government S&T system: A clear distinction needs to be drawn between the roles of line-function departments and the integrative role of the Department of Science and Technology. This focus area is involved in generating three-year R&D plans for science councils in line with the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) process, developing standard-reporting frameworks and a performance-management system for all institutions, and giving the department central responsibility for producing an integrative budget for all S&T initiatives.

The seven CoEs are:
- biomedical tuberculosis (TB) research
- invasion biology
- strong materials
- birds as keys to biodiversity conservation at the Percy Fitzpatrick Institute
- catalysis
- tree health biotechnology at the Forestry and Agricultural Biotechnology Institute
- epidemiological modelling and analysis.

Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy

The AMTS guides efforts in the manufacturing sector, including the aerospace industry. The AMTS strives to:
- develop technology platforms that increase current and create new competitive advantages
- establish partnerships and human-capital development.
- enhance the knowledge base and intensity of South Africa's manufacturing sector.

In 2006, the Department of Trade and Industry launched the National Aerospace Centre of Excellence, located at the University of the Witwatersrand.

The Centre for Innovation, focusing on craft and design, opened in Cape Town in July 2006. The centre was the first of its kind in the world and a state-of-the-art resourced venue aimed at promoting innovative design, product development and process technologies for crafters and designers.

The Cape Craft and Design Institute (CCDI) spearheaded the creation of the centre, together with the Western Cape Provincial Government and the AMTS.

The Centre for Innovation incorporates a fabrication laboratory, sponsored by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). The centre's activities are linked to the CCDI's small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) development and market-access support programmes.

Government has set aside R16 million to establish 10 fabrication laboratories (FabLabs) around the country, providing disadvantaged communities with opportunities in the design, testing and fabrication process.

> The Department of Science and Technology is leading a number of strategic interventions to assist young people to take science-based career directions. These interventions take place under the auspices of the Youth into Science Strategy, which was launched in 2007.

> The Department of Science and Technology established the National Indigenous Knowledge Systems Office (NIKSO) to, among other things, increase public awareness, understanding, knowledge and appreciation of the Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS).
>
> NIKSO has created an appropriate platform through the Interdepartmental Committee on IKS to co-ordinate and promote the work of different departments. The inaugural IKS Expo took place in 2008 and primary objectives were to:
> - raise awareness of IKS
> - demonstrate the richness of South Africa's IKS
> - showcase innovation emerging from IKS
> - highlight the interrelatedness of IKS with other disciplines.

FabLabs form part of the department's goal of providing SET platforms for social development, while benefiting private-sector competitiveness and growth. Advanced manufacturing technology is brought to ordinary people as an accessible platform to empower them by hands-on participation in an environment that enables the freedom to experiment, and encourages peer-to-peer learning. FabLabs are also sponsored by the MIT's Centre of Bits and Atoms.

In 2007/08, six FabLabs were operational throughout South Africa, in Pretoria, Soshanguve, Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Potchefstroom and Kimberley.

South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri)

Saneri is the public entity entrusted with the co-ordination and undertaking of public-interest energy research, development and demonstration.

Saneri was established by the then Minister of Minerals and Energy in October 2004, as a subsidiary of the Central Energy Fund (Pty) Limited (Ltd), the state energy company in South Africa. The Department of Science and Technology and the Department of Minerals and Energy are joint custodians of Saneri and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

Saneri's main aim is to build research capacity by funding research at universities and in the science councils.

Allocations for the 2008 MTEF period are R44,3 million, R46,3 million and R49,3 million, respectively.

Saneri, through R&D, provides for:

- cost-effective and efficient energy generation, transformation, transport, end-use and decision-support technologies
- energy-technology innovation
- sustainable development and use of energy resources
- improving the quality of life of all South Africans
- promoting and conducting training of energy researchers
- establishing and expanding industries in the field of energy
- commercialising energy technologies resulting from its R&D and innovation programmes.

Saneri established the Renewable and Sustainable Energy Research and Development Hub at the University of Stellenbosch. The hub will support the development of a vibrant renewable and sustainable energy-supply industry in South Africa.

Pebble Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR)

PBMR (Pty) Ltd of South Africa develops and markets small-scale, high-temperature reactors, both locally and internationally. The 700-member PBMR project team is based in Centurion, near Pretoria.

The PBMR is a high-temperature reactor, with a closed-cycle, gas-turbine power-conversion system. The South African project is internationally regarded as the leader in the power-generation field. PBMR (Pty) Ltd's current investors are the South African Government, Eskom, the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa and the United States (US) nuclear company Westinghouse. The PBMR Programme represents a significant development for South Africa in the field of nuclear S&T.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

Naci is appointed by the Minister of Science and Technology to advise on the role and contribution of innovation, including S&T, in promoting and achieving national objectives. These include:

- improving and sustaining the quality of life of all South Africans
- developing HR for S&T
- building the economy
- strengthening the country's competitiveness in the international sphere.

Naci membership is broadly representative of all sectors and is constituted to ensure a spread of expertise and experience regarding national and provincial interests, scientific and technological disciplines, innovation regarding the needs and opportunities in different socio-economic fields, and R&D in all sectors.

Public Understanding of Science, Engineering and Technology

The Department of Science and Technology's efforts in engineering and technology include:

- the South African Reference Group on Women in S&T, which is a ministerial body that advises on ways to increase the visibility and development of women, and on making science more relevant to the needs of society by incorporating women's needs and expectations
- the Women in Science Awards, first awarded in 2003, which honour female scientists and their achievements
- National Science Week, which is an annual week-long event aimed at persuading the youth to pursue careers in SET, while highlighting the important role that science plays in everyday life.

National Nanotechnology Strategy

The National Nanotechnology Strategy recognises the needs of local industry and focuses on the essential building blocks of nanoscience, namely synthesis, characterisation and fabrication.

The strategy positions South Africa as a global player in this emerging area and seeks to strengthen government's integrated development focus.

The strategy aims to:

- support long-term nanoscience research that will lead to a fundamental understanding of the design, synthesis, characterisation, modelling and fabrication of nanomaterial
- support the creation of new and novel devices for application in various areas
- develop the required HR and supporting infrastructure
- stimulate new developments in technology missions, such as advanced material for advanced manufacturing, nanobiomaterial for biotechnology, precious metal-based nanoparticles for resource-based industries and advanced material for information and communications technologies (ICTs).

The strategy is aimed at increasing the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. In 2007, National Treasury allocated R450 million to implement the strategy over the next three years.

The country's first two nanotechnology innovation centres, based at Mintek and the CSIR, were established in 2007. These centres play a central role in the implementation of the Nanotechnology Strategy and are expected to provide a platform for world-class research in the fields of nanoscience and nanotechnology.

Known as "the technology of the very small" (that is, about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

These include aerospace, manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

South African industry and researchers have been involved in nanotechnology and the practical application of nanoscience for several years; for example, Sasol's chemical processing by catalysis.

New generations of emerging nanotechnology-based products require that South Africa develops its ability to derive more benefits from global advances in this area.

In this regard, human-capital development also forms a very strong and integral component of the National Nanotechnology Strategy. For this reason, the development of a highly trained HR base with R&D expertise will encourage the private sector to develop nano-based products and services.

The country's human-capital development programmes include the use of the Department of Science and Technology's Sarchi postgraduate programmes, as well as bursaries for students.

Information and communications technology

South African researchers now have the advantage of using massive computing power in their quest for new knowledge and application.

The CHPC in Cape Town is the first of its kind in South Africa. Initiated by the Department of Science and Technology, hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC is making scientific "supercomputing" a reality for South Africa.

The CHPC supports a diverse base of researchers and scientists, and facilitates the collaboration and multidisciplinary approach needed to solve complex computational problems.

In October 2008, the Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, unveiled the world-class locally developed electric car in Paris, France. Appropriately named Joule, after British scientist James Prescott Joule (1818 to 1889) the zero emission car made its global debut at the Paris motor show.

Joule is a six-seater MPV (multipurpose vehicle) designed by Optimal Energy in association with South African-born automotive designer, Keith Helfet. Optimal Energy was capitalised with a R50-million investment from the Innovation Fund (IF). The shareholders in Optimal Energy comprise executive management, the IF and the Industrial Development Corporation.

The centre advances South Africa's research capabilities in areas such as advanced manufacturing, space science and research into infectious diseases.

The high-speed computational infrastructure comprises 160 computer nodes (640 processors) in a clustered architecture. It is rated to have a peak performance of around 2,5 teraflops (2,5 million mathematical operations) every second.

It is complemented by 50 terabytes of storage space. To maximise the benefit and use of this infrastructure, the research communities in South Africa are self-assembled into 10 special-interest groups, and the CHPC adds significant computational power to accelerate the research agenda of these groups.

The CHPC and the South African Research Network are the backbone of an emerging cyber infrastructure in South Africa that will support research initiated in other elements of the country's S&T infrastructure, such as the SKA, the National Bioinformatics Network and the Global Earth Observation System of Systems (GEOSS).

The GEOSS aims to enable globally co-ordinated Earth observations across a number of domains, to provide better and more reliable data in areas of benefit to society, including agriculture, weather, climate, water, disasters, health, energy, biodiversity and ecosystems.

Tshumisano

Tshumisano was established in 2002, with the mandate to provide support for the SMME sector through its Technology Stations Programme.

One of the aims of this programme is to strengthen technological innovation activities and related skills upgrading, to increase the relative competitiveness of SMMEs in targeted sectors.

These sectors include automotive, agrifood processing, electronics, metal value-adding, chemicals, metal casting, and composite and moulded plastics.

Technology stations are based at various universities of technology across the country.

The number of technology stations has expanded rapidly over the past few years to support previously underserviced provinces, from the original three in 2002 to 12 in 2007.

The stations increased assistance to SMMEs by more than 37% in 2006/07. The trust has also rolled out three institutes for advanced tooling in Soshanguve (training and SMME development), East London (design) and Stellenbosch (R&D).

The approach is a two-way learning process in which SMMEs improve their operations through technology assimilation and by upgrading their innovation capabilities.

This process enriches the teaching and learning activities of universities of technology by improving their equipment and their real-world understanding of the industry challenges.

The Tshumisano Trust, a joint venture between government, the German Agency for Technical Co-operation and the Committee of University of Technology Principals, is generating stronger working relationships between the departments of science and technology and labour.

Technology stations that fall under the control of the trust are listed below, along with the relevant host institution:

- Tshwane University of Technology (TUT): Electronics and Electrical Engineering, complemented by IT
- Central University of Technology: Metals Value-Adding and Product Development
- TUT: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Mangosuthu Technikon: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Vaal University of Technology: Material and Processing Technologies
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Automotive Components
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Downstream Chemicals
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Clothing and Textiles
- University of Johannesburg: Metal-Casting Technology
- Durban Institute of Technology: Reinforced and Moulded Plastics
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Agri-Food Processing Technologies.
- University of Limpopo: Limpopo Agrifood Technology Station.

It was estimated that in 2007/08, the trust assisted 570 SMMEs.

Poverty reduction

The Department of Science and Technology believes in a multipronged approach to fighting poverty.

Its poverty-alleviation projects are having positive outcomes in businesses and co-operatives and focus on, among other things, beekeeping, paper-making, incorporating African design in clothing and textiles based on natural fibres, and indigenous cattle production. These projects are concentrated in the poverty nodes as identified by government's Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy.

Internship Programme

The department and the NRF jointly manage a programme to provide work experience for unemployed graduates by providing them with practical and accelerated learning programmes towards building workplace competencies.

Youth into Science Strategy

The Youth into Science Strategy's primary objective is to contribute towards the development of the priority skills base.

Through this programme, the department is recruiting young people to pursue careers in areas of scarce skills. Its targets include doubling S&T

At the end of February 2008, the Research Information Management System (RIMS) was launched by the Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, at the Innovation Hub in Pretoria.

The RIMS is a strategic tool that will be completely integrated with other existing systems at institutional level. It provides real-time information on human resources for science, engineering and technology, research and development (R&D) capacity and technology improvement and innovation.

The RIMS provides government with the necessary tools to obtain a detailed, holistic understanding of where its R&D funds are invested, and how much it is spending on each area of science and technology.

Until then, data on government-funded R&D was compiled retrospectively, using traditional survey techniques.

Government has set aside more than R40 million for the development and implementation of the RIMS Project.

literacy among the youth and nurturing more than 5 000 young people with talent and potential in SET by 2010.

National Information Society Learnership Programme

This programme aims to contribute towards building an information society and promoting greater and more efficient use of IT.

International science and technology co-operation

The strategy to use southern Africa's local (geographical) advantages and efforts to attract large international science-based investments is paying off. Examples of these investments include the construction of the High-Energy Stereoscopic System (Hess) observatory in neighbouring Namibia and the Salt in Sutherland in the Northern Cape, as well as winning the bid to host the European Developing Countries Clinical Trials Partnership (EDCTP). Added to this are bold efforts to bolster South Africa's bid to host the SKA in South Africa.

International breakthroughs include South Africa's leading role in the European Union's sixth framework programme, and in implementing Africa's Consolidated S&T Plan of Action.

South Africa is involved in developing an S&T platform in the subregion through the SADC Ministers' Council on S&T, which is developing a SADC protocol to guide the implementation of the subregional S&T plan.

Developing a high-speed broadband network in the region is a flagship project of the Department of Science and Technology. The UbuntuNet Project is set to link through the South African National Research Network to Europe, via the Geant connection, to give South Africa and its research community a high-speed network. The first phase of implementing this network began with funding of R178 million over the MTEF.

The department has successfully leveraged human-capital support through international S&T agreements. This has resulted in jointly funded projects with 16 countries in areas such as agriculture, manufacturing and biotechnology.

South Africa's role at the forefront of the New Partnersip for Africa's Development (Nepad) is, to a significant extent, based on its ability to deploy scientific knowledge and technological solutions on the continent.

The International Council for Science (Icsu) established four regional offices in 2002 in the developing world. In September 2005, the council's Regional Office for Africa was launched in Pretoria. South Africa hosts the office at the premises of the NRF. The Department of Science and Technology leads the international process to establish the GEOSS. Acting through the department, South Africa participated in developing the 10-year implementation plan and was elected co-chair of the GEOSS.

South Africa is hosting the Nepad focal points such as the African Laser Centre (ALC), the African Institute for Mathematical Sciences (Aims) and the biosciences initiatives. Every two years, the ALC hosts summer schools co-funded by the US-based National Science Foundation, and Aims is establishing a network of institutes on the rest of the continent. South-South co-operation has been strengthened and enhanced by fostering partnerships with the countries of the south, and in particular African countries. South Africa is spearheading a number of bids to host significant international facilities in Africa and is doing so in collaboration with its partner African countries.

Government decided to host the regional offices of the World Association for Industrial and Technical Research Organisations, Icsu, the third component of the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology and the EDCTP. The HIV and AIDS, TB and Malaria clinical trials (ATM) Registry was launched in May 2007.

The ATM Registry is a global resource for researchers, clinicians, policy-makers and the public, by:

- providing a source of reliable information on the efficacy and safety of prevention and treatment measures
- identifying research gaps that should be addressed in future trials
- providing a laboratory for studying the scope, quality and funding patterns of trials
- keeping track of ongoing trials.

National Research Foundation

The NRF is a key public entity responsible for promoting and supporting the development of HR for research, technology and innovation in all fields of S&T. The NRF carries out its responsibilities by:

- providing seven unique national research facilities
- promoting science awareness through the South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta)
- making and managing merit-based grants and co-operative agreements with individual

researchers, research groups and institutions locally, regionally and internationally (through the Research and Innovation Support Agency [Risa])
- delivering unique knowledge-management services to the research community.

The NRF focuses on contributing to government's strategy to create wealth and improve the quality of life of all citizens.

Doctoral graduates are the platform upon which social and technical progress, innovation and business performance can flourish.

The key driver for all the NRF's activities is the production of large numbers of highly skilled people who can generate new knowledge, develop and use new technologies and innovate and drive the competitiveness of the country in international world markets.

The NRF regards HR development as a long-term investment in growing the pool of resources by drawing in learners who will become scientists and innovators.

Science-advancement programmes within the NRF reside under three interdependent strategic areas:
- building the supply of tomorrow's scientists and innovators through education-related programmes
- celebrating South African achievements in S&T and building the public's appreciation of the benefits of science through science communication
- using interactive exploration, engagement and exhibitions to instil enthusiasm about the wonder and application of SET, while encouraging greater public engagement in SET issues.

Through a series of integrated programmes, Saasta is developing an infrastructure that supports high-impact activities and science-promotion sites.

The NRF manages the following research facilities:

In 2008, the Department of Science and Technology in partnership with Engen SA, donated more than 30 computers to Kgwaratlou Secondary School at GaMphahlele.

The hand-over formed part of the department's aim to expose as many young South Africans as possible to science and technology, and to bridge the digital divide. All of the donated computers were installed with open-source software to enable learners and educators to change and improve the software applications in a manner that meets their specific needs and curriculum objectives.

This was in support of the national objective to improve Grade 12 results and to enable more young people to study Science, Technology and Engineering at tertiary level. These programmes include the Department of Science and Technology/Thuthuka youth camps, National Science Week as well as a number of science festivals for the youth.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO) and Southern African Large Telescope

The SAAO is the national research facility for optical/infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its primary function is to further fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics at national and international level.

The Salt is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere, with a hexagonal mirror array 11 metres across. Although very small, similar to the Hobby-Eberly Telescope in Texas, USA, Salt has a redesigned optical system using more of the mirror array. It is able to record distant stars, galaxies and quasars a billion times too faint to be seen with the unaided eye.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

HartRAO is responsible for research and training in radio astronomy and space geodesy in South Africa. The 26-m diameter radio telescope is available for research either as a single, independent instrument or in global networks of radio telescopes, using the technique of very long baseline interferometry (VLBI).

HartRAO is one of only six permanent fundamental space geodesy stations worldwide and participates in geodetic VLBI, through the International VLBI Service, in satellite laser ranging (through the International Laser Ranging Service), and in the Global Navigating Satellite System (GNSS) (through the International GNSS Service). The data is available to the international community.

The radio astronomy group is part of the National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme for postgraduate students.

It is involved in developing the SKA and its South African prototype, Kat. Research collaborations are in place with southern African countries and overseas institutions.

Hermanus Magnetic Observatory (HMO)

The HMO functions as part of the worldwide network of magnetic observatories. Its core function in this regard is to monitor and model variations of the Earth's magnetic field. The scope of the HMO's activities also includes fundamental and applied space-physics research, science outreach and the provision of geomagnetic field-related services on a commercial basis. To facilitate achieving its objectives, the HMO is structured into three operational groups: Geomagnetism, Space Physics and Technology. Science outreach falls under the Space Physics Group.

The objectives of the HMO include:

- providing geomagnetic field data and information in accordance with intermagnet standards
- providing ionospheric and space-environment data in accordance with international benchmarks
- being at the forefront of space-physics research
- developing human capacity
- providing quality-controlled magnetic-field-related services to clients in the defence and aerospace industries.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

Saiab is an interactive hub, focused on serving the nation by generating, disseminating and applying knowledge towards understanding and solving related conservation problems and the wise use of African fish and aquatic biodiversity. Saiab is the custodian of the National Fish Collection, generates knowledge through research on aquatic biodiversity in Africa and trains and educates knowledge workers in aquatic biodiversity.

It addresses national and international issues in aquatic biodiversity, through the priorities set by national and international funding agencies.

The collection consists of about 80 000 fish specimens (containing at least 650 000 individual fish specimens) from southern Africa and surrounding oceans, and from elsewhere in the world. It is the world's largest collection of southern African fishes.

As well as adult and larval specimens preserved in propanol and ethanol (the vast majority), the collection and associated material consist of preparations of genetic material, cleared and stained preparations, dry skins and skeletons, otoliths, X-rays, photographs, drawings and paintings of fishes.

About 7 500 species in about 400 families are represented in the collection, depending on which classification is used.

Science challenges for Saiab include building the flagship African Coelacanth Ecosystem Project, developing biosystematic capacity and developing an effective and integrated information-management system. Saiab has an active rural outreach programme, the Bright Spark Club, which identifies high-potential candidates for science careers and gives them career-forming experiences over one year.

South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

Saeon generates and archives reliable long-term information, relevant to the sustainable management of natural resources and habitat, over a range of ecoregions and land uses. These include pristine (wild) landscape, partially pristine (managed) landscape, agriculturally (rural) transformed landscape and urban transformed landscape.

Saeon establishes innovative research platforms and information-management systems for long-term multidisciplinary, multi-institutional and participatory ecosystem studies, with strong regional and global linkages. These research platforms are co-ordinated as nodes, with the first one – the Ndlovu Node – established during 2004 in Phalaborwa.

The second, the Elwandle Node, covers the coastal-inshore zone and was established in 2006 in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape.

The launch of the saeon fynbos, the marine-offshore, the arid lands and the grasslands/ forests/ wetlands mosaic nodes are in the pipeline. Saeon is founded on three pillars, namely observation sciences, information-management systems and science-education outreach. It also runs an innovative education-outreach programme that focuses on educators, learners and postgraduate students.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG in Pretoria was declared a national research facility in April 2004. It has since been engaged in a strategic reorientation process to align with, and contribute to, the NRF's core missions and strategic priorities.

The NZG aims to undertake strategic, innovative short- and long-term interdisciplinary basic and applied research aggregated into core research programmes and knowledge hubs in co-operation with other zoological gardens, conservation agencies and academic and other institutions to contribute to viable wildlife populations within the biodiversity conservation landscape.

The NZG houses one of the largest animal collections in the world. It operates two biodiversity-conservation centres (in Lichtenburg and Mokopane) and a second zoo and game park in Vanderbijlpark. Including the NZG in Pretoria, the area managed by the NZG totals 7 730 hectares. The NZG is well placed as an education platform, receiving close to 600 000 visitors a year. (See Chapter 8: *Environmental affairs and tourism.*)

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences (iThemba Labs)

iThemba Labs is a multidisciplinary research centre and provides facilities for:

- basic and applied research using particle beams
- particle radiotherapy for the treatment of cancer and other life-threatening lesions
- the supply of accelerator-produced radioactive isotopes for nuclear medicine and research.

iThemba Labs brings together people working in the medical, biological and physical sciences who are interested in using accelerated particle beams, by providing opportunities for research and postgraduate training in these separate disciplines, and also by stimulating mutual interest in interdisciplinary areas.

iThemba Labs has an "open-door" policy towards training postgraduates and in-service trainees.

While postgraduates from universities all over South Africa use the facilities, iThemba Labs proactively participates in building research and postgraduate capacity at historically disadvantaged institutions.

Research and Innovation Support Agency

Risa aims to support and promote research and research-capacity development in all fields of knowledge and technology, including the natural sciences, social sciences, humanities, law, engineering, technology and IKS.

This is done by:

- investing in knowledge production and promoting basic and applied research, technology development and innovation
- developing research capacity and advancing equity and redress to unlock the full creative potential of the research community
- investing in research infrastructure
- facilitating strategic partnerships and knowledge networks.

Much effort has been directed towards ensuring that Risa-supported research focuses on areas that are relevant to South Africa's developmental challenges, in a rapidly changing, highly competitive and knowledge-driven environment.

Support functions

Risa's granting functions are focused on:

- advancing and strengthening strategic knowledge
- identifying distinct South African research opportunities
- conserving and managing ecosystems and biodiversity
- promoting economic growth and international competitiveness
- advancing education and the challenges for change
- supporting IKS
- advancing ICT in South Africa
- establishing the socio-political impact of globalisation and the challenge for South Africa
- eradicating poverty.

Within these focus areas, knowledge fields that may be weak are developed in conjunction with the research community. Research agendas are established through interaction with the research community and collaboration between disciplines is promoted.

Risa implements the following interventions to achieve its goals:

- Student support through a range of different offerings:
  - Block grants are provided to HE institutions to be distributed to worthy postgraduate students who meet certain performance targets. This mode of operation is used to ensure the speedy delivery of funds to students, who are the lifeblood of the research system.
  - Two complementary programmes of postgraduate student support exist, namely free-standing scholarships, awarded directly to postgraduate students for studies locally and abroad; and grantholder-linked bursaries, granted to researchers within their NRF support package, and which may be awarded to students selected by the NRF grantholder.
- The Department of Labour, in conjunction with the departments of education and science and technology, is responsible for ensuring HE training in scarce skills. The Department of Labour

allocates resources from the National Skills Fund to the NRF for bursaries and scholarships. The NRF created the Scarce Skills Fund to promote and support students who study at postgraduate levels in areas where skills are scarce. This fund also provides funds to postgraduate students with disabilities.

- Support of postdoctoral fellows through a range of different offerings, including the:
  - Innovation Postdoctoral Fellowship Programme
  - NRF Postdoctoral Programme, which supports and encourages doctoral candidates to embark on further research.
- Staff development at HE institutions is promoted through the Thuthuka Programme, which provides support for researchers in training, women in research and the Research Development Initiative for Black Academics.
- The Institutional Capacity-Development Programme focuses on linking and assisting institutions committed to research through institutional interventions and through funding finely focused research areas at these institutions.
- Within the focus-area programmes, researchers or teams of researchers can obtain up to two-year or five-year grants, depending on their individual ratings in an open competition.
- Sarchi aims to free academics to focus on research, thus increasing the number of world-class researchers and their output, to make South Africa internationally competitive. Up to R2,5 million a year can be awarded to a chair to cover salaries, postdoctoral and student awards, running costs and small equipment purchases. The aim is to support 210 chairs by 2010.
- The CoE Programme supports strategic, long-term research by providing secure and stable funding to outstanding researchers and their research groups when undertaking multi-institutional and cross-disciplinary research.
- The Technology for Human Resources for Industry Programme (Thrip) supports projects that address the technology and HR needs of the industry on a cost-sharing basis with industrial partners. The programme focuses on increasing participation by SMMEs, Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) entities, and black and female researchers and students, as well as encouraging collaboration between small and large firms.

  Thrip fosters industry-academia collaboration by subsidising industry research conducted by students. Many successful enterprises have been created through this programme. Not only has Thrip brought more money for university research, it has also successfully funded hundreds of postgraduate students.

  Thrip is making an important contribution to skills development, supporting on average 2 400 tertiary students each year. Its funding has reached the billion Rand mark, an amount that has been matched and exceeded by industry.
- The IF invests in technologies at various stages of development. Some of the funding instruments of the IF fund the "proof of concept" phase of projects. The IF also provides seed-funding for commercialising IF projects and establishing technology-based start-up companies. The IF offers commercialisation advice to potential entrepreneurs, and promotes and stimulates the patenting of technologies and products.
- The S&T Agreements Fund supports agreements that facilitate international research collaboration, specifically with African countries. The Department of Science and Technology is responsible for negotiating binational or multilateral agreements with international partners, and for drafting framework programmes. The NRF also has an independent responsibility for negotiating bilateral agreements with counterpart agencies. These agreements develop relations between the research communities of the intergovernmental and interagency signatories, and establish long-term co-operation between researchers.
- Equipment grants allow HE institutions, museums and government-supported research institutions, such as science councils, to acquire research equipment, either of a general nature or in focused fields, such as nanotechnology and laser technology.
- Mobility grants afford students and researchers the opportunity to obtain access to equipment at other local and international HE institutions. Support is also given to the in- and outbound travel expenses of researchers for participation in international conferences, and the limited sponsorship of various scientific events.
- Risa also works in partnership with various organisations to support their research needs. Examples of these include:
  - Initiatives linked to the biodiversity science thrust of the NRDS include the South

African Biodiversity Initiative and the South African Biodiversity Information Facility. Risa manages the Sea and Coast Programme, with the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism as a co-investor.
- The NRF also manages the provincial research projects of the Marine and Coastal Management Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. These projects have a strong applied-research focus, feeding into the management of marine and coastal resources, including resource allocations for the fishing industry.
- The South African National Antarctic Programme aims to create a demographically balanced Antarctic research programme that strives for high-quality international research, and links to other African countries and interdisciplinary research.

Promotion functions

The promotion of research and research-capacity development also involves a number of separate initiatives. Knowledge fields that may be weak or underdeveloped are encouraged and stimulated in partnership with the relevant research community. Research agendas are established through interaction with the research community, and collaboration between disciplines is promoted.

Risa offers a performance-assessment service to the research community. This service assesses the quality of individual researchers from all fields of scholarly pursuit.

The so-called "rating system" uses international peer review to benchmark the quality and impact of previous research output, and assigns one of six ratings to individual researchers.

These ratings qualify applicants for extended periods of research support and, in limited cases, guaranteed support. They are also used by HE institutions in the development of staff members.

Another promotional service offered by Risa is the evaluation of research programmes or even research disciplines. This service is achieved through the facilitation of independent and informed assessment of the quality and value of programmes through peer review. The outcomes of the assessments, which normally contain recommendations for improvement of the programmes, are given to the relevant authorities to act upon, for the good of the entire research and innovation system.

Risa also generates, acquires and provides information that is useful for the production of new knowledge, such as the:
- Nexus Database System, which is a database of current and completed research projects and contains abstracts on 137 000 projects, in all science domains, from the year 1900 onwards
- Research Organisations' Database
- Professional Associations' Database
- conference website
- Women-in-Research Database
- NRF-funded Projects Database
- South African Data Archive, which is a large data archive of computerised social-science data.

Science councils

The statutory science councils are a key part of South Africa's NSI. Through them, government is able to directly commission research in the interest of the nation, and to support technology development in its precompetitive phase.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is a statutory body established in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990). It comprises research institutes that were previously part of the Department of Agriculture, the oldest of which dates back to 1902.

As the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa, the ARC is committed to agricultural research, technology development and technology transfer within the macroframework of the agricultural sector, thereby contributing to the quality of life of South Africans.

The ARC's research goals are aligned with the objectives of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

The ARC's research activities address major government priorities, namely integrated rural development, natural-resource management, job creation, regional integration, urban renewal, HR development, crime prevention, farmer settlement, support-service improvement, infrastructure development, food security, and trade development and support.

The ARC comprises the following business units described below.

Natural Resource and Engineering Business Division

ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water (ARC-ISCW)

The ARC-ISCW (in Pretoria, Gauteng) is a leading centre of expertise in the fields of soil science, agrometeorology, spatial modelling, soil-water science, geoinformatics (remote sensing, geographic, spatial and other information systems) and analytical services.

It is committed to improving rural livelihoods and agricultural productivity, and to the sustainable use of natural resources, soil, climate and water. The ARC-ISCW is the custodian of the Soil Information Systems, the Agrometeorological Climate Network and Databank, and the Coarse Resolution Satellite Imagery Database.

ARC-Institute for Agricultural Engineering (ARC-IAE)

The ARC-IAE fulfils an indispensable role in agriculture, as almost no agricultural activity can be undertaken without some sort of equipment, system or facility that is supported by engineering technology. Situated in Pretoria, Gauteng, the institute undertakes R&D and technology transfer in the following fields:

- agricultural mechanisation
- water resources and conservation
- renewable energy
- precision agriculture and automation
- value adding
- agricultural infrastructure and structures.

The institute also has world-class laboratories where irrigation and agricultural equipment is tested.

With the vision "to be the centre of excellence for appropriate agricultural engineering technology in Africa", the research undertaken and services rendered by the institute are directed at the public sector, private-sector customers and international customers. A wide range of publications is available dealing with various topics.

ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute (ARC-PPRI)

The ARC-PPRI addresses agricultural and environmental concerns, through research aimed at promoting economic and environmentally acceptable pest-management strategies.

Fields of expertise include:

- biosystematics, ecology and epidemiology of invertebrates, fungi, pathogenic and useful bacteria and viruses
- the use of integrated pest management in the control of pests, diseases and invasive weeds
- beneficial organisms such as biological control agents, nitrogen-fixing bacteria, insect pollinators and bees.

The institute is mandated to address plant-protection issues that cut across commodities, affecting many crops and regions. Its research impacts on all South Africa's provinces and addresses the needs of many African countries.

Research is directed at commercial and resource-poor farmers to address current and anticipated threats. It also provides support for the benefit of researchers, agricultural industries and governments to carry out their statutory obligations.

Grain and industrial crops

ARC-Grain Crops Institute (ARC-GCI)

The ARC-GCI (in Potchefstroom, North West) is responsible for research on improving and cultivating grain crops such as maize, sorghum and millet, as well as oil and protein seeds such as sunflower, groundnuts, soyabeans, dry beans, cowpeas, sweet white lupin and bambara. Research activities involve plant breeding, evaluation of cultivars and grain quality, plant physiology, plant pathology, nematology, entomology and tillage.

ARC-Small Grain Institute (ARC-SGI)

The ARC-SGI (in Bethlehem, Free State) concentrates on improving and cultivating small grain crops such as wheat, barley, oats, triticale and rye.

Research activities include breeding new cultivars with better resistance to diseases and pests, the national evaluation of cultivars and grain quality, plant physiology, tillage, weed science, plant pathology, entomology and yield potential.

The ARC-SGI is the only institute of its kind that offers one-stop small-grain information, not only to the commercial farmer but also to new, emerging and small-scale farmers.

ARC-Institute for Industrial Crops (ARC-IIC)

The ARC-IIC (in Rustenburg, North West) is involved in fundamental and applied research in the interest of the cotton and tobacco industries. Research is also conducted on other fibre crops such as hemp, sisal and flax, as well as on finding indigenous fibre crops with economic potential as new alternative crops in rural areas.

Likewise, certain crops are being investigated for their potential as sources of essential oils or household utilities. Research on cassava is directed at its potential as an alternative food source, and source of starch for industrial use. Research on pigeonpea and the promotion of this crop as an additional source of protein is being widely conducted in rural areas.

Horticulture

ARC-Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops (ARC-ITSC)

The ARC-ITSC (in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga) is responsible for research on all aspects of the cultivation of tropical and subtropical fruit.

Other crops on which production research is conducted include coffee, herbs and spices, medicinal plants, and pecan, macadamia and cashew nuts. Lesser-known exotic crops being evaluated are pitanga, feijoa, annona types, carambola and jaboticaba.

ARC-Roodeplaat Vegetable and Ornamental Plant Institute (ARC-VOPI)

The ARC-VOPI (near Pretoria) concentrates on a wide range of horticultural crops. Research is conducted on commercial vegetables such as onions, potatoes and sweet potatoes. Traditional and indigenous vegetables receiving attention include amaranthus, cassava, plectranthus, Zulu round potato, pigeon peas, cowpeas and bambara. Research on the production and development of ornamentals and indigenous flora, such as fynbos, woody ornamentals and bulbs, has led to a new growth industry.

ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij (Institute for Fruit, Vine and Wine)

The ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij (in Stellenbosch, Western Cape) does R&D and transfer of technology pertaining to the following commodities: deciduous fruit (apples, pears, peaches, plums, apricots and nectarines); grapes (wine, table and raisin); alternative temperate climate crops (cherries, mushrooms, nuts, olives, persimmons, figs, berries and others); brandy; dried fruit and processed fruit.

Increasing attention is also being devoted to indigenous crops (honeybush tea, rooibos tea and kei-apple) and their general use, processing and health-promoting abilities.

The breeding and evaluation of new stone and pome fruit, as well as table-grape cultivars, are a major research effort. Progeny from the various breeding programmes continue to succeed on the local and export markets.

Traceability and authenticity have become major concerns in modern trade, particularly for sophisticated markets in the first world. Developing the ability to analytically prove the authenticity of South African wine and brandy is the goal of a second major research intervention.

Data from isotopic and trace-element analyses will be used to compile reference databases for use in authentication and fraud detection.

Livestock

ARC-Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute (ARC-OVI)

The ARC-OVI (north of Pretoria) is responsible for the prevention and control of animal diseases. It also provides a public-health service regarding food safety and security.

The institute conducts research and diagnostic and new-generation vaccine development of livestock diseases.

It has six reference laboratories approved by the *Office International des Epizooties*, namely rabies, lumpy skin disease, Rift Valley fever, African horse sickness, African swine fever and bluetongue. The Exotic Diseases Division is a high-containment facility for diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease and African swine fever. The institute is also the Food and Agricultural Organisation collaborating centre in Africa for transboundary diseases.

ARC-Livestock Business Division: Animal Production (ARC-LBD: Animal Production)

The ARC-LBD: Animal Production (in Irene, outside Pretoria) comprises seven units, which assist the animal production and products industry to stay abreast of global competition. Animal Genetics and Biotechnology employs DNA technology, genetic characterisation and accelerated reproduction technology to conserve, maintain and enhance genetic variation. Together with the Animal Recording and Improvement Unit, this has assisted livestock producers in breeding seed-stock material to the benefit of genetic resources worldwide.

Cattle breeds such as the Bonsmara and Nguni, Dorper sheep, boer goat, Fowls for Africa, South African ostrich and the indigenous Kolbroek pig have become highly sought after in breeding programmes abroad.

The Production Systems Unit deals with cattle, small stock, pigs and poultry. The Range and Forage Unit assists in the effective use of rangeland and forage production.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR performs multidisciplinary research and technological innovation, with the aim of contributing to industrial development and the quality of life of people of South Africa – and increasingly on the wider continent.

The council employs people who are experts in their fields and passionate about creating a better future through science.

The CSIR is one of the leading S&T, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, and the organisation is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices.

Core focus on science

The CSIR transfers the knowledge generated through research activities by means of technology and skilled people. The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR.

These take place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; materials science and manufacturing; modelling and digital science; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging research areas

These are areas of science, explored by the CSIR, that could be unique to local circumstances or successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

National research centres

The CSIR houses specialist facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include ICTs, laser technology, and space-related technology.

Research and development outcomes

Activities include IP management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Consulting and analytical services

The CSIR has a group of facilities that manages standard technology-based services. The experts in this group use the value of CSIR knowledge-application activities by providing specialised consulting, analysis and testing services to address the needs of clients.

Services include forensic fire investigations, food and beverage analysis, environmental consulting and laboratory services, engineering forensics, wire rope testing, mechanical testing, fires and explosion tests, self-contained self-rescuer testing, sports technology and analysis, and project management.

Supporting national imperatives

South Africa's national imperatives and global challenges provide the macro strategic framework within which the CSIR conducts its research.

In an effort to contribute to placing Africa on a path of sustainable growth and development, the organisation supports and participates in Nepad.

The CSIR contributes to the national programme of development by:

- building and transforming human capital
- strengthening the SET base and performing relevant R&D
- transferring technology and skilled human capital.

Operations

The CSIR receives an annual grant from Parliament, through the Department of Science and Technology, which accounts for about 40% of its total income.

The remainder is generated from research contracts with government departments at national, provincial and municipal levels; the private sector and research funding agencies in South Africa and abroad. Additional income is derived from royalties, licences and dividends from IP management and commercial companies created by the CSIR.

The parliamentary grant is focused on the knowledge base and facilities in the CSIR to ensure that these stay at the leading edge of technological development. It is invested in developing new areas of expertise, undertaking "pre-competitive" research too risky for the private sector to fund and for training young researchers.

Clients

The CSIR has clients in both the private sector (micro, small, medium and large enterprises;

formal and informal), as well as in the public sector (national, provincial and local government). The organisation also deals with public enterprises and institutions, national safety and security establishments and development structures. Regionally and abroad, the CSIR fosters partnerships and a network of clients and partner organisations as part of a global sphere of influence on matters of technology. The CSIR liaises closely with tertiary education institutions.

With a strong emphasis on relevant and developmental work, it also has strong roots in various communities, and collaborates with a wide range of donors and funding agencies.

Mintek

South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, Mintek, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consultation and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Minerals and Energy. About 30% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of services and products, technology-licensing agreements and joint-venture operating companies.

Mintek's objectives are to research, develop and transfer to industry, novel and improved technologies to optimise processing, extracting, refining and using minerals and mineral products, to:

- enhance the competitiveness of South Africa's minerals industry in the global market
- assist local mining and engineering companies to expand internationally
- promote job creation, economic growth and regional development.

Specific goals of the organisation include:

- promoting increased beneficiation of South Africa's minerals and mineral commodities by developing competitive and innovative processing technology and equipment
- strengthening South Africa's international position as a supplier of mineral technologies, capital goods and services
- developing regional strategies for the mineral-processing sector, concentrating on value-addition, capacity-building and broad-based development.

Mintek's activities include:

- providing essential services (information, consulting and experimental)
- increasing the competitiveness of the industry by developing appropriate technology to cut costs and improve and optimise recoveries
- developing breakthrough process technologies and novel uses for metals and their products
- marketing its commercial products and technologies to industry
- establishing strategic partnerships and joint ventures
- participating in regional development initiatives and SADC activities and projects
- maintaining and expanding international scientific links
- developing the HR potential of the region through education and training activities.

Mintek offers a complete range of process-development services, from preliminary bench-scale investigations to large-scale piloting and integrated flowsheet development in support of bankable feasibility studies. Engineering design, plant construction and commissioning are conducted in conjunction with international partners.

Comprehensive laboratory and piloting facilities for sample preparation, milling, flotation, physical separation, smelting, leaching, pressure leaching, and metal recovery and purification are supported by internationally accredited analytical laboratory and mineralogical services.

Mintek's R&D activities are focused particularly on mineral commodities that are important to the South African economy:

- Gold-improving technologies, such as biotechnology and ion-exchange processes are developed and introduced to simplify processing and increase recoveries, particularly from ores that are difficult to treat. A major joint venture with industry and other research groups is exploring new industrial uses of gold in the fields of catalysis, nanotechnology and biomedicine.
- Platinum-group metals' (PGMs) R&D is aimed at increasing the cost-effectiveness of PGM production and stimulating industrial demand for these metals.
- Ferrous-metal products and technical services are developed to increase the cost-effectiveness of ferro-alloy production, as well as stainless steels and other alloys with improved properties.
- Mintek has conducted a large amount of work for non-ferrous metals, such as new copper,

nickel and cobalt, through projects in southern and central Africa. Processes are also developed for aluminium, lead, magnesium and zinc. The major emphasis is on the introduction of cleaner technologies.
- R&D includes the beneficiation and processing of industrial minerals, including commodities such as heavy mineral, chromite, iron and manganese ores, andalusite, phosphates, fluorite and diamonds.
- With the upswing in the uranium market, Mintek has re-established itself as one of the foremost uranium laboratories in the country, and has played a significant role in developing and optimising several new projects on the African continent.

Minerals policy and development

Mintek conducts surveys, evaluations and commodity and market studies to support initiatives by governmental, international, regional or industry associations. It also identifies and evaluates potential development projects, assesses and provides technology, and conducts feasibility studies.

The organisation co-operates with industry and other research institutions and academia to maintain and enhance the mineral sector's contribution to society, by providing strategic direction and procedures that promote value addition and sustainable development in the mining industry.

Mintek is frequently called upon to support strategy and policy issues at all levels in South Africa, including participation in Nepad and the African Mining Partnership, through research into BEE-development issues around mining and minerals.

Mintek is growing its capacity to lead and support multiple initiatives in small-scale mining and beneficiation. It is well positioned to lead projects that will benefit economies on the African continent and support government initiatives to create employment in mining, manufacturing and agriculture at local and rural levels.

Environment

Mintek continues to focus on developing environmentally responsible technologies for the recovery and recycling of metals from metallurgical residues. A major programme is in place to monitor cyanide species in various locations around gold plants, from both an environmental and a processing point of view. Mintek's environmental-management system is certified as meeting the requirements of the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) 14001.

Education

The development of appropriate HR is crucial for the long-term sustainability of the minerals industry. Mintek's education and training initiatives focus on developing and training South Africans from historically disadvantaged communities as technicians, technologists and engineers. Training programmes include:

- artisanal and small-scale mining training
- jewellery-manufacturing training
- upgrading Mathematics and Science skills
- science promotion through participation in various SET initiatives (sponsored by the departments of science and technology and minerals and energy), corporate events, university open days and the Minquiz national schools' science competition
- corporate social investment/responsibility through Mintek's Adopt-a-School Programme and Grade 11 and 12 Learner Programme
- undergraduate and postgraduate bursary schemes
- in-training programmes for recently qualified engineers and technicians
- specialised advanced technical programmes.

Promoting industrial growth

Mintek is promoting a number of major new industrial projects based on mineral beneficiation, using existing and newly developed technologies. These include the recovery of PGMs from metallurgical waste material, ferro-nickel production and the establishment of a local magnesium industry using a novel thermal production route.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

South Africa's statutory research agency, the HSRC, conducts research that generates critical and independent knowledge, relative to all aspects of human and social development.

Poverty alleviation and public policy development and implementation are central to all its research activities. Its research extends beyond South African borders through projects and collaborations in other African countries and abroad.

As a national public entity, the HSRC adheres to best-practice requirements in relation to its corporate governance as well as financial and performance reporting. The HSRC reports annually to Parliament.

The HSRC is committed to making a difference in the quality of life of all South Africans and is often commissioned to undertake large-scale research on behalf of government departments at national, regional and local levels. The organisation also serves the research needs of parastatal organisations, the private sector and local and international development agencies to track service delivery, evaluate performance and measure the efficacy of interventions.

The HSRC's collaborative approach to research provides a platform for interaction with research experts in South Africa, elsewhere in Africa, and internationally. The organisation proactively disseminates its research findings in peer-reviewed and other publications, and through seminars, invited lectures and media briefings.

Functioning as a knowledge hub, the HSRC contributes to bridging the gap that so often exists between research, policy and action.

Mission

The HSRC is a non-partisan organisation that provides critical information to different role-players, whether in policy development, media analysis, advocacy or in debates. It aims to be an instrument for providing independent information, free from political, religious and/or racial bias. The HSRC generates scientific knowledge through its research and analytical work in the social and human sciences.

Research focus

The research capabilities have been aligned into the following interdisciplinary, problem-orientated, research programmes:

- Education, Science and Skills Development
- Child, Youth and Family Development
- Social Aspects of HIV and AIDS and Health
- Democracy and Governance.

The former national initiatives have now become centres of excellence. Additionally, a former research programme, Urban, Rural and Economic Development, has been unbundled to become a centre for service delivery.

Centres of excellence at the HSRC include the:

- Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth
- Centre for Service Delivery
- Centre for Education Quality Improvement.

In addition, a number of cross-cutting research initiatives support the work of the HSRC as a whole, its research programmes, as well as external stakeholders.

Cross-cutting research units include the:

- Research Network (the Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance)
- Knowledge Systems
- Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement, which consists of:
  - Capacity Development
  - Gender
  - Policy Analysis
  - Centre for Africa's Social Progress.

The Policy Analysis Unit has a dual mandate. The first is to serve as a think-tank and provide a platform for public discourse and critical social issues. The second is to pursue time-limited, multi-year analyses into specific priority areas, namely poverty reduction, employment, quality education, HIV and AIDS, and service delivery. The work of the unit is centred upon various crossroads between these policy issues and heuristic parameters drawn from the National Human Resource Development Strategy.

The support functions of the HSRC are primarily intended to support its core activity, namely research, while also ensuring that the organisation complies with regulatory requirements. Support units in the HSRC include Finance (comprising Supply Chain Management and Risk and Compliance), HR, IT, Library and Information Services, Legal Services, Operations, Publishing, Corporate Communication, Business Development, and Secretariat and International Liaison.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC's mission is to improve the nation's health and quality of life through promoting and conducting relevant and responsible health research.

Although the MRC is an autonomous body, it reports to the Department of Health and receives 60% of its budget from the Department of Science and Technology. Its head office is situated in Cape Town, with provincial offices in Pretoria and Durban.

The MRC's research activities are aligned with the health priorities of the nation, the national S&T imperatives and the health priorities defined by the Department of Health. Activities are grouped into the national programmes described below.

National Programme for Research in Molecules to Disease

This programme undertakes research on human and microbial genetics, genomics, bio-informatics, cell and molecular biology, tissue engineering, oesophageal cancer, molecularhepatology, micro-bacteriology, and liver and bone disease.

National Programme for Health Systems and Policy Research

The scientists in this programme conduct research on health systems, clinical epidemiology, biostatistics, health policy, the burden of disease and telemedicine.

National Programme for Infection and Immunity Research

The research units in this programme are involved in research into TB, malaria, immunology of infectious diseases, diarrhoeal diseases, inflammation and amoebiasis, genital-ulcer diseases, respiration and meningeal pathogens, and South African traditional medicines.

It also incorporates the MRC National HIV and AIDS Lead Programme, whose divisions coordinate the South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative, various aspects of biomedical research (including mother-to-child transmission and microbicides), and prevention of transmission through behavioural change.

National Programme for Non-Communicable Disease Research

This programme undertakes research into heart disease (both laboratory, clinical and public-health research), nutritional intervention, diabetes, crime, violence and injury, anxiety and stress disorders, dental issues, medical imaging, chronic diseases of lifestyle and cancer epidemiology.

National Programme for Environment and Development Research

In this entity, research is undertaken into health promotion, health and development, exercise and sports science, occupational and environmental health, alcohol and drug abuse, and technology transfer.

National Programme for Women and Child Health Research

This programme undertakes research into many aspects of women's health, including high blood pressure during pregnancy, healthcare strategies in maternal and infant health, perinatal mortality, gender and health, mineral metabolism and nutritional intervention.

South African National Health Knowledge Network

The South African National Health Knowledge Network was established in 1999 at the MRC with funding from the Government's IF.

The network operates under the trade name SA HealthInfo and is available on the Internet at *www.sahealthinfo.org.* It provides a one-stop interactive forum or resource for quality-controlled and evidence-based health-research information.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

The Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), established the CGS in its present form. The council is a modern institution, boasting excellent facilities and expertise, ranking among the best in Africa.

The main functions of the CGS are:

- documenting the surface of the Earth within the borders of South Africa; compiling geological, geophysical, geochemical and other geoscientific information; and publishing this information in the form of maps and documents
- conducting geoscientific research into, among other things, rocks, minerals, ores and fossils in South Africa and publishing research results in national and international journals
- collecting and conserving all geoscientific information and data on South Africa in national collections and electronic databases
- supplying geoscientific services and advice to the national and provincial governments and ensuring informed decisions regarding the optimal and efficient use of the Earth's surface.

The objectives of the CGS are to:

- minimise the geological and geoscientific investment risk for national and international entrepreneurs in the South African mining sector (the quality of available geological information – known as the "geological risk grading" – contributes to about 61% of the investment risk in any country)
- supply the country with basic geoscience data to establish a safe, cost-effective physical infrastructure
- supply basic knowledge to ensure safe, cost-effective and environmentally acceptable urbanisation and housing development
- carry out research into raw material needed to clothe, transport, feed and provide shelter for the nation.

To accomplish these functions and objectives, the CGS maintains a specialised workforce, consisting of Earth scientists supplemented by technical, support and administrative staff at its headquarters in Pretoria, and at branch offices in the Western Cape, Northern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The CGS maintains the following national institutions:

- The National Geoscience Library in Pretoria is probably the most comprehensive geoscience library in Africa. It includes the Map Library, which contains a collection of South African and African geoscience maps.
- The National Core Library contains a representative stratigraphic-borehole core collection, representing most of the lithological units located within the borders of South Africa. This collection is housed at Donkerhoek, east of Pretoria.
- The Geoscience Museum, in the Transvaal Museum in Pretoria, exhibits rocks and minerals, catering for the Earth-science education of the public, especially schoolchildren.

An extensive laboratory at the CGS head office uses various specialised techniques to analyse rock and soil samples.

Geoscience information and services provided by the CGS are particularly important for the sustainable development of the country. In South Africa's arid regions, the management of groundwater resources (both the quantity and quality thereof) is aimed at providing enough clean water to communities. In addition, the CGS has established the Environmental Geoscience Unit to provide services in this highly competitive and very important field.

Although South Africa is situated on a relatively stable part of the Earth's crust, the CGS maintains a seismic network for recording such events within the national borders and coastal waters off South Africa's coastline. This information is available to interested parties and helps mitigate the problems associated with mining-related seismic events.

The CGS is a world leader in the domain of geophysical surveys, using a detection system deployed on light aircraft. This significantly reduces the cost of very high-resolution geophysical data for mineral exploration. A larger aircraft (a Cessna Caravan 208B) and a helicopter, can carry larger sensors, increasing the CGS' capability to conduct high-resolution geophysical surveys.

The CGS leads an initiative by the Department of Minerals and Energy to assist upcoming mining entrepreneurs, particularly those from historically disadvantaged groups, to exploit South Africa's mineral resources in a cost-effective and environmentally friendly way.

Because the CGS plays a leading role in the SADC, several geoscience publications covering the region have been produced, describing heavy mineral sand, diamond, gold, copper and cobalt, bauxite and dimension-stone deposits in the region. A seismic hazard map of the region, a lithostratigraphic table comparing the geological formations in the region, and maps of the Kalahari Basin have also been produced.

In addition to its national responsibilities, the CGS is also active internationally, mainly in Africa. Geological and metallogenic maps of, among other countries, Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Mozambique, Gabon and Morocco have been produced.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that was established in terms of the Standards Act, 1945 (Act 24 of 1945), and operates in terms of the latest edition of the Standards Act, 1993 (Act 29 of 1993), as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services.

The responsibilities of the SABS include:

- publishing national standards prepared through a consensus process in technical committees
- providing information on national standards of all countries and international standards
- testing and certifying products and services to comply with standards
- developing technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitoring and enforcing compliance with such technical regulations
- monitoring and enforcing legal metrology legislation
- promoting design excellence
- providing training on aspects of standardisation.

With a view to maximising its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS has aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This change ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that are easily available to clients.

The seven industry sectors are:

- Chemicals
- Electrotechnical
- Food and Health
- Mechanical and Materials
- Mining and Minerals
- Services
- Transportation.

Other scientific and research organisations and structures

Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad)

Biopad is a biotechnology regional innovation centre established by the Department of Science and Technology. The centre, initiated in 2002, aims to boost biotechnology development in the region. The core objective is to implement South Africa's NBS.

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

Sasol

Sasol Technology conducts most of its fuel- and chemical-related R&D at Sasolburg in the Free State. It also maintains R&D programmes at external CoEs, including St Andrews University in Scotland, Twente University in the Netherlands and the University of Cape Town in South Africa.

Sasol Polymers operates a polymer technology centre near Johannesburg, and Sasol Nitro and Sasol Wax maintain R&D programmes in South Africa and Germany, respectively.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is the world's number one steel company, with over 320 000 employees in more than 60 countries. It has led the consolidation of the world steel industry and today ranks as a truly global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. ArcelorMittal is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging.

The group is a leader in R&D and techology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw materials, and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is a dynamic and focused public health service-provider of cost-effective and professional laboratory medicine through competent, qualified professionals and state-of-the-art technology, suppported by academic and internationally recognised research, training and product development to maximise healthcare-delivery to the nation.

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with 265 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. It conducts health-related research appropriate to the broader population needs, such as HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections. occupational health, cancer and malnutrition.

The NHLS activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services, research, teaching and training, and the production of sera for anti-snake venom and reagents. Laboratories provide diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local governments and medical practitioners.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists, technicians and occupational health practitioners in pathology disciplines.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy-makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in

Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

General research areas

Mine-safety research

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines. The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

Energy research

The Chief Directorate: Energy of the Department of Minerals and Energy manages a policy-directed research programme. This includes transport energy, renewable energy, energy for developing areas, coal, electricity, energy efficiency, energy economy and integrated energy-policy formulation.

Agricultural research

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations. Provinces are responsible for farm management and technological development. These activities are aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The Directorate: Scientific Research and Development in the Department of Agriculture, co-ordinates all agricultural R&D activities.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) co-ordinates agricultural R&D within the national agricultural research system. The NARF also provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on R&D matters.

Biannual meetings are held to debate and agree on research needs, programmes and budgeting. Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water research

The Water Research Commission (WRC) was established in 1971 through the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting co-ordination, co-operation and communication in the area of water R&D
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge. This is reflected in the WRC's mission, which provides the organisation with a framework for its strategic and operational initiatives. The WRC functions as a networking organisation, linking the nation and working through partnerships. Being an innovative organisation, it is continuously providing novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the community at large, both locally and globally.

Many decades of R&D and science-based knowledge has provided the basis for the development of policies and strategies that allow for the sustainability of South Africa's water resources.

This emphasises not only the important role that water-centred knowledge has played in the past, but also its increasingly important role in providing South Africa with knowledge, which will allow it to deal successfully with the many new challenges that will face the limited water resources in future years. The WRC has played a crucial role in this regard. The WRC leads and co-ordinates research, which, in turn, creates the knowledge that facilitates the judicious management of water quantity and quality and, in so doing, to achieve sustainability.

The Water Research Act, 1971 established the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These issues are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

The organisations that participate in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- non-governmental organisations (NGOs).

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities, and the transfer of technology.

The Division: Water, Environment and Forestry Technology (Environmentek) of the CSIR specialises in research into water quality, including technology to meet effluent and water-quality standards, and to establish reclaimed water as an additional water source.

Environmentek is a world leader in research into activated sludge processes and the biological monitoring of water to detect potentially toxic substances. It is also involved in research into the effects of afforestation and veld management on the quantity and quality of catchment water-yield.

Environmental research

The Chief Directorate: Environmental Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes comprise subjects such as waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.

Some programmes are conducted in collaboration with the NRF, while others are undertaken on behalf of the department by the CSIR and universities. Research into human-environment interaction, sponsored by the department, is co-ordinated by the HSRC.

In addition, institutes of the ARC are concerned with environmental research insofar as environmental problems impact on agriculture or are caused by agricultural practices.

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) is a statutory body functioning under the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

The SAWS delivers public-good services, mainly for the protection of life and property, as well as commercial services to the private sector, as stipulated in the Weather Service Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).

The implementation of NiNjo, the new forecasting workstation, will be a major step towards improving the quality of forecasting products and services. The SAWS will be the first national meteorological service in the southern hemisphere to have access to this state-of-the-art technology, which presents product development and research opportunities for South Africa's forecasters and researchers.

Among other activities, the SAWS runs the Global Atmospheric Watch Programme, which measures and monitors greenhouse gas datasets. The SAWS has also rolled out a number of ozone-monitoring stations in the SADC region.

The NRF directs the multidisciplinary Conservation and Management of Ecosystems and Biodiversity Focus Area, primarily in collaboration with universities and museums, to promote and support research into living resources and terrestrial, freshwater, marine, coastal and atmospheric ecosystems.

Some 170 projects are approved annually, and global issues such as climate change and biological diversity are also included. The sustainable use of natural resources is a priority area, resulting in an increase in projects relying on sociology and the humanities. The NRF also supports a range of environmental research network organisations, such as the Arid Zone Ecology Forum, the Fynbos Forum, the Indigenous Plant-Use Forum and the Savanna Ecology Forum.

Fisheries research

Research into South Africa's fish resources, and their conservation and judicious exploitation, is

The South African Government is offering generous tax incentives to encourage the private sector to invest in research and development (R&D) activities in the country, in terms of Section 11(d) of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

The incentives consist of a deduction of 150% in respect of expenditure on eligible scientific or technological R&D undertaken by enterprises or individuals within South Africa, and an accelerated depreciation of assets used for purposes of scientific and technological R&D over three years at the rate of 50:30:20, starting from the year of assessment in which the asset is brought into use.

carried out by research personnel of the Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management, a division of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and by several universities and NGOs.

Research is designed to provide parameters for estimates of stock sizes and sustainable yields for the different fisheries.

Coastal and marine research

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world. The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce. It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry can make use of various overseas developments.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanism and microbiology)
- Tellumat (development of electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (development and improvement of tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables SA (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

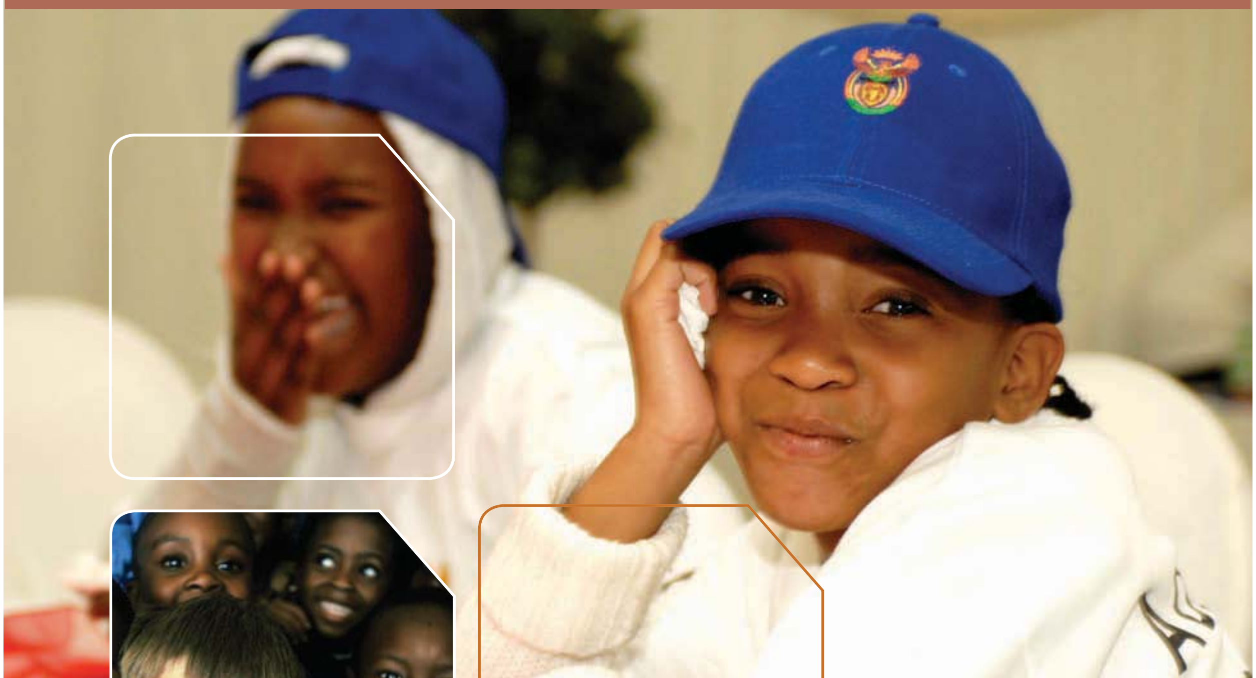
Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Council for Geoscience
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
Human Sciences Research Council
Medical Research Council
National Health Laboratory Service
National Research Foundation
Water Research Commission
www.csir.co.za
www.dst.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.iscor.co.za
www.sabs.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.sagoodnews.co.za

Suggested reading

Bonner. P, Esterhuysen, A and Jenkins, T. *The Search for Origins: Science, History and South Africa's "Cradle of Humankind"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.
Bonner, P and Esterhuysen, A. *A Search for Origins: The Cradle of Humankind and the South Africanisation of Science*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Brooke-Simons, P. *Cullinan Diamonds: Dreams and Discoveries*. Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.
Fig, D. *Uranium Record: Questioning South Africa's Nuclear Direction*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
Harrison, I and Joyce, P. eds. *The Book of Firsts: South African Edition*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
Harrison, P. *South Africa's Top Sites: Science*. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2004.
Staples, CO. *Mills of Southern Africa: Water, Wind and Horse*. Pretoria: Umdaus Press, 2006.

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT



The Department of Social Development aims to ensure the provision of comprehensive, integrated, sustainable and quality social-development services to combat vulnerability and poverty. It also strives to create an enabling environment for sustainable development in partnership with those committed to building a caring society.

The national department provides strategic policy leadership and implementation support to nine provincial departments that are responsible for direct service delivery to citizens. It monitors and evaluates a range of social-development programmes.

The department's key programmes include:

- assistance through the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa)
- social-welfare services
- integrated developmental services, including community development
- research in the area of population and development issues and social policy to enhance evidence-based policy development and planning.

The departmental mandate has also widened in recent years to include initiatives aimed at improving the livelihoods of South Africans by co-ordinating home- and community-based care (HCBC) for people living with HIV and AIDS (including probation services, childcare and protection, and family couselling and support services), sustainable livelihoods and food-relief programmes, with a focus on programmes for particularly vulnerable groups.

The Department of Social Development collaborates with other government departments within the framework of intergovernmental-relations legislation and co-operative governance. It also collaborates with non-governmental organisations (NGOs), faith-based organisations (FBOs), the business sector, organised labour and other role-players to ensure its strategic objectives are implemented.

The department also undertakes participatory research to provide evidence for developing relevant and appropriate programmes and strategies for sustainable livelihoods, and policies and strategies on community development. This includes creating a conducive environment for facilitating community development practice and overseeing the National Development Agency (NDA).

Legislation

Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)

The Older Persons Act, 2006 contains provisions to improve the lives of older South Africans.

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

Childcare legislation

The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children, defines parental responsibilities and rights and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

In 2008/09, the Department of Social Development allocated over R22 million towards the protection of children. These resources will be directed at standardising and accelerating delivery in the areas covered by the Act. The department has finalised a set of draft regulations for public discussions. To get South Africa ready to implement the Children's Act, 2005, government increased awareness on the legislation and draft regulations while accelerating service delivery to children.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children
- defines parental responsibilities and rights
- makes further provision regarding children's courts
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- makes new provision for the adoption of children
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and trafficking, and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- provides for surrogate motherhood
- creates certain new offences relating to children

- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007) provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)
- further protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child- and youth-care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without consent of parents or guardians
- the discipline of children.

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register (NCPR) that records all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

It also lists any person found by the Children's Court and criminal courts to be unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register, however, is not open to the public, and all requests for information must be directed through the Department of Social Development.

Health insurance

An estimated seven million South Africans contribute to medical schemes. These schemes account for the largest element of contributory health cover, which was estimated at R43 billion in 2005, excluding the Tax Expenditure Subsidy.

The current private health arrangements incorporate only limited levels of social solidarity. Optimising social solidarity requires:

- Risk equalisation: This is achieved through inter-scheme financial transfers to eliminate demographic differences between medical schemes. This is being implemented following government's approval.
- Minimum benefits: By mid-2007, the mandatory minimum package represented only about a third of a comprehensive package of benefits.
- Income-based contributions: By mid-2007, some medical-scheme members paid at-rate contributions that were insensitive to income. The inequitable provision of tax subsidies to higher-income groups created a perverse outcome.
- Mandatory participation for income-earners: Voluntary contributory health systems are characterised by "anti-selection". Mandating participation in health cover is a key mechanism to bolstering and sustaining risk-pooling.

In July 2008, Cabinet received a progress report on the establishment of a national health insurance system for South Africa and noted that legislation relating to the establishment of the Risk Equalisation Fund was before Parliament.

Community development and sustainable livelihoods

The persistence of poverty calls for the development of innovative and sustainable community-development and poverty-eradication policies, strategies and programmes that will not only create opportunities for sustainable jobs and income generation, but that will also harness and strengthen resources within households and civil society to achieve sustainable livelihoods.

Eradicating poverty is the highest priority in government's efforts to build a better life for all. In this regard, the Department of Social Development manages the Sustainable Livelihoods Programme, which aims to assist communities in a range of developmental projects and to develop best practices to link social grants to the livelihood strategies of direct and indirect beneficiaries and income-generating vehicles such as co-operatives.

By mid-2007, a four-phased pilot project was being implemented in the Eastern Cape, with the first phase completed.

The objective of this pilot project is to restore the poor and vulnerable as quickly as possible to self-reliance.

Through this pilot project, the "sweat equity" principle, which provides beneficiaries with an opportunity to invest in-kind in their own development initiatives, was introduced. This process ensures that beneficiaries do not become passive, but rather play the role of active partners in the development process.

The project also ensures ownership, commitment and accountability on the side of beneficiaries, which are critical and necessary ingredients for sustainability.

Through this process, government supports beneficiary initiatives and is therefore perceived not just as a provider but also as an enabler.

In addition to providing social assistance, the Department of Social Development is implementing poverty-relief initiatives.

War on poverty

In August 2008, government launched the national War on Poverty Campaign to reduce poverty among the country's poorest citizens. The most deprived households identified in the poorest wards will be visited periodically by a team of professionals and community workers to identify their specific needs to accelerate access to government services and to provide safety nets.

The success of tackling poverty and social exclusion requires that every sector plays its part. "War rooms" that are inclusive of, among other things, government at all levels, business, and voluntary and community organisations have been set up to fight poverty. Local government departments will intervene in areas such as the provision of free basic services, public works and other indigent measures.

The War on Poverty Campaign's approach draws on the experience of other focused and targeted initiatives, such as the urban and rural development strategy, Project Consolidate and izimbizo to bring about maximum impact in identified communities.

In March 2008, support for victims of crime and violence, in particular women and children, received a boost when the Department of Social Development, the European Commission and the United Nations (UN) Office on Drugs and Crime launched a partnership for victim empowerment in Pretoria.

The European Commission has provided donor funds for the Department of Social Development's Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP), with the UN Office on Drugs and Crime as the implementing partner.

The VEP aims to make the criminal-justice process more victim-friendly and minimise the negative effects of crime on victims. Specific emphasis is placed on the prevention of victimisation; and providing support, protection and empowerment for victims of crime and violence, with a special focus on vulnerable groups.

The main role-players are the Department of Social Development as the lead and co-ordinating agency; the South African Police Service; the departments of justice and constitutional development, correctional services, health and education; non-governmental organisations; community-based organisations; and other structures at local government level.

Comprehensive social security

Government has committed itself to specific goals concerning a comprehensive social-security system. The Cabinet-approved framework of the new system seeks to ensure access to social security, including appropriate social assistance as provided for in Section 27 of the Constitution.

The setting up, over time, of a comprehensive social-security system will result in substantial changes to the existing social-insurance funds, the enhancement of administrative arrangements, a new tax structure and adjustments to employee benefits across the economy.

This reform project will affect all South Africans and extend across the entire labour market. Its implementation calls for a new social partnership, constructed on the principles of equity and solidarity, that builds on public-administration reforms and effectively mobilises private-sector capacity.

To give effect to government's social-insurance reform agenda, Cabinet appointed an inter-ministerial committee to provide political leadership. The Department of Social Development will play a key role in designing and implementing reforms in the area of:

- retirement provisions
- social-health insurance
- unemployment insurance
- compensation for injuries and diseases on duty
- road-accident insurance.

Among these reforms, retirement provisions present the most complex of challenges, encompassing savings for old age, contributions to post-retirement medical schemes, disability and survivors' benefits.

A discussion document on the reform of retirement provisions in South Africa can be found on the Government's website: (*www.info.gov.za/otherdocs/2007/soc_sec_retire.pdf*).

The key proposals regarding retirement reform include:

- removing the means test for the Old-Age Grant and increasing the upper ceiling of the means test for all other grants
- introducing a mandatory system of retirement contributions
- reviewing the current system of tax-expenditure subsidies
- establishing a government-sponsored retirement fund

- introducing ancillary benefits along with retirement savings to cover disability and survivors' benefits
- providing arrangements for post-retirement medical contributions.

Social-assistance policy developments

In the context of South Africa's main challenges of high levels of poverty and inequality, the Department of Social Development continues to expand the social safety net. The Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), creates uniform norms and standards that apply countrywide. It provides for the publication of regulations on performance management and on adherence to the Batho Pele ("People First") principles of customer service.

The Act provides for the rendering of social assistance to persons, mechanisms for the rendering of such assistance, the establishment of an inspectorate for social assistance and related matters.

Social-assistance transfers are funded from general revenue and are appropriated on the Vote of the Department of Social Development. Social-assistance cash grants provide targeted income support to those whose livelihoods are most at risk. The available grants are the old-age; disability; child-support; foster-care; care-dependency and war-veterans' grants; and temporary grant-in-aid relief.

In February 2008, the Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, announced that the qualifying age for men for old-age pension would be reduced from 65 to 63 in 2008, to 61 in 2009 and to 60 by 2010. More than 23 million older persons receive the Old-Age Grant and 1,4 million people receive the Disabillity Grant.

Expenditure on social security increased from R36,9 billion in 2003/04, which was 2,9% of gross domestic product (GDP), to a projected R73 billion in 2009/10, constituting 3,1% of GDP.

By March 2008, about R12,4 million people were receiving social grants. By October 2008, 8,3 million children were recieving the Child-Support Grant (CSG), which is provided to children in need (up to the age of 15 years from 1 January 2009).

The growing number of child-support beneficiaries has been the main source of increased expenditure over recent years, with the increase in disability grants taking up a rising share of the total.

Government's medium-term aim is to increase the qualification age limit for the CSG to the 18th birthday.

By October 2008, 494 992 children were receiving the Foster-Care Grant. Foster care is a temporary measure until the children reach the age of 18, unless an extension is requested.

To provide a direct response to poverty and vulnerability in the context of rising food prices, the department ensures that qualifying vulnerable citizens receive the Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant. The SRD Grant is designed to address temporary provision of assistance to those in dire situations. An amount of R124 million was allocated in 2008/09 to meet these needs and to complement the department's integrated response to these crises. In October 2008, a further R500 million was allocated to Sassa to provide relief to households or individuals facing hardship.

SRD is a temporary provision of assistance intended for persons who are unable to meet their families' most basic needs. The SRD may be in the form of a food parcel or a voucher to buy food. Some provinces give this assistance in the form of cash. SRD is given for a short time only, usually for up to three months, and sometimes for six months.

Sassa is responsible for SRD for categories relevant to social grants, and provides it in cases where the person:

- is awaiting permanent aid, in the form of a social grant
- is found to be medically unfit for a period of less than six months
- has appealed the suspension of a grant
- needs help while waiting for the children's grants to be processed by government
- has experienced a crisis or disaster, for example, the house has burnt down

Amounts of grants per month as at 1 November 2008

Grant type	Amount
Old-Age Grant	R960
Disability Grant	R960
War-Veterans' Grant	R960
Foster-Care Grant	R650
Care-Dependency Grant	R960
Child-Support Grant	R240
Grant-in-Aid	R210

Source: South African Social Security Agency

- is unable to get maintenance from the other parent of the child or children, or the breadwinner has died, or has been sent to prison for a short time (less than six months)
- has been affected by a disaster in the area that has not been declared a disaster area.

By July 2008, 1,4 million people received the Disability Grant.

The Social Cluster is dealing with the implementation of a common tool that will assist in assessing disabilities. The implementation of the tool has been put on hold pending the amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 in the 2009 Parliamentary cycle. In the meantime, the Department of Social Development has appointed 40 members to panels of tribunals to deal with appeals submitted for all grants, especially those for disability benefits.

Implementing social-assistance programmes

Before 2006, the nine provincial departments each had its own administration for social assistance. This situation posed significant challenges for government concerning lack of norms and standards of social-assistance service delivery. The Sassa Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004), was introduced to create a single entity for the delivery of social grants. The agency took over this responsibility from the provinces from April 2005.

The agency's delivery model aims to ensure that the administration and payment of social grants become more customer-focused, while ensuring regular reviews of beneficiaries' eligibility. Regular reviews and a comprehensive fraud strategy should reduce levels of fraud, leakage and corruption in the social-grants system.

Sassa was apportioned a budget of R4,5 billion for the 2008/09 period to facilitate proactive service delivery. Its initiatives include the Integrated Community Registration Outreach Programme. This flagship programme involves the participation of the departments of social development, home affairs, health, and education and the South African Police Service (SAPS). The programme has also revolutionised turnaround times for the processing of applications, and it is now possible for an application to be approved on the same day.

Sassa has purchased 40 mobile units to take services to remote and rural communities. The trucks are one-stop shops where beneficiaries can apply for identity documents and grants.

Together with the Department of Health, the Department of Social Development has embarked on a project that aims to bring about the provision of free healthcare and disability grants seamlessly, by piloting and then rolling out a harmonised assessment tool for people with disabilities.

Cabinet approved a new definition of disability, specifically for two programmes (free healthcare and disability grants). This definition necessitated an investigation into possible dispensation for people with chronic conditions, who usually form the bulk of temporary disability grant recipients.

The rehabilitation of people with disabilities is considered imperative to facilitate the development of an exit strategy for them from social grants. Such rehabilitation is expected to enable people with disabilities to access training and job opportunities.

Employment assistance

An employment-assistance directorate has been established to link social-grant beneficiaries with economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies, for their possible exit from the social-grants' system.

In line with this thinking, Cabinet approved a presentation on this proposal, in principle, to explore possible economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies for the same purpose.

Combating fraud and corruption

The department's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week

From the beginning of June 2008, the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) is accepting social-grant applications from eligible applicants who are having trouble getting official identity documents and birth certificates.

As stipulated in the regulations of 2005, Sassa accepts sworn affidavits deposed before a commissioner of oaths testifying to, among other details, the names, age, and parentage of the child and any other applicant.

Although this policy shift was initially designed to accommodate applicants for the Child-Support Grant, the Department of Social Development has decided to extend its implementation to all grant types.

The benefit will be for people who apply and meet the eligibility and means-test criteria.

- an e-mail address (*fraud@socdev.gov.za*) and a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11).

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal control systems have been improved, and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

By March 2008, the Special Investigating Unit, National Prosecuting Authority and SAPS were busy with investigations, prosecutions and recovery processes involving both private and public-sector beneficiaries who had unlawfully obtained grants.

Disciplinary proceedings were also ongoing against all public servants who had been prosecuted and those who had agreed to repay unlawfully obtained grants.

By March 2008, 3 970 public-sector beneficiaries had been convicted. The target for the 2008/09 financial year was to investigate and prosecute 3 500 public-sector and private beneficiaries. Furthermore, 8 000 beneficiaries were targeted for repayment of grants through acknowledgement of debt agreements.

By September 2008, the department had removed 333 233 grants from the system, with an annual value of over R1 billion. It had ensured that 21 189 irregular private beneficiaries and public servants repay the illegally obtained grants worth R114 374 million.

Improving community development service delivery

To improve community development service delivery, the Department of Social Development is regrading work and salary levels for community-development practitioners.

The department has also worked with the South African Qualifications Authority to standardise the qualifications and training of community development practitioners. An agreement has been reached on the generic qualifications at National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels one, three and four.

The department is also consulting stakeholders in drafting a community development policy, which has been identified as an important aspect for improved community development service delivery.

The envisaged policy on community development will integrate the norms and standards for community development practice.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections 2007 – 2011 serves as South Africa's primary HIV and AIDS policy document. Recognising the growing need to combat the further spread of the pandemic, the plan hinges on four key priorities, namely:

- prevention
- treatment, care and support
- monitoring, research and surveillance
- human rights and access to justice.

The sustained national response is beginning to pay some dividends as data indicates that the infection rate among women younger than 20 had decreased significantly while the average national HIV prevalence among young pregnant women had shown signs of stabilisation in the three years to 2006.

The Department of Social Development has also developed a framework for an integrated and co-ordinated response to HIV and AIDS.

The framework includes sourcing reliable research and information; providing social protection to those infected and affected, especially children; protecting children's rights; providing services; special programmes such as the HCBC Programme; empowering women; and capacitating officials to deal with HIV and AIDS.

Partnerships with other government departments, NGOs, community-based organisations (CBOs), FBOs, the business sector, volunteers and international agencies underpin the department's response to HIV and AIDS.

The main objectives of the Gender, HIV and AIDS Programme are to:

- facilitate the mainstreaming of HIV and AIDS into policies, and of gender into HIV- and AIDS-prevention programmes
- monitor the development and implementation of policies and programmes.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

The expansion of the loveLife Groundbreaker Partnership Programme aims to strengthen the loveLife Mphintshi Initiative by linking it to the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and the prevention programme in relation to HCBC and support.

The HIV and AIDS Youth Programme's services now reach marginalised and vulnerable youth in rural areas. It focuses on preventing the spread of HIV and AIDS among young people. Behaviour-changing programmes have been implemented to help reduce vulnerability.

HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy

The Department of Social Development's HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy is managed according to strategic focus areas.

In addition, a set of indicators has been developed to monitor the implementation of the workplace strategy.

Research has been undertaken to monitor the HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy, and assess related capacity-building and training needs. The impact of the department's HIV and AIDS workplace initiatives will also be assessed. The aim is to develop a comprehensive programme that addresses, among other things, sexual behaviour and creates awareness about accurate and scientific facts on HIV and AIDS.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection. The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected

The program aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Care and support

HCBC is the provision of comprehensive services, including health and social services, by formal and informal caregivers in the HCBC and support programmes.

The HCBC Programme has been prioritised as a cost-effective response substituting for a significant proportion of AIDS-related hospital care. The EPWP is a critical component of the effort to deliver holistic HIV and AIDS and tuberculosis-related services. It represents a strategic opportunity to address key pressure points in current interventions.

Some 30 056 community caregivers received stipends up to December 2007. In the same period, some 14 960 community caregivers received basic HCBC and ancillary healthcare NQF level one and two training. Some 1 145 270 beneficiaries received care and support services between April 2007 and December 2007.

A service-provider was appointed in May 2007 to assist in fast-tracking the accreditation of 100 non-profit organisations (NPOs) as training service-providers. The appointed service-provider developed a toolkit that was approved by the Health and Welfare Sector Education and Training Authority. The training of facilitators, assessors and moderators from the selected NPOs was conducted in all the provinces.

The departments of social development and health formed a partnership with the Japanese International Co-operation Agency to provide technical assistance for the establishment of a

i

The objective of government's social cohesion initiative is to provide a material basis for social cohesion and social justice.

By July 2008, the following areas were receiving attention: poverty, unemployment, deprivation, lack of access to basic services and opportunities and the elimination of racism, sexism, xenophobia and other forms of intolerance.

The draft National Family Policy had been developed to provide guidelines for integrated services to promote the functionality of families.

A policy for people with disabilities had been drafted to enhance the integration and mainstreaming of the disabled and to ensure that they receive adequate services and support.

A draft framework for moral regeneration was being finalised.

A progress report on the reform of social security and retirement was handed to the interministerial committee that had been created to deal with this issue. The tasks of the committee included: a review of the social-assistance grants; the design of a contributory retirement system; compiling a social-security governance and system framework; the co-ordination of administrative agencies; national health insurance; and the regulation of complementary social-insurance reforms.

monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system for HCBC at all levels of governance.

The HCBC capacity-building programme is being implemented in four provinces, namely Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo. Three service-providers were appointed to assist in the project.

There are about 130 organisations, 10 mentorship organisations and 10 district officials involved in the programme. Quarterly meetings are held with service-providers and officials from provinces and districts. The main aim of the programme is to improve the management capacity and organisational sustainability of the HCBC organisations.

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

A policy framework for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was developed, which re ects the collective commitment of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society and the business sector, and serves as a guiding tool to all people involved in HIV and AIDS and in the children's sector. It seeks to reinforce existing commitments and efforts to create a supportive and enabling environment for children.

A national action plan was then developed to clearly define the value-adding role of various stakeholders in addressing the social impact of HIV and AIDS.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children (OVC), which will include child-headed households. The programmes, which are in place to assist OVCs include access to treatment, food, skills training and psycho-social support.

By May 2008, some 237 000 vulnerable children had benefited from the department's programmes. These encourage children from households headed by children to remain within and participate in the communities of their birth. This contributes to integrated community-based care, which is in the best interests of the children concerned.

Each community should have a childcare forum that works with social workers, welfare organisations and other community structures to ensure that identified OVCs receive appropriate services.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are given meals and a packed lunch before they go to school. Caregivers at the drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed households with homework and involve them in life-skills programmes.

Partnerships

The department continues to strengthen its partnerships with national and international organisations involved in the fight against HIV and AIDS.

The department chairs the National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS, which is a multisectoral team consisting of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society, the business sector, the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund and Save the Children, focusing on the care and support of OVCs.

Faith-based organisations and the business sector

The department has strengthened its partnership with churches and other FBOs, the business sector, volunteer organisations and individuals, to assist with poverty-relief, HIV and AIDS, and social-grant registration programmes.

Promoting and protecting the rights of vulnerable groups

Children and youth

In addition to providing social assistance to children through the CSG and the Foster-Care Grant, the Department of Social Development facilitates the provision of services to children and the youth through the provincial departments of social development and NGOs.

The department has entered into partnerships with research and academic institutions to promote scientific research in the social, population and development fields.

The department leads the co-ordination of the EPWP.

The sector is made up of the departments of social development, health and education, with the Department of Public Works as the overall co-ordinator.

The programme is being piloted through the HCBC and ECD programmes. It intends to improve the quality of training received by both caregivers and ECD practitioners to improve service delivery and offer them better opportunities to access the open labour market.

The department has successfully managed to strengthen co-ordination of these programmes at both national and provincial levels, as well as create an avenue for skilling and the creation of more job opportunities for unemployed youth and graduates.

In 2007/08, the Department of Social Development's HCBC and support programme identified and lent support to 237 980 children affected by HIV and AIDS. The department provided social support to 20 657 child-headed households.

The Department of Social Development has committed itself, as per the Integrated Plan on ECD, to increase the number of ECD sites from where practitioners are selected for training.

The ECD sites will also be provided with subsidies for children from poor households.

The annual target was set at registering 1 774 ECD sites in 2007/08. However, the total number of ECD centres registered in 2007/08 was 1 981. The total number of children benefiting from the subsidies was 355 762 – an increase of 24 000 children.

In 2007/08, there were 1 682 national adoptions and 231 intercountry adoptions.

The department seeks to:

- increase the number of local adoptions
- increase the number of prospective adoptive parents locally and reduce the placement of children through intercountry adoption
- make communities aware of adoption services
- contribute towards the reduction of the number of children placed in foster care and child and youthcare centres.

International social services (ISS)

ISS are rendered to clients in need of intercountry social services to and from South Africa, focusing on unaccompanied minors.

The South African ISS unit works with other ISS offices worldwide. There is a good network of ISS branches, affiliated bureaus and correspondents.

There is also close collaboration and overlap on enquiries with regard to adoptions.

The ISS unit has initiated training at provincial level to streamline referral processes in the sector across partner departments and NGOs.

Child abuse and neglect

The Department of Social Development's priority is fighting child abuse and neglect, as illustrated by the following initiatives:

- NCPR: By November 2007 a wireless web-based system was being introduced and provinces were to participate in this programme, which had already established a community-based, integrated information management system with an NCPR component linked to the national database.
- The draft Policy Framework and Strategic Plan on the Prevention and Management of Child Abuse, Neglect and Exploitation has been completed. Effective implementation is expected to reduce the incidence of abuse and neglect, and to clarify stakeholders' roles and responsibilities.
- Isolabantwana ("Eye of the Child"): The department funded the South African National Council for Child Welfare to replicate a prevention programme in communities to eliminate child abuse and promote child protection. The programme aims to provide a safety net for children within a community where services and support can be provided to children at risk on a 24-hour basis, and in areas where resources are limited. Community members contribute to the success of child-protection services, as they reside in the communities and are familiar with the local people, structures and traditions.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a toll-free crisis line (0800 55 555) to children and families across South Africa on a 24-hour basis. The line provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is an NPO that works collectively to protect children from all forms of violence and to create a culture of children's rights in South Africa.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- crisis line
- child rights, prevention and education
- training of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work in child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation for child witnesses
- networking and co-ordination
- advocacy.

Programmes delivered through the national office are:

- training and education
- analysis of law and policy
- lobbying and advocacy
- networking and co-ordination.

Social-crime prevention

Probation services

The Department of Social Development is implementing the Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991), as amended, and at national and provincial levels provides early intervention services and prevention programmes to offenders and victims of crime. Social crime prevention has been allocated R7 million, a significant increase of 132,6 % since 2004.

In collaboration with the Umsombomvu Youth Fund (UYF) and as part of the National Youth Service Programme for youth in conflict with the law, a voluntary Assistant Probation Officers Programme is being implemented. By August 2008, 180 young people from seven provinces had completed block three training and the social-crime prevention allocation had been increased to R7 million. Twenty-five co-ordinators were trained on minimum norms on diversion and 164 probation practitioners and secure-care officials were trained in customer-care excellence.

The National and Provincial Probation Service Co-ordinators Forum meets on a regular basis to deal with service-delivery issues pertaining to children awaiting trial, especially their removal from correctional facilities.

Provinces have increased the number of diversion programmes to ensure that children are diverted from the Criminal Justice System. One such centre is the Mangaung One-Stop Youth Justice Centre in the Motheo District in the Free State.

Home-based supervision is proving to be a successful programme for any high-risk child or child in con ict with the law. It is a cost-effective manner of bringing about behavioural changes within these children. The parents have to be co-responsible in dealing with their children to achieve the desired changes. Different programmes can be used during home-based supervision. The assistant probation officer is responsible for supervision but the probation officer remains the case manager. Regular consultations should take place between the probation officer and assistant probation officer to achieve the best results.

Overcrowding in prisons remains a concern. The national office and provinces have developed an action plan to ensure that children do not await trial in prisons.

The focus of the action plan is to provide secure-care facilities. By mid-2007, there were 36 secure-care centres in the country and provision was being made for additional facilities, especially near magistrates' courts.

Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP)

The VEP aims to lessen the long-term impact of crime by proactively tending to the needs of all victims of crime and violence, with a special focus on women and children.

It also ensures that the implementation of such programmes and policies is monitored and evaluated.

The year 2008 marked the 10th anniversary of the VEP. Through the VEP, the Department of Social Development has scored several achievements. These include the establishment of 89 shelters to cater for abused women in the country. In 2001, there were only 39 shelters, which were mostly operated by civil-society organisations.

In 2008, in supporting the programme, the European Union and the United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime pledged R20 million over a three-year period to strengthen existing shelters and programmes.

Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy

The Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy serves as a framework for a victim-centred approach, with strong emphasis on service delivery to victims of crime and violence. It promotes the reduction of secondary victimisation and improved co-operation with the criminal justice process.

The draft policy document serves as a point of reference for all stakeholders regarding the establishment, development, delivery and nature of victim-empowerment benefits and services. It serves as a framework to facilitate the establishment of partnerships for integrated, effective and efficient service delivery to victims.

The core intervention strategies for the Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy apply to all sectors involved in the empowerment of victims, namely:

- capacitating management structures
- creating awareness and providing information
- building skills
- educating and training personnel and consumers in using the services
- establishing services and programmes
- research and M&E.

National Directory on Services for *Victims of Violence and Crime*

The *National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime*, which was launched during the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign in December 2004, is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or co-ordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Minimum Standards for Service Delivery to Victims of Crime and Violence

The Minimum Standards for Service Delivery to Victims of Crime and Violence is a developmental quality-assurance instrument for practitioners. Proficiency, professionalism and respect for the client are uppermost in service delivery.

Workshops concerning the implementation of the minimum standards for service delivery to the victims of violence are continuing in some provinces as a complementary process to the implementation of the South African Victim's Charter of Services. Provinces conducted development quality-assurance criteria "workshops" using the minimum standards document as a guideline.

Campaigns: national/international women's days and 16 Days of Activism

South Africa is a signatory to various international declarations on the promotion and the protection of the rights of women and children, such as the Convention of the Rights of the Child, the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women, and the Declaration on the Elimination of Violence Against Women.

To honour these conventions, the department participates in events such as:

- 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children
- International Women's Day.

Women's Strategy

The social-development-specific Women's Strategy guides service delivery to women within the social-development sector. The focus is on empowering women and promoting their resilience.

The Women's Strategy aims to address the needs of women in South Africa and to empower them to know their rights and be assertive, productive and independent, by developing and implementing policy, programmes and services in partnership with stakeholders.

Strategy for the Engagement of Men and Boys in the Prevention of Gender-Based Violence

The strategy aims to strengthen existing programmes and develop new initiatives aimed at mobilising men and boys to positively engage in the prevention of gender-based violence.

The objectives are to:

- guide efforts to mainstream the constructive involvement of men and boys in preventing gender-based violence in the social-development sector, in line with the National Gender Machinery's Men and Gender Equality Programme
- facilitate integration of the involvement of men and boys in preventing gender-based violence programmes into the National Action Plan.

Interdepartmental collaboration

The department is actively involved in the following interdepartmental task teams for an integrated approach to victim empowerment, namely:

- the National Anti-Rape Strategy with the National Prosecuting Authority
- the 365 Days Programme and National Action Plan to End Gender-Based Violence in South Africa
- Trafficking in Human Beings, the Victims' Charter, and the Victims Identified by the Truth and Reconciliation Commission with the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

Care and support to families

Care and support programmes promote the family as the core of society. A well-functioning family addresses the emotional, physical, intellectual, spiritual and economic well-being of its members.

It is in the family environment that children are born, nurtured, supported and provided with opportunities for growth and development into competent and productive adults. Therefore, the family is the basic institution in society for the survival, protection and development of children.

The draft National Family Policy proposes a framework for integrated and comprehensive service delivery to families. It identifies the family as the focal point for service delivery and promotes the benefits of a well-functioning, resilient family and the extended family as a strong support system.

The draft policy is linked to the African Union's Plan of Action for Families in Africa for implementation by government and civil society.

The draft Moral Regeneration Strategy for Social Development has been developed to instil positive values in families and communities.

Prevention and treatment of substance abuse

A negative effect of globalisation is that South Africa has become situated at the centre of the world drug trade, being a conduit for the transfer of drugs to other destinations.

Dagga and alcohol are still the most abused substances. An estimated 2,2 million people use dagga or cannabis, followed by cocaine, heroin, speed, LSD, hashish, ecstasy, tik and others.

According to the *World Drug Report,* the approximate number of problem drug-users in South Africa exceeds 200 000. Close to 9 000 problem drug-users were treated at 73 treatment centres between June and December 2006. Considerable abuse of over-the-counter and prescription medicines is also reported.

These include pain relievers, tranquilisers, cough mixtures and slimming tablets, as well as solvents such as glue. The social cost of illicit drug use has not been officially calculated, but up to 12 million family members of drug users face emotional and financial strain. In addition, drug usage has a negative effect on transport safety. A third of heavy-duty long-distance drivers admit to using drugs to relax and stay awake. The main drugs used in this instance are alcohol and dagga.

Meanwhile, a conservative estimate of the economic costs to South Africa of alcohol abuse, based on research studies conducted in other countries, is between R8,7 billion and R17,4 billion a year. The social costs are also enormous. About 11 million family members have to endure the turmoil of living with problem or risky drinkers. Risky drinking affects 17,5 million South Africans. Harmful drinking is defined as people drinking first thing in the morning, drinking to the point of intoxication and taking alcohol between mealtimes.

The Ke Moja Project, launched in the Western Cape, is a prevention programme that targets the youth. "Ke Moja" means "no thanks", and the project aims to inform and educate the public about the dangers of drugs, as well as to mobilise them, particularly children and the youth, to say no to substance abuse.

In March 2008, the Ke Moja Hip Hop Campaign was launched in Cape Town by the Deputy Minister of Social Development, Dr Jean Swanson-Jacobs. Children and adolescents make up over half of South Africa's population. According to the South African Community Epidemiology Network on Drug Use, an increasing number of young patients is being admitted to rehabilitation centres.

The Ke Moja Campaign communicates to the youth in their own language the negative effects of drugs.

The Prevention and Treatment of Substance Abuse Bill was presented to the National Assembly in March 2008. It aims to combat substance abuse through:

- prevention
- early intervention
- treatment
- reintegration programmes.

The Youth Best-Practice Treatment Model was developed, and training provided countrywide to facilitate the roll-out of the model. It proposes essential elements to be considered when offering treatment to youths in residential facilities.

Successful combating of the drug problem requires the application of three elements in an integrated and balanced manner. These are:

- supply reduction through law enforcement
- demand reduction through, among other things, prevention strategies
- harm reduction through treatment and social support.

All provinces are directed by the National Drug Master Plan to develop provincial mini-master drug plans to carry out prevention, early intervention and treatment interventions in a co-ordinated manner. To facilitate this, the budget of the Central Drug Authority, which is responsible for overseeing the implementation of the National Drug Master Plan, has been increased substantially to R13 million at a rate of 57,2% since 2004.

Provinces have launched substance abuse forums and municipalities are establishing local drug action committees in which officials and members of the community formulate local plans of action to combat substance abuse in their areas.

Women

Social-development services for women is another priority, built on the premise and concern that the inequality that exists between men and women in South Africa is deeply entrenched and has characterised South African society for many decades.

Women are often subject to discrimination, exploitation and violence despite the Constitution, which affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

An unprecedented effort is therefore required to ensure that the status of women is elevated to protect their rights and speed up the attainment of gender equality.

Various economic-empowerment projects include bread-baking, leather works, offal-cleaning, child-minding and paper-and-fabric printing.

People with disabilities

There are about four million people with disabilities in South Africa, with the majority being women. The Office on the Status of Disabled Persons is part of The Presidency and is duplicated in the offices of the premiers. Together, these offices have co-ordinated work to mainstream disability issues in all government policies and programmes.

The *White Paper on an Integrated National Disability Strategy* (1997) provides a policy framework for implementation across the whole of society and through all spheres of government. The National Skills Development Strategy calls for 4% of all people who obtain training to be people with disabilities.

The Department of Social Development supports the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- South African National Epilepsy League
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

As existing policies are not adequate to address the needs of this vulnerable group, the Department of Social Development has allocated R1 million for research into the needs of people and children with disabilities.

In July 2008, a two-day National Disability Summit was hosted by the Office on the Status of Disabled Persons. The theme of the summit was "Justice and Dignity for All".

Youth development

Youth-development initiatives are guided by, among other things, the National Youth Development (NYD) Policy Framework, the World Programme of Action for Youth and the Ministerial Ten-point Plan. Various youth-development services have been rolled out to cater for the needs of young people in South Africa.

> Youth Development Month is held every June. Activities include Youth Day on 16 June, the National Entrepreneur Exhibition and National Volunteer Week.

Youth-development services

The department developed NYD implementation guidelines in line with the NYS guidelines.

The NYD Forum sits biweekly to consult, secure support for and guide provinces in implementing youth projects. Key to these are provincial visits, including hosting meetings with stakeholders and visiting projects funded by the department to monitor their implementation and impact.

Volunteerism is promoted among the youth. A volunteer manual has been developed, which includes a volunteer-rights charter and a basic code of conduct for volunteers and volunteer-involving organisations. These documents are distributed to organisations and government departments throughout the year and, in particular, during the National Volunteer Week held annually from 26 June to 2 July, as part of the Youth Month Programme. Several relations have been developed and strengthened, including the signing of the Memorandum of Understanding with the UYF on the NYS Programme.

Research and programmes

In 2007, the Draft Youth Development Framework was presented to management for approval.

From a population and development perspective, a process has been initiated to gather information on the expectations, aspirations and needs of the youth, which would serve as a basis for research and policy-making regarding the social and economic integration of youth into society.

Regarding the development of children into worthy citizens, research has been undertaken on OVC, to support policy development and M&E of children's issues.

The Masupatsela Youth-Development Programme, launched in October 2008, is a Department of Social Development-facilitated initiative, which will recruit, train and absorb unemployed and out-of-school youth.

The youth are recruited from and serve in their local communities. Through this programme, the department seeks to address the challenges facing South Africa's youthful population by using them as development resources.

The national and provincial departments of social development are tasked with co-ordinating and implementing this programme. The key responsibilities for the Masupatsela Programme include auxiliary social-work services, community development and ECD. At the end of the programme, the youth will have employment, bursary and entrepreneurship opportunities.

United Nations Population Fund Third Country Support Programme for South Africa

The UN Population Fund (UNPFA) and other UN partners have introduced a third cycle of assistance to South Africa in the form of the Third Country Support Programme, contextualised within the UN Development Assistance Framework.

The overall goal is to improve the quality of life by contributing to reversing the spread of HIV, reducing gender inequities in the AIDS pandemic, enhancing the centrality of population issues in development policies and programmes, and strengthening the integration of population factors in the national development agenda.

These areas re ect national priorities, articulated in government's Vision 2014. They are contextualised within the millennium development goals and the government-prepared country analysis, which was adopted as the basis for development co-operation with all partners. Implementation of the projects will involve and benefit all nine provinces.

The duration of the Third Country Programme is from 2007 to 2010, and a total of $13 million has been pledged by the UNFPA to support the implementation of identified projects.

Welfare services

Remuneration of social workers

The process of regrading social workers was completed and implemented at national and provincial levels. Social workers on salary levels seven to 12 were regraded. The Minister of Finance allocated funds for revised salary packages to be implemented. The implementation will be evaluated to reduce disparities and ensure uniformity.

> The South African Depression and Anxiety Group (SADAG) has partnered with the Department of Social Development in launching a national toll-free substance-abuse helpline.
>
> The helpline is the first in South Africa to offer free substance-abuse support and counselling services nationwide, 24-hours a day. More than 70 volunteers, all with psychology backgrounds, have undergone training specific to substance abuse, before joining the SADAG team of qualified counsellors. The helpline provides on-the-spot counselling services, while offering information and referrals to help centres. The toll-free helpline number is 0800 121 314.

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The broader Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers has been drafted and addresses the needs of social workers in the public and private sectors. It includes the following key components:

- increasing human resources by recruiting and retaining social workers
- promoting the education, training and development of social workers
- improving the quality of social-work services
- strengthening governance structures within the social-service professions
- promoting occupational safety standards within the workplace
- improving service conditions for social workers
- marketing and promoting social-work services and programmes.

The implementation of the strategy remains vital to the realisation of the goals of the Department of Social Development. To this end, in 2008, the department was negotiating the Occupation Specific Dispensation for various categories of social workers in the Public Service. This will create better remuneration packages.

In 2008, over 1 126 social auxilliary workers had been trained and 11 service-providers accredited.

The bursary scheme supported 1 917 student social workers in 2008.

Capacity-Building Programme for Social-Service Professionals

About R105 million was allocated in 2008/09 to train about 3 000 social auxiliary workers and family social workers.

Repositioning the developmental social welfare sector

The Integrated Service-Delivery Model for Developmental Social Services aims to implement comprehensive, efficient and quality service delivery that contributes to a self-reliant society.

The model acknowledges the interdependent relationship between the department's main programmes, namely Social Security, Social Welfare and Community Development.

It determines the nature, scope, extent and level of work that constitutes service delivery by developmental social services. It also provides a basis for determining appropriate norms and standards for service delivery, which will, in turn, provide a basis for funding and greater efficiency in service delivery.

Funding of non-governmental organisations

The services rendered by NGOs as partners of the department in service delivery continue to receive support. The department continues to award funds to service-providers at national and provincial level, with 18 national bodies benefitting.

Statutory bodies

National Development Agency

The NDA is a government agency mandated by the NDA Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998), to contribute towards eradicating poverty through funding, capacity-building, research and development. The NDA's primary sources of income are an allocation from the National Revenue Fund and donor funding.

The NDA is a critical engine that ensures growth and skills development in the South African economy and plays an important role in the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa.

Transfers to the NDA increased from R103,3 million in 2003/04 to R123 million in 2006/07. The NDA plays a critical role in finalising a national anti-poverty strategy for South Africa.

Relief boards

The Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978), provides for relief boards to offer social relief to people in distress as a result of disasters or their displacement from another country.

Non-profit organisations

Civil society in South Africa is characterised by a variety of organisations of different sizes and shapes across the political, economic and social spectrum of society.

These range from FBOs and CBOs, charities (welfare) and traditional organisations such as social and sports clubs, to a host of other development and social forms of organisations working tirelessly on weaving and maintaining the social fabric of society.

South Africa, like any democratic society, has an enabling legal environment for civil society that supports and encourages the formation of organisations.

The NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997), is perceived to be the entry point in the regulatory framework for organisations to derive benefits. It provides a registration facility for all public NPOs that are not organs of the State.

The Directorate: NPOs was established in terms of this Act to increase public access to information on registered organisations. The legal mandate requires that the directorate registers organisations within two months of receipt of a complete application, and provides support for organisations to register and meet reporting requirements.

The registration and reporting of organisations have increased substantially since the inception of the Act in 1998.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Social Development
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
National Development Agency
www.childline.org.za
www.gov.za
www.socdev.gov.za

Suggested reading

Adhikari, M. *Not White Enough, Not Black Enough: Racial Identity and the South African Coloured Community.* Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.

Amoateng, AY and Heaton, TB. eds. *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Ballard, R, Habib, A and Valodia, I. eds. *Voices of Protest: Social Movements in Post-Apartheid South Africa. Poverty in the New South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Beukes, L. *Maverick*: *Extraordinary Women from South Africa's Past*. Cape Town: Oshun Books, 2004.

Brown, D. *To Speak of this Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, 2006.

Dawes, A, *et al.*, eds. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South African Rights Based Approach*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2007.

Hoad, N, Martin, K and Reid, G. eds. *Sex and Politics in South Africa. Lesbian and Gay Rights under the New Constitution*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Lefko-Everett, K. *Voices from the Margins: Migrant Women's Experiences in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2007.

MacDonald, M. *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2008.

Padayachee, V. ed. *Development Decade? Economic and Social Change in South Africa 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Patel, L. *Social Welfare and Social Development in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press SA, 2005.

Pillay, U, Roberts, B and Rule, S. eds. *South African Social Attitudes*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Prah, KK, ed. *Racism in the Global African Experience*. Cape Town: Centre for Advanced Studies of African Society, 2006.

Ratele, KR, *et al.*, eds. *Self, Community and Psychology*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.

Richter, L and Morrell, R. eds. *Baba: Men and Fatherhood in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Robbins, S and Robbins, S. *Slavery Unmasked: Arousing the Conscience of Churches and Civil Society.* Johannesburg: Capsal, 2007.

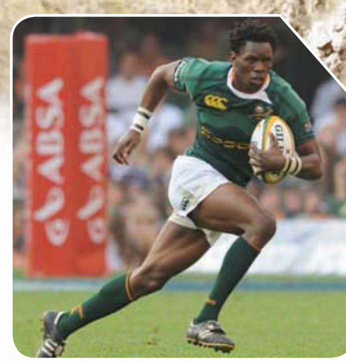
Roberts, B. *Migration Audit of Poverty Reduction Strategies in South Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007.

Schlebusch, L. *Suicidal Behaviour in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Seekings, J and Nattrass, N. *Class, Race and Inequality in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Stevens, *et al.*, eds. *A Race Against Time: Psychology and Challenges to Deracialisation in South Africa*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press, 2006.

Terry, G. *Women's rights*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.



The United Nations (UN) recognises participation in sport and recreation as a fundamental human right, which all governments should make available to their people.

South Africa was a signatory to the millennium development goals drawn from the actions and targets contained in the Millennium Declaration that was adopted by 189 nations and signed by 147 heads of state and government during the UN Millennium Summit in September 2000.

Sport has the potential to build social cohesion and national unity. South Africans were bound together when the country won the Rugby World Cup in 1995 and again in 2007, the African Cup of Nations in 1996 as well as when it won the right to host the 2010 World Cup in 2004.

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) is responsible for developing and implementing national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

The SRSA's objectives and key strategic areas are to broaden the base of South African sport within an integrated development continuum by:
- increasing the number of participants in sport and recreation
- assisting to identify and develop talent that will address transformation
- supporting national federations, individual athletes and teams
- developing sport and recreation clubs
- empowering the human resource base for sports development with special emphasis on a professional coaching infrastructure
- uplifting sport in schools
- contributing to social cohesion and peace and development
- securing a proper development continuum and academy system
- building basic sport facilities according to an approved National Sports Plan.

The SRSA aims to maximise South Africa's chances of success in world sport by:
- improving the success rate of South Africa in international competitions
- identifying priority sports codes
- contributing to making the 2010 Soccer World Cup the best ever
- assisting in the preparation of the 2010 national soccer team
- co-ordinating government's responsibilities regarding the 17 guarantees signed with FIFA for the 2010 Soccer World Cup
- assisting in making the 2010 FIFA World Cup^{TM} an African event
- making a meaningful contribution to the 2010 legacy
- supporting role models in sport
- establishing scientific infrastructure to support elite athletes.

The SRSA aims to raise the profile of sport and recreation and address issues of national importance, by:
- building a case for sport and recreation
- contributing towards government priorities through sport and recreation
- using sport as a medium to address issues of national importance
- supporting good governance to contribute to a case for sport and recreation
- supporting a co-ordinated and aligned sport system through committed collaboration and communication
- updating and enforcing a code of ethics for South African sport (including World Anti-Doping Agency [WADA] activities)
- strengthening South Africa's continental and international relations
- identifying and hosting well-organised major sports events in South Africa
- contributing to the promotion of sports tourism in South Africa.

The SRSA aims to streamline the delivery of sport by means of effective support systems and adequate resources, by:
- ensuring that systems are in place to accomplish business excellence within the department
- developing a regulatory framework for the department to fulfil its obligations
- endeavouring to unlock the resources required to achieve the objectives of the SRSA
- providing the legislative framework for the delivery of the SRSA objectives
- benchmarking world best practice in the delivery of sport and recreation
- ensuring that the department is correctly represented at forums that could contribute to the achievement of SRSA objectives.

Programmes

Sport Tourism Project

In May 2006, the SRSA launched the Sport Tourism Project at the Durban Tourism Indaba.

The primary objective of the project is to attract foreign visitors to play and watch sport and experience traditional tourism attractions such as wildlife and cultural heritage, to boost sport's contribution to the country's gross domestic product. The project focuses on rugby, cricket, running, cycling, golf and the 2010 World Cup.

Tourism is widely recognised as a major growth sector internationally and it is estimated that internationally 30% of all tourism comprises sports tourism.

The project has produced a number of information products aimed at increasing awareness of sport in South Africa. These include a sport atlas showing the location in the country of sport events and infrastructure; an interactive multimedia CD-Rom with text, photos and video clips; a nine-minute presention DVD; an electronic exhibition kiosk; and a full-colour brochure.

The SRSA aims to enhance the sustainability of the project by:

- promoting "home-grown" events such as the Dusi Canoe Marathon, Pick 'n Pay *Argus* Cycle Tour, Midmar Mile (swimming), Berg and Breede river canoe marathons, and the Comrades and Two Oceans marathons, which attract large numbers of international participants and spectators
- working closely with South African Tourism and the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to promote attractive tourist packages for spectators who want to accompany touring sports teams to South Africa
- assisting agencies to attract major international sports events to South Africa.

Mass participation

The Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme (SMPP) is the cradle of community sport in South Africa. The programme was launched in 2005 to facilitate access to sport and recreation by as many South Africans as possible, especially those from historically disadvantaged communities. The SRSA launched the programme with a budget of R20 million.

The budget has since increased to more than R290 million with the inclusion of school sport and legacy development. Sport hubs (geographical centres of activity within five-kilometres walking radius) increased from 36 to 451 in 2007, with over three million participants in various activities ranging from indigenous games to rugby, soccer, netball, baseball, general gymnastics, hockey, aerobics, handball, boxing, cricket, swimming, dance sport, volleyball and basketball. The eventual aim is to ensure that no child has to walk more than five kilometres to access an activity hub anywhere in the country.

In February 2008, almost 200 delegates attended Sport and Recreation South Africa's (SRSA) conference on training and education in sport, which resulted in the formation of a national quality forum on training in sport.

The purpose of the conference was to give role-players an update on the status of the SRSA's training initiatives and to decide on a way forward for further development.

Presentations delivered at the conference included one on the role of the South African Qualifications Authority in developing qualifications and unit standards for sport and recreation and the status of the SRSA's Volunteer Training Programme.

The idea is to establish at least one hub in every ward in every municipality across South Africa.

The SMPP is expected to enable the sport sector to contribute to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa. Trained youth will then be employed as activity co-ordinators.

Research conducted in the hubs indicates that small stipends given to these co-ordinators contribute to feeding up to eight families in some instances.

By mid-2007, the SMPP had trained more than 2 000 young volunteers in sport-and-recreation administration, over 1 500 entry-level coaches, over 1 200 referees and more than 2 000 people in event management and first aid.

Women and Sport

This project aims to address the gender imbalances in sport and recreation both at participation and administrative level, by:

- gender mainstreaming
- equity, access opportunities, diversity, legacy, active participation, research, leadership and skills development
- sustainable programmes through tested practice initiatives, including girl-child programmes
- making available resources and capacity
- developing mentorship programmes and role-modelling.

The programme also seeks partnerships with relevant stakeholders such as the Department of Education.

As part of the 2008 Women's Month celebrations, the SRSA hosted the Women in Sports Colloquium in August.

The conference, the first of its kind, created an opportunity for women to interact on various topics relating to sport and encouraged active participation of women and girls at all levels, including administration and governance.

Mass Mobilisation Programme

In January 2009, the South African Government in partnership with the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Organising Committee launched the 2010 Mass Mobilisation Programme at Galeshewe Stadium in the Northern Cape.

Some 300 schoolchildren and community members gathered there to learn how they can make the most of South Africa's hosting of the world's foremost sporting event and use the 2010 World Cup to leave a lasting legacy for the province.

The Mass Participation Programme also aims to ensure that all South Africans are part of the 2010 World Cup excitement by encouraging and supporting sport in communities throughout South Africa.

In the spirit of the 2010 World Cup, the SRSA launched the South African Schools Soccer World Cup together with the Department of Education, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) and the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Organising Committee. This tournament for under-14 and under-18 boys and girls will mobilise communities until the 2010 World Cup. This project is linked to other 2010 legacy projects such as the Supersport One Million Ball Project for schools, which, in addition to the training of volunteers, will contribute to a lasting legacy.

Indigenous games

Together with the provincial departments responsible for sport and recreation, the SRSA annually hosts the Indigenous Games Festival in celebration of Africa's cultural diversity and in an effort to revive indigenous games. The revival of these games in South Africa evolved as a response to the national call to embrace the African Renaissance.

This revival is intended to popularise those cultural activities that have a particular appeal to vast sectors of the South African society, particularly traditional rural people. Because sport and recreation activities are predominantly practised in urban areas and are largely Eurocentric, the revival of indigenous games is essential to get more South Africans more active.

Indigenous games are a fundamental part of the SMPP, which focuses on both vertical and horizontal sport development. Apart from indigenous games, the programme also incorporates, among other things, an active inner-city programme, Women and Sport, and corporate recreation.

The indigenous games are: ugqaphu/kgati/ntimo, diketo/upuca/magave, morabaraba/mlabalaba, ncuva/ntijwa/tsoro/tshimaya/moruba, dibeke/diwiki/snuka/skununu/umabhorisha, jukskei, kho-kho and iintonga/melamu/iziduku.

In April 2008, the Gary Player Country Club and the Lost City Golf Course at Sun City, North West, committed to reducing the impact of their operations on the environment by joining the Fairways Environmental Rating Programme.

Managed by Heritage SA, an independent environment-rating management company, the Fairways Programme is aimed at creating awareness around environmental best practices within the golfing industry. The programme offers cost-saving environmentally friendly solutions to some of the industry's biggest environmental challenges.

The two Sun City courses now join the Wild Coast Sun Golf Course in being the first three South African golf courses to commit to more responsible golf-course management.

The programme offers operational management guidelines and information on a range of issues and innovative ways of saving costs through a more environmental and organic approach to business operations.

Recreation Rehabilitation Programme

The project focuses on inmates and aims to promote sport and recreation participation in correctional centres. It also aims to empower inmates in event management and to become activity co-ordinators in the following activities: general gymnastics, indigenous games, netball, soccer and handball.

Legacy and Mobilisation

The programme focuses on galvanising all sectors of communities, including schools, to support the 2010 World Cup by:

- building a general climate of positive opinion among South Africans and abroad
- building sustainable activities
- creating activities not only to preserve football and 2010 but to celebrate pride and social cohesion.

External Mobilisation

Projects for 2008/09 included the:

- Foreign Mission Programme
- Latin American countries' football tournaments
- Caribbean countries' football tournaments
- Africa Youth Participation Indaba
- international exhibitions and summits
- international exchange programme.

Domestic Mobilisation and Legacy

Projects included:

- Walk for Peace and Development

- community festivals
- internal staff mobilisation
- roadshows
- mass displays
- development of music and dance
- broader football, baseball, basketball, netball, and hockey outreach initiatives
- supporter clubs
- skills development
- institutional capacity-building (clubs, schools, and communities).

School sport

School-sport events include national schools aquatics; national schools athletics; and the South African schools' winter games, summer games and cross country.

In 2005, a framework of collaboration, entitled *"Co-ordination and Management of School Sport in Public Ordinary Schools",* was signed by the ministers of sport and recreation and education.

The framework document describes the common understanding that the SRSA and the Department of Education have about the important role of physical activity and sport in schools. Besides emphasising the importance of providing all children with access to physical activity at school, the document also touches on teacher capacity-building, sports facilities and the importance of linking school sport to issues of national importance such as HIV and crime prevention.

The framework describes the responsibility of each of the two government departments as far as school sport goes. It matches levels of responsibility with specific activities and target groups. In broad terms, the Department of Education is responsible for:

- intracurricular activities, including Physical Education in schools
- intraschool activities, including afterschool sports activities
- interschool activities and competitions below regional level

In March 2008, South Africa hosted the 2008 World Croquet Championships at the Kelvin Grove Croquet Club in Newlands, Cape Town. Some matches were played at the Helderberg and Somerset West croquet clubs.

It was the first time that a World Croquet Championship event was held in South Africa, which is a founder member of the World Coquet Federation. The tournament featured 64 competitors from 17 countries.

- regional and intraprovincial activities and competitions, in collaboration with provincial sports and education authorities.

The SRSA has established the Directorate: School Sport within the Chief Directorate: Mass Participation. It consists of the Competitive School Sport and Mass Participation in School Sport programmes. It reaches about 1 600 schools nationally and focuses on capacity-building, providing sports equipment for use at events and sustaining the programme by supporting local sports assistants and local leagues and providing logistical support.

By mid-2008, a five-year school-sport programme, which was drafted for 2007 to 2011, and the co-ordinating structure were under review.

In September 2008, South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland and Botswana were represented at the Confederation of School Sport Associations of Southern Africa Ball Games Competition, which is held each year in a different Southern African Development Community (SADC) country.

The South African team walked away with four gold medals and one silver. The female teams did particularly well. Aside from the netball side, the basketball girls and boys' teams and the boys' volleyball teams won gold medals.

The SRSA contributed most of the cost of the team's participation, and played a leading role in organising and managing the team.

Sporting accolades

South African Sports Awards

The SRSA and South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc) are joint custodians of the South African Sports Awards, in partnership with the SABC. South African sports stars are presented with awards for their efforts to keep the passion for sport alive in the hearts of millions of South Africans through their achievements in local and international sports events.

The awards, held in November each year, recognise and honour individuals and teams that have excelled both on and off the field each year as well as the critical contributions made by coaches, technical officials and volunteers who continue to keep sport running.

The 2008 winners were:

- Sportsman of the Year: Khotso Mokoena
- Sportswoman of the Year: Natalie du Toit
- Sports Team of the Year: Team SA
- Disabled Sportsman of the Year: Hilton Langenhoven

South Africa's wheelchair racer Ernst van Dyk was chosen as a paralympic ambassador by the International Paralympic Committee (IPC) In January 2008.

This was announced by the IPC at the launch of its Paralympian Ambassador Programme.

The aim of the programme is to create a roster of top past and present paralympic athletes to act as ambassadors of the paralympic movement, to be role models for young people with and without disability and act as awareness and communication tools for the movement to enhance and increase its public profile. Eleven paralympic athletes from all over the world were chosen: Verena Bentele (Germany, Nordic skiing), Hou Bin (China, athletics), Cheri Blauwet (United States of America [USA], athletics), Kirsten Bruhn (Germany, swimming), Muffy Davis (USA, Alpine skiing), Michael Teuber (Germany, cycling), Tanni Grey-Thompson (United Kingdom, athletics), Ernst Van Dyk (South Africa, athletics), Esther Vergeer (Netherlands, wheelchair tennis) Chris Waddell (USA, Alpine skiing), Henry Wanyoike (Egypt, athletics).

- Disabled Sportswoman of the Year: Natalie du Toit
- Disabled Sports Team of the Year: Team SA
- Newcomer of the Year: Itumeleng Khune
- Coach of the Year: Gavin Hunt
- Personality of the Year: Khotso Mokoena.

Legislation

The National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), aims to, among other things:

- create a new dispensation for sport and recreation via the recognition of the Sports Confederation as the national macro body for the promotion and development of high performance sport in South Africa
- improve the governance of sports federations
- allow the Minister of Sport and Recreation to intervene where the actions of federations threaten to bring sport into disrepute
- address transformation in sport.

The Act was promulgated in November 2007.

2010 World Cup

South Africa will host the FIFA World Cup in 2010. Five stadiums are being built from scratch for world football's showpiece event. They are the Greenpoint Stadium in Cape Town; Mbombela Stadium in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium in Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape; the Moses Mabhida Stadium, eThekwini, KwaZulu-Natal; and Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane, Limpopo.

The following five existing stadiums are being refurbished and upgraded: Soccer City and Ellis Park in Johannesburg; Loftus Versfeld in Pretoria; the Royal Bafokeng Stadium in Rustenburg, North West; and Free State Stadium in Bloemfontein, Free State.

Government has reaffirmed its state of readiness and commitment to host the 2010 World Cup. Between 2006 and 2010, government is expected to invest more than R400 billion in the country's infrastructure.

South Africa will take advantage of the World Cup opportunity to attract inward investment (construction, manufacturing and other sectors) and to stimulate new investment in stadiums, transport, airports, communications infrastructure, accommodation, broadcast and information technology, and financial services.

The projects are also expected to stimulate skills development and create jobs, develop soccer and its commercial base, and upgrade facilities to ensure South Africa is a competitive destination for major events.

Government will deliver according to the following deadlines:

- December 2008 to March 2009: construction work on selected stadiums complete (Confederations Cup stadiums)
- April to June 2009: preparation for Confederations Cup
- December 2009: stadium and supporting infrastructure complete
- June 2010: World Cup.

By January 2009, the construction of all stadiums was on schedule.

The International Broadcast Centre (IBC) will ensure television coverage across the globe and will cater for more than 2 000 journalists. The South African Cabinet has approved Johannesburg as the venue for the IBC.

On 22 September 2008, the official mascot for the 2010 World Cup was unveiled in Johannesburg. The mascot, a leopard, is called Zakumi and was designed and produced exclusively in South Africa. The name is a composition of "ZA", standing for South Africa, and "kumi" translating into "10" in various languages across Africa.

During the Medium Term Budget Policy Statement in October 2008, government allocated an additional R1,4 billion to cover cost overruns on World Cup stadium projects, and R600 million to cover the cost of last mile Internet (high-speed) connectivity between the stadiums and the national backbone network.

Government has also indicated that it will provide support for the migration to digital television to meet international broadcasting requirements for the 2010 World Cup and beyond.

Additional allocations to local government of R8,8 billion are being made to support expanded community access to housing, potable water, sanitation, electricity and public transport.

Of the total additional amount of R8,8 billion

- R2,9 billion is allocated to the local government equitable share for increased costs of basic services, particularly electricity
- R4,3 billion is earmarked for the Municipal Infrastructure Grant
- R835 million is proposed for the Public Transport Infrastructure and Systems Grant to finance an integrated public transport network in large municipalities, including World Cup cities
- R497 million is allocated for the completion of stadiums and to help host cities with operational requirements for hosting the 2009 Confederations Cup and 2010 FIFA World Cup Integrated National Electrification Programme Grant as an inflation adjustment to the baseline.

As government works to deliver its guarantees for the World Cup, it is using this opportunity to accelerate the improvement of social services in key areas, including immigration and health services. In particular, programmes to strengthen the provision of emergency medical services are being fast-tracked. Government's World Cup projects include faster development of an efficient, sustainable and affordable public-transport system that will benefit commuters and the economy in the years following the event.

It is estimated that the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ will contribute R55,7 billion to South Africa's gross domestic product in 2010.

By 2008, the build-up to the 2010 World Cup had already created 80 000 job opportunities in the local hospitality sector. It is estimated that over the next three years a further 116 000 jobs will be created.

2010 is stimulating growth in the construction industry. By January 2009, 40 000 jobs had been created in the construction industry. The projected direct, indirect and induced impact of the total budgeted spend for the six new stadiums is R18,9 billion or 1,8 times the actual spend.

Of this R18,9 billion, around R2 billion will directly benefit low-income households and a further R7,7 million other households. The Organising Committee (OC) has agreed to procure 30% of the products and services it needs from small businesses and Black Economic Empowerment companies. Government and the OC have embarked on roadshows across the country to inform small business about the opportunities available from the World Cup.

The Minister of Trade and Industry decided on which trademarks to grant to FIFA through a public comment process to ensure the impact on local and small businesses was taken into account.

In January 2008, South Africans Alex Harris and Sibusiso Vilane made history when they became the first South African team to walk unassisted to the South Pole.

The duo set out on their 65-day journey on 10 November 2007, dragging 130-kilogram sleds almost 1 200 kilometres across some of the most hostile terrain on the planet.

Sports organisations

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is recognised by the Minister of Sport and Recreation and is representative of sports bodies, including Olympic national federations.

It is the national co-ordinating macro body for the promotion and development of high performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard. Sascoc presents Team South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, including but not limited to the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All Africa Games.

Government agencies

Two public entities deliver specific interventions in sports and recreation in accordance with the relevant legislation through which they were constituted, namely:

- Boxing South Africa (BSA), which was established through the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001)
- the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), established through the SAIDS Act, 1997 (Act 14 of 1997).

Boxing South Africa

BSA is partly funded with public money. Its functions are to promote boxing and protect the interests of boxers and officials. Its main responsibilities are to:

- consider applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing
- sanction fights
- implement the regulations pertaining to boxing
- promote the interests of all stakeholders in boxing.

In 2008, the University of the Witwatersrand's Centre for Exercise Science and Sports Medicine became the first facility of its kind on the African continent to receive the FIFA Medical Assessment and Research Centre stamp of approval.

The centre, established in 2004, aims at integrating sports science and medicine to investigate sports injuries, sports performance, doping in sport, as well as chronic disease.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS is the South African national anti-doping organisation, funded by the SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national anti-doping programme across all South Africa's sports codes.

By May 2008, it had 53 part-time, accredited doping-control officers based throughout South Africa, trained to international standards, who conducted in-and-out of competition doping controls on athletes from over 50 sports disciplines, with 53 trained and accredited chaperones to assist the doping-control officers.

The SAIDS is ISO 9001:2000 certified in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS' key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international level. In 2007/08, 2 541 doping controls were conducted. The SAIDS also conducts in-and-out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness resources and services for all its target groups, namely athletes, coaches, parents, sports organisations, members of the medical and pharmaceutical and sports-science professions, tertiary-education institutions and the public. It provides a telephone information service manned by qualified pharmacists (021 448 3888) that operates on weekdays, excluding public holidays, and has a website with a database of prohibited and permitted products in sport that are available on the South African market (*www.drugfreesport.org.za*). The website also contains up-to-date news and information on national and international anti-doping issues.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with its counterparts throughout the world to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

World Anti-Doping Agency

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to co-ordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa. This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all the relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

National Academy Programme (NAP)

The NAP seeks to improve sports performance and bring South Africa on par with other sporting nations by creating opportunities for talented athletes to exploit their potential to the full.

The NAP involves all tertiary institutions in the country that provide sports science and medical support to athletes identified by their federations and endorsed by Sascoc. The NAP also seeks to have a full-time residential programme and an insurance system for athletes as well as to provide life-skills training for them. The sports covered include priority sports for government and those in the programme for the Olympic, Paralympic, Commonwealth, All Africa and other identified multisport events.

International relations

The SRSA has embarked on a concerted effort to

In October 2008, President Kgalema Motlanthe awarded the Order of Ikhamanga: Category II Silver to the following:

- Bryan Habana: for excellent performance and for contributing to the improvement of the game of rugby in South Africa
- Shaun Pollock: for excellent contribution to cricket in South Africa and for being an inspiration to the South African cricket team
- Makhaya Ntini: for excellent achievement in cricket and for serving as an inspiration to up-and-coming black South African cricketers.
- Percy Montgomery: for excellent achievement in the game of rugby
- "Ace" Ntsoelengoe (posthumous): for his excellent achievement in the game of soccer locally and abroad and for contributing to the development of the game in South Africa.

promote relations with international parties in the field of sport and recreation. This is done through the two main subprogrammes of International Liaison and International Events.

International Liaison

This subprogramme is responsible for bilateral relations with international parties in the field of sport and recreation. In 2007, memoranda of understanding (MoUs) were signed with Bulgaria, China and the Democratic Peoples Republic of Korea (DPRK) (North Korea), providing for exchanges of expertise by placing South African administrators, athletes and coaches on a short-term basis in centres of excellence in these countries.

South Africa renewed the Protocol of Action (PoA) with the United Kingdom (UK) in April 2007. In terms of these MoUs and PoA, South Africa also agreed to host nationals of these countries to share expertise with domestic teams and sports institutes.

Pursuant to the signing of the PoA with the UK in 2007, several coaches, administrators and athletes benefited from the UK-South Africa Sports Leadership Exchange Programme, conducted from January to June 2007. Other exchanges executed in the context of the PoA with the UK include the Leeds-Durban Sports Development Programme Joint Action Plan, which was finalised between Mangosuthu Technikon and Leeds Metropolitan University.

The UK has also been instrumental in driving the Cricket Development/Drug Awareness Programme in the Western Cape and has, in conjunction with the SRSA, undertaken an audit of exchanges organised between the two countries since 1994 to eliminate duplication.

The two countries have further exchanged coaches in rowing, swimming and netball. As a sequel to the signing of the MoU with the DPRK, six officials from the SRSA and the South African Gymnastics Federation visited Pyongyang, the capital of the DPRK, to study best practices in staging mass displays during the Arirang Festival in September 2007. A team of experts from the DPRK paid a visit to South Africa in January 2008 to explore the possibilities of imparting the capabilities for organising mass displays to South African gymnastic teams, which could be used in preparations for the Confederations Cup and the 2010 World Cup.

South Africa also hosted ministers of sport of the DPRK.

With its commitment to using sport as a vehicle for advancing regional integration, promoting social cohesion and people-to-people cooperation in southern Africa, South Africa signed the Protocol Agreement with the Zone VI Region (which consists of 10 of the 14 SADC member countries) of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa (SCSA) in May 2007. The agreement outlined the rights and obligations of South Africa as the host of the Zone VI Under-20 Youth Games, in Potchefstroom in December 2008.

In its efforts to contribute to strengthening the African Union (AU), South Africa was represented by the Minister of Sport and Recreation, Rev. Makhenkesi Stofile, at the inaugural meeting of the AU Ministers of Sport Conference, which

The Supreme Council for Sport in Africa (SCSA) Zone VI Under-20 Youth Games were hosted in December 2008 by the Tlokwe Municipality in the North West. The first of these biannual SCSA Zone VI Games was hosted by Mozambique in 2004 and in Namibia in 2006. The 2008 edition of the games was the third and was hosted by South Africa. The next edition of the games will be hosted by Swaziland.

Competition took place in seven sport codes namely: athletics (including track events for the visually impaired); swimming; basketball; boxing (men only); soccer; netball (women only) and tennis.

The following countries participated: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

South Africa was the overall winner with a total of 85 medals, including 45 gold.

In May 2008, Bakers Mini Cricket established a Guinness World Record for the most children playing cricket at one time in a celebration to highlight its 25th anniversary. It is the longest developmental sport sponsorship in southern Africa.

Over 6 000 children between the ages of six and 12 years, participated in the mega festival across eight venues.

The festivities started with opening ceremonies attended by a host of dignitaries, including local cricketers, before the children took to the pitches, to start playing mini cricket at precisely the same time across the eight selected venues. They included Johannesburg (Liberty Life Wanderers), Cape Town (Sahara Park, Newlands), Paarl (Boland Park), Benoni (Willowmore Park), Kimberley (De Beers Diamond Oval), KwaZulu-Natal (Sahara Stadium, Kingsmead), Port Elizabeth (Sahara Oval, St Georges) and Pretoria (Supersport Park).

A dignitary at each event signed off the official documentation to verify the world record claim.

took place at the AU Headquarters in Addis Ababa in June 2007.

The International Liaison Unit further rendered, among other things, the following routine services:

- the execution of 18 exchange programmes involving 37 people
- the facilitation, in conjunction with the Department of Home Affairs, of 1 779 cases of support services to clients with regard to sport visas, sport work permits, South African passports, South African citizenship and permanent residence.

International Events

This subprogramme is responsible for the co-ordination and management of government's support services for the hosting of identified major sporting events.

This includes National Co-ordinating Committee meetings, which include representatives from the departments of home affairs, foreign affairs, health, transport, environmental affairs and tourism and the South African Revenue Service, the South African Police Service, the National Intelligence Agency and the Airports Company of South Africa.

Assistance to the various events is determined by the needs of the national sporting organisations.

Members of this unit are also appointed to the majority of organising committees for the various approved events, as well as representing the SRSA on the Bidding and Hosting Commission, which falls under the auspices of Sascoc. The SRSA assists federations to host various events.

2008 sports highlights

Paralympics

South Africa's paralympic team won 30 medals at the Paralympics in Beijing. Seventeen of those medals were gold. The "golden girl" was paralympic swimmer Natalie du Toit, who completed a clean sweep of victories in the five events she entered.

With 71% of South Africa's medals being gold, the team ended proudly in seventh place on the medal table. Natalie du Toit was also named winner of the Whang Youn Dai Achievement Award at the Paralympic Games.

Oscar Pistorius, after winning the T44 100 m, was a victor in the 200 m and 400 m. Another South African, Arnu Fourie, was sixth in 23,87 seconds.

Hilton Langenhoven struck gold twice; he scored a world record 3 401 points to win the men's P12 pentathlon and followed that by capturing gold in the long jump with a Paralympic record leap of 7,31 m. Ilse Hayes joined Langenhoven and Fanie van der Merwe as winners when she recorded a distance of 5,68 m to win the F13 long jump.

Teboho Mokgalagadi won bronze in the men's T35 100 m.

Ernst van Dyk, competing in his fifth Paralympic Games, captured gold when he won the road race for hand cycling class C. He finished the 48,4-km distance in one hour, 21 minutes and 40 seconds.

Phillipa Johnson won her second equestrian gold medal in the individual freestyle test grade four.

David Roos picked up a silver medal in the men's F46 long jump.

In September 2008, Oscar Pistorius won the 400 m gold in world-record time to complete a Beijing Paralympics sprint treble. The South African finished in 47,49 secs, ahead of America's Jim Bob Bizzell and British runner Ian Jones. His victory on the last night of track and field followed wins in the 100 m and 200 m earlier in the games.

Earlier in 2008, Pistorius won a court battle to take part in the Olympics and had proved himself a strong competitor against able-bodied athletes.

Among his best achievements against able-bodied athletes was a second in the 400 m event at the 2007 South African National Championships.

The South African Government launched a website (*www.sa2010.gov.za*) to provide information on preparations for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The site is complementary to the website of FIFA and the Organising Committee, and was set up in consultation with FIFA. It also provides information about the country and the continent in the context of the first African World Cup.

This is one of government's initiatives to take advantage of the World Cup communication opportunity for the benefit of the country and continent. South Africa has committed to being Africa's stage, and to making the World Cup part of a 21st century of African growth and development.

The site provides an entry point to other sources of information about the country, such as the South African Tourism and International Marketing Council gateway, and provincial and host-city websites.

Total medal count at the Paralympics, 2008

South Africa	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
	21	3	6	30

Fanie Lombard won bronze in the men's F42 shot put with a distance of 13,87 m. He is the most successful South African athlete in the history of the Paralympics with seven gold, two silver and two bronze medals.

Gavin Kilpatrick and Michael Thomson secured bronze in the sprint for blind and vision-impaired athletes.

Marius Stander finished just out of the medals in the men's T38 400 metres in a season's best 52,56 seconds.

Ernst van Dyk rounded off the Paralympics for South Africa with a bronze medal in the last event of the games when he finished third in the men's marathon T54.

Athletics

In March 2008, South Africa's Godfrey Mokoena won gold with a leap of 8,08 m in the long jump at the Athletics World Indoor Championships in Valencia, Spain.

In April 2008, South African wheelchair athlete Ernst van Dyk won the Boston Marathon for a record seventh time. His time was one hour, 26 minutes and 49 seconds.

David Grier and Braam Malherbe became the first to run around the entire coastline of South Africa. On 8 October 2008, they completed the "Cipla Spar Miles for Smiles Coastal Challenge" – a 100-day, 3 278-km run, around the southern African coastline from Namibia's Oranjemund to Ponto Do Ouro in Mozambique.

Canoeing and skiing

On 29 June 2008, Bridgitte Hartley won South Africa's first-ever gold medal at a sprinting World Cup regatta when she clinched the women's 1 000 m A-final in Poznan, Poland.

On 20 September 2008, South Africa's tradition of excellence in canoe marathon competitions was confirmed at the World Championships held in the Czech Republic as the country won three medals, including gold in the men's K2 race.

Ant Stott and Cam Schoeman won gold at the Rainbow Nation's challenge championships in the men's K2 competition, just a day after Stott had won a bronze medal in the K1 event.

Biking

In August 2008, South African mountain bike downhill racer Greg Minnaar won the Mountain Bike World Cup in Canberra, Australia.

In September 2008, Tyla Rattray won the Motocross World Title when he clinched the MX2 category championship at the Italian Grand Prix in Faenza.

Bowls

In January 2008, South Africa's triples combination of Lorna Trigwell, Loraine Victor and Sylvia Burns were crowned world champions in Christchurch, New Zealand, when they defeated Australia 15-11 in the final of the World Bowls Championships.

Cricket

In February 2008, Shaun Pollock, after a 12-year international career, retired at the top, hitting the winning runs for South Africa in his final one-day international (ODI) match against the West Indies.

In March 2008, South Africa beat Bangladesh by an innings and 205 runs in the second test in Chittagong to complete a two-nil series whitewash.

On 21 July 2008, South Africa beat England by 10 wickets in the second test at Headingley to take a 1-0 series lead in the battle for the Basil D'Oliviera Trophy.

On 2 August 2008, at Edgbaston, South Africa claimed victory by five wickets in the third test over England to secure a 2-0 lead in the four-match series.

Khotso Mokoena won South Africa's only medal at the 2008 Beijing Olympics on 18 August 2008 with a distance of 8,24 m to take silver in the long jump.

In April 2008, the *Wisden Cricketer's Almanack* – known as the cricketer's Bible – named South African all-rounder Jacques Kallis the Leading Cricketer in the World for 2007.

A few months later, South Africa wrapped up the second ODI against Kenya at the de Beers Diamond Oval by cruising to a seven-wicket victory, scoring the 223 runs needed with more than 14 overs to spare.

South Africa made history at the end of 2008 and the start of 2009 when they won the test and ODI series against Australia – on that country's home soil. The Proteas returned to South Africa as the number one ODI team in the world.

Freediving

In August 2008, Cape Town-based freediver Hanli Prinsloo excelled in the Nordic Deep Freediving Competion held off the west coast of Sweden, winning the competition and setting four new South African records in the process.

Freediving is the sport of diving deep for as long, or as far, as possible on one single breath of air.

Prinsloo first improved her mark in Free Immersion, which is a depth-discipline where the diver pulls herself down and back up a rope. The previous record was 42 m, but she lowered the mark to 50 m.

She began the pool disciplines with a Dynamic No Fins record in which the diver swims breaststroke under water. Prinsloo destroyed the previous record of 78 m by swimming 126 m underwater. That new record places her among the top five women in the world for the discipline.

Golf

In January 2008, James Kamte scored a history-making breakthrough victory with an explosive five-birdie back nine to overhaul his rivals and win the R1,8-million Dimension Data Pro-Am at the Gary Player Country Club. Kamte became the first black South African to record a victory on the tough Summer Swing of the Sunshine Tour.

In March 2008, South Africa's Ernie Els rallied from three shots adrift to win the $5,5-million Honda Classic and end his United States (US) victory drought. Els fired a three-under-par 67 for a six-under total of 274, one shot in front of England's Luke Donald.

A month later, Trevor Immelman survived a double-bogey at the 16th hole to become the first South African to win the US Masters in 30 years with a three-shot victory.

Immelman followed in the footsteps of Gary Player to secure the prized green jacket with a three-over-par 75, matching the highest closing score by a Masters winner set by Arnold Palmer in 1962.

In May 2008, Hennie Otto scored a victory in the Italian Open at the Castello di Tolcinasco Golf and Country Club in Milan on his European Tour.

Charl Schwartzel captured his third European Tour title and his second in Spain in October 2008 when he won the Madrid Masters by three shots with a total of 19-under-par 265.

On 1 November, Retief Goosen captured the Asian Tour's Iskandar Johor Open in Malaysia, with a final round lifting him to a two-shot victory after he had entered the last day four shots off the pace.

Motor racing

In February 2008, A1 Team South Africa's Adrian Zaugg produced a sensational drive in pouring rain to win the feature race at Eastern Creek just outside Sydney, Australia.

Giniel de Villiers started 2009 on a high when he won the Dakar Rally in January.

Rowing

At the start of 2008, South Africans Bill Godfrey and Peter van Kets won the 2 500-nautical mile Atlantic Rowing Race. The event began on 2 December 2007 in San Sebastian, La Gomera, in the Canary Islands.

Also in January 2008, in South Africa's Dusi Canoe Marathon, Michael Mbanjwa became the first black winner in the 57-year history of the event.

Rugby

In April 2008, South Africa's Sevens rugby team brought an end to New Zealand's season-long domination of the International Rugby Board (IRB) World Sevens Series when Neil Powell's side beat the Kiwis 15-7 to clinch the Adelaide Sevens.

South Africa finally ended their decade-long run

In February 2008, Graeme Smith and Neil McKenzie shared a record-opening stand during their second test against Bangladesh. The South African skipper batted superbly for his unbeaten 223, while McKenzie scored a career-best 169. Their stand was the best ever for the opening wicket for South Africa – exceeding the 368-run partnership between Smith and Herschelle Gibbs against Pakistan in Cape Town in 2003.

without a win on New Zealand soil on 12 July 2008 with a 30-28 victory in the Tri-Nations Series.

In June 2008, South Africa's Sevens rugby team claimed the Plate title at the Edinburgh Sevens, defeating Scotland 14-5 to finish second in the IRB Sevens Series.

On 7 June 2008, Peter de Villiers got off to a winning start as South African coach when John Smit and his team beat Wales 43-17 in Bloemfontein. A week later, South Africa celebrated a 37-21 victory over Wales in Pretoria.

On 9 August 2008, the South Africans paid tribute to former President Nelson Mandela who was celebrating his 90th birthday with a 63-9 thrashing of Argentina in Johannesburg.

Later the same month, South Africa ended its Tri-Nations 2008 campaign with a record 53-8 victory over the Wallabies in Johannesburg.

Jongi Nokwe became the first Springbok to score four tries against Australia.

In November, the South Africans beat England 42-6 at Twickenham.

At the end of November, South Africa won the Dubai Sevens title by beating England 12-7.

Soccer

In March 2008, Bafana Bafana scored a 3-0 victory over world number 26 Paraguay at the Super Stadium in Atteridgeville, outside Pretoria. In the process of scoring one of three superb Bafana goals, Benni McCarthy broke the South African scoring record he had previously held jointly with Shaun Bartlett by recording his 30th international goal.

Bafana Bafana won 4-1 against Equatorial Guinea in a 2010 African Nations Cup qualifying match in Atteridgeville in June 2008.

Two months later, South Africa beat Mozambique 2-1 to retain the Cosafa Cup, now renamed the Cosafa Senior Challenge, in the final played at the Thulamahashe Stadium in Bushbuck Ridge, Limpopo.

On 15 October 2008, Bafana Bafana made it three wins in succession when they scored a 2-1 victory over Ghana in Bloemfontein.

In November, Bafana Bafana scored a dramatic 3-2 win over Cameroon in the Nelson Mendela Challenge played at Olympia Park.

> In February 2008, following their performance in winning the 2007 Rugby World Cup and going through the tournament unbeaten, South Africa went on to win the 2008 Laureus World Team of the Year Award in Saint Petersburg, Russia.

> In June 2009, South Africa will host the world's first-ever Social Rugby World Championship.
>
> The Social Rugby World Championship 2009 will see 480 rugby players, representing 16 international teams, converge upon the city of Cape Town for a two-week festival of fun, friendship and rugby.
>
> The inaugural event kicks off in Cape Town on 13 June 2009.
>
> The 2009 tournament will also include a social outreach programme whereby each participating team will be given the opportunity to host a coaching clinic for youth in previously disadvantaged communities in Cape Town.

They started 2009 on a high note with 1-0 victory over Zambia in January.

South Africa will be hosting the Confederations Cup in June 2009. In November 2008, the draw took place in Sandton, Johannesburg. The following countries will participate: South-Africa, Iraq, New Zealand, Spain, USA, Italy, Brazil and Egypt.

Surfing

In April 2008, Team South Africa won the overall team crown at the 2008 International Surfing Association World Masters Surfing Championships in perfect waves at Punta Rocas in Peru.

Led by individual gold medalists Heather Clark (masters women), Marc Wright (kahunas) and Chris Knutsen (grand kahunas), South Africa blew away the competition to take their second consecutive team world championship.

They topped the standings with 10 500 points, 1 100 ahead of Australia in second, with Brazil, on 9 041, finishing in third, and hosts Peru rounding out the top four with 8 766 points.

In the same month, South African Davey Weare surfed to victory against the USA's Austin Ware in excellent surf at Ansteys on the Bluff near Durban to capture the Quiksilver Pro Durban title.

On 28 June 2008, Durban hosted the world's most prestigious surf ski event during winter when the Durban Surf Ski World Cup took place.

Sailing

In October 2008, South Africa's America's Cup Team Shosholoza was third across the finish line in a spectacular fleet of 2 000 yachts that competed in the 16-nautical mile Trieste Barcolana.

Swimming

In February 2008, veteran swimmer Ram Barkai of Cape Town completed a 1-km swim in an Antarctic lake in life-threatening sub-zero air temperatures. Barkai's swim is considered the most southerly

In 2008, Capetonian Melina Frey and her German teammate powered through the challenging terrains of Eastern Europe and Asia to become the first all-female team to complete the gruelling TransSyberia Rally.

Frey (26), principal driver of Team Suzuki/Maxi, and her co-driver/navigator Alexandra Hahn (28) were the only all-female team participating in 2008's competition, an event regarded as the ultimate endurance test for "man and machine".

The tough two-week competition began in Moscow, Russia, and ended 7 200 km later in the Mongolian capital city of Ulaanbaatar. In between, drivers had to traverse through Russia's Ural mountains, the swamps of the Siberian lowlands, the rugged peaks of the Altai mountains (with passes reaching up to 3 700 m) and the sandy dunes of the Gobi Desert.

swim in the world as it took place at 70 degrees latitude.

In the Arctic, Barkai faced air temperatures of minus 10 degrees Celsius and a water temperature of one degree.

In the same month, Suzaan van Biljon set a new championship record in the 200-m breaststroke at the Fina World Short Course Championships in Manchester, UK. Van Biljon clocked two minutes, 18,73 seconds to lower the previous mark of two minutes, 20,22 seconds set in 1999 by Japan's Masami Tanaka.

She also excelled in the 100 metres, capturing bronze in an African record of one minute, 05,38.

On 20 August 2008, Natalie du Toit made history when she took to the water in the women's 10-km open water swim at the Olympic Games in Beijing. Du Toit booked her place in the Olympic Games by finishing fourth in the 10-km event at the World Open Water Swimming Championships in Seville in May. She became the first amputee to qualify for the Olympic Games.

One month later, Roland Schoeman broke the 50-m freestyle world record at the Telkom South African Short Course Championships at the Delville Swimming Pool in Germiston, Gauteng.

Schoeman powered his way to a world best of 20,64 seconds in the two-man showdown final against Gregor Widmer, who clocked 22,45 seconds.

There was further success in the breaststroke for South Africa when Cameron van der Burgh won silver in the men's 100 m. Igor Borysik took gold in 57,74 seconds, with Van der Burgh second in 57,92 seconds as the first three finishers bettered the previous championship record.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
Sowetan
Sport and Recreation South Africa
The Star
www.gov.za
www.news24.com
www.sasportsawards.co.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.supersport.co.za
www.superswimmer.co.za
www.sa2010.gov.za.
www.pretorianews.co.za

Suggested reading

Alegi, P. *Laduma! Soccer, Politics and Society in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Barlow, E. *Kaepin: The Autobiography*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006.

Beaumont, F. *In the Presence of Gary Player: A Perspective on the Life and Philosophy of One of the World's Greatest Golfers.* Hatfield, Pretoria: Undaus Press, 2004.

Black, B. *Fly-Fishing South Africa's Rivers, Lakes and Surf*. Cape Town: Struik, 2007.

Black, B. *Saltwater Fly-Fishing in South Africa.* Cape Town: Struik, 2008.

Cottrell, T. ed. *Nedbank Runners' Guide to the Road Races in South Africa.* Parklands: Guide Book Publications, 2005.

Curtis, P. *Fishing the Margins: A History and Complete Bibliography of Fly-Fishing in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Platanna Press, 2005.

Eaton, T and Alfred, L. *Touchlines and Deadlines: A Compendium of South African Sports Writing.* Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Hartman, R. *Ali: The Life of Ali Bacher.* 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2006.

Heyns, P and Lemke, G. *Penny Heyns.* PHBH Publications, 2004.

Introduction to Sports Law in South Africa, edited by R Cloete. Durban: LexisNexis, 2005.

Jaffee, J and Wolfaardt, F. *And Away They Go*. Johannesburg: Sharp Sharp Media, 2004.

Jooste, G. *Rugby Stories from the Platteland*. Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers, n.d.

Jarvis, C. *South Africa 'n Surf*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Balla, 2007.

Keohane, M. *Springbok Rugby Uncovered: The Inside Story of South African Rugby Controversies*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.

King, G. *Hansie Cronje Story: An Authorised Biography.* Cape Town: Global Creative Studios, 2006.

Kirsten, G and Manthrop, N. *Gazza*: *The Gary Kirsten Autobiography.* Cape Town: Don Nelson, 2004.

Krige, C and Bills, P. *The Right Place at the Right Time.* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.

Leppan, L. *South African Book of Records.* Cape Town: Don Nelson, 1999. Greenhouse, 2004.

Murray, B and Merrett, C. *Caught Behind: Race and Politics in Springbok Cricket*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press and Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Nicholson, C. *Papwa Sewgolum: From Patriarch to Legend.* Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.

Marais, J. *Great African Adventures: A Guide to the Mother Country's Ultimate Outdoor Adventures.* Cape Town: Struik, 2008.

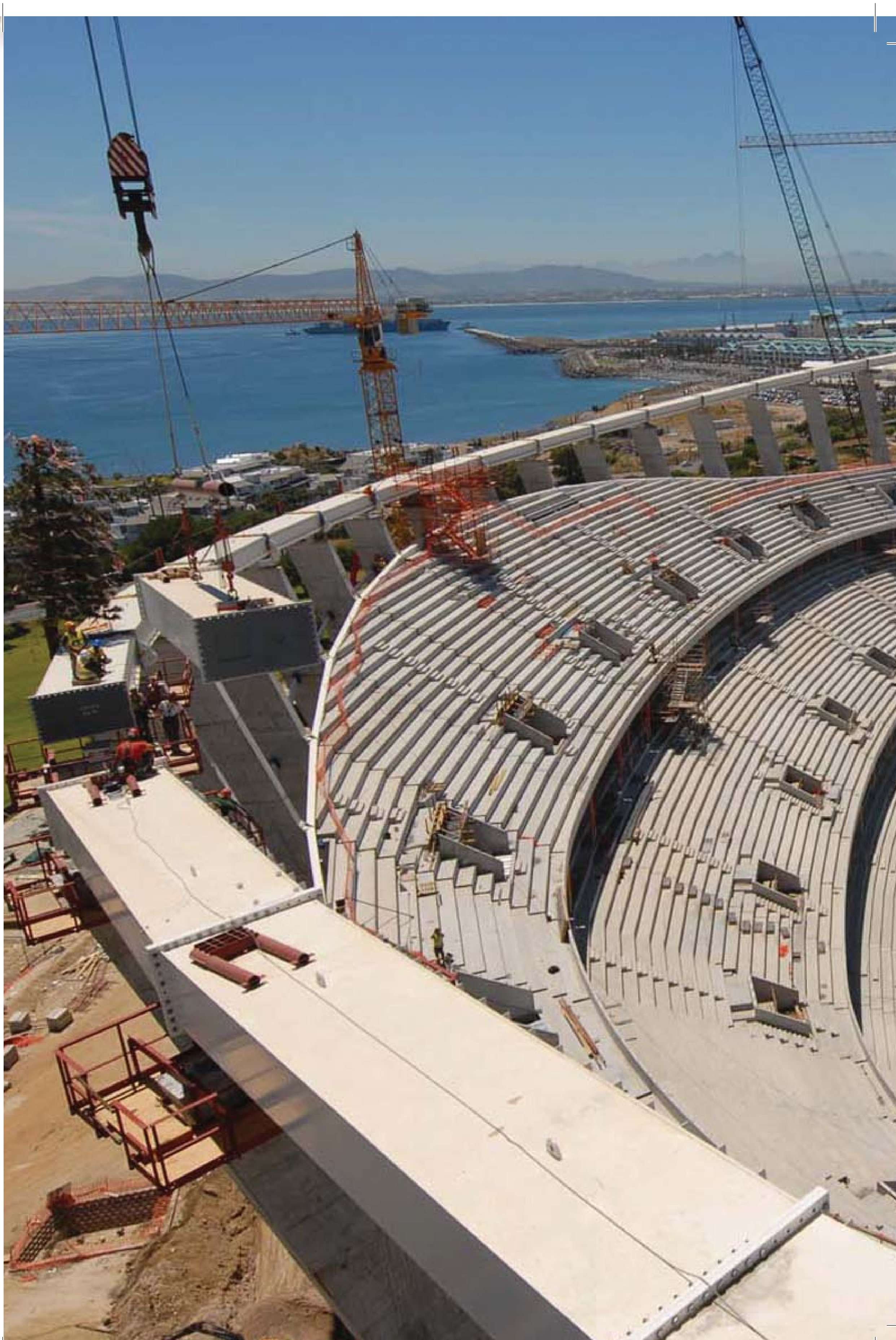
Morgan, P. *International Rugby Board Rugby Yearbook*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.

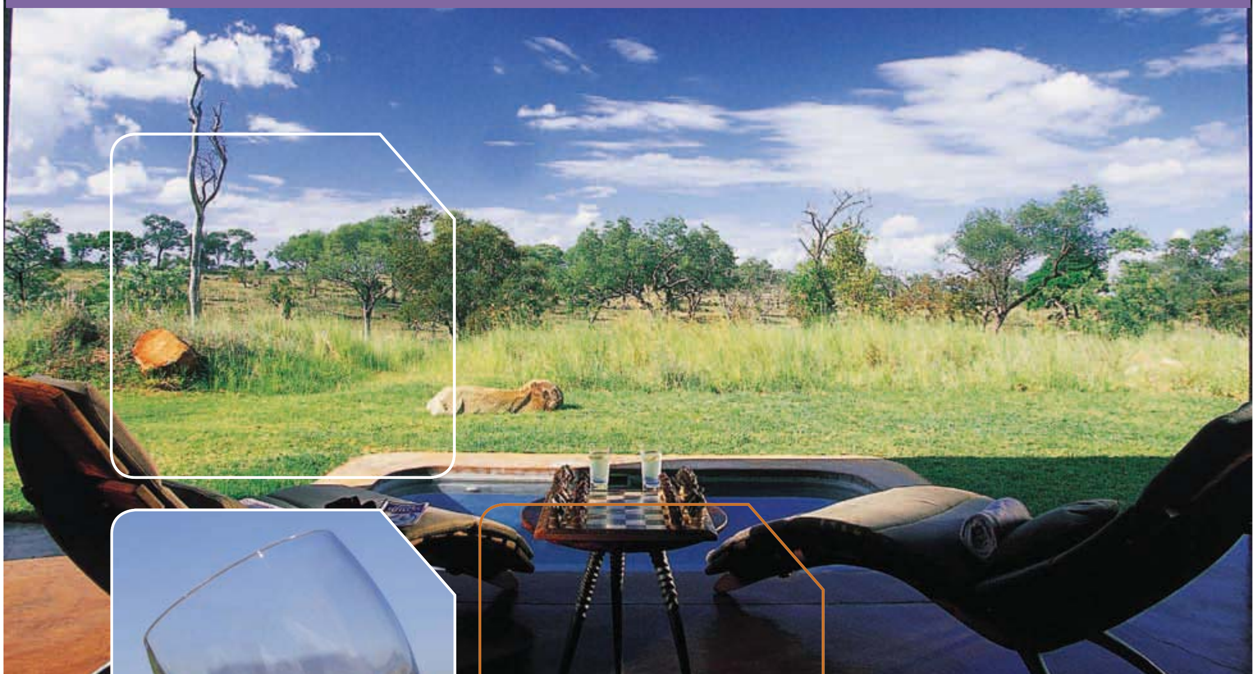
White, J and Ray, C. *In Black and White: The Jake White Story.* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2007.

Odendaal, A. *The Story of an African Game.* Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.

Ramsamy, S. *Reflections on a Life in Sport.* Cape Town: Publishing Partnership for Greenhouse, 2004.

Sasol South African Rugby Annual, 2006, edited by A Colquhoun. Cape Town: SA Rugby and MWP Media, 2005.





South Africa is the adventure capital of the world, offering visitors scenic beauty, magnificent outdoors, sunny climate, and cultural diversity – all of which have made it a popular leisure travel destination.

Tourism is one of the fastest growing sectors of South Africa's economy. Directly and indirectly, tourism constitutes about 7% of employment in South Africa. The tourism industry forms part of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa's (AsgiSA) goals to reduce poverty and unemployment; and to raise the level of economic growth by at least 4,5% in the next few years and to an average of 6% between 2010 and 2014.

Tourism has been identified as one of the key economic sectors with excellent potential for growth. It is also the only sector nationally that has managed to grow jobs (half a million and rising) while increasing its contribution to the gross domestic product (GDP). For every 12 new tourists to the country, one new job is created.

Almost 5,5 million foreign tourists visited South Africa in the first seven months of 2008, a 7,8% increase over the 5,1 million foreigners who visited the country in the same period in 2007.

The contribution of tourism to South Africa's GDP is estimated to have increased from R137,6 billion in 2006 to R159,6 billion in 2007. The number of jobs created directly and indirectly in the economy through tourism increased by 5% from 896 900 in 2006 to 941 000 in 2007.

Analysis of the arrival figures for January to July 2008 showed that growth from South Africa's traditional tourist markets remained strong, boosted by increases in arrivals from new markets. North America recorded an increase of 11,7% compared to the first seven months of 2007. The figures for Europe showed growth of 7,3%, with France recording an increase of 16,8%. Arrivals from Australasia grew by 10,9% and Asia showed an increase of 5%.

Business tourism

South Africa is increasingly targeting business travellers, who spend on average three times more than their leisure counterparts, while crossing over significantly into leisure travel themselves, through tours before or after their business activities and through return trips in subsequent years.

South Africa's first-world infrastructure, pleasant climate, breathtaking scenery and acres of golf courses makes it an ideal location for international congresses and conventions.

The country has well over 1 000 world-class conference and exhibition ventures, ranging from intimate bush hideaways to large-scale, hi-tech convention centres. They all offer a wealth of leisure acitivities, side tours and events, from walking with elephants and first-hand experiences of African culture to luxury shopping and relaxation.

An estimated 6% to 7% of South Africa's foreign visitors in 2007 were business tourists, translating to about 550 000 business tourists compared to 470 000 in 2006. In total, foreign direct spend by business tourists in the country amounted to R2,4 billion in 2006, up from about R2,1 billion in 2005.

The South African Tourism Board has approved the Business Tourism Growth Strategy, which is the result of extensive consultation between the business-tourism industry and government. It was designed to ensure that all role-players align their efforts in respect of the growth of this industry.

Adventure sports

When it comes to adventure sports, South Africa has lots to offer.

Sandboarding has become a major activity in some parts of South Africa. This sport is extremely

In the second quarter of 2008, the total income for the accommodation industry increased by 33,5%, representing some R1 144,1 million. The total income for the accommodation industry in June 2008 increased by 34,8% (R367,5 million) compared to June 2007.

Income from accommodation increased by 30,8% (R693,4 million) in the second quarter of 2008 compared to the second quarter of 2007. Furthermore, income from accommodation in June 2008 increased by 32,5% (R224,6 million) compared to June 2007.

The number of stay units available during the second quarter of 2008 increased by 0,4% compared to the second quarter of 2007. The number of stay unit nights sold during the second quarter of 2008 increased by 11,4% (from 4 476 900 to 4 986 500) compared to the second quarter of 2007. The number of stay unit nights sold for June 2008 increased by 11,0% (from 1 426 900 to 1 584 200) compared to June 2007.

The occupancy rate during the second quarter of 2008 increased by 10,8% (to 51,5%) compared to the second quarter of 2007. Furthermore, the occupancy rate for June 2008 increased by 10,5% (to 49,7%) compared to June 2007.

popular near Cape Town, in the Eastern Cape and on Gauteng's old mine dumps. Every year an annual sandboarding competition takes place in scenic Betty's Bay.

South Africa is a perfect playground for quad-biking enthusiasts. There are over 60 different trails to experience, and a good selection of these also offer quad bikes for hire.

In South Africa you can ride in wildlife reserves, through the winelands, along the coast, up mountains and past waterfalls – the possibilities are almost endless, with enticing trails in every province.

South Africa is also one of the best shark-diving destinations in the world.

South Africa is home to the highest commercial bungee jump in the world. The 216-metre Bloukrans Bridge attracts adventure-seekers from all around the world. The bridge is situated along the scenic Garden Route. A new addition to Bloukrans is the flying fox cable slide – a great option for families and groups. There are a range of jumps on the much lower Gouritz River Bridge, which has South Africa's only bridge swinging operation.

Tourism branch

The Tourism Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism promotes and develops tourism to generate revenue, create jobs and transform the tourism industry, thus encouraging the participation of historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs).

The branch provides support to both the public and private sectors, and to the broader South African community.

It has identified seven thematic areas for tourism development:

- skills
- transport
- safety and security
- information management
- marketing
- small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) and infrastructure development
- industry transformation.

These areas are the bedrock of the 2010 Action Plan, hence government's alignment of AsgiSA and 2010 FIFA World Cup™ initiatives.

Community tourism is becoming increasingly popular, with tourists wanting to experience South Africa's rural villages and townships. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

The implementation of the Airlift Strategy, the result of a strong partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, South African Tourism, the Department of Transport and the private sector, shows impressive increases in capacity to bring tourists to South Africa. The strategy supports the millennium development goals and the objectives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) to increase African connectivity and access.

Tourism policy and initiatives

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism aims to create favourable conditions for responsible tourism growth and development by promoting and developing tourism. This increases job and entrepreneurial opportunities and encourages the participation of previously disadvantaged individuals (PDIs). It focuses on facilitating the growth of the tourism industry by providing support to the public and private sectors, and the broader community.

The *White Paper on Tourism* provides a policy framework for tourism development, and entails, among other things:

- empowerment and capacity-building
- focusing on tourism-infrastructure investment
- aggressively marketing South Africa as a tourism destination to international markets
- a domestic tourism and travel campaign.

Adventures by Disney has chosen South Africa as one of eight new destinations for its list of family-friendly adventures in locations around the world in 2009. Launched in 2005, Adventures by Disney offers guided family vacation experiences to destinations in Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Australia. Adventures by Disney's 12-day, 11-night South African trip starts in Cape Town before visiting the Western Cape Garden Route, and the towns of George and Knysna and venturing into safari country at Kapama Game Reserve next to the Kruger National Park.

Families are accompanied from start to finish by two Disney-trained adventure guides who are experts on their destination. Along the way, local experts and historians provide an insider's perspective, while kids become junior adventurers and enjoy activities and surprises just for them.

Also on offer in 2009 will be an even more luxurious version of the standard itinerary on two Adventures by Disney tours – one being the South Africa trip. Known as Disney Signature Trips, these will offer an enhanced travel experience including upgraded accommodations, special amenities and events not offered on standard departures.

Raising general awareness about the opportunities for domestic travel remains a priority. The aim is to encourage South Africans to travel within their country, to make tourism products accessible to all, to facilitate the development of a culture of tourism, and to create a safe and welcoming environment for visitors.

Poverty-relief funding

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's poverty-relief projects promote the development of community-owned tourism products and the establishment of tourism infrastructure, including roads, information centres and tourism signage.

These poverty-relief projects are categorised into product and infrastructure development, capacity-building and training, the establishment of SMMEs and business-development projects.

Welcome Campaign

South African Tourism's Welcome Campaign, launched in 2004 at the Tourist Indaba, is about encouraging every South African to make every tourist feel at home, so that all tourists take with them an experience that stands out and encourages them to return.

Welcome Awards

The Welcome Awards recognise those businesses and individuals who raise the bar in the tourism sector by improving their standards of customer care and providing service excellence.

The awards programme forms part of the broader Welcome Campaign, which aims to ensure that South Africa's tourism industry is prepared to host many nations leading up to 2010 and beyond.

The awards were created to give credit to those providers who go the extra mile to deliver service excellence in the tourism industry by:

- offering travellers authentically African experiences
- enhancing visitors' experiences, encouraging longer stays and repeat visits
- turning guests into ambassadors for South African Tourism.

The Welcome Awards also promote the best businesses within each category as examples to the industry, encouraging members of the industry to share their ideas on how they can improve customer experiences and make their stay more enjoyable and impressionable.

As an increasingly important sector of South Africa's economy, tourism has the potential to fuel the economy by creating jobs, reducing unemployment and improving the quality of life of all South Africans.

Awards are given in four categories, namely: tourist attractions, tour operators, accommodation establishments and tourist guides.

The third annual Welcome Awards ceremony, was held in Durban's Albert Luthuli Convention Centre at the Tourism Indaba in May 2008. The Accommodation Category was won by Le Quartier Francias; the Tour Operator Category by Arrive in Africa; the Tourist Attraction Category by Maropeng; the Tourist Guides Category by Conraad Mouton; and the On-line Category by Cabana Beach Resort.

Sho't Left Campaign

In its ongoing quest to grow and sustain a robust domestic travel market in South Africa, South African Tourism unveiled its renewed Sho't Left Campaign in August 2008. The domestic market is an exceptionally important one for the tourism industry. In 2007, an estimated 44% (12,7 million) South African adults travelled within the country, resulting in 39 million domestic trips taken.

The newest phase of Sho't Left follows the travels of a number of young people as they explore the country. The campaign visits many of South Africa's destination delights, from buzzing, big cities to remote scenic spots and its cultural and other attractions.

Because it targets young people, the campaign strongly features adventure, entertainment and nightlife travel experiences. It showcases South Africa as an affordable and easy-to-do destination for all. This campaign aims to show young South Africans the emotional, educational and social benefits of travel.

The campaign features a series of media advertising targeting young South Africans and encouraging them to take more holidays in South Africa.

Domestic tourism growth

Domestic tourism is particularly valuable to the country because, unlike foreign tourism, it is not seasonal.

To continuously support the growth of the domestic industry, South Africa is:

- promoting the domestic-tourism brand
- promoting a set of experiences that relate to South African consumers

- distributing appropriate information in specific places
- facilitating the development of co-operative product packages
- developing marketing and distribution channels
- promoting repeat visitation.

In 2008 a research and survey company, Synovate,measured the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's Domestic Tourism Barometer and scored it a 78% satisfaction survey for tourists travelling within South Africa. Satisfaction levels of business travellers in South Africa were slightly lower than the national overall average: 73% indicated they were satisfied as against 79% of all travellers (including holiday and weekend away travellers).

Forty-six percent of business travellers stayed in hotels; 88% say they would stay there again and the majority (51%) stayed for one to two nights. Twenty-three percent stayed with friends and family; 11% stayed in self-catering accommodation and 8% stayed in a game lodge.

Eight out of 10 business travellers rated the accommodation they stayed in and friendliness of staff extremely well.

Seventy-three percent of business tourists stated that they felt safe during their most recent trip against the national cumulative overall average (including holiday travellers) of 80,4%. Business travellers spent more per day than leisure travellers – the overall average daily spend recorded over all waves for business travellers is R1 202,20 – compared to the overall average daily spend of holiday travellers at R991.

International tourism

Cabinet approved the International Tourism Growth Strategy in June 2003, which includes an analysis of core markets and their segments. Priority markets have been identified in Europe, Asia and Africa.

The strategy not only aims to increase arrivals, but also to:

- increase the duration of tourists' visits to South Africa
- increase spending by tourists
- ensure that tourists travel throughout the country and not just in a few provinces
- facilitate transformation and Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) in the local tourism industry.

South Africa has made its mark as a global destination for meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions.

Nepad identified tourism as an important sector for addressing the development challenges facing Africa. The Nepad Tourism Action Plan has been developed, providing a more detailed framework for action at national and subregional levels. The action plan proposes concrete interventions in the following focus areas:

- creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment
- institution-building aimed at promoting tourism
- tourism marketing
- research and development
- investment in tourism infrastructure and products
- human-resource development (HRD) and quality assurance.

Some of the tourism initiatives South Africa is actively participating in include:

- various tourism spatial development initiatives in the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- developing the SADC univisa, a single visa to cover travel within the region.

Although the Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa (Retosa) agreement on the need for the univisa exists, the differing levels of development in SADC countries is a challenge that must be overcome first.

Furthermore, lack of sufficient funding is hampering Retosa's ability to implement the univisa project. South Africa has advised Retosa to approach donors, especially the European Union, to assist with this project.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

The Tourism Branch has engaged with countries that have successfully hosted similar events, to learn from their experiences. In addition, South Africa together with various other African countries, the United Nations World Tourism Organisation and FIFA agreed to a programme of work pertaining to hosting a world cup which is African in scope.

South African Tourism (SAT) has joined forces with hospitality group Southern Sun to boost domestic tourism by making local travel easier, more exciting and more affordable.

Building on the success of SAT's Sho't Left Campaign, Southern Sun launched its SunBreaks Campaign, which targets young, up-and-coming South Africans, encouraging them to take shorter, more affordable holidays, more often.

The announcement that the 2010 World Cup will, for the first time, feature non-hotel accommodation has tremendous implications for SMME entrepreneurs who run lodges, bed-and-breakfast establishments (B&Bs) and other smaller establishments.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is working with MATCH, the official accommodation partner of the 2010 World Cup, and the Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) to assist SMME accommodation establishments and more specifically establishments from previously disadvantaged communities to be graded and registered as official accommodation suppliers for the event. This will provide a vital springboard to these SMMEs.

By the end of 2008, South Africa had 80 000 graded rooms, although FIFA requires 55 000.

2010 host cities

Bloemfontein

Bloemfontein is the judicial capital of South Africa, the provincial capital of the Free State and the largest urban centre in the Mangaung Local Municipality. Bloemfontein is popularly known as "The City of Roses", owing to the abundance of these flowers and the annual rose festival held there.

Cape Town

Cape Town is known for its beaches, sports, mountain walks, day-trips, wine-tasting, sunsets and fine dining. Cape Town is the provincial capital of the Western Cape and the legislative capital of South Africa. Cape Town is the economic hub of the Western Cape. It also has the primary harbour and airport in the Western Cape.

Durban

Durban, South Africa's third-largest city in area, is an exciting hub around a busy harbour on the edge of the warm Indian Ocean. The city is well known for its pleasant climate and welcoming beaches. It also boasts top sporting facilities, world-class resorts and nature reserves.

Johannesburg

Johannesburg lies in Gauteng, the wealthiest province in South Africa. Locals have nicknamed the most populous city in South Africa "Joburg", "Jozi" and "eGoli". The City of Johannesburg is one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world with a population of just over three million people.

Nelspruit

Nelspruit, the capital city of Mpumalanga, is nestled on the Crocodile River, about 60 km west of Mozambique. Mpumalanga (which means "The Place of the Rising Sun") is the primary gateway to the Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park, which stretches over three countries and encompasses global wilderness icons such as the more than 100-year-old Kruger National Park. With its subtropical climate, abundant sunshine and lush covered hills and valleys, Nelspruit forms the ideal base from which to explore Mpumalanga.

Polokwane

Polokwane is the capital city of Limpopo. It is the largest city in the north and a major economic centre. Wide streets, jacaranda trees, colourful parks and sparkling fountains characterise the city.

Polokwane, which means "A Place of Safety", is situated 60 km south of the Tropic of Capricorn and is home to just over 500 000 people. It encompasses the vibrant communities of Seshego, Mankweng and other surrounding townships.

Port Elizabeth

Port Elizabeth is one of South Africa's important sea ports. The city, the largest in the Eastern Cape, lies on the south-eastern coastline of South Africa. It is known for its sunshine, temperate climate, exhilarating sea breezes and magnificent golden beaches. The city forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality, which unites Uitenhage and Despatch, and is named after South Africa's former president, humanitarian and world icon, Nelson Mandela, who was born and spent his formative years in the Eastern Cape.

In March 2008, an initiative between South African Tourism and Kulula.com was launched. This joint venture was the first of its kind and it encourages domestic travellers to discover and experience South Africa's diverse beauty, interesting places and unique personalities.

This campaign essentially entails an agenda to create an awareness of domestic travel by showcasing the diverse tourism experiences South Africans have on their doorstep. It also highlights how easy and affordable it can be to access these experiences with Kulula.com offering more than 300 flights each week among its 12 routes. The five markets of focus for the campaign are Cape Town, George, Port Elizabeth, Durban and Johannesburg.

Pretoria

Pretoria's charm lies in its harmonious blend of African roots and European traditions. It is a city where history meets 21st century style and development, where vibrant township scenes complement modern shopping centres. Pretoria is an important industrial centre, with heavy industries including iron and steel casting as well as automobile, railroad and machinery manufacture.

The city has the second-largest number of embassies in the world after Washington DC.

Rustenburg

Rustenburg is a large town situated at the foot of the Magalies mountain range in North West. Just outside the town are the largest platinum mines in the world and the largest platinum refinery, which processes about 70% of the world's platinum. The town is surrounded by fertile farming land.

Tourism Organising Plan

On the basis of research into the opportunities and challenges facing the industry, South African Tourism has developed the Tourism Organising Plan to maximise tourism value in 2010.

This includes measures to increase the number of graded establishments, develop a database of tourism products in the country, and address service levels and skills shortages.

The plan also involves ensuring tourism-friendly transport at focal points, and working with the Department of Safety and Security to implement a national tourism safety plan.

South African Tourism runs the Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Awards (ETEYA), aimed at enhancing business competitiveness and skills for emerging entrepreneurs in black-owned small. medium and micro-enterprises (SMME) within the tourism industry. It is open to black entrepreneurs operating for less than five years with a staff of less than 50 people and an annual turnover not exceeding R5 million.

In 2008, the ETEYA project was boosted by the addition of the South African Breweries (SAB) as a primary partner. SAB brings years of experience in SMME support and enterprise development, as well as an injection of R1,9 million to the initiative, which will be invested in training and building capacity for the qualifying ETEYA entrepreneurs. The ETEYA competition is open not only to accommodation establishments, which have won most of the awards to date but also to cultural villages, game reserves, restaurants, tourist attractions adventure products, conference centres, tour operators, travel agents, car rental companies, coach operators and tour wholesalers.

Industry transformation

The implementation of the Tourism BEE Charter and Scorecard, launched in 2005, started in 2006/07. The tourism sector BEE Code was gazetted in 2008.

The Charter Council was launched nationally in May 2006. A brand and corporate identity were developed to promote visibility and awareness of the council. The brand "Be Empowered" can be used as a marketing tool by organisations that are certified to comply with the charter and scorecard.

Communication and marketing objectives were taken further with the development of the Tourism BEE Charter website, to serve as a one-stop shop for tourism BEE information. The website, *www.tourismbeechater.co.za*, contains useful tools for use by the industry.

The tourism sector is expected to report annually on how it is complying with the charter. The verification systems and processes will guide the sector on how to verify their BEE status, and to report on progress. It will also identify creative ways to offset verification costs for SMMEs. Most importantly, it will provide a toolkit to guide the industry in its verification process.

The Tourism BEE Focal Points Forum meets quarterly to review progress concerning BEE implementation and to strategise on how best to implement BEE at provincial and local levels.

There is also a beneficiaries' engagement strategy, aimed at encouraging black people to take advantage of the enabling environment brought about by the Tourism BEE Charter and Scorecard.

In September 2008, the second Tourism BEE conference was held at the Cape Town International Convention Centre.

Infrastructure Development Programme

In May 2008, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the South African National Parks completed the second year of implementation of the Infrastucture Development Programme, for which R541 million was made available over a four-year period. Implementation of the projects has started in earnest. The programme had employed 1 357 people by May 2008. Some 50 SMMEs were empowered and transformation in the construction industry is actively supported. Some highlights include:

- 145 tourism accommodation units were upgraded and many new accommodation units contructed in the various national parks.
- 89 upgraded and new staff accommodation units were put in place in various national parks.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

The TEP is a public-private partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the Business Trust. The TEP facilitates the growth of tourism SMMEs, often by establishing links between SMMEs and larger customers.

The development of SMMEs is a high-priority issue for the Tourism Branch, not just to increase capacity in the tourism sector but also to distribute the benefits of tourism and contribute towards national poverty-alleviation goals.

By the end of 2007, 4 166 SMMEs had been empowered through the establishment of business linkages, as well as training in the development of business and marketing plans. The value of linkages created for SMMEs amounted to R3,4 billion by the end of 2007. For the first time ever, tourism products for investment have also been identified. Sixteen products were identified in collaboration with the provinces and the Department of Trade and Industry. The products were packaged as investment-marketing material, and are now available to potential investors. The goal for 2007/08 was to identify additional projects and to approach potential investors.

Opportunities also abound in sectors such as construction, security services, transfers, volunteer training, grading assessment and event management.

Other initiatives undertaken by the department in support of tourism SMMEs included establishing a business-training package for entrepreneurs, developing a tourism SMME-funding and -support handbook, and introducing the Department of Trade and Industry's incentives for tourism entrepreneurs.

Tourism Indaba

The Indaba is one of the largest tourism-marketing events on the African calendar and one of the top three "must visit" events of its kind on the global calendar. It showcases the widest variety of Southern Africa's best tourism products, and attracts international visitors and media from across the world.

Indaba 2008 shattered 2007's record, with more than 13 200 delegates attending. There were 621 journalists, 175 of which were foreign journalists.

The Indaba is very business-focused, and also gives opportunities to network with others in the industry, combine product offerings and create new itineraries for a market that grows bigger each year.

Human-resource development (HRD)

The Tourism HRD Strategy, which aims to encourage industry players to compete on the basis of excellence in HR, was launched in 2008. In October 2008, the department held the inaugural Tourism Careers Expo, which attracted 17 000 visitors over three days. Tourism HRD is considered one of the pillars of the development of a responsible tourism culture in South Africa.

The department supports the full introduction of Travel, Tourism and Hospitality Studies as a subject in schools. Travel and Tourism was introduced in 2000 in all schools wishing to offer the subject from grades 10 to 12.

The Travel and Tourism Programme (TTP) holds an annual Tourism Schools Competition. The topic for the 2008 competition was *Responsible Tourism Development*, which was about how tourism should help to protect and enhance the environment, the community and the economy. A learner and educator from Matlosana High School won an all-expenses-paid trip to Nice, France, where they attended the Global Travel and Tourism Programme (GTTP) international learner/teacher conference in November 2008. Learners and teachers from the nine GTTP member countries who attended presented their research on responsible tourism development at the conference. The topic for the 2009 competition is *Sports Tourism*.

In July 2008, a survey by a top United States of America (USA) travel magazine showed that American tourists rated Cape Town as their third-favourite city in the world. According to South African Tourism, in 2006 alone, the Western Cape welcomed 145 211 visitors from the USA. This was an increase of 19,64% from the previous year. The Americans also voted Singita Boulders Lodge in the Sabi Sands Game Reserve, adjacent to the Kruger National Park, as the top hotel in the world. Cape Town's Cape Grace Hotel was placed 22nd in the same category.

Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the Sector Education and Training Authority established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Economic Sector. Theta comprises the following chambers:

- Hospitality
- Conservation and Tourist Guiding
- Sport, Recreation and Fitness
- Tourism and Travel Services
- Gaming and Lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

Tourism Learnership Project (TLP)

The TLP is a multimillion rand partnership between the Business Trust, Theta and the Department of Labour.

The TLP aims to raise the standards of South Africa's tourism industry by ensuring the development of useful, transferable and accredited skills. The TLP's three core objectives are to:

- accelerate the development of national qualifications for all primary subsectors of the tourism sector
- ensure the availability of national qualifications, which will trigger increased investment in training by employers
- develop systems and support the training of unemployed people through learnerships that provide them with the necessary skills to find jobs.

Tourist guiding

Illegal tourist guides undermine the efforts of legitimate guides. In February 2006, the Tourism Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism launched a campaign against illegal guiding.

Provincial tourist-guide registrars are trained and illegal guiding is monitored, resulting in illegal guides being stopped from operating. The branch continues to work with the industry and South African Police Service (SAPS) to curb illegal guiding.

It is estimated that 2010 will require 30 662 guides, at least half of whom should be black. By mid-2007, South Africa had about 10 000 guides, with only 30% black representation. Updating the database of tourist guides and ensuring that it interfaces with provincial structures, is a priority for the department.

Hints for the tourist

Every traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge. Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas. Passport-holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the United States of America (USA), and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20.

VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, roads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

A number of international airlines, including South African Airways (SAA), operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country. (See Chapter 21: *Transport*.)

Accommodation

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and B&B establishments.

Some hotels cater for businesspeople and the high-end luxury market, but there are diverse hotels available across the country, ranging from family-centred establishments to international chains, and a growing selection of conference hotels, casino resorts and golf hotels.

There are also spa resorts, numerous options for the budget traveller, and a charming array of B&B accommodation and guest houses. Facilities range from the ultra-luxury to the rustic, but most are noted for their high-quality, personalised service and warm hospitality. Many have restaurants on site.

A variety of promotional material on South Africa is available. Comprehensive guides and maps cover all the regions and aspects of interest to tourists, including accommodation. Various useful tourism websites can be found on the Internet.

Quality assurance

The TGCSA inspects standards in the hospitality and accommodation industry.

This voluntary grading system, which was launched in 2001, uses internationally recognised star insignia to rate accommodation establishments and will be extended to include relevant businesses in classified sectors of the tourism industry. Once graded, establishments are encouraged to use the star system for marketing and advertising purposes.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are currently nine types of establishments:

- B&Bs
- guest houses
- hotels
- self-catering
- backpacker and hostelling
- caravans and camping
- country houses
- meetings, exhibitions, special events
- restaurants.

Grading assessors undergo training to receive the National Certificate in Tourism Grading, a world-first qualification. Assessors are accredited with Theta and registered with the TGCSA before being recommended to the industry.

Larger hotel groups with their own internal assessors are also accredited with Theta. Independent auditors conduct random audits. These auditors also assist in ensuring that the assessors adhere to a code of conduct.

Star grading is the only system recognised by government and the TGCSA.

Star gradings are displayed on most advertising material and at hotel entrances. Participation by hotels is voluntary and indicates a commitment to providing good service and regularly upgrading facilities. Star-graded establishments undergo annual quality checks to ensure that standards are maintained.

The grading categories are as follows:

- one star – fair to good; modest, clean, comfortable and functional
- two stars – good; quality furnishings, service and guest care
- three stars – very good; better furnishings, service and guest care
- four stars – superior; excellent comfort and very high standard of furnishings, service and guest care
- five stars – exceptional; top-of-the-line quality and luxurious accommodation in line with the best international standards and stringent attention to service.

The TGCSA annually publishes *The Accommodation Guide*.

AA Travel Guide offers another quality check for visitors to South Africa. The AA stamp of approval on promotional material indicates that a venue is highly recommended. Since 1994,

South African Tourism has partnered with CNN International to produce a multimedia advertising campaign featuring user-generated content.

The My South Africa Campaign is geared towards raising the profile of South Africa to CNN's audience of business and leisure travellers.

The campaign encourages CNN viewers worldwide to upload photographs, videos and stories that encapsulate their experiences of South Africa through the *My South Africa* website.

The best contributions are then aired on CNN to 220 million homes and hotel rooms across Europe, the Middle East and Africa in the form of scrapbook style adverts.

The website will also host a picture gallery where visitors can rate each other's entries and sign up for a monthly newsletter and quarterly virtual magazine.

Furthermore, the campaign will be promoted through blog sites, chat rooms and social networking sites such as *Facebook* and *Flickr*.

The campaign will run until the end of 2010, spanning the months of June and July when all eyes will be on South Africa as it hosts the 2010 World Cup.

the organisation has also been running an annual awards programme based on consumer feedback on some 1 200 AA quality-assured establishments. Qualified assessors visit high-scoring establishments to verify their scores.

Tourist safety

Crime has had a negative impact on the country's growing reputation as a desirable travel destination. However, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is lobbying and working together with safety and security agencies such as the SAPS, the National Intelligence Agency and the Department of Safety and Security.

During 2006, the Tourism Branch established a task team to assist in developing the National Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy. All nine provinces are represented on the task team.

Agencies such as the International Marketing Council have also been identified to help counter international perceptions about crime.

As part of its efforts to combat crime, the SAPS holds joint operations committee meetings with stakeholders at provincial level. A range of stakeholders attend these planning meetings, which previously did not include tourism stakeholders.

The Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy involves pro-active and support measures. A booklet containing safety tips for tourists has been revised and was distributed at the Tourism Indaba.

The department, together with the SAPS, is working on the *Tourism Safety and Awareness Handbook for Practitioners*.

Research

Tourism data collection and dissemination are important activities of the Tourism Branch, as a growing industry needs to be well informed. The Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) is a key research tool, which calculates the value of tourism to the national economy, based on the data accumulated in 10 different tables.

The TSA was expected to be launched at the 2009 Tourism Indaba.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province is considered one of the most beautiful regions in Africa; it is also the place where two oceans meet and the home of the famous fynbos vegetation.

The paternal presence of Table Mountain, the pristine coastline with its white sandy beaches, the magnificent countryside with its bountiful rivers, vleis and dams, fauna and flora, together with the warm summer climate and friendly community make the Western Cape the perfect holiday destination.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town centres around the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, a working harbour offering everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, theatres and live music to museums.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery. Also worth a visit are historical buildings in the Bo-Kaap and District Six.

The Gold of Africa Museum established by Anglo Gold houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour, including trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 27 years).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), is a popular

> i
>
> November 2008 saw the release of the Draft National Service Excellence Strategy for Tourism in South Africa. This initiative could help transform South Africa into a globally competitive service economy and destination of choice. The draft strategy will address skills supply, public awareness and education on minimum standards, the measurement of standards and the creation of an efficient public feedback mechanism.

attraction for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly Mother City. An ultra-modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. In summer, various open-air concerts are held here.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch is on the slopes of Table Mountain. It was built of granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, prime minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the TMNP, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-hectare (ha) reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailor's friend, Able Seaman Just Nuisance, stands at Jubilee Square.

Other attractions include the South African Naval Museum and the Warrior Toy Museum. One of only two of the mainland African penguin-breeding colonies in the world can be found at Boulders Beach, also part of the TMNP.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

In Oostenberg, visitors can enjoy some fine wine and flower farms, such as Zevenwacht Wine Estate with its graceful Cape Dutch homestead. Tygerberg Zoo boasts a collection of exotic animals.

Endless stretches of quiet beaches provide popular surfing and windsurfing spots. Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfer's paradise and host to an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area, with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

Tygerberg is a vibrant and fast-growing area with a well-developed business centre, numerous sports fields, an international indoor-cycle track, well-kept golf courses and a racecourse. New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa, has introduced short message system (SMS) technology to give tourists another platform to provide their feedback. This forms part of a new and improved customer feedback mechanism. Apart from the fact that establishments have the opportunity to benchmark themselves against industry norms, recourse can also be taken if problems are encountered, making feedback valuable, strongly encouraged and welcomed, either via the website *www.tourismgrading.co.za* or by SMSing "star" to 31649.

Garden Route

This area features the pont at Malgas, which is the only remaining pont in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River.

Whale-watching attracts tourists at Witsand and Port Beaufort from June to November.

The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails.

Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. PetroSA's Information Centre informs visitors about the production of synthetic fuels from Mossel Bay's offshore gas fields. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

George is at the heart of the Garden Route. It is the mecca of golf in the southern Cape, as it is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Board the Outeniqua Choo-Tjoe on its daily trip along the coastline between George and Knysna (except Sundays) at the Outeniqua Transport Museum.

Visitors can also board the Power Van here, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus.

The George Museum, with its theme of timber history, offers ongoing exhibitions. The Montagu and Voortrekker passes are national monuments, providing spectacular views of the Outeniqua Nature Reserve, which offers several hiking trails.

The George Airport, the Outeniqua Pass, the railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo. Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests. Birdwatchers flock to the Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species.

Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

> A new five-star hotel under construction in Cape Town, the Coral International, will target Middle Eastern visitors, offering them luxurious rooms, conferencing and prayer facilities, halaal cuisine and no alcohol on the premises.
>
> The Dubai-based Coral International Hotels, Resorts and Spas and Cii Holdings will operate the Coral International, which is situated on the corner of Buitengracht and Wale streets in the city centre. The location is also just minutes away from the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront and Table Mountain, while it is only a short drive to the beaches of the Atlantic Seaboard, as well as the central city's coffee shops, restaurants and craft markets. Construction is underway, with completion expected by the end of 2009.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. Over 200 species can be found in the abundant fynbos and forest settings.

Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. An eclectic mix of art galleries showcases the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale-watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails.

The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

At 216-m high, the bungee jump from the Bloukrans River Bridge on the border between the Western and Eastern Cape is the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's spectacular landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the largest bird in the world – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town. The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the remarkable Cango caves, a series of spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the 30-cave wonderland boasts magnificent dripstone formations. Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the

Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public. The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Half-way through there is a beautiful 69 m-high waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Klein Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest waterwheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones.

This ancient, fossil-rich land, which is five times the size of Great Britain, is also home to the richest desert flora in the world.

In the Central Karoo, visitors will find the largest variety of succulents found anywhere on Earth.

Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, the late Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. At the Karoo National Park on the town's doorstep, visitors can experience the flora and game of the Karoo. A challenging 4x4 route takes them to the escarpment and new areas of ecological discovery. The park is also home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Next to the transport museum is a large field on which the first international cricket match was played in South Africa.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village almost totally wiped out by floods a century after it was established, is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. It is the ideal place to sample a great variety of Karoo cuisine. See examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s, and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Today, Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour-drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands, including the former Breede River Valley, are close to Cape Town. The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch, the oldest town in South Africa, is also known as the "Eikestad" (City of Oaks). Various historical walks delight visitors. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country. The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the middle-19th centuries.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up sultry summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel, which was built in 1992, commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. Originally known as Oliphantshoek, it was renamed after the arrival of Huguenots who were predominantly French. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate their arrival in 1688.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the *Vignerons de Franschhoek* wine route.

Paarl lies between the second-largest granite rock in the world and the Du Toit's Kloof mountains. It is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos vegetation supports a number of south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and the orange-breasted sunbird.

The Afrikaanse Taalmonument is situated on the slopes of the Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa mountains on its eastern border. Apart from three renowned co-operative wineries, one can visit several prestigious wine cellars situated on historic Huguenot farms with Cape Dutch homesteads. More than 90% of South Africa's vine-cutting nurseries are found in Wellington. The town is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers lived in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Open Air Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

Tulbagh is famous for its heritage, historical homesteads and magnificent country living. Church Street, home to 32 national monuments, constitutes the largest concentration of national monuments in one street in South Africa.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and can sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the Ochre San rock art trails are a must for nature lovers. De Doorns is situated in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Situated on the Breede River, Bonnievale features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, birdwatching and riverboating.

Known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses", Robertson is one of the most beautiful areas in South Africa. Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, delectable fruit and radiant roses, Robertson produces connoisseur-quality wines and is also known for its thoroughbred horses.

Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Klein Karoo and set in a fertile valley. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by TO Honiball.

The area also offers several hiking trails, game-viewing drives, guided cultural tours and excellent rock climbs.

The picturesque village of Gouda is renowned for the Parrotts Den Pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a wealth of fascinating white-washed, thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area.

Hidden amidst vineyards and wine estates lies the picturesque town of Rawsonville, renowned for its array of award-winning wines. Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the awe-inspiring Slanghoek Valley, with its lush vineyards and breathtaking views, or relax in the warm-water mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of extreme beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by rich culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela current's cold waters. The area is a birdwatcher's paradise. In addition, every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant array of colour. The Swartland region is known for its undulating wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities. Further north, visitors encounter the fertile Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with their wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars. The entertainment venue Evita se Perron is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top entertainment from South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale-watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan is a popular holiday destination. The West Coast National Park, an internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, attracts thousands of visitors each year. The park is also the site where the oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were discovered.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to many seabird species.

Saldanha is a watersport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Fishing (snoek in season), hiking, and whale- and birdwatching opportunities also draw many visitors.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide where various species can be viewed.

Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town.

Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February). The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders.

At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. The world-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features, among other things, 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites, and an arts and crafts market.

The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is a recently built example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. There are several recognised mountain-biking, walking, hiking and canoeing trails and a sky-diving club.

Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea, and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt. Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery, and the South African Dried Fruit Co-op. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest co-operative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai (Doring Bay) with its attractive lighthouse is well-known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doring Bay, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a breathtaking view of the ocean.

Klawer was named after the wild clover growing in the area. During the flower season, the area is a kaleidoscope of colour. There are hiking trails as well as river-rafting along the Doring River.

Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. Birdwatching, mountain-biking, day walks, and hiking and 4x4 trails abound. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for historians.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa, just over an hour's drive east of Cape Town, lies a fertile area surrounded by mountains and sea, called the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooiels. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale-watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin on the African continent.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort, famous for the best land-based whale-watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area (they have received Raka double gold veritas and Michelangelo awards for several of their wines).

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale-watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives that have been lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum. The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also boasts the Audrey Blignault museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999.

The Agulhas National Park, home to a rich and diverse plant population, boasts more than 110 *Red Data Book* species. Among these are the endangered Cape platanna and microfrog, and rare coastal birds such as the African oyster-catcher. The damara tern finds the area ideal for breeding.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters are cleaved into the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere.

Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several ox-wagons. For outsiders, it was named after the *Arniston*, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony.

The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance.

Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum Complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, blazing summer sunshine and interesting and friendly people, the Northern Cape is a province rich with culture.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors. The Kimberley Tram Service dates from the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works. The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, boasts a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near the Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is situated there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley. A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

A short distance from Kimberley is the mining town Barkley West, which, owing to its proximity to the Vaal River, is a favourite spot for many watersport enthusiasts and anglers.

Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park. The park is not only home to large raptors, but is also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors have the opportunity to view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Tswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman".

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.

The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters. Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, which features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The roaring sands on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop are an interesting site. The white dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Eleven waterwheels are still used today along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas. The Orange River Wine Cellar Co-op Rockery Route runs between Keimoes and Kakamas.

Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River.

At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest. The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar Co-op's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town. Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The South African Dried Fruit Co-operative is the second-largest and one of the most modern of its kind in the world. Tours of the plant are offered and freshly packed dried fruit is sold.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls, also known as the "Place of Great Noise", in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m^2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

The names of various landmarks within the park reflect its long history as a crossroads of many cultures, which have included the San, the Mier, the Huguenots and the Scottish at various times.

The park is an important element of the first phase of the Transfrontier Conservation Area 2010 Strategy, which is a priority of the SADC.

Namaqualand

The indigenous people of the Namaqualand region are the Namas. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf.

Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they had appeared.

The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy spring's show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay was known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade.

Established as a small-vessel harbour and railway junction in 1954 for the copper-mining industry, Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve operates only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4, and several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns.

The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvalspont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery. Colesberg has bred many of the country's top merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town, which is steeped in history, also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydroelectric Power Station situated within the dam's wall.

Victoria West is home to the Apollo Theatre, South Africa's last operational art deco movie theatre from the 1950s. The theatre comes alive each September with the Apollo Film Festival. The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near the small town of Brandvlei lies Verneukpan, where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929. Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood.

The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface.

Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of well-known Afrikaans author and poet NP van Wyk Louw, is known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's (Saao) observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland.

From Monday to Saturday, the Saao offers two guided tours a day and two night tours a week. Day tours entail a guided walk through the visitors' centre adjacent to the telescope sites on the mountainside and a guided tour of selected telescopes, including the Salt.

During night tours, visitors' can view interesting objects in the sky through two dedicated visitors' telescopes. Booking is essential.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflower and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden, containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has a repository of works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and the Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The national museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring, about 50 km north of Bloemfontein.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5-m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War from 1899 to 1902. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's game reserve is a unique attraction.

Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events not to be missed is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.

The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of events in the area.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15-km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.

Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry.

The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State and receives hunters in autumn and winter.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite outspan for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

With its beautiful snow-capped mountains providing a backdrop to numerous romantic hideaways, this untouched, pristine area with its breathtaking scenery possesses grandeur of majestic proportion.

The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Clocolan is known for its cherry trees, which provide a spectacular sight when they blossom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its spectacular scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area.

Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti mountains. One can also explore the magnificent mountain scenery by bike. The town offers art excursions and painting getaways and has 14 art galleries.

Ficksburg is known for its cherry and asparagus farms. Every November a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its beautiful scenery, is a very popular holiday destination. A vulture restaurant allows visitors to observe these scavengers closely. San paintings can also be viewed.

The Highlands Route follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. San caves and rock art are some of the main features of the route.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Ramsar sites are wetlands of internatoinal importance designated under the Ramsar Convention.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem lies on the banks of the Jordaan River and was founded by the Voortrekkers during the 1840s.

The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic Church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout-fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum, using life-size models, depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer.

Parys, which is situated on the banks of the Vaal River, is a popular holiday destination.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago.

It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 types of birds and a variety of small mammals. Various hiking and mountain-bike trails are also on offer.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its

JRR Tolkien, author of *The Lord of the Rings*, the epic fantasy novel that was made into a trilogy of successful films, was born in the Free State capital of Bloemfontein on 3 January 1892.

magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the Indian Ocean coastline provides the province with a rich natural tourist attraction, which is also a paradise for watersport enthusiasts.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and more than 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola mountain region

The Amatola mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart, where trout-fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail. The coastal city of Port Elizabeth, which has earned the name "Friendly City", is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. The Isuzu National Sailing Week is held annually in April in the waters of Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

The city boasts various scuba-diving sites. Visitors can also visit Bay World with its oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including the St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial, the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region, once known as the "Transkei homeland", is the home of a major section of the Xhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Mandela. In the city of Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure. The museum is a collection of heritage sectors spread across three locations: Qunu, Mveso and Mthatha. A display reflecting the life and times of Mandela can be found at the Bhunga Building section of the Nelson Mandela Museum in Mhatha. Mandela has received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

The alignment of the N2 national route along the Wild Coast will help open up investment opportunities in this area.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors.

To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole-in-the-Wall. The local Xhosa call this place Izi Khaleni (Place of Thunder). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, a gigantic circular impact that is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and today their population stands at about 350.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art.

Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Barkly East, Rhodes, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp and Queenstown.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches.

Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints", because of the more than 40 churches found in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and craftspeople fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post-box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by both tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve boasts abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the legendary frontier wars located in the area.

East London, South Africa's only river port city, was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The city's own waterfront development, Latimer's Landing, is situated on the banks of the Buffalo River. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The East London Museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit spectacular fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles.

There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning clear, and "gami" meaning water.

South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Another popular adventure is a blackwater tubing experience on the Storms River.

Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogan and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, which the Otter Trail is named after.

Limpopo

Limpopo is a land of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. The present tranquility of the province belies a turbulent past, to which many monuments and museums attest. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve boasts one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection. The Makapan caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site. The Makapansgat caves and limeworks near Mokopane represent an archaeological site of global importance.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks. Bela-Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

> In December 2008, Shamwari Game Reserve, a five-star game reserve situated near Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, was awarded two top international awards at the grand finale of the prestigious World Travel Awards (WTA) Ceremony held in Turks and Caicos Island in the Caribbean.
>
> Shamwari Game Reserve received the World's Leading Safari and Game Reserve Award for 2008 for the 11th consecutive year. The first WTA Green Awards were also announced at this grand event, and Shamwari Game Reserve walked away with the World's Leading Conservation Company for 2008.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. It is ideally located near the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland. Zion City at Moria near Polokwane is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Polokwane hosts a great variety of museums and art galleries.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, situated 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, are built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality; the Tshatshingo potholes; the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi; and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species Encephalartos transvenosus, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, was opened to guided groups in June 1997. This followed seven years of archaeological excavations, which brought to light the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve and enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog. The Inyaka Dam at Bushbuckridge is also worth a visit.

North West

North West is blessed with several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, known as the "Jewel of the North West". It is set in a crater on an extinct volcano and is home to the Big Five as well as a wide variety of smaller game and birds.

Central district

The historic route of Mafikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mafikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Game-Breeding Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can embark on a tour of the mampoer route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Eastern district

The Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is situated on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

There are several golf courses in the area.

Bophirima district

The Taung skull fossil site and the blue pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. In July 2005, the World Heritage Committee declared the Taung skull fossil site an extension of the Sterkfontein fossil hominid site. This region is popular with adventure-seekers – especially those who enjoy the 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

i

Polokwane has one of the longest art routes in the world. Named after the uniquely shaped mountain in the Makhado District, the Ribolla Route showcases the talents of its artistic inhabitants, dancers, storytellers, gardeners and singers.

There are over 30 art stops on this route. These include David Murathi's Sculptures in Makhado, Lucky Makhamu's imposing larger-than-life woodcarvings in Elim, the bustling Maanda nga u Pfana Pottery Village at the mythical and sacred Lake Fundudzi, and Phineas Masuvhelele's sculptures and drums near Polokwane.

Rustenburg district

The Pilanesberg National Park supports more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon ride, day and night game drives, and bushwalks are available. Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersport and an artificial sea. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "the place where the sun rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and birdwatching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

The cultural heritage of the province is varied and fascinating. The Ndebele beadwork and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld and the different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history.

Nelspruit

Nelspruit is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Nelspruit Historical Trail is an hour-long route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Nelspruit from May to September on a trip called the "Lowveld Experience". Rovos Rail's trains also travel to Nelspruit.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Nelspruit Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala caves, PR Owen Dinosaur Park, and the tranquil town of White River. Well known as an artists' haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park, White River also boasts an orange winery.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. An annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26 km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers which feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini.

God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon. The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. A number of other hiking trails are also available.

The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is situated in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg heads, human-like masks dated to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls that are just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine-manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities. This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard. The meander also offers numerous other activities.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing.

A large number of hiking trails is available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology.

The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossoms in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the inimitable San paintings embossed in some rocks.

The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini. The year 2006 saw the 20th anniversary of Machel's death in an aircraft crash.

While they are in this region, visitors have the opportunity to visit Swaziland and Mozambique, which are nearby.

Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands is a paradise, with its variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface.

There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20-km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the economic powerhouse of South Africa. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan, multicultural mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets. To strengthen Gauteng's position as a tourism destination of choice, the province must continue to increase the appeal of special destinations such as the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site and the Dinokeng Game Reserve and improve tourism offerings in the areas of competitive sport and the creative industries.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to 386, with over half of these offering graded accommodation. Dinokeng continues to grow, with 276 attractions. Together, these two destinations now offer 9 179 beds and 15 614 seats in 199 restaurants.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for watersport. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Vanderbijlpark was built during the late 1940s by the then Iron and Steel Corporation to accommodate its employees.

The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old.

The broader Cradle of Humankind site consists of 47 000 ha, with numerous caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site.

Forty percent of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area, and work is ongoing.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The South African National Railway and Steam Museum at Randfontein Estates Gold Mine outside Krugersdorp houses some of the country's old steam locomotives, a diesel-electric locomotive, and more than 50 vintage passenger coaches. Train rides are offered once a month.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami, near Johannesburg.

Visitors to Roodepoort can go on walks and trails through the Kloofendal Nature Reserve, or enjoy a picnic or a show at the popular Kloofendal Amphitheatre. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden boasts a 70 m-high waterfall and breeding pairs of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria lies a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of an impact crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. The Tswaing Meteorite Crater is similar in size to the well-known Barringer Meteor Crater in Arizona, in the USA. The crater walls at Tswaing were originally about twice as high as they are today.

There is a museum adjacent to the crater. A path leads from the museum to the crater, along the rim, and down to the central lake. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. Many turn-of-the-century houses still stand. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

> i
>
> In the early 1960s, the Liliesleaf Farm in Rivonia, Johannesburg was the centre of African National Congress military operations. In 2008, the farm reopened as a museum to commemorate the liberation struggle for current and future generations.
>
> In 2001, the Liliesleaf Trust took over the farm with the aim of restoring the buildings. The museum, which consists of the manor house, the thatched cottage, the outhouse buildings and the water tank coal bunker, will offer an interactive and experiential snapshot of South Africa's recent history. In addition, Liliesleaf houses a resource centre, a liberation centre and a liberation path, which is lined with posters commemorating struggle heroes.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

There is also a display of old prescription books and dictionaries used by pharmacists.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner-city of Johannesburg and to give it soul. Here visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and a host of places of historic interest.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown, the arts precinct of Johannesburg. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre Complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs.

A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

The Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops Hills north of Johannesburg gives visitors the opportunity to meet families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice.

The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works.

Flora includes 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid. A team of curators, film-makers, historians, designers and architects assembled the exhibits on a seven-hectare site. Film footage, photographs, text panels and artefacts depict apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, and offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block. People once imprisoned at these facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as the only woman to be executed in South Africa's history, Daisy de Melker.

At Santarama Miniland and Entertainment World, visitors can explore models of South Africa's most popular beacons, such as Robben Island, OR Tambo International Airport, East London Harbour, and the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

Fordsburg, a suburb on the Western side of Johannesburg often called the city's 'little India', has grown in recent times, its identity shifting and merging with the different customs and flavours that have made it a centrepiece in the cultural design of the city.

The South African Museum of Military History houses an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The South African Transport Museum in Heidelberg represents all aspects of South Africa's transport services.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. It is estimated that some 1 000 foreign tourists visit Soweto every day. Its tourism industry contributes about R143 million to Gauteng's GDP.

The two-bedroom house where former President Nelson Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown (Soweto) is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955.

No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

In celebration of 60 years of publishing in South Africa, the June 2008 edition of *Reader's Digest South Africa* features reasons for South Africans to remember why this country is unique. To name a few:

- At last count, 91 streets all over the world are named after former President Nelson Mandela. At 295 metres, the Nelson Mandela Bridge in Johannesburg is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa. Dr Mandela has been honoured in many ways, with everything from spiders to nuclear particles, universities and scholarships bearing his name.
- The entrance to South Africa's Parliament is given warmth and character thanks to a 120-metre Keiskamma tapestry, the work of 100 previously unemployed women.
- Rooibos is a uniquely South African tea now exported all over the world.
- Mpumalanga's Graskop offers the world's highest cable gorge swing.
- The Erica *(E. recurvata)* is a plant that had not been seen for over 200 years. It was re-discovered in the crevice of a rock in 2007.
- Only two centimetres long, the micro frog is found in Betty's Bay and Kenilworth in Cape Town.

The museum was named after the young boy who was the first person to be shot dead by police on that day.

Guest houses and B&B establishments are a fast-growing phenomenon in Soweto.

A tourism and information centre was opened in Soweto in February 2006. The centre provides comprehensive information to tourists. Visitors can book accommodation in Soweto, and plan and book tours and site guides.

In September 2007, Dr Mandela opened southern Africa's largest shopping centre, the Maponya Mall. It covers 65 000 m^2, has 200 shops and eight cinemas.

In November 2007, Holiday Inn Soweto opened its doors to the public. Situated at Walter Sisulu Square of Dedication, a tourist draw card in Soweto's oldest suburb, the four-star hotel offers accommodation at an international standard to the more than 200 000 tourists who visit the township every year. The hotel overlooks the informal market in Union Street and Jada's place, the house in which Dr Mandela was hiding when the Freedom Charter was drawn up on 26 June 1955. It gives tourists the opportunity to explore the Kliptown of the 1950s.

The Kliptown project comprises the hotel, the recently opened Kliptown Museum, retail outlet, restaurant and office.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings are found in the city, which is known as the "Jacaranda City" because of the many jacaranda trees that line its streets. When these are in full bloom in October, they cover the city in a lilac haze, providing spectacular views from the surrounding hills.

Church Square is built around a statue of Paul Kruger, president of the former Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive away from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history.

Once fully completed in 2010, the 35-ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who have contributed to the country's freedom and development.

Freedom Park in Pretoria represents the vision for which so many South Africans fought for and died. It is a key Presidential Legacy Project and was established in response to the Truth and Reconciliation Commission, which saw a need for symbolic reparation of South Africa's tumultuous history.The park is run and developed by the Freedom Park Trust.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger. Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include cow milking, butter and candle making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the Police Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument also has a museum and commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. The monument receives about 200 000 visitors a year.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Union Buildings were designed by Sir Herbert Baker and completed in 1913. They were the setting for the presidential inauguration of Dr Mandela in 1994, and those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999 and 27 April 2004, respectively.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silver and porcelain. Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family. A popular arts and craft market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, a large number of game and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is being restored by its residents and the National Cultural History Museum. To develop the project into a viable, living tourist village, the 50 families staying there have undergone tourist-guide and business training. It is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is approximately 20 km from the city centre and features the Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses tha National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

Also known as the "Zulu Kingdom", KwaZulu-Natal is a many-splendoured interaction of natural wonders, ultra-modern facilities, fascinating cultural imprints and reminders of a dynamic history in a breathtakingly beautiful and varied setting.

Durban and surroundings

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The *uShaka Marine World* has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute on Durban's Point opened in May 2004. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

There is a snorkelling trail and a tubing river around the park.

Durban's most popular fishing spot is at Blue Lagoon Beach at the wide Umgeni River mouth. Beyond the river, the La Lucia and Beachwood Mangroves nature reserves offer long, tranquil walks along empty sands.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the Botanical Gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings. Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbor.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (The Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere. Daily tours are available.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile swimming event, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashovashova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country, the Spar Mercury Ladies 10-km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and contains rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Many varieties of birds, indigenous and exotic, inhabit walk-in aviaries.

The Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff houses the maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument, and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.

East Griqualand is home to the southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, plus the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Also nearby, the carp-abundant Umzimvubu River is an ever-popular recreation ground for locals and visitors alike. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

North Coast

The coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers is aptly called the "Dolphin Coast", as Indian Ocean bottlenose dolphins can be seen here all year round. The larger humpback dolphins are also found here, but rarely seen.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give the region an authentic eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Cultural tourism is inextricably linked to economic upliftment in Zululand, and historically disadvantaged communities are applying their traditional skills to meet visitors' interests.

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th century king who established dominion here some 200 years before Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south. The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of the largest game parks in South Africa and hosts the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is the venue for a new tourism- and economic-development project. Known as "eMakhosini, the Valley of Zulu Kings", the joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. A sculptured hilltop monument named Spirit of eMakhosini draws many tourists. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom.

At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Ulundi lies at the hub of the old Zulu nation. The KwaZulu Cultural Museum houses interesting displays relating to Zulu history and archaeology. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and is now being reconstructed. A tour provides the opportunity to observe Zulu building techniques and to experience the social life of the Zulu people. Work will begin on a R20-million multimedia centre, which will include first-rate audiovisual representations of Zulu history and culture.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The iSimangaliso Wetland Park (formerly Greater St Lucia Wetland Park) World Heritage Site has some of the highest forested dunes in the world. The park also has the greatest marine and terrestrial mammals, namely whales and elephants. St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and has five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings.

Ophansi entrance bridge in the then Greater St Lucia Wetland Park enables visitors to enjoy a unique beach and bush experience, with only an hour's drive separating uMkhuze's unique wildlife experience from Sodwana Bay's world-class beaches and diving.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and

i

In November 2008, three South African lodges were included on the latest *National Geographic Adventure* magazine list of 50 top eco-lodges. Phinda Private Game Reserve, Tswalu Kalahari Reserve and Bushmans Kloof Wilderness Reserve have taken their place among the top environmentally friendly tourism destinations in the world.

Of the 50 establishments recognised as the most Earth-friendly, 17 were in Africa. Four were in Kenya, with two each in Namibia, Botswana and Tanzania, and one each in Mozambique, Seychelles, Egypt and Morocco.

An eco-lodge can be defined as a nature-dependent tourist lodge that meets the philosophy and principles of ecotourism. Eco-lodges are establishments that focus strongly on a greener way of operating, including the support of local communities, the creation of far-reaching conservation initiatives, and a firm emphasis on adventure.

A good eco-lodge should engage in responsible practices such as paying respect to local traditions by incorporating cultural elements into the design and décor, disrupting the natural environment as little as possible and using local plant life as much as possible, sourcing food from local farmers, using recycled or recyclable materials in building, and bridging cultural gaps by promoting cultural exchanges.

Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo mountains before serving as a boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

A monument has been erected for the first Zulu martyr, Maqhamusela Khanyli, in Mondi.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2.

Birdwatching and walks through the coastal forest are popular pastimes.

Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and, in summer, power-boaters arrive for some of the best marlin-fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and various other activities and attractions.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Prolific bird life, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, inhabits the reserve, along with a variety of mammals. There is also a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward is known for its safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, bird life and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Sardine fever strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers wait for the game fish, following the sardines, to arrive.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg boasts various museums, including the Voortrekker Museum, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse-riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are situated in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles down 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese-makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species, and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile event attracts thousands of swimmers.

Drakensberg

The Drakensberg mountain range forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered lammergeier (bearded vulture). The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was declared a world heritage site in 2001 and consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. The park is administered by Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. Their trout hatcheries are located in the Kamberg Reserve area there are also trout hatcheries at Cathedral Peak.

The Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The Swamp Nature Reserve close by attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge is located in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak and contains examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. Sani Pass may be a road, but the top section is only passable in 4X4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup hiking trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest. Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is well worth a visit.

The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersport can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Power-boating and carp-fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Other interesting places to visit are Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage.

The KwaZulu-Natal North Coast will become home to a R19-billion tourism development, which has been signed into being by the Provincial Government and Ruwaad, a Dubai-based tourism investment and development company. It is expected to create up to 16 000 jobs.

The development will see 16 556 hectares of land to the north of the Thukela River converted into a world-class tourism facility. Based on the concept of a city within a city, the development will consist of an internationally branded entertainment theme park with residential, hospitality, leisure, medical, education, sport, health and retail facilities.

The development will also include a cultural focus centred on a statue of King Shaka Zulu. The group's aim is to develop a uniquely African, world-class destination that has local, national and international appeal, while boosting tourism and economic growth in the area.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions in Ladysmith include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, as well as local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Business Day
Business Report
Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
South African National Parks
www.askzn.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.capetourism.org
www.cape-town.net
www.centralkaroo.co.za
www.clarens.co.za
www.doorway.co.za
www.ectourism.co.za
www.freestateprovince.co.za
www.gauteng.net
www.gov.za
www.indaba-southafrica.co.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.kzn.org.za
www.mpumalanga.com
www.news24.co.za
www.northerncape.org.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saao.ac.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sapfa.org.za
www.sasdi.co.za
www.sati-web.za
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.soweto.co.za
www.travel.iafrica.com
www.tourismboard.org.za
www.tourismgrading.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.wheretostay.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Suggested reading

Bennet, A, Jooste, C and Strydom, L. eds. *Managing Tourism Services: A Southern African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.
Berger, L and Hilton-Barber, B. *A Guide to Sterkfontein: The Cradle of Humankind*. Cape Town: Struik, 2006.
Branch, B. *et al*. *Travellers' Wildlife Guides: Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2007.
Cillie, B. *Pocket Photoguide to Mammals of Southern Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Copeland, M. *Getaway Guide to South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Erasmus, BPJ. *On Route in South Africa:* 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
Erasmus, BPJ. *On Route in South Africa: A Region by Region Guide*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), c. 2007.
Esterhuysen, A. *Sterkfontein*: *Early Hominid Site in the "Cradle of Humankind"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.
George, R. *Marketing South African Tourism*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.
Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation. 4th ed. London: Greenwood Guides, 2005.
Greenwood Guide to South Africa. 3rd ed. London: Greenwood, 2006.
Harrison, P. *South Africa's Top Sites: Ecotravel*. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2004.
Kellett, F and Williams, L. *Footprint South Africa*. 7th ed. Bath, England: Footprint Travel Guides, 2004.
MacLennan, B. *The Wind Makes Dust: Four Centuries of Travel in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2003.
Meintjies, M. *Remarkable Flyfishing Destinations of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
Mouton, A. *Stanford 150: Portrait of a Village.* Stanford (South Africa): Village Life, n.d. Photographs and text of history, buildings and people of Stanford in the South Western Cape.
Ross, G. *South Africa's Top Sites: Arts and Culture*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2007.
Ross, G. *South Africa's Top Sites: Ecotravel*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2007.
Souchon, D. *Serpent Spires*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2005.
South African Highlights. London: Greenwood Guides, 2005.
Southern and East Africa Road Atlas, [edited by John Loubser]. Johannesburg: Map Studio, 2007.
Tourism Blueprint: Reference Guide to the Nine Provinces of South Africa. 3rd ed. Tourism Blueprint, 2006.
Ultimate Africa Atlas, [edited by John Loubser]. Johannesburg: Map Studio, 2007.
Van der Walt, B. *The Enchanting World of the Drakensberg Mountains*. Potchefstroom: Institute for Contemporary Christianity in Africa, 2003.
Viljoen, J and Tlabela, K. *Rural Tourism Development in South Africa: Trends and Challenges*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2006.
Wright, J and Mazel, A. *The Drakensberg of KwaZulu-Natal: Exploring the History of a Mountain Range*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

The South African transport sector employs 584 000 people in the formal and informal sectors, which represent 4,3% of the active population.

The Department of Transport aims to achieve the following:
- competitive transport costs
- improved safety and security
- reduced infrastructure backlogs
- improved access
- reduced transit times.

Policy

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

The Public Transport Strategy, approved by Cabinet in March 2007, maps out a framework to accelerate the transformation of public transport service delivery.

The strategy articulates a vision to shift public transport service delivery away from operator controlled, commuter-based, unimodal routes to user-oriented, publicly controlled, fully integrated, mass rapid public transport networks. The aim is to provide quality services along priority corridors, remove duplicate services and provide integrated mass rapid public transport networks. This includes transforming of the bus and rail services into a public transport system integrated with the recapitalised taxi services.

2010 Transport Action Plan

The Department of Transport, in consultation with the transport sector, developed the 2010 Transport Action Plan. The plan integrates transport, security, emergency response and socio-economic development.

The broad principles of the 2010 Transport Action Plan are to:
- accelerate existing transport plans and maximise exisiting transport infrastructure
- improve public-transport services
- accelerate implementation of government's economic and sustainable development policies.

2010 World Cup transport projects are funded through the Public Transport Infrastructure and System (PTIS) Grant, with an allocation of R11,7 billion. Government is using the World Cup to spur a major revolution in South Africa's transport system through investments in:
- public transport and road infrastructure
- rail upgrades
- inter-modal facilities
- Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) systems
- inner-city mobility systems
- call centre systems
- airport-city links
- freight services
- passenger safety
- intelligent transport systems.

The PTIS Grant for the 2010 World Cup was increased from R9,2 billion to R13,6 billion, as announced in the Budget of February 2008.

By 2008, the implementation of the PTIS Grant had gathered momentum with most of the infrastructure either under construction or scheduled to start. In addition, operational transport planning was at an advanced stage.

The complete National Transport Plan, which includes the host cities' plans, was submitted to FIFA in June 2008.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

In April 2007, the Department of Transport replaced the 14-year-old National Traffic Information System with the eNaTIS, which uses state-of-the-art technology.

The eNaTIS stores, records, manages and enforces the requirements of the National Road Traffic Act (NRTA), 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), and the National Road Traffic Regulations.

It provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles, and manages and records applications for and authorisation of driver's and learner's licences. The eNaTIS is also a law-enforcement tool that is used to ensure that details of stolen vehicles are circulated to prevent the irregular or fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The South African Bureau of Standards is linked to the eNaTIS, ensuring that only vehicles that meet South Africa's stringent safety standards are allowed to be registered.

The eNaTIS provides the following immediate advantages:
- centralised road-traffic management data
- eliminating fragmented small systems
- reducing queues due to the implementation of online transactions
- improved system security
- lower operating costs
- convenient, easy interaction by members of the public
- rapid deployment of new software.

The eNaTIS is one of the most advanced traffic-management systems in the world. It interfaces directly with the South African Police Service (SAPS), motor manufacturers, vehicle builders, vehicle importers, investigative agencies, financial institutions and insurance companies. Vehicles are managed on the system from factory floor to scrap yard. Since the new system was launched in April 2007, the average daily transactions have increased from 300 000 to 600 000. In its first 13 months of operation, an average of 12 million transactions per month was maintained.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The Integrated Transport Sector Broad-Based BEE (BBBEE) Charter sets targets for empowerment and participation through ownership, management and employment in companies throughout the transport-sector value chain. The charter aims to ensure representivity for black women and designated groups across most of the BEE indicators.

One of the most important priorities has been to maximise the participation of black people in the mainstream economy, as part of the Codes of Good Practice on BEE approved by Cabinet in February 2007.

As a result, BBBEE has been effectively placed at the centre of economic growth to promote economic transformation and enable meaningful participation of black people in the transport industry, and to achieve a substantial change in the racial composition of ownership and management structures of existing and new enterprises.

Non-motorised transport (NMT)

The promotion of NMT primarily aims to increase transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The Department of Transport has broadened its Shova Kalula "Pedal Easy" Project into a more comprehensive NMT project that incorporates among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts.

Some of government's major investments in transport include:

- R13,6 billion on public-transport infrastructure for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™
- R20 billion on airports development
- R18 billion on a passenger rail system in the current Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF)
- R70 billion on roads for the current MTEF
- R25 billion on the Gautrain
- R23 billion on the Gauteng Freeway Improvement Scheme.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015, in line with the resolution and action plan of the African Ministers' Transport Summit held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in 2005.

By mid-2008, the Shova Kalula Project was making substantial progress. A company was appointed to distribute 26 100 bicycles in all provinces.

The first batch of bicycles was delivered to schools in August 2008 and the target was the delivery of 46 100 by March 2009. It is believed that these initiatives improve the mobility of and access to economic opportunities by rural communities.

The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates the establishment of micro businesses which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the sustainability of the project.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

From a transport point of view, key issues in creating an effectively co-ordinated African response to global market challenges are market access, mobility and systems integration.

The Department of Transport is contributing actively to the practical realisation of Nepad and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) development goals in several major areas, by promoting:

- efficient and effective maritime transport services
- rail-systems integration
- road-systems development and infrastructure maintenance.

Public entities and other agencies

The Department of Transport has established different bodies to take over certain elements of government's operational activities. They include the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), Transport Appeal Tribunal, Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), National Railway Safety Regulator, the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), Road Accident Fund (RAF), Air-Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS) and Airports Company of South Africa (ACSA).

In October 2008, the transport agencies celebrated 10 years of existence.

The Transport Agencies General Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 42 of 2007), seeks to

standardise practices within entities by streamlining the selection and appointment of board members and CEOs. The Act aims to:
- streamline the appointment processes and procedures and remove limitations on delivery capacity
- boost the performance of entities through strict monitoring of performance agreements
- ensure the smooth harmonisation of the national policy directive and strategic objectives of the entities.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanral is an independent, statutory company responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network, including toll and non-toll roads.

Sanral's responsibilities are to:
- strategically plan, design, construct, operate, rehabilitate and maintain South Africa's national roads
- deliver and maintain a world-class primary road network
- generate revenue from the development and management of its assets
- undertake research and development to enhance the quality of the country's roads
- upon request of the Minister of Transport and in agreement with a foreign country, provide, operate and maintain roads in that country.

Sanral is responsible for the existing national road network of 16 750 kilometres, at an estimated value of over R40 billion.

By May 2008, Sanral was implementing its Public-Private Partnership concession programme. It was developing the N2 Wild Coast Toll Highway, worth R3 billion; N1/N2 Winelands Toll Highway, worth R3,5 billion; R300 Cape Town Ring Toll Highway, worth R2,5 billion; and the Gauteng Freeway Scheme, worth R23 billion.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

Samsa is a statutory body that reports to the Minister of Transport. Its responsibilities include promoting safety of life and property at sea, preventing marine pollution by pollutants emanating from ships and co-ordinating overall technical operations. It also develops policy on legal issues, foreign relations, marine pollution and certain specific safety matters.

Samsa's main functions are to:
- provide shipping competence and pollution services in a regional context
- manage marine incidents, casualties and wrecks, and participate in search-and-rescue missions
- control standby tugs and pollution stores
- maintain seafarers according to standards of training and staffing criteria
- provide a shipping-administration support service
- manage the registration of ships
- manage a coastal patrol service
- manage vessel traffic, including navigation aids
- provide lighthouse services.

Funding comes from, among other sources, levies on ships calling at South African ports, direct user charges and government service fees.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA regulates and controls cross-border passenger, freight and road transport. It also facilitates the establishment of co-operative and consultative relationships and structures between public and private-sector institutions, with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The CBRTA fosters investment in the cross-border road-transport industry and provides high-quality cross-border freight and passenger road-transport services at reasonable prices. The agency works on a cost-recovery basis and any profits from cross-border permit fees are ploughed back into the system through a price reduction on permits in the following financial year. It encourages small-business development in the industry.

The CBRTA is also involved in collecting, processing and disseminating relevant information; providing training and capacity-building; and promoting entrepreneurship, focusing on small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The functions of the agency include:
- advising the Minister of Transport on cross-border transport matters and assisting in the process of negotiating and renegotiating cross-border road-transport agreements on request
- regulating the road-transport industry's access to the cross-border road-transport market
- undertaking road-transport law enforcement.

The main source of income for the CBRTA is fees charged for cross-border permits.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF is a public entity that compensates victims of motor-vehicle accidents for bodily injuries and/or loss of financial support caused by the death of a breadwinner. The rights for compensation are prescribed by the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996).

The RAF derives its income from a tax levied on petrol and diesel sold in South Africa.

The RAF pays out numerous claims each year in respect of accidents caused by recklessness; and inconsiderate, negligent, aggressive and drunken driver behaviour.

On 1 August 2008, the RAF Amendment Bill was promulgated. The legislative amendments to the original RAF Act, 1996 will replace the compensation system that promoted inequality and threatened the sustainability of the fund with a system that is more equitable, fair and transparent for the victims of road accidents.

All claims in respect of accidents that occur from 1 August 2008 onwards will be administered under the new Act. Claims in respect of accidents that occurred prior to this date will continue to be dealt with in terms of the original Act. The key amendments in this regard include, among other things, the following:

- Claims are limited to a maximum of R160 000 per year for loss of income, or R160 000 per year for each deceased breadwinner in the case of a claim for loss of support. This amount will be adjusted quarterly in line with inflation.
- "General damages" refer to compensation for pain and suffering, disfigurement and scarring, loss of pleasures of life (such as where the injured can no longer participate in sport), loss of life expectancy and emotional shock resulting from injury sustained in the accident. The RAF's obligation in terms of general damages will be limited to compensation for serious injuries, which will be assessed in accordance with the prescribed method.
- Tariffs for emergency medical treatment will be based on private-sector rates negotiated between the RAF and medical service-providers. This means that in case of emergencies even the indigent victims of accidents can be treated at private hospitals because the hospitals will be paid at private-sector rates. However, in cases other than the emergencies, the tariffs applicable in the public sector will apply.

The statutory limit of R25 000 per person in respect of claims from passengers in the offending car will fall away, meaning that passengers in the offending car will have the same rights to compensation as other victims.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil-aviation safety and security.

The SACAA is a leader in the aviation-regulatory sector in the SADC region. It hosts several regional meetings and conferences, and is the driving seat of efforts to harmonise aviation regulations in the region and to improve the level of aviation surveillance.

In 2003, South Africa was elected as a member of the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) Council and was requested to establish a South African office at the ICAO headquarters in Montreal, Canada.

The SACAA is funded by a combination of direct and indirect fees and government funding for the investigation of aircraft accidents. User fees are based on the recovery of the agency's costs to provide the relevant direct services. This approach creates a more efficient and cost-effective regulatory regime and a safer civil-aviation system.

Following 2007 safety audit reports, recruitment and training of experienced pilots, technicians and inspectors had been placed high on the agenda of the SACAA. To assist with these and other initiatives, the Department of Transport granted the SACAA a once-off amount of R21,75 million to enable the SACAA to fulfil its safety and security oversight mandate.

Airports Company of South Africa

Acsa is busy implementing its R19,3-billion airports development plan. Acsa handles about 16,8 million departing passengers annually and experienced an annual growth of 10,8% in 2007. Smaller airports such as Port Elizabeth, Kimberley and Bloemfontein grew by about 10,4%, reaching total passenger volumes of 1,4 million. The current consolidated terminal capacity for smaller airports is two million passengers.

Airports

Acsa owns and operates South Africa's 10 principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. Acsa also has a 35-year concession to operate the Pilanesberg Airport near Sun City in North West. The other six airports are in Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley, Upington and Pilanesberg.

Acsa's three core activities are:

- airport services, including the development of airport infrastructure, such as providing and maintaining runways, taxiways and aprons; terminal facilities; and aviation security, fire and rescue services
- retail and advertising activities, including the provision of space within terminals to appropriate retailers; providing other sites to operations such as car-hire firms and banks; and space for advertisers
- property activities, including providing retail and office premises, and car-parking facilities, as well as functioning as commercial landlords.

The aviation sector is critical, particularly in South Africa's ability to host the 2010 World Cup. Construction at airports, especially those that will be directly affected by World Cup soccer activities, is progressing well.

Passenger traffic across the Acsa network of airports continues to surge and is estimated to increase from 32,8 million in 2006/07 to over 43 million passengers per year by 2010. Meeting this growth in passenger demand has necessitated enormous investment in airport infrastructure.

At OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, the central terminal building (CTB) has a budget of R2,2 billion; upgrade of the international departures' terminal a budget of R105 million; a second multi-storey parkade a budget of R486 million; remote aircraft aprons a budget of R840 million; and the international pier a budget of R533 million. By May 2008, the CTB linking the current domestic and international terminals at OR Tambo as well as the reconfiguration and upgrade of the international arrival and departure areas were under construction.

The CTB Project is scheduled for final completion by the end of 2009, six months before the 2010 World Cup. It will also be connected to the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link for easy access to train transportation to Johannesburg, Sandton and Pretoria.

At Cape Town International Airport, there are two main projects – the CTB with a budget of R1,5 billion and the second multi-storey parkade with a budget of R394 million. Work on the CTB is progressing rapidly. The construction of a second multi-storey car park, which will be located directly opposite the international terminal is also in progress. The parkade will have 4 000 bays, which is almost double the current capacity.

Acsa is developing the new green-field international airport at La Mercy, outside Durban, at a cost of R6,7 billion. The department is busy with runway and terminal refurbishment at Bloemfontein Airport at a cost of R121 million and R49 million respectively. There is also a terminal upgrade at East London at a cost of R98 million and runway refurbishment at Port Elizabeth at a cost of R68 million.

In 2008, South Africa's Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA) earned a Category One rating from the United States of America (USA) Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). A Category One ranking means that the SACAA has been found to license and oversee air carriers in accordance with the International Civil Aviation Organisation's aviation safety standards.

The FAA conducts the International Aviation Safety Assessment Programme, assessing the civil aviation authority of each country with carriers operating to the USA. Countries that have earned a Category One ranking include the Netherlands, United Kingdom, Australia, Spain and France.

Air-Traffic Navigation Services

The ATNS is responsible for the efficient running of South Africa's air-traffic control systems and the maintenance of navigation equipment, including the deployment of air-traffic controllers and aviation technical staff.

The company's college is a well-established facility that is used by several African countries for air-traffic services' training and technical training for equipment support.

The ATNS does not receive government transfers and derives its funding from its operations.

A joint operations' centre at the OR Tambo International Airport is the nerve centre of all airport communications and operations. From here, all activities related to maintenance and building management are co-ordinated. The centre serves as a control office, crisis-control centre for emergencies and an information technology centre.

Transnet Limited

Transnet, which is transforming into a focused freight-transport and logistics company, comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – fulfils the landlord function for South Africa's port system

- Transnet Port Terminals – manages port and cargo terminal operations in the country's leading ports
- Transnet Pipelines – the fuel and gas-pipeline business pumps and manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines.

The initiatives in transport reflect the priorities government has set for itself. Transnet is investing a total amount of R82 billion over the next five years, of which R40,8 billion is being spent on upgrading freight rail infrastructure and rail engineering. The upgrading of the freight rail infrastructure is key to the objective of shifting more freight from the road network to the rail network as well as finding the balance between road and rail in respect of the transportation of goods.

Road transport

National roads

In terms of the National Roads Act, 1998 (Act 7 of 1998), government is responsible for overall policy, while road-building and maintenance is the responsibility of Sanral.

The Department of Transport continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe. A new national roads plan is being developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

For the next three years R70 billion will be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading and an additional R3 billion for the Expended Public Works Programme for access roads, all of which is an attempt by government to alleviate traffic congestion.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The Department of Transport assists provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

> Transnet Limited announced that its revenue rose 12,9% to R16,8 billion for the six months ended 30 September 2008. Revenue and volumes increased in all operating divisions, except Transnet Freight Rail.
>
> Containerised traffic has been a key driver of growth and is important in reducing the cost of doing business in South Africa, which is Transnet's mandate from its shareholder.
>
> The interim results of Transnet's revenue showed significant progress in the roll-out of its five-year R80-billion capital expenditure programme.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns are the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

Toll roads cover some 2 400 km and are serviced by 53 toll plazas.

The viability of every toll road is determined over a 30-year period to assess private-sector funding.

It is envisaged that all new major toll-road projects will be financed through the Build, Operate and Transfer principle. This allows greater private-sector involvement in the financing, building, operation and maintenance of toll projects. When the concession period expires, the facility is transferred back to the State at no cost.

Public transport

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy-formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation. The Department of Transport continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

According to the *National Household Travel Survey, 2003*, there were about 3,9 million public-transport commuters in mid-2003. The 2,5 million taxi commuters accounted for over 63% of public-transport work trips. Bus services accounted for another 22% of public-transport commuters and the rest were carried to work by train. In addition to the 2,5 million commuters who used minibus taxis as the main mode of travel, there were another 325 000 commuters who used taxis either as a feeder mode to other public-transport services, or as a distribution service from the main mode to their places of work.

National Transport Register

The National Land Transport Transition Act, 2000 (Act 22 of 2000), prescribed the establishment of the *National Transport Register.*

The purpose of this register is to integrate the land-transport systems, namely the Subsidy Manage-ment System (SUMS), the Land-Transport Permit System (LTPS) and the Registration Administration System (RAS).

The first phase of the R10,2-billion Moloto Rail Development Corridor Initiative between Tshwane in Gauteng and Siyabuswa in Mpumalanga was implemented in June 2008.

This phase will involve developing a railway line, which will be used to ferry people from Siyabuswa to Gauteng. The second phase will extend to Burgersfort and Tafelkop in Limpopo's Greater Sekhukhune District Municipality. The entire project is expected to take about five years. The project will be implemented by the South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC) and aims to provide safe and affordable transport, as well as reduce accidents along the R573.

Taxis and buses will deliver people to stations along the railway line. The provincial Department of Economic Development and Planning had finalised an economic scoping report for the project by the end of June 2008. The resettlement of affected communities and the Environmental Impact Assessment also commenced in 2008. A Memorandum of Understanding has been signed between the Department of Transport, provincial departments in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, and the district municipalities of Nkangala in Mpumalanga and Sekhukhune in Limpopo to jointly implement the project with the help of the SARCC. The Moloto Rail Development Corridor Initiative is part of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, which is aimed at creating jobs and reducing poverty.

The LTPS facilitates the issuing of public road-carrier permits, regulating entry into the road-carrier markets.

The objective is to facilitate the processing of permit applications and to enable local road-transportation boards (provincial permit boards) to provide an efficient service to the industry. In achieving this goal, the LTPS supports the boards in:

- registering applications
- generating and verifying advertisements
- capturing objections and appeals
- generating agendas
- verifying vehicle information
- generating permits and permit transfers.

The RAS facilitates the registration of minibus-taxi associations with the Provincial Registrar to formalise the industry. The system supports the registrar with:

- registering members and associations
- registering vehicle particulars of members
- registering corridor particulars of associations
- management reporting.

The SUMS manages claims from provincial departments and payments thereof for bus contracts.

Urban transport

Metropolitan transport advisory boards govern urban areas, which have been declared metropolitan transport areas. Both short- and long-term programmes for adequate transportation development are drawn up by the core city of each area and are revised and adjusted annually.

Nine such core areas exist, namely Johannesburg, Cape Town, Pretoria, Durban, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth, the East Rand, Bloemfontein and East London.

The planning of transport for metropolitan and major urban areas must be done in accordance with a growth-management plan, and travel modes should not compete with one another.

In urban areas, passenger road-transport services are provided by local governments, private bus companies, which operate scheduled bus services between peripheral areas and city centres, and minibus taxis. The Department of Transport supports provincial departments of transport and public works in constructing intermodal facilities and in their efforts to achieve integration between bus and taxi operations.

The minibus-taxi industry has shown phenomenal growth during the last few years, leading to a decrease in the market share of buses and trains as modes of transport.

Rural transport

The deep rural areas are still isolated from major road and rail routes. However, the Rural Transport Strategy, approved by Cabinet in December 2007, is promoting mobility in such areas. A number of rural areas have been targeted such as the Sekhukhune, OR Tambo and Chris Hani districts for NMT initiatives, including infrastructure and freight logistics.

A rural-transport development mapping project is underway to map the co-ordination of service delivery within nodal points and economic hubs. This is proving to be of great assistance to district-wide planning, implementation and investment in Chris Hani district; the pedestrian and bicycle bridge underway in Thabo Mofutsanyane in the Free State; the rural transport brokerage system in OR Tambo district; a taxi rank in Jozini (Umkhanyakude); and acccess road maintenance in Sekhukhune in Limpopo and Bophirima in North West.

Motor vehicles

The number of registered vehicles increased by 490 366 (5,65%) from 8 672 481 at the end of February 2007 to 9 162 840 at the end of February 2008 .

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire to have an integrated public-transport system. The main objectives are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy, that puts the passenger first and that meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team, to consider specific interventions to turn around the taxi industry.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate type of vehicles, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

The TRP is part of government's broad integrated public-transport network system, which is aimed at forming part of the larger public transport feeder systems.

By May 2008, the scrapping of old and unsafe taxi vehicles and their replacement with new taxi vehicles with better safety features was on track. By July 2008, more than 14 000 old and unroadworthy vehicles had been removed from the roads and R700 million had been paid out to taxi operators as scrapping allowances.

i

The Administrative Adjudication of Traffic Offences Act ,1998 (Act 46 of 1998), governing the issuing of fines and the licence points demerit system was launched in July 2008 with a pilot study in Tshwane. Overseen by the Road Traffic Management Corporation, the Act is expected to influence the way South Africans drive. Under the Act, all drivers will receive their "infringement notices" within five days and have the opportunity to reduce the amount payable by 50% if payment is received within 32 days. Payments received outside of this period will have to be for the full amount and will incur administrative costs. If, after a series of notices, the payment remains outstanding, the Sheriff of the Court will have the right to seize and sell movable property to cover the debt.

The points demerit system was expected to be introduced in the national roll-out from 2009. A driver will incur a set number of points for each traffic offence committed. This will be awarded against his/her licence. After 12 points have been exceeded, an automatic driving ban for a period in months equal to three times the number of points over 12 will be effected. Should a driver be disqualified a third time, the licence will be permanently revoked.

The driver will need to re-apply for a learner's licence after the disqualification period has elapsed. Points can be reduced at a rate of one point per three-month period, under the provision that no other demerit points are incurred during that period. According to the Act, fines, which have until now been handled by municipalities, will now cross municipal and provincial borders. The system will also have a tighter collection process and generate a reliable revenue stream that will be used to improve road safety.

Bus Rapid Transport

BRT systems provide an exciting and innovative mechanism for implementing high-quality public-transport networks that operate on exclusive right of way and incorporate current bus and minibus operators with no source of income or jobs.

With integrated, reliable and safe public transport, socio-economic development will be a spin-off and have sustainable, long-term economic benefits. It is expected that such systems will be running in a number of key corridors between Johannesburg and Pretoria by 2010.

The enclosed stations will have high security features, including security surveillance on buses and stations. Commuters from low-income areas will have equal access to economically active regions as BRT bus routes will service townships.

Some benefits are:

- contactless electronic ticketing will be use at station access gates
- a single automated electronic ticketing system will be used for all modes of public transport
- BRT buses and Gautrain routes and timetables will be co-ordinated to enable commuters to enjoy door-to-door transport convenience
- new planning strategies will limit car access to high-density areas
- when exchanging private cars for buses, greenhouse gas emissions are drastically reduced.

Major initiatives in all spheres of government are being undertaken in preparation for the 2010 World Cup, as guided by the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan.

Cabinet has approved the Road Infrastructure Framework for South Africa, which is a blueprint for the planning, development and maintenance of the road network. Government has set aside R70 billion for the road infrastructure across all spheres of government.

The South African National Road Agency (Sanral) inherited 7 000 km of national road, and now manages more than 16 000 km of roads. South Africa's road system is considered to be among the best in the world, because of the development of systems to ensure world-class assessment and maintenance programmes, as well as the full utilisation of public-private partnerships. The Maputo Development Corridor is an example of this.

The challenges of rural access roads are also being addressed. Technology is being used, such as Intelligent Transport Systems, comprising variable message signs, a network management centre, ramp metering, and the opening of auxiliary lanes and cameras to manage traffic flow and keep road users informed of prevailing conditions.

Electronic tolling will be introduced to the rest of the national tolled roads, with every effort being made to have operational integration between the various sections of road, using a single transponder in each vehicle to register use.

By May 2008, construction was far advanced on the:

- Johannesburg phase one BRT system that links Soweto, Nasrec, the central business district (CBD), Ellis Park, Sandton and Alexandra
- Nelson Mandela Bay BRT System that links Motherwell and New Brighton with the CBD and the suburbs
- Cape Town Project, which provides rapid transit services within the inner city, and to the airport and also to the West Coast.

Road-traffic safety

The RTMC Act, 1999 (Act 20 of 1999), provides for the establishment of the RTMC to:

- enhance the overall quality of road-traffic management and service provision
- strengthen co-operation and co-ordination between the national, provincial and local spheres of government in the management of road traffic
- maximise the effectiveness of provincial and local government efforts, particularly in road-traffic law enforcement
- create business opportunities, particularly for the historically disadvantaged sectors, to supplement public-sector capacity
- guide and sustain the expansion of private-sector investment in road-traffic management.

The RMTC is a partnership between the three spheres of government to strengthen its collective capacity for road-traffic management. The process for adjudicating road-traffic offences has been reformed and is now administrative, rather than judicial.

The Constitution authorises provinces to exercise legislative and executive powers pertaining to road-traffic safety, while the promotion thereof is primarily the responsibility of the Department of Transport.

The Road Traffic Safety Board (RTSB) endorses and acts as guardian of the Road Traffic Management Strategy (RTMS); assists in identifying, formulating and prioritising projects; monitors progress; and gives direction in the implementation of the RTMS.

The RTSB comprises members of national, provincial and local government and traffic stakeholders in the private sector. The ministers of education, health, justice and constitutional development, provincial and local government, safety and security, and transport serve on the board.

Three Acts provide for the national co-ordination of regulation and law enforcement, the registration and licensing of motor vehicles and the training and appointment of traffic officers. These are the RTMC Act, 1999; the National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 21 of 1999); and the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 22 of 1999).

The finalisation of the National Road Traffic Law Enforcement Code and subsequent agreements in respect of key performance indicators and service-level agreements between the RTMC and road traffic authorities will ensure that authorities are capacitated, empowered and supported in the planning, execution and reviewing of their road-traffic strategies, programmes and campaigns.

The training and development of all traffic officials also remain one of the RTMC's highest priorities.

The RTMC aims to establish a national training academy and integrated management model. Current traffic training colleges will be integrated, aligned and co-ordinated to ensure standardised training facilities, material and standards.

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive road-safety Campaign aims to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5%,

- compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge an improved working relationship between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

Cross-border transport

Multilateral

The SADC Protocol on Transport, Communications and Meteorology provides a comprehensive framework for regional integration across the entire spectrum of the transport, communications and meteorology sectors. The general objective is to promote the provision of efficient, cost-effective and fully integrated infrastructure and operations in these fields. The protocol also specifically addresses road transport, and aims to facilitate the unimpeded flow of goods and passengers between and across the territories of SADC member states.

It aims to promote the adoption of a harmonised policy, which lays down general operational conditions for carriers.

Cross-border transport within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) is undertaken in terms of the Sacu Memorandum of Understanding (MoU), which facilitates transport between member countries through the use of the single-permit system. The MoU provides the framework for co-operation between the signatory countries, which has resulted in the establishment of technical working groups for traffic standards, road-user charges and passenger transport.

The activities of the Passenger-Transport Working Group have led to the establishment of joint route- management committees for certain cross-border passenger routes within the Sacu. These committees comprise representatives from the public and private sectors of the countries concerned, and are aimed at jointly managing the routes in consultation with all stakeholders.

Bilateral

Bilateral agreements facilitate and encourage cross-border road transport in support of regional trade. The Maputo Development Corridor between South Africa and Mozambique is a good example.

The two governments also signed agreements dealing with road freight and passenger transport between the two countries, to facilitate the movement of goods and people by road, and to eliminate bureaucratic proceedings at border posts.

The project also includes the upgrading and modernisation of the railway line between the two countries and of Maputo Harbour, at a cost of about R150 million.

On 29 September 2003, South Africa, Namibia and Botswana signed an MoU on the development and management of the Trans-Kalahari Corridor (TKC). The TKC was formally established in 1998 following the completion of the Trans-Kgalagadi Highway in Botswana.

The TKC links the three southern African countries by road.

One of the benefits of the TKC is that it links the hinterlands of Botswana, Namibia and South Africa (especially Gauteng) with the Port of Walvis Bay. This port is the western seaboard port in southern Africa and is closest to shipping routes to and from markets in the Americas and Europe.

The development of the TKC has the potential of significantly reducing transaction costs for SADC exporters and importers. This is expected to enable economic operators to become increasingly competitive internationally by enhancing their ability to exploit the benefits of preferential trade agreements with the United States of America (USA) and the European Union (EU).

Rail transport

With over 2,4 million passenger journeys being made every day, South Africa has the fastest growing railway in Africa. Government has increased funding for passenger rail transport services to about R18 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF). This funding is vital for the turnaround strategy being implemented by the South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC) aimed at immediate and significant improvements through upgrading the current rolling stock fleet as well as upgrading the signalling infrastructure.

The Tshwane Business Express between Tshwane and Johannesburg, unveiled at the Pretoria Station in May 2008, is cutting down travel time and assisting in relieving congestion on the road network.

The programme to upgrade key railstations for the Confederations Cup in 2009 and for the 2010 World Cup is underway and construction or improvements at stations such as Nasrec, Doornfontein near Ellis Park in in Johannesburg, Moses Mabhida in Durban, Cape Town, Loftus Versveld in Pretoria and North End Station in Port Elizabeth was expected to be completed by end April 2009.

The SARCC has allocated about R300 million over three years to improve facilities such as ablutions, lighting and subways in over 130 stations, with over 75 stations either nearing completion or completed already.

The Department of Transport has embarked on a comprehensive recapitalisation programme to improve rail safety and revive rail transport as a viable public-transport alternative.

Passenger rail safety

The Department of Transport is implementing the National Rail Passenger Plan, which charts the way for the future of passenger-rail services in South Africa.

The following different options have been proposed:

- full recovery, where the whole rail network would be restored
- limited system, where all but efficient lines/routes would be closed
- priority rail corridors, where the socio-economic planning objectives would be balanced on existing rail strengths.

The National Railway Safety Regulator Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for the setting up of the independent Railway Safety Regulator, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport.

The regulator also oversees safety by conducting audits and inspections; undertaking occurrence investigations; analysing occurrence statistics, operator-safety plans and accident reports; and issuing notices to operators to cease an activity or to improve an unsafe activity. Failure to respond to a notice could result in the operator, including the top management and even the board, being prosecuted.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and train stations.

A number of railway police stations have been completed countrywide. The SARCC is spending more than R237 million to roll out the provision of 30 accommodation facilities to the South African Police Service (SAPS). By the end of 2008, 25 SAPS railway police stations were expected to be completed. In October 2008, Park Station Railway Police Station in Johannesburg was officially launched as part of the October Transport Month Campaign. In preparation for the 2010 Soccer World Cup, the launch profiled and demonstrated the improved safety for rail passengers and the soccer-loving community nationally and internationally.

Through the Rail Passenger Plan, the department, with the SARCC/Metrorail and the SAPS saw the deployment of more than 5 000 railway police on passenger rail to provide and enhance safety for rail passengers.

The development of industrial and local standards, which will cover certain geographical locations and circumstances, was expected to be completed in 2008.

Gautrain

Construction on the Gautrain began in September 2006, and part of this project requires the construction of the OR Tambo external shell for the station. The CTB will be connected to the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link, of which construction of the external shell of the OR Tambo station concourse is complete.

The concrete infrastructure is also set to cross over the R21, making its way into the CTB. The rail link is complemented by the OR Tambo International Airport shell scheme, which, by October 2008, was ready to receive the link that will come across the R21.

Two weeks before the FIFA World Cup 2010, a stretch of the route between OR Tambo Airport and the Sandton Station, including two stations in between and the Midrand operations centre, will be opened. This will be a crucial segment of the route, as the majority of football fans visiting the country will enter the country through OR Tambo International Airport. An independent cost-benefit analysis has indicated that:

- Gautrain will save 585 000 vehicle kilometres per day
- lower traffic congestion will result in travel-cost savings of all vehicles in Gauteng of three cents per kilometre
- total accident cost savings will be R475 million per year
- Gautrain will save R3,8 million per year in vehicle operating costs the year by 2030 (2003 rand values)
- Gautrain will save R7,1 million per year in time costs for passengers travelling in this corridor by 2030 (2003 rand values).

The Gautrain Project is expected to reduce the severe traffic congestion along the Johannesburg-Tshwane traffic corridor, which has 300 000 vehicles per day, growing at an estimated 7% per year. The estimation indicates that the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link will reduce this amount by 20%.

South African Rail Commuter Corporation-Metrorail

The SARCC-Metrorail provides commuter rail services in South Africa. The first phase of the consolidation of all passenger rail entities in South Africa has been concluded by Metrorail's transferral from Transnet to the SARCC-Metrorail with effect from 1 May 2006.

Shosholoza Meyl has been part of the SARCC with effect from 1 April 2008. However, Transnet continued to manage and run the business on behalf of the SARCC until September 2008 when the parties concluded a Sale of Business Agreement to allocate assets and the accompanying risks facing Shosholoza Meyl.

The SARCC operates the Rail Commuter Services through its operator, Metrorail.

Rail Commuter Services is operated as a social-responsibility programme requiring considerable government subsidisation. The assets that were transferred to the SARCC-Metrorail included property with a net potential worth billions in the main metropolitan areas. The corporation's role as concessionaire is to establish and monitor service standards, safety and security levels, and operating efficiencies.

Up to 1,7 million people use the commuter rail service daily. The SARCC-Metrorail infrastructure and assets comprise 478 stations, some 2 240 km of electrified single-rail track and 4 564 coaches.

Investment for passenger rail has more than doubled since 1994, to over R16 billion in 2007. The long-term plan for the upgrading of flagship stations such as the Park and Durban stations is expected to attract more passengers to trains.

The SARCC-Metrorail works closely with metros and other municipalities to ensure that rail services support integrated transport plans developed by local government. The introduction by the SARCC-Metrorail of the express services within the current rail environment is intended to create a culture of using public transport among all South Africans.

Between 2007 and May 2008, the SARCC upgraded over 790 coaches, which have since been deployed back into service. The SARCC has already committed another 700 coaches to be refurbished in 2008/09 at an estimated cost of almost R2 billion. Several upgrading works on stations, rail track, signalling and rolling stock are proceeding in all SARCC areas of responsibility.

Government has increased funding for passenger rail services to approximately R18 billion over the MTEF period.

Allocations include:

- 165 coaches at a cost of R400 million – an additional 14 train-sets for the Western Cape
- 264 coaches at a cost of R460 million – an additional 20 train-sets for Southern Gauteng
- 115 coaches at a cost of R230 million – an additional eight train-sets for Tshwane
- the smallest operation of Metrorail of 24 coaches – an additional three train-sets for the Eastern Cape
- 108 coaches at a cost of R365 million – an additional eight train-sets for Durban.

Freight transport

The fourth *State of Logistics Survey* (2007) shows that about 87% of all land feight tonnage is carried by road, with the remainder carried by rail. Generally, road transport costs anything between 30% and 50% more than rail transport in additional costs, which cargo owners and end customers have to bear.

The National Freight Logistics Strategy is being implemented and seeks, among other things, to integrate first and second economies, and support the integration of marginalised local economies with the main logistics corridors.

The key objective is to reduce the costs of doing business and remove inefficiencies placed on businesses and their long-term sustainability.

The Department of Transport, in close co-operation with the provincial road-traffic authorities, is implementing the National Overload Control Strategy (NOCS) to protect road infrastructure, improve road safety and ensure seamless movement of cargo. The department has also developed guidelines in co-operation with the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) as part of promoting self-regulation in the heavy-vehicle industry. This is aimed at fostering a partnership to ensure proper load management, vehicle roadworthiness and driver fitness.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR (previously called Spoornet), the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenues. It is a world-class heavy haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

TFR has about 25 000 employees. The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

The company is proud of its reputation for technological leadership beyond Africa as well as within Africa, where it is active in some 17 countries.

TFR has positioned itself to become a profitable and sustainable freight railway business, assisting in driving the competitiveness of the South African economy.

TFR has a 20 247-km rail network, of which about 1 500 km comprises heavy-haul lines. The network connects the ports and hinterland of South Africa and the rail networks of the sub-Saharan region.

TFR operates freight trains serving customers in the following major segments:

- mining: coal, iron ore, manganese, granite, asbestos, chrome and non-ferrous metals
- manufacturing: chemicals, fuel and petroleum, fertiliser, cement, lime, iron steel and scrap
- agriculture and forestry: grain, stockfeed and milling, timber, paper and publishing, and fast-moving consumer goods
- containers and automotive: intermodal wholesale, automotive and industrial.

Civil aviation

According to the *2007/08 SACAA Annual Report*, there were 10 189 aircraft in South Africa. Air travel in South Africa has grown above 10% per year over the past three years, largely due to the proliferation of low-cost airlines following the deregulation of the industry in the early 1990s and the increased volume of international traffic flowing into the country. In 1993, fewer than 12 international airlines flew to South Africa. However, this number increased to 20 by 1995 and today more than 70 international airlines fly into the country regularly.

It is estimated that air traffic in South Africa will be in excess of 45 million passengers per year by 2012, from 32,8 million in 2008.

In terms of passenger growth, between 1994 and 2000, the rate of domestic growth was pinned at 7,5%, compared with the global rate of 3%. Similarly, while global international traffic grew at an average of 7% during this period, South Africa experienced an international passenger growth rate of about 8,5%, and 2007 figures for passenger growth surpassed the 10% mark per year.

Acsa handles about 16,8 million departing passengers annually. Smaller airports such as Port Elizabeth, Kimberley and Bloemfontein grew by about 10,4% in 2007, reaching total passenger volumes of 1,4 million passengers. The current consolidated terminal capacity for smaller airports is two million passengers.

An important area for the Department of Transport has been to drive the capacity of the aviation sector and it has embarked on a programme to prepare for 2010 and beyond. Revenue is expected to grow from R3 billion in 2007/08 to over R4,3 billion by 2010/11. This growth averages an increase of 12,1% per year.

Acsa, in turn, continues with its concerted infrastructure expenditure through developments at OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town and Durban and other airports at a cost of over R20 billion to provide for the expansion of airport infrastructure.

The new international arrivals hall at OR Tambo International Airport was opened on 3 September 2008.

This is the first phase of the R2,3-billion Central Terminal Building (CTB) at the airport.

International passengers will experience an improved arrivals facility, which includes a more user-friendly customs control process.

Passengers will also enjoy a new arrivals concourse, which is two and half times bigger than the airport's existing arrivals halls. According to Airports Company South Africa, the CTB development is the largest CTB project that the company has ever embarked upon.

The 18 000-m^2 space will ultimately include retail facilities such as a post office, cellular phone shops and foreign-exchange services as well as various eateries expected to open in December 2008. The departures facility of the CTB was expected to be fully operational by April 2009, with the full project to be complete by December 2009. The construction of the OR Tambo Gautrain Station has been completed and has been handed over for final finishing to Bombela, the consortium of companies that holds the concession to build, operate and maintain the Gautrain. The station was the first Gautrain station to be completed and handed over. The rail line will be elevated above the airport precinct and will connect directly to the CTB.

Airlift Strategy

The Department of Transport has developed the five-year Airlift Strategy, which was approved by Cabinet in July 2006, to introduce effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa.

In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services' negotiations.

In particular, the strategy supports the millennium development goals and the objectives of Nepad to increase African connectivity and access through the accelerated implementation of the Yamoussoukro Decision of 1999 on the liberation of intra-Africa air-traffic services.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

In particular, the strategy will enhance the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronise the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

Airlines

Major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

South African Airways (SAA), British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Interair operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, SAA operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

South African Airways

SAA is by far the largest air carrier in Africa, with the OR Tambo International Airport being on the busiest routes in Africa. Nearly 75% of air-traffic activity in Africa takes place in the regions.

In August 2008, SAA was named the best airline in Africa at the 2008 Skytrax World Airline Awards, which are based on an annual survey conducted by British aviation experts Skytrax. The *Skytrax Survey* is recognised as an independent passenger survey of global airline standards. SAA also won the Skytrax Award for Best Cabin Crew in Africa.

SAA is the only non-stop service from the USA to South Africa, with daily departures from Washington, DC and a daily direct service from New York. The airline recently upgraded its in-flight entertainment on these flights, increasing the number of movies available from 15 to 44, ranging from global blockbusters to more culturally diverse options that include South African and Hindi choices. There are a number of channels with TV programmes and music from many different genres on offer.

Each seat on board includes a personal, on-demand entertainment system with a full range of upgraded content. Travellers in premium class enjoy 180-degree fully flat-bed seats. SAA's local network includes connections to more than 20 South African destinations and more than 20 cities across the rest of the continent. As a Star Alliance member, SAA also offers its customers 975 destinations in 162 countries and 18 100 flights daily, including convenient connections from more than 30 cities in the USA through code-share service with Star Alliance member United Airlines. Members of United Airlines' Mileage Plus, US Airways' Dividend Miles and Air Canada's Aeroplan programmes can earn and redeem miles on all SAA flights.

Aviation safety and security

The ATNS's core mandate, which is to provide safe, orderly and efficient air traffic, navigational and associated services, will continue to assist in the reduction of accidents.

In spite of the 6,7% growth in air traffic, the ATNS stabilised the incident rate at 3,5 incidents per 100 000 aircraft movements and has built safety oversight capacity to improve investigations. Over the MTEF period, the entity's target incident rate is set at 2,5% per 100 000 movements in 2010/2011, and it aims to improve the safety management system. South Africa complies with the ICAO-recommended practices on aviation security. SAA participated in the Operation Safety Audit Programme for the first time in 2005/06 and became the first southern African airline to successfully complete its safety audit.

South Africa is also participating in the development and establishment of an upper airspace control centre for the SADC. This initiative proposes that a single centre, hosted by a SADC country, will provide air-navigation services to all aircraft flying above 24 500 feet.

Emphasis is being placed on improved international access to and from South Africa by air, the expansion of the bilateral air-services framework, effective monitoring of airline activities, and the efficient licensing and regulation of domestic and international air services. Other aims include promoting:

- safer skies: this involves ensuring that adequate safety and upper-airspace-control regimes are in place across the continent, supported by efficient air-traffic and navigational services and systematic human-resource (HR) development programmes
- efficient and effective aviation networks: this involves regulation to make air transport more affordable, creating regional hubs and air-carrier alliances, and supporting one another to establish a high-quality African airports network.

Proposed legislation governing civil aviation will facilitate the appointment of a national aviation security co-ordinator to formulate and enforce effective aviation security policies. In September 2008, the Department of Transport briefed the Transport Portfolio Committee in Parliament on the Civil Aviation Bill. The proposed legislation will apply to all aircraft, airports and related economic activities, except aircraft and airports used by the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), the SAPS or customs services. The SACAA will be tasked with implementing the provisions of the Bill.

Section Six of the Bill will give the Minister of Transport the power to acquire any land adjacent to an airport in the interests of safety and air navigation. The Bill will prohibit any future legal action in terms of trespass or nuisance relating to the reasonable flight path of aircraft. However, registered owners of aircraft will be liable for damage or loss caused by aircraft in flight.

The Bill will establish the Aviation Safety Investigation Board (ASIB), which will investigate accidents, publish reports on investigations and seek to prevent accidents.

The board will not be responsible for apportioning blame or determining liability, but will be confined to identifying causes or contributing factors for accidents. The Bill will instruct the ASIB to co-operate where possible with other departments in the investigation of an accident or incident.

The proposed legislation also outlines unacceptable behaviour aboard an aircraft that would qualify as an offence. The minister will be empowered to issue appropriate orders to counter any perceived or real security threat to aircraft or airport facilities. For example, the minister can order airport managers to conduct extensive searches of passengers, aircraft and facilities to maintain adequate safety standards. The Bill will employ a National Civil Aviation Security Co-ordinator, who will serve a three-year term with the option of renewal. The co-ordinator will be responsible for devising security policies and ensuring that compliance with aviation security standards is maintained.

Ports

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea. The National Ports Regulator was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- co-ordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Based on the White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002), the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

This will be achieved through the delivery of high levels of service and increasing efficiency for a growing customer base. It will result in the enhancement of South Africa's global competitiveness and facilitate the expansion of the economy through socially and environmentally sustainable port development. The TNPA business consists of the following divisions:

Trade and Logistics

This division is the strategic business arm of the TNPA. It is responsible for customer-relationship marketing, in combination with technology and HR.

Landlord Services

Landlord Services ensures the planning, development and optimal use of port property and infrastructure, as well as a safe, secure and healthy port environment.

The division consists of property, engineering, and planning and development. Landlord Services has traditionally been the TNPA's major revenue earner, initially through wharfage, and currently through cargo dues.

Maritime Services

Maritime Services includes improving efficiency in shipping services, dredging navigational waterways, and ensuring a safe shipping environment through vessel-tracing services, pilotage and lighthouse services.

The ports provide:

- pilotage, tug and berthing services
- bulk-handling installations to handle dry and liquid bulk, complemented by storage facilities
- container-handling facilities
- multipurpose terminals for the handling of breakbulk and containers
- access to rail and road links
- ship-repair facilities
- feeder services.

Lighthouse Services

Lighthouse Services operates 45 lighthouses along the South African coastline.

The TNPA has vessel-traffic systems in all ports, ensuring improved safety of navigation within the port and port limits, and enhancing the service provided to the port user.

Marine Services

Marine Services operates 24 large tugs, eight work boats, four pilot boats and 14 launches in South Africa's commercial ports. Twenty-four-hour services are provided at the ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

Portcon International

This division provides a consultancy and training service appropriate to ports operating within the African context.

Port and Corporate Affairs

This division is responsible for the efficient and profitable running of the ports as service-delivery platforms.

Deepwater ports

The Port of Richards Bay is South Africa's leading port in terms of cargo volumes, handling in excess of 80 mt of cargo annually.

By June 2007, the port was handling more than 1,7 billion tons (bt) of cargo, of which coal represented 1,3 bt. The port covers a surface area of 2 174 ha on land and 1 443 ha on water, making it the biggest port in South Africa in terms of size. It also offers easy access to South Africa's national rail network.

One of the port's inherent strengths is its deepwater infrastructure, with a maximum permissible draught of 17,5 m. This, coupled with the high-tech state-of-the-art terminal infrastructures, allows for high-speed, high-volume cargo handling and a fast turnaround of vessels.

The facilities at Richards Bay's Port comprise a dry-bulk terminal, a multipurpose terminal and the privately operated coal terminal. Other private operators within the port include several woodchip export terminals and a bulk liquid terminal.

Richard's Bay Dry Bulk Terminal is a unique terminal that handles a variety of commodities on its conveyor system.

To avoid contamination, every belt, transfer point, rail truck and vessel loader/unloader is washed thoroughly before the next product is handled. A high-volume woodchip loader, commissioned in 2004, has made this terminal one of the world's best and most efficient woodchip-loading facilities.

Saldanha Port, situated on the West Coast, is the deepest and the largest natural port in southern Africa. The port is unique in that it has a purpose-built railroad serving a bulk-handling facility, which is connected to a dedicated jetty for the shipment of iron ore. Saldanha also serves as a major crude-oil importation and transhipment port. It is the only iron ore-handling port in South Africa.

Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic.

The Port of Durban is one of the busiest in southern Africa. It has a surface land area of 1 854 ha. The container terminal is the largest such facility in the southern hemisphere and is geared to expand in terms of cargo handling.

It is especially effective as a hub port for cargo to and from the Far East, Europe and the Americas, serving South Africa, as well as west and east African countries. The port is also the premier port for a wide range of commodities, including coal, mineral ores, granite, chemicals, petrochemicals, steel, forest products, citrus products, sugar and grain. The Port of Cape Town is the other hub in South Africa. It offers multipurpose dry, and liquid and dry terminals, as well as fully serviced dry docks. The port is renowned for its deciduous fruit and frozen-product exports. A major fishing industry is also based here. The Port of Cape Town is strategically positioned and ideally situated to serve as a hub for cargoes between Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Oceania. The port provides a complex network of services to its clients and a favourable environment for all stakeholders, maximising benefits to the local and national economy.

Integrated intermodal cargo systems, ship repair, bunkering facilities and the reefer trade are examples of these services.

Multipurpose ports

The Port of Port Elizabeth, with its proximity to heavily industrialised and intensively farmed areas, has facilities for the handling of all commodities – bulk, general and container cargo.

Being situated at the centre of the country's motor-vehicle-manufacturing industry, the port imports large volumes of containerised components and raw material for this industry.

The bulk of exports comprises agricultural products. Apart from agricultural produce, manganese ore, motor-vehicle-industry-related products and steel are exported.

The container terminal has maintained the highest handling rates in Africa in recent years and is accredited to International Standards Organisation (ISO) 9002. Located mid-way between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the Port of Mossel Bay has in the past specialised in serving the local inshore and deep-sea fishing industry, as well as limited commercial cargo. However, it now serves the oil industry as well as other client-orientated marine cargo.

This port is the only South African port that operates two offshore mooring points within port limits. Both mooring points are used for the transport of refined petroleum products.

The Port of East London is situated at the mouth of the Buffalo River on South Africa's east coast, and is the country's only commercial river port.

Transnet intends to invest about R26 billion in the next five years between its Port Authority and Port Terminals divisions, primarily to support growth in the dry-bulk, liquid bulk, containers, automotive and break-bulk sectors across the seven existing commercial ports and the new Ngqura Port.

It boasts a large container terminal and grain elevator, and it is the largest exporter of maize.

With a world-class R80-million car terminal, the port has become one of the major motor-vehicle export and import terminals in South Africa.

Through Transnet, government is investing close to R50 billion on rail- and port-infrastructure improvement.

Pipelines

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Continued investment is also being made in the pipeline sector. In 2008/09, Transnet will invest R78 billion on pipeline infrastructure development towards this project. Some R11,5 billion has already been set aside for investment towards the construction of a liquid fuel pipeline between Durban and Gauteng.

Maritime affairs

Maritime administration, legislation and shipping

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It caters to a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The Department of Transport is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998).

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships. The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is responsible for combating pollution and uses *Kuswag* coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, HR and IT issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. A considerable number of ships calling at South Africa's major ports is inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation (Safmarine), Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports, but also as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

In January 2007, South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre (MRCC) in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia. South Africa also contributed R100 000 to be used in the operations of the International Maritime Security Fund.

Training

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simonstown in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy. The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology. Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the Department of Transport, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

Search-and-rescue services

The Department of Transport is responsible for providing a search-and-rescue function in South Africa. The search-and-rescue programme has been in existence since 1948.

The South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation (Sasar) provides South Africa with a world-class search-and-rescue capability.

Sasar is a voluntary organisation functioning under the auspices of the Department of Transport.

Its main function is to search for, assist, and, if necessary, rescue survivors of aircraft accidents or forced landings, vessels in distress, and accidents at sea. It is also charged with co-ordinating the resources made available to the department by various government departments, voluntary organisations, and private aircraft and shipping companies for search-and-rescue purposes.

The executive committee of Sasar, in conjunction with the relevant officials of the department, is responsible for formulating policy and procedures.

The Department of Transport, the SANDF, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Provincial and Local Government are members of Sasar and contribute their services and/or facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The Aeronautical Rescue Co-ordination Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search-and-rescue services and co-ordinates aeronautical search-and-rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based MRCC.

MRCC is enabling South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services. Since 2003, the MRCC has received more than 500 distress signals from vessels off the South African coastline, some as far south as Antarctica. Various laden, very large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established Pollution Prevention Strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threat to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa also acts in terms of the Indian Ocean MoU on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of west Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Acknowledgements

Airports Company South Africa
BuaNews
Business Day
Department of Transport
Estimates of National Expenditure 2008, published by National Treasury
National Household Travel Survey, 2003
Sabinet
National Ports Authority of South Africa
South African Rail Commuter Corporation
Transnet Freight Rail Limited
Road Accident Fund
www.gov.za
www.ports.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.spoornet.co.za
www.saa.co.za
www.transnet.co.za

Suggested reading

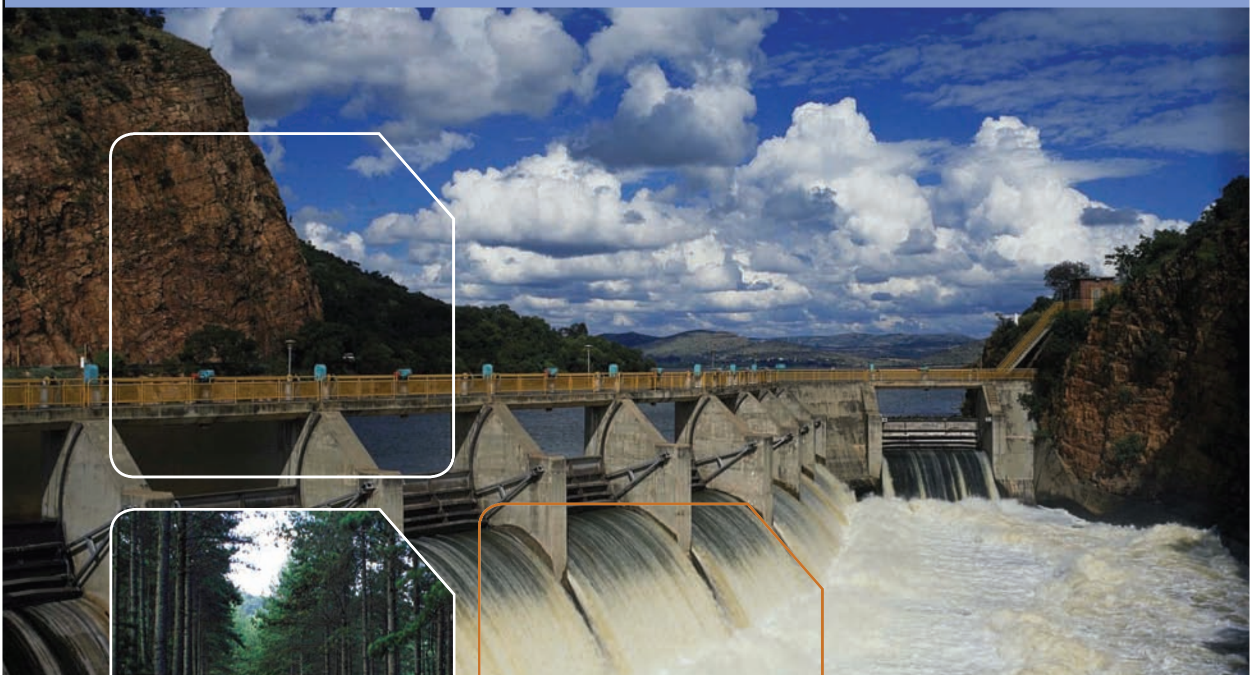
Illsley, J. *In Southern Skies:* A *Pictorial History of Early Aviation in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2003.

Potgieter, CA, Pillay, R and Rama, S. *Women, Development and Transport in Rural Eastern Cape,* South Africa. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2006.

Stirling, WGM and House, JA. *They Served Africa With Wings: 60 Years of Aviation in Central Africa*. Saanichton BC Canada: Bookmark Publishing, 2004.

Ross, G: *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes.* Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2007.

Van der Spek, P: *No Room for Error: An Account of Light Aircraft Crashes in South Africa*. Cape Town: David Philip/New Africa Books, 2003.



The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is the custodian of South Africa's water and forestry resources. It is primarily responsible for the formulation and implementation of policy governing these two sectors. It also has to override responsibility for water services provided by local government.

The water sector promotes effective and efficient water-resources management to ensure sustainable economic and social development, while striving to ensure that all South Africans gain access to clean water and safe sanitation. The forestry programme promotes the sustainable management of the country's natural forest resources and commercial forestry for the lasting benefit of the nation.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has a regional office in each province. These offices deal with the day-to-day water and forestry issues of provincial and local government. They support municipalities in their day-to-day water and sanitation service delivery by providing planning, guidance and crisis management.

The regional offices also provide support and oversee provincial institutions such as water-user associations (WUAs), water boards and catchment management agencies (CMAs). They are the first port of call when applying for a water-use or forestry licence. They monitor the quality of drinking water in co-operation with water services authorities (WSAs) and water boards.

Out of a total budget of R5,3 billion in 2007/08, R3,1 billion (58% of the budget) was allocated to regional offices.

Hydrological conditions

South Africa is located in a predominantly semi-arid part of the world. The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to subhumid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

The country's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country combined amounts to about 49 200 million cubic metres (m^3) per year. This is less than half of that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water across the country is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and, consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels for most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchments have, therefore, been implemented in South Africa.

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water-management areas. Eleven of these water-management areas share international rivers.

Over the years, water-resource development and management in South Africa have continuously evolved to meet the needs of a growing population and a vibrant economy, within the constraints imposed by nature. These developments have largely been made possible by recognising water as a national asset, thereby allowing its transportation from where it is available to where the greatest overall benefits for the nation can be achieved.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water in the country from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for the urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed over most of South Africa. Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households (since 1994).

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country where there are still significant undeveloped and little-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m^3 per year, including about 4 800 million m^3 per year of water originating from Lesotho, and about 700 million m^3 per year originating from Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa. Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the total water requirements of the country, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total net abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m^3 per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the re-use of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m^3 per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Water-resource management and development

Government is committed to ensuring that everyone in South Africa has access to functioning basic water-supply services and that everyone has access to a functioning basic sanitation facility by 2010.

By 2008, about a million more people had access to both water and basic sanitation services, contributing to government meeting the millenium development goals target of halving the population without water and sanitation. Households with access to water increased from 59% to 88% and basic sanitation from 48% to 73%. Between 1994 and June 2008, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry served 18,7 million people with water and 10,9 million people had access to basic sanitation.

Government's goal is to ensure that all people in South Africa have access to potable-quality water, basic sanitation facilities and electricity by 2014. Much progress has been achieved since 1994 towards reaching this goal.

Government is also committed to eradicating bucket systems in formal settlements.

By the end of March 2008, 91% of the 252 254 buckets identified in February 2005 were removed in formal established areas throughout the country. Between April 2007 and March 2008, access to free basic water (FBW) increased from 73% to 77%.

In 2008/09, the department spent R1,2 billion on establishing new water-resource infrastructure and R415 million on the rehabilitation of existing infrastructure.

In addition, "off-budget" water-resources infrastructure projects to the value of R9,04 billion were implemented.

The substantial restructuring of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, which is expected to be completed by 2010/2018, includes:

- establishing CMAs to perform water-resource management functions
- transferring water-service delivery and operations to WSAs.

As WSAs are now providing water services, the department's role is to:

- act as custodian of the country's water resources
- provide water-services policy and guidelines
- provide ongoing support to the water sector
- act as a water-sector regulator.

The department remains focused on the phased implementation of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), with a particular emphasis on implementing a new organisational structure, which includes:

- establishing the National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS), which will set out the procedures, guidelines and overall strategy for managing water resources
- developing and testing a strategy for compulsory water-use licensing to facilitate equitable access to water resources for historically disadvantaged individuals
- enhancing water-use efficiency
- ensuring compliance with dam-safety regulations and enhancing public safety at water-resource installations
- investigating and implementing appropriate institutional arrangements for the optimal management of the Working for Water (WfW) Programme
- building national capacity to monitor the state of water resources, so that accurate information is used in decision-making about the use and management of water resources
- creating the National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency (NWRIA) to manage and develop national infrastructure and which will incorporate the work of the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority.

Major dams of South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (106 m³)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongolo
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal
Theewaterskloof	480	Sonderend
Heyshope	451	Assegaai
Woodstock	380	Tugela
Loskop	361	Olifants
Grootdraai	354	Vaal
Kalkfontein	318	Riet
Goedertrouw	304	Mhlatuze
Albert Falls	288	Mgeni
Brandvlei	284	Brandvlei
Spioenkop	277	Tugela
Mthatha	253	Mthatha
Driekoppies	250	Lomati
Inanda	241	Mgeni
Hartbeespoort	212	Crocodile
Erfenis	207	Groot Vet
Rhenosterkop	204	Elands
Molatedi	22	Groot Marico
Ntshingwayo	198	Ngagane
Zaaihoek	192	Slang
Midmar	175	Mgeni

In accordance with the international best practice of decentralising and democratising water-resource management, the Inkomati CMA (ICMA) has been established. It is the first of 19 CMAs to be formed by government and is responsible for the protecting, conserving, developing and managing the water resources in South Africa at water management area (WMA) level.

The central objective of the ICMA is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development in South Africa.

Monitoring water resources

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs are monitored. The evaporation and rainfall station network comprises 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still in operation in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

A new initiative to monitor precipitation in mountainous areas has been launched. There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five stations are operational in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's website at *www.dwaf.gov.za*.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges is in operation to monitor rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP, initially known as the National Aquatic Ecosystem Biomonitoring Programme, is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems.

Until recently, the programme focused mainly on riverine ecosystems. The short name, River Health Programme (RHP), was adopted for this component of the NAEHMP. However, the original broader focus of the monitoring programme remains valid, namely, monitoring the ecological health of all aquatic ecosystems (estuarine and riverine ecosystems) managed by the department.

The NAEHMP focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

Rand Water's Water Wise Education Team (WWET) took home the International Water Association's Marketing and Communication Award at the gala dinner of the International Water Association World Water Congress, held in Vienna, Austria, in September 2008. The award is aimed at raising awareness among water utilities around the world of the importance of establishing professional and effective communication with users of water and about water services.

Over the past 11 years, Water Wise has established itself as a trusted source of educational material and fun workshops aimed at exposing youth to the meaning and importance of being "water wise". With four dedicated educational centres situated between Pretoria in the north and Vereeniging in the south, the programme has succeeded in reaching thousands of schoolchildren in Gauteng.

The year 2008 was declared the International Year of Sanitation by the United Nations. This saw South Africa engaging in a number of high-level initiatives to draw attention to issues of sanitation in this country and on the continent. Among these was the hosting of the Africa Sanitation Conference in Durban in February 2008 and the African Union Heads of State Summit in Sharm el Sheik, Egypt, in June 2008, where water and sanitation issues featured high on the agenda. These meetings produced ground-breaking declarations and decisions aiming to improve the lives of citizens.

These organisms' biological communities integrate, respond to and reflect the effects of chemical and physical disturbances that occur in aquatic ecosystems over extended periods, and provide a direct, holistic and integrated measure of the ecological integrity of a river.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit a watercourse, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role-players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP, and in particular the RHP, is regarded as the "flagship" for water-resource quality monitoring in South Africa. Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. Based on the report produced in 2002, the main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is due to high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly due to poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are especially prone to cholera outbreaks.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is designing water-resource monitoring programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of South African water resources. The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme also reports on the status of DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

Drinking water-quality management is the responsibility of municipalities, and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has an oversight and regulatory role on the quality of tap water. Over the past few years, the department has implemented a countrywide system to assist with the overall management of drinking-water quality. On average, 3 000 samples are taken nationwide from water supply systems, and, by March 2008, more than 94% of the analyses complied with the health aspects of the national standard for drinking-water quality. The quality of drinking water from taps is one of the best in the world.

The department has introduced the electronic Water Quality Management System to WSAs.

Through the department's efforts alongside the Institute of Municipal Engineers and with the support of the South African Local Government Association (Salga), a challenging two-year project to monitor all 169 WSAs on their drinking-water quality has been successfully put in place. By June 2008, close to 90% of all WSAs submitted their drinking-water data on a timeous and ongoing basis. The result was an overall improvement in the quality of drinking water and the creation of an enabling environment to ensure the effective management of drinking water. Of those municipalities on the system, close to 95% reported that their water quality complied with the national drinking water standard.

Another international obligation is reporting on chemical water quality through the Global Environmental Monitoring System's Water Programme. The department started bringing the aspect of voluntary monitoring in the form of the adopt-a-river initiative.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG, a conditional grant from national government to local government to support investment in basic municipal infrastructure to eradicate backlogs, was implemented in April 2004.

The purpose of the MIG is to facilitate and ensure more effective and integrated service delivery by local government and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, working with the Department of Provincial and Local Government in seeking to ensure that funds are made available. (See Chapter 9: *Government system*.)

The department's support to municipalities comprises:

- planning support regarding integrated development plans (IDPs) and water-services development plans (WSDPs)
- monitoring the water-purification and wastewater treatment works' operations
- facilitating project selection, feasibility studies and service-level options
- supporting the implementation of a tariff structure and the FBW Policy

National Water Week is celebrated annually and hosted by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

During National Water Week, the department aims to:

- raise awareness around the need to protect and conserve the country's water resources
- highlight the contribution that water makes to social and economic development
- highlight the role it plays in sustaining all forms of life in South Africa and the linkages between water services, water-resource management, water-quality management and water conservation and water-demand management.

- supporting the Section 78 process (division of powers and functions for water services between district and local municipalities) and selecting water-services providers
- training councillors and officials in water-services and water-demand management
- mobilising resources to support municipalities.

Policy and legislation

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and the Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment. The two Acts that enable government to fulfil these rights through the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry are the:

- Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), which created a regulatory framework within which water services could be provided. Schedule Four of the Constitution vests the responsibility for water and sanitation services in local government. National government, however, is responsible for the regulatory function.
- National Water Act, 1998, which aims to ensure that water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable manner, for the benefit of everyone in South Africa.

National Water Act, 1998

The Act provides for:

- integrated management and sustainable use of surface water and groundwater
- devolution of surface and groundwater to catchment and local level
- government to play a support role through functions such as promoting awareness, providing information and building capacity.

The Act aims to control the use of water resources, protect them from being impacted on or exploited and polluted, and ensure that every person has equitable access to them.

The Act gives the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry the tools to gather the information it needs to optimally manage the country's water resources. The registration of water use is one of these tools.

All water users instructed to register have the statutory obligation to do so. There are strict penalties, prescribed in the Act, for those who do not comply.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service-provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, must register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses of water that must be registered include:

- Diversion of rivers and streams.
- Discharge of waste or water containing waste.
- Storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose (including irrigation, domestic supply, industrial use, mining, aquaculture, fishing, water sport, aesthetic value, gardening, landscaping, golfing, etc.) from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m^3, or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission.
- Stream-flow reduction activities (afforestation). All afforestation for commercial purposes, including communal forestry for commercial gain, that took place prior to 1972, must be registered. Forest owners who have permits issued under forestry legislation need not register.
- Local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works.
- Controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

In March 2008, the European Union (EU) pledged R1,3 billion in support of a South African government programme that will harness the concept of water for growth and development.

The third phase of the Masibambane Water-Sector Support Programme will benefit from a R1,2-billion grant to be used for programme initiatives under the overarching theme of *Water for Growth and Development*. A total of R61 million will be used in funding international technical support.

Masibambane was first developed in 2001. Some of its achievements include the deployment of skilled professionals at municipal level to support local government, as well as service-delivery interventions that take issues such as gender and the environment into consideration.

The EU has contributed R1,5 billion to the programme since its inception.

The implementation of the National Pricing Strategy for Raw Water began in 2002 to ensure that, as far as possible, the costs of the management of water resources and water-supply infrastructure are borne by water users.

The majority of water users pay the water-resource charge or cost for which they are billed. However, underrecovery of costs remains considerable.

Action has been taken against a number of illegal water users across South Africa in response to growing concern about an apparent increase in the rate of illegal water use in some catchment areas.

National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS describes how the water resources of South Africa will be protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in accordance with the requirements of the National Water Policy and the National Water Act, 1998.

Through the NWRS, South Africa reached one of the first recommendations of the Johannesburg Plan of Action (emanating from the World Summit on Sustainable Development) to develop national water-resource management plans.

The strategy contains estimates of present and future water availability and water requirements. It also proposes actions to be taken to achieve a sustainable balance between water availability and requirements. This is necessary to provide sufficient water, which is essential for human life, for participation in economic activity and for the progressive re-allocation of water to sectors of society that were previously excluded.

A vital element of the NWRS is the progressive decentralisation of the responsibility and authority for water-resource management to CMAs and, at a local level, to WUAs. These institutions, representing water users and other stakeholders, will facilitate effective participation in water-resource management in their areas. They will also enable the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry to move from its present multiple roles as operator, developer and regulator to become the sector leader, policy-maker, regulator and monitor.

The department will lead the creation of new institutions over a number of years, and will support and guide them in executing their tasks.

While the actions include the construction of new infrastructure such as dams, pumping stations and pipelines to meet increasing water demands, attention is mainly given to arrangements for the careful management, use and protection of water resources.

Water Services Act, 1997

The Act aims to:

- set out the rights of consumers, and the rights and duties of those responsible for providing water services
- provide for the right of access to basic water supply, and the right to basic sanitation necessary to secure sufficient water and an environment not harmful to human health or well-being
- allow the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry to set national standards (including norms and standards for tariffs) to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable water services
- promote the effective and sustainable use of financial and natural resources
- establish effective and financially viable statutory institutions to assist local government to fulfil its obligations
- ensure the production by WSAs of WSDPs required by municipal legislation within the framework of IDPs
- provide a comprehensive framework for the oversight and regulation of water boards under the authority of the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry
- provide a framework for the collection and publication of information about water services.

Strategic Framework for Water Services (SFWS)

In 1994, the *White Paper on Community Water Supply and Sanitation* played a key part in creating an enabling policy framework for the delivery of water and sanitation services. However, since 1999, local government's responsibilities have changed significantly and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has transformed from being an implementer to a regulator. This necessitated the revision of the policy, which culminated in the SFWS.

The framework provides a comprehensive policy summary regarding the total water services sector in South Africa, and sets out the vision, targets and policy for the next 10 years. The key challenges are to address prevailing inequality and provide basic services, higher levels of service and sustainable service, including institutional sustainability.

In October 2003, following the approval of the SFWS, the department and Salga signed a joint declaration committing both parties to give effect to the SFWS.

The key policy themes of the SFWS are:

- eliminating the backlog in basic service provision
- providing higher levels of service
- providing free basic services (water supply and sanitation)
- credit control
- institutional reform of water-services providers
- a decentralised fiscal framework
- a long-term vision for regulation.

Existing policies on free basic services, the provision of basic household sanitation and the transfers of infrastructure from national to local government aim to ensure that:

- everyone in South Africa who has access to a functioning basic water supply is provided with FBW
- everyone who has access to a functioning basic sanitation facility is provided with free basic sanitation by 2010
- everyone has access to a functioning basic sanitation facility supply by 2010
- all assets of water-services schemes are transferred from the department to WSAs.

More detailed strategies to give effect to the implementation of the SFWS are the:

- Institutional Reform Strategy
- Regulatory Strategy
- Legislative Review (amendments to the Water Services Act, 1997)
- Sanitation Strategy
- Free Basic Services Strategy
- Transfer Strategy (of infrastructure assets to local government).

Water-resource management

Water-resource management in South Africa has undergone major revision along with the reform of water policy and legislation. The National Water Act, 1998 provides the principles for water-resource management. This policy aims to manage water resources in an integrated manner to ensure a healthy and stable water-resource base to meet the current and future needs of South Africa.

Water Allocation Reform (War) Programme

The War Programme is a proactive approach towards redressing race and gender inequities regarding water use – where "water use" refers to promoting access to water for productive purposes (and not to the provision of basic water services).

This includes actions ranging from promoting applications from historically disadvantaged individuals to supporting the licence-evaluation process to promote equity, as well as implementing the compulsory licensing process itself. Through this programme, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is developing and overseeing the implementation of frameworks (policies, strategies, guidelines and procedures) for compulsory licensing, and the allocation of water between and among users.

Awareness material on the programme has been developed and is available in the appropriate official languages where the programme is being implemented. The material includes pamphlets on compulsory licensing and understanding the verification and validation of water use, and a booklet on the productive use of water.

A toolkit of methodologies in support of War has also been developed. The toolkit uses the position paper as its basis, and outlines practical implementation methods that promote the goals of the War Programme. The department's intention is to speed up the process and to improve the efficiency with which licences are evaluated within the Batho Pele prescripts.

As key role-players in the programme, provincial and local governments, through their provincial growth and development plans (PGDPs) and IDPs, are central to informing, and being informed by, the way water allocations are made in their areas of jurisdiction. The awareness material and toolkit assist municipalities in determining water requirements in IDPs – in terms of WSDPs, and other plans, for example local economic development, land use, agriculture and the environment.

The Olifants Basin is one of the pilot projects of the War Programme, and aims to re-allocate water to deal with the imbalances of the past.

One of the major challenges for the Olifants Basin is the issue of water pollution owing to mining activities, power generation and other land-use activities. These challenges are worsened by limited capacity to monitor and intervene.

Water-management institutions

The National Water Act, 1998 sets the framework for the management of South Africa's water resources. This framework provides for the establishment of water-management institutions, which include CMAs and WUAs.

Catchment-management agencies

CMAs aim to ensure equitable, efficient and sustainable water-resource management. They are required to establish governing boards, which are responsible for integrated water-resource management and developing a catchment-management strategy.

The boards have to represent the various sectors of society within their specific water-management areas and will consist of water users, potential water users, local and provincial government and environmental interest groups.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry aims to establish CMAs in South Africa's water-management areas, as required by the National Water Act, 1998.

The department will devolve administration to local water users and communities, accompanied by vigorous capacity-building, so that historically excluded communities can participate in water management.

Internal strategic perspectives have been developed for the WMAs.

These are the forerunners of the catchment-management strategies that will be prepared by the CMAs when they are established. They describe the water availability and water requirements in each area, and outline the approaches to be adopted for managing water resources. In particular, they provide general principles for the CMAs to authorise water use.

Water-related research

Being a water-stressed country, South Africa progressively needs to find innovative ways of managing water resources to ensure that the basic needs of its citizens are met, that social and economic development is not restricted by a lack of or a poor quality of water, and that sustainability of water resources and water-dependent ecosystems is achieved.

As reflected in the Water Research Commission's (WRC) mission and its various undertakings, the WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge.

It is a networking organisation linking the nation and working through partnerships. The organisation continuously provides novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the local and international community.

The WRC continues to play the leading role in building a sustainable water-related knowledge base in South Africa by:

- investing in water research and development
- building sustainable and appropriate capacity
- developing skills for the water sector
- being adept in forming strategic partnerships to achieve objectives more effectively while making optimal use of the latest global information and knowledge and other technologies available.

The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the establishment of the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

To ensure that research results are relevant to the broader objectives of water-resource management, the applicability of research in each key strategic area is maximised by addressing the relationships between water and society, the economy, health, and the environment.

The WRC's key objective is supporting the development of human resources in the water sector. Involvement in research is recognised as an important vehicle for building and developing expertise among water-resource practitioners.

South Africa won an international award for its electronic water-management system in September 2008.

The award-winning project is a software system, which 95% of municipalities use to submit data on the quality of drinking water. The 2008 International Water Association's Global Operations/Management Award was won jointly by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, the Institution of Municipal Engineering of South Africa and water-engineering company Emanti Management.

Every research project is required to incorporate a strong element of capacity-building, especially among previously disadvantaged individuals.

The Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation are partners with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and the WRC in ensuring that approaches to water research are consistent with South Africa's broad policy on science and innovation.

Water boards

Water boards have been established as service-providers that report to the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry. The boards manage water services in their supply areas and provide potable water at cost-effective prices.

These water boards include: Albany Coast Water, Ikangala Water, Overberg Water, Amatola Water, Lepelle Northern Water, Pelladrift Water, Bloem Water, Magalies Water, Rand Water, Botshelo Water, Mhlathuze Water, Sedibeng Water, Bushbuckridge Water, Namakwa Water and Umgeni Water.

The impact of their financial performance on the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has been limited. Apart from providing seed funding to some of the newly formed water boards, and providing operating subsidies where they have undertaken specific functions on behalf of the department, the department has only had to provide financial assistance in exceptional circumstances.

Water-user associations

A WUA is a co-operative association of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities for their mutual benefit. The specific nature of the service that a WUA provides differs from case to case. A WUA serves its members and its design conforms to its members' specifications.

A WUA may be established for a range of activities, including stream-flow reduction, treatment of effluent and waste and its disposal and control of the use of water for recreational and/or environmental purposes. Upon establishment, a WUA carries out its principal functions as contained in its constitution.

Alongside its principal functions, a WUA may have a range of other functions that affect its structure and management. In terms of the National Water Act, 1998, such functions may be performed only if they do not limit the capacity to perform the organisation's principal functions or financially prejudice the institution and its members.

A common example of such an ancillary function is the provision of management services and training to water-services institutions and rural communities.

Working for Water (WfW) Programme

Invasive alien species are causing billions of rands of damage to South Africa's economy every year, and are one of the biggest threats to the country's biological biodiversity.

Invasive alien species are plants, animals and microbes that are introduced into countries, and then out-compete the indigenous species.

Invasive alien plants (IAPs) pose a threat not only to South Africa's biological diversity, but also to water security, the ecological functioning of natural systems and the productive use of land.

They intensify the impact of fires and floods and increase soil erosion. IAPs can divert enormous amounts of water from more productive uses and invasive aquatic plants, such as the water hyacinth, agriculture, fisheries, transport, recreation and water supply.

It is estimated that between 6% and 7% of South Africa's annual water run-off is being consumed by IAPs.

Of the estimated 9 000 plants introduced to this country, 198 are classified as being invasive. It is estimated that these plants cover about 10% of the country and the problem is growing at an exponential rate.

The fight against IAPs is spearheaded by the WfW Programme, which is administered through the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. This programme works in partnership with local

October 2008 saw the launch of the annual Weed Buster Week Campaign, which aims to highlight the challenges South Africa faces in trying to manage and contain the spread of invasive alien plants and the work that is being done in the Working for Water (WfW) Programme to address these challenges and create employment opportunities.

The campaign involves a number of government departments and is led by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry through the WfW Programme.

The WFW Programme was started in 1995 through a grant of R25 million from the then Reconstruction and Development Programme. It has grown over the past 14 years and during 2007/08 created 30 210 jobs, cleared 140 000 hectares (ha) of new areas and provided almost 550 000 ha of follow-up treatment on areas previously cleared.

communities, to whom it provides jobs, and also with government departments, including the departments of environmental affairs and tourism, agriculture, and trade and industry; provincial departments of agriculture, conservation and environment; research foundations; and private companies.

Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million m^3 per anum)		
Water management	**Natural mean annual run-off(1)**	**Ecological reserve(1,2)**
Limpopo	985	156
Luvuvhu/Letaba	1185	224
Crocodile West and Marico	855	165
Olifants	2042	460
Inkomati (3)	3539	1008
Usutu to Mhlatuze (4)	4780	1192
Thukela	3799	859
Upper Vaal	2423	299
Middle Vaal	888	109
Lower Vaal	368	48
Mvoti to Umzimkulu	4798	1160
Mzimvubu to Keiskamma	7241	1122
Upper Orange	6981	1349
Lower Orange (5)	502	69
Fish to Tsitsikamma	2154	243
Gouritz	1679	325
Olifants/Doring	1108	156
Breede	2472	384
Berg	1429	217
Total	49228	9500

1) Quantities refer to the water-management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water-management area).
2) Total volume given, based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.
3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million m^3/a).
4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million m^3/a).
5) Includes contributions from Sengu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4 765 billion m^3/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

WfW runs over 300 projects across South Africa. Scientists and field workers use a range of methods to control IAPs. These include:

- Mechanical methods: Felling, removing or burning invading alien plants.
- Chemical methods: Using environmentally safe herbicides.
- Biological control: Using species-specific insects and diseases from the IAP's country of origin. Some 76 biocontrol agents have been released in South Africa against 40 weed species.
- Integrated control: Combinations of the above three approaches. An integrated approach is required to prevent enormous impacts.

The core business of the programme is to contribute to the sustainable prevention and control of IAPs, thereby optimising conservation and the use of natural resources. In doing so, it addresses poverty relief and promotes economic empowerment and transformation within a public-works framework.

WfW is recognised internationally as one of the most effective programmes for addressing the problem of IAPs, combining environmental issues with social-development objectives.

Flood and drought management

The South African Disaster-Management Policy and ensuing legislation brought about a major shift in focus from reactive to preventative and mitigative disaster management.

From a flood-management perspective, the South African focus has shifted from primarily structural to non-structural, accentuating the value of, for example, floodplain zoning and flood warnings.

Draft regulations for support to resource-poor farmers were published, and support to these farmers was expected to be increased during 2008/09.

Dams and water schemes

The central objective of managing water resources is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development.

Dams and water schemes form an integral component of the strategy to meet these objectives. The NWRS provides details on possible major water schemes to be developed in the next 25 years, amounting to about R21 billion at 2004 price levels.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry follows an integrated approach to managing South

Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes need to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental-impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. The guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must be followed.

The department is making progress in the development of new infrastructure. In this respect, the Berg River Water Project Supplement Scheme (Berg River Dam) had been completed and water was impounded. This dam increased the water supply to the City of Cape Town by 18%.

The construction of the De Hoop Dam in Limpopo aims to unlock the mineral wealth in the Middle Olifants River catchments while bringing relief to thousands of people who do not have safe and reliable water sources.

Project Lima, a new pumped storage scheme, which is part of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project (phase two: De Hoop Dam) aims to provide an additional 1 500 megawatt of electricity to the national grid, and water to about 800 000 people on the Nebo Plateau in the Greater Sekhukhune District Municipality.

In May 2008, a Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) was signed between the department, individual mines and the Joint Water Forum on water-supply agreements with the mines. The MoA will provide the necessary secured revenue flow to make this project bankable for private-sector finance for the phases after the De Hoop Dam.

Other important water-resource infrastructure under construction are the Hluhluwe, Inyaka and Nandoni government water works, which will provide 2,4 million people with drinking water in rural communities in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. Furthermore, the water pipeline from the Vaal Dam to Secunda, known commonly as the Vaal River Eastern Subsystem Augmentation Project (Vresap), commenced with the delivery of water in October 2008.

Other infrastructure projects that commenced in 2008 include:

- the Mdloti River Development Project
- raising of the Hazelmere Dam
- the Komati Abstraction Works and Pipeline for water supply to Eskom's Duvha Power Station
- the Mooi-Mgeni System, building of the Spring Grove Dam, and the augmentation of water supply to the Ethekweni Metro-Municipality.

The department's infrastructure-development programme has a multipronged objective. While it is building big infrastructure to improve water resources, it is also creating economic opportunities. For example, during the construction of the De Hoop Dam, about 460 jobs were created for historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs) living in the area. About 600 jobs were generated for the local community around the Berg Water Project, which had more than a 95% HDI labour component. On the Vresap, an HDI labour target of 75% was exceeded by 15%.

In 2008, R310 million was spent on the Dam Rehabilitation Project; and a further R1 billion is expected to be spent on this programme during the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period.

The rehabilitation of the Vlakfontein Canal is proceeding well at a cost of R300 million. This canal is supplying water to Eskom's Thuthuka Power Station.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two thirds of South Africa's surface area are largely dependent on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also extremely important. Through government's commitment to meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country,

i

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry established the Water and Forestry Academy with an intake of 122 graduates, who will benefit from workplace experience, and will register as professional engineers or technicians. The department, in partnership with nine Higher Education institutions and two professional bodies, has awarded 105 bursaries to students studying towards qualifications in the technical fields.

because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale-user situation.

Groundwater also contributes a considerable portion to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

Regional and international co-operation and initiatives

South Africa has signed co-operative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP)
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These co-operative agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa is increasingly seen as a leader in addressing the pressing water and sanitation challenges faced by the poor and by people living in rural areas. This view was supported during the launch of the 2006 United Nations (UN) Development Programme's *Human Development Report* in the Western Cape.

In addition to participating in the African Ministers' Council on Water, South Africa has been active in watercourse commissions that were established to manage the rivers it shares with Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia, Mozambique, Botswana and Zimbabwe.

In December 2008, Cabinet approved the second phase of the LHWP. Construction of a 2,3 million m^3 dam will start from 2011 in the Maluti mountains. The LHWP currently supplies about 46 million m^3 water a year. The second phase will raise this to 70 million m^3.

Forestry

Provincial and local government plays a crucial role in the national forestry agenda. Many provinces and municipalities are aware of the benefits of forestry, not just for the social and aesthetic benefits which trees and forests provide but more importantly for the livelihood support and economic benefits they provide.

In terms of the economic growth and development which forestry offers, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process, which involves support from a number of other provincial departments.

These new forestry areas will be singularly important in transforming and growing the forestry sector and, as such, afforestation forms an important part of the Forestry Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter, which was signed in May 2008. The vision of the charter is that of:

- an inclusive and equitable forestry sector, in which black women and men fully participate
- a forestry sector that is characterised by sustainable use of resources, sustainable growth, international competitiveness and profitability for all its participants
- a forestry sector that contributes meaningfully to poverty eradication, job creation, rural development and economic value-adding activities in the country.

The department has been working closely with other departments on the process of reducing the administrative burden on forestry development. Applicants for afforestation have been increasing rapidly. Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha per year for the next 10 years to get a net increase in forestry of about 10 000 ha per year.

The department has almost halved the original time of nearly 18 months to process a licence application, and has plans in place to further reduce this timeframe. It also plans to use the progressive provisions of the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), to provide direct support to communities in this and other forest-enterprise areas. Strategic interventions such as the establishment of the special-purpose vehicle AsgiSA Eastern Cape (Pty) Limited will assist in driving the implementation of the forestry programme in these key areas.

Afforestation will take place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity. The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants. All these will lead to broad economic growth. For example, through this afforestation an additional R500 million per year could be generated in plantations.

The Chief Directorate: Forestry has developed and adopted a new vision for forestry. South Africa needs to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Forestry encourages growth and development of the First Economy, thereby increasing its potential to create jobs. Following a published supply-and-demand study on softwood sawlogs in South Africa, the department commissioned a similar study for roundwood. The objective of this report was to establish the supply and demand at regional and national levels.

The forestry sector is an important contributor to gross domestic product and employment. It employs about 170 000 people (107 000 in forestry operations and a further 63 000 in downstream processing plants) and contributes almost R16 billion annually to the South African economy. The impact of the sector is felt particularly in rural areas and there is significant scope for this sector to expand and thereby contribute towards uplifting those in the Second Economy.

Over the past few years, much work has been done in the forestry sector to improve yields, restructure institutions, provide community access and redefine government's role. The Forestry BBBEE Charter recognises the link between the transformation and growth of the sector. Through the strategic environmental assessments that have been conducted, about 100 000 ha of new commercial forests can be planted over the next 10 years.

The real yellowwood is South Africa's national tree. There are different species of yellowwood trees that can grow higher than 40 m with a girth of 8 m, and can live for up to 800 years.

The Big Tree near the Storms River Bridge (46 m), the King Edward VII in the Knysna Forest (46 m) and the Eastern Monarch in the Amatola mountains (44 m) are the best-known giants.

The forestry programme also encompasses expanded greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on firefighting programmes (for example, the Working on Fire Programme) and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations (FPAs).

Forestry supports small growers and facilitates new afforestation, especially in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Growing trees in these areas will add to the economy, and will provide employment and entrepreneurial opportunities to local people.

Fruit trees have multiple purposes: they help clean the air, reduce heat, provide nutrition and support good mental health and well-being.

The department has been involved in planning for the expansion of forest areas in the Eastern Cape, where most forestry opportunities are available and where the local rural economy needs stimulation. A strategic environmental assessment conducted in the Eastern Cape has identified areas for new afforestation, which are being pursued.

It is estimated that at least an initial 30 000 ha of land could be afforested and that this could be increased to more than 150 000 ha of land once the project gains momentum. The areas could accommodate small growers and community afforestation, if correctly planned, and could expand the broad base of black people engaged in forestry. In KwaZulu-Natal, options for new afforestation also exist, and conservative estimates show that between 30 000 ha and 40 000 ha are suitable for this purpose. This will create substantial employment opportunities.

This view is expressed in the *Genesis Report*, which looked at the costs and benefits of the forest sector. The report was commissioned by the Department of Trade and Industry. Following this report, government has identified forestry as one of seven "strategic industries" that was included in a comprehensive Industrial Development Strategy. The Department of Trade and Industry and the industry have produced the Forest Sector Growth and Development Strategy as part of this initiative.

Indigenous forests are indispensable to the country's heritage, beauty, wildlife and environment, while commercial forests provide jobs and economic opportunities for many people, especially in rural areas. Forestry represents a substantial investment in the country and plays an important role in the Integrated Rural Development Programme.

Plantations cover about 1,3 million ha of South Africa. Over 80% of them are found in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. They produced almost 22 million m^3 (or 19,6 million tons [mt]) of commercial roundwood, worth R5,2 billion, according to a study conducted in 2006. They provide direct employment for about 107 056 people, of whom 67 556 are in formal employment, 30 000 are contract workers and 39 500 are small growers and their helpers.

Including the processed products, the total industry turnover was about R15,7 billion in 2006, including R7,4 billion worth of wood-pulp.

A pulp and paper log intake of about 17 million m^3; mining timber of 733 000 m^3; charcoal of 279 000 m^3; 4,7 million m^3 of sawlogs; and veneer logs and poles of about 286 000 m^3 were transferred to processing plants in 2006. The sales of timber from primary processors by volume in 2006 were as follows: sawn timber, 2,0 million m^3; pulp, 2 mt; mining timber, 461 000 t; panel products, 726 000 m^3; poles, 273 000 m^3; charcoal, 13 000 t; chips/mill residues about 6 mt; and firewood, 23 000 t.

Between 390 000 and 560 000 people depend on plantation forestry for their livelihoods, particularly in the rural areas.

About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species found in South Africa grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry plans to transfer the management and control of all state natural (indigenous) forests to other competent management agencies, primarily to provincial government departments or national and provincial conservation agencies.

This includes the official handover to South African National Parks (SANParks) of about 97 000 ha of state forest land in the southern Cape and Tsitsikamma areas. SANParks, as a conservation agency, will manage natural forests in terms of the provisions of the National Forests Act, 1998.

Progress was made in releasing state forest land that was no longer required for forestry purposes as part of the process to deproclaim state forests in mountain-catchment areas. The total area released in the Western Cape, Sederberg and De Mond areas comprised 146 888 ha. In the Eastern Cape, the transfer of uncontested natural forests has begun. Agreement has also been reached on the transfer of contested areas.

Forestry initiatives

National Arbor Week is celebrated annually at the beginning of September to encourage the greening of South Africa. Two different trees of the year are nominated annually: a common variety and a scarcer, possibly endangered, species. The 2008 common tree of the year was the common wild plum (*Harpephyllum caffrum*) and the rare tree was the bladder nut tree (*Diospyros whyteana*).

The aim of Arbor Week is to promote awareness of the need for planting and preserving indigenous trees throughout South Africa. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry to create a better life for all. The theme for 2008 was *Plant Trees – Save our Planet!*

The Arbor Week Campaign aims to:

- promote improved knowledge of trees, particularly indigenous trees, and their importance
- stress the necessity for everyone to contribute to the greening of South Africa by planting and caring for trees
- highlight the vital roles of trees in the natural environment
- contribute to the achievement of green, dignified and healthy environments in all parts of the country
- encourage the youth to participate in tree-planting activities and related environmental-education programmes.

It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development; community participation; poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry, thereby contributing towards growth, development and a better life for all. The target audience includes all South Africans but more specifically rural communities, municipalities and schools.

South Africa has a rich heritage of trees. The Champion Tree Project is aimed at identifying and protecting individual trees of national conservation importance under the National Forests Act, 1998. Trees can be nominated on the basis of their size, age, aesthetic value, cultural-historic value or importance for tourism. Only trees of national importance will be protected. In the long run, however, provincial and local authorities will be encouraged to develop their own local Champion Tree lists.

Individual and groups of trees were shortlisted as champion trees by a panel of experts from a list of proposed trees considered to be of national conservation importance and deserving national importance. Among the listed trees are:

- the famous Tsitsikamma big tree along the Garden Route
- the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay
- the Sagole baobab in Limpopo (one of the two largest trees in South Africa)
- camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

Guidelines have been developed for the use of these trees to ensure their continued economic and ecological benefits to South Africans.

The Champion Tree Project led to the discovery of exceptionally large trees. In Aderne Gardens in Cape Town, officials measured an enormous Indian rubber fig with a trunk circumference of more than 11 m and a crown diameter of more than 44 m.

Applying the international formula for tree size that combines height, trunk size and crown diameter, it was discovered that this tree has a size index similar to the Sagole baobab in Limpopo. This means that the title for largest tree in the country is now shared by two trees at opposite ends of South Africa, one an indigenous tree in the far north and the other an exotic tree in the far south.

Contributing to socio-economic reform and growth

Government recognises that BEE will not be effective if it does not have the support of the private sector.

The BBBEE Charter for the Forest Sector, launched in May 2008, will be instrumental in achieving the objectives of the scorecard as suggested by the Department of Trade and Industry.

Forestry enterprise development (FED) relates to the concept of using forests and forest-based resources as a vehicle for economic growth, employment and socio-economic upliftment that takes people from a subsistence livelihood system into a market economy. The concept is also central to the department's pro-poor agenda and a key component of BBBEE in the forestry sector.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry supports FED. This includes transferring state forests, developing an afforestation strategy for the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, and including forestry as a key sector in provincial growth and development plans.

The Directorate: Forestry Development supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff.

An estimated R2 million from the Community Facilitation Fund has been spent to support the establishment of projects.

Current projects include beekeeping, which is a partnership with the Agricultural Research Council, and establishing medicinal nurseries in partnership with various stakeholders.

Following restructuring, the commercial plantation forests of South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol) and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry were combined and packaged into five stand-alone special-purpose vehicles, operating as wholly owned subsidiaries of Safcol.

Following an in-depth review by the Department of Public Enterprises, in consultation with other government departments, Cabinet decided to dispose of the last remaining Safcol subsidiary, Komatiland Forests (KLF). KLF's commercial operations will be aligned with the requirements of improved industry structure and operation of the saw-log market, and ownership of KLF will be transferred to the private sector.

The Department of Public Enterprises will be responsible for ensuring clear guidelines regarding government's objectives and will empower the Safcol Board to implement Cabinet's decision. The goal will be to ensure that, in future, the value of state-owned forests will contribute optimally to government's objectives for the forestry, timber, pulp and paper sector.

South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol)

Safcol is a wholly owned state enterprise reporting to the Department of Public Enterprises. It was formed in 1992 and acquired the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's commercial forestry assets and related business in April 1993.

Since 1993, Safcol has played a leading role in the forestry industry, especially by introducing new forest engineering and sawmilling technology to the local industry. Safcol was also the leader in the introduction of forest certification in South Africa. Its operations in KwaZulu-Natal were the first in the local industry to be certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).

Four of the five forestry packages under Safcol have been privatised since 2001. Safcol holds a minority interest in each of the four privatised entities. These holdings are earmarked to be used mainly to benefit employees and communities.

The fifth package, KLF, is under privatisation. KLF owns and manages about 125 000 ha of plantation, which are managed primarily for the prime softwood saw log production. The plantations are located in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and

KwaZulu-Natal, with a sawmill which is situated in Limpopo.

Safcol also holds the majority of shares in a forestry operation in Mozambique, the *Indùstrias Florestais de Manica* operation, which manages about 20 000 ha of plantations.

Industry and exports

The industry was a net exporter of almost R2,4 billion worth of goods in 2007, of which more than 98% was in the form of converted value-added products.

The forest-product industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,48% to total exports and 1,74% to total imports in 2007. Capital investment in the industry amounted to some R37 billion in 2007.

The value of forest-product exports grew by 160% over the past decade, from R4,7 billion in 1997 to R12,2 billion in 2007. In real terms (taking inflation into account), this growth was 53% or a compounded real growth of 4,4% per year over that period. However, the net trade balance in foreign trade in forest products increased from 1997 by 51% in nominal terms (minus 11,3% in real terms) to R2,4 billion in 2007.

In 2007, paper products were the most important (R5 513 billion or 45% of the total), followed by pulp (R3 518 billion or 29%), solid-wood products (R2 836 billion or 23%) and other products (R320 million or 3%). Woodchip exports, which are exported mainly to Japan, accounted for 68% (R1 928 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the recent weakness of the Rand has had a positive effect on the Rand-value of forest-product exports during the past year, with the total value of exports in 2007 being R2 280 billion more than in the previous year and some R984 million or 8,8% higher than its previous peak in 2002. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities. The Chief Directorate: Forestry of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry promotes optimal development of forestry and arboriculture in South Africa.

The National Forests Advisory Council (NFAC) was established in terms of the National Forests Act, 1998. It advises the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry on all aspects of forestry in the country. The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management (SFM), and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests can be improved.

Achieving sustainable forest management

Apart from ecological considerations in determining where it is appropriate to grow trees, there are other ecological, social and economic considerations that must be addressed when growing trees.

These criteria, indicators and standards form the basis for monitoring the sustainability of forestry operations in commercial and natural forests. Managers and owners are required to report against these criteria, which also form useful guidelines for new entrants to the sector.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising SFM and is a world leader in forest certification. Over one million ha, or over 80% of the entire planted area of commercial forestry plantations in South Africa, is certified by the FSC and the ISO 14001 certification schemes as being sustainably managed. By March 2007, 1 555 901 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa was certified by the FSC, the second-largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil. There were no certified plantations in 1996.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are carried out.

There has also been a large increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This can be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably.

The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified. As part of its commitment to the practice of SFM, the forestry industry is also involved in the NFAC's Committee for SFM, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for SFM, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions.

The industry is also involved in an FSC national initiative, the result of which will be the acceptance and use by FSC auditors of criteria, indicators and standards for SFM which take into account local South African conditions.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape, previously managed by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. It is a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 reflects the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. This vision emphasises SFM, and explains how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Act sets out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree species. Some are threatened, and a total of 47 species is now protected under the Act. Protected trees may not be cut, damaged or sold without a licence. The listing of protected trees is not primarily aimed at preventing the use of such trees, but at ensuring sustainable use through licensing-control measures. A list of protected tree species is available on the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's website at *www.dwaf.gov.za*.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), bans open-air fires when the risk of veld blazes in an area is high. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs formed by landowners. It further obliges the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry to operate a national fire-rating system in consultation with the South African Weather Service (SAWS) and fire associations. The Act also allows the minister to impose minimum firefighting requirements on landowners.

Protection of life and property is a basic human need and the department has been moving ahead in implementing the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998. Owing to the high incidences of fires during extreme weather conditions, it is a priority for the department to ensure registration of FPAs. The department advised and assisted FPAs in compiling business plans, including the principles of risk assessment. The department plans to review FPAs' performance regularly. There is also ongoing awareness-raising and information-provision on policy matters.

The department's *Veldfire Bulletin* is produced quarterly. Special bulletins are also produced occasionally, depending on the need, such as the special *Veldfire Bulletin on FPAs*.

The National Fire Danger Rating System is an early warning system for veldfires. The SAWS operates the system and issues daily veldfire warnings as it does with other weather information. Warnings are communicated to FPAs, the departmental fire advisers, Disaster Management, Department of Provincial and Local Government and other role-players. It was expected to be implemented late in 2008. By June 2008, 20 FPAs had been established.

Indigenous forests

There are around 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

Natural forest cover is slow, which has led to the development of the commercial forest sector in South Africa over the last 100 years. Nonetheless, natural forests have continued to play a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food. An estimated 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

South Africa now has a detailed inventory of all its natural forests, which is used to accurately monitor changes in forest areas. The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry also completed a forest-type classification for natural forests, which are represented by 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System, completed for all forests in 2004, guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in areas of the production-management class. Harvesting is concentrated on overmature trees, with logs being sold by tender and/or on public auction. On average, 3 750 m^3 of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species).

Another valuable product of the indigenous forests of South Africa is the seven-week fern *(Rumohra adiantiformis)*, which is harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests.

The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

Woodlands can be defined as vegetation formation dominated by trees, but not to the extent that the canopies are continuous and overlapping. Woodlands cover 29 million ha, constituting 21% of land cover. This vegetation covers extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Woodlands have thousands of species (5 900 plants, 175 mammals, and 540 birds), of which the majority are used for one purpose or another.

Woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are, however, a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft-timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms, and form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual Marula-fruit *(Sclerocarya birrea)* harvest is worth some R1,1 million a year to rural communities.

Commercial forests

During the 1930s, government started establishing extensive plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities in a diversified economy during the depression. Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle trees.

By mid-2006, the private sector owned 978 300 ha (or 76%) of the total plantation area of 1 281 519 ha, as well as virtually all the processing plants in the country. The remaining 24% (303 219 ha) was under public ownership, although this figure includes four privatised Safcol packages. The extent of public ownership will decrease significantly because of restructuring.

In 2007, capital investment in these plantations stood at R18,6 billion, 53,2% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 21,7% was tied up in land, 15,8% in roads, 7,9% in fixed assets and 1,4% in machinery and equipment.

Plantation yields

Of the 1 281 519 ha of plantations in 2006, 54% were softwood species and 46% hardwood species. Some 38% of the plantation area was managed mainly for sawlog production, 55% for pulpwood and 4% for mining timber, while the balance of 3% was grown for the production of poles, matchwood (poplar) and other minor products. Plantation yields vary from an average of 16 m^3 per ha per year for softwood, to 21 m^3 per ha per year for eucalyptus and 10 m^3 per ha per year for wattle (timber and bark).

Likewise, the rotation ages vary from a maximum of 30 years in the case of pine sawlogs, to six to 10 years in the case of eucalyptus pulp and mining timber. Production from plantations amounted to almost 22 million m^3 (or 19,6 mt) in 2006.

Primary wood-processing

South Africa has 182 primary wood-processing plants, 177 of which are owned by the private sector and five of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, 99 are sawmills; 13 are mining-timber sawmills; 38 pole-treating plants; 22 pulp, paper and board mills; one match factory; and four charcoal plants. The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2006 was 23 million m^3 valued at R5,2 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R15 679 billion. Some R17,1 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R37 billion.

The pulp industry in South Africa is dominated by two main pulp-and-paper manufacturing companies, Sappi and Mondi. They rank among the largest in the southern hemisphere, own assets in many parts of the world, and are internationally listed.

The saw-milling industry produces sawn timber, which is used in producing solid-wood products, such as lumber for roof trusses, flooring, etc., and consumer products, such as furniture. The furniture industry consumes about 315 000 m^3 of mainly industrial timber.

A large number of companies operate in this sector, with the five biggest companies contributing 51% of total production. Some 49% of total sawn timber is produced in Mpumalanga.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry-research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The priority fields of research include tree-breeding through applied silviculture, climate and soils, environmental impact and management solutions, forest biology, hydrology and forest protection.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role in terms of species protection.

The total annual forest-sector research and development investment in South Africa is approximately R163 million, more than 80% of which is funded by the commercial forest industry.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines. The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Forest Industries Education and Training Authority (Fieta) is, among other things, responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards. It also manages the distribution of training grants to employers and to Fieta-sponsored projects which will help meet the goals of the National Skills Development Strategy within the sector.

Over the past two years, the department, together with Fieta, has been offering bursaries to students who choose to study in the forestry field.

Community forestry

The *White Paper on Sustainable Forest Development* in South Africa states that community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to favour local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals. Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory Forest Management (PFM) of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the SFM of South African forests.

Elements of PFM were initially developed for indigenous state forests. However, the aim is to use PFM as an approach to managing all forest types where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to a healthy and sustainable quality of life for all, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

Since its inception in 1990, the FTFA has developed, managed and promoted numerous sustainable greening programmes, including land-use management and food security through permaculture.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors, and civil society.

The FTFA attempts to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The Urban Greening Fund is managed by the FTFA, the departments of water affairs and forestry and agriculture, and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management. It was set up with donor funds, which included R1,2 million from the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans to create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Acknowledgements

Business Report
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2008, published by National Treasury
Forestry South Africa
South African Forestry Company Limited
Water Research Commission
www.csir.co.za
www.dwaf.gov.za
www.forestry.co.za
www.gov.za
www.trees.org.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Draft Key Issues Paper on Forestry and Poverty in South Africa, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2005.
Ferns, Foliage and the Foliage Industry; A Sub-Sector Analysis, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2003.
Genesis Analytics, the Contribution, Costs and Development Opportunities for the Forestry, Timber, Pulp and Paper Industries in South Africa, 2005.
Lawes, M. *et al*. eds. *Indigenous Forests and Woodlands in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.
Manufactured Timber Products: A Sub-Sector Analysis, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2003.
Pakenham, T. *Remarkable Baobab*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2004.
Study of Supply and Demand of Industrial Roundwood in South Africa, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2005.
Systematic Conservation Planning for the Forest Biome of South Africa, October, 2005.

Abbreviations

A

AADP	African Agricultural Development Programme
AAGS	Association of African Geological Surveys
AAIICT	African Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AAP	Animal and Aquaculture Production
AAPS	Animal and Aquaculture Production Systems
AARTO	Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences
ABC	Agricultural Business Chamber
ABC	Audit Bureau of Circulations
Abet	Adult Basic Education and Training
Absa	Amalgamated Banks of South Africa
AC	Advisory Committee
ACAP	Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels
ACEP	African Coelacanth Ecosystems Programme
ACE	Advanced Certificate in Education
ACP	African-Caribbean-Pacific
ACR	Army Conventional Reserve
ACS	Agricultural Credit Scheme
Acsa	Airports Company of South Africa
ACT	Arts and Culture Trust
ADB	African Development Bank
ADEA	Association for the Development of Education in Africa
ADS	Approved Destination Status
ADU	Animal Demography Unit
AEC	African Economic Community
AFB	Air Force Base
AFIS	Automated Fingerprint Information System
AFIS	Advanced Fires Information System
AFU	Asset Forfeiture Unit
Afur	African Forum for Utility Regulators
AG	Auditor-General
AG	Attorney-General
AGOA	African Growth and Opportunity Act
Agri BEE	Agri Black Economic Empowerment
Agri SA	Agri South Africa
AGIS	Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System
AHPCSA	Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa
AICs	African independent churches
Aida	Animal Identification Act
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
AIICT	Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AIP	Association of Independent Publishers
AIRCO	Association of Independent Record Companies of South Africa
Aisa	African Institute of International Affairs
ALC	African Laser Centre
Alsi	all-share index
ALTX	Alternative Exchange
AMCEN	African Ministerial Conference on the Environment
Amib	African Peace Mission in Burundi
Amis	African Union Mission in Sudan
AML/CFT	anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism
AMP	African Mining Partnership
AMPS	*All Media Products Survey*
AMTS	Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy
ANC	African National Congress
AP	Associated Press
Apis	Agricultural Products Inspection Services
APRM	African Peer Review Mechanism
APSD	African Public Service Day
APSW	African Public Service Week
ARC	Agricultural Research Council
ARC-GCI	ARC Grain Crops Institute
ARC-IAE	ARC Institure for Agricultural Engineering
ARC-IIC	ARC Institute for Industrial Crops
ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij	ARC Institute for Fruit, Vine and Wine
ARC-ISCW	ARC Institute for Soil, Climate and Water
ARC-ITSC	ARC Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops
ARC-LBD	ARC Livestock Business Division
ARC-OVI	ARC Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute
ARC-PPRI	ARC Plant Protection Research Institute
ARC-SGI	ARC Small Grain Institute
ARC-VOPI	ARC Roodeplaat Vegetable and Ornamental Plant Institute

ARDM	Agricultural Risk and Disaster Management
Aressa	Antarctic Research Strategy
Armscor	Armaments Corporation of South Africa
ART	antiretroviral treatment
ARV	antiretroviral
ASA	Advertising Standards Authority
Asean	Association of South-East Asian Nations
AsgiSA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa
ASIB	Aviation Safety Investigation Board
Asom	Association of Marketers
ASP	African Stockpile Programme
ASRDC	Agricultural and Sustainable Rural Development Committee
ATD	awaiting-trial detainee
ATM	African Traditional Medicine
ATM	AIDS, TB and Malaria
ATNS	Air-Traffic Navigation Service
ATP	Agritourism Programme
ATR	Army Territorial Reserve
ATU	African Telecommunications Union
AU	African Union
AUC	African Union Commission
AWCC	African West Coast Cable
AWCC	Association of Waterways Cruising Clubs
AWHF	African World Heritage Fund

B

B&Bs	bed-and-breakfast establishments
BA	British Airways
BAC	Business Against Crime
Basa	Business and Arts South Africa
BBBEE	Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment
bbls	barrels
BBSDP	Black Business Supplier Development Programme
BBWW	Boat-Based Whale Watching
BCLME	Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem
BEAC	*Banque d'Etats de l'Afrique Centrale*
BED	Business and Entrepreneurial Development
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
BEEAC	BEE Advisory Council
Benefit	Benguela Fisheries Interaction and Training
BER	Bureau for Economic Research
Besa	Bond Exchange of South Africa
BFI	Bridges to the Future Initiative
Biopad	Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development
Blindlib	South African Library for the Blind
Blind SA	Blind Workers' Organisation of South Africa
BLNS	Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland
BMCC	Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee
BNC	Binational Commission
BNG	Breaking New Ground
BoM	Buddyz on the Move
BPO	Business Process Outsourcing
BPO&O	Business Process Outsourcing and Offshoring
Brics	biotechnology regional innovation centres
BRT	Bus Rapid Transport
BSRP	Building for Sport and Recreation Project
Bt	billion tons
BTec	Bachelor's Degree in Technology
BTT	Board of Tariffs and Trade
BWC	Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention
BWIs	Bretton Woods Institutions

C

CAADP	Comprehensive African Agricultural Development Programme
CaBEERE	Capacity-Building Programme for Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency
CAD	computer-aided design
Cape	Cape Action for People and the Environment
CAR	Central African Republic
Cara	Criminal Asset Recovery Account
Caricom	Caribbean Community
CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
CAV	Centurion Aerospace Village
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CBE	Council for the Built Environment
CBNRM	Community-based Natural Resource Management
CBOs	community-based organisations
CBPP	lung-sickness in cattle
CBPWP	Community-Based Public Works Programme
CBRTA	Cross-Border Road Transport Agency
CC	Constitutional Court

CCA	Common Country Assessment
CCD	Convention to Combat Desertification
CCDI	Cape Craft and Design Institute
CCF	credit-card format
CCCF	Comprehensive Country Co-operation Framework
CCMA	Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
CCTV	closed-circuit television
CDA	Central Drug Authority
CDI	Co-operative Development Initiative
CDM	Clean Development Mechanism
CDWs	community development workers
CEE	Commission for Employment Equity
CEF	Central Energy Fund
CEIRD	centres of excellence in industrial research and development
CEM	Council of Education Ministers
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CESSM	Centre for Exercise Science and Sports Medicine
CF	Compensation Fund
CFCs	chlorofluorocarbons
CFG	Courier Freight Group
CFM	case-flow management
CGE	Commission on Gender Equality
CGS	Council for Geoscience
CHC	community health centres
CHE	Council on Higher Education
CHOGM	Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting
CHPC	Centre for High Performance Computing
CHW	Community Health Worker
CIDB	Construction Industry Development Board
CIDP	Construction Industry Development Programme
CIP	Critical Infrastructure Programme
Cipro	Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office
Cirad	French Agricultural Centre for International Development
CIS	Cadastral Information System
CIS	collective investment schemes
Cites	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
CJS	criminal justice system
ClaRA	Communal Land Rights Act
CMAs	catchment management agencies
CMCs	case management committees
CoEs	centres of excellence
Cofisa	Co-operation Framework on Innovation Systems between Finland and South Africa
Comsec	Electronic Communications Security (Pty)Ltd
CoP	Conference of the Parties
Cosse	SADC Committee of Stock Exchanges
CPA	comprehensive peace agreement
CPA	Cotonou Partnership Agreement
CPA	Community Press Association
CPA	Commercial Producers Association
CPD	Continuing Professional Development
CPF	Community Policing Forum
CPI	Consumer Price Index
CPIDP	Construction and Industry Development Programme
CPIX	consumer price index, excluding mortgage costs
CPOs	citizens post offices
CPP	Court Process Project
CPSI	Centre for Public Service Innovation
CRC	Criminal Record Centre
Create SA	Creative Education and Training Enterprise South Africa
Crew	Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers
CRLR	Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
CRUs	community residential units
CSCs	community service centres
CSD	Commission on Sustainable Development
CSD	Central Securities Depository
CSDPs	Competitive Supplier Development Programmes
CSG	Child-Support Grant
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
CSN	Community Services Network
CSP	Concentrating Solar Power
CSP	Customised Sector Programme
CSPBs	correctional supervision and parole boards
CSSDCA	Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Co-operation in Africa
CTB	Central Terminal Building
CTBF	Cape Town Book Fair
CWSS	Community Water Supply and Sanitation
CYFD	Child, Youth and Family Development

D

D&G	Democracy and Governance
DA	Democratic Alliance
Danida	Danish International Development Agency
DBSA	Development Bank of Southern Africa
DCOs	doping control officers

DCRS	Digital Count Recording System
DCT	Durban Container Terminal
DDT	dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane
Dexco	Departmental Executive Committee
DFIs	development finance institutions
DFID	Department for International Development
Dissa	Disability Sport South Africa
DIU	Departmental Investigation Unit
DLS	Denel Land Systems
DMO	Destination Marketing Organisation
DMS	Document Management System
DNA	Designated National Authority
DNR	Direct Normal Radiation
DNS	Digital Nervous System
Docex	Document Exchange
Dots	Directly Observed Treatment Short Course
DPCI	Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation
DPP	Director of Public Prosecutions
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DPRK	Democratic People's Republic of Korea
DCRS	Digital Court Recording System
DRS	Deeds Registration System
DSM	Demand-Side Management
DSO	Directorate: Special Operations
DVA	Domestic Violence Act

E

EAD	Elite Athlete with Disability
EAFM	Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management
EAP	Employee Assistance Programme
EASSy	Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System
EBITDA	Earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortisation
EC	European Commission
EC	Executive Council
ECs	Energy Champions
ECA	Electronic Communications Act
ECC	Employment Conditions Commission
ECD	Early Childhood Development
ECDP	Emerging Contractor Development Programme
Ecosocc	Economic, Social and Cultural Council
Ecowas	Economic Community of West African States
EDC	Energy Development Corporation
EDCCTP	European Developing Countries Clinical Trails Partnership
EDI	Electricity Distribution Industry
EDL	Essential Drug List
EEA	Employment of Educators Act
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EFA	Education For All
EFTA	European Free Trade Area
EIAs	environmental impact assessments
EIB	European Investment Bank
EIDD	Enterprise and Industry Development Division
EIP	Enterprise Investment Programme
EIPs	environmental implementation plans
Efta	European Free Trade Area
ELM	Entry Level Model
ELRC	Education Labour Relations Council
EMS	Emergency Medical Service
eNaTIS	Electronic National Traffic Information System
Enpat	National Environmental Potential Atlas
EPI	Expanded Programme on Immunisation
EPP	Executive Preparation Programme
EPRD	European Programme for Reconstruction and Development
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESDS	Employment and Skills Development Services
ESF	Equitable Shares Formula
ESI	Electricity Supply Industry
ETD	Education, Training and Development
ETEYA	Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Award
ETP	Eco-Technology Programme
ETQA	Education and Training Quality Assurance
EU	European Union

F

Fabi	Forestry Agricultural Biotechnology Institute
FAIS	financial advisory and intermediary services
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organisation
FAS	Financial Administration System
FAS	Foetal Alcohol Syndrome
FATF	Financial Action Task Force
FBOs	faith-based organisations
FBW	Free Basic Water
FCIS	foreign collective investment schemes
FCJ	Forum of Community Journalists
FCOs	Fishery-contol officers
FCTC	Framework Convention on Tobacco Control
FDF	Financial Disclosure Framework
FDI	foreign direct investment
FED	Forestry Enterprise Development
FET	Further Education and Training
FETC	Further Education and Training Certificate
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FIC	Financial Intelligence Centre

Fieta	Forest Industries Education and Training Authority
FIG	Foreign Investment Grant
FLISP	Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme
FM	Frequency Modulation
FMD	foot-and-mouth disease
FNB	First National Bank
FOCAC	Forum on China-Africa Co-operation
Fosad	Forum of South African Directors-General
FPA	Fire Protection Association
FPB	Film and Publication Board
FPEF	Fresh Produce Exporters' Forum
FPMC	National Food Pricing Monitoring Committee
FSB	Financial Services Board
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
FSL	Forensic Science Laboratory
FSPs	financial services-providers
FTA	free trade agreement
FTFA	Food and Trees for Africa
FTI	Foundation for Technological Innovation
FXI	Freedom of Expression Institute

G

G&A	Governance and Administration
Gaap	Generally Accepted Accounting Practice
GAW	Global Atmosphere Watch
GBADS	ground-based air defence systems
GBH	grievous bodily harm
GBIF	Global Biodiversity Information Facility
GCIS	Government Communication and Information System
GDP	gross domestic product
GDPR	gross domestic product per region
GDS	Growth and Development Summit
GEF	Global Environment Facility
Gems	Government Employees Medical Scheme
GEPF	Government Employees Pension Fund
GEOSS	Global Earth Observation System of Systems
GET	General Education and Training
GGP	gross geographic product
GGR	Gross Gambling Revenue
GHG	greenhouse gas
GIS	Geo-referenced Information System
GITO	Government Information Technology Officer
GKW	*German Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau*
GLTP	Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park
GMOs	genetically modified organisms
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPT	General Preferential Tariff
GPW	Government Printing Works
GSC	General Services Counter
GSP	Generalised System of Preferences
GSLWP	Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park
GTTP	Global Travel and Tourism Programme
GWh	gigawatt-hour
GWM&ES	government-wide monitoring and evaluation system

H

ha	hectare (s)
Hanis	Home Affairs National Identification System
HartRAO	Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
HCBC	home- and community-based care
HCE	Housing Consumer Education
HDIs	historically disadvantaged individuals
HDSA	historically disadvantaged South Africans
HDTV	high-definition television
HE	Higher Education
Hedcom	Heads of Education Departments Committee
HEQC	higher Education Quality Committee
Hess	high-Energy Stereoscopic System
HG	Higher Grade
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HIVOS	Humanist Institute for Development Co-operation
HLEG	High Level Expert Group
HMO	Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
HoDs	heads of departments
HPCSA	Health Professions Council of South Africa
HPP	High-Performance Programme
HR	human resources
HRD	human-resource development
HRDS	Human-Resource Development Strategy
HRM	human-resource management
HSGIC	Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee
HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council

I

IAAF	International Association of Athletics Federations
IAEA	International Atomic Energy Agency
IBA	Independent Broadcasting Authority
IBO	International Boxing Organisation
IBSA	India-Brazil-South Africa
ICA	Infrastructure Consortium for Africa
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
Icasa	Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICC	International Chamber of Commerce
ICC	International Criminal Court
ICCP	Information Computer and Communications Policy
ICD	Independent Complaints Directorate
ICGEB	International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology
ICSU	International Council for Science
ICT	information and communications technology
ICV	infantry combat vehicle
ID	identity document
Idasa	Institute for Democracy in South Africa
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
IDMT	Interdepartmental Management Team
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IDT	Independent Development Trust
IDZ	Industrial Development Zone
IEC	Independent Electoral Commission
IECs	integrated energy centres
IEP	Integrated Energy Planning
IF	Innovation Fund
IFACCA	International Federation of Arts Councils and Culture Agencies
IFAP	International Federation of Agricultural Producers
IFCC	International Fellowship of Christian Churches
IFP	Inkatha Freedom Party
IFSNP	Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme
IGR	intergovernmental relations
IICPA	International Corrections and Prisons Associations
IIC	International Investment Council
IJS	integrated justice system
IKS	indigenous knowledge system
ILS	instrument landing system
IMC	International Marketing Council
IMCI	Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses
IMDP	Integrated Management Development Programme
IMF	International Monetary Fund
Impact	International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism
IMS	Integrated Manufacturing Strategy
Inep	Integrated National Electrification Programme
INP	Integrated Nutrition Programme
IOC	International Olympic Committee
IOR-ARC	Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Co-operation
IOR	Indian Ocean Rim
IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
IPC	International Paralympic Committee
IPCA	International Prison Chaplaincy Association
IPP	Independent Power Producer
IPPC	International Plant Protection Convention
IRPS	International Relations, Peace and Security
IRPTN	Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network
IRWH	Infield Rainwater Harvesting
ISAD	National Information Society and Development
ISC	Intelligence Services Council
ISCI	Integrated Sustainable Community Initiative
ISCW	Institute for Soil, Climate and Water
IS&ICT	Information Systems and Information Communications Technology
ISM	Information and Systems Management
ISO	International Standards Organisation
ISPs	internal strategic perspectives
ISPs	Internet service-providers
ISRDP	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme
ISRDS	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy
ISS	International Social Services
ISSET-Seta	Information Systems Electronic and Telecom Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority
IST	Innovation, Science and Technology
IT	information technology
Itac	International Trade Administration Commission
Itec	Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation
Ited	International Trade and Economic Development
iThembaLabs	iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences
ITU	International Telecommunications Union
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature
IWF	Isivande Women's Fund

J

JBC	Joint Bilateral Commission (for Co-operation)
JCC	Joint Commission of Co-operation
JCPS	Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
JICA	Japanese International Co-operation Agency
JINX	Johannesburg Internet Exchange
Jipsa	Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition
JITB	Johannesburg International Trade Bureau

JMC Joint Ministerial Commission
JPC Joint Permanent Commission
JPCC Joint Permanent Commission for Co-operation
JPI Johannesburg Plan of Implementation
JRMCs joint route management committees
JSC Judicial Service Commission
JSCD Joint Standing Committee on Defence
JSCI Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence
JSE JSE Limited

K

Kat Karoo Array Telescope
KFW *Kreditstalt für Wiederaufbau*
KLF Komatiland Forests
km kilometre
KM Knowledge Management
KPCS Kimberley Process Certification Scheme
KRC Kirstenbosch Research Centre
kWh kilowatt-hours

L

l litre
LAB Legal Aid Board
LAGs liquids, aerosols and gels
LARP Land and Agrarian Reform Project
LDC least-developed country
LED local economic development
LepSoc Lepidopterists' Society of Africa
LGSA Local Government Strategic Agenda
LHWP Lesotho Highlands Water Project
Liasa Library Association of South Africa
Lis Library and Information Services
LMIS Labour-Market Information and Statistics
LPG liquid petroleum gas
LPI Land Planning and Information
LRA Labour Relaions Act
LRAD Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development
LREF Land Reform Empowerment Facility
LRIM Land Reform Implementation Management
LRP lead-replacement petrol
LRSSS Land Reform Systems and Support Systems
LTMS Long-Term Mitigation Scenario
LTPS Land Transport Permit System
LTR Land and Tenure Reform

M

m^3 million cubic metres
m metre
M&E monitoring and evaluation
Mafisa micro-agricultural financial institutions of South Africa
Mappp-Seta Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority
MATD Management of Awaiting-Trial Detention
MCA MultiChoice Africa
MCC Medicines Control Council
MCLI Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative
MDDA Media Development and Diversity Agency
MDGs millennium development goals
MEC Member of the Executive Council
MEFMI Macroeconomic and Financial Management Institute of Eastern and Southern Africa
Mercosur South American Common Market
MERS Micro-Economic Reform Strategy
MFMA Municipal Finance Management Act
MFN Most Favoured Nation
MFRC Micro-Finance Regulatory Council
MFSA Marketing Federation of South Africa
MHIC Mental Health Information Centre
MHSA Mine Health and Safety Act
MHSC Mine Health and Safety Council
MHSI Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate
Mice meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions
Midem Music Market International
MIDP Motor Industry Development Programme
MIG Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MiningTek Mining Technology Division
MinMec Minister and MECs forum
MK uMkhonto we Sizwe
ML million litres
MLA Micro-Lenders Association
MLDP Municipal Leadership Development Programme
MMM MultiMarket Model
MMSD Mineral and Mining for Sustainable Development
MoU Memorandum of Understanding
MPAs marine protected areas
MPC Monetary Policy Committee
MPP Mass Participation Programme
MPRDA Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act
MQA Mining Qualifications Authority
MRC Medical Research Council
MRCC Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre
MRLs maximum residue limits

MRMC	Major Radiation Medicine Centre
MSc	Master of Science
MSDS	Military Skills Development System
MST	Marketable Securities Tax
MST	Mathematics, Science and Technology
mt	metric ton
Mt	million tons
MTech	Master's Degree in Technology
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTN	Mobile Telephone Network
MTT	Ministerial Task Team
MW	medium wave
MW	megawatt
MYIP	Multi-Year Implementation Plan

N

NAASP	New Asian-African Strategic Partnership
NAC	National Agrometeorological Committee
NAC	National Arts Council of South Africa
NACF	National Anti-Corruption Forum
NACH	National Anti-Corruption Helpline
NACHRET	National Centre for Human-Rights Education and Training
NACI	National Advisory Council on Innovation
Nacoc	National Co-ordinating Committee
NACP	National Anti-Corruption Programme
NACTT	National AIDS Children's Task Team
NAEHMP	National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme
Nafu	National African Farmers' Union
NAFVSA	National Film, Video and Sound Archives
Nail	New Africa Investments Limited
NAM	Non-Aligned Movement
Namac	National Manufacturing Advisory Centre
NAMC	National Agricultural Marketing Council
NAMF	New Africa Mining Fund
NAP	National Academy Programme
NAP	National Anti-Corruption Programme
NARF	National Agricultural Research Forum
NaTIS	National Traffic Information System
NBFET	National Board for Further Education and Training
NBI	National Botanical Institute
NBN	National Bioinformatics Network
NBS	National Biotechnology Strategy
NBSAP	National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan
NCA	National Credit Act
NCACC	National Conventional Arms Control Committee
NCC	National Communications Centre
NCCS	National Crime Combating Strategy
NCHM	National Cultural History Museum
NCLIS	National Council for Library and Information Services
NCOH	National Centre for Occupational Health
NCOP	National Council of Provinces
NCPCF	National Community Policing Consultative Forum
NCPR	National Child Protection Register
NCR	National Credit Regulator
NCRF	National Community Radio Forum
NCPS	National Crime Prevention Strategy
NCS	National Curriculum Statement
NDA	National Development Agency
NDMC	National Disaster Management Centre
NDMP	National Drug Master Plan
NDPP	National Director of Public Prosecutions
NEAF	National Environmental Advisory Forum
Necsa	Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa
Nedlac	National Economic Development and Labour Council
NEEA	National Energy Efficiency Agency
NEF	National Empowerment Fund
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
Nemisa	National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa
Nepad	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NER	National Electricity Regulator
Neri	National Energy Research Institute
Nersa	National Energy Regulator of South Africa
NFAC	National Forests Advisory Council
NFDRSA	National Fire Danger Rating System for South Africa
NFLS	National Freight Logistics Strategy
NFSD	National Framework for Sustainable Development
NFVF	National Film and Video Foundation
NG	Nederduitse Gereformeerde (kerk)
NGB	National Gambling Board
NGC	National Governing Council
NGOs	non-governmental organisations
NHBRC	National Home-Builders Registration Council
NHC	National Health Council
NHC	National Heritage Council
NHFC	National Housing Finance Corporation
NHLS	National Health Laboratory Service
NHRP	National Human Resource Plan
NHS	National Health System
NIA	National Intelligence Agency
NIB	National Immigration Branch
NICD	National Institute for Communicable Diseases
NIF	National Implementation Framework
NIPF	National Industrial Policy Framework

NIPP	National Industrial Participation Programme
NIRP	National Integrated Resource Plan
NIU	National Intervention Unit
NIV	National Institute for Virology
NLB	National Lotteries Board
NLDS	National Livestock Development Strategy
NLP	National LandCare Programme
NLPF	National Language Policy Framework
NLR	National Loans Register
NLRD	National Learners' Records Database
NLS	National Language Service
NLSA	National Library of South Africa
NLUs	national lexicography units
NMPP	New Multi-Product Pipeline
NMPS	National Mining Promotion System
NMT	non-motorised transport
NNR	National Nuclear Regulator
NOCS	National Overload Control Strategy
NPA	National Prosecuting Authority
NPA	National Ports Authority
NPI	National Productivity Institute
NPLs	non-performing loans
NPoA	National Plan of Action
NPOs	non-profit organisations
NPS	National Prosecuting Services
NPT	Non-Prolifiration Treaty
NPWP	National Public Works Programme
NQF	National Qualifications Framework
NRDS	National Research and Development Strategy
NRF	National Research Foundation
NRGP	National Responsible Gambling Programme
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act
NSA	National Skills Authority
NSBA	National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment
NSBAC	National Small Business Advisory Council
NSDF	National Spatial Development Framework
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NSDS	National Skills Development Strategy
NSI	National System of Innovation
NSIF	National Spatial Information Framework
NSF	National Skills Fund
NSFAS	National Student Financial Aid Scheme
NSNP	National School Nutrition Programme
NSP	National Strategic Plan
NSSD	National Strategy for Sustainable Development
NSW	National Science Week
Nufcor	Nuclear Fuels Corporation
Nurcha	National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency
NWRIA	National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency
NWRS	National Water Research Strategy
NYC	National Youth Commission
NZG	National Zoological Gardens

O

OAG	Office of the Auditor-General
OAU	Organisation of African Unity
OBE	outcomes-based education
OBP	Onderstepoort Biological Products
OC	Organising Committee
ODA	Overseas Development Assistance
ODI	One-Day International
ODS	ozone-depleting substances
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
OHS	occupational health and safety
OIC	Office of Interception Centres
OIE	*Office International des Épizooties*
OIV	International Organisation for Vine and Wine
Onub	United Nations Operation in Burundi
OPA	Online Publishers' Association
OPDS	official publications depositories
OPSC	Office of the Public Service Commission
OSI	Open Society Institute
OTB	Overberg Test Range
OTC	over-the-counter
OVC	orphans and vulnerable children

P

PAC	Pan Africanist Congress
PAJA	Promotion of the Administrative Justice Act
Palama	Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
PanSALB	Pan South African Language Board
PAP	Pan-African Parliament
Papu	Pan-African Postal Union
Pasa	Petroleum Agency South Africa
PAYE	pay-as-you-go
PBMR	Pebble Bed Modular Reactor
PCA	Permanent Court of Arbitration
PCC	President's Co-ordinating Council
PCLU	Priority Crimes Litigation Unit
PCS	Public Service Commission
PDIs	previously disadvantaged individuals
PDPHCP	Partnerships for the Delivery of Public Healthcare, including HIV and AIDS Programme
PFM	Participatory Forest Management
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan

PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PGMs	platinum-group metals
PHC	primary healthcare
PHP	People's Housing Process
PHPT	People's Housing Partnership Trust
PIAC	Presidential Advisory Council
PIC	Public Investment Corporation
PICC	Print Industries Cluster Council
PILIR	Management Policy and Procedure on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health
PIPs	properties in possession
PITs	public information terminals
PlantBio	Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre
PLAS	Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy
PLROs	provincial land reform offices
PMDS	Performance Mangement Development System
PMSA	Print Media South Africa
PMTCT	preventing mother-to-child transmission (of HIV and AIDS)
PNC on ISAD	Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development
PoA	Programme of Action
PPA	Power Purchase Agreement
PPPs	public-private partnerships
PRA	pest risk-analysis
PRC	Permananet Representatives Committee
PRC	People's Republic of China
PSC	Peace and Security Council
PSC	Public Service Commission
PSCBC	Public Service Co-ordinating Bargaining Council
PSJV	Pool and Sharing Joint Venture
PSM&ES	Public Service Monitoring and Evaluation System
PSW	Public Service Week
PTA	Preferential Trade Agreement
PTDs	person-training days
PTSA	Project Trust South Africa
PUB	Public Understanding of Biotechnology
Puset	Public Understanding of Science, Engineering and Technology
PV	photovoltaic

Q

QIDS-UP	Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme

R

R&D	research and development
RAC	Regional Advisory Committee
RAF	Road Accident Fund
RAS	Registration Administration System
RCD	research capacity development
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RECs	regional economic communities
REDs	regional electricity distributors
REF	Risk Equalisation Fund
Rera	Regional Electricity Regulators' Association
RIMS	Research Information Management System
RFSTP	Regional Food Security Training Programme
RHLF	Rural Housing Loan Fund
RHP	River Health Programme
Risa	Research and Innovation Support Agency
RISDP	Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan
RMC	Risk Management Committee
RNCS	Revised National Curriculum Statement
RPP	Research Policy and Planning
RPPO	Regional Plant Protection Organisation (for Africa)
RSC	Regional Services Council
RTMC	Road Traffic Management Corporation
RTMS	Road Traffic Management Strategy
RTSB	Road Traffic Safety Board

S

S&T	science and technology
SAA	South African Airways
SAAF	South African Air Force
Saafqis	South African Agricultural Food and Quarantine Inspection Services
Saao	South African Astronomical Observatory
Saasta	South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement
Saats	South African Air Traffic System
Saavi	South African Aids Vaccine Initiative
SAB	South African Breweries
Sabap	Southeren African Bird Atlas Project
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
Sabca	Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment
SABDC	South African Book Development Council
Sabi	South African Biosystematics Initiative
Sabif	South African Bioinformatics Facility
SABS	South African Bureau of Standards
SACAA	South African Civil Aviation Authority
SACC	South African Council of Churches
SACE	South African Council for Educators
Sacob	South African Chamber of Business

Sacu	South African Customs Union
SADAG	South African Depression and Anxiety Group
SADB	South African Diamond Board
SADC	Southern African Development Community
Saeon	South African Environmental Observation Network
Safcert	South African Certifications Council
Safcol	South African Forestry Company Limited
Safex	South African Futures Exchange
SAGBVHI	South African Gender-Based Violence and Health Initiative
SAGNC	South African Geographical Names Council
Sahara	Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance
Sahra	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRC	South African Human Rights Commission
Saiab	South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
SAIDS	South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
SAIMR	South African Institute for Medical Research
Salga	South African Local Government Association
SALRC	South African Law Reform Commission
Salt	South African Large Telescope
Samaf	South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund
Samas	South African Music Awards
Samdi	South African Management Development Institute
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
SAMI	South African Malaria Initiative
SAMM	Surveys, Analysis, Mapping and Modelling
Samos	South African Multiple Option Settlement
Samsa	South African Maritime Safety Authority
SANAC	South African National AIDS Council
Sanai	South African Academy of Intelligence
Sanap	South African National Antarctic Programme
Sanas	South African National Accreditation System
Sanbi	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SANC	South African Nursing Council
Sancor	South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research
SANDF	South African National Defence Force
Sanef	South African National Editors' Forum
Saneri	South African National Energy Research Institute
Sanli	South African National Literacy Initiative
SANParks	South African National Parks
Sanral	South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanren	South African National Research Network
Santaco	South African National Taxi Council
Sapa	South African Press Association
SAPC	South African Pharmacy Council
Sapca	South African Pest Control Association
Sapip	South African Pesticide Initiative Programme
Sapp	Southern African Power Pool
SAPS	South African Police Service
Sapca	South African Pest Control Association
Sapo	South African Port Operations
Sapo	South African Post Office
SAPP	Southern African Power Pool
Saqa	South African Qualifications Authority
SARB	South African Reserve Bank
SARCA	South African Reptile Conservation Assessment
SARCC	South African Rail Commuter Corporation
Sarchi	South African Research Chairs Initiative
SARPCCO	Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Co-operation Organisation
Sars	South African Revenue Service
Sasar	South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation
Sascoc	South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee
SASS	South African Secret Service
Sassa	South African Social Security Agency
Sasseta	Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority
SASSMC	South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber
SAT	South African Tourism
Sati	South African Tourism Institute
SAUJ	South African Union of Journalists
Saura	South African Utility Regulators' Association
Sawen	South African Women Entrepreneurs Network
Sawima	South African Women in Mining Association
SAWS	South African Weather Service
SAX	South African Express Airways
SCA	Supreme Court of Appeal
SCCCs	Specialised Commercial Court centres
SCCU	Specialised Commercial Crime Unit
SCI	Social Cohesion and Integration
SCLP	Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme
SCM	Supply Chain Management
Scopa	Standing Committee on Public Accounts
SCSA	Supreme Council for Sport in Africa
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDI	Spatial Development Initiative
SDIP	Service-Delivery Improvement Plan

SDP	Strategic Defence Procurement
SDT	State Diamond Trader
Seda	Small Enterprise Development Agency
SET	science, engineering and technology
Setas	sector education and training authorities
SEZs	special economic zones
SFF	Strategic Fuel Fund
SFM	sustainable forest management
SFWS	Strategic Framework for Water Services
SGB	Standard Generation Body
SHF	Social Housing Foundation
SHI	Social Health Insurance
SIP	Strategic Investment Programme
Sita	State Information Technology Agency
SIU	Special Investigating Unit
SKA	Square Kilometre Array
Skep	Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme
SMEs	small and medium-sized enterprises
SMEDP	Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme
SMMEs	small, medium and micro-enterprises
SMPP	Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme
SMS	Senior Management Service
SNO	Second National Operator
SOCA	Sexual Offences and Community Affairs
SOEs	state-owned enterprises
SOPS	State of the Public Service
SOS	Scheme of Ownership Support
SPF	Sector Partnership Fund
SPS	Soil Protection Strategy
SRII	Socially Responsible Investment Index
SRSA	Sport and Recreation South Africa
SSM	small-scale mining
SSP	Skills Support Programme
SSPD	Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate
Stac	Science and Technology Agreements Committee
Stats SA	Statistics South Africa
STB	set-top box
STIs	sexually transmitted infections
STP	Seda Technology Programme
Strips	Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal Securities
Sums	Subsidy-Management System
SWH	Solar Water Heater

T

t	ton
TAC	Total Allowable Catch
TAU SA	Transvaal Agricultural Union
TB	tuberculosis
TBCSA	Tourism Business Council of South Africa
TCTA	Trans Caledon Tunnel Authority
TDCA	Trade Development and Co-operation Agreement
Teba	The Employment Bureau of Africa
TEF	Tourism Equity Fund
TEO	The Enterprise Organisation
TEP	Tourism Enterprise Programme
TFCAs	transfrontier conservation areas
TFDC	Test Flight and Development Centre
TGCSA	Tourism Grading Council of South Africa
Theta	Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority
Thrip	Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme
TIA	Technology Innovation Agency
TICAD	Tokyo International Conference on African Development
Tisa	Trade and Investment South Africa
Tissa	Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa
TKC	Trans-Kalahari Corridor
TLP	Tourism Learnership Project
TMNP	Table Mountain National Park
TNPA	Transnet National Ports Authority
TRC	Truth and Reconciliation Commission
TRP	Taxi Recapitalisation Programme
TSA	Tourism Satellite Account
TSP	Tshumisano Station Programme
TSP	Tourism Support Programme
TTC	Technology Transfer Centre
TTP	Travel and Tourism Programme
TUT	Tshwane University of Technology
Twib	Technology for Women in Business

U

UAE	United Arab Emirates
UAVs	unmanned aerial vehicles
UEMP	Urban Environmental Management Programme
UIF	Unemployment Insurance Fund
UK	United Kingdom
ULP	unleaded petrol
Umalusi	General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council
UN	United Nations
UNCCD	United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification
Unced	United Nations Conference on Environment and Development
UNCPD	United Nations Commission on Population Development

UNCT	United Nations Country Team
Unctad	United Nations Conference on Trade and Development
UNDAF	United Nations Development Assistance Framework
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
Unep	United Nations Environment Programme
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
Unga	United Nations General Assembly
UNHRC	United Nations Human Rights Council
Unicef	United Nations Children's Fund
Unisa	University of South Africa
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
UNPSA	United Nations Public Service Award
UNSC	United Nations Security Council
UNSG	United Nations Secretary-General
UPU	Universal Postal Union
URP	Urban Renewal Programme
USA	United States of America
USA	Universal Service Agency
Usaasa	Universal Service and Access Agency
USALs	underserviced area licences
USOs	universal service obligations
USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
UST	uncertified securities tax

V

V&A	Victoria and Alfred (Waterfront)
VAT	value-added tax
VCT	voluntary counselling and testing
VEP	Victim-Empowerment Programme
VLBI	very long baseline interferometry
VOC	Dutch East India Company
VSAT	Very Small Aperture Terminal

W

Wada	World Anti-Doping Agency
WAN	World Association of Newspapers
War	Water Alliance Reform
WEF	World Economic Forum
Westcor	Western Power Corridor Project
WfW	Working for Water
WHO	World Health Organisation
WINSA	Women in Nuclear South Africa
WIO-LaB	West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project
WIPO	World Intellectual Property Organisation
WPC	World Petroleum Congress
WPP	Witness Protection Programme
WPU	Witness Protection Unit
WRC	Water Research Commission
WRCC	World Radio Communication Conference
WRS	Water Resource Strategy
WSAs	water service authorities
WSCD	white shark cage diving
WSDPS	water-services development plans
WSDSP	Workplace Skills Development Support Programme
WSSD	World Summit on Sustainable Development
WTO	World Trade Organisation
WTO-SPS	World Trade Organisation Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures
WTW	Water Treatment Works
WUAs	water-user associations
WWF-SA	World Wildlife Fund for Nature South Africa
WWTG	World Wine Trade Group

X

XDR TB	Extreme Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis

Y

YARD	Youth in Agriculture and Rural Development
YPD	Young Professionals Development

Z

ZCC	Zion Christian Church

National government departments and organisational components

Agriculture
Website: *www.nda.agric.za*
Private Bag X250
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 319-6000
Fax: 012 319-7135

Arts and Culture
Website: *www.dac.gov.za*
Private Bag X897
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 441-3000
Fax: 012 441-3699

Communications
Website: *www.doc.gov.za*
Private Bag X860
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-8000
Fax: 012 427-8026

Correctional Services
Website: *www.dcs.gov.za*
Private Bag X136
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 307-2000
Fax: 012 328-6149

Defence
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Private Bag X161
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 355-6220
Fax: 012 347-7445

Education
Website: *www.education.gov.za*
Private Bag X895
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-5911
Fax: 012 323-5837

Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Website: *www.deat.gov.za*
Private Bag X447
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 310-3911
Fax: 012 322-2682
Call centre: 086 111 2468

Foreign Affairs
Website: *www.dfa.gov.za*
Private Bag X152
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 351-1000
Fax: 012 328-7384

Government Communications (GCIS)
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
Private Bag X745
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 314-2911/00
Fax: 012 323-3831

Health
Website: *www.doh.gov.za*
Private Bag X828
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-0000
Fax: 012 326-4395

Home Affairs
Website: *www.home-affairs.gov.za*
Private Bag X114
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 810-8911/0800 60 1190
Fax: 012 810-7567/8169

Housing
Website: *www.housing.gov.za*
Private Bag X644
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 421-1311
Fax: 012 341-8513

Independent Complaints Directorate
Website: *www.icd.gov.za*
Private Bag X941
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 392-0400
Fax: 012 320-3116/7

Justice and Constitutional Development
Website: *www.doj.gov.za*
Private Bag X81
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-1111
Fax: 012 322-3155

Labour
Website: *www.labour.gov.za*
Private Bag X117
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-4000
Fax: 012 320-2059

Land Affairs
Website: *http://land.dla.gov.za*
Private Bag X833
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-8911
Fax: 012 323-6072

Minerals and Energy
Website: *www.dme.gov.za*
Private Bag X59
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 317-8000
Fax: 012 322-3416

National Intelligence Agency
Website: *www.nia.gov.za*
Private Bag X87
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-4000
Fax: 012 427-4651

National Treasury
Website: *www.treasury.gov.za*
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-5111
Fax: 012 315-5126

The Presidency
Website: *www.thepresidency.gov.za*
Private Bag X1000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 300-5200
Fax: 012 323-8246
and
Private Bag X1000
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 464-2100
Fax: 021 461-6456

Provincial and Local Government
Website: *www.dplg.gov.za*
Private Bag X804
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 334-0600
Fax: 012 334-0603

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
Website: *www.samdi.gov.za*
Private Bag x759
Pretoria
0001
Tel: 012 441 6000
Fax: 012 441 6030

Public Enterprises
Website: *www.dpe.gov.za*
Private Bag X15
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 431-1000
Fax: 012 432-1039

Public Service and Administration
Website: *www.dpsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X916
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 336-1183/1000
Fax: 012 336-1831/7802

Public Service Commission
Website: *www.psc.gov.za*
Private Bag X121
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 352-1000
Fax: 012 325-8308/8382

Public Works
Website: *www.publicworks.gov.za*
Private Bag X65
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 337-2000
Fax: 012 328-4217

Science and Technology
Website: *www.dst.gov.za*
Private Bag X894
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 843-6300
Fax: 012 349-1037

Secretariat for Safety and Security
Website: *www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za*
Private Bag X922
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 393-2500
Fax: 012 393-2538

Social Development
Website: *www.dsd.gov.za*
Private Bag X901
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-7794
Fax: 012 312-7943

South African Police Service
Website: *www.saps.gov.za*
Private Bag X94
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 393-1000
Fax: 012 393-5520

South African Revenue Service
Website: *www.sars.gov.za*
Private Bag X923
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 422-4000
Fax: 012 422-6848

South African Secret Service
Website: *www.sass.gov.za*
Private Bag X5
Elarduspark 0047
Tel: 012 427-5500
Fax: 012 427-6428

Sport and Recreation
Website: *www.srsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X896
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 304-5000
Fax: 012 323-0795

Statistics South Africa
Website: *www.statssa.gov.za*
Statistics SA
Private Bag X44
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 310-8911/8600
Fax: 012 310-8500
E-mail:info@statssa.gov.za

Trade and Industry
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Private Bag X84
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 0861 843 384 (local)
Tel: +27(12) 394-9500
Fax: 0861 843 888
Fax: (international callers):
+27 012 394 951

Transport
Website: *www.transport.gov.za*
Private Bag X193
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-3000
Fax: 012 328-7891

Water Affairs and Forestry
Website: *www.dwaf.gov.za*
Private Bag X313
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 336-7500
Fax: 012 336-8850

Parliamentary information

National Assembly
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
PO Box 15
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 403-2549
Fax: 021 461-7300

National Council of Provinces
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
PO Box 15
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 403-2110/5/3221
Fax: 021 461-9460

Provincial governments

Eastern Cape
Website: *www.ecprov.gov.za*
Private Bag X0047
Bhisho 5605
Tel: 040 609-6301
Fax: 040 635-1166

Free State
Website: *www.fs.gov.za*
Private Bag X20538
Bloemfontein 9300
Tel: 051 405-5799
Fax: 051 405-4803

Gauteng
Website: *www.gautengonline.gov.za*
Private Bag X61
Marshalltown 2107
Tel: 011 355-6000
Fax: 011 836-9334/834 4912

KwaZulu-Natal
Website: *www.kwazulunatal.gov.za*
Private Bag X9037
Pietermaritzburg 3200
Tel: 033 341-3407/3329
Fax: 033 342-7368

Limpopo
Website: *www.limpopo.gov.za*
Private Bag X9483
Polokwane 0700
Tel: 015 287-6000
Fax: 015 295-3840

Mpumalanga
Website: *www.mpumalanga.gov.za*
Private Bag X11291
Nelspruit 1200
Tel: 013 766-1000
Fax: 013 766-2494

Northern Cape
Website:
www.northern-cape.gov.za
Private Bag X5016
Kimberley 8300
Tel: 053 802-4500
Fax: 053 839-8215

North West
Website: *www.nwpg.gov.za*
Private Bag X65
Mmabatho 2735
Tel: 018 387-3000
Fax: 018 387-3008

Western Cape
Website: *www.capegateway.gov.za*
Private Bag X9043
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 483-3806
Fax: 021 483-2744

Government structures and organisational components

Agricultural Research Council
Website: *www.arc.agric.za*
PO Box 8783
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-9700
Fax: 012 342-3948

Airports Company South Africa
Website: *www.airports.co.za*
PO Box 75480
Gardenview 2047
Tel: 011 723-1400
Fax: 011 453-9353/4

Armaments Corporation of South Africa
Website: *www.armscor.co.za*
Private Bag X337
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-1911
Fax: 012 428-5635

Central Energy Fund
Website: *www.cef.org.za*
PO Box 786141
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 280-0300
Fax: 011 880-9803

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
Website: *www.ccma.org.za*
Private Bag X94
Marshalltown 2107
Tel: 011 377-6650
Fax: 011 834-7351
E-mail: ho@ccma.org.za

Commission on Gender Equality
Website: *www.cge.org.za*
PO Box 32175
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 403-7182
Fax: 011 403-7188

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
Website: *http://land.pwv.gov.za/restitution*
Private Bag X833
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-9244/9146
Fax: 012 321-0428

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities
Website: *www.crlcommission.org.za*
Private Bag X90 000
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 339-1775
Fax: 011 339-2234

Competition Commission
Website: *www.compcom.co.za*
Private Bag X23
Lynnwood Ridge 0040
Tel: 012 394-3200
Fax: 012 394-4332

Constitutional Court
Website: *www.constitutionalcourt.org.za*
Private Bag X1
Constitution Hill,
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 359-7400
Fax: 011 403-6524

Council for Geoscience
Website: *www.geoscience.org.za*
Private Bag X112
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-1911
Fax: 012 841-1221

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
Website: *www.csir.co.za*
PO Box 395
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-2911
Fax: 012 349-1153

Council on Higher Education
Website: *www.che.ac.za*
PO Box 13354
The Tramshed 0126
Tel: 012 392-9100
Fax: 012 392-9110

Denel (Pty) Limited
Website: *www.denel.co.za*
PO Box 8322
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 671-2700
Fax: 012 671-2793

Development Bank of Southern Africa
Website: *www.dbsa.org*
PO Box 1234
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 011 313-3911
Fax: 011 313-3086

National Prosecuing Authority
Website: *www.npa.gov.za*
Private Bag X752
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 845-6000
Fax: 012 843 3111

Eskom
Website: *www.eskom.co.za*
PO Box 1091
Johannesburg 2000
Tel: 011 800-8111
Fax: 011 800-4299

Film and Publication Board
Website: *www.fpb.gov.za*
Private Bag X2205
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 483-0971
Fax: 011 483-1084

Financial Intelligence Centre
Website: *www.fic.gov.za*
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-9200
Fax: 012 315-5828

Financial and Fiscal Commission
Website: *www.ffc.co.za*
Private Bag X69
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 0861 315 710
Fax: 011 207-2344

Financial Services Board
Website: *www.fsb.co.za*
PO Box 35655
Menlo Park 0102
Tel: 012 428-8000
Toll-free: 0800 110443
Fax: 012 347-0221

Government Printing Works
Website: *www.gpw.gov.za*
Private Bag X85
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 334-4500
Fax: 012 323-9746

Human Sciences Research Council
Website: *www.hsrc.ac.za*
Private Bag X41
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 302-2000
Fax: 012 302-2001

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Website: *www.icasa.org.za*
Private Bag X10002
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 566-3000
Fax: 011 566-4000/4001

Independent Development Trust
Website: *www.idt.org.za*
PO Box 73000
Lynnwood Ridge 0040
Tel: 012 845-2000
Fax: 012 361-5610

Independent Electoral Commission
Website: *www.elections.org.za*
PO Box 7943
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-5700
Fax: 012 341-5784

Industrial Development Corporation
Website: *www.idc.co.za*
PO Box 784055
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 269-3000
Fax: 011 269-3116

International Marketing Council
Website: *www.brandsouthafrica.com*
PO Box 87168
Houghton 2014
Tel: 011 483-0122
Fax: 011 483-0124

Judicial Service Commission
Private Bag X1
Constitutional Hill
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 359-7537
Fax: 011 403-5964

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited
Website: *www.khula.org.za*
PO Box 28423
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 394-5560/0800 118815
Fax: 012 394-6901

Land Bank and Agricultural Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)
Website: *www.landbank.co.za*
PO Box 375
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-3999/0800 005-259
Fax: 012 312-3644

Land Claims Court
Private Bag X10060
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 781-2291
Fax: 011 781-2217/8

Media Development and Diversity Agency
Website: *www.mdda.org.za*
PO Box 42846
Fordsburg 2033
Tel: 011 726-3336
Fax: 011 726-5087

Mintek
Website: *www.mintek.co.za*
Private Bag X3015
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 709-4111
Fax: 011 793-2413

Municipal Demarcation Board
Website: *www.demarcation.org.za*
Private Bag X28
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-2481/2
Fax: 012 342-2480

National Advisory Council on Innovation
Website: *www.naci.org.za*
Private Bag X894
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 843-6511
Fax: 086 681 0144

National Agricultural Marketing Council
Website: *www.namc.co.za*
Private Bag X935
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 341-1115
Fax: 012 341-1811/1911

National Archives of South Africa
Website: *www.national.archives.gov.za*
Private Bag X236
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 441-3200
Fax: 012 323-5287

National Arts Council of South Africa
Website: *www.nac.org.za*
PO Box 500
Newtown 2113
Tel: 011 838-1383
Fax: 011 838-6363

National Development Agency
Website: *www.nda.org.za*
PO Box 31959
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 018-5500
Fax: 011 403-2514/5

National Economic Development Labour Council
Website: *www.nedlac.org.za*
PO Box 1775
Saxonwold 2132
Tel: 011 328-4200
Fax: 011 447-2089/6053

National Empowerment Fund
Website: *www.nefcorp.co.za*
PO Box 31
Melrose Arch
Melrose North 2076
Tel: 011 305-8000
Fax: 011 305-8001

National Energy Regulator
Website: *www.nersa.org.za*
PO Box 40343
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 401-4600
Fax: 012 401-4700

National Gambling Board
Website: *www.ngb.org.za*
Private Bag X27
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 394-3800
Fax: 012 394-4800

National Home-Builders' Registration Council
Website: w*ww.nhbrc.org.za*
PO Box 461
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 317-0000
Fax: 011 317-0105
Toll-free: 0800 200 824
Fraud: hotline: 0800 203 698

National House of Traditional Leaders
Private Bag X804
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 395-4659
Fax: 012 326-4664

National Housing Finance Corporation
Website: *www.nhfc.co.za*
PO Box 31376
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 644-9800
Fax: 011 484-6406

National Lotteries Board
Website: *www.nlb.org.za*
PO Box 1556
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 394-3440
Fax: 012 394-0452

National Nuclear Regulator
Website: *www.nnr.co.za*
PO Box 7106
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 674-7100
Fax: 012 663-5513

Office on the Rights of the Child
The Presidency
Private Bag X1000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 300-5500
Fax: 012 321-4566

National Prosecuting Authority
Website: *www.npa.gov.za*
Private Bag X752
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 845-6000
Fax: 012 804-7335

National Research Foundation
Website: *www.nrf.ac.za*
PO Box 2600
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 481-4000
Fax: 012 349-1179

National Youth Commission
Website: *www.nyc.gov.za*
Private Bag X938
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-7800
Fax: 012 309-7822

Office of the Auditor-General
Website: *www.agsa.co.za*
PO Box 446
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-8000
Fax: 012 426-8257

Pan South African Language Board
Website: *www.pansalb.org.za*
Private Bag X08
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 341-9638
Fax: 012 341-5938

Public Investment Corporation
Website: *www.pic.gov.za*
Private Bag X187
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 369-3300
Fax: 012 348-5852/2272

Office of the Public Protector
Website: *www.publicprotector.org*
Private Bag X677
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 366-7000
Fax: 012 362-3473/7047

Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (Pty) Limited
Website: *www.petrosa.co.za*
Private Bag X5
Parow 7499
Tel: 021 929-3000
Fax: 021 929-3144

Rand Water
Website: *www.randwater.co.za*
PO Box 1127
Johannesburg 2000
Tel: 011 682-0911
Fax: 011 682-0444/0555
Customer service centre:
0860 10 10 60

Safety and Security Secretariat
Website: *www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za*
Private Bag X922
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 393-2550
Fax: 012 393-2538

Small Enterprise Development Agency
Website: *www.seda.org.za*
PO Box 56714
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 441-1000/0860 103 703
E-mail: info@seda.co.za

South African Airways
Website: *www.saa.co.za* or *www. ysaa.com*
Private Bag X13
Johannesburg International Airport
1627
Tel: 011 978-1000/2500
Fax: 011 978-3507

South African Bureau of Standards
Website: *www.sabs.co.za*
Private Bag X191
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-7911
Fax: 012 344-1568

South African Civil Aviation Authority
Website: *www.caa.co.za*
Private Bag X73
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 011 545-1000
Fax: 011 545-1465

South African Diamond Board
Website: *www.sadpmr.co.za*
PO Box 16001
Doornfontein 2028
Tel: 011 334-8980/6
Fax: 011 334-8898

South African Council for Educators
Website: *www.sace.org.za*
Private Bag X127
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 663-9517
Fax: 012 663-9238
Helpline: 012 663-0419

South African Forestry Company Limited
PO Box 1771
Silverton 0127
Tel: 012 481-3500
Fax: 012 804-5133

South African Human Rights Commission
Website: *www.sahrc.org.za*
Private Bag X2700
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 484-8300
Fax: 011 484-7149

South African Law Reform Commission
Website: *www.doj.gov.za/salrc/index.htm*
Private Bag X668
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 392-9549
Fax: 012 320-0936

South African Local Government Association
Website: *www.salga.net*
PO Box 2094
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 369-8000
Fax: 012 369-8001

South African National Parks
Website: *www.sanparks.org*
PO Box 787
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-5170
Fax: 012 343-0153

South African National Roads Agency Limited
Website: *www.sanral.co.za*
PO Box 415
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-6000
Fax: 012 362-2101/2117

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation
Website: *www.necsa.co.za*
PO Box X582
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 305-4911
Fax: 012 305-3111

South African Post Office Limited
Website: *www.postoffice.co.za*
PO Box 10000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 401-7000
Fax: 012 401-7707

South African Qualifications Authority
Website: *www.saqa.org.za*
Postnet Suite 248
Private Bag X 06
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 431-5000
Fax: 012 431-5039

South African Reserve Bank
Website: *www.resbank.co.za*
PO Box 427
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 313-3911
Fax: 012 313-3929

South African Sports Commission
Website: *www.srsa.gov.za*
PO Box 11239
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 304-5000
Fax: 012 323-0795

South African Tourism
Website: *www.southafrica.net*
Private Bag X10012
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 895-3000
Fax: 011 895-3062

Special Investigating Unit
Website: *www.siu.org.za*
PO Box 197
Garsfontein 0042
Tel: 012 843 0000
Fax: 012 843 0113

State Information Technology Agency (Pty) Limited
Website: *www.sita.co.za*
PO Box 26100
Monument Park 0105
Tel: 012 482-3000
Fax: 012 482-2100

State Tender Board
Website: *www.treasury.gov.za*
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-5377
Fax: 012 315-5388

Technology for Women in Business
Website: *www.twib.co.za*
PO Box 395
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-4983/4990
Fax: 012 841-4954

Telkom SA Limited
Website: *www.telkom.co.za*
Private Bag X74
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 311-3911
Fax: 012 323-6733

Trade and Investment South Africa
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Private Bag X84
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 394-3014
Fax: 012 394 4016
Customer care centre:
0861 843 384

Transnet Limited
Website: *www.transnet.co.za*
PO Box 72501
Parkview 2122
Tel: 011 308-3000
Fax: 011 308-2638

Water Research Commission
Website: *www.wrc.org.za*
Private Bag X03
Gezina 0031
Tel: 012 330-0340
Fax: 012 331-2565
E-mail: info@wrc.org.za

Government Communication and Information Centres

Eastern Cape
Eastern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X608
East London 5200
Tel: 043 722-2602
Fax: 043 722-2615

Free State
Free State Provincial Office
PO Box 995
Bloemfontein 9300
Tel: 051 448-4504/5/6
Fax: 051 430-7032

Kroonstad Satellite Regional Office
25 Brand street
Kroonstad 9499
Tel: 056 213 2795/6

Gauteng
Gauteng Provincial Office
Private Bag X16
Johannesburg 2000
Tel: 011 834-3560
Fax: 011 834-3621

KwaZulu-Natal
KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Office
Private Bag X54332
Durban 4000
Tel: 031 301-6787/8
Fax: 031 305-9431

Limpopo
Limpopo Provincial Office
PO Box 2452
Polokwane 0700
Tel: 015 291-4689
Fax: 015 295-6982

Mpumalanga
Mpumalanga Provincial Office
PO Box X2856
Nelspruit 1200
Tel: 013 753-2397
Fax: 013 753-2531

Northern Cape
Northern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X5038
Kimberley 8300
Tel: 053 832-1378/9
Fax: 053 832-1377

Upington Regional Office
PO Box 2872
Upington 8800
Tel: 054 332-6206
Fax: 054 332-6218
E-mail: upingtongic@gcis.gov.za

North West
North West Provincial Office
Private Bag X2120
Mafikeng 2745
Tel: 018 381-7071
Fax: 018 381-7066

Western Cape
Western Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X9007
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 421-5070
Fax: 021 419-8846

Parliamentary Office
Private Bag X9075
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 465-3658
Fax: 021 461-1446

Thusong Service Centres

Eastern Cape
Centane Service Centre
Bell Sreet
Centani
Tel: 047 498-1126
Fax: 047 491-0195

Cofimvaba Service Centre
Cnr High Street and Bellair Avenue
Cofimvaba
Tel: 047 874-0444
Fax: 047 874-0553

Qunu Service Centre
Qunu Village
Mthatha
Tel: 047 538-7017
Fax: 047 538-7017

Sterkspruit Service Centre
No 79 Main Road
Sterkspruit
Tel: 051 611-1335
Fax: 051 611-1335

Tombo Service Centre
Tombo Village
Tel: 047 564-1152
Fax: 047 564-1206
Tsilitwa Service Centre
Qumbu
Tel: 047 531-0083

Viegiesville Service Centre
Viegiesville
Tel: 047 538-9011
Fax: 047 538-9011

Free State
Botshabelo Service Centre
1230 Section E
Botshabelo
Tel: 051 532-6791
Fax: 051 532-6791

Kopanong Service Centre
398 Booysen Street
Trompsburg
Tel: 051 713-0189 / 87
Fax: 051 713-0192

Namahadi Service Centre
Charles Mopeli Stadium
Witsieshoek
Tel: 058 789-1147
Fax: 058 789-1147

Onalerona Service Centre
188 Sediba Village
Thaba Nchu
Tel: 051 357-0027

Phiritona Service Centre
2264 Makoko Hlabane Street
Phiritona Heilbron
Tel: 056 213-2795
Fax: 051 713-0192

Qalabotjha Service Centre
1279 Gamede Street
Qalabotjha
Villiers
Tel: 058 821-1127
Fax: 058 821-1127

Tokologo Service Centre
Malebogo Community Hall
Hertzogville
Tel: 053 421-9051
Fax: 053 421-9244

Zastron Service Centre
cnr Parsegrouw and Vechtkop streets
Zastron
Tel: 051 673-1671
Fax: 051 673-1082

Gauteng
Alexandra Service Centre
Cnr 8th Avenue and Roosevelt streets
Alexandra
Tel: 011 443-1358
Fax: 011 443-1358

Atteridgeville Service Centre
Mini-Munitoria Building
1770 Komane Street
Atteridgeville
Tel: 011) 443-1358
Fax: 011) 443-1358

Brandvlei Service Centre
Stand 64 Ventersdorp Road
Brandvlei
Tel: 011 416-2107

Daveyton Service Centre
Daveyton Mall
Eiselen Street
Daveyton
Benoni
Tel: 011 926-7121
Fax: 011 926-7171

Thokoza Service Centre
8015 Khumalo Street
Thokoza
Tel: 011 820-4437
Fax: 011 905-0186

Orange Farm Service Centre
15747 Orange Farm Ext 4
Tel: 011 935-6492
Fax: 011 935-6492

Duduza Service Centre
No 1 Nala Street
Duduza
Tel: 011 738-8516
Fax: 011 738-8516

Bekkersdal Service Centre
Cnr Godlo and Panyapanya streets
Bekkersdal
Tel: 083 584 6856

Kagiso Service Centre
8740 Kagiso Avenue
Kagiso Central
Tel: 011 951-2304
Fax: 011 935-2547

Diepsloot Service Centre
Stand 381 Diepsloot West
Diepsloot
Tel: 011 443-1358
Fax: 011 443-1358

Dobsonville Service Centre
2332 Luthuli Street
Dobsonville
Tel: 011 982-1200
Fax: 011 982-1200

Eldorado Park Service Centre
4064 Link Crescent
Eldorado Park
Tel: 011 935-6492
Fax: 011 935-6492

Faranani Service Centre
Modjadjie Street
Tsakane
Brakpan
Tel: 011 741-2482

Hammanskraal Services Centre
Hammanskraal Skills Centre
40 Old Warmbaths Road
Tel: 012 711-3160
Fax: 012 711-3160

Ipelegeng Service Centre
1238 White City
Jabavu Soweto
Tel: 011 982-5810
Fax: 011 982-6400

Mamelodi Service Centre
19864 Makhubela Street
Mamelodi West
Tel: 012 805-0117
Fax: 012 805-0121

Mohlakeng Service Centre
262 Ralerata Street
Mohlakeng
Randfontein
Tel: 011 414-1072
Fax: 011 414-1888

Munsieville Service Centre
Mogale City Local Municipality
Munsieville
Tel: 083 584 6856

Orlando East Service Centre
1425 Sofasonke Street
Orlando East
Tel: 011 935-6492
Fax: 011 935-6492

Olievenhoutbosch Service Centre
City of Tshwane Municipality
Tshwane
Tel: 012 799-5005
Fax: 012 799-5005

Ratanda Service Centre
Cnr Heidelberg and Boshoek streets
Ratanda
Tel: 016 988 1960
Fax: 016 988 1960

Sebokeng Service Centre
88 Moshoeshoe Street
Sebokeng
Tel: 016 988-1960
Fax: 016 988-1960
Soshanguve Service Centre

Shop 49, Nafcoc Shopping Centre
Soshanguve
Tel: 012 799-5005
Fax: 012 799-5005

Tembisa Service Centre
238 Igqagqa Section
Tembisa
Tel: 011 926-7171
Fax: 011 926-7121

Zithobeni Service Centre
2237 Mothibe Drive
Zithobeni
Tel: 013 937 0133

KwaThema Service Centre
54 Luthombo Street
Tornado Section
KwaThema
Tel: 011 741-2256

Boitshepiville Service Centre
Stand 2013, Phase 2
Tshepisi
Tel: 016 950-5432
Fax: 016 950-5000

Lord Khanyile Service Centre
Cnr Freedom and Osizweni streets
Ivory Park
Tel: 011 443-1358
Fax: 011 443-1358

Ga-Rankuwa Service Centre
City of Tshwane Municipality Building Extention Library
Ga-Rankuwa
Tel: 012 711-3160
Fax: 012 711-3160

Onverwacht Service Centre
Onverwacht Municipal Library
Onverwacht
Tel: 012 732-0564
Fax: 012 732-0564

Impumulelo Service Centre
Impumulelo Municipal Building
Impumulelo
Devon
Tel: 017 688-0051

Vosloorus Service Centre
1 Berry Maree Road
Vosloorus
Tel: 011 899-4505
Fax: 011 899-4505

KwaZulu-Natal
Archie Gumede Service Centre
Ethekwini Metropolitan Municipality
1106 Zazi Road
Clernaville
Tel: 031 311 2561/2

Bamshela Service Centre
Nwodsberg Road
Ozwathini
Tel: 032 294-9076
Fax: 032 294-9075
Dududu Service Centre
Dududu Main Road
Tel: 039 974-0989
Fax: 039 974-0989

Dukuza Service Centre
Dukuza Location
Tel: 036 438-6103
Fax: 036 438-6136

Driefontein Service Centre
Uthugela
Tel: 083 537 7845

Imbabazane Service Centre
White Mountain Road
Escourt
Tel: 036 353-3212
Fax: 036 353-3212

Kwa Madlala Service Centre
Ugu District
Tel: 039 688-2278
Fax: 039 688-2279

Kwa Nzimakwe Service Centre
Road D 1095
Tel: 039 688-2272
Fax: 039 688-2279

Kwa Xolo Service Centre
D 686 Road
Port Shepstone
Tel: 039 688-2272
Fax: 039 688-2279

Kwamdakane Service Centre
Majuba District
Fax: 034 314-3785

Malangeni Service Centre
Malangeni Mission
Tel: 039 974-1061
Fax: 039 974-4148

Mbazwana Service Centre
Sodwana Bay
Main Road
Mbazwana
Tel: 035 571-0970
Fax: 035 571-0232
Telefax: 035 571-0138

Tugela Ferry Service Centre
Umzinyathi Road
Tugela Ferry
Tel: 033 493-0282
Fax: 033 493-0282

Bhomela Service Centre
1106 Zazi Road
Clernaville
Tel: 039 688-2272
Fax: 039 688-2279

Nhlazuka Service Centre
Nhlazuka Village
Mbuthisweni Tribal Court and Clinic
Richmond
Tel: 033 897-6892
Fax: 033 342-5442

Lindela Service Centre
Ntolwana Village
Tel: 035 476-4241
Fax: 035 476-4241

Limpopo
Babirwa Service Centre
Babirwa Village
Taueyatsoala Tribal Office
Tel: 015 505-5345
Fax: 015 571-5808

Botlokwa Service Centre
Dwarsrivier
Tel: 015 527-1596
Fax: 015 527-1742

Fetakgomo-Atok Service Centre
Atok Bogalatladi Village
Ga-Nkwana
Tel: 015 622-8000
Fax: 015 622-8026

Kgautswane Service Centre
Kgautswane Village
Tel: 013 231-7515
Fax: 013 238-0122

Leboeng Service Centre
Leboeng Safety Centre
Burgersfort
Tel: 013 769-9026
Fax: 015 812-9201

Makhuva Service Centre
Makhuva Village
Thohoyandou
Tel/Fax: 015 812-5602

Mafatsane Service Centre
Union Road
Evaton
Tel: 016 988-1960
Fax: 016 988-1962

Mapela Service Centre
Mesopotamia Village
Tel: 015 413-0000/2
Fax: 015 413-0023

Maruleng Service Centre
Maruleng Central
Metz Village
Tel: 015 793-2409
Fax: 015 793-2341

Festus Sengaka Mothudi Service Centre
Ga-Ramokgopa Village
Tel: 015 291-4689
Fax: 015 295-6982

Mokwakwaila Service Centre
Makuya Village
Tel: 082 904 5903

Bulamahlo Service Centre
No 30 – 32
Mahwibidung Section
Bulamahlo
Tel: 015 307-8000 (council offices)

Fax: 015 307-8049
Makuya Service Centre
Masisi-Makomve Road
Thohoyandou
Tel: 015 962-5307
Fax: 015 962-5307

Mabatlane/Vaalwater Service Centre
268 Paul Kruger Street
Modimolle
Tel: 014 755-3751
Fax: 014 755-3824

Zava Service Centre
Zava Village
Tel: 015 811-5500
Fax: 015 812-2068

Eldorado Service Centre
Eldorado Village
Tel: 015 291-4689
Fax: 015 295-6982

Mpumalanga
Breyten Service Centre
Cnr Grobler and Breytenbach streets
Msukaligwa
Tel: 017 861-3071
Fax: 017 801-3793

Casteel Service Centre
gaMthakathi Station
Casteel
Tel: 013 777-6014
Fax: 013 777-6015

Matsamo Service Centre
Matsamo Tribal Offices
Schoemansdal
Tel/fax: 013 781-0659

Mpuluzi Service Centre
E 1340 Fernie
Tel/Fax: 017 888-0300

Siyathemba Service Centre
5080 Oos Street
Siyathemba
Tel: 082 828 1798

Tholulwazi Service Centre
307 Shaka Maseko Street
Leandra
Tel: 017 683-3027/3014
Fax: 017 683-1311

Thuthukani Service Centre
New Denmark Hostel
Standerton
Telefax: 017 797-1370

Wonderfonein Service Centre
Marapyane Shopping Complex
Tel: 013 246-7443

Marapyane Service Centre
Marapyane Shopping complex
Tel: 012 724-3812
Fax: 012 724-3812

Mbangwane Service Centre
Malalane
Tel/fax: 013 781-0659

Northern Cape
Augrabies Service Centre
199 Tin Crescent
Augrabies
Tel: 051 451-0282/0314
Fax: 051 451-0388

Colesberg Service Centre
cnr Chamberlain Square and Church streets
Colesberg
Tel: 051 753-0777
Fax: 051 753-0547

Galeshewe/Rethusaneng Service Centre
Cnr Matanzima and Letsholo streets,
Mankuwane Kimberley
Tel: (053) 872-2644 / 2645
Fax: 053 872-2647

Manne Dipico Service Centre
62 Sparrow Street
Pescodia
Kimberly
Tel: 053 873-1072
Fax: 053 873-1298

North West
Kgetleng Service Centre
Erasmus Street
Swartruggens
Tel: 014 544-0011
Fax: 014 544-0011

Leretlhabetse Service Centre
Lebotlwane Village
Tel: 012 716-1000
Fax: 012 716-1068
Tlakgameng Service Centre
Tlakgameng Village
Tel: 053 998-7235
Fax: 053 998-7239

Tshedimosetso Service Centre
Boikhutso Village
Ventersdorp
Tel/fax: 018 264-2332

Tshidilamolomo Service Centre
Tshidilamolomo
Tel: 018 361-0152/0140
Fax: 018 361-0149

Victor Tong Service Centre
Morokweng Village
Tel/fax: 053 761-0093

Khutsong Service Centre
1 Sompane Street
Carltonville
Tel: 018 788-0118
Fax: 018 783-0118

Manamela/Vuk'uzenzele Service Centre
Manamela Village
Tel: 014 555-1300
Fax: 014 555-5240

Monakato Service Centre
Rustenburg
Tel: 014 554-8815
Fax: 014 554-8593

Swartruggens Service Centre
Swartruggens
Tel: 014 544-0011

Western Cape
Atlantis Service Centre
1 Nottingham Street
Sharwood Park Atlantis
Tel: 021 572-1872
Fax: 021 572-1872

Bonteheuwel Service Centre
Cnr Jakkalsvlei and Elder streets
Bonteheuwel
Cape Town
Tel: 021 695-5425
Fax: 086 512-5237

Beaufort West Local Municipality
3 De Vries Street
Rustdene
Tel: 023 415-1008
Fax: 023 415-1008

Citrusdal Service Centre
Cederberg Local Municipality
West Coast District, Bohemia Street,
Citrus
Tel: 027 482-8047
Fax: 027 482-1933

Hawston Service Centre
Overstrand Local Municipality
Church Street
Hawston
Tel: 028 315-2784

Ilingelethu Service Centre
Ilingelethu Sports Field
Malmesbury
Tel: 022 486-4593
Fax: 022 486-4415

Khayelitsha Service Centre
Steve Biko Road
Kayelitsha Mall
Tel: 021 387-1594
Fax: 021 387-6404

Laingsburg Service Centre
cnr Main and 3rd Avenue, Goldnerville
Laingsburg
Tel: 023 551-1899
Fax: 023 551-1899

Langebaan Service Centre
No 7 Antonio Sieni Street, Langebaan
Tel: 022 772-2622
Fax: 022 772-2622

Riversdale Service Centre
Van den Berg Street
Riversdal
Tel: 028 713-3647
Fax: 028 713-3647

Simunye Service Centre
Xipula Street
KwaNokuthula
Tel: 044 501-3134
Fax: 044 533-6993

Swellendam Service Centre
1 Vollenhoven Street
Railton
Swellendam
Tel: 028) 514-3732
Fax: 028) 514-1463

Thembalethu Service Centre
cnr Jeriko Street and Sandkraal Road
Thembalethu
Tel: 044 880-1711
Fax: 044 880-1712

Unobuntu Service Centre
cnr Nketza and Mtwazi streets
Zwelethemba Worcester
Tel: 023 348-2739
Fax: 023 345-1031

Van Rhynsdorp Service Centre
1 Nelson Mandela Street
Van Rhynsdorp
Tel: 027 219-1917
Fax: 027 219-1574

Vredendal Service Centre
1 Mandela Street
Van Rhynsdorp
Tel: 027 201-3300
Fax: 027 201-3300

Waboomskraal Service Centre
Main Road
Waboomskraal
Tel: 044 886-0040
Fax: 044 886-0040

Zolane Service Centre
Sithandathu Avenue, Nyanga East
Cape Town
Tel: 021 386-8656
Fax: 021 386-1032

Foreign representatives in South Africa

Albania (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 87393
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 884-1617
Fax: 011 884-2510
E-mail: nrose@tiscali.co.za

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 57480
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5074/5
Fax: 012 342-6479

Angola (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 8685
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-0049/50
Fax: 012 342-7039

Argentina (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11125
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-3513/6
Fax: 012 430-3521
E-mail: argembas@global.co.za

Australia
[High Commission]
Private Bag X150
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-6000
Fax: 012 342-8442
Emergency cell: 083 629 1590

Austria (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95572
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 452-9155/9121
Fax: 012 460-1151
E-mail: pretoria-ob@bmaa.gv.at

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
[High Commission]
410 Farenden Street
Sunnyside
Pretoria 0002
Tel: 012 343-2105/7
Fax: 012 343-5222
E-mail: bangladeshpta.iburst.co.za

Belarus (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 4107
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 430-7664
Fax: 012 342-6280

Belgium (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
625 Leyds Street
Muckleneuk
Pretoria 0002
Tel: 012 440-3201/2
Fax: 012 440-3216
E-mail: pretoria@diplobel.org

Benin (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 26484
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6978
Fax: 012 342-1823
E-mail: embbenin@yebo.co.za

Bosnia and Herzegovina
[Embassy]
PO Box 11464
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-5547/7366
Fax: 012 346-2295
E-mail: bih@saol.com

Botswana (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 57035
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 430-9640
Fax: 012 342-1845

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 3269
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 366-5200
Fax: 012 366-5299
E-mail: pretoria@brazilianembassy.org.za

Bulgaria (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 26296
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-3720
Fax: 012 342-3721
E-mail: embulgsa@iafrica.com

Burundi (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12914
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-4881/3
Fax: 012 342-4885
E-mail: ambabusa@yahoo.fr

Cameroon (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 13790
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4731
Fax: 012 362-4732
E-mail: hicocam@cameroon.co.za

Canada
[High Commission]
Private Bag X13
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 422-3000
Fax: 012 422-3052

Central African Republic
[Honorary Consulate-General]
PO Box 2774
Kempton Park 1620
Tel: 011 970-1355
Fax: 011 970-1352
E-mail: johan@eriksons.co.za

Chile (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2449
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-8090
Fax: 012 460-8093
E-mail: chile@iafrica.com

China (People's Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95764
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 342-6500/4194
Fax: 012 342-4244/4154

Colombia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12791
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-0211/4
Fax: 012 342-0216
E-mail: visas@embassyofcolombia.co.za

Comoros (Federal Islamic Republic of the)
[Embassy]
817 Thomas Ave
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 342-0138
Fax: 012 342-0138
Cell: 082 622 0139

Congo (Democratic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 28795
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 343-2455
Fax: 012 344-4054
E-mail: rdcongo@lantic.co.za

Congo (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 40427
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5508
Fax: 012 342-5510
E-mail: congo@telkomsa.net

Costa Rica (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 68140
Bryanston 2021
Tel: 011 705-3434
Fax: 011 705-1222
E-mail: bish@mega.co.za

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13510
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-6913
Fax: 012 342-6713
E-mail: ambacipretoria@yahoo.fr

Croatia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11335
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-1206
Fax: 012 342-1819
E-mail: croatianembassy@ionline.co.za

Cuba (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11605
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-2215
Fax: 012 346-2216
E-mail: embacuba@cubanembassy.co.za

Cyprus (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 14554
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5258
Fax: 012 342-5596
E-mail: cyprusjb@mweb.co.ca

Czech Republic
[Embassy]
PO Box 13671
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 431-2380
Fax: 012 430-2033
E-mail: pretoria@embassy.mzv.cz

Denmark (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11439
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-9340
Fax: 012 342-7620
E-mail: pryamb@um.dk

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 30025
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 343-1590/1
Fax: 012 343-1082
E-mail: egyptemb@global.co.za

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12720
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-9945/6470
Fax: 012 342-6469
E-mail: egembassytres@telkomsa.net

Eritrea (State of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11371
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 333-1302
Fax: 012 333-2330

Estonia (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
16 Hofmeyer Street
Welgemoed
Bellville 7530
Tel: 021 913-3850/082 550 6363
Fax: 021 913-2579/863-2190
E-mail: estonia@mweb.co.za

Ethiopia (Federal Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11469
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-3542
Fax: 012 346-3867
E-mail: ethiopia@sentechsa.com

Finland (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 443
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 343-0275
Fax: 012 343-3095
Fax: (visas) (012) 343-4369
E-mail: sanomat.pre@formin.fi

France (Republic of)
[Embassy]
250 Cnr Melk and Middle streets
New Muckleneuk 0181
Tel: 012 425-1600
Fax: 012 425-1609
E-mail: france@ambafrance-rsa.org

Gabon (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 9222
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-4376/7
Fax: 012 342-4375

The Gambia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
Private Bag X9949
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 784-1059
Fax: 011 784-0790
Cell: 083 222 6747

Germany (Federal Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2023
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-8900
Fax (visas): 012 427-8982
Fax: 012 343-9401
E-mail:
GermanEmbassyPretoria@gonet.co.za

Ghana (Republic of)
[High Commission]
1038 Arcadia Street
Hatfield 0038
Tel: 012 342-5847/9
Fax: 012 342-5863
E-mail: ghcom27@icon.co.za

Greece (Hellenic Republic)
[Embassy]
1267 Pretorius Street
Hatfield 0001
Tel: 012 342-7136/7
Fax: 012 430-4313
E-mail: embgrsaf@global.co.za or hunem@cis.co.za

Grenada
[Honorary Consulate]
Johannesburg
Third Floor, Digital House
Park Lane
Sandton 2196
Cell: 083 461-6559
Fax: 011 787-6407

Guatemala (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1661
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 418-2020
Fax: 021 418-1280

Guinea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13523
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-7348/4906
Fax: 012 342-7348
E-mail: embaguinea@l.iafrica.com

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 9689
Edenglen 1613
Tel: 011 622-3688
Fax: 011 622-5351

Guyana (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1877
Randburg 2125
Tel: 083 266 8309
Fax: 086 604-5422
E-mail: raebenz@hotmail.com

Haiti (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14362
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-7560
Fax: 012 342-7042

Holy See (The Vatican)
PO Box 26017
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 344-3815/6
Fax: 012 344-3595
E-mail: nunziosa@iafrica.com

Hungary (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13843
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-3020/30
Fax: 012 430-3029
E-mail: huembprt@mweb.co.za

Iceland (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14325
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5885
Fax: 012 342-0883
E-mail: mspencer@shanduka.co.za

India (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 40216
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5392/5
Fax: 012 342-5310/430 3326
E-mail: india@hicomind.co.za

Indonesia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13155
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-3350/3
Fax: 012 342-3369
E-mail: indonemb@lantic.co.za

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12546
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5880/1
Fax: 012 342-1878
E-mail: office@iranembassy.org.za

Iraq (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11089
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-2021
Fax: 012 362-2027
E-mail: abrtemb@iraqmosamail.net

Ireland
[Embassy]
PO Box 4174
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-5062
Fax: 012 342-4752

Israel (State of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 3726
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 470-3500
Fax: 012 470-3555
E-mail: operator@pretoria.mfa.gov.il

Italy (Republic of)
[Embassy]
796 George Avenue
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 423-0000
Fax: 012 430-5547
E-mail: ambital@iafrica.com

Ivory Coast (see Côte d'Ivoire)

Jamaica
[High Commission]
1119 Burnett Street
Hatfield 0083
Tel: 012 362-6667
Tel: 012 366-8500
Fax: 012 366-8510
E-mail: jhcpretoria@telkomsa.net

Japan
[Embassy]
Private Bag X999
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 452-1500
Fax: 012 460-3800/1
E-mail: info@embjapan.org.za

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14730
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-8615/8617
Fax: 012 346-8611
E-mail: embjordpta@telkomsa.net

Kenya (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 35954
Menlo Park 0102
Tel: 012 362-2249/50/51
Fax: 012 362-2252
E-mail: info@kenya.org.za

Korea (Democratic People's Republic)
[Embassy]
PO Box 1238
Garsfontein 0042
Tel: 012 991-8661
Fax: 012 991-8662
E-mail: dprkembassy@lantic.net

Korea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 939
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 460-2508/9
Fax: 012 460-1158
E-mail: korrsa@mweb.co.za

Kuwait (State of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X920
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-0877
Fax: 012 342-0876
E-mail: safarku@global.co.za

Latvia (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
Johannesburg
24 Impala Road
Chiselhurston
Sandton 2196
Tel: 011 505-9100
Fax: 011 505-9147
E-mail: consul@neishlos.com

Lebanon (Lebanese Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 941
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 430-2130
Fax: 012 430-2238
E-mail: embassyoflebanon@telkomsa.net

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 55817
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 460-7648
Fax: 012 460-7649
E-mail: lesothopretoria@metroweb.co.za

Liberia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14082
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342 2733
Cell: 072 928 0841
Fax: 086 503 6036
E-mail: libempta@lia.net

Libya (Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)
[Embassy]
PO Box 40388
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-3902
Fax: 012 342-3904
E-mail: libyasa@telkomsa.net

Liechtenstein (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1737
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 486-3660
Fax: 011 486-3650
E-mail: heidi@garbjoffe

Madagascar (Republic of)
[Consulate-General]
PO Box 11722
Queenswood 0120
Tel: 012 342-0983/4/5/6
Fax: 012 342-0995
E-mail: ambamad.pta@infodoor.co.za

Malawi (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11172
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-0983/4/5/6
Fax: 012 342-0995
E-mail: highcomalai@telkomsa.net

Malaysia
[High Commission]
PO Box 11673
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5990/3
Fax: 012 430-7773
E-mail: mwpretoria@ishoppe.co.za

Mali (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12978
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-7464/0676
Fax: 012 342-0670

Malta (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
64 Dorchester Chrive
Parkland
Cape Town 7441
Tel: 021 430-5319
Fax: 021 430-5002
E-mail: john@proteahotels.com

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
[Embassy]
146 Anderson Street
Brooklyn 0181
Tel: 012 362-3578
Fax: 012 362-3304
E-mail: rimambapretoria@webmail.co.za

Mauritius (Republic of)
[High Commission]
1163 Pretorius Street
Hatfield 0083
Tel: 012 342-1283/4
Fax: 012 342-1286
E-mail: mhcpta@mweb.co.za

Mexico (United Mexican States)
[Embassy]
PO Box 9077
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 460-1004
Fax: 012 460-0937 or 086 640 8731
E-mail: consularmexico@mweb.co.za

Monaco (Principality of)
[Honorary Consulate]
Unit No 1 Milton's Way
11 Bell Crescent Close
Westlake Business Park,
Westlake 7945
Tel: 021 702-0991/2
Fax: 021 702-0993
E-mail: info@consulate-monaco.co.za

Morocco (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12382
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 343-0230/40
Fax: 012 342-0613
E-mail: sifmapre@telkomsa.net

Mozambique (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 57465
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 401-0300
Fax: 012 326-6388

Myanmar (Union of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12121
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 341-2556/7
Fax: 012 341-2553
E-mail: euompta@global.co.za

Namibia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 29806
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 481-9100
Fax: 012 344-5998/343-7294
E-mail: secretary@namibia.org.za

Netherlands (Kingdom of the)
[Embassy]
PO Box 117
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 425-4500
Fax: 012 425-4511
E-mail: nlgovpre@cis.co.za

New Zealand
[High Commission]
Private Bag X17
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-8656
Fax: 012 342-8640
E-mail: enquiries@nzhc.co.za

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 27332
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 342-0805/0663
Fax: 012 342-1668
E-mail: nhcp@iafrica.com

Norway (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11612
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-6100
Fax: 012 342-6099
E-mail: emb.pretoria@mfa.no

Oman (Sultanate of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2650
Brooklyn 0075
Tel: 012 346-0808/4428
Fax: 012 346-1660

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11803
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4072/3
Fax: 012 362-3967
E-mail: pareppretoria@worldonline.co.za

Palestine (State of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56021
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6411
Fax: 012 342-6412

Panama (Republic of)
229 Olivia Street
Brooklyn
Pretoria 0081
Tel: 012 460-6677
Fax: 012 346-5474
E-mail: panamaembassy@gmail.com

Papua New Guinea
The Australian diplomatic representatives are in charge of the consular interests of Papua New Guinea in South Africa

Paraguay (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95774
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 347-1047
Fax: 012 347-0403
E-mail: embaparsudafrica@hotmail.com

Peru (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 907
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 346-8744
Fax: 012 346-8886
E-mail: embaperu@telkomsa.net

Philippines (Republic of the)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2562
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 346-0451/2
Fax: 012 346-0454
E-mail: pretoriape@mweb.co.za

Poland (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12277
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 430-2631/2
Fax: 012 430-2608
E-mail: e20@mweb.co.za

Portugal (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 27102
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 341-2340/1/2
Fax: 012 341-3975
E-mail: portemb@global.co.za

Qatar (State of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X13
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 452-1700
Fax: 012 346-6732
E-mail: qatar-emb@lantic.net

Romania (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11295
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 460-6940/1
Fax: 012 460-6947
E-mail: romembsa@global.co.za

Russian Federation (The)
[Embassy]
PO Box 6743
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 362-1337/8
Fax: 012 362-0116
E-mail: ruspospr@mweb.co.za

Rwanda (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 55224
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6536
Fax: 012 342-7106

Saharawi (Arab Democratic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11352
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5532
Fax: 012 430-7428
E-mail: Samoba19@yahoo.com

San Marino (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2013
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-5826
Fax: 012 460-5826
E-mail: affariesteri@omniway.sm

São Tomé and Principe (Democratic Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 28
Franschoek 7690
Tel: 021 876-2494
Fax: 021 876-3237

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13930
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4230/4240
Fax: 012 362-4239

Senegal (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2948
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-5263
Fax: 012 346-5550
E-mail: ambassene@mweb.co.za

Serbia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13026
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 460-5626
Fax: 012 460-6003

Seychelles (Republic of)
[Consulate General]
PO Box 1548
Ferndale 2160
Tel: 011 467-8101/2
Fax: 011 465-9093

Singapore (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11809
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-6035
Fax: 012 342-4425

Slovak (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12736
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-2051/2
Fax: 012 342-3688
E-mail: slovakem@telkomsa.net

Spain (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 1633
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 460-0123
Fax: 012 460-2290

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)
410 Alexander street
Brooklyn 0181
Tel: 012 460 7690
Fax: 012 460 7702
E-mail: slhc@srilanka.co.za

Sudan (Republic of the)
[Embassy]
PO Box 25513
Monument Park 0105
Tel: 012 342-4538/7903
Fax: 012 342-4539/0940

Suriname (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 149
Pretoria
Tel: 012 346 7627/45
Fax: 012 346 0802
E-mail: embsur@lantic.net

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 14294
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 344-1910/17/24
Fax: 012 343-0455

Sweden (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13477
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 426-6400
Fax: 012 426-6464
E-mail: consulates@hkshipping.co.za

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2508
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 452-0660
Fax: 012 346-6605
E-mail: Vertretung@pre.rep.admin.ch

Syrian Arab Republic
[Embassy]
PO Box 12830
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-4701
Fax: 012 342-4702

Taipei
[Liaison Office in South Africa]
PO Box 649
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 430-6071-3/342-7110
Fax: 012 430-5816
E-mail: taipeisa@telkomsa.net

Tanzania (United Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 56572
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-4393/71
Fax: 012 430-4383
E-mail: thc@tanzania.org.za

Thailand (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12080
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5470/4600
Fax: 012 342-4805
E-mail: visa@thaiembassy.co.za

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 95872
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 460-9688
Fax: 012 346-7302
E-mail: tthepretoria@telkomsa.net

Tunisia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56535
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6282/83
Fax: 012 342-6284

Turkey (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56014
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6053-7
Fax: 012 342-6052
E-mail: pretbe@global.co.za

Uganda (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 12442
Hatfield 0028
Tel:012 342-6031/3
Fax: 012 342-6206

Ukraine
[Embassy]
PO Box 36463
Menlo Park 0102
Tel: 012 460-1943/1946
Fax: 012 460-1944
E-mail: kiev.admin@foreign.gov.za

United Arab Emirates
[Embassy]
PO Box 57090
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-7736
Fax: 012 342-7738

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
[Her Britanic Majesty's High Commission]
255 Hill Street
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 421-7500
Fax: 012 421-7555
E-mail: media.pretoria@fco.gov.uk

United States of America
[Embassy]
PO Box 9536
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 431-4000
Afer hours: 082 285 2341
Fax: 012 342-2299/2911

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 3247
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 362-6521/2
Fax: 012 362-6523
E-mail: urusud@pixie.co.za

Vanuatu (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 114
Green Point, 8051
Tel: 021 434-6570
Fax: 021 434-6518
E-Mail: Christian@brendel.co.za

Venezuela (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11821
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-6593
Fax: 012 362-6591
E-mail: embasudaf@icon.co.za

Vietnam (Socialist Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13692
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-8119
Fax: 012 362-8115
E-mail: vnto@worldonline.co.za

Yemen (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13343
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 425-0760
Fax: 012 425-0762
E-mail: info@yemenembassy.org.za

Zambia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 12234
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 326-1854
Fax: 012 326-2140
E-mail: zahpta@mweb.co.za

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 55140
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5125
Fax: 012 342-5126
E-mail: zimpret@lantic.net

Representatives of the Republic of South Africa abroad

Afghanistan (Transitional Islamic State of)
Representation accredited from Islamabad, Pakistan

African Union and United Nations Economic Commission for Africa
[South African Mission]
PO Box 1091
Addis Ababa
Ethiopia
Tel: 0025 111 3713034
Fax: 00 25111 371 1330
E-mail: sa.embassy.addis@telecom.net.et

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
30 Rue Capitan Hocine Slimane
El Biar
Algiers 16000
Algeria
Tel: 00 2132 123 0384
Fax: 00 213 2123 123 0827
E-mail: sae@assila.net

Andorra (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Madrid, Spain

Angola (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Caixa Postal 6212
Luanda
Angola
Tel: 00 2442 22 33 0593/4187
Fax: 00 2442 22 39 8730/
00 2442 22 39 8725
E-mail: saemb.ang@netangola.com

Antigua and Barbuda
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Argentina (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Avenida Marcelo T de Alvaear 590
8th Floor
C1058AAF
Buenos Aires 1050
Argentina
Tel: 0054 11 4317 2900
Fax: 0054 11 4317 2963
E-mail: info@sudafrica.org.ar

Armenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kyiv, Ukraine

Australia (Commonwealth of)
[South African High Commission]
Rhodes Place
State Circle
Yarralumla
Canberra ACT 2600
Australia
Tel: 00 61 2 6272 7300
Fax: 00 61 26273 3543
E-mail: consular@sahc.org.au or
info@sahc.org.au

Austria (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Sandgasse 33
A-1190 Vienna
Austria
Tel: 00 431 320 6493
Fax: 00 431 320 649351
E-mail: ambassador@saembvie.at

Azerbaijan (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ankara, Turkey

Bahamas (The Commonwealth of the)
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Bahrain (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
Representation accredited from New Delhi, India

Barbados
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Belarus (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Moscow, Russia

Belgium (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
(Embassy to Belgium and Luxembourg and
Mission to the European Communities)
Rue de la Loi b-7/8
Brussels 1040
Belgium
Tel: 00 32 2285 4400
Fax: 00 32 2285 4402/4455
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.be

Botswana (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag 00402
Gaborone
Botswana
Tel: 00 267 390 4800/1/2
Fax: 00 267 390 5501/2
E-mail: sahcgabs@botsnet.bw

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
SES - Avenida das Nacoes
Quadra 801
Lote 6
CEP: 70 406-900
Brasilia - DF
Brazil
Tel: 00 55 6133 12 9500
Fax: 00 55 6133 22 8491
E-mail: saemb@solar.com.br

Brunei Darissalam (Negara Brunei Darissalam)
Representation accredited from Kuala Lumpur, Malasia

Bulgaria (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
26 Bacho Kiro Street
2nd Floor
Sofia 1000
Bulgaria
Tel: 00 359 2 981 6682
Fax: 00 359 2 981 5776
E-mail: saembsof@techno-link.com

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Villa 1110
Hotel Sofitel
Burkina Faso
Tel: 00 226 5037 6099
Fax: 00 226 5037 6097
E-mail:
tocknellg@foreign.gov.za

Burundi
[South African Liaison Office]
B.P. 185 Bujumbura
Burundi
Tel: 00 257 22244 650
Fax: 00 257 22248 219
E-mail: saebujfin@usan-bu.net

Cambodia (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Bangkok, Thailand

Cameroon (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Boite Postal 1636
Yaounde
Cameroon
Tel: 00 237 2220 0438
Fax: 00 237 2220 0995
E-mail: yaounde@foreign.gov.za

Canada
[South African High Commission]
15 Sussex Drive
Ontario KIM 1M8
Ottawa
Canada
Tel: 00 1 613 744 0330
Fax: 00 1 613 741 1639
E-mail:
rsafrica@southafrica-canada.ca

Cape Verde (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Dakar, Senegal

Central African Republic
Representation accredited from Yaoundé, Cameroon

Chad
[South African Embassy]
Hotel Sahel
BP 1500
N'Djaména
Chad
Tel: 00 235 522 209
Fax: 086 517 8850
E-mail: ndjamena@foreign.gov.za

Chile (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Torre San Ramon Piso 16
Avenida 11 de Septiembre
2353
Santiago, Providencia
Chile
Tel: 00 56 2 231 2860/3
Fax: 00 56 2 231 3185/5491
E-mail: info@embajada-sudafrica.cl

China (People's Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
5 Dongzhimenwai Dajie
Beijing 100600
People's Republic of China
Tel: 00 86 10 6532 0171
Fax: 00 86 10 6532 7319
E-mail: corporateservices@saembassy.org.cn

Colombia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Caracas, Venezuela

Comoros (The Union of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 2589
Moroni
Union of Moroni
Tel: 00 269 734783/738081
Fax: +269 734 524
E-mail: moroni@foreign.gov.za

Congo (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
82 Avenue, Marechal Lyautey
Brazzaville
Republic of Congo
Tel: 00 242 530 1388
E-mail: brazzaville@foreign.gov.za

Cook Islands
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Costa Rica (Republic of)
[South African Consulate-General]
PO Box 2816-1000
San Jose
Costa Rica
Tel: 00 506 222 1470/ 272 1421
Fax: 00 506 223 8223
E-mail: gicaltd@racsa.co.cr

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Ambassade D'Afrique du Sud
08 BP 1806
Abidjan 08
Cote d'Ivoire
Tel: 00 225 2244 5963
Fax: 00 225 2244 7450
E-mail: ambafsudpol@aviso.ci

Croatia (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Agrokor d.d, Trg D. Petrovica 3.
10 000 Zagreb
Croatia
Tel: 00 1 385 1 4894 111
Fax: 00 1 385 1 4844 363
E-mail: branko.miksa@agrokor.hr

Cuba (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Ave 5ta, No 4201, esq 42
Miramar Playa
Ciudad de La Habana
Havana
Cuba
Tel: 00 53 7 204 9671/6
Fax: 00 53 7 204 1101
E-mail: rsacuba@cenial.inf.cu

Cyprus (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Athens, Greece

Czech Republic
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 133
100 00 Prague 10
Czech Republic
Tel: 00 42 26731 1114/2527
Fax: 00 42 26731 1395
E-mail: saprague@terminal.cz

Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC)
[South African Embassy]
Boite Postale 7829
Kinshasa
DRC
Tel: 00 243 88 81 492 8855/8866
Fax: 00 243 88 81 555 4321
E-mail: ambasud@stelecom.cd

Denmark (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 128
DK-2900 Hellerup
Denmark
Tel: 00 45 3918 0155
Fax: 00 45 3918 4006
E-mail: sa.embassy@southafrica.dk

Djibouti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Dominica (Commonwealth of)
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Dominican Republic
Representation accredited from Havana, Cuba

East Timor (Republic of Timor Leste)
Representation accredited from Jakarta, Indonesia

Ecuador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Lima, Peru

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
55 Road 18
Maadi
Cairo
Arab Republic of Egypt
Tel: 000 202 2359 4365/4940
Fax: 00 202 2359 5015
E-mail: saembcai@tedata.net.eg

El Salvador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mexico City, Mexico

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 5
Malabo
Equatorial Guinea
Tel: 00 240 207737
Fax: 00 240 092746
E-mail: saemmalabo@yahoo.co.uk

Eritrea (State of)
[South African Embassy]
Intercontinental Hotel
Room 101
Asmara
State of Eritrea
Tel: 00 291 1 150 400 Ext 2282
Fax: 00 291 1151 940
E-mail: saemb@eol.com.er

Estonia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Helsinki, Finland

Ethiopia (Federal Democratic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1091
Addis Ababa
Ethiopia
Tel: 00 25 111 371 3034
Fax: 00 25 111 371 1330
E-mail: sa.embassy.addis@telecom.net.et

European Union
[South African Mission]
26 Rue de la Loi B7/8
Brussels 1040
Belgium
Tel: 00 32 2285 4400
Fax: 00 32 2285 4402
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.be

Fiji (Republic of the Fiji Islands)
Plot No 1
No 16 Kimberly Street
Corner Gordon street Suva, Fiji
Tel: 00 679 331 1087/9620
Fax: 00 679 331 1086/0805
E-mail: freestate@connect.com.fj

Finland (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Rahapajankatu 1A 5
00160 Helsinki
Finland
Tel: 00 358 9 6860 3100
Fax: 00 358 9 6860 3160
E-mail: saeinfo@welho.com

France (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
50 Quai d'Orsay
75343 Paris Cedex 07
France
Tel: 00 33 15359 2323
Fax: 00 33 15359 2368
E-mail: info@afriquesud.net

Gabon (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
BP 4063
Libreville
Gabon
Tel: 00 241 77 4530/1
Fax: 00 241 77 4536
E-mail: saegabon@internetgabon.com

The Gambia
Representation accredited from Dakar, Senegal

Georgia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kyiv, Ukraine

Germany (Federal Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Tiergartenstrasse 18
10785 Berlin
Germany
Tel: 00 49 30 220 730
Fax: 00 49 30 220 73190
E-mail: berlin.info@foreign.gov.za

Ghana (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 298
Trade Fair, Accra
Ghana
Tel: 00 233 2176 2380/4480/3880
Fax: 00 233 2176 2381
E-mail: sahcgh@africaonline.com.gh

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 61152
GR 151-10
Athens
Greece
Tel: 00 30 210 610 6645
Fax: 00 30 210 610 6640
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.gr

Grenada
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Guatemala (Republic of)
10 A Avenida 30-57, Zona 5
Ciudad de Guatemala
Guatemala
Tel: 00 502 2332 6953/2385 0482
Fax: 00 502 2331 5734
E-mail: fmonterroso@ufm.edu.gt

Guinea (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Coleah
Mossoudougou
Conakry
Guinea
Tel: 00 224 30 49 0875/6/7
Fax: 00 224 30 49 0879
E-mail: conakrys@foreign.gov.za

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Dakar, Senegal

Guyana (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Haiti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Hellenic Republic
Information under Greece

Holy See (The Vatican)
Representation accredited from Berne, Switzerland

Honduras (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
2 Ave. 12 Calle
Barrio Las Acacias, Casa 104
San Pedro Sula
Honduras
Tel: 00 504 552 4702/8975
Fax: 00 504 553 2553
E-mail: bmemb@globalnet.hn

Hong Kong
[South African Consulate-General]
2706-10 Great Eagle Centre
23 Harbour Road
Wanchai
Hong Kong
Tel: 00 852 2577 3279
Fax: 00 852 2890 1975
E-mail: sacghgk@netvigator.com

Hungary (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
H-1026 Budapest
Gardonyi Geza ut 17
Hungary
Tel: 00 36 1392 0999
Fax: 00 36 1200 7277
E-mail: saemb@sa-embassy.hu

Iceland (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate-General]
PO Box 462
121 Reykjavik
Iceland
Tel: 00 354 591 0355
Fax: 00 354 591 0358
E-mail: jr@fif.is

India (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
B18 Vasant Marg
Vasant Vihar
New Delhi 110 057
India
Tel: 00 9111 2 614 9411-19
Fax: 00 9111 2 614 3605
E-mail: dhc@sahc-india.com

Indonesia (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1329
Jakarta
Indonesia
Tel: 00 62 21 574 0660
Fax: 00 62 21 574 0661
E-mail: saembassy@centrin.net.id

International Monetary Fund and World Bank – Washington DC
[South African Permanent Mission]
Suite 380 3201
New Mexico Avenue NW
Washington DC 20016
United States of America
Tel: 00 1 202 364 8320
Fax: 00 1 202 354 6008

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 11365-7476
Tehran
Iran
Tel: 00 98 21270 2866-9
Fax: 00 98 21271 9516
E-mail: saemb@neda.net

Ireland
[South African Embassy]
2nd Floor, Alexandra House Earlsfort
Centre, Earlsfort Terrace
Dublin 2
Ireland
Tel: 00 353 1661 5553
Fax: 00 353 1661 5590
E-mail: information@saedublin.com

Israel (State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 7138
Tel Aviv 61071
Israel
Tel: 00 972 3525 2566
Fax: 00 972 3525 3230
E-mail: amb@saemb.org.il

Italy (Italian Republic)
[South African Embassy]
Via Tanaro 14
Rome 0019
Italy
Tel: 00 39 0685 2541
Fax: 00 39 0685 254300/4301
E-mail: sae@flashnet.it

Jamaica
[South African High Commission]
15 Hillcrest Avenue
Kingston 6
Jamaica, WI
Tel: 00 876 978 3160/4457
Fax: 00 876 978 0339
E-mail: sahc@cwjamaica.com

Japan
[South African Embassy]
3rd and 4th Floor, Oriken Hirakawa-cho Building
Hirakawa-cho 2-chome 1-1
Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 102-0093
Japan
Tel: 00 81 03 3265 3366-9
Fax: 00 81 03 3265 1108
E-mail: visa@rsatk.com

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 851508
Sweifieh 11185
Jordan
Tel: 00 962 6 592 1194
Fax: 00 962 6 592 0080
E-mail: saembjor@index.com.jo

Kazakhstan (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
48 A Ivanilov Street
Gorny Gigant Suburb
Almaty 050059
Kazakhstan
Tel: 00 7 3272 598 260/61
Fax: 00 7 3272 598 259
E-mail: almaty@foreign.gov.za

Kenya (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 42441
Nairobi
Kenya
Tel: 00 254 20 282 7100
Fax: 00 254 20 282 7236
E-mail: sahc@africaonline.co.ke

Kiribati (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Korea (Democratic People's Republic of)
Representation accredited from Beijing, China

Korea (Republic of South)
[South African Embassy]
1-37 Hannam-dong
Yongsan-gu
Seoul 140-885
Korea
Tel: 00 82 2792 4855
Fax: 00 82 2792 4856
E-mail:
general@southafrica-embassy.or.kr

Kuwait (The State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2262
40173 Mishref
Kuwait
Tel: 00 965 561 7988
Fax: 00 965 561 7917
E-mail: saemb@southafricaq8.com

Kyrgyz Republic
Representation accredited from Ankara, Turkey

Lao People's Democratic Republic
Floor 12A, M Thai Tower
All Seasons Place
87 Wireless Road Lumpini, Prathumwan
Bangkok 10330
Tel: +662 659 2900
Fax: 662 250 1064
E-mail: saembbk@bxinfo.co.th

Latvia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Helsinki, Finland

Lebanon (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Representation accredited from Damascus, Syria

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag A266
Maseru 0100
Kingdom of Lesotho
Tel: 00 266 2231 5758
Fax: 00 266 2231 0128
E-mail: sahcmas@leo.co.ls

Liberia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Libya (Great Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1230
Tripoli
Libya
Tel: 00 218 21333 7006
Fax: 00 218 21 334 0432
E-mail: satripoli@hotmail.com

Liechtenstein (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Bern, Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Copenhagen, Denmark

Luxembourg (Grand Duchy of)
Representation accredited from Brussels, Belgium

Madagascar (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
BP 12101-05
Zoom
101 Antananarivo
Madagascar
Tel: 00 261 20 224 3350
Fax: 00 261 20 224 3386
E-mail: antananarivo@foreign.gov.za

Malawi (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 30043
Lilongwe 3
Malawi
Tel: 00 265 1773 722/597/036
Fax: 00 265 1772 571
E-mail: sahc@malawi.net

Malaysia (Federation of)
[South African High Commission]
Suite 22, 01 Level 22
No 3 Jalan Kia Peng
50450 Kuala Lumpur
Malaysia
Tel: 00 603 2170 2412
Fax: 00 603 2164 3742
E-mail: sahcadm@streamyx.com

Maldives (Republic of)
Representation accredited from New Delhi, India

Mali (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Boite Postal 2015
Bamako
Mali
Tel: 00 223 229 2925/27
Fax: 00 223 229 2926
E-mail: bamako@foreign.gov.za

Malta
Representation accredited from Rome, Italy

Marshall Islands (Republic of)
Rhodes Place
State Circle
Yarralumla
Canberra
ACT 2600
Tel: 612 6272/7300
Fax: 612 6272/7364
consular@sahc.org.au

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
Representation accredited from Dakar, Senegal

Mauritius (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 908
Port Louis
Mauritius
Tel: 00 230 212 6925/6/8/9/30
Fax: 00 230 212 6936/1171
E-mail: sahc@intnet.mu

Mexico (United Mexican States)
[South African Embassy]
Embajada de Sudafrica
Apartado Postal 105-219
Colonia Polanco
C.P 11560
Mexico DF
Tel: 00 525 55282 9260-65
Fax: 00 525 55282 9259/9186
E-mail: admin@embajadasudafrica.com.mx

Micronesia (Federated States of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Moldova (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kyiv, Ukraine

Monaco (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Beijing, PRC

Mongolia
Representation accredited from Beijing, PRC

Morocco (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
34 Rue des Saadiens
Rabat
Morocco
Tel: 00 212 37 706760
Tel: 00 212 37 724550
E-mail: sudaf@menara.ma

Mozambique (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Caixa Postal 1120
Maputo
Mozambique
Tel: 00 258 2149 1614/0059
Fax: 00 258 2149 3029
E-mail: sahc_admin@tropical.co.mz

Myanmar (The Union of)
Representation accredited from Bangkok, Thailand

Namibia (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 23100
Windhoek
Namibia
Tel: 00 264 61205 7111
Fax: 00 264 6122 4140
E-mail: sahcwin@iafrica.com.na

Nauru (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Nepal (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from New Delhi, India

Netherlands (Kingdom of the)
[South African Embassy]
Wassenaarseweg 40
2596 CJ, The Hague
The Netherlands
Tel: 00 31 70 392 4501
Fax: 00 31 70 346 0669
E-mail: info@zuidafrika.nl

New Zealand
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Wellington
New Zealand
Tel: 00 64 4 2348006
Fax: 00 64 4 2348075
Cell: 00 64 21 465254
E-mail: gfortuin@paradise.net.nz

Nicaragua
Representation accredited from Mexico City, Mexico

Niger (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
10B Club Road
Ikoyi
Lagos
Nigeria
Tel: 00 234 1 461 2067/4041
Fax: 00 234 1 461 2064/2053
E-mail: sahc_abuja@yahoo.com

Niue
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia
Norfolk Island
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Norway (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2822 Solli
0204 Oslo
Norway
Tel: 00 47 2327 3220
Fax: 00 47 2244 3975
E-mail: info@saemboslo.no

Oman (Sultanate of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 231 PC 118
Al Harthy Complex
Muscat
Oman
Tel: 00 968 694 791
Fax: 00 968 694 792
E-mail: ambsaeo@omantel.net.om

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
48 Khayabane-e-Iqbal
Sector F-8/2, Islamabad
Pakistan
Tel: 00 9251 226 2354/5/6
Fax: 00 9251 225 0114
E-mail: xhosa@isb.comsats.net.pk

Palestine (State of)
[South African Representative Office]
PO Box 567
Ramallah
West Bank – State of Palestine
Tel: 00 972 2298/7355/7929
Fax: 00 972 2298 7356
E-mail: info@sarep.org

Palestine (State of)
[South African Representative Office]
PO Box 1258
Gaza City
Gaza
Tel: 00 972 8284 1313/23
Fax: 00 972 8284 1333
E-mail: info@sarep.org

Palau (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Panama (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Lima, Peru

Papua New Guinea
Representation accredited from Singapore

Paraguay (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Asunsion Fulgencio R. Moreno 509
Piso 8, Asunsion
Paraguay

Peru (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 27-013
L27, Lima
Peru
Tel: 00 511 440 9996
Fax: 00 511 442 3881

Philippines (Republic of the)
[South African Embassy]
29th Floor, Yuchengco Tower
RCBC Plaza
#6819 Ayala Avenue
Makati City,
Metro Manila
Phillippines
Tel: 00 63 2 889 9383
Fax: 00 63 2 889 9337
E-mail: manila@foreign.gov.za

Poland (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
IPC Business Centre
6th Floor
ul. Koszykowa 54
Warsaw 00-675
Poland
Tel: 00 48 22 625 6228/6233
Fax: 00 48 22 625 6270/6284
E-mail: saembassy@supermedia.pl

Portugal (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Avenida Luis Bvar 10
1069-024 Lisbon
Portugal
Tel: 00 351 21 319 2200
Fax: 00 351 21 353 5713
E-mail:
embsa@embaixada-africadosul.pt

Qatar (State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 24744
Doha
State of Qatar
Tel: 00 974 485 7111
Fax: 00 974 483 5961
E-mail: saembdoha@qatar.net.qa

Romania
[South African Embassy]
26-28 Stirbei Voda
2nd Floor
Union International Business Centre
Bucharest
Romania
Tel: 00 40 21 313 37 25/35/85
Fax: 00 40 21 313 37 95
E-mail: bucharest@foreign.gov.za

Russian Federation
[South African Embassy]
Building 9
Granatny Pereulok 1
103102 Moscow
Russian Federation
Tel: 00 7 095 540 1177
Fax: 00 7 095 540 1178
E-mail: tradesa@econsa.ru
moscow.sanf@foreign.gov.za

Rwanda (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 6563
Kacyiru-Sud
Kigali
Rwanda
Tel: 00 250 583 185/6/7/8
Fax: 00 250 511 758
E-mail: kigali.admin@foreign.gov.za

Saint Kitts and Nevis
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Saint Lucia
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
Representation accredited from Kingston, Jamaica

Samoa (The Independent State of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

San Marino (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Rome, Italy
São Tomé and Principe (Democratic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Avenita da Independencia
No 7 Representancao da Republica da Africa de Sul
Sâo Tomé
Sâo Tomé and Principe
Tel: 00 239 227 568

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 94006
Riyadh 11693
Saudi Arabia
Tel: 00 966 1422 9716/19/20
Fax: 00 966 1422 9712
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.com.sa

Senegal (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 21010
Dakar-Ponty
Dakar
Senegal
Tel: 00 221 33 865 1959
Fax: 00 221 33 864 2359
E-mail: ambafsud@sentoo.sn

Serbia and Montenegro
Representation accredited from Athens, Greece

Seychelles (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Port Louis, Mauritius

Sierra Leone (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Singapore (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
15th Floor Odeon Towers
331 North Bridge Road
Singapore
Tel: 00 65 6339 3319
Fax: 00 65 6337 6658
E-mail: hom@southafricahc.org.sg

Slovak Republic
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Revova 27
811 02 Bratislava
Slovak Republic
Tel: 00 421 9 185 45 672
Fax: 00 421 2 544 17 853
E-mail: rsa.consulate.sk@mail.t-com.sk

Slovenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Vienna, Austria

Solomon Islands
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Somalia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Spain (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
Edificio Lista
Calle de Claudio Coello 91-6
Cor of J Ortega Y Gasset
Madrid 28006
Spain
Tel: 00 34 91 436 3780
Fax: 00 34 91 577 7414
E-mail: embassy@sudafrica.com

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
No 114
Rosemead Place
Colombo 07
Sri Lanka
Tel: +94 11 268 9926/27
Fax: +94 11 268 8670
E-mail: sahc_info@sitnek.lk

Sudan (Republic of the)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 12137
Khartoum
The Sudan
Tel: 00 249 183 585 301/2/3/4
Fax: 00 249 183 585 082
E-mail: khartoum@foreign.gov.za

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 2507
Mbabane H100
Swaziland
Tel: 00 268 404 4651-4
Fax: 00 268 404 4335
E-mail: sahc@iafricaonline.co.sz

Sweden (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
Fleminggaten 20
Stockholm
Sweden
Tel: 00 46 8 824 3950
Fax: 00 46 8 660 7136
E-mail: saemb.swe@telia.com

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)
[South African Embassy]
29 Alpenstrasse
3006 Berne 6
Switzerland
Tel: 00 41 31 350 1313
Fax: 00 41 31 350 1310/1311
E-mail: ambassador@southafrica.ch

Syrian Arab Republic
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 9141
Damascus
Syria
Tel: 00 963 11 61351520
Fax: 00 963 11 611 1714
E-mail: saembdam@scs-net.org

Taiwan
[Liaison Office of South Africa]
PO Box 118-140
Taipei
Taiwan
Tel: 00 886 2 2715 3251/4
Fax: 00 886 2 2712 5109
E-mail: tourism.taipei@foreign.gov.za
or trade.taipei@foreign.gov.za

Tajikistan (United Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ankara, Turkey

Tanzania (United Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 10723 Msaki
Dar-es-Salaam
Tanzania
Tel: 00 2 5522 260 1800
Fax: 00 2 5522 260 0684
E-mail: consular@sahc-tz.com

Thailand (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
Floor 12 A, M-Thai Tower,
All Seasons Place,
No 87 Wireless Road,
Prathumwan, Lumpini,
Bangkok, 10330
Thailand
Tel: 00 66 02 250 9012-14
Fax: 00 66 02 250 1064
E-mail: saembbkk@loxinfo.co.th

Togo (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Tokelau
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Tonga (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
2nd Floor, Victoria Park Suites
14-17 Victoria Square
Park Street
Port of Spain
Tel: 00 1 868 6233291
Fax: 00 1 868 6233067
E-mail: trinidad@foreign.gov.za

Tunisia (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
7 Rue Achtart
Nord-Hilton
Tunis
Tunisia
Tel: 00 216 7179 8449
Fax: 00 216 7180 1918/1170
E-mail: sa@emb-safrica.intl.tn

Turkey (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 30
Kucukesat
06662 Ankara
Turkey
Tel: 00 90 312 446 4056
Fax: 00 90 313 446 6434
E-mail: saemb@ada.net.tr

Uganda (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 22667
Kampala
Uganda
Tel: 00 256 41 434 3543/4/6
Fax: 00 256 41 434 8216
E-mail: Kampala.sahc@foreign.gov.za

Ukraine
[South African Embassy]
P O Box 7
Central Post Office
11 Kreshchtyk Street
01001 Kyiv
Ukraine
Tel: 00 38044 287 7172/4451
Fax: 00 38 044 289 7206
E-mail: saemb@utel.net.ua

United Arab Emirates
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 29446
Abu Dhabi
United Arab Emirates
Tel: 00 9712 447 3446
Fax: 00 9712 447 3031
E-mail: saemb@emirates.net.ae

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
[South African High Commission]
South Africa House
9 Duncannon Street
Trafalgar Square
London WC2N 5DP
United Kingdom
Tel: 00 44 207 451 7299
Fax: 00 44 207 451 7284
E-mail: london.general@southafricahouse.com

United Nations – New York
[South African Permanent Mission]
333 East 38th Street
9th Floor, New York
NY 10016
United States of America
Tel: 00 1212 213 5583
Fax: 00 1212 692 2498
E-mail: soafun@worldnet.att.net

United Nations – Geneva
[South African Permanent Mission]
65 Rue du Rhone
Geneva 1204
Switzerland
Tel: 00 41 22 849 5454
Fax: 00 41 22 849 5432
E-mail:
mission@south-africa@ties.itu.int

United States of America
[South African Embassy]
3051 Massachusetts Avenue NW
Washington DC 20008
United States of America
Tel: 00 1 202 232 4400
Fax: 00 1 202 265 1607
E-mail: info@saembassy.org

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 498
Montevideo 11000
Uruguay
Tel: 00 598 2623 0161
Fax: 00 598 2623 0066
E-mail: safem@netgate.com.uy

Uzbekistan (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
30-A Asaka Street
Taskent
Uzbekistan
Tel: 00 99 871 137 0170/71
Fax: 00 99 871 137 2546
E-mail: mtimcke@bbc.com.uz

Vanuatu (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Canberra, Australia

Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2613
Carmelitas
1010
Caracas
Venezuela
Tel: 00 58 212 952 0026
Fax: 00 58 212 951 3613
E-mail: embajador.caracas@foreign.gov.za

Vietnam
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 102
Hanoi
Vietnam
Tel: 00 84 4 936 2000
Fax: 00 84 4 936 1991
E-mail: hanoi@foreign.gov.za

Yemen (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 535
Sana'a
Republic of Yemen
Tel: 00 67 1 224 051
Fax: 00 67 1 221611
E-mail: zubieri@y.net.ye

Zambia (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag W369
Lusaka
Zambia
Tel: 00 260 126 0999
Fax: 00 260 126 3001
E-mail: sahc@zamnet.zm

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box A1654
Avondale
Harare
Tel: 00 263 4 75 3147/8/9
Fax: 00 263 475 7908
E-mail: admin@saembassy.co.zw

The index is arranged word-by-word. Abbreviations and acronyms are used in the index. For the full forms of abbreviations and acronyms, consult the Addendum.

B

D

E

G

H

I

J

K

L

O

P

Q

R

S

X

Y

Z